TRÜBNER'S
ORIENTAL SERIES.
A Sketch Map to illustrate
THE SI-YU-KI

Scale 1:22,000,000

Note: The mountain region is indicated by a ruled tint thus...
SI-YU-KI.

BUDDHIST RECORDS
OF
THE WESTERN WORLD.

TRANSLATED FROM THE CHINESE
OF HIUEN TSIANG (A.D. 629).

48501

BY
SAMUEL BEAL,
B.A. (TRIN. COL. CAMB.), M.M. (RETIRED CHAPLAIN AND N.L.), PROFESSOR OF CHINESE,
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON; RECTOR OF WARK, NORTHUMBERLAND, ETC.

Oriental Books Reprint Corporation
Book Publishers, 10-B, Subhash Marg, Delhi-6.
These Volumes

ARE DEDICATED

(BY GRACIOUS PERMISSION)

TO

H.R.H. ALBERT EDWARD

PRINCE OF WALES.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shih Fa-hian</td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sung-Yun</td>
<td>xv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huen Tsang</td>
<td>xviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist Literature in China</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travels of Fa-hian, or Fo-kwō-kí</td>
<td>xxiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mission of Sung-Yun and Hwei-Sâng</td>
<td>lxxxiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface to the &quot;Ta-t'ang-si-yu-ki,&quot; by Chang Yueh</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Book I.—Thirty-Four Countries</strong></td>
<td>7-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction by Chang Yueh</strong></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Country of 'O-ki-nî (Akni)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kingdom of K'iu-chî (Kuchâ)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Poh-luh-kia (Bâlnkâ or Aksu)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nu-chih-kien (Najkend)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Che-shî (Châj or Tâshkand)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Fei-han (Ferghânah)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Su-tu-li-sse-na (Sutrishpa)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Sâ-mo-kien (Samarkand)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mi-mo-ho (Maghian)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. K'ie-po-ta-na (Kebud)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. K'iu-h-shwang-ni-kia (Kashania)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Ho-han (Kuan)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Pu-ho (Bokhâra)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Fa-ti (Betik)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Ho-li-sih-mi-kia (Khwârazm)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Ki-shwang-na (Kesh)</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

Book I.—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Place/Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Ta-mi (Termed)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Chi-ngoh-yen-na (Chaghâniân or Saghâniân)</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Hwûh-lo-mo (Garma)</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Su-man (Sumân and Kulâb)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Kio-ho-yen-na (Kubâdiân)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Hu-sha (Wakhsh)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Kho-to-lo (Khotl)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Kiu-mi-to (Kumidha or Darwâz and Roshân)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Fo-kia-lang (Baghlân)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Hi-lu-sih-min-kien (Rûl-Samangân)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Ho-lin (Khulm)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Po-ho or Fo-ho-lo (Balkh)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Juî-mo-to (Jumadha)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Hu-shi-kien (Jûzgâna)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Ta-la-kien (Tâlikân)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Kie-chi (Gachi or Gaz)</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Fan-yen-na (Bâmîyân)</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Kia-pi-shi (Kapiâsa)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Book II.—Three Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>Names of India</td>
<td>69-118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>Extent of India, Climate, &amp;c.</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>Measures of Length</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>Astronomy, the Indian Calendar, &amp;c.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>Towns and Buildings</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>Seats, Clothing, &amp;c.</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>Dress, Habits, &amp;c.</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>Cleanliness, Ablutions, &amp;c.</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>Writing, Language, Literature, the Vêdas, Study</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>Buddhist Schools, Books, Discussions, Discipline</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11)</td>
<td>Castes, Marriage</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12)</td>
<td>Royal Race, Troops, Weapons</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13)</td>
<td>Manners, Justice</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14)</td>
<td>Forms of Politeness</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15)</td>
<td>Medicines, Funeral Customs, &amp;c.</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16)</td>
<td>Civil Administration, Revenues, &amp;c.</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17)</td>
<td>Plants and Trees, Cultivation, Food, Drink, &amp;c.</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18)</td>
<td>Commercial Transactions</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Country of Lan-po (Lamghân)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Na-kie-lo-ho (Nagarahâra)</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Kien-t'o-lo (Gandhâra)</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS.

**Book III. — Eight Countries**  
1. U-chang-na (Udyāna)  
2. Po-lu-lo (Bolor)  
3. Ta-ch’a-shi-lo (Takshashilā)  
4. Sāng-ho-pu-lo (Simhapura)  
5. Wu-la-shi (U拉萨)  
6. Kia-shi-mi-lo (Kaśmir)  
7. Pun-nu-tso (Punacha)  
8. Ho-lo-she-pu-lo (Rājapuri)  

**Book IV. — Fifteen Countries**  
1. Tseh-kia (Ṭakka)  
2. Chi-na-po-ti (Chinapati)  
3. She-lau-t’o-lo (Jālandhara)  
4. K’iu-lu-to (Kuluta)  
5. She-to-t’u-lu (Śatadruc)  
6. Po-li-ye-to-lo (Pāryātra)  
7. Mo-t’u-lo (Mathurā)  
8. Sa’-t’a-ni-shi-fa-lo (Śthānēśvara)  
9. Su-lo-k’in-na (Srughna)  
10. Mo-ti-pu-lo (Matipura)  
11. P’o-lo-hih-mo-pu-lo (Brahmapura)  
12. Kiu-pi-shwang-na (Göviśana?)  
13. ‘O-hi-chi-ta-lo (Ahikshetra)  
14. Pi-lo-shan-na (Virasāṇa?)  
15. Kie-pi-ta (Kapitha)  

**Book V. — Six Countries**  
1. Kie-jo-kio-she-kwō (Kanyākubja)  
2. ‘O-yu-t’o (Ayōdhya)  
3. ‘O-ye-mu-khie (Hayamukha)  
4. Po-lo-ye-kia (Prayāga)  
5. Kia-o-shang-mi (Kauśāmbī)  
6. Pi-so-kia (Vaiśaka)  

**Additions and Corrections**  

---

**Page Numbers:**  
- Book III: 119-164  
- Book IV: 165-205  
- Book V: 206-240  
- Additions and Corrections: 241
INTRODUCTION.

The progress which has been made in our knowledge of Northern Buddhism during the last few years is due very considerably to the discovery of the Buddhist literature of China. This literature (now well known to us through the catalogues already published)\(^1\) contains, amongst other valuable works, the records of the travels of various Chinese Buddhist pilgrims who visited India during the early centuries of our era. These records embody the testimony of independent eye-witnesses as to the facts related in them, and having been faithfully preserved and allotted a place in the collection of the sacred books of the country, their evidence is entirely trustworthy.

It would be impossible to mention seriatim the various points of interest in these works, as they refer to the geography, history, manners, and religion of the people of India. The reader who looks into the pages that follow will find ample material for study on all these questions. But there is one particular that gives a more than usual interest to the records under notice, and that is the evident sincerity and enthusiasm of the travellers themselves. Never did more devoted pilgrims leave their native country to encounter the perils of travel in foreign and distant lands; never did disciples more ardently desire to gaze on the sacred vestiges of their religion; never did men endure greater sufferings by desert, mountain,

\(^1\) Catalogue of the Chinese Buddhist Tripiṭaka, by Bunyiu Nanjio.
and sea than these simple-minded earnest Buddhist priests. And that such courage, religious devotion, and power of endurance should be exhibited by men so sluggish, as we think, in their very nature as the Chinese, this is very surprising, and may perhaps arouse some consideration.

Buddhist books began to be imported into China during the closing period of the first century of our era. From these books the Chinese learned the history of the founder of the new religion, and became familiar with the names of the sacred spots he had consecrated by his presence. As time went on and strangers from India and the neighbourhood still flocked into the Eastern Empire, some of the new converts (whose names have been lost) were urged by curiosity or a sincere desire to gaze on the mementoes of the religion they had learned to adopt, to risk the perils of travel and visit the western region. We are told by I-tsing (one of the writers of these Buddhist records), who lived about 670 A.D., that 500 years before his time twenty men, or about that number, had found their way through the province of Sz’chuen to the Mahâbôdhi tree in India, and for them and their fellow-countrymen a Mahârâja called Śrîgupta built a temple. The establishment was called the "Tchina Temple." In I-tsing’s days it was in ruins. In the year 290 A.D. we find another Chinese pilgrim called Chu Si-hing visiting Khotan; another called Fa-ling shortly afterwards proceeded to North India, and we can hardly doubt that others unknown to fame followed their example. At any rate, the recent accidental discovery of several stone tablets with Chinese inscriptions at Buddha Gayâ,² on two of which we find the names of the pilgrims Chi-I and Ho-yun, the former in company "with some other priests," shows plainly that the sacred spots were visited from time to time by priests from China, whose names indeed are unknown to us from any other source, but who were

impelled to leave their home by the same spirit of religious devotion and enthusiasm which actuated those with whom we are better acquainted.

The first Chinese traveller whose name and writings have come down to us is the Śākyaputra Fa-hian. He is the author of the records which follow in the pages of the present Introduction. His work, the Fo-kwo-ki, was first known in Europe through a translation made by M. Abel Remusat. But Klaproth claimed the discovery of the book itself from the year 1816, and it was he who shaped the rough draft of Rémusat’s translation from chap. xxi. of the work in question to the end. Of this translation nothing need be said in this place; it has been dealt with elsewhere. It will be enough, therefore, to give some few particulars respecting the life and travels of the pilgrim, and for the rest to refer the reader to the translation which follows.

Shih Fa-hian.

A.D. 400.

In agreement with early custom, the Chinese mendicant priests who adopted the Buddhist faith changed their names at the time of their leaving their homes (ordination), and assumed the title of Śākyaputras, sons or mendicants of Śākya. So we find amongst the inscriptions at Mathurā the title Śākya Bhikshunyaka or Śākya Bhikshor added to the religious names of the different benefactors there mentioned. The pilgrim Fa-hian, therefore, whose original name was Kung, when he assumed the religious title by which he is known to us, took also the appellation of Shih or the Śākyaputra, the disciple or son of Śākya. He was a native of Wu-Yang, of the district of Ping-Yang, in the province of Shan-si. He left his home and became a Śrāmaṇera at three years of age. His

---

3 *Foá kwoá kí*, Paris, 1836.
4 Julien’s Preface to the *Vie de* pp. 37, 48; also Professor Dowson, *Hiouen Thsang*, p. ix. n. 2.
5 *Arch. Survey of India*, vol. iii
early history is recorded in the work called *Ko-săng-chuen*, written during the time of the Liang dynasty, belonging to the Suh family (502-507 A.D.) But so far as we are now concerned, we need only mention that he was moved by a desire to obtain books not known in China, and with that aim set out in company with other priests (some of whom are named in the records) from Chang'an, A.D. 399, and after an absence of fourteen years returned to Nankin, where, in connection with Buddhabhadra (an Indian Śramana, descended from the family of the founder of the Buddhist religion), he translated various works and composed the history of his travels. He died at the age of eighty-six.

Fa-hian's point of departure was the city of Chang-an in Shen-si; from this place he advanced across the Lung district (or mountains) to the fortified town of Chang-yeh in Kan-suh; here he met with some other priests, and with them proceeded to Tun-hwang, a town situated to the south of the Bulunghir river, lat. 39° 30' N., long. 95° E. Thence with four companions he pushed forward, under the guidance, as it seems, of an official, across the desert of Lop to Shen-shen, the probable site of which is marked in the map accompanying the account of Prejevalsky's journey through the same district; according to this map, it is situated in lat. 38° N., and long. 87° E. It corresponds with the Cherchen of Marco Polo. Fa-hian tells us that Buddhism prevailed in this country, and that there were about 4000 priests. The country itself was rugged and barren. So Marco Polo says, "The whole of this province is sandy, but there are numerous towns and villages." The Venetian traveller makes the distance from the town of Lop five days' journey. Probably Fa-hian did not visit the town of Cherchen, but after a month in the kingdom turned to the north-west, apparently following the course of the Tarim, and after fifteen days arrived in the kingdom of Wu-i or Wu-ki. This kingdom seems

*Marco Polo, cap. xxxviii.*
to correspond to Karshar or Karasharh, near the Lake Tenghiz or Bagarash, and is the same as the 'O-ki-ni of Hiuen Tsiang. Prejevalsky took three days in travelling from Kara-moto to Korla, a distance of about 42 miles, so that the fifteen days of Fa-hian might well represent in point of time the distance from Lake Lob to Karasharh. Our pilgrims would here strike on the outward route of Hiuen Tsiang. It was at this spot they fell in with their companions Pao-yun and the rest, whom they had left at Tun-hwang. These had probably travelled to Karasharh by the northern route, as it is called, through Kamil or Kamul to Pidshan and Turfan; for we read that whilst Fa-hian remained at Karasharh, under the protection of an important official, some of the others went back to Kao-chang (Turfan), showing that they had come that way.

From Karasharh Fa-hian and the others, favoured by the liberality of Kung sün (who was in some way connected with the Prince of Ts'in), proceeded south-west to Khotan. The route they took is not well ascertained; but probably they followed the course of the Tarim and of the Khotan rivers. There were no dwellings or people on the road, and the difficulties of the journey and of crossing the rivers "exceeded power of comparison." After a month and five days they reached Khotan. This country has been identified with Li-yul of the Tibetan writers. There is some reason for connecting this "land of Li" with the Lichchhavis of Vaisāli. It is said by Csoma Korösi "that the Tibetan writers derive their first king (about 250 B.C.) from the Litsabyis or Lichavyis." The chief prince or ruler of the Lichchhavis was called the "great lion" or "the noble lion." This is probably the explanation of Maha-lf, used by Spence Hardy as "the name of the king of the Lichawis." Khotan would thus be the land of the

7 Vol. i. p. 17.  
8 Prejevalsky's Kulja, p. 50.  
9 Rockhill.  
lion-people (Śīṅhas). Whether this be so or not, the polished condition of the people and their religious zeal indicate close connection with India, more probably with Baktria. The name of the great temple, a mile or two to the west of the city, called the Nava-saṅghārāma, or royal "new temple," is the same as that on the south-west of Bālkha, described by Hiuen Tsiang;13 and the introduction of Vaiśravaṇa as the protector of this convent, and his connection with Khotan, the kings of that country being descended from him,14 indicate a relationship, if not of race, at least of intercourse between the two kingdoms.

After witnessing the car procession of Khotan, Fa-hian and some others (for the pilgrims had now separated for a time), advanced for twenty-five days towards the country of Tseu-ho, which, according to Klaproth, corresponds with the district of Yangi-hissar, from which there is a caravan route due south into the mountain region of the Tsung-ling. It was by this road they pursued their journey for four days to a station named Yu-hwui, or, as it may also be read, Yu-fai; here they kept their religious fast, after which, journeying for twenty-five days, they reached the country of Kie-sha. I cannot understand how either of the last-named places can be identified with Ladakh.15 Yu-hwui is four days south of Tseu-ho;16 and twenty-five days beyond this brings the pilgrims to the country of Kie-sha, in the centre of the Tsung-ling mountains.

Nor can we, on the other hand, identify this kingdom of Kie-sha (the symbols are entirely different from those used by Hiuen Tsiang, ii. p. 306, for Kashgār) with that of the Kośaioi of Ptolemy, the Khaśas of Manu, and the Khašākas of the Vīṣṇu Purāṇa.17 These appear to have been related to the Cushites of Holy Scripture.

13 Vol. i. p. 44. 14 Inf., vol. ii. p. 309. 15 See Laidlay’s note, Fa-hian, p. 26, n. 6, and Wood’s Oxus (Yule’s introduction), p. xl. n. 2. 16 So we read in Fa-hian’s text. 17 See Eitel, Handbook, s.v. Khacha; Laidlay’s Fa-hian, p. 31.
INTRODUCTION.

Advancing for a month across the Tsung-ling range towards India, the pilgrims reached the little country of To-li, that is, the valley of Dârail in the Dard country. This valley is on the right or western bank of the Indus, long. 73° 44′ E., and is watered by a river Daril. Still advancing south-west for fifteen days, they strike the Indus (or probably the Swât river), crossing which, they enter on the kingdom of Udyâna, where they found Buddhism in a flourishing condition. Concerning this country and its traditions, we have ample records in Hiuen Tsiang, Book iii. (p. 119). Here then we may leave Fa-hian; his farther travels may be followed by the details given in his own writings, and to these we refer the reader.

SUNG YUN.
A.D. 518.

This pilgrim was a native of Tun-hwang, in what is sometimes called Little Tibet, lat. 39° 30′ N., long. 95° E. He seems to have lived in a suburb of the city of Lo-yang (Honan-fu) called Wan-I. He was sent, A.D. 518, by the Empress of the Northern Wei dynasty, in company with Hwui Sâng, a Bhikshu of the Shung-li temple of Lo-yang, to the western countries to seek for books. They brought back altogether one hundred and seventy volumes or sets of the Great Development series. They seem to have taken the southern route from Tun-hwang to Khotan, and thence by the same route as Fa-hian and his companion across the Tsung-ling mountains. The Ye-tha (Ephthalites) were now in possession of the old country of the Yue-chi, and had recently conquered Gandhâra. They are described as having no walled towns, but keeping order by means of a standing army that moved here and there. They used felt (leather) garments, had no written character, nor any knowledge

8 Vide infra, p. 134, n. 37.
of the heavenly bodies. On all hands it is plain the Ye-tha were a rude horde of Turks who had followed in the steps of the Hiung-nu; they were, in fact, the Ephthalites or Huns of the Byzantine writers. "In the early part of the sixth century their power extended over Western India, and Cosmas tells us of their king Gollas who domineered there with a thousand elephants and a vast force of horsemen." Sung-yun also names the power of the king whom the Ye-tha had set up over Gandhāra. He was of the Lae-lih dynasty, or a man of Lae-lih, which may perhaps be restored to Lāra. According to Hiuen Tsiang, the northern Lāra people belonged to Valabhi, and the southern Lāras to Mālava. It was one of these Lāra princes the Ye-tha had set over the kingdom of Gandhāra. It may have been with the Gollas of Cosmas that the Chinese pilgrims had their interview. At any rate, he was lording it over the people with seven hundred war-elephants, and was evidently a fierce and oppressive potentate.

The Ye-tha, according to Sung-yun, had conquered or received tribute from more than forty countries in all, from Tieh-lo in the south to Lae-lih in the north, eastward to Khotan, westward to Persia. The symbols Tieh-lo probably represent Tirabhukti, the present Tirhut, the old land of the Vṛijjis. The Vṛijjis themselves were in all probability Scythian invaders, whose power had reached so far as the borders of the Ganges at Patna, but had there been checked by Ajātaśatru. They had afterwards been driven north-east to the mountains bordering on Nēpāl. The Ye-tha also extended their power so far as this, and northward to Lae-lih, i.e., Mālava. As these conquests had been achieved two generations before Sung-yun's time, we may place this invasion of India therefore about A.D. 460.

The notices of the country of Udyāna by Sung-yun

vie with those found in Hiuen Tsiang for abundance of detail and legendary interest. It is singular that the supposed scene of the history of Vessantara, "the giving king" of Hiuen Tsiang and the Pi-lo of Sung-yun, should be placed in this remote district. The Vessantara Jātaka (so called) was well known in Ceylon in Fa-hian's time; it forms part of the sculptured scenes at Amarāvatī and Sānchi; it is still one of the most popular stories amongst the Mongols. How does the site of the history come to be placed in Udyāna? There are some obscure notices connected with the succession of the Maurya or Mōriya sovereigns from the Śākya youths who fled to this district of Udyāna which may throw a little light on this subject. The Buddhists affirm that Aśoka belonged to the same family as Buddha, because he was descended from Chandragupta, who was the child of the queen of one of the sovereigns of Mōriyanagara. This Mōriyanagara was the city founded by the Śākya youths who fled from Kapilavastu; so that whatever old legends were connected with the Śākya family were probably referred to Udyāna by the direct or indirect influence of Aśoka, or by his popularity as a Buddhist sovereign. But, in any case, the history of Udyāna is mixed up with that of the Śākya family, and Buddha himself is made to acknowledge Uttarasēna as one of his own kinsmen. We may suppose then that these tales did actually take their rise from some local or family association connected with Udyāna, and found their way thence into the legends of other countries. Hence while we have in the Southern account mention made of the elephant that could bring rain from heaven, which was the cause of Vessantara's banishment, in the Northern accounts this is, apparently, identified with the peacock (mayūra) that brought water from the rock. But the subject need not be pursued farther in this place; it is sufficient to note the fact that

21 Fa-hian, cap. 38. 22 Inf., vol. i. pp. 131 ff. 23 Inf., vol. i. p. 126.
many of the stories found in the Northern legends are somehow or other localised in this pleasant district of Udyâna. Sung-yun, after reaching so far as Peshâwar and Nagarahâra, returned to China in the year A.D. 521.

HIUEN TSIAng.

A.D. 629.

This illustrious pilgrim was born in the year 603 A.D., at Ch’în Liu, in the province of Ho-nan, close to the provincial city. He was the youngest of four brothers. At an early age he was taken by his second brother, Chang-tsi, to the eastern capital, Lo-yang. His brother was a monk belonging to the Tsing-tu temple, and in this community Hiuen Tsiang was ordained at the age of thirteen years. On account of the troubles which occurred at the end of the dynasty of Sui, the pilgrim in company with his brother sought refuge in the city of Shing-tu, the capital of the province of Sz’chuen, and here at the age of twenty he was fully ordained as a Bhikshu or priest. After some time he began to travel through the provinces in search of the best instructor he could get, and so came at length to Chang’an. It was here, stirred up by the recollection of Fa-hian and Chi-yen, that he resolved to go to the western regions to question the sages on points that troubled his mind. He was now twenty-six years of age. He accordingly set out from Chang’an in company with a priest of Tsing-chau of Kan-suh, and having reached that city, rested there. Thence he proceeded to Lan-chau, the provincial city of Kan-suh. He then advanced with a magistrate’s escort to Liang-chau, a prefecture of Kan-suh, beyond the river. This city was the entrepôt for merchants from Tibet and the countries east of the Tsung-ling mountains; and to these Hiuen Tsiang explained the sacred books and revealed his purpose of going to the kingdom of the Brâhmans to seek for the law. By them

25 That is, became a novice or Srâmanera.
he was amply provided with means for his expedition, and, notwithstanding the expostulation of the governor of the city, by the connivance of two priests he was able to proceed westward as far as Kwa-chau, a town about ten miles to the south of the Hu-lu river, which seems to be the same as the Bulunghir.

From this spot, going north in company with a young man who had offered to act as his guide, he crossed the river by night, and after escaping the treachery of his guide, came alone to the first watch-tower. Five of these towers, at intervals of 100 li, stretched towards the country of I-gu (Kamul). We need not recount the way in which the pilgrim prevailed on the keepers of the first and fourth tower to let him proceed; nor is it necessary to recount the fervent prayers to Kwan-yin and his incessant invocation of the name of this divinity. Suffice it to say, he at last reached the confines of I-gu, and there halted. From this place he was summoned by the prince of Kao-chang (Turfan), who, after vainly attempting to keep him in his territory, remitted him to 'O-ki-ni, that is, Kara-sharh, from which he advanced to Kuché. Here the narrative in the pages following carries us on through the territory of Kuché to Bâlukâ, or Bai, in the Aksu district, from whence the pilgrim proceeds in a northerly direction across the Icy Mountains (Muzart) into the well-watered plains bordering on the Tsing Lake (Issyk-kul); he then proceeded along the fertile valley of the Su-yeh river (the Chu or Chui) to the town of Taras, and thence to Nujkend and Tâshkand.

It is not necessary to follow the pilgrim's route farther than this, as the particulars given in the translation following, and the notes thereto, will sufficiently set forth the line of his advance.

Hiuen Tsiang returned from his Indian travels across the Pâmîr and through Kashgår and the Khotan districts. He had been away from China since A.D. 629; he returned A.D. 645. He brought back with him—
INTRODUCTION.

1. Five hundred grains of relics belonging to the body (flesh) of Tathāgata.
2. A golden statue of Buddha on a transparent pedestal.
3. A statue of Buddha carved out of sandal-wood on a transparent pedestal. This figure is a copy of the statue which Udāyana, king of Kauśambī, had made.
4. A similar statue of sandal-wood, copy of the figure made after Buddha descended from the Trayastrimśas heaven.
5. A silver statue of Buddha on a transparent pedestal.
6. A golden statue of Buddha on a transparent pedestal.
7. A sandal-wood figure of Buddha on a transparent pedestal.
8. One hundred and twenty-four works (sūtras) of the Great Vehicle.
9. Other works, amounting in the whole to 520 fasciculi, carried by twenty-two horses.

There are many interesting particulars given in the "Life of Hiuen Tsiang" by Hwui-lih, which need not be named here, respecting the work of translation and the pilgrim’s death at the age of sixty-five. They will be fully set forth in the translation of that memoir, which it is hoped will follow the present volumes.

We will simply add, that of all the books translated by Hiuen Tsiang, there are still seventy-five included in the collection of the Chinese Tripitaka. The titles of these books may be seen in the catalogue prepared by Mr. Bun-yiu Nanjio, coll. 435, 436.

BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN CHINA.

Although it was known that there were copies of translations of the Buddhist Tripitaka in the great monasteries in China, no complete set of these books had been brought to England until the Japanese Government furnished us with the copy now in the India Office Library in the year
1875. Respecting these books I will extract one passage from the report which was drawn up by direction of the Secretary of State for India:—

"The value of the records of the 'Chinese pilgrims' who visited India in the early centuries of our era, and the account of whose travels is contained in this collection, is too well understood to need any remark. I regret that none of the books referred to by M. Stas. Julien, in his introduction to the 'Vie de Hiouen Thsang,' and which he thought might be found in Japan, are contained in this collection; but there is still some hope that they may be found in a separate form in some of the remote monasteries of that country, or more probably in China itself." 26

To that opinion I still adhere. I think that if searching inquiry were made at Honan-fu and its neighbourhood, we might learn something of books supposed to be lost. And my opinion is grounded on this circumstance, that efforts which have been made to get copies (in the ordinary way) of books found in the collection of the Tripiṭaka have failed, and reports furnished that such works are lost. M. Stas. Julien himself tells us that Dr. Morrison, senior, reported that the Si-yu-ki (the work here translated) could not be procured in China. And such is the listlessness of the Chinese literati about Buddhist books, and such the seclusion and isolation of many of the Buddhist establishments in China, that I believe books may still exist, or even original manuscripts, of which we know nothing at present. It would be strange if such were not the case, considering what has taken place in respect of fresh discoveries of fragments or entire copies of MSS. of our own sacred scriptures in remote monasteries of Christendom.

In conclusion, I desire to express the debt I owe, in the execution of this and other works, to the learning and

26 Beal's Catalogue, p. 1.

I should not have attempted to follow in his steps had his own translation of the Si-yu-ki been still procurable. But as it had long been out of print, and the demand for the book continued to be urgent, I have attempted to furnish an independent translation in English of the Chinese pilgrim's travels.

I am very largely indebted to James Burgess, LL.D., for assistance in carrying these volumes through the press. His close acquaintance with Buddhist archaeology and literature will give value to many of the notes which appear on the pages following, and his kind supervision of the text and preparation of the index attached to it demand my thanks and sincere acknowledgments.

I am also under great obligations to Colonel Yule, C.B., and to Dr. R. Rost, for their ever-ready help and advice, especially during my visits to the Library of the India Office.

I have not overlooked the remarks of various writers who have honoured me by noticing my little book (Buddhist Pilgrims), published in 1869. I venture, however, to hope that I have by this time established my claim to be regarded as an independent worker in this field of literature. I have not therefore quoted instances of agreement or disagreement with the writers referred to; in fact, I have purposely avoided doing so, as my object is not to write a chapter of grammar, but to contribute towards the history of a religion; but I have suffered no prejudice to interfere with the honesty of my work.

I shall now proceed to the translation of the travels of Fa-hian and Sung-yun, referring the student to the original edition of my Buddhist Pilgrims for many notes and explanations of the text, which want of space forbids me to reproduce in these volumes.
THE TRAVELS OF FA-HIAN.

BUDDHIST-COUNTRY-RECORDS.

By Fa-hian, the Sâkya of the Sung (Dynasty).

[DATE, 400 A.D.]

I. FA-HIAN, when formerly residing at Ch'ang-an,\(^1\) regretted the imperfect condition of the Vinaya pitaka. Whereupon, afterwards, in the second year of Hung-shi, the cyclic year being Chi-hai,\(^2\) he agreed with Hwui-king, Tao-ching, Hwui-yung, Hwui-wu, and others, to go to India for the purpose of seeking the rules and regulations (of the Vinaya).

Starting on their way from Ch'ang-an, they crossed the Lung (district) and reached the country of K'ien-kwei;\(^3\) here they rested during the rains. The season of the rains being over, going forward, they came to the country of Niu-t'an;\(^4\) crossing the Yang-lu hills, they reached Chang-yeh,\(^5\) a military station. Chang-yeh at this time was much disturbed, and the roadways were not open. The king\(^6\) of Chang-yeh being anxious, kept them there, himself entertaining them. Thus they met Chi-yen, Hwui-kin, Sang-shau, Pao-yun, Sang-kung, and others; pleased that they were like-minded, they kept the rainy

---

\(^1\) The former capital of the province of Shenrui, now called Si-gan-fu.

\(^2\) There is an error here of one year. It should be the cyclical characters Kang tae, i.e., A.D. 400-401 (Ch. Ed.)

\(^3\) This is the name of the prince who ruled the country. The capital town is, according to Klaproth, to the north-east of Kin, a hian town close to Lan-chau.

\(^4\) This is also the name of a prince, and not of a country. He ruled over a district called Ho-si, "the country to the west of the (Yellow) River" (Tangut).

\(^5\) Chang Yeh is still marked on the Chinese maps just within the north-west extremity of the Great Wall.

\(^6\) Called Tün-nieh, who died A.D. 401 (Ch. Ed.)
season together. The rainy season being over, they again pressed on to reach Tun-hwang. The fortifications here are perhaps 80 li in extent from east to west, and 40 li from north to south. They all stopped here a month and some days, when Fa-hian and others, five men in all, set out first, in the train of an official, and so again parted with Pao-yun and the rest. The prefect of Tun-hwang, called Li-ho, provided them with means to cross the desert (sand-river). In this desert are many evil demons and hot winds; when encountered, then all die without exception. There are no flying birds above, no roaming beasts below, but everywhere gazing as far as the eye can reach in search of the onward route, it would be impossible to know the way but for dead men's decaying bones, which show the direction.

Going on for seventeen days about 1500 li, they reached the country of Shen-shen.

II. This land is rugged and barren. The clothing of the common people is coarse, and like that of the Chinese people; only they differ in respect to the serge and felt. The king of this country honours the law (of Buddha). There are some 4000 priests, all of the Little Vehicle belief (learning). The laity and the Śramaṇas of this country wholly practise the religion of India, only some are refined and some coarse (in their observances). From this proceeding westward, the countries passed through are all alike in this respect, only the people differ in their language (Hu words). The professed disciples of Buddha, however, all use Indian books and the Indian language. Remaining here a month or more, again they went north-west for fifteen days and reached the country of Wu-i (Wu-ki?). The priests of Wu-i also are about 4000 men;

7 A frontier town of considerable military importance, 39° 30' N. lat., 95° E. long. (Prejevalsky's Map). This town was wrested from Tün-nieh in the third month of this year by Li Ho, or more properly Li Ko, who ruled as the "illustrious warrior king of the Liang dynasty" (Ch. Ed.)
8 The desert of Lop (Marco Polo).
9 The kingdom of Shen-shen or Leu-ian (conf. Richtofen in Prejevalsky's Külja, p. 144, and passim).
10 The pilgrims probably followed
all (belong to) the Little Vehicle (school of) learning; their religious rules are very precise (arranged methodically). When Śramaṇas of the Ts’in land arrive here, they are unprepared for the rules of the priests. Fa-hian obtaining the protection of Kung-siin, an official (kings’ang) of the Fu (family), remained here two months and some days. Then he returned to Pao-yun and the others.\footnote{11} In the end, because of the want of courtesy and propriety on the part of the Wu-i people, and because their treatment of their guests was very cool, Chi-yen, Hwui-kin, and Hwui-wu forthwith went back towards Kao-chang, in order to procure necessaries for the journey. Fa-hian and the others, grateful for the presents they received of Fu Kung-siin, forthwith journeyed to the south-west. On the road there were no dwellings or people. The sufferings of their journey on account of the difficulties of the road and the rivers (water) exceed human power of comparison. They were on the road a month and five days, and then managed to reach Khotan.\footnote{12}

III. This country is prosperous and rich (happy); the people are very wealthy, and all without exception honour the law (of Buddha). They use religious music for mutual entertainment. The body of priests number even several myriads, principally belonging to the Great Vehicle. They all have food provided for them (church-food, commons); the people live here and there. Before their house doors they raise little towers, the least about twenty feet high. There are priests’ houses for the entertainment of foreign priests and for providing them with what they need. The ruler of the country lodged Fa-hian and the rest in a saṅghārāma. The name of the saṅghārāma was

\footnote{11} It would appear from this that Fa-hian had reached Wu-i by the route of Lake Lop and the river Tarim; the others had gone from Tun-hwang by another route.

\footnote{12} Called in Tibetan works Li-yul, or the land of Li. It is possible that the word Li (which means bell-metal in Tibetan) may be connected with li in Lichchhavis. (Compare Spence Hardy, M. B., p. 282, and ante, p. v.)
Gômati. This is a temple of the Great Vehicle with three thousand priests, who assemble to eat at the sound of the ghantâ. On entering the dining-hall, their carriage is grave and demure, and they take their seats in regular order. All of them keep silence; there is no noise with their eating-bowls; when the attendants (pure men) give more food, they are not allowed to speak to one another, but only to make signs with the hand. Hwui-king, Tao-ching, Hwui-ta set out in advance towards the Kie-sha country, but Fa-hian and the rest, desiring to see the image-procession, remained three months and some days. In this country there are fourteen great saṅghārāmas, not counting the little ones. From the first day of the fourth month they sweep and water the thoroughfares within the city and decorate the streets. Above the city gate they stretch a great awning and use every kind of adornment. This is where the king and the queen and court ladies take their place. The Gômati priests, as they belong to the Great Vehicle, which is principally honoured by the king, first of all take their images in procession. About three or four li from the city they make a four-wheeled image-car about thirty feet high, in appearance like a moving palace, adorned with the seven precious substances. They fix upon it streamers of silk and canopy curtains. The figure is placed in the car 18 with two Bôdhisattvas as companions, whilst the Dêvas attend on them; all kinds of polished ornaments made of gold and silver hang suspended in the air. When the image is a hundred paces from the gate, the king takes off his royal cap, and changing his clothes for new ones, proceeds bare-footed, with flowers and incense in his hand, from the city, followed by his attendants. On meeting the image, he bows down his head and worships at its feet, scattering the flowers and burning the incense. On entering the city, the queen and court ladies from above the gate-tower

18 For some curious details about Simpson, J. R. A. S., N. S., vol. xvi. the Rath-yâtrâs, or car-festivals, see pp. 13 ff.
scatter about all kinds of flowers and throw them down in wild profusion. So splendid are the arrangements for worship.

The cars are all different, and each saṅghārāma has a day for its image-procession. They begin on the first day of the fourth month and go on to the fourteenth day, when the processions end. The processions ended, the king and queen then return to the palace.

Seven or eight li to the west of the city there is a saṅghārāma called the Royal-new-temple. It was eighty years in finishing, and only after three kings (reigns) was it completed. It is perhaps twenty chang in height (290 feet). It is adorned with carving and inlaid work, and covered with gold and silver. Above the roof all kinds of jewels combine to perfect it. Behind the tower there is a hall of Buddha, magnificent and very beautiful. The beams, pillars, doors, and window-frames are all gold-plated. Moreover, there are priests’ apartments, also very splendid, and elegantly adorned beyond power of description. The kings of the six countries east of the Ling give many of their most valuable precious jewels (to this monastery), being seldom used (for personal adornment), [or, they seldom give things of common use].

IV. After the image-procession of the fourth month, Sang-shau, one of the company, set out with a Tartar (Hu) pilgrim towards Ki-pin. Fa-hian and the others pressed on towards the Tseu-ho country. They were twenty-five days on the road, and then they arrived at this kingdom. The king of the country is earnest (in his piety). There are a thousand priests and more, principally belonging to the Great Vehicle. Having stopped here fifteen days, they then went south for four days and entered the Tsung-ling mountains. Arriving at Yu-hwui, they kept their religious rest; the religious rest being over, they

14 Kābul. 15 They probably followed the
16 Probably the Yārkand district. Yārkand river.
INTRODUCTION.

journeyed on twenty-five days to the Kie-sha country, where they rejoined Hwui-king and the rest.

V. The king of this country keeps the Pan-che-yue-sse. The Pan-che-yue-sse (Pančhavarsa, parishad) in Chinese words is "the great five-yearly assembly." At the time of the assembly he asks Śramaṇas from the four quarters, who come together like clouds. Being assembled, he decorates the priests' session place; he suspends silken flags and spreads out canopies; he makes gold and silver lotus flowers; he spreads silk behind the throne, and arranges the paraphernalia of the priests' seats. The king and the ministers offer their religious presents for one, two, or three months, generally during spring-time. The king-made assembly being over, he further exhorts his ministers to arrange their offerings; they then offer for one day, two days, three days, or five days. The offerings being finished, the king, taking from the chief officer of the embassy and from the great ministers of the country the horse he rides, with its saddle and bridle, mounts it, and then (taking) white taffeta, jewels of various kinds, and things required by the Śramaṇas, in union with his ministers he vows to give them all to the priests; having thus given them, they are redeemed at a price from the priests.

The country is hilly and cold; it produces no variety of grain; only wheat will ripen. After the priests have received their yearly dues the mornings become frosty; the king, therefore, every year induces the priests to make the wheat ripen, and after that to receive their yearly portion. There is a stone spitting-vessel in this country belonging to Buddha, of the same colour as his alms-dish. There is also a tooth of Buddha; the people of the country have built a stūpa on account of this tooth. There are a thousand priests and more, all belong-

17 For some remarks on this country see vol. ii. p. 298, n. 46. As stated on p. xiv., a people called Kossaloi are noticed by Ptolemy. But they seem to be Cushites. Concerning the Kossaloi or Kassai, as a very ancient people, see Mr. T. G. Pinches' remarks, J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xvi. p. 302.
ing to the Little Vehicle. From the mountains eastward the common people wear garments made of coarse stuff, as in the Ts'in country, but with respect to felt and serge they are different. The religious practices of the Śramaṇas are so various and have increased so, that they cannot be recorded. This country is in the middle of the Ts'ung-ling range; from the Ts'ung-ling onwards the plants, trees, and fruits are all different (from those before met with), except the bamboo, the an-shih-lau (pomegranate ?), and the sugar-cane.

VI. From this going onwards towards North India, after being a month on the road, we managed to cross Ts'ung-ling. In Ts'ung-ling there is snow both in winter and summer. Moreover there are poison-dragons, who when evil-purposed spit poison, winds, rain, snow, drifting sand, and gravel-stones; not one of ten thousand meeting these calamities, escapes. The people of that land are also called Snowy-mountain men (Tukhāras ?). Having crossed (Ts'ung)-ling, we arrive at North India. On entering the borders there is a little country called To-li,18 where there is again a society of priests all belonging to the Little Vehicle. There was formerly an Arhat in this country who by magic power took up to the Tuṣita heaven a skilful carver of wood to observe the length and breadth (size), the colour and look, of Maitrēya Bōdhisattva, that returning below he might carve wood and make his image (that is, carve a wooden image of him). First and last he made three ascents for observation, and at last finished the figure. Its length is 80 feet, and its upturned foot 8 feet; on fast-days it ever shines brightly. The kings of the countries round vie with each other in their religious offerings to it. Now, as of yore, it is in this country.19

VII. Keeping along (Ts'ung)-ling, they journeyed south-west for fifteen days. The road was difficult and broken,

18 Called the valley of Ta-li-lo by 19 For an account of this image Hiuen Tsiang, infra, p. 134, n. 37. see infra, p. 134.
with steep crags and precipices in the way. The mountain-side is simply a stone wall standing up 10,000 feet. Looking down, the sight is confused, and on going forward there is no sure foothold. Below is a river called Sin-t'u-ho. In old days men bored through the rocks to make a way, and spread out side-ladders, of which there are seven hundred (steps?) in all to pass. Having passed the ladders, we proceed by a hanging rope-bridge and cross the river. The two sides of the river are something less than 80 paces apart, as recorded by the Kiu-yi; but neither Chang-kin nor Kan-ying of the Han arrived here. The body of priests asked Fa-hian whether it was known when the eastward passage of the religion of Buddha began. Hian replied, "When I asked the men of that land, they all said there was an old tradition that from the time of setting up the image of Maitrêya Bôdhisattva, and afterwards, there were Śramaṇas from India who dispatched the dharma-vinaya beyond this river." The setting up of the image took place rather more than three hundred years after the Nirdvâna of Buddha, in the time of Ping-wang of the Chau family. According to this, we may say that the extension of the great doctrine began from this image. If, then, Maitrêya Mahâsattva be not the successor of Śâkya, who is there could cause the three gems to spread everywhere, and frontier men to understand the law? As we certainly know that the origin of the opening of the mysterious revolution is not man's work, so the dream of Ming Ti was from this also.

VIII. Crossing the river, we come to the country of Wu-chang. The country of Wu-chang commences North India. The language of Mid-India is used by all. Mid-India is what they call the middle country. The dress of the people, their food and drink, are also the same as in the middle country. The religion of Buddha is very flourishing. The places where the priests stop and lodge

20 A topographical description of the empire.
21 770 A.D.
22 Udyâna.
they call sanghârâmas. In all there are five hundred sang-
hârâmas; they belong to the Little Vehicle without excep-
tion. If a strange Bhikshu arrives here, they give him full
entertainment for three days; the three days being over, then
they bid him seek for himself a place to rest permanently.

Tradition says: When Buddha came to North India, he
then visited this country. Buddha left here as a bequest
the impression of his foot. The footprint is sometimes long
and sometimes short, according to the thoughtfulness of
a man’s heart: it is still so, even now. Moreover, the
drying-robe-stone in connection with the place where he
converted the wicked dragon still remains. The stone is
a chang and four-tenths high, and more than two chang
across. It is smooth on one side. Three of the pilgrims,
Hwui-king, Tao-ching, and Hwui-ta, went on ahead towards
Buddha's shadow and Nagarahâra. Fa-hian and the rest
stopped in this country during the rains; when over, they
went down south to the country of Su-ho-to.  

IX. In this country also the law of Buddha flourishes.
This is the place where, in old days, Sâkra, ruler of Dêvas,
made apparitionally the hawk and dove, in order to try Bôd-
hisattva, who cut off his flesh to ransom the dove. Buddha,
when he perfected wisdom, going about with his disciples,
spoke thus: "This is the place where, in a former birth,
I cut my flesh to ransom the dove." From this the people
of the country getting to know the fact, built a stûpa on
the spot, and adorned it with gold and silver.

X. From this, descending eastward, journeying for five
days, we arrive at the country of Gandhâra (Kien-to-wei).
This is the place which Dharmavardhana, the son of
Asoka, governed. Buddha also in this country, when he
was a Bôdhisattva, gave his eyes in charity for the sake
of a man. On this spot also they have raised a great
stûpa, adorned with silver and gold. The people of this
country mostly study the Little Vehicle.

XI. From this going east seven days, there is a country
called Chu-ch’a-shi-lo. Chu-ch’a-shi-lo in Chinese words is “cut-off head.” Buddha, when he was a Bôdhisattva, gave his head in charity to a man in this place, and hence comes the name. Again going eastwards for two days, we come to the place where he gave his body to feed the starving tiger. On these two spots again are built great stûpas, both adorned with every kind of precious jewel. The kings, ministers, and people of the neighbouring countries vie with one another in their offerings, scattering flowers and lighting lamps without intermission. These and the two stûpas before named the men of that district call “the four great stûpas.”

XII. From the country of Gandhâra going south for four days, we come to the country of Fo-lu-sha. Buddha in former days, whilst travelling with his disciples here and there, coming to this country, addressed Ánanda thus: “After my death (parinirvâna), a king of the country called Ki-ni-kia (Kanika or Kanishka) will raise on this spot a stûpa.” After Kanishka’s birth, he was going round on a tour of observation. At this time Śakra, king of Dêvas, wishing to open out his purpose of mind, took the form of a little shepherd-boy building by the roadside a tower. The king asked and said, “What are you doing?” Replying, he said, “Making a Buddha-tower.” The king said, “Very good.” On this the king built over the little boy’s tower another tower, in height 40 chang and more, adorned with all precious substances. Of all stûpas and temples seen by the travellers, none can compare with this for beauty of form and strength. Tradition says this is the highest of the towers in Jambudvipa. When the king had completed his tower, the little tower forthwith came out from the side on the south of the great tower more than three feet high.

The alms-bowl of Buddha is still in this country. Formerly a king of the Yue-chi, swelling with his army, came

---

24 Takshaśīla, vid. infra, p. 138. think the symbol to should be placed
25 Purushapura (Peshâwar). before Yue-chi; it would thus refer
26 This is a forced translation. I to the Great Yue-chi.
to attack this country, wishing to carry off Buddha's alms-bowl. Having subdued the country, the king of the Yue-chi, deeply reverencing the law of Buddha, wished to take the bowl and go; therefore he began his religious offerings. The offerings made to the three precious ones being finished, he then caparisoned a great elephant and placed the bowl on it. The elephant then fell to the ground and was unable to advance. Then he made a four-wheeled carriage on which the dish was placed; eight elephants were yoked to draw it, but were again unable to advance. The king then knew that the time of his bowl-relationship was not come. So filled with shame and regrets, he built on this place a stūpa and also a saṅghārāma; moreover, he left a guard to keep up every kind of religious offering.

There are perhaps 700 priests. At the approach of noon the priests bring out the alms-bowl, and with the Upāsakas make all kinds of offerings to it; they then eat their mid-day meal. At even, when they burn incense, they again do so. It is capable of holding two pecks and more. It is of mixed colour, but yet chiefly black. The four divisions are quite clear, each of them being about two-tenths thick. It is glistening and bright. Poor people with few flowers cast into it, fill it; but some very rich people, wishful with many flowers to make their offerings, though they present a hundred thousand myriad of pecks, yet in the end fail to fill it. Pao-yun and Sang-king only made their offerings to the alms-dish of Buddha and then went back. Hwui-king, Hwui-ta, and Tao-ching had previously gone on to the Nagarahāra country to offer their common worship to the Buddha-shadow, his tooth and skull-bone. Hwui-king fell sick, and Tao-ching remained to look after him. Hwui-ta alone went back to Fo-lu-sha, where he met with the others, and then Hwui-ta, Pao-yun, and Sang-king returned together to the Ts'in land. Hwui-ying, dwelling in the temple of Buddha's alms-bowl, died there.
INTRODUCTION.

From this Fa-hian went on alone to the place of Buddha's skull-bone.

XIII. Going west 16 yojanas, (Fa-hian) reached the country of Na-kie (Nagarahâra). On the borders, in the city of Hi-lo,27 is the vihâra of the skull-bone of Buddha; it is gilded throughout and adorned with the seven precious substances.

The king of the country profoundly reverences the skull-bone. Fearing lest some one should steal it, he appoints eight men of the first families of the country, each man having a seal to seal (the door) for its safe keeping. In the morning, the eight men having come, each one inspects his seal, and then they open the door. The door being opened, using scented water, they wash their hands and bring out the skull-bone of Buddha. They place it outside the vihâra on a high throne; taking a circular stand of the seven precious substances, the stand is placed below (it), and a glass bell as a cover over it. All these are adorned with pearls and gems. The bone is of a yellowish-white colour, four inches across and raised in the middle. Each day after its exit men of the vihâra at once mount a high tower, beat a large drum, blow the conch, and sound the cymbal. Hearing these, the king goes to the vihâra to offer flowers and incense. The offerings finished, each one in order puts it on his head (worships it) and departs. Entering by the east door and leaving by the west, the king every morning thus offers and worships, after which he attends to state affairs. Householders and elder-men also first offer worship and then attend to family affairs. Every day thus begins, without neglect from idleness. The offerings being all done, they take back the skull-bone. In the vihâra there is a final-emancipation tower (a tower shaped like a dagaba) which opens and shuts, made of the seven precious substances, more than five feet high, to receive it.

Before the gate of the vihâra every morning regularly,

27 Hidda.
there are sellers of flowers and incense; all who wish to make offerings may buy of every sort. The kings of the countries round also regularly send deputies to make offerings. The site of the vihāra is forty paces square. Though heaven should quake and the earth open, this spot would not move.

Going from this one yōjana north, we come to the capital of Nagarahāra. This is the place where Bōdhisatṭva, in one of his births, gave money in exchange for five flowers to offer to Dipāṅkara Buddha. In the city there is, moreover, a Buddha-tooth tower, to which religious offerings are made in the same way as to the skull-bone.

North-east of the city one yōjana we come to the opening of a valley in which is Buddha’s religious staff, where they have built a vihāra for making offerings to it. The staff is made of ox-head sandal-wood; its length is a chang and six or seven tenths; it is enclosed in a wooden sheath, from which a hundred or a thousand men could not move it. Entering the valley and going west four days, there is the vihāra of Buddha’s saṅghāṭī, to which they make religious offerings. When there is a drought in that country, the magistrates and people of the country, coming together, bring out the robe for worship and offerings, then Heaven gives abundant rain. Half a yōjana to the south of the city of Nagarahāra there is a cavern (stone dwelling); it is on the south-west side of a high mountain. Buddha left his shadow here. At a distance of ten paces or so we see it, like the true form of Buddha, of a gold colour, with the marks and signs perfectly clear and shining. On going nearer to it or farther off, it becomes less and less like the reality. The kings of the bordering countries have sent able artists to copy the likeness, but they have not been able (to do so). Moreover, those people have a tradition according to which the

---

28 These flowers are generally represented as growing on one stalk (Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. 1.)
thousand Buddhas will here leave their shadows. About five hundred paces to the west of the shadow, when Buddha was alone, he cut his hair and pared his nails. Then Buddha himself with his disciples together built a tower about seven or eight *chang* high, as a model for all towers of the future. It still exists. Beside it is a temple; in the temple are 700 priests or so. In this district there are as many as a thousand towers in honour of Arhats and Pratyêka Buddhas.

XIV. After remaining here during two months of winter, Fa-hian and two companions went south across the Little Snowy Mountains. The Snowy Mountains, both in summer and winter, are covered (*heaped*) with snow. On the north side of the mountains, in the shade, excessive cold came on suddenly, and all the men were struck mute with dread; Hwui-king alone was unable to proceed onwards. The white froth came from his mouth as he addressed Fa-hian and said, "I too have no power of life left; but whilst there is opportunity, do you press on, lest you all perish." Thus he died. Fa-hian, caressing him, exclaimed in piteous voice, "Our purpose was not to produce fortune!" Submitting, he again exerted himself, and pressing forward, they so crossed the range; on the south side they reached the Lo-i country. In this vicinity there are 3000 priests, belonging both to the Great and Little Vehicle. Here they kept the rainy season. The season past, descending south and journeying for ten days, they reached the Po-na country, where there are also some 3000 priests or more, all belonging to the Little Vehicle. From this journeying eastward for three days, they again crossed the Sin-tu river. Both sides of it are now level.

XV. The other side of the river there is a country named Pi-t'u. The law of Buddha is very flourishing; they belong both to the Great and Little Vehicle. When they

---

29 Or, to be a fortunate one.  
30 Rohi, i.e., Afghanistan.  
31 Bannu.  
32 Bhida.
saw pilgrims from China arrive, they were much affected and spoke thus, "How is it that men from the frontiers are able to know the religion of family-renunciation and come from far to seek the law of Buddha?" They liberally provided necessary entertainment according to the rules of religion.

XVI. Going south-east from this somewhat less than 80 yójanas, we passed very many temples one after another, with some myriad of priests in them. Having passed these places, we arrived at a certain country. This country is called Mo-tu-lo. Once more we followed the Pu-na river. On the sides of the river, both right and left, are twenty saṅghārāmas, with perhaps 3000 priests. The law of Buddha is progressing and flourishing. Beyond the deserts are the countries of Western India. The kings of these countries are all firm believers in the law of Buddha. They remove their eaps of state when they make offerings to the priests. The members of the royal household and the chief ministers personally direct the food-giving; when the distribution of food is over, they spread a carpet on the ground opposite the chief seat (the president’s seat) and sit down before it. They dare not sit on couches in the presence of the priests. The rules relating to the almsgiving of kings have been handed down from the time of Buddha till now. Southward from this is the so-called middle-country (Mādhyadeśa). The climate of this country is warm and equable, without frost or snow. The people are very well off, without poll-tax or official restrictions. Only those who till the royal lands return a portion of profit of the land. If they desire to go, they go; if they like to stop, they stop. The kings govern without corporal punishment; criminals are fined, according to circumstances, lightly or heavily. Even in cases of repeated rebellion they only cut off the right hand. The king’s personal attendants, who guard him on the right and left, have fixed salaries. Through-

33 Mathurā. 34 Jumnā or Yamunā river.
out the country the people kill no living thing nor drink wine, nor do they eat garlic or onions, with the exception of Chandálas only. The Chandálas are named "evil men" and dwell apart from others; if they enter a town or market, they sound a piece of wood in order to separate themselves; then men, knowing who they are, avoid coming in contact with them. In this country they do not keep swine nor fowls, and do not deal in cattle; they have no shambles or wine-shops in their market-places. In selling they use cowrie shells. The Chandálas only hunt and sell flesh. Down from the time of Buddha's Nirváña, the kings of these countries, the chief men and householders, have raised viháras for the priests, and provided for their support by bestowing on them fields, houses, and gardens, with men and oxen. Engraved title-deeds were prepared and handed down from one reign to another; no one has ventured to withdraw them, so that till now there has been no interruption. All the resident priests having chambers (in these viháras) have their beds, mats, food, drink, and clothes provided without stint; in all places this is the case. The priests ever engage themselves in doing meritorious works for the purpose of religious advancement (karma—building up their religious character), or in reciting the scriptures, or in meditation. When a strange priest arrives, the senior priests go out to meet him, carrying for him his clothes and alms-bowl. They offer him water for washing his feet and oil for rubbing them; they provide untimely (vikála) food. Having rested awhile, they again ask him as to his seniority in the priesthood, and according to this they give him a chamber and sleeping materials, arranging everything according to the dharma. In places where priests reside they make towers in honour of Sáriputra, of Mudgalaputra, of Ânanda, also in honour of the Abhidharma, Vinaya, and Sutra. During a month after the season of rest the most pious families urge a collection for an offering to the priests; they prepare an untimely meal
for them, and the priests in a great assembly preach the law. The preaching over, they offer to Śāriputra’s tower all kinds of scents and flowers; through the night they burn lamps provided by different persons. Śāriputra originally was a Brāhmaṇ; on a certain occasion he went to Buddha and requested ordination. The great Mudgala and the great Kāśyapa did likewise. The Bhikṣuṇīs principally honour the tower of Ānanda, because it was Ānanda who requested the lord of the world to let women take orders; Śrāmaṇeras mostly offer to Rāhula; the masters of the Abhidharma offer to the Abhidharma; the masters of the Vinaya offer to the Vinaya. Every year there is one offering, each according to his own day. Men attached to the Mahāyāna offer to Prajñā-pāramitā, Mañjuśrī, and Avalokiteśvara. When the priests have received their yearly dues, then the chief men and householders and Brāhmaṇs bring every kind of robe and other things needed by the priests to offer them; the priests also make offerings one to another. Down from the time of Buddha’s death the rules of conduct for the holy priesthood have been (thus) handed down without interruption.

After crossing the Indus, the distance to the Southern Sea of South India is from four to five myriads of li; the land is level throughout, without great mountains or valleys, but still there are rivers.

XVII. South-east from this, after going 18 yojanas, there is a country called Samkāśya. This is the place where Buddha descended after going up to the Trayāstrimśas heaven to preach the law during three months for his mother’s benefit. When Buddha went up to the Trayāstrimśas heaven by the exercise of his miraculous power (spiritual power of miracle), he contrived that his disciples should not know (of his proceeding). Seven days before the completion (of the three months) he broke the spell, so that Aniruddha, using his divine sight, beheld the Lord of the world afar, and forthwith addressed the venerable (Ārya) Mahāmudgalaputra, “You can go and salute the
Lord of the world." Mudgalyāyana accordingly went, and bowing down, worshipped the foot and exchanged friendly greetings. The friendly meeting over, Buddha said to Mudgalyāyana, "After seven days are over I shall descend to Jambudvipa." Mudgalyāyana then returned. On this the great kings of the eight kingdoms, the ministers and people, not having seen Buddha for a long time, were all desirous to meet him. They assembled like clouds in this country to meet the Lord of the world. At this time Utpalā Bhikshunī thought thus with herself: "To-day the kings of the countries and the ministers and people are going to worship and meet Buddha. I am but a woman; how can I get to see him first?" Buddha forthwith by his miraculous power made her, by transformation, into a holy Chakravarti king, and as such she was the very first to worship him. Buddha being now about to come down from the Trayastriṃśas heaven, there appeared a threefold precious ladder. The middle ladder was made of the seven precious substances, standing above which Buddha began to descend. Then the king of the Brahmā heavens (Brahmakāyikas) caused a silver ladder to appear, on which he took his place on Buddha's right hand, holding a white chaurī. Then Śakra, king of Dēvas, caused a bright golden ladder to appear, on which he took his place on the left, holding in his hand a precious parasol. Innumerable Dēvas were in attendance whilst Buddha descended. After he had come down, the three ladders disappeared in the earth, except seven steps, which remained visible. In after times Aśoka, wishing to discover the utmost depths to which these ladders went, employed men to dig down and examine into it. They went on digging till they came to the yellow spring (the earth's foundation), but yet had not come to the bottom. The king, deriving from this an increase of faith and reverence, forthwith built over the ladders a vihāra, and facing the middle flight he placed a standing figure (of Buddha) sixteen feet high. Behind the vihāra he erected a stone pillar
thirty cubits high, and on the top placed the figure of a lion. Within the pillar on the four sides are figures of Buddha; both within and without it is shining and bright as glass. It happened once that some heretical doctors had a contention with the Śramaṇas respecting this as a place of residence. Then the argument of the Śramaṇas failing, they all agreed to the following compact: "If this place properly belongs to the Śramaṇas, then there will be some supernatural proof given of it." Immediately on this the lion on the top of the pillar uttered a loud roar. Witnessing this testimony, the unbelievers, abashed, withdrew from the dispute and submitted.

The body of Buddha, in consequence of his having partaken of divine food during three months, emitted a divine fragrance, unlike that of men. Immediately after his descent he bathed himself. Men of after ages erected in this place a bath-house, which yet remains. There is also a tower erected on the spot where the Bhikshuni Utpalā was the first to adore Buddha. There is also a tower on the spot where Buddha when in the world cut his hair and his nails, and also on the following spots, viz., where the three former Buddhas, as well as Śākyamuni Buddha, sat down, and also where they walked for exercise, and also where there are certain marks and impressions of the different Buddhas. These towers still remain. There is also one erected where Brahmā, Śakra, and the Dévas attended Buddha when he came down from heaven. There are perhaps a thousand male and female disciples who have their meals in common. They belong promiscuously to the systems of the Great and Little Vehicle, and dwell together. A white-eared dragon is the patron of this body of priests. He causes fertilising and seasonable showers of rain to fall within their country, and preserves it from plagues and calamities, and so causes the priesthood to dwell in security. The priests, in gratitude for these favours, have erected a dragon-chapel, and within it placed a resting-place (seat) for his accommodation.
Moreover, they make special contributions, in the shape of religious offerings, to provide the dragon with food. The body of priests every day select from their midst three men to go and take their meal in this chapel. At the end of each season of rain, the dragon suddenly assumes the form of a little serpent, both of whose ears are edged with white. The body of priests, recognising him, place in the midst of his lair a copper vessel full of cream; and then, from the highest to the lowest, they walk past him in procession as if to pay him greeting all round. He then suddenly disappears. He makes his appearance once every year. This country is very productive: the people are very prosperous, and exceedingly rich beyond comparison. Men of all countries coming here are well taken care of and obtain what they require. Fifty ydjanas to the north of this temple there is a temple called "Fire Limit," which is the name of an evil spirit. Buddha himself converted this evil spirit, whereupon men in after ages raised a vihāra on the spot. At the time of the dedication of the vihāra an Arhat spilt some of the sacred water, poured on his hands, and let it fall on the earth, and the place where it fell is still visible; though they have often swept the place to remove the mark, yet it still remains and cannot be destroyed. There is, besides, in this place a tower of Buddha which a benevolent spirit ever keeps clean and waters, and which (was built) without a human architect. There was once an heretical king who said, "Since you can do this, I will bring a great army and quarter it here, which shall accumulate much filth and refuse. Will you be able to clear all this away, I wonder?" The spirit immediately caused a great tempest to rise and blow over the place, as a proof that he could do it. In this district there are a hundred small towers; a man might pass the day in trying to count them without succeeding. If any one is very anxious to discover the right number, then he places a man by the side of each tower and afterwards numbers the men;
but, even in this case, it can never be known how many or how few men will be required. There is also a sāṅghārāma here containing about 600 or 700 priests. In this is a place where a Pratyēka Buddha ate (the fruit); the spot of ground where he died is just in size like a chariot-wheel; all the ground around it is covered with grass, but this spot produces none. The ground also where he dried his clothes is bare of vegetation; the traces of the impress of the clothes remain to this day.

XVIII. Fa-Hian resided in the dragon vihāra during the summer rest. After this was over, going south-east seven yōjanas, he arrived at the city of Ki-jou-i (Kanauj). This city borders on the Ganges. There are two sāṅghārāmas here, both belonging to the system of the Little Vehicle. Going from the city six or seven li in a westerly direction, on the north bank of the river Ganges, is the place where Buddha preached for the good of his disciples. Tradition says that he preached on impermanency and sorrow, and also on the body being like a bubble and foam. On this spot they have raised a tower, which still remains. Crossing the Ganges and going south three yōjanas, we arrive at a forest called A-lo. Here also Buddha preached the law. They have raised towers on this spot, and also where he sat down and walked for exercise.

XIX. Going south-east from this place ten yōjanas, we arrive at the great country of Sha-chi. Leaving the southern gate of the capital city, on the east side of the road is a place where Buddha once dwelt. Whilst here he bit (a piece from) the willow stick and fixed it in the earth; immediately it grew up seven feet high, neither more or less. The unbelievers and Brāhmans, filled with jealousy, cut it down and scattered the leaves far and wide, but yet it always sprung up again in the same place as before. Here also they raised towers on places where the four Buddhas walked for exercise and sat down. The ruins still exist.

35 Probably the text is corrupt. euphemism for "died." It may be There is a common phrase, "to so in the present instance. drink the draught of sweet dew," a
XX. Going eight yójanas southwards from this place, we arrive at the country of Kiú-sa-lo (Kósala) and its chief town She-wei (Śrāvasti). There are very few inhabitants in this city, altogether perhaps about 200 families. This is the city which King Prasènajít governed. Towers have been built in after times on the site of the ruined vihára of Maháprajápati, also on the foundations (of the house) of the lord Sudatta, also on the spot where the Ángulimálya was burnt, who was converted and entered nirváña; all these towers are erected in the city. The unbelieving Bráhmanas, from jealousy, desired to destroy these various buildings, but on attempting to do so, the heavens thundered and the lightnings flashed, so that they were unable to carry out their design. Leaving the city by the south gate and proceeding 1200 paces on the road, on the west side of it is the place where the lord Sudatta built a vihára. This chapel opens towards the east. The principal door is flanked by two side chambers, in front of which stand two stone pillars; on the top of the left-hand one is the figure of a wheel, and on the right-hand one the image of an ox. The clear water of the tanks, the luxuriant groves, and numberless flowers of variegated hues combine to produce the picture of what is called a Jétavana vihára. When Buddha ascended into the Trayastrimshas heavens to preach for the sake of his mother, after ninety days’ absence, King Prasènajít desiring to see him again, carved out of the sandal-wood called Góśirshachandana (ox-head) an image of the Buddha and placed it on Buddha’s throne. When Buddha returned and entered the vihára, the image, immediately quitting its place, went forward to meet him. On this Buddha addressed these words to it: “Return, I pray you, to your seat. After my Nirváña you will be the model from which my followers (four schools or classes) shall carve their images.” On this the figure returned to its seat. This image, as it was the very first made of all the figures of Buddha, is the one which all subsequent ages have fol-
followed as a model. Buddha then removed and dwelt in a
small vihāra on the south side of the greater one, in a
place quite separated from that occupied by the image, and
about twenty paces from it. The Jētavana vihāra origi-
nally had seven stages. The monarchs of the surrounding
countries and the people vied with each other in presenting
religious offerings at this spot. They decked the place with
flags and silken canopies; they offered flowers and burnt
incense, whilst the lamps shone continually from evening
till daylight with unfading splendour. A rat taking in
his mouth the wick of a lamp caused it to set fire to one
of the hanging canopies, and this resulted in a general
conflagration and the entire destruction of the seven storeys
of the vihāra. The kings and people of the surrounding
countries were deeply grieved, thinking that the sandal-
wood figure had also been consumed. Four or five days
afterwards, on opening the door of the eastern little chapel,
they were surprised to behold the original figure there.
The people were filled with joy, and they agreed to rebuild
the chapel. Having completed two stages, they removed
the image from its new situation back to where it was
before. When Fa-Hian and To-Ching arrived at this
chapel of the Jētavana, they reflected that this was the
spot in which the Lord of men had passed twenty-five
years of his life; they themselves, at the risk of their lives,
were now dwelling amongst foreigners; of those who had
with like purpose travelled through a succession of coun-
tries with them, some had returned home, some were
dead; and now, gazing on the place where Buddha once
dwelt but was no longer to be seen, their hearts were
affected with very lively regret. Whereupon the priests
belonging to that community came forward and addressed
(Fa)-Hian and To-(Ching) thus: “From what country have
you come?” To which they replied, “We come from the
land of Han.” Then those priests, in astonishment, ex-
claimed, “Wonderful! to think that men from the frontiers
of the earth should come so far as this from a desire to
INTRODUCTION.

search for the law;’’ and then talking between themselves they said, “Our various superiors and brethren, who have succeeded one another in this place from the earliest time till now, have none of them seen men of Han come so far as this before.”

Four li to the north-west of the vihāra is a copse called “Recovered-sight.” Originally there were 500 blind men dwelling on this spot beside the chapel. On one occasion Buddha declared the law on their account; after listening to his sermon they immediately recovered their sight. The blind men, overcome with joy, drove their staves into the earth and fell down on their faces in adoration. The staves forthwith took root and grew up to be great trees. The people, from a feeling of reverence, did not presume to cut them down, and so they grew and formed a grove, to which this name of “Recovered-sight” was given. The priests of the chapel of the Jétavana resort in great numbers to this shady copse to meditate after their mid-day meal. Six or seven li to the north-east of the Jétavana vihāra is the site of the chapel which Mother Viśākhā built, and invited Buddha and the priests to occupy. The ruins are still there. The great garden enclosure of the Jétavana vihāra has two gates, one opening towards the east, the other towards the north. This garden is the plot of ground which the noble Sudatta bought after covering it with gold coins. The chapel is in the middle of it; it was here Buddha resided for a very long time, and expounded the law for the salvation of men. Towers have been erected on the various spots where he walked for exercise or sat down. These towers have all distinctive names given them, as, for example, the place where Buddha was accused of murdering (the harlot) Sundari. Leaving the Jétavana


[37] This chapel of Mother Viśākhā is placed by Cunningham south-east from the Jétavana (Arch. Surv., vol. i. p. 345, n.). The text may be wrong.

[38] See vol. ii. p. 7.
by the eastern gate, and going north seventy paces, on the west side of the road is the place where Buddha formerly held a discussion with the followers of the ninety-six heretical schools. The king of the country, the chief ministers, the landowners and people, all came in great numbers to hear him. At this time a woman who was an unbeliever, called Chiṅchimanā, being filled with jealousy, gathered up her clothes in a heap round her person so as to appear with child, and then accused Buddha in a meeting of priests of unrighteous conduct. On this Śakra, the king of Dévas, taking the appearance of a white mouse, came and gnawed through her sash; on this the whole fell down, and then the earth opened and she herself went down alive into hell. Here also is the place where Dévadatta, having poisoned his nails for the purpose of destroying Buddha, went down alive into hell. Men in after times noted these various places for recognition. Where the discussion took place they raised a chapel more than six chang (70 feet) high, with a sitting figure of Buddha in it. To the east of the road is a temple (Dévālaya) belonging to the heretics, which is named “Shadow-covered.” It is opposite the vihāra erected on the place of the discussion, and of the same height. It has received the name of “Shadow-covered” because when the sun is in the west, the shadow of the vihāra of the Lord of the World covers the temple of the heretics; but when the sun is in the east, the shadow of the latter is bent to the north, and does not overshadow the chapel of Buddha. The heretics constantly appointed persons to take care of their temple, to sweep and water it, to burn incense and light lamps for religious worship; towards the approach of morning their lamps disappeared, and were discovered in the middle of the Buddhist chapel. On this the Brāhmaṇas, being angry, said, “These Śramaṇas take our lamps for their own religious worship;” whereupon the Brāhmaṇas set a night-watch, and then they saw their own gods take the lamps and move round Buddha's

chapel three times, after which they offered the lamps and suddenly disappeared. On this the Brâhmans, recognising the greatness of Buddha's spiritual power, forsook their families and became his disciples. Tradition says that about the time when these things happened there were ninety saṅghārāmas surrounding the Jētavana chapel, all of which, with one exception, were occupied by priests. In this country of Mid-India there are ninety-six heretical sects, all of whom allow the reality of worldly phenomena. Each sect has its disciples, who beg their food, but do not carry alms-dishes. They also piously build hospices by the side of solitary roads for the shelter of travellers, where they may rest, sleep, eat and drink, and are supplied with all necessaries. The followers of Buddha, also, as they pass to and fro, are entertained by them, only different arrangements are made for their convenience. Dēvadatta also has a body of disciples still existing; they pay religious reverence to the three past Buddhas, but not to Sākyamuni Buddha.\(^{41}\)

Four li to the south-east of Śrâvasti is the place where the Lord of men stood by the side of the road when King Virûdhaka\(^{42}\) (Liu-li) wished to destroy the country of the Śâkya family; on this spot there is a tower built. Fifty li to the west of the city we arrive at a town called To-wai;\(^{43}\) this was the birthplace of Kâśyapa Buddha. Towers are erected on the spot where he had an interview with his father and also where he entered Nîrvanâ. A great tower has also been erected over the relics of the entire body of Kâśyapa Tathâgata.

XXI. Leaving the city of Śrâvasti, and going twelve yōjanas to the south-east, we arrived at a town called Nâpi-ka. This is the birthplace of Krakuchchanda\(^{44}\) Buddha. There are towers erected on the spots where the interview between the father and son took place, and also where he

---

\(^{41}\) This is an important notice, as it indicates the character of Devadatta's position with reference to Buddha.

\(^{42}\) See vol. ii. p. 11.

\(^{43}\) Tadwa, see vol. ii. p. 13.

\(^{44}\) See vol. ii. p. 18.
entered Nirvāṇa. Going north from this place less than one yojana, we arrive at a town where Kanakamuni Buddha was born;⁴⁵ there are towers also erected here over similar places as the last.

XXII. Going eastward from this less than a yojana, we arrive at the city of Kapilavastu. In this city there is neither king nor people; it is like a great desert.⁴⁶ There is simply a congregation of priests and about ten families of lay people. On the site of the ruined palace of Suddhodana there is a picture of the prince’s mother, whilst the prince, riding on a white elephant, is entering the womb. Towers have been erected on the following spots: where the royal prince left the city by the eastern gate; where he saw the sick man; and where he caused his chariot to turn and take him back to his palace. There are also towers erected on the following spots: at the place where Asita observed the marks of the royal prince; where Ānanda and the others struck the elephant, drew it out of the way, and hurled it; where the arrow, going south-east 30 li, entered the earth, from which bubbled up a fountain of water, which in after generations was used as a well for travellers to drink at; also on the spot where Buddha, after arriving at supreme wisdom, met his father; where the 500 Śākyas, having embraced the faith, paid reverence to Upāli; at the place where the earth shook six times; at the place where Buddha expounded the law on behalf of all the Dēvas, whilst the four heavenly kings guarded the four gates of the hall, so that his father could not enter: at the place where Mahāprajāpati presented Buddha with a saṅghatī whilst he was sitting under a Nyagrodha tree with his face to the east, which tree still exists; at the place where Virādhaka-rāja killed the offspring of the Śākyas who had previously entered on the path Srātāpanna. All these towers are still in existence.⁴⁷ A few li to the north-

⁴⁶ Vol. ii. p. 14; and conf. Fergusson’s Archaeology in India, p. 110.
⁴⁷ Compare the accounts given by Huen Tsiang, Book vi.
INTRODUCTION.

east of the city is the royal field where the prince, sitting underneath a tree, watched a ploughing-match. Fifty li to the east of the city is the royal garden called Lumbinī; it was here the queen entered the bath to wash herself, and, having come out on the northern side, advanced twenty paces, and then holding a branch of the tree in her hand, as she looked to the east, brought forth the prince. When born he walked seven steps; two dragon-kings washed the prince's body,—the place where this occurred was afterwards converted into a well, and here, as likewise at the pool, the water of which came down from above for washing (the child), the priests draw their drinking water. All the Buddhas have four places universally determined for them:—(1.) The place for arriving at supreme wisdom; (2.) The place for turning the wheel of the law; (3.) The place for expounding the true principles of the law and refuting the heretics; (4.) The place for descending to earth after going into the Trayāstrimśas heaven to explain the law to their mothers. Other places are chosen according to existing circumstances. The country of Kapilavastu is now a great desert; you seldom meet any people on the roads for fear of the white elephants and the lions. It is impossible to travel negligently. Going east five yōjanas from the place where Buddha was born, there is a country called Lān-mo (Rāmagrāma).48

XXIII. The king of this country obtained one share of the relics of Buddha's body. On his return home he built a tower, which is the same as the tower of Rāmagrāma. By the side of it is a tank in which lives a dragon, who constantly guards and protects the tower and worships there morning and night. When King Aśoka was living he wished to destroy the eight towers and to build eighty-four thousand others. Having destroyed seven, he next proceeded to treat this one in the same way.49 The dragon therefore assumed a body and conducted the king within

his abode, and having shown him all the vessels and appliances he used in his religious services, he addressed the king and said: "If you can worship better than this, then you may destroy the tower. Let me take you out; I will have no quarrel with you." King Asoka, knowing that these vessels were of no human workmanship, immediately returned to his home. This place having become desert, there was no one either to water it or sweep, but ever and anon a herd of elephants carrying water in their trunks piously watered the ground, and also brought all sorts of flowers and perfumes to pay religious worship at the tower. Some pilgrims from different countries used to come here to worship at the tower. On one occasion some of these met the elephants, and being much frightened, concealed themselves amongst the trees. Seeing the elephants perform their service according to the law, they were greatly affected. They grieved to think that there was no temple here or priests to perform religious service, so that the very elephants had to water and sweep. On this they gave up the great precepts and took upon them the duties of Srâmaneras. They began to pluck up the brushwood and level the ground, and arrange the place so that it became neat and clean. They urged the king of the country to help make residences for the priests. Moreover, they built a temple in which priests still reside. These things occurred recently, since which there has been a regular succession (of priests), only the superior of the temple has always been a Srâmanera. Three yojanas east of this place is the spot where the royal prince dismissed his charioteer Chandaka and the royal horse, previous to their return. Here also is erected a tower.

XXIV. Going eastward from this place four yojanas, we arrive at the Ashes-tower. Here also is a saṅghārāma. Again going twelve yojanas eastward, we arrive at the town of Kuśinagara. To the north of this town, where the Lord

of the World, lying by the side of the Hiranyavatī river, with his head to the north and a sal tree on either side of him, entered Nirvāṇa; also in the place where Subhadrā was converted, the very last of all his disciples; also where for seven days they paid reverence to the Lord of the World lying in his golden coffin; also where Vajrapāṇi threw down his golden mace, and where the eight kings divided the relics; in each of the above places towers have been raised and sāṅghārāmās built, which still exist. In this city also there are but few inhabitants; such families as there are, are connected with the resident congregation of priests. Going south-east twelve yojanas from this place, we arrive at the spot where the Lichchhavis, desiring to follow Buddha to the scene of his Nirvāṇa, were forbidden to do so. On account of their affection for Buddha they were unwilling to go back, on which Buddha caused to appear between them and him a great and deeply-scraped river, which they could not cross. He then left with them his alms-bowl as a memorial, and exhorted them to return to their houses. On this they went back and erected a stone pillar, on which this account is engraved.

XXV. From this going five yojanas eastward, we arrive at the country of Vaisālī. To the north of the city of Vaisālī there is the vihāra of the great forest, which has a two-storied tower. This chapel was once occupied by Buddha. Here also is the tower which was built over half the body of Ānanda. Within this city dwelt the lady Āmrāpāli, (who

34. Or does this refer to the Mallas throwing down their maces (hammers)?
35. Laidlay has by mistake translated the French S.W. instead of S.E. But the French editors have also mistranslated the distance, which is twelve yojanas, and not twenty. We have thus nineteen yojanas between Kuśinagara (Kasia) and Vaisālī (Besarh), which is as nearly correct as possible.
36. Vaisālī, a very famous city in the Buddhist records. Cunningham identifies it with the present Besarh, twenty miles north of Haji-pūr.
37. This chapel was situated in the neighbourhood of the present village of Bakhra, about two miles N.N.W. of Besarh. It is alluded to in the Singhalese records as the Mahāvane Vihāro. From Burnouf we find it was built by the side of a tank known as the Markaṭahêrā, or Monkey tank (Intro. Buddh. Indien, p. 74), (Man. Bud., p. 356).
built) a tower for Buddha; the ruins still exist. Three li to the south of the city, on the west side of the road, is the garden which the lady Âmrapâli gave to Buddha as a resting-place. When Buddha was about to enter Nirvâna, accompanied by his disciples, he left Vaiśāli by the western gate, and turning his body to the right, he beheld the city and thus addressed his followers: “In this place I have performed the last religious act of my earthly career.” Men afterwards raised a tower on this spot. Three li to the north-west of the city is a tower called “the tower of the deposited bows and clubs.” The origin of this name was as follows:—On one of the upper streams of the Ganges there was a certain country ruled by a king. One of his concubines gave birth to an unformed fœtus, whereupon the queen being jealous, said, “Your conception is one of bad omen.” So they closed it up in a box of wood and cast it into the Ganges. Lower down the stream there was another king, who, taking a tour of observation, caught sight of the wooden box floating on the stream. On bringing it to shore and opening it, he found inside a thousand children very fair, well formed, and most unique. The king hereupon took them and brought them up. When they grew up they turned out to be very brave and warlike, and were victorious over all whom they went to attack. In process of time they marched against the kingdom of the monarch, their father, at which he was filled with consternation. On this his concubine asked the king why he was so terrified; to whom he replied, “The king of that country has a thousand sons, brave and warlike beyond compare, and they are coming to attack my country; this is why I am alarmed.” To this the concubine replied, “Fear not! but erect on the east of the city a high tower, and when the rebels come, place me on it; I will restrain them.” The king did so, and when the invaders arrived, the concubine addressed them

---

28 Cf. Fo-sêo, v. 1930 and n. 3.
29 For another account of this fable, cf. vol. ii. p. 71.
from the tower, saying, “You are my children. Then why are you rebellious?” They replied, “Who are you that say you are our mother?” The concubine replied, “If ye will not believe me, all of you look up and open your mouths.” On this the concubine, with both her hands, pressed her breasts, and from each breast proceeded five hundred jets of milk, which fell into the mouths of her thousand sons. On this the rebels, perceiving that she was indeed their mother, immediately laid down their bows and clubs. The two royal fathers, by a consideration of these circumstances, were able to arrive at the condition of Pratyêka Buddhas, and the tower erected in their honour remains to this day. In after times, when the Lord of the World arrived at supreme reason, he addressed his disciples in these words, “This is the place where I formerly laid aside my bow and my club.” Men in after times, coming to know this, founded a tower in this place, and hence the name. The thousand children are in truth the thousand Buddhas of this Bhadra-kalpa. Buddha, when standing beside this tower, addressed Ânanda thus, “After three months I must enter Nirvâna,” on which occasion Mâra-râja so fascinated the mind of Ânanda that he did not request Buddha to remain in the world. Going east from this point three or four li there is a tower. One hundred years after the Nirvâna of Buddha there were at Vaiśālî certain Bhikshus who broke the rules of the Vinaya in ten particulars, saying that Buddha had said it was so, at which time the Arhats and the orthodox Bhikshus, making an assembly of 700 ecclesiastics, compared and collated the Vinaya Pitaka afresh. Afterwards men erected a tower on this spot, which still exists.

XXVI. Going four yojanas east, we arrive at the confluence of the five rivers. When Ânanda was going from the country of Magadha towards Vaiśālî, desiring to enter Nir-

60 For an account of this council see Abstract of Four Lectures, Lect. ii. There is an expression fan fu after the words “orthodox Bhikshus” (rule-holding Bhikshus), which may either be enclitic, or mean “a mixed multitude.”
vāna, the Dévas acquainted King Ajátaśatru of it. The king immediately set out after him at the head of his troops, and arrived at the banks of the river. The Lichchhavis of Vaiśāli, hearing that Ánanda was coming, likewise set out to meet him and arrived at the side of the river. Ánanda then reflected that if he were to advance, King Ajátaśatru would be much grieved, and if he should go back, then the Lichchhavis would be indignant. Being perplexed, he forthwith entered the Samádhi called the "brilliance of flame," consuming his body, and entered Nirvána in the midst of the river. His body was divided into two parts; one part was found on either side of the river; so the two kings, taking the relics of half his body, returned and erected towers over them.\(^{61}\)

XXVII. Crossing the river, and going south one yojana, we arrive at Magadha and the town of Pātaliputra (Palin-fu). This is the town in which King Aśoka reigned. In the city is the royal palace, the different parts of which he commissioned the genii (demons) to construct by piling up the stones. The walls, doorways, and the sculptured designs are no human work. The ruins still exist. The younger brother of King Aśoka having arrived at the dignity of an Arhat, was in the habit of residing in the hill Grídhra-küta, finding his chief delight in silent contemplation. The king respectfully requested him to come to his house to receive his religious offerings. His brother, pleased with his tranquillity in the mountain, declined the invitation. The king then addressed his brother, saying, "If you will only accept my invitation, I will make for you a hill within the city." Then the king, providing all sorts of meat and drink, invited the genii, and addressed them thus, "I beg you to accept my invitation for to-morrow; but as there are no seats, I must request you each to bring his own." On the morrow the great genii came, each one bringing with him a great stone, four

---

\(^{61}\) For this account and generally about Vaiśāli, cf. vol. ii. book vii. p. 66.
or five paces square. After the feast (*the session*), he
deputed the genii to pile up (their seats) and make a great
stone-mountain; and at the base of the mountain with five
great square stones to make a rock chamber, in length about
35 feet and in breadth 22 feet and in height 11 feet or so.

In this city (i.e., of Pātaliputra or Patna) once lived a
certain Brāhmaṇ called Rādha-Svāmī (?) (Lo-tai-sz-pi-mi),
of large mind and extensive knowledge, and attached to the
Great Vehicle. There was nothing with which he was un-
acquainted, and he lived apart occupied in silent medita-
tion. The king of the country honoured and respected
him as his religious superior. If he went to salute him, he
did not dare to sit down in his presence. If the king,
from a feeling of esteem, took him by the hand, the Brāhma-
ṇ ān thorou[ghly washed himself. For something like fifty
years the whole country looked up to this man and placed
its confidence on him alone. He mightly extended the
influence of the law of Buddha, so that the heretics were
unable to obtain any advantage at all over the priesthood.

By the side of the tower of King Aśoka is built a san-
ghārāma belonging to the Great Vehicle, very imposing
and elegant. There is also a temple belonging to the
Little Vehicle. Together they contain about 600 or 700
priests; their behaviour is decorous and orderly. Here
one may see eminent priests from every quarter of the
world; Śramaṇas and scholars who seek for instruction
all flock to this temple. The Brāhmaṇ teacher is called
Maṇjuśrī. The great Śramaṇas of the country, and all
the Bhikshus attached to the Great Vehicle, esteem and
reverence him; moreover he resides in this sanghārāma.
Of all the kingdoms of Mid-India, the towns of this coun-
try are especially large. The people are rich and prosper-
ous; they practise virtue and justice. Every year on the
eighth day of the second month there is a procession of
images. On this occasion they construct a four-wheeled
car, and erect upon it a tower of five stages, composed of
bamboos lashed together, the whole being supported by a
centre-post resembling a large spear with three points, in height twenty-two feet and more. So it looks like a pagoda. They then cover it over with fine white linen, which they afterwards paint with gaudy colours. Having made figures of the dévas, and decorated them with gold, silver, and glass, they place them under canopies of embroidered silk. Then at the four corners (of the car) they construct niches (shrines), in which they place figures of Buddha in a sitting posture, with a Bódhisattva standing in attendance. There are perhaps twenty cars thus prepared and differently decorated. During the day of the procession both priests and laymen assemble in great numbers. There are games and music, whilst they offer flowers and incense. The Brahmácháris come forth to offer their invitations. The Buddhas, then, one after the other, enter the city. After coming into the town again they halt. Then all night long they burn lamps, indulge in games and music, and make religious offerings. Such is the custom of all those who assemble on this occasion from the different countries round about. The nobles and householders of this country have founded hospitals within the city, to which the poor of all countries, the destitute, cripples, and the diseased, may repair. They receive every kind of requisite help gratuitously. Physicians inspect their diseases, and according to their cases order them food and drink, medicine or decoctions, everything in fact that may contribute to their ease. When cured they depart at their convenience. King Asoka having destroyed seven (of the original) pagodas, constructed 84,000 others. The very first which he built is the great tower which stands about three li to the south of this city. In front of this pagoda is an impression of Buddha’s foot, (over which) they have raised a chapel, the gate of which faces the north. To the south of the tower is a stone pillar, about a chang and a half in girth (18 feet), and three chang or so in height (35 feet). On the surface of this pillar is an inscription to the following effect: “King Asoka
presented the whole of Jambudvipa to the priests of the four quarters, and redeemed it again with money, and this he did three times." Three or four hundred paces to the north of the pagoda is the spot where Asoka was born (or resided). On this spot he raised the city of Ni-li, and in the midst of it erected a stone pillar, also about 35 feet in height, on the top of which he placed the figure of a lion, and also engraved an historical record on the pillar giving an account of the successive events connected with Ni-li, with the corresponding year, day, and month.\(^62\)

XXVIII. From this city proceeding in a south-easterly direction nine y\textit{\text{j}ana}s, we arrive at a small solitary stone hill, on the top of which is a stone cell.\(^63\) The stone cell faces the south. On one occasion, when Buddha was sitting in this cell, Sakra Dèva, taking the divine musician Pañchaśikha,\(^64\) caused him to sound a strain in the place where Buddha was. Then Sakra Dèva proposed forty-two questions to Buddha, drawing some traces upon a stone with his finger. The remains of the structure and tracings yet exist. There is a saṅghārāma built here. Going south-west from this one y\textit{\text{j}ana}, we arrive at the village of Na-lo.\(^65\) This was the place of Śāriputra's birth. Śāriputra returned here to enter Nirvāṇa. A tower therefore was erected here, which is still in existence. Going west from this one y\textit{\text{j}ana}, we arrive at the new Rāja-grīha. This was the town which King Ajātaśatru built. There are two saṅghārāmas in it. Leaving this town by the west gate and proceeding 300 paces, (we arrive at) the tower which King Ajātaśatru raised over the share of Buddha's relics which he obtained. Its height is very imposing. Leaving the south side of the city and proceeding southwards four li, we enter a valley

---

\(^{62}\) For an account of Magadha, cf. vol. ii. p. 82 ff.

\(^{63}\) The Indra-śīla-grīha of Huien Tsian, see vol. ii. p. 180.

\(^{64}\) For an account of this event, see Manual of Buddhism, pp. 289, 290; also Childers' \textit{Pāli Dict.}, sub voc. Pañcasūkho.

\(^{65}\) The Kālapināka of Huien Tsian, vol. ii. p. 177.
situated between five hills. These hills encircle it completely like the walls of a town. This is the site of the old town of King Bimbisāra. From east to west it is about five or six li, from north to south seven or eight li. Here Śāriputra and Mūdgalyāyana first met Aśvajit. Here also the Nirgrantha made a pit with fire in it, and poisoned the food which he invited Buddha to eat. Here also is the spot where King Ajātasatru, intoxicating a black elephant, desired to destroy Buddha. To the north-east of the city, in a crooked defile, (the physician) Jivaka erected a vihāra in the garden of Ambapāli, and invited Buddha and his 1,250 disciples to receive her religious offerings. The ruins still exist. Within the city all is desolate and without inhabitants.

XXIX. Entering the valley and striking the mountains towards the south-east, ascending 15 li we arrive at the hill called Gṛḍhakūṭa. Three li from the top is a stone cavern facing the south. Buddha used in this place to sit in meditation. Thirty paces to the north-west is another stone cell in which Ānanda practised meditation. The Dēva Māra Piśuna, having assumed the form of a vulture, took his place before the cavern and terrified Ānanda. Buddha by his spiritual power pierced the rock, and with his outstretched hand patted Ānanda's shoulder. On this his fear was allayed. The traces of the bird and of the hand-hole are still quite plain; on this account the hill is called "The Hill of the Vulture Cave." In front of the cave is the place where the four Buddhas sat down. Each of the Arhats likewise has a cave where he sat in meditation. Altogether there are several hundreds of these. Here also, when Buddha was walking to and fro from east to west in front of his cell, Dēvadatta, from between the northern eminences of the
mountain, rolled down athwart his path a stone which wounded Buddha's toe. The stone is still there. The hall in which Buddha preached has been destroyed; the foundations of the brick walls still exist, however. The peaks of this mountain are picturesque and imposing; it is the loftiest of the five mountains. Fa-Hian having bought flowers, incense, and oil and lamps in the new town, procured the assistance of two aged Bhikshus as guides. Fa-Hian, ascending the Grīḍhrakūṭa mountain, offered his flowers and incense and lit his lamps for the night. Being deeply moved, he could scarcely restrain his tears as he said, "Here it was in bygone days Buddha dwelt and delivered the Śūraṅgama Sūtra. Fa-Hian, not privileged to be born when Buddha lived, can but gaze on the traces of his presence and the place which he occupied." Then he recited the Śūraṅgama in front of the cave, and remaining there all night, he returned to the new town.

XXX. Some 300 paces north of the old town, on the west side of the road, is the Kalaṇḍavēṇuvana vihāra. It still exists, and a congregation of priests sweep and water it. Two or three li to the north of the chapel is the Shi-moshe-na (Śamaśāna), which signifies "the field of tombs for laying the dead." Striking the southern hill and proceeding westward 300 paces, there is a stone cell called the Pippala cave, where Buddha was accustomed to sit in meditation after his mid-day meal. Still west five or six li there is a stone cave situated in the northern shade of the mountain and called Che-ti. This is the place where 500 Arhats assembled after the Nirvāṇa of Buddha to arrange the collection of sacred books. At the time when the books were recited three vacant seats

71 It was, therefore, a structural building, not a cave.
72 This Sūtra must not be confused with the expanded one of the same name. There is a full account of this perilous visit of Fa-hian to the top of the Grīḍhrakūṭa hill, and how he was attacked by tigers, in the "history of the high priests" (Ko-sang-chuen).
73 Vol. ii. p. 156.
were specially prepared and adorned. The one on the left was for Śāriputra, the one on the right for Mudgalyāyana. The assembly was yet short of 500 by one Arhat; and already the great Kāśyapa was ascending the throne when Ānanda stood without the gate unable to find admission; on this spot they have raised a tower which still exists. Still skirting the mountain, we find very many other stone cells used by the Arhats for the purpose of meditation. Leaving the old city and going north-east three li, we arrive at the stone cell of Dëvadatta, fifty paces from which there is a great square black stone. Some time ago there was a Bhikshu who walked forward and backward on this stone meditating on the impermanency, the sorrow, and vanity of his body (life). Thus realising the character of impurity, loathing himself, he drew his knife and would have killed himself. But then he reflected that the Lord of the World had forbidden self-murder. But then again he thought, “Although that is so, yet I am simply anxious to destroy the three poisonous thieves (evil desire, hatred, ignorance).” Then again he drew his knife and cut his throat. On the first gash he obtained the degree of Srōtâpanna; when he had half done the work he arrived at the condition of Anâgâmin, and after completing the deed he obtained the position of an Arhat and entered Nirvāṇa.

XXXI. Going west from this four yōjanas, we arrive at the town of Gayā. All within this city likewise is desolate and desert. Going south 20 li, we arrive at the place where Bōdhisattva, when alive, passed six years in self-inflicted austerities. This place is well wooded. From this place westward three li, is the spot where Buddha entered the water to bathe and the dēva lowered the branch of a tree to help him out of the water. Again, going north two li, we arrive at the place where the village girls gave the milk and rice to Buddha. From this going north

75 Cf. Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 72.
76 Mi-kia for Grāmika, or Grāmikī; as Ni-kia, for Ka-ni-kia.
two li is the spot where Buddha, seated on a stone under a great tree, and looking towards the east, ate the rice and milk. The tree and the stone still remain. The stone is about six feet square and two in height. In Mid-India the heat and cold are so equalised that trees will live for thousands of years, and even so many as ten thousand. Going north-east from this half a yājana, we arrive at a stone cell, into which Bôdhisattva entering, sat down with his legs crossed, and as he faced the west he reflected with himself, "If I am to arrive at the condition of perfect wisdom, let there be some spiritual manifestation." Immediately on the stone wall there appeared the shadow of Buddha, in length somewhat about three feet. This shadow is still distinctly visible. Then the heavens and the earth were shaken, and all the dêvas in space cried out and said, "This is not the place appointed for the Buddhas (past or those to come) to arrive at perfect wisdom; at a distance less than half a yājana south-west from this, beneath the Pei-tô tree, is the spot where all the Buddhas (past or yet to come) should arrive at that condition." The dêvas having thus spoken, immediately went before him, singing and leading the way with a view to induce him to follow. Then Bôdhisattva, rising up, followed them. When distant thirty paces from the tree, a dêva gave him some grass of good omen. 77 Bôdhisattva having accepted it, advanced fifteen paces. Then 500 blue birds 78 came flying towards him, and having encircled Bôdhisattva three times, departed. Bôdhisattva, then going forward, arrived under the Pei-tô tree, and spreading out the grass of good omen, sat down with his face towards the east. Then it was that Mâra-râja dispatched three pleasure-girls from the northern quarter to come and tempt him, whilst Mâra himself coming from the south, assailed him likewise. Then Bôdhisattva letting the toe of his foot down to the earth, the whole army of Mâra was scat-

77 Kûsa grass. 78 For this and other incidents, see vol. ii. p. 124. Consult also the notes in Fah-hian (Beal’s Bud. Pilg., p. 123).
tered, and the three women were changed into hags. On the place above mentioned, where he inflicted on himself mortification for six years, and on each spot subsequently mentioned, men in after times raised towers and placed figures (of Buddha), which still remain. Buddha having arrived at supreme wisdom, for seven days sat contemplating the tree, experiencing the joys of emancipation. On this spot they have raised a tower, as well as on the following, viz., where he walked for seven days under the Pei-to tree, from east to west; where all the devas, having caused the appearance of a hall composed of the seven precious substances, for seven days paid religious worship to Buddha; where the blind dragon Muchilinda for seven days encircled Buddha in token of respect; also where Buddha, seated on a square stone beneath a Nyagrodha tree, and with his face to the east, received the respectful salutation of Brahma; also where the four heavenly kings respectfully offered him his alms-bowl; also where the 500 merchants presented him with parched corn and honey; also where he converted the Kashyapas, elder and younger brothers, and their thousand disciples. In the place where Buddha arrived at perfect reason there are three saṅghārāmas, in all of which priests are located. The dependants of the congregation of priests supply them with all necessaries, so that there is no lack of anything. They scrupulously observe the rules of the Vinaya with respect to decorum, which relate to sitting down, rising up, or entering the assembly; and the rules which the holy congregation observed during Buddha’s lifetime are still observed by these priests. The sites of the four great pagodas have always been associated together from the time of the Nirvāṇa. The four great pagodas are those erected on the place where he was born, where he obtained emancipation, where he began to preach, and where he entered Nirvāṇa.

XXXII. Formerly, when King Aśoka was a lad, playing

79 That is, in a previous birth.
on the road, he met Śākya Buddha going begging. The little boy, rejoiced at the chance, gave him a handful of earth as an offering. Buddha received it, and on his return sprinkled it on the ground where he took his exercise. In return for this act of charity the lad became an iron-wheel king and ruled over Jambudvīpa. On assuming the iron-wheel he was on a certain occasion going through Jambudvīpa on a tour of inspection, at which time he saw one of the places of torment for the punishment of wicked men situated between the two iron-circle mountains. He immediately asked his attendant ministers, “What is this place?” To this they replied and said, “This is the place where Yāma-rāja, the infernal king, inflicts punishment on wicked men for their crimes.” The king then began to reflect and said, “If the demon king, in the exercise of his function, requires to have a place of punishment for wicked men, why should not I, who rule men (on earth), have a place of punishment likewise for the guilty?” On this he asked his ministers, “Who is there that I can appoint to make for me a hell,\textsuperscript{80} and to exercise authority therein for the punishment of wicked men?” In reply they said, “None but a very wicked man can fulfil such an office.” The king forthwith dispatched his ministers in every direction to seek for such a man. In the course of their search they saw, by the side of a running stream, a lusty great fellow of a black colour, with red hair and light eyes; with the talons of his feet he caught the fish, and when he whistled to the birds and beasts, they came to him; and as they approached he mercilessly shot them through, so that none escaped. Having caught this man, he was brought before the king. The king then gave him these secret orders, “You must enclose a square space with high walls, and with this enclosure plant every kind of flower and fruit (tree), and make beautiful alcoves, and arrange everything with such taste as to make people anxious to look within.

\textsuperscript{80} For this incident see vol. ii. p. 85.
Make a wide gate to it, and then when any one enters, seize him at once and subject him to every kind of torture. Let no one (who has once entered) ever go out again. And I strictly enjoin you, that if I even should enter, that you torture me also and spare not. Now, then, I appoint you lord of this place of torment!” It happened that a certain Bhikshu, as he was going his rounds begging for food, entered the gate. The infernal keeper seeing him, made preparations to put him to torture. The Bhikshu, being much frightened, supplicantly begged a moment’s respite. “Permit me, at least, to partake of my mid-day meal,” he said. It so happened that just then another man entered the place, on which the keeper directly seized him, and, putting him in a stone mortar, began to pound his body to atoms till a red froth formed. The Bhikshu having witnessed this spectacle, began to reflect on the impermanency, the sorrow, the vanity of bodily existence, that it is like a bubble and froth of the sea, and so he arrived at the condition of an Arhat. This having transpired, the infernal keeper laid hold of him and thrust him into a caldron of boiling water. The heart of the Bhikshu and his countenance were full of joy. The fire was extinguished and the water became cold, whilst in the middle of it there sprang up a lotus, on the top of which the Bhikshu took his seat. The keeper forthwith proceeded to the king and said, “A wonderful miracle has occurred in the place of torture; would that your majesty would come and see it.” The king said, “I dare not come, in consideration of my former agreement with you.” The keeper replied, “This matter is one of great moment: it is only right you should come; let us consider your former agreement changed.” The king then directly followed him and entered the prison; on which the Bhikshu, for his sake, delivered a religious discourse, so that the king believed and was converted. Then he ordered the place of torture to be destroyed, and repented of all the evil he had formerly committed. From the
time of his conversion he exceedingly honoured the three precious ones (i.e., Buddha, Dharma, Sangha), and went continually to the spot underneath the Pei-to tree for the purpose of repentance, self-examination, and fasting. In consequence of this, the queen on one occasion asked, "Where does the king go so constantly?" The ministers replied, "He continually resides under the Pei-to tree." The queen hereupon, awaiting an opportunity when the king was not there, sent men to cut the tree down. The king repairing as usual to the spot, and seeing what had happened, was so overpowered with grief that he fell down senseless on the ground. The ministers, bathing his face with water, after a long time restored him to consciousness. Then the king piled up the earth on the four sides of the stump of the tree, and commanded the roots to be moistened with a hundred pitchers of milk. Then prostrating himself at full length on the ground, he made the following vow, "If the tree does not revive I will never rise up again." No sooner had he done this than the tree began to force up small branches from the root, and so it continued to grow until it arrived at its present height, which is somewhat less than 120 feet.

XXXIII. From this place going south three li, we arrive at a mountain called the Cock's-foot. The great Kâśyapa is at present within this mountain. He divided the mountain at its base, so as to open a passage (for himself). This entrance is now closed up (impassable). At a considerable distance from this spot there is a side chasm; it is in this the entire body of Kâśyapa is now preserved. Outside this chasm is the place where Kâśyapa, when alive, washed his hands. The people of that region who are afflicted with headaches use the earth brought from the place as an ointment, and this immediately cures them. As soon as the sun begins to decline the Arhats come and take

\[81\] For an account of this mountain see vol. ii. p. 144.
\[82\] Or, it may be translated, "Therefore, since then, there have been Arhats," &c.; but this is not so agreeable with the context as the translation I have given.
their abode in this hill. Buddhist pilgrims of that and other countries come year by year to pay religious worship to Kâśyapa; if any should happen to be distressed with doubts, directly the sun goes down the Arhats arrive and begin to discourse with (the pilgrims) and explain their doubts and difficulties; and, having done so, forthwith they disappear. The thickets about this hill are dense and tangled. There are, moreover, many lions, tigers, and wolves prowling about, so that it is not possible to travel without great care.

XXXIV. Fa-Hian returning towards Pâtaliputra, kept along the course of the Ganges, and after going ten yôjanas in a westerly direction, arrived at a vihâra called "Desert" (Kwang-ye), in which Buddha resided. Priests still dwell in it. Still keeping along the course of the Ganges and going west twelve yôjanas, we arrive at the country of Kâśi and the city of Bânâras. About ten li or so to the north-east of this city is the chapel of the deer park of the Rîshis. This garden was once occupied by a Pratyêka Buddha. There are always wild deer reposing in it for shelter. When the Lord of the World was about to arrive at supreme wisdom, all the dêvas in space began to chant a hymn and say, "The son of Suddhôdana-râja, who has left his home to acquire supreme wisdom, after seven days will arrive at the condition of Buddha." The Pratyêka Buddha hearing this, immediately entered Nirvâna. Therefore the name of this place is the deer park of the Rîshi. The world-honoured Buddha having arrived at complete knowledge, men in after ages erected a vihâra on this spot. Buddha being desirous to convert Âjñasatâ Kaundinya and his companions, known as the five men, they communed one with another and said, "This Śramaṇa Gautama having for six years practised mortifications, reducing himself to the daily use of but one grain of hemp and one of rice, and in spite of this having failed to obtain supreme wisdom, how much less shall he now obtain that condition by entering into men's society and removing the checks he placed
INTRODUCTION.

upon his words and thoughts and actions! To-day when he comes here, let us carefully avoid all conversation with him." On Buddha's arrival the five men rose and saluted him, and here they have erected a tower; also on the following spots, viz., on a site sixty paces to the north of the former place, where Buddha, seated with his face to the east, began to turn the wheel of the law (to preach) for the purpose of converting Kaundinya and his companions (known as) "the five men;" also on a spot twenty paces to the north of this, where Buddha delivered his prediction concerning Maitreya; also on a spot fifty paces to the south of this, where the dragon Elapata asked Buddha at what time he should be delivered from his dragon-form; in all these places towers have been erected which still exist. In the midst (of the park) there are two sangharmas which still have priests dwelling in them. Proceeding northwest thirteen yojanas from the park of the deer, there is a country called Kausambi. There is a vihara there called Ghoushira-vana (the garden of Ghoushira), in which Buddha formerly dwelt; it is now in ruins. There are congregations here, principally belonging to the system known as the Little Vehicle. Eight yojanas east of this place is a place where Buddha once took up his residence and converted an evil demon. They have also erected towers on various spots where he sat or walked for exercise when he was resident in this neighbourhood. There are sangharmas still existing here, and perhaps a hundred priests.

XXXV. Going 200 yojanas south from this, there is a country called Ta-Thsiiin (Dakshiṇa). Here is a sangharama of the former Buddha Kaśyapa. This convent is described by Huen Tsian in Book x. It was probably dedicated to Pārvati (the Po-lo-yu of Fa-hian, which he translates "pigeon"—pārśvata) or Chandā, and is situated in the Chanda district of the Dekhan. The King Sadvaha, a friend of Nāgarjuna, was probably the same as the Sindhuka of the Vayu-Purāṇa. He is called Shi-in-teh-kia by I-tsang.
This building has altogether five stages. The lowest is made with elephant figures, and has five hundred stone cells in it. The second is made with lion shapes, and has four hundred chambers. The third is made with horse shapes, and has three hundred chambers. The fourth is made with ox shapes, and has two hundred chambers. The fifth is made with dove shapes, and has one hundred chambers in it. At the very top of all is a spring of water, which, flowing in a stream before the rooms, encircles each tier, and so, running in a circuitous course, at last arrives at the very lowest stage of all, where, flowing past the chambers, it finally issues through the door. Throughout the consecutive tiers, in various parts of the building, windows have been pierced through the solid rock for the admission of light, so that every chamber is quite illuminated and there is no darkness. At the four corners of this edifice they have hewn out the rock into steps, as means for ascending. Men of the present time, being small of stature, ascend the ladder and thus reach the top in the usual way; but men of old reached it with one foot. The reason why they name this building Po-lo-yu is from an Indian word signifying “pigeon.” There are always Arhats abiding here. This land is barren and without inhabitants. At a considerable distance from the hill there are villages, but all of them are inhabited by heretics. They know nothing of the law of Buddha, or Šramaṇas, or Brāhmanas, or of any of the different schools of learning. The men of that country continually see persons come flying to the temple. On a certain occasion there were some Buddhist pilgrims from different countries who came here to pay religious worship. Then the men of the villages above alluded to asked them, saying, “Why do you not fly? All the religious persons hereabout that we see (are able to) fly.” These men then answered by way of excuse, “Because our wings are not yet perfectly formed.” The country of Ta-Thsin (Dekhan) is precipitous and the roads

84 Referring perhaps to the one-footed men of Ktesias. It may possibly be, “at one bound.”
dangerous. Those who wish to go there, even if they know the place, ought to give a present to the king of the country, either money or goods. The king then deputes certain men to accompany them as guides, and so they pass the travellers from one place to another, each party pointing out their own roads and intricate bypaths. Fa-Hian finding himself in the end unable to proceed to that country, reports in the above passages merely what he has heard.

XXXVI. From Bānāras going eastward we arrive at the town of Pāṭaliputra again. The purpose of Fa-Hian was to seek for copies of the Vinaya Piṭaka; but throughout the whole of Northern India the various masters trusted to tradition only for their knowledge of the precepts, and had no originals to copy from. Wherefore Fa-Hian had come even so far as Mid-India. But here in the saṅghārāma of the Great Vehicle he obtained one collection of the precepts, viz., the collection used by the Mahāsaṅghika assembly. This was that used by the first great assembly of priests during Buddha's lifetime. It is reported that this was the one used in the Jētavana vihāra. Except that the eighteen sects have each their own private rules of conduct, they are agreed in essentials. In some minor details they differ, as well as in a more or less exact attention to matters of practice. But the collection (of this sect) is regarded as the most correct and complete. Moreover, he obtained one copy of precepts from dictation, comprising about 7000 gāthās. This version was that used by the assembly belonging to the school of the Sarvāstivādās; the same, in fact, as is generally used in China. The masters of this school also hand down the precepts by word of mouth, and do not commit them to writing. Moreover, in this assembly he obtained a copy of the Saṁyuktābhidharma-hṛdaya Śāstra, including altogether about 6000 gāthās. Moreover, he obtained a copy of the Nirvāṇa Sūtra, consisting altogether of 2500 verses.

85 Vide I-taing, Nan-hai, § 25.
Moreover, he obtained in one volume the *Vāipulya-parinirvāṇa Sūtra*, containing about 5000 verses. Moreover, he procured a copy of the *Abhidharma* according to the school of the Mahāsaṅghikas. On this account Fa-Hian abode in this place for the space of three years engaged in learning to read the Sanskrit books, and to converse in that language, and in copying the precepts. When Tso-ching arrived in Mid-India and saw the customary behaviour of the Śramanas, and the strict decorum observed by the assembly of priests, and their religious deportment, even to the smallest matters, then, sorrowfully reflecting on the meagre character of the precepts known to the different assemblies of priests in the border-land of China, he bound himself by a vow and said, “From the present time for ever till I obtain the condition of Buddha, may I never again be born in a frontier country.” And in accordance with this expression of his wish, he took up his permanent abode in this place, and did not return. And so Fa-Hian, desiring, according to his original purpose, to spread the knowledge of the precepts throughout the land of Han (China), returned alone.

XXXVII. Following down the river Ganges in an easterly direction for eighteen yōjanas, we come to the great kingdom of Chen-po (Champā) on its southern shore. In the place where Buddha once dwelt, and where he moved to and fro for exercise, also where the four previous Buddhas sat down, in all these places towers have been erected, and there are still resident priests. From this continuing to go eastward nearly fifty yōjanas, we arrive at the kingdom of Tāmralipti. This is at the sea-mouth. There are twenty-four saṅghārāmas in this country; all of them have resident priests, and the law of Buddha is generally respected. Fa-Hian remained here for two years, writing out copies of the sacred books (sūtras) and drawing image-pictures. He then shipped himself on board a great merchant vessel. Putting to sea, they pro-
ceeded in a south-westerly direction, catching the first fair wind of the winter season. They sailed for fourteen days and nights, and arrived at the country of the lions (Sīmhala, Ceylon). Men of that country (Tāmralipti) say that the distance between the two is about 700 yōjanas. This kingdom (of lions) is situated on a great island. From east to west it is fifty yōjanas, and from north to south thirty yōjanas. On every side of it are small islands, perhaps amounting to a hundred in number. They are distant from one another ten or twenty li and as much as 200 li. All of them depend on the great island. Most of them produce precious stones and pearls. The māni-gem is also found in one district, embracing a surface perhaps of ten li. The king sends a guard to protect the place. If any gems are found, the king claims three out of every ten.

XXXVIII. This kingdom had originally no inhabitants, but only demons and dragons dwelt in it. Merchants of different countries (however) came here to trade. At the time of traffic, the demons did not appear in person, but only exposed their valuable commodities with the value affixed. Then the merchantmen, according to the prices marked, purchased the goods and took them away. But in consequence of these visits (coming, going, and stopping), men of other countries, hearing of the delightful character of the place, flocked there in great numbers, and so a great kingdom was formed. This country enjoys an agreeable climate, without any differences in winter or summer. The plants and trees are always verdant. The fields are sown just according to men’s inclination; there are no fixed seasons. Buddha came to this country from a desire to convert a malevolent dragon. By his spiritual power he planted one foot to the north of the royal city, and one on the top of a mountain, the distance between the two being fifteen yōjanas. Over the foot-impression (on the hill) to the north of the royal city, is erected a great tower, in height 470 feet. It is adorned with gold and silver, and perfected
with every precious substance. By the side of this tower, moreover, is erected a *sanghārāma*, which is called Abhayagiri, containing 5000 priests. They have also built here a hall of Buddha, which is covered with gold and silver engraved work, conjoined with all precious substances. In the midst of this hall is a jasper figure (of Buddha), in height about 22 feet. The entire body glitters and sparkles with the seven precious substances, whilst the various characteristic marks are so gloriously portrayed that no words can describe the effect. In the right hand it holds a pearl of inestimable value. Fa-Hian had now been absent many years from the land of Han; the manners and customs of the people with whom he had intercourse were entirely strange to him. The towns, people, mountains, valleys, and plants and trees which met his eyes, were unlike those of old times. Moreover, his fellow-travellers were now separated from him—some had remained behind, and some were dead. To consider the shadow (of the past) was all that was left him; and so his heart was continually saddened. All at once, as he was standing by the side of this jasper figure, he beheld a merchant present to it as a religious offering a white taffeta fan of Chinese manufacture. Unwittingly (Fa-Hian) gave way to his sorrowful feelings, and the tears flowing down filled his eyes. A former king of this country sent an embassy to Mid-India to procure a slip of the Pei-to tree. This they planted by the side of the Hall of Buddha. When it was about 220 feet high, the tree began to lean towards the south-east. The king, fearing it would fall, placed eight or nine surrounding props to support the tree. Just in the place where the tree was thus supported it put forth a branch which pierced through the props, and, descending to the earth, took root. This branch is about twenty inches round. The props, although pierced through the centre, still surround (the tree), which stands now without their support, yet men have not removed them.

Under the tree is erected a chapel, in the middle of which
is a figure (of Buddha) in a sitting posture. Both the clergy and laity pay reverence to this figure with little intermission. Within the capital, moreover, is erected the chapel of the tooth of Buddha, in the construction of which all the seven precious substances have been employed. The king purifies himself according to the strictest Brâhmanical rules, whilst those men within the city who reverence (this relic) from a principle of belief also compose their passions according to strict rule. This kingdom, from the time it has been so governed, has suffered neither from famine, calamity, nor revolution. The treasury of this congregation of priests contains numerous gems and a māni-jewel of inestimable value. Their king once entered the treasury, and, going round it for the purpose of inspection, he saw there this māni-gem. On beholding it, a covetous feeling sprung up in his heart, and he desired to take it away with him. For three days this thought afflicted him, but then he came to his right mind. He directly repaired to the assembly of the priests, and bowing down his head, he repented of his former wicked purpose, and addressing them, said, “Would that you would make a rule from this time forth and for ever, on no account to allow a king to enter your treasury, and no Bhikshu except he is of forty years’ seniority—after that time he may be permitted to enter.” There are many noblemen and rich householders within the city. The houses of the Sa-poh (Sabæan) merchants are very beautifully adorned. The streets and passages are smooth and level. At the head of the four principal streets there are preaching halls. On the 8th, 14th, and 15th day of the month they prepare a lofty throne within each of these buildings, and the religious members of the community of the four classes all congregate to hear the preaching of the law. The men of this country say that there are in the country altogether fifty or sixty thousand priests, all of whom live in community (have their food [commons] provided). Besides these, the king supplies five or six
thousand persons within the city with food in common (or, with common food (commons)). These persons, when they require, take their alms-bowls and go (to the appointed place), and, according to the measure of the bowls, fill them and return. They always bring out the tooth of Buddha in the middle of the third month. Ten days beforehand, the king magnificently caparisons a great elephant, and commissions a man of eloquence and ability to clothe himself in royal apparel, and, riding on the elephant, to sound a drum and proclaim as follows:—

"Bōdhisattva during three Asāṅkhyeyaka kalpas underwent every kind of austerity; he spared himself no personal sufferings; he left his country, wife, and child; moreover, he tore out his eyes to bestow them on another, he mangled his flesh to deliver a dove (from the hawk), he sacrificed his head in alms, he gave his body to a famishing tiger, he grudged not his marrow or brain. Thus he endured every sort of agony for the sake of all flesh. Moreover, when he became perfect Buddha, he lived in the world forty-nine years preaching the law and teaching and converting men. He gave rest to the wretched, he saved the lost. Having passed through countless births, he then entered Nirvāṇa. Since that event is 1497 years. The eyes of the world were then put out, and all flesh deeply grieved. After ten days the tooth of (this same) Buddha will be brought forth and taken to the Abhayagiri vihāra. Let all ecclesiastical and lay persons within the kingdom, who wish to lay up a store of merit, prepare and smooth the roads, adorn the streets and highways; let them scatter every kind of flower, and offer incense in religious reverence to the relic." This proclamation being finished, the king next causes to be placed on both sides of the procession-road representations of the five hundred bodily forms which Bōdhisattva assumed during his successive births. For instance, his birth as Sudāna;[87] his appearance

[87] The Sudāna Jātaka, the same and the Sāma Jātaka are among the as the Vessantara Jātaka; both this Sānchi sculptures.
as Sâma; his birth as the king of the elephants, and as an antelope. These figures are all beautifully painted in divers colours, and have a very life-like appearance. At length the tooth of Buddha is brought forth and conducted along the principal road. As they proceed on the way, religious offerings are made to it. When they arrive at the Abhaya vihâra they place it in the Hall of Buddha, where the clergy and laity all assemble in vast crowds and burn incense, and light lamps, and perform every kind of religious ceremony, both night and day, without ceasing. After ninety complete days they again return it to the vihâra within the city. This chapel is thrown open on fast days for the purpose of religious worship, as the law (of Buddha) directs. Forty li to the east of the Abhaya vihâra is a mountain, on which is built a chapel called Po-ti (Bôdhi); there are about 2000 priests in it. Amongst them is a very distinguished Shaman called Ta-mo-kiu-ti (Dharmakôti or Dharmagupta). The people of this country greatly respect and reverence him. He resides in a cell, where he has lived for about forty years. By the constant practice of benevolence he has been able to tame the serpents and mice, so that they stop together in one cell, and do not hurt one another.

XXXIX. Seven li to the south of the capital is a chapel called Mahâvihâra, in which there are 3000 priests. Amongst them was a very eminent Srâmanâ, whose life was so pure that the men of the country generally gave him credit for being an Arhat. At the time of his approaching death, the king, having come to inspect and inquire, according to the custom of the law, assembled the priests and asked the Bhikshu, “Hast thou attained reason?” On which he made reply in truth, “I am an Arhat.” After his death, the king immediately examined the sacred books, with a view to perform the funeral obsequies according to the rules for such as are Arhats. Accordingly, about four or five li to the east of the vihâra they raised a very great pyre of wood, about 34 feet square
and of the same height. Near the top they placed tiers of sandal-wood, aloe, and all kinds of scented wood. On the four sides they constructed steps. Then, taking some clean and very white camlet cloth, they bound it around and above the pyre. They then constructed above a funeral carriage, like the hearses used in this country, except that there are no dragon-ear handles (cf. ting urh). Then, at the time of the cremation (dāva), the king, accompanied by the four classes of the people, assembled in great numbers, came to the spot provided with flowers and incense for religious offerings, and followed the hearse till it arrived at the place of the funeral ceremony. The king, then, in his own person, offered religious worship with flowers and incense. This being over, the hearse was placed on the pyre, and oil of cinnamon poured over it in all directions. Then they set light to the whole. At the time of kindling the fire, the whole assembly occupied their minds with solemn thoughts. Then removing their upper garments, and taking their wing-like fans, which they use as sun-shades, and approaching as near as possible to the pyre, they flung them into the midst of the fire in order to assist the cremation. When all was over, they diligently searched for the bones and collected them together, in order to raise a tower over them. Fa-Hian did not arrive in time to see this celebrated person alive, but only to witness his funeral obsequies. At this time, the king, being an earnest believer in the law of Buddha, desired to build a new vihāra for this congregation of priests. First of all he provided for them a great feast, after which he selected a pair of strong working oxen and ornamented their horns with gold, silver, and precious things. Then providing himself with a beautiful gilded plough, the king himself ploughed round the four sides of the allotted space, after which, ceding all personal right over the land, houses, or people within the area thus enclosed, he presented (the whole to the

A king, or 15 1/2 acres.
priests). Then he caused to be engraved on a metal plate (the following inscription):—"From this time and for all generations hereafter, let this property be handed down from one (body of priests) to the other, and let no one dare to alienate it, or change (the character of) the grant." When Fa-Hian was residing in this country, he heard a religious brother from India, seated on a high throne, reciting a sacred book and saying, "The Pātra (alms-bowl) of Buddha originally was preserved in Vaiśālī, but now it is in the borders of Gandhāra. After an uncertain period of years [Fa-Hian, at the time of the recital, heard the exact number of years, but he has now forgotten it], it will go on to the country of the western Yu-chi. After another period it will go to the country of Khotan. After a similar period it will be transported to Kouché. In about the same period it will come back to the land of Han; after the same period it will return to the land of lions (Simhala, Ceylon); after the same period it will return to Mid-India; after which it will be taken up into the Tushta heaven. Then Maitrēya Bōdhisattva will exclaim with a sigh, 'The alms-dish of Śākyamuni Buddha has come.' Then all the Dēvas will pay religious worship to it with flowers and incense for seven days. After this it will return to Jambudvipa, and a sea-dragon, taking it, will carry it within his palace, awaiting till Maitrēya is about to arrive at complete wisdom, at which time the bowl, again dividing itself into four as it was at first, will re-ascend the Pin-na mountain. After Maitrēya has arrived at supreme wisdom, the four heavenly Kings will once more come and respectfully salute him as Buddha, after the same manner as they have done to the former Buddhas. The thousand Buddhas of this Bhadra-kalpa will all of them use this same alms-dish; when the bowl has disappeared, then the law of Buddha will gradually disappear; after which the years of man's life will begin to contract until it be no more than five years in duration.

89 In some places this is written An-na, as though for (Sum)ana.
At the time of its being ten years in length, rice and butter will disappear from the world, and men will become extremely wicked. The sticks they grasp will then transform themselves into knives and clubs, with which they will attack one another, and wound and kill each other. In the midst of this, men who have acquired religious merit will escape and seek refuge in the mountains; and when the wicked have finished the work of mutual destruction, they will come from their hiding-places, and will converse together and say, 'Men of old lived to a very advanced age, but now, because wicked men have indulged without restraint in every transgression of the law, our years have dwindled down to their present short span, even to the space of ten years. Now, therefore, let us practise every kind of good deed, encouraging within ourselves a kind and loving spirit; let us enter on a course of virtue and righteousness.' Thus, as each one practises faith and justice, their years will begin to increase in double ratio till they reach 80,000 years of life. At the time when Maitrêya is born, when he first begins to declare his doctrine (turn the wheel of the law), his earliest converts will be the followers of the bequeathed law of Śākya Buddha, those who have forsaken their families, those who have sought refuge in the three sacred names, those who have kept the five great commandments, and attended to their religious duties in making continued offerings to the three precious objects of worship. His second and third body of converts shall be those who, by their previous conduct, have put themselves in a condition for salvation."

Fa-Hian, on hearing this discourse, wished to copy it down, on which the man said, "This has no Scripture-origin; I only repeat by word of mouth (what I have learned)."

XL Fa-Hian resided in this country for two years. Continuing his search, he obtained a copy of the Vinaya Piṭaka according to the school of the Mahiśasakas. He also obtained a copy of the Great Āgama (Dirghāgama), and of the Miscellaneous Āgama (Samyuktāgama), and also a collec-
tion of the Miscellaneous Pitaka (Sannipata). All these were hitherto unknown in the land of Han. Having obtained these works in the original language (Fan), he forthwith shipped himself on board a great merchant vessel, which carried about two hundred men. Astern of the great ship was a smaller one, in case the larger vessel should be injured or wrecked. Having got a fair wind, they sailed eastward for two days, when suddenly a tempest (typhoon) arose, and the ship sprung a leak. The merchants then desired to haul up the smaller vessel, but the crew of that ship, fearing that a crowd of men would rush into her and sink her, cut the towing cable and she fell off. The merchantmen were greatly terrified, expecting their death momentarily. Then dreading lest the leak should gain upon them, they forthwith took their heavy goods and merchandise and cast them overboard. Fa-Hian also flung overboard his water-pitcher (kundikä) and his washing-basin, and also other portions of his property. He was only afraid lest the merchants should fling into the sea his sacred books and images. And so with earnestness of heart he invoked Avalokitesvara, and paid reverence to the Buddhist saints (the priesthood) of the land of Han, speaking thus: "I indeed have wandered far and wide in search of the law. Oh, bring me back again, by your spiritual power, to reach some resting-place." And so the hurricane blew on for thirteen days and nights; they then arrived at the shore of a small island, and on the tide going out they found the place of the leak. Having forthwith stopped it up, they again put to sea on their onward voyage. In this ocean there are many pirates, who, coming on you suddenly, destroy everything. The sea itself is boundless in extent; it is impossible to know east or west except by observing the sun, moon, or stars, and so progress. If it is dark, rainy weather, the only plan is to steer by the wind without guide. During the darkness of night we only see the great waves beating one against the other and shining like fire, whilst shoals of
sea-monsters of every description (surround the ship). The merchants, perplexed, knew not towards what land they were steering. The sea was bottomless and no soundings could be found, so that there was no chance of anchoring. At length, the weather clearing up, they got their right bearings, and once more shaped a correct course and proceeded onwards; but if (during the bad weather) they had happened to have struck on a hidden rock, there could have been no escape. Thus they voyaged for ninety days and more, when they arrived at a country called Ye-po-ti (Java, or, perhaps, Sumatra). In this country heretics and Brâhmans flourish, but the law of Buddha is not much known. Stopping here the best portion of five months, Fa-Hian again embarked on board another merchant vessel, having also a crew of two hundred men or so. They took with them fifty days' provisions, and set sail on the 16th day of the fourth month. Fa-Hian kept his "rest" on board this ship. They shaped a course north-east for Kwang-chow. After a month and some days, when sounding the middle watch of the night, a black squall suddenly came on, accompanied with pelting rain. The merchantmen and passengers were all terrified. Fa-Hian at this time also, with great earnestness of mind, again entreated Avalô-keitēśvara and all the priesthood of China to exert their divine power in their favour, and protect them till daylight.\(^90\)

When the day broke, all the Brâhmans, consulting together, said, "It is because we have got this Śramaṇa on board we have no luck, and have incurred this great mischief. Come, let us land this Bhikshu on any island we meet, and let us not all perish for the sake of one man." The religious patron (Dānapati) of Fa-Hian then said, "If you land this Bhikshu, you shall also land me with him; and if not, you had better kill me: for if you put this Śramaṇa on shore, then, when I arrive in China, I will go straight to the king and report you; and the king of that country

\(^90\) Cl. ἱχοντο ημέραν γεφθαι, Acts xxiii. 29.
is a firm believer in the law of Buddha, and greatly honours the Bhikshus and priests." The merchantmen on this hesitated, and (in the end) did not dare to land him. The weather continuing very dark, the pilot’s observations were perversely wrong. Nearly seventy days had now elapsed. The rice for food and the water for congee were nearly all done. They had to use salt water for cooking, whilst they gave out to every man about two pints of fresh water. And now, when this was just exhausted, the merchants held a conversation and said, "The proper time for the voyage to Kwang-Chow is about fifty days, but now we have exceeded that time these many days—shall we be perverse?" On this they put the ship on a north-west course to look for land. After twelve days’ continuous sailing, they arrived at the southern coast of Lau-Shan which borders on the prefecture of Chang-Kwang. They then obtained good fresh water and vegetables; and so, after passing through so many dangers and difficulties and such a succession of anxious days, (the pilgrim) suddenly arrived at this shore. On seeing the Li-ho vegetable (a sort of reed), he was confident that this was indeed the land of Han. But not seeing any men or traces of life, they knew not what place it was. Some said they had not yet arrived at Kwang-chow, others maintained they had passed it. In their uncertainty, therefore, they put off in a little boat, and entered a creek to look for some one to ask where they were. Meeting with two hunters, they got them to go back with them, making Fa-Hian interpret their words and question them. Fa-Hian having first tried to inspire them with confidence, then leisurely asked them, "What men are you?" They replied, "We are disciples of Buddha." Then he asked, "What do you look for in these mountains here?" They prevaricated, and said, "To-morrow is the 15th day of the seventh month, and we were anxious to catch some-

91 That is, he was perverse in following his wrong observations, or calculations.
thing to sacrifice to Buddha." Again he asked, "What 
country is this?" They replied, "This is Tsing-Chow, on 
the borders of the prefecture of Chang-Kwang, dependent 
on the house of Lin." Having heard this, the merchants 
were very glad, and immediately begging that their goods 
might be landed, they deputed men to go with them to 
Chang-Kwang. The prefect, Li-I, who was a faithful fol-
lower of the law of Buddha, hearing that there was a 
Śramana arrived with sacred books and images in a ship 
from beyond the seas, immediately proceeded to the shore 
with his followers to escort the books and sacred figures to 
the seat of his government. After this the merchants 
returned towards Yang-Chow. Meanwhile Liu arriving 
at Tsing-Chow,\(^{92}\) entertained Fa-Hian for the whole 
winter and summer. The summer period of rest being 
over, Fa-Hian, removed from the society of his fellow-
priests for so long, was anxious to get back to Chang'an. 
But as his plans were important, he directed his course 
first towards the southern capital. Having met the priests, 
he exhibited the sacred books he had brought back. 
Fa-Hian, leaving Chang'an, was five years in arriving at 
Mid-India. He resided there during six years, and was three 
years more before he arrived at Tsing-Chow. He had suc-
cessively passed through nearly thirty different countries. 
In all the countries of India, after passing the sandy 
desert, the dignified carriage of the priesthood and the 
surprising influence of religion cannot be adequately de-
scribed. But because our learned doctors had not heard 
of these things, he was induced, regardless of personal risk, 
to cross the seas, and to encounter every kind of danger in 
returning home. Having been preserved by divine power 
(by the three honourable ones), and brought through all 
dangers safely, he was further induced to commit to writ-
ing these records of his travels, desiring that honourable 
readers might be informed of them as well as himself.

\(^{92}\) Fá for chi (?).
THE MISSION
OF
SUNG-YUN¹ AND HWEI SÄNG
TO OBTAIN
BUDDHIST BOOKS IN THE WEST.² (518 A.D.)

[Translated from the 5th Section of the History of the Temples of Lo-Yang (Honan Fu).]

In the suburb Wen-I, to the north-east of the city of Lo-Yang, was the dwelling of Sung-Yun of Tun-hwang,³ who, in company with the Bhikshu Hwei Säng, was sent on an embassy to the western countries by the Empress Dowager (Tai-Hau) of the Great Wei dynasty⁴ to obtain Buddhist books. This occurred in the eleventh month of the first year of the period Shén hwei (517–518 A.D.) They procured altogether 170 volumes, all standard works, belonging to the Great Vehicle.

First of all, having repaired to the capital, they proceeded in a westerly direction forty days, and arrived at the Chih-Ling (Barren Ridge), which is the western frontier of the country. On this ridge is the fortified outpost of the Wei territory. The Chih-Ling produces no trees or shrubs, and hence its name (Barren). Here is the common resort (cave) of the rat-bird. These two animals being of different species (chung), but the same genus (lus), live and breed together. The bird is the male, the rat the

¹ Called by Rémusat Sung-Yun tse (Fa-hian, cap. viii. n. 1); but the word “tse” is no component part of the name. The passage in the original is this: “In the Wan-I suburb (lit) is the house (tse) of Sun Yun of Tun-hwang.”
² Western countries (sí yu).
³ Tun-hwang, situated on a branch of the Bulunghir river, vide ante, p. xxiv. n.
⁴ At the fall of the Tain dynasty (420 A.D.), the northern provinces of China became the possession of a powerful Tartar tribe known as the Wei. A native dynasty (the South-
female. From their cohabiting in this manner, the name rat-bird cave is derived.

Ascending the Chih-Ling and proceeding westward twenty-three days, having crossed the Drifting Sands, they arrived at the country of the Tuh-kiueh-'hun. Along the road the cold was very severe, whilst the high winds, and the driving snow, and the pelting sand and gravel were so bad, that it was impossible to raise one's eyes without getting them filled. The chief city of the Tuh-kiueh-'hun and the neighbourhood is agreeably warm. The written character of this country is nearly the same as that of the Wei. The customs and regulations observed by these people are mostly barbarous in character (after the rules of the outside barbarians or foreigners). From this country going west 3500 li, we arrive at the city of Shen-Shen. This city, from the time it set up a king, was seized by the Tuh-kiueh-'hun, and at present there resides in it a military officer (the second general) for subjugating (pacificing) the west. The entire cantonment amounts to 3000 men, who are employed in withstanding the western Hu.

From Shen-Shen going west 1640 li, we arrive at the city of Tso-moh. In this town there are, perhaps, a hundred families resident. The country is not visited with rain, but they irrigate their crops from the streams of water. They know not the use of oxen or ploughs in their husbandry.

In the town is a representation of Buddha with a Bôdhisattva, but certainly not in face like a Tartar. On questioning an old man about it, he said, "This was done by Lu-Kwong, who subdued the Tartars." From ern Sung) ruled in the southern provinces, and has been regarded by subsequent writers as the legitimate one (Edkins).

5 The Eastern Turks. The 'Hun were a southern horde of the T'ieh I'ai Turks. Vide Doolittle's Vocab. and Handbook, vol. ii. p. 206.

6 Shen-shen or Leu-ian (Beal's Bud. Pilg., p. 4, n.), probably the Charchan of Marco Polo; Mayers (Manual, 536) places it near Pidjan; but for remarks on its situation vide Yule's Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 179, n. 1; vol. ii. p. 475; vide also Prejevalsky's Kulja, Remarks by Baron Richtoppen, p. 144, &c.

7 P'u lo [bulak ?].

8 Probably the Ni-mo of Hiuen Tsiang.
this city going westward 1275 li, we arrive at the city of Moh. The flowers and fruits here are just like those of Lo-Yang, but the native buildings and the foreign officials are different in appearance.

From the city Moh going west 22 li, we arrive at the city of Han-Mo. Fifteen li to the south of this city is a large temple, with about 300 priests in it. These priests possess a golden full-length figure of Buddha, in height a chang and \( \frac{1}{6} \) ths (about 18 feet). Its appearance is very imposing, and all the characteristic marks of the body are bright and distinct. Its face was placed repeatedly looking eastward; but the figure, not approving of that, turned about and looked to the west. The old men have the following tradition respecting this figure:—They say that originally it came from the south, transporting itself through the air. The king of Khotan himself seeing it, paid it worship, and attempted to convey it to his city, but in the middle of the route, when they halted at night the figure suddenly disappeared. On dispatching men to look after it, they found it had returned to its old place. Immediately, therefore, (the king) raised a tower, and appointed 400 attendants to sweep and water (the tower). If any of these servitors receive a hurt of any kind, they place some gold leaf on this figure according to the injured part, and so are directly cured. Men in after ages built towers around this image of 18 feet, and the other image-towers, all of which are ornamented with many thousand flags and streamers of variegated silk. There are perhaps as many as 10,000 of these, and more than half of them belonging to the Wei country. Over the flags are inscriptions in the square character, recording the several dates when they were presented; the greater number are of the nineteenth year of "Tai Ho, the second year of King

9 This is probably the Pi-mo of Huien Tsang (Pein, iii. 243), the Pein of Marco Polo. The figure described in the text is also alluded to by Huien Tsang, and is identified with the sandal-wood image of Udyana, king of Kauśāmbī.

10 That is, were presented by sovereigns of the Wei dynasty, or during their reign.
Ming, and the second year of Yen Chang. There was only one flag with the name of the reigning monarch on it, and this was a flag of the period Yaou Tsin (A.D. 406).

From the town of Han-Mo going west 878 li, we arrive at the country of Khotan. The king of this country wears a golden cap on his head, in shape like the comb of a cock; the appendages of the head-dress hang down behind him two feet, and they are made of taffeta (kün), about five inches wide. On state occasions, for the purpose of imposing effect, there is music performed, consisting of drums, horns, and golden cymbals. The king is also attended by one chief Bowman, two spearmen, five halberdiers, and, on his right and left, swordsmen, not exceeding a hundred men. The poorer sort of women here wear trousers, and ride on horseback just as well as their husbands. They burn their dead, and, collecting the ashes, erect towers (fau t'u) over them. In token of mourning they cut their hair and disfigure their faces, as though with grief. Their hair is cut to a length of four inches, and kept so all round. When the king dies, they do not burn his body, but enclose it in a coffin and carry it far off and bury it in the desert. They found a temple to his memory, and, at proper times, pay religious service to his manes.

The king of Khotan was no believer in the law of Buddha. A certain foreign merchantman on a time brought a Bhikshu called Pi-lu-shan (Vairôchana) to this neighbourhood, and located him under a plum-tree to the south of this city. On this an informer approached the king and said, "A strange Śramaṇa has come (to your majesty’s dominions) without permission, and is now

11 The period T'ai-Ho began 477 A.D. and ended 500 A.D., so that there could be no nineteenth year of this period: either the text is faulty or it may possibly refer to the nineteenth year of the reign of Hao Wen Ti, which would be 490 A.D. The other dates named correspond to 502 A.D. and 514 A.D.

12 One hundred and sixty-five years after the establishment of the kingdom of Li-yul (Khotan), the King Vijayasambhava, son of Yeula, ascended the throne, and in the fifth year of his reign the dharma was first introduced into Li-yul (Rock-hill).
residing to the south of the city under the plum-tree." The king, hearing this, was angry, and forthwith went to see Vaiśravaṇa. The Bhikshu then addressed the king as follows: "Ju-lai (Tathāgata) has commissioned me to come here to request your majesty to build for him a perfectly finished pagoda (lit. a pagoda with a surmounting spire or dish), and thus secure to yourself perpetual felicity." The king said, "Let me see Buddha, and then I will obey him." Vaiśravaṇa then sounded a gong; on which Buddha commissioned Rāhula to assume his appearance, and manifest himself in his true likeness in the air. The king prostrated himself on the ground in adoration, and at once made arrangements for founding a temple and vihāra under the tree. Then he caused to be carved a figure of Rāhula; and, lest suddenly it should perish, the king afterwards constructed a chapel for its special preservation. At present it is carefully protected by a sort of shade (jar) that covers it; but, notwithstanding this, the shadow of the figure constantly removes itself outside the building, so that those who behold it cannot help paying it religious service (by circumambulating it). In this place (or chapel) are the shoes of a Pratyēka Buddha, which have up to the present time resisted decay. They are made neither of leather or silk,—in fact, it is impossible to determine what the material is. The extreme limits of the kingdom of Khotan reach about 3000 li or so from east to west.

In the second year of Shan Kwai (519 A.D.) and the 7th month, 29th day, we entered the kingdom of Chū-ku-po (Chakuka—Yerkiang). The people of that country are mountain-dwellers. The five kinds of cereals grow in abundance. In eating these, they make them into cakes. They do not permit the slaughter of animals, and such of them as eat flesh only use that which dies of itself. The customs and spoken language are like those of the people of

---

The expression in the original implies the use of some magical influence to constrain Buddha to send Rāhula.
Khotan, but the written character in use is that of the Brāhmans. The limits of this country can be traversed in about five days.

During the first decade of the 8th month we entered the limits of the country of Han-Pan-to (Kabhanda), and going west six days, we ascended the Tsung-ling mountains; advancing yet three days to the west, we arrived at the city of Kiueh-Yu; and after three days more, to the Puh-ho-i mountains. This spot is extremely cold. The snow accumulates both by winter and summer. In the midst of the mountain is a lake in which dwells a mischievous dragon. Formerly there was a merchant who halted at night by the side of the lake. The dragon just then happened to be very cross, and forthwith pronounced a spell and killed the merchant. The king of Pan-to, hearing of it, gave up the succession to his son, and went to the kingdom of U-chang to acquire knowledge of the spells used by the Brāhmans. After four years, having procured these secrets, he came back to his throne, and, ensconced by the lake, he enchanted the dragon, and, lo! the dragon was changed into a man, who, deeply sensible of his wickedness, approached the king. The king immediately banished him from the Tsung-ling mountains more than 1000 li from the lake. The king of the present time is of the thirteenth generation (from these events). From this spot westward the road is one continuous ascent of the most precipitous character; for a thousand li there are overhanging crags, 10,000 fathoms high, towering up to the very heavens. Compared with this road, the ruggedness of the great pass known as the Mang-men is as nothing, and the eminences of the celebrated Hian mountains (in Honan) are like level country. After entering the Tsung-ling mountains, step by step, we crept upwards for four days,

14 Kabhanda is identified by Yule with Sarikkul and Tash Kurghan. Vide infra, vol. ii. p. 298, n. 49.
15 Or, Kong-ju.
16 This phrase Puh-ho-i may also be translated the “Untrustworthy Mountains.”
17 That is, Kavanha or, Kabhanda or, Sarikkul.
18 Udyāna in Northern India.
and then reached the highest part of the range. From this point as a centre, looking downwards, it seems just as though one was poised in mid-air. The kingdom of Han-pan-to stretches as far as the crest of these mountains. Men say that this is the middle point of heaven and earth. The people of this region use the water of the rivers for irrigating their lands; and when they were told that in the middle country (China) the fields were watered by the rain, they laughed and said, "How could heaven provide enough for all?" To the eastward of the capital of this country there is a rapid river (or a river, Mang-tsin) flowing to the north-east towards Sha-leh (Kashgär). The high lands of the Tsung-ling mountains do not produce trees or shrubs. At this time, viz., the 8th month, the air is icy cold, and the north wind carries along with it the drifting snow for a thousand li. At last, in the middle decade of the 9th month, we entered the kingdom of Poh-ho (Bolor?). The mountains here are as lofty and the gorges deep as ever. The king of the country has built a town, where he resides, for the sake of being in the mountains. The people of the country dress handsomely, only they use some leathern garments. The land is extremely cold—so much so, that the people occupy the caves of the mountains as dwelling-places, and the driving wind and snow often compel both men and beasts to herd together. To the south of this country are the great Snowy Mountains, which, in the morning and evening vapours, rise up like gem-spires.

In the first decade of the 10th month we arrived at the country of the Ye-tha (Ephthalites). The lands of this country are abundantly watered by the mountain streams, which fertilise them, and flow in front of all the dwellings. They have no walled towns, but they keep order by means

19 To the west of the Tsung-ling mountains all the rivers flow to the westward, and enter the sea (Ch. Ed.)
20 That is, perhaps, the Karh-Sou of Klaproth, which flows into the Tir-ab, an affluent of the Yerkiang river; or it may be the Si-to river, on which Yarkand stands, and which empties itself into Lake Lob, in the Sandy Desert.
21 Sha-leh, perhaps for Su-leh, i.e., Kashgär.
of a standing army that constantly moves here and there. These people also use felt garments. The course of the rivers is marked by the verdant shrubs. In the summer the people seek the cool of the mountains; in the winter they disperse themselves through the villages. They have no written character. Their rules of politeness are very defective. They have no knowledge at all of the movements of the heavenly bodies; and, in measuring the year, they have no intercalary month, or any long and short months; but they merely divide the year into twelve parts, and that is all. They receive tribute from all surrounding nations: on the south as far as T'ieh-lo; on the north, the entire country of Læ-Leh, eastward to Khotan, and west to Persia—more than forty countries in all. When they come to the court with their presents for the king, there is spread out a large carpet about forty paces square, which they surround with a sort of rug hung up as a screen. The king puts on his robes of state and takes his seat upon a gilt couch, which is supported by four golden phoenix birds. When the ambassadors of the Great Wei dynasty were presented, (the king), after repeated prostrations, received their letters of instruction. On entering the assembly, one man announces your name and title; then each stranger advances and retires. After the several announcements are over, they break up the assembly. This is the only rule they have; there are no instruments of music visible at all. The royal ladies of the Ye-tha country also wear state robes, which trail on the ground three feet and more; they have special train-bearers for carrying these lengthy robes. They also wear on their heads a horn, in length eight feet and more, three feet of its length being red.

22 This may possibly be Tirabhukti, the present Tirhut. But see ante, p. xvi.

23 The Lā-la or Lāra people occupied Mālava or Valabhi; vide infra, vol. ii. p. 266, n. 71. See also note at the end of this Introduction.

24 The Ye-tha were probably the White Huns, or Ephthalites.

25 I see no other way of translating this passage, although it seems puzzling to know how these royal ladies could carry such an ornament as this upon their heads.
INTRODUCTION.

coral. This they ornamented with all sorts of gay colours, and such is their head-dress. When the royal ladies go abroad, then they are carried; when at home, then they seat themselves on a gilded couch, which is made (from the ivory of?) a six-tusked white elephant, with four lions (for supporters). Except in this particular, the wives of the great ministers are like the royal ladies; they in like manner cover their heads, using horns, from which hang down veils all round, like precious canopies. Both the rich and poor have their distinctive modes of dress. These people are of all the four tribes of barbarians the most powerful. The majority of them do not believe in Buddha. Most of them worship false gods. They kill living creatures and eat their flesh. They use the seven precious substances, which all the neighbouring countries bring as tribute, and gems in great abundance. It is reckoned that the distance of the country of the Ye-tha from our capital is upwards of 20,000 li.

On the first decade of the 11th month we entered the confines of the country of Po-sse (Persia). This territory (ground) is very contracted. Seven days farther on we come to a people who dwell in the mountains and are exceedingly impoverished. Their manners are rough and ill-favoured. On seeing their king, they pay him no honour; and when the king goes out or comes in, his attendants are few. This country has a river which formerly was very shallow; but afterwards, the mountains having subsided, the course of the stream was altered and two lakes were formed. A mischievous dragon took up his residence here and caused many calamities. In the summer he rejoiced to dry up the rain, and in the winter

26 Literally the passage is, "They make the seat from a six-tusked white elephant and four lions."
27 The name of Persia or Eastern Persia extended at this time even to the base of the Tsung-ling mountains (vide Elphinstone’s India). The Parthians assumed the Persian name and affected Persian manners, "διασώσωμι και ἀπομοιωται τὰ Περσικὰ ὧν ἀξιώτεροι, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, Παρθιάοι νομίζεσθαι, Πέρσαι δὲ εἶναι προστόιμανοι," says the Emperor Julian (Or. de Constantin., gest. ii. p. 63; Rawlinson’s Herod., i. 534, n.)
to pile up the snow. Travellers by his influence are subjected to all sorts of inconveniences. The snow is so brilliant that it dazzles the sight; men have to cover their eyes, or they would be blinded by it; but if they pay some religious service to the dragon, they find less difficulty afterwards.

In the middle decade of the 11th month we entered the country of Shie-Mi (Śāmbī?). This country is just beyond the Tsung-ling mountains. The aspect of the land is still rugged; the people are very poor; the rugged narrow road is dangerous—a traveller and his horse can hardly pass along it one at a time. From the country of Po-lu-lai (Bolor) to the country of U-chang (Udyāna) they use iron chains for bridges. These are suspended in the air for the purpose of crossing (over the mountain chasms). On looking downwards no bottom can be perceived; there is nothing on the side to grasp at in case of a slip, but in a moment the body is hurled down 10,000 fathoms. On this account travellers will not cross over in case of high winds.

On the first decade of the 12th month we entered the U-chang country (Udyāna). On the north this country borders on the Tsung-ling mountains; on the south it joins India. The climate is agreeably warm. The territory contains several thousand li. The people and productions are very abundant. The fertility of the soil is equal to that of the plateau of Lin-tsze in China and the climate more equable. This is the place where Pe-lo (Vessantara) gave his child as alms, and where Bōdhisattva gave his body (to the tigress). Though these old stories relate to things so distant, yet they are preserved among the local legends (?). The king of the country religiously observes a vegetable diet; on the great fast-days he pays adoration to Buddha, both morning and evening, with sound of drum, conch, vīna (a sort of lute), flute, and

28 There is no word for li in the text.
29 In Shan-tung.
30 Pe-lo, the first and last syllable in Vessantara.
31 Vide Jul. ii. 6, n.
all kinds of wind instruments. After mid-day he devotes himself to the affairs of government. Supposing a man has committed murder, they do not suffer him to be killed; they only banish him to the desert mountains, affording him just food enough to keep him alive (lit. a bit and a sup). In investigating doubtful cases, they rely on the pure or foul effect of drastic medicines; then, after examination, the punishment is adjusted according to the circumstances. At the proper time they let the streams overflow the land, by which the soil is rendered loamy and fertile. All provisions necessary for man are very abundant, cereals of every kind (lit. of a hundred sorts) flourish, and the different fruits (lit. the five fruits) ripen in great numbers. In the evening the sound of the (convent) bells may be heard on every side, filling the air (world); the earth is covered with flowers of different hues, which succeed each other winter and summer, and are gathered by clergy and laity alike as offerings for Buddha.

The king of the country seeing Sung-Yun (inquired respecting him, and) on their saying that the ambassadors of the Great Wei (dynasty) had come, he courteously received their letters of introduction. On understanding that the Empress Dowager was devotedly attached to the law of Buddha, he immediately turned his face to the east, and, with closed hands and meditative heart, bowed his head; then, sending for a man who could interpret the Wei language, he questioned Sung Yun and said, "Are my honourable visitors men from the region of sunrising?" Sung-Yun answered and said, "Our country is bounded on the east by the great sea; from this the sun rises according to the divine will (the command of Tathāgata)." The king again asked, "Does that country produce holy men?" Sung-Yun then proceeded to enlarge upon the virtues of Confucius, of the Chow and Laou

32 This passage is translated by (R.) thus: "When any matter is involved in doubt, they appeal to drugs, and decide upon the evil of these" (Fa-hian, c. viii. n. i).
(Tseu), of the Chwang (period), and then of the silver walls and golden palaces of Fairy Land (P'eng lai Shan); and then of the spirits, genii, and sages who dwell there; he further dilated on the divination of Kwan-lo, the medicinal art of Hwa-to, and the magical power of Tso-ts'ze; descending on these various subjects, and properly distinguishing their several properties, he finished his address. Then the king said, "If these things are really as your worship says, then truly yours is the land of Buddha, and I ought to pray at the end of my life that I may be born in that country."

After this, Sung-Yun with Hwei Säng left the city for the purpose of inspecting the traces which exist of the teaching (or religion) of Tathâgata. To the east of the river is the place where Buddha dried his clothes. When first Tathâgata came to the country of U-chang, he went to convert a dragon-king. He, being angry with Buddha, raised a violent storm with rain. The saṅghâṭi of Buddha was soaked through and through with the wet. After the rain was over, Buddha stopped on a rock, and, with his face to the east, sat down whilst he dried his robe (kashāya). Although many years have elapsed since then, the traces of the stripes of the garment are as visible as if newly done, and not merely the seams and bare outline, but one can see the marks of the very tissue itself, so that in looking at it, it appears as if the garment had not been removed, and, if one were asked to do it, as if the traces might be lifted up (as the garment itself). There are memorial towers erected on the spot where Buddha sat, and also where he dried his robe. To the west of the river is a tank occupied by a nāga-rāja. By the side of the tank is a temple served by fifty priests and more. The Nāga-rāja ever and anon assumes supernatural appearances. The king of the country propitiates

---

33 One of the three isles of the genii, believed to be in the Eastern Reader's Manual, a. v.v.
34 For these names see Mayers' Sea opposite the coast of China.
him with gold and jewels, and other precious offerings, which he casts into the middle of the tank; such of these as find their way out through a back exit, the priests are permitted to retain. Because the dragon thus provides for the necessary expenses of this temple (clothes and food), therefore men call it the Nāga-rāja Temple.

Eighty lī to the north of the royal city there is the trace of the shoe of Buddha on a rock. They have raised a tower to cover it. The place where the print of the shoe is left on the rock is as if the foot had trodden on soft mud. Its length is undetermined, as at one time it is long, and at another time short. They have now founded a temple on the spot, capable of accommodating seventy priests and more. Twenty paces to the south of the tower is a spring of water issuing from a rock. Buddha once purifying (his mouth), planted a piece of his chewing-stick in the ground; it immediately took root, and is at present a great tree, which the Tartars call Po-lu. To the north of the city is the To-lo temple, in which there are very numerous appliances for the worship of Buddha. The pagoda is high and large. The priests’ chambers are ranged in order round the temple (or tower). There are sixty full-length golden figures (herein). The king, whenever he convenes (or convening yearly) a great assembly, collects the priests in this temple. On these occasions the Śramaṇas within the country flock together in great crowds (like clouds). Sung-Yun and Hwei Sāng, remarking the strict rules and eminent piety (extreme austerities) of those Bhikshus, and from a sense that the example of these priests singularly conduced to increase (their own) religious feelings, remitted two servants for the use of the convent to present the offerings and to water and sweep. From the royal city going south-east over a mountainous district eight days’ journey, we come to the place where Tathāgata, practising austerities, gave up his body to feed

35 Dantakāśāṭa. 36 The Pilu tree—Salvadora Persicu. 37 Tāra (?).
a starving tiger. It is a high mountain, with scarped precipices and towering peaks that pierce the clouds. The fortunate tree\(^{38}\) and the Ling-chi grow here, whilst the groves and fountains (or the forest rivulets), the docile stags, and the variegated hues of the flowers, all delight the eye. Sung-Yun and Hwei Sâng devoted a portion of their travelling funds to erect a pagoda on the crest of the hill, and they inscribed on a stone, in the square character, an account of the great merits of the Wei dynasty. This mountain possesses a temple called “Collected Bones,”\(^{39}\) with 300 priests and more. One hundred and odd li to the south of the royal city is the place where Buddha (Julai), formerly residing in the Mo-hiu country, peeled off his skin for the purpose of writing upon it, and extracted (broke off) a bone of his body for the purpose of writing with it.\(^{40}\) Aśoka-rāja raised a pagoda on this spot for the purpose of enclosing these sacred relics. It is about ten chang high (120 feet). On the spot where he broke off his bone, the marrow ran out and covered the surface of a rock, which yet retains the colour of it, and is unctuous as though it had only recently been done.

To the south-west of the royal city 500 li is the Shen-shi\(^{41}\) hill (or the hill of (the Prince) Sudâna). The sweet waters and delicious fruits (of this place) are spoken of in the sacred books.\(^{42}\) The mountain dells are agreeably warm; the trees and shrubs retain a perpetual verdure. At the time when the pilgrims arrived (ta' i tsulh), the gentle breeze which fanned the air, the songs of the birds, the trees in their spring-tide beauty, the butterflies that fluttered over the numerous flowers, all this caused Sung-Yun, as he gazed on this lovely scenery in a distant

---

33 Remusat translates it the tree kalpa daru.
35 Remusat gives “collected gold.”
40 The text is corrupt. I have substituted chu for tao. Mo-hiu is the Margus; the country would therefore be Margiana. But probably it refers to the Oxus country.
41 Shen-shi, “illustrious resolution;” evidently a mistake for shen-shi, “illustrious charity” (Sudâna).
42 That is, in the Jâtaka book, where the history of Vessantara is recorded.
INTRODUCTION.

land, to revert to home thoughts; and so melancholy were his reflections, that he brought on a severe attack of illness; after a month, however, he obtained some charms of the Brâhmanas, which gave him ease.

To the south-east of the crest of the hill Shen-shi is a rock-cave of the prince, with two chambers to it. Ten paces in front of this cave is a great square stone on which it is said the prince was accustomed to sit; above this Ašoka raised a memorial tower.

One li to the south of the tower is the place of the Pañnasâla (leafy hut) of the prince. One li north-east of the tower, fifty paces down the mountain, is the place where the son and daughter of the prince persisted in going round a tree, and would not depart (with the Brâhman). On this the Brâhmaṇ beat them with rods till the blood flowed down and moistened the earth. This tree still exists, and the ground, stained with blood, now produces a sweet fountain of water. Three li to the west of the cave is the place where the heavenly king Śakra, assuming the appearance of a lion sitting coiled up in the road, intercepted Man-kēa. On the stone are yet traces of his hair and claws: the spot also where Ajitakûta (O-chou-to-kiu) and his disciples nourished the father and mother (i.e., the prince and princess). All these have memorial towers. In this mountain formerly were the beds of 500

43 That is, of the Prince Sudatta or the Bountiful Prince. The whole of the history alluded to in the text may be found in Spence Hardy’s Manual of Buddhism under the Wessantara Jâtaka, p. 116. The account states that Wessantara (the prince alluded to in the text, called “the Bountiful,” because of his extreme charity) gave to the king of Kâlînga a white elephant that had the power to compel rain to fall. On this the subjects of the prince’s father (who was called Sanda) forced him to banish the prince, with his wife (Madri-dêwi) and his two children, to the rock Wankagiri, where the events alluded to in the text occurred. See Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. lxv. fig. 1.

44 This may possibly allude to Madri-dêwi; the symbol kea denotes “a lady.” We read that Śakra caused some wild beasts to appear to keep Madri-dêwi from coming back. See Spence Hardy, loc. cit.; and also the lions in the Sânci sculpture, Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. xxxii. fig. 2.

45 Called Achchhuta in the Singhalese accounts. He was an ascetic who resided in the neighbourhood of the hill.
Arhats, ranged north and south in a double row; their seats also were placed opposite one to another. There is now a great temple here with about 200 priests. To the north of the fountain which supplied the prince with water is a temple. A herd of wild asses frequent this spot for grazing. No one drives them here, but they resort here of their own accord. Daily at early morn they arrive; they take their food at noon, and so they protect the temple. These are spirits who protect the tower (protecting-tower-spirits), commissioned for this purpose by the Rishi Uh-po. In this temple there formerly dwelt a Shami (Srâmanêra), who, being constantly occupied in sifting ashes (belonging to the convent), fell into a state of spiritual ecstasy (Samâdhi). The Karmadâna of the convent had his funeral obsequies performed, and drew him about, without his perceiving it, whilst his skin hung on his shrunken bones. The Rishi Uh-po continued to take the office of the Srâmanêra in the sifting of the ashes. On this the king of the country founded a chapel to the Rishi, and placed in it a figure of him as he appeared, and ornamented it with much gold leaf.

Close to the peak of this hill is a temple of Po-keen, built by the Yakshas. There are about eighty priests in it. They say that the Arhats and Yakshas continually come to offer religious services, to water and sweep the temple, and to gather wood for it. Ordinary priests are not allowed to occupy this temple. The Shaman To-Ying, of the Great Wei dynasty, came to this temple to pay religious worship; but having done so, he departed, without daring to take up his quarters there. During the middle decade of the 4th month of the first year of Ching-Kwong (520 A.D.), we entered the kingdom of Gandhâra. This country closely resembles the territory of U-chang. It was formerly called the country of Ye-po-lo. This is the country which

46 The symbol for "Uh" is doubtful.
47 The steward.
48 Referring, in all probability, to the N.E. of Mungali (the capital of U-chang) gave rise to the river Subhavastu or Swâti, that flows through this territory.
INTRODUCTION.

the Ye-thas destroyed, and afterwards set up Lae-lih to be king over the country; since which events two generations have passed. The disposition of this king (or dynasty) was cruel and vindictive, and he practised the most barbarous atrocities. He did not believe the law of Buddha, but loved to worship demons. The people of the country belonged entirely to the Brāhma caste; they had a great respect for the law of Buddha, and loved to read the sacred books, when suddenly this king came into power, who was strongly opposed to anything of the sort. Entirely self-reliant on his own strength, he had entered on a war with the country of Ki-pin (Cophene), disputing the boundaries of their kingdom, and his troops had been already engaged in it for three years.

The king has 700 war-elephants, each of which carries ten men armed with sword and spear, while the elephants are armed with swords attached to their trunks, with which to fight when at close quarters. The king continually abode with his troops on the frontier, and never returned to his kingdom, in consequence of which the old men had to labour and the common people were oppressed. Sung-Yun repaired to the royal camp to deliver his credentials. The king was very rough with him, and failed to salute him. He sat still whilst receiving the letters. Sung-Yun perceived that these remote barbarians were unfit for exercising public duties, and that their arrogancy refused to be checked. The king now sent for interpreters, and addressed Sung-Yun as follows: “Has your worship not suffered much inconvenience in traversing all these countries and encountering so many dangers

49 Alluding perhaps to the conquest of Kitolo, at the beginning of the fifth century. The king conquered Gandhāra, and made Peshāwar his capital.

50 Or, set up a Lāra dynasty, but the whole of the context is obscure.

51 Then in the possession of the Great Yuchi, whose capital was Kābul.

52 This king was probably the one called Onowei, who reigned under the title “So-lin-teu-pim-teufa Khan,” or, “the prince who seizes and holds firmly.” We are told that he refused homage to the Wei Tartars, alluding probably to the circumstance recorded in this account of Sung-Yun (C.).
on the road?" Sung-Yun replied, "We have been sent by our royal mistress to search for works of the great translation through distant regions. It is true the difficulties of the road are great, yet we cannot (dare not) say we are fatigued; but your majesty and your forces (three armies), as you sojourn here on the frontier of your kingdom, enduring all the changes of heat and cold, are not you also nearly worn out?" The king, replying, said, "It is impossible to submit to such a little country as this, and I am sorry that you should ask such a question." Sung-Yun, on first speaking with the king, (thought), "This barbarian is unable to discharge with courtesy his official duties; he sits still whilst receiving diplomatic papers;" and now being about to reply to him again, he determined to reprove him as a fellow-man (or having the feelings of a man); and so he said, "Mountains are high and low—rivers are great and small—amongst men also there are distinctions, some being noble and others ignoble. The sovereign of the Ye-tha, and also of U-chang, when they received our credentials, did so respectfully; but your majesty alone has paid us no respect." The king, replying, said, "When I see the king of the Wei, then I will pay my respects; but to receive and read his letters whilst seated, what fault can be found with this? When men receive a letter from father or mother, they don't rise from their seats to read it. The Great Wei sovereign is to me (for the nonce) both father and mother, and so, without being unreasonable, I will read the letters you bring me still sitting down." Sung-Yun then took his departure without any official salutation. He took up his quarters in a temple, in which his entertainment was very poor. At this time the country of Po-tai sent two young lions to the king of Gandhâra as a present. Sung-Yun had an opportunity

53 Perhaps the same as the Fa-ti (Betik) of Hiuen Tsang, 400 li to the west of Bokhara (Jul. tome iii. p. 282). But the character of the text is so unfinished, that Po-tai may stand for Badakshán.
of seeing them; he noticed their fiery temper and courageous mien. The pictures of these animals common in China are not at all good resemblances of them.

After this, going west five days, they arrived at the place where Tathāgata made an offering of his head for the sake of a man, where there is both a tower and temple, with about twenty priests. Going west three days, we arrive at the great river Sin-tu. On the west bank of this river is the place where Tathāgata took the form of (or became) a great fish called Ma-kie (Makara), and came out of the river, and for twelve years supported the people with his flesh. On this spot is raised a memorial tower. On the rock are still to be seen the traces of the scales of the fish.

Again going west thirteen days' journey, we arrived at the city of Fo-sha-fu. The river valley (in which this city is built) is a rich loamy soil. The city walls have gate-defences. The houses are thick, and there are very many groves (around the city), whilst fountains of water enrich the soil; and as for the rest, there are costly jewels and gems in abundance. The customs of the people are honest and virtuous. Within this city there is an heretical temple of ancient date called "Sang-teh" (Sânti?). All religious persons frequent it and highly venerate it. To the north of the city one li is the temple of the White Elephant Palace. Within the temple all is devoted to the service of Buddha. There are here stone images highly adorned and very beautiful, very many in number, and covered with gold sufficient to dazzle the eyes. Before the temple and belonging to it is a tree called the White Elephant Tree, from which, in fact, this temple took its origin and name.

54 The Varusha (Po-lou-sha) of Hiuen Tsang.
55 In this passage I take the word fan (all) to be a misprint for Fan (Brâhman), in which case the expression Wei fan would mean "heretical Brahmans." If this be not the correct translation of the passage, then it may perhaps be rendered thus: "Within and without this city there are very many old temples, which are named 'Sang-teh' (sandhi, union or assembly?)."
56 This is probably the Pulasara stūpa of Hiuen Tsang (Ju. tome ii. p. 54).
Its leaves and flowers are like those of the Chinese date-tree, and its fruit begins to ripen in the winter quarter. The tradition common amongst the old people is this: "That when this tree is destroyed, then the old law of Buddha will also perish." Within the temple is a picture of the prince and his wife, and the figure of the Brâhman begging the boy and the girl. The Tartars, seeing this picture, could not refrain from tears.

Again going west one day's journey, we arrive at the place where Tathâgata plucked out his eyes to give in charity. Here also is a tower and a temple. On a stone of the temple is the impress of the foot of Kâsyapa Buddha. Again going west one day, we crossed a deep river, more than 300 paces broad. Sixty li south-west of this we arrive at the capital of the country of Gandhâra. Seven li to the south-east of this city there is a Tsioh-li Feou-thou (a pagoda with a surmounting pole). [The record of Tao-Yung says, "Four li to the east of the city."] Investigating the origin of this tower, we find that when Tathâgata was in the world he was passing once through this country with his disciples on his mission of instruction; on which occasion, when delivering a discourse on the east side of the city, he said, "Three hundred years after my Nirvâna, there will be a king of this country called Ka-ni-si-ka (Kanishka). On this spot he will raise a pagoda (Feou-thou). Accordingly, 300 years after that event, there was a king of this country so called. On one occasion, when going out to the east of the city, he saw four children engaged in making a Buddhist tower out of cows' dung. They had raised it about three feet high, when suddenly they disappeared (or, it fell). [The record states, "One of the children, raising himself in the air and turning towards the king, repeated a verse (gâthâ)."] The king, surprised at this miraculous event,

57 That is, of the Bountiful Prince (Wessantara) referred to before.  
58 Tsioh-li means "a sparrow," but it is phonetic for sîlā, a surmounting spear or trident.  
59 That is, Peshâwar.
immediately erected a tower for the purpose of enclosing (the small pagoda), but gradually the small tower grew higher and higher, and at last went outside and removed itself 400 feet off, and there stationed itself. Then the king proceeded to widen the foundation of the great tower 300 paces and more.\[1\] [The record of Tao-Yung says 390 paces.]

To crown all, he placed a roof-pole upright and even. [The record of Tao-Yung says it was 35 feet high.] Throughout the building he used carved wood; he constructed stairs to lead to the top. The roof consisted of every kind of wood. Altogether there were thirteen storeys; above which there was an iron pillar, three feet high,\[2\] with thirteen gilded circlets. Altogether the height from the ground was 700 feet. [Tao-Yung says the iron pillar was $88\frac{3}{10}$ feet (high), with fifteen encircling discs, and $63\frac{2}{10}$ changs from the ground (743 feet).] This meritorious work being finished, the dung pagoda, as at first, remained three paces south of the great tower. The Brâhmans, not believing that it was really made of dung, dug a hole in it to see. Although years have elapsed since these events, this tower has not corrupted; and although they have tried to fill up the hole with scented earth, they have not been able to do so. It is now enclosed with a protecting canopy. The Tsioh-li pagoda, since its erection, has been three times destroyed by lightning, but the kings of the country have each time restored it. The old men say, “When this pagoda is finally destroyed by lightning, then the law of Buddha also will perish.”

The record of Tao-Yung says, “When the king had finished all the work except getting the iron pillar up to the top, he found that he could not raise this heavy weight. He proceeded, therefore, to erect at the four corners a lofty stage; he expended in the work large trea-

---

\[1\] Hluen Taiang says it was a li and a half in circumference.
\[2\] Most likely there is a mistake in the text; the height of the iron pillar should be 30 feet.
sures, and then he with his queen and princes ascending on to it, burnt incense and scattered flowers, with all their hearts and power of soul; then, with one turn of the windlass, they raised the weight, and so succeeded in elevating it to its place. The Tartars say, therefore, that the four heavenly kings lent their aid in this work, and that, if they had not done so, no human strength would have been of any avail. Within the pagoda there is contained every sort of Buddhist utensil; here are gold and jewelled (vessels) of a thousand forms and vast variety, to name which even would be no easy task. At sunrise the gilded discs of the vane are lit up with dazzling glory, whilst the gentle breeze of morning causes the precious bells (that are suspended from the roof) to tinkle with a pleasing sound. Of all the pagodas of the western world, this one is by far the first (in size and importance). At the first completion of this tower they used true pearls in making the network covering over the top; but after some years, the king, reflecting on the enormous value of this ornamental work, thought thus with himself: "After my decease (funeral) I fear some invader may carry it off"—or "supposing the pagoda should fall, there will be no one with means sufficient to re-build it;" on which he removed the pearl work and placed it in a copper vase, which he removed to the north-west of the pagoda 100 paces, and buried it in the earth. Above the spot he planted a tree, which is called Po-tai (Bodhi), the branches of which, spreading out on each side, with their thick foliage, completely shade the spot from the sun. Underneath the tree on each side there are sitting figures (of Buddha) of the same height, viz., a chang and a half (17 feet). There are always four dragons in attendance to protect these jewels; if a man (only in his heart) covets them, calamities immediately befall him. There is also a stone tablet erected on the spot, and engraved on it are these words of direction: "Hereafter, if this tower is destroyed, after long search, the virtuous man may find
here pearls (of value sufficient) to help him restore it."

Fifty paces to the south of the Tsioh-li pagoda there is a stone tower, in shape perfectly round, and two chang high (27 feet). There are many spiritual indications (shown by it); so that men, by touching it, can find out if they are lucky or unlucky. If they are lucky, then by touching it the golden bells will tinkle; but if unlucky, then, though a man should violently push the tower, no sound would be given out. Hwei Sâng, having travelled from his country, and fearing that he might not have a fortunate return, paid worship to this sacred tower, and sought a sign from it. On this, he did but touch it with his finger, and immediately the bells rang out. Obtaining this omen, he comforted his heart. And the result proved the truth of the augury. When Hwei Sâng first went up to the capital, the Empress had conferred upon him a thousand streamers of a hundred feet in length and of the five colours, and five hundred variegated silk (mats?) of scented grass. The princes, dukes, and nobility had given him two thousand flags. Hwei Sâng, in his journey from Khotan to Gandhâra,—wherever there was a disposition to Buddhism,—had freely distributed these in charity; so that when he arrived here, he had only left one flag of 100 feet in length, given him by the Empress. This he decided to offer as a present to the tower of Śivika-râja, whilst Sung-Yun gave two servants to the Tsioh-li pagoda in perpetuity, to sweep it and water it. Hwei Sâng, out of the little travelling funds he had left, employed a skilful artist to depict on copper the Tsioh-li pagoda and also the four principal pagodas of Śâkyamuni.

After this, going north-west seven days' journey, they crossed a great river (Indus), and arrived at the place where Tathāgata, when he was Śivika-râja, delivered the

63 Or, he consoled himself by the thought that after his undertaking he would have a safe return.

64 Vide Jul., tome ii. p. 137 (infra, p. 125, n. 20), and Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 31.
dove; here there is a temple and a tower also. There
was formerly here a large storehouse of Śivika-rāja, which
was burnt down. The grain which was in it was parched
with the heat, and is still to be found in the neighbour-
hood (of the ruins). If a man take but a single grain
of this, he never suffers from fever; the people of
the country also take it to prevent the power of the
sun hurting them.

[The records of Tao-Yung say, "At Na-ka-lo-ho there
is a skull-bone of Buddha, four inches round, of a yellowish-white colour, hollow underneath, (sufficient) to
receive a man's finger, shining, and in appearance like a
casp-stest."

We then visited the Ki-ka-lam temple. This contains
the robe (kashāya) of Buddha in thirteen pieces. In
measurement this garment is as long as it is broad (or,
when measured, it is sometimes long and sometimes broad).
Here also is the staff of Buddha, in length a chang and
seven-tenths (about 18 feet), in a wooden case, which is
covered with gold leaf. The weight of this staff is very
uncertain; sometimes it is so heavy that a hundred men
cannot raise it, and at other times it is so light that one
man can lift it. In the city of Na-kie (Nagarahāra) is a
tooth of Buddha and also some of his hair, both of which
are contained in precious caskets; morning and evening
religious offerings are made to them.

We next arrive at the cave of Gopolā, where is the
shadow of Buddha. Entering the mountain cavern fifteen
feet, and looking for a long time (or, at a long distance)
at the western side of it opposite the door, then at length
the figure, with its characteristic marks, appears; on
going nearer to look at it, it gradually grows fainter

65 Or, to enable them to bear the power of the sun.
66 Nagarahāra.
67 The Khakhkaram Temple, or the Temple of the Religious Staff (vide Fa-hian, cap. xiii.).
68 The text is here, as in various other parts, corrupt. I have substituted po for lo in Gopolā; and kuh for luh, i.e., "cave" for "deer."
and then disappears. On touching the place where it was with the hand, there is nothing but the bare wall. Gradually retreating, the figure begins to come in view again, and foremost is conspicuous that peculiar mark between the eyebrows (ārṇa), which is so rare among men. Before the cave is a square stone, on which is a trace of Buddha’s foot.

One hundred paces south-west of the cave is the place where Buddha washed his robe. One li to the north of the cave is the stone cell of Mudgalyāyana; to the north of which is a mountain, at the foot of which the great Buddha with his own hand made a pagoda ten chang high (115 feet). They say that when this tower sinks down and enters the earth, then the law of Buddha will perish. There are, moreover, seven towers here, to the south of which is a stone with an inscription on it; they say Buddha himself wrote it. The foreign letters are distinctly legible even to the present time.

Hwei Sāng abode in the country of U-chang two years. The customs of the western foreigners (Tartars) are, to a great extent, similar (with ours); the minor differences we cannot fully detail. When it came to the second month of the second year of Ching-un (521 A.D.) he began to return.

The foregoing account is principally drawn from the private records of Tao-Yung and Sung-Yun. The details given by Hwei Sāng were never wholly recorded.

\[70 I think this is the meaning of mark, face-distinguishing, so rare the passage, “We begin to see the among men.”\]

Note, p. xci.—With reference to Lāla or Lāra, it seems from Cunningham’s remark (Arch. Survey, vol. ii. p. 31) that this term is equivalent to “lord.” The Lāras, according to Huen Tsang, dwelt in Mālava and Valabhi. It was from this region that the ancestors of Vijaya came (Ind. Antiq.), vol. xiii. p. 35, n. 25; see also Journ. of Pāli Text Soc., 1883, p. 59. It is worth consideration whether these Lāras or Lords were akin to the Vṛjjas of Vaiśali, who were also “lords” (Gothic, Fraujas (?), and whether they were not both Northern invaders allied to the Yue-chi. The fable of the daughter of the king of Vaṅga cohabiting with a wild lion (Dippārāvha, chap. ix.) may simply mean that one of these Northerners (who were called Liones) carried off a native girl and cohabited with her. From this union sprang the thirty-two brothers, of whom the eldest were Vijaya and Sumeta (vide Dippārāvha, loc. cit.)
BUDDHIST RECORDS OF THE WESTERN WORLD.

TA-T'ANG-SI-YU-KI.

Records of the Western World (compiled during) the Great T'ang dynasty (A.D. 618-907); translated by Imperial command by Hsüan Tsang, a Doctor of the three Pitakas, and edited by Pien Ki, a Shaman of the Ta-tsong-chi Temple.

PREFACE.

When of yore the precious hair-circle shed forth its flood of light, the sweet dew was poured upon the great thousand (worlds), the golden mirror displayed its brightness, and a fragrant wind was spread over the earth; then it was known that he had appeared in the three worlds.
who is rightly named the lord of the earth. His brightness, indeed, dwells in the four limits (of the universe), but his sublime model was fixed in the middle of the world. Whereupon, as the sun of wisdom declined, the shadow of his doctrine spread to the East, the grand rules of the emperor diffused themselves afar, and his imposing laws reached to the extremities of the West.

There was in the temple of "great benevolence" a doctor of the three Pitakas called Hiuen Tsiang. His common name was Chin-shi. His ancestors came from Ing-chuen; the emperor Hien held the sceptre; reigning at Hwa-chau, he opened the source. The great Shun entertained the messengers as he laid on Li-shan the foundation of his renown. The three venerable ones distinguished themselves during the years of Ki. The six extraordinary (events) shone during the Han period. In penning odes there was one who equalled the clear moon; in wandering by the way there was one who resembled the brilliant stars—(his illustrious ancestors) like fishes in the lake, or as birds assembled before the wind, by their choice services in the world served to produce as their result an illustrious descendant.

The master of the law under these fortunate influences came into the world. In him were joined sweetness and virtue. These roots, combined and deeply planted, produced their fruits rapidly. The source of his wisdom (reason) was deep, and wonderfully it increased. At his opening life he was rosy as the evening vapours and the name is also represented by Hhuien-Chwang.

9 The emperor Tai-tsung of the T'ang dynasty (A.D. 627-649).
10 I adopt this mode of spelling for reasons stated in the introduction. He is generally known from Julien's French version as "Hiouen Thsang." Mr. Mayers (Reader's Manual, p. 290) calls him Huan Chwan; Mr. Wylie, Yu'en-Chwang.
12 That is, Hwang Ti (B.C. 2697), otherwise called Hien-yuen-shi.
13 Hwa-chau was an island of the kingdom of Hwa-siu, where Fo-hi fixed his court.—Jul.
14 For Shun and Li-shan consult Mayers under Shun (op. cit. No. 617).
15 I.e., under the reign of the Chau, whose family name was K'i.—Jul.
(round) as the rising moon. As a boy (collecting-sand age) he was sweet as the odour of cinnamon or the vanilla tree. When he grew up he thoroughly mastered the Fan and Su;\textsuperscript{16} the nine borders\textsuperscript{17} were filled with (bore) his renown, the five prefectures (or palaces) together resounded his praise.

At early dawn he studied the true and the false, and through the night shone forth his goodness; the mirror of his wisdom, fixed on the true receptacle, remained stationary. He considered the limits of life, and was permanently at rest (in the persuasion that) the vermilion ribbon and the violet silken tassels are the pleasing bonds that keep one attached to the world; but the precious car and the red pillow, these are the means of crossing the ford and escaping the world. Wherefore he put away from him the pleasures of sense, and spoke of finding refuge in some hermit retreat. His noble brother Chang-tsi was a master of the law, a pillar and support of the school of Buddha. He was as a dragon or an elephant (or a dragon-elephant) in his own generation, and, as a falcon or a crane, he mounted above those to come. In the court and the wilderness was his fame exalted; within and without was his renown spread. Being deeply affectionate, they loved one another, and so fulfilled the harmony of mutual relationship (parentage). The master of the law was diligent in his labour as a student; he lost not a moment of time, and by his studies he rendered his teachers illustrious, and was an ornament to his place of study. His virtuous qualities were rightly balanced, and he caused the perfume of his fame to extend through the home of his adoption. Whip raised, he travelled on his even way; he mastered the nine divisions of the books, and swallowed (the lake) Mong;\textsuperscript{18} he worked his paddles across the dark ford; he gave his attention to

\textsuperscript{16} That is, the books of the legendary period of Chinese history, from 2852 B.C. to 2697 B.C.

\textsuperscript{17} Or the nine islands (Khiu-kao-teai-in), concerning which there is a passage in the Shi King.—Jul. p. liii.

\textsuperscript{18} To swallow the lake Mong is a metaphorical way of saying he had acquired a vast erudition.—Jul.
BUDDHIST RECORDS OF THE WESTERN WORLD.

(looked down upon) the four Védas, whilst finding Lu small. ¹⁹

From this time he travelled forth and frequented places of discussion, and so passed many years, his merit completed, even as his ability was perfected. Reaching back to the beginning, when the sun and moon first lit up with their brightness the spiritually (created) world, or, as Tseu-yun, with his kerchief suspended at his girdle, startled into life (developed) his spiritual powers, so in his case the golden writing gradually unfolded itself. He waited for the autumn car, yet hastened as the clouds; he moved the handle of jade ²⁰ for a moment, and the mist-crowds were dispersed as the heaped-up waves. As the occasion required, he could use the force of the flying discus or understand the delicate sounds of the lute used in worship. ²¹

With all the fame of these acquirements, he yet embarked in the boat of humility and departed alone. In the land of Hwan-yuen he first broke down the boasting of the iron-clad stomach; ²² in the village of Ping-lo in a moment he exhibited the wonder of the floating wood. ²³ Men near and afar beheld him with admiration as they said one to another, “Long ago we heard of the eight dragons of the family of Sun, but now we see the double wonder (ke) of the gate of Chin. Wonderful are the men of Ju and Ing.” ²⁴ This is true indeed! The master

¹⁹ To find “Lu small” is an allusion to a passage in Mencius: “Confucius mounted on the mountain of the East, and found that the king of Lu (i.e., his own country) was small.” (Jul.) The meaning of the expression in the text seems to be that Hiuen Tsiaang found his own studies contracted and small, so he bent down his head to examine the Védas.

²⁰ The fly-flap of the orator has a jade handle.

²¹ So I have ventured to translate the word pai, although in the addenda at the end of Book I, the word is considered corrupt.

²² This probably refers to some minor encounter or discussion which Hiuen Tsiaang had in his own country. The expression “iron-clad stomach” refers to the story told of one who met with in his travels in India who wore an iron corslet lest his learning should burst open his body.—Si-yu-ki, book x. fol. 9.

²³ I cannot but think this refers to the ability of Hiuen Tsiaang in hitting on the solution of a difficult question, as the blind tortoise with difficulty finds the hole in a floating piece of wood.

²⁴ The rivers Ju and Ing are in the province of Honan. The saying in the text is quoted from a letter addressed
of the law, from his early days till he grew up, pondered in heart the mysterious principles (of religion). His fame spread wide among eminent men.

At this time the schools were mutually contentious; they hastened to grasp the end without regarding the beginning; they seized the flower and rejected the reality; so there followed the contradictory teaching of the North and South, and the confused sounds of “Yes” and “No,” perpetual words! On this he was afflicted at heart, and fearing lest he should be unable to find out completely the errors of translations, he purposed to examine thoroughly the literature of the perfume elephant, and to copy throughout the list of the dragon palace.

With a virtue of unequalled character, and at a time favourable in its indications, he took his staff, dusted his clothes, and set off for distant regions. On this he left behind him the dark waters of the Pa river; he bent his gaze forwards; he then advanced right on to the Tsungling mountains. In following the courses of rivers and crossing the plains he encountered constant dangers. Compared with him Po-wang went but a little way, and the journey of Fa-hien was short indeed. In all the districts through which he journeyed he learnt thoroughly the dialects; he investigated throughout the deep secrets (of religion) and penetrated to the very source of the stream. Thus he was able to correct the books and trans-

by Siun-yu to the emperor during the eastern Han dynasty.—Jul.

If we may venture to give a meaning to this expression, the perfume elephant (Gandhakasti), which so frequently occurs in Buddhist books, it may refer to the solitary elephant (bull elephant) when in rut. A perfume then flows from his ears. The word is also applied to an elephant of the very best class.

The books carried (as the fable says) to the palace of the Nagas to be kept in safety.

It rises in the Lan-thien district of the department of Si’gan-fu in the province of Shen-si.—Jul.

The celebrated general Chang K’ien, who lived in the second century B.C., was the first Chinese who penetrated to the extreme regions of the west. “In B.C. 122 he was sent to negotiate treaties with the kingdom of Si-yu, the present Turkiastan” (Mayers). He was ennobled as the Marquis Po-Wang. Beal, Travels of Fah-hian, &c., pp. xvii, xviii; Pauthier, Jour. Asiat., ser. iii. 1839, p. 260; Julien, Jour. Asiat., ser. iv. tom. x. (1847), or Ind. Ant., vol. ix. pp. 14, 15.

The well-known Chinese Buddhist traveller, A.D. 399-414.
ced (the writers of) India. The texts being transcribed on palm leaves, he then returned to China.

The Emperor T'ai Tsung, curnamed Wen-wang-ti, who held the golden wheel and was seated royally on the throne, waited with impatience for that eminent man. He summoned him therefore to the green enclosure, and, impressed by his past acquirements, he knelt before him in the yellow palace. With his hand he wrote proclama-
tions full of affectionate sentiments; the officers of the interior attended him constantly; condescending to exhibit his illustrious thoughts, he wrote a preface to the sacred doctrine of the Tripitaka, consisting of 780 words. The present emperor (Kao Tsung) had composed in the spring pavilion a sacred record consisting of 579 words, in which he sounded to the bottom the stream of deep mystery and expressed himself in lofty utterances. But now, if he (Hiuen Tsiang) had not displayed his wisdom in the wood of the cock, nor scattered his brightness on the peak of the vulture, how could he (the emperor) have been able to abase his sacred composition in the praise of the ornament of his time?

In virtue of a royal mandate, he (Hiuen Tsiang) translated 657 works from the original Sanskrit (Fan). Having thoroughly examined the different manners of distant countries, the diverse customs of separate people, the various products of the soil and the class divisions of the people, the regions where the royal calendar is received and where the sounds of moral instruction have come, he has composed in twelve books the Ta-t'ang-si-yu-ki. Herein he has collected and written down the most secret principles of the religion of Buddha, couched in language plain and precise. It may be said, indeed, of him, that his works perish not.

30 The green enclosure surrounding the imperial seat or throne.
31 The Kukkuta saṅghārāma near Pāṭna.
32 The Vulture Peak (Griḍhkūṭa parvata), near Rājagriha.
33 The royal calendar is the work distributed annually throughout the empire, containing all information as to the seasons, &c.—Jul.
BOOK I.

GIVING AN ACCOUNT OF THIRTY-FOUR COUNTRIES.

(1) O-ki-ni; (2) K'iu-chi; (3) Poh-luh-kia; (4) Nu-chih-kien; (5) Che-shi; (6) Fei-han; (7) Su-tu-li-sse-na; (8) Sā-mo-kien; (9) Mi-mo-kia; (10) K'ie-po-ta-na; (11) K'insh-shwang-ni-kia; (12) Ta-mi; (13) Ho-han; (14) Pu-ho; (15) Fu-ti; (16) Ho-li-shih-mi-kia; (17) Ki-shwang-na; (18) Chi'ingoh-yen-na; (19) Hwuh-lo-mo; (20) Su-man; (21) Kio-ho-yen-na; (22) Hu-sha; (23) Kho-to-lo; (24) Kiu-mi-to; (25) Po-kia-lang; (26) Hi-lu-sih-min-kien; (27) Ho-lin; (28) Po-ho; (29) Ju-i-mo-to; (30) Hu-shikien; (31) Ta-la-kien; (32) Kie-chi; (33) Fan-yen-na; (34) Kia-pi-shi.

INTRODUCTION.1

If we examine in succession the rules of the emperors,2 or look into the records of the monarchs,3 when P'au I4 began to adjust matters5 and Hien-yuen6 began to let

---

1 The beginning of this Book consists of an introduction, written by Chang Yueh, the author of the preface.—Jul.
2 That is, of the “three sovereigns” called (by some) Fuh-hi, Shén-nung, and Hwang-ti; others substitute Chuh Yung for Hwang-ti.—Mayers, op. cit., p. 367 n.
3 That is, the five kings (Ti) who followed Hwang-ti. The records of these kings and monarchs are, of course, mostly apocryphal.
4 P'au I is the same as Fuh-hi or T'ai Hao; the name is interpreted as “the slaughterer of beasts.”—Mayers.
5 To “adjust matters,” so it seems the expression chuah chān must be interpreted. The symbol chān occupies the place of the East in Wan's arrangement of the Tri-grams, and symbolises “movement.” It is also used for “wood,” because, as some say, “the East symbolises spring, when the growth of vegetation begins.” Others say that the symbol “wood” as the analogue of chān is a misprint for yī, signifying increase (vid. Legge, Yt King, p. 248). But in any case, in the text the idea is of “movement towards order.” Fuh-hi, like his sister Nu-kwa, is said to have reigned “under wood.”
6 Hien Yuen is the same as Hwang-ti; it is the name of the hill near which the emperor dwelt.
fall his robes, we see how they administered the affairs, and first divided the limits of the empire.

When T’ang(-ti) Yao received the call of heaven (to rule), his glory reached to the four quarters; when Yu(-ti) Shun had received his map of the earth, his virtue flowed throughout the nine provinces. From that time there have come down clear records, annals of events; though distant, we may hear the previous doings (of eminent men), or gather their words from the records of their disciples. How much rather when we live under a renowned government, and depend on those without partial aims. Now then our great T’ang emperor (or dynasty), conformed in the highest degree to the heavenly pattern, now holds the reins of government, and unites in one the six parts of the world, and is gloriously established. Like a fourth august monarch, he illustriously administers the empire. His mysterious controlling power flows afar; his auspicious influence (fame or instruction) widely extends: like the heaven and the earth, he covers and sustains (his subjects), or like the resounding wind or the fertilising rain. The eastern barbarians bring him tribute; the western frontiers are brought to submission. He has secured and hands down the succession, appeasing tumult, restoring order.

7 Hwang-ti, among other things, "regulated costume." It is probably to this the text refers.
8 Hwang-ti "mapped out his empire in provinces, and divided the land into regular portions."—Mayers.
9 The great emperor Yao, with his successor Shun, stand at the dawn of Chinese history. His date is 2356 B.C. He was called the Marquis or Lord (hau) of T’ang, because he moved from the principality of Tao to the region of T’ang.
10 That is, Shun, of the family of Yeou-yu: he succeeded Yao, by whom he was adopted after he had disinherited his son Tso Chu, B.C. 2253. He is said to have received the "map of the earth," an expression derived from "the map of the empire into provinces," by Hwang-ti.
11 I have so translated this passage, although Julien takes the opposite sense. I suppose "kung to mean "clear" or "plain."
12 "Without partial aims," rendered by Julien "qui pratique le non-agir." The expression souvèci generally means "absence of self" or "selfish aims."
13 Julien renders this "gouverne à l’instit du ced," which no doubt is the meaning of the text.
14 Are enrolled as tribute-bearers.
15 Referring to the troubles of the last years of the Sui dynasty, which was followed by the T’ang.—Jul.
embraces in himself the virtues of former generations. Using the same currency (or literature), all acknowledge his supreme rule. If his sacred merit be not recorded in history, then it is vain to exalt the great (or his greatness); if it be not to illumine the world, why then shine so brilliantly his mighty deeds?

Hiuen Tsiang, wherever he bent his steps, has described the character of each country. Although he has not examined the country or distinguished the customs (in every case), he has shown himself trustworthy. With respect to the emperor who transcends the five and surpasses the three, we read how all creatures enjoy his benefits, and all who can declare it utter his praises. From the royal city throughout the (five) Indies, men who inhabit the savage wilds, those whose customs are diverse from ours, through the most remote lands, all have received the royal calendar, all have accepted the imperial instructions; alike they praise his warlike merit and sing of his exalted virtues and his true grace of utterance. This is the first thing to be declared. In searching through previous annals no such thing has been seen or heard of. In all the records of biography no such an account has been found. It was necessary first to declare the benefits arising from the imperial rule: now we proceed to narrate facts, which have been gathered either by report or sight, as follows:

This Sahalôka (Soh-ho) world is the three-thousand-

---

16 The symbol 用水 probably refers to the literature used alike by all the subjects of the Great T'ang. It can hardly mean that they all spoke the same language.
17 This at least appears to be the meaning of the passage. Julien translates as follows: "Si les effets merveilleux de cette administration sublime n'étaient point consignés dans l'histoire, comment pourrait-on célébrer dignement les grandes vues (de l'empereur)? Si on ne les publiait par avec éclat, comment pourrait-on mettre en lumière un règne aussi florissant?"
18 I do not like this translation; I should prefer to suppose Chang Yueh's meaning to be that Hiuen Tsiang wherever he went exalted the name of China (Fung t'u; Fung being the name of Fuh-hi), and that he left this impression respecting the emperor who transcends the five and excels the three, &c.
19 The Soh-ho (or So-ho) world is thus defined by Jin-Ch'au (Pâ-kia-lih-t'u, part i. fol. 2): "The region
great-thousand system of worlds (chiliocosm), over which one
Buddha exercises spiritual authority (converts and controls).
In the middle of the great chiliocosm, illuminated by one
sun and moon, are the four continents, in which all the
Buddhas, lords of the world, appear by apparitional
birth, and here also die, for the purpose of guiding holy
men and worldly men.

The mountain called Suméru stands up in the midst of
the great sea firmly fixed on a circle of gold, around which
mountain the sun and moon revolve; this mountain is
perfected by (composed of) four precious substances, and is
the abode of the Dévas. Around this are seven moun-
tain-ranges and seven seas; between each range a flowing
sea of the eight peculiar qualities. Outside the seven
(t'u) over which Buddha reigns is
called Soh-ho-shi-kiai; the old Sú-
tras change it into Sha-po, i.e., saraea.
It is called in the Sútras 'the patient
land'; it is surrounded by an iron
wall, within which are a thousand
myriad worlds (four empires). It
seems from this that (in later times at
least) the Soh-ho world is the same
as the "great chiliocosm of worlds."
The subject of the expansion of the
Buddhist universe from one world
(four empires) to an infinite number
of worlds is fully treated by Jin-
ch'au in the work above named and
in the first part of my Catena of
Buddhist Scriptures. There is an
expression, "tolerant like the earth,"
in the Dhammapada, vii. 95; from this
idea of "patience" attributed to the
earth was probably first derived the
idea of the "patient people or be-
ings" inhabiting the earth; and
hence the lord of the world is called
Sahâmpati, referred first to Mahâ-
brahma, afterwards to Buddha.
Childers says (Pâli Dict. sub voc.) :
"I have never met with Sahaloka or
Sahalokadhâtu in Pâli." Dr. Eitel
in his Handbook translates a passage
quoted as if the Saha world were
the capital of the great chiliocosm
(sub voc. Saha). I should take the
passage to mean that the Saha world
is the collection of all the worlds of
the great chiliocosm.

20 The four continents or empires
are the four divisions or quarters of
the world. — Catena of Buddhist
Scriptures, p. 35.

21 Lords of the world, or honour-
able of the age, a title correspond-
ing to lôkândâha, or (in Pâli) lôka-
nâtho, "protector or saviour of the
world." — Childers, sub voc.

22 I cannot think Julien is right
in translating this passage by "y
rêpandent l'influence de leurs vertus."
The expression "fa-in-sâng" must
refer to the apparitional mode of
birth known as anûpaapàdaka; and
the body assumed by the Buddhás
when thus born is called Nirmanâ-
âkâya.

23 The abode of the Dévas, or
rather, "where the Dévas wander
to and fro and live." The idea of
Suméru corresponds with Olympus.
On the top of each is placed the
"abodes of the gods." In the case
of Suméru, there are thirty-three
gods or palaces. Buddhist books
frequently explain this number
thirty-three as referring to the year,
the four seasons or quarters, and the
twenty-eight days of the month.

24 For the eight distinctive quali-
ties, see Catena, p. 379.
golden mountain-ranges is the salt sea. There are four lands (countries or islands, dvīpas) in the salt sea, which are inhabited. On the east, (Pūrva)vidēha; on the south, Jambudvīpa; on the west, Gōdhanya; on the north, Kurudvīpa.

A golden-wheel monarch rules righteously the four; a silver-wheel monarch rules the three (excepting Kuru); a copper-wheel monarch rules over two (excepting Kuru and Gōdhanya); and an iron-wheel monarch rules over Jambudvīpa only. When first a wheel-king\(^{25}\) is established in power a great wheel-gem appears floating in space, and coming towards him; its character—whether gold, silver, copper, or iron—determines the king’s destiny\(^{26}\) and his name.\(^{27}\)

In the middle of Jambudvīpa there is a lake called Anavatapta,\(^{28}\) to the south of the Fragrant Mountains and to the north of the great Snowy Mountains; it is 800 li and more in circuit; its sides are composed of gold, silver, lapis-lazuli, and crystal; golden sands lie at the bottom, and its waters are clear as a mirror. The great earth Bōdhisattva,\(^{29}\) by the power of his vow, transforms himself into a Nāga-rāja and dwells therein; from his dwelling the cool waters proceed forth and enrich Jambudvīpa (Shen-pu-chau).\(^{30}\)

From the eastern side of the lake, through the mouth of a silver ox, flows the Ganges (King-kia)\(^{31}\) river; encircling the lake once, it enters the south-eastern sea.

\(^{25}\) A wheel-king is a king who holds the wheel or discus of authority or power—Chakravartti Rāja.
\(^{26}\) That is, as the text says, whether he is to rule over four, three, two, or one of the divisions of the earth.
\(^{27}\) His name (i.e., gold-wheel-king, silver-wheel-king, &c.) is derived from this first sign or miraculous event.
\(^{28}\) Defined in a note as "without the annoyance of heat," i.e., cool; an + avatapta. A. R., vol. vi. p. 488.
\(^{29}\) I have translated t'ai-ti-p'u-sha as "the great earth Bōdhisattva," although Julien renders it "the Bōdhisattva of the great universe," because there is such a Bōdhisattva, viz., Kashītigarbha, who was invoked by Buddha at the time of his temptation by Mara; and because I do not think that t'ai ti can be rendered universe. The reference appears to be to one Nāga, viz., Anavatapta Nāgarāja.
\(^{30}\) In the Chinese Jambudvīpa is represented by three symbols, Shen-pu-chau; the last symbol means an "isle" or "islet," and therefore the compound is equivalent to Jambudvīpa.
\(^{31}\) The King-kia or Ganges river was anciently written Hang-ho or
From the south of the lake, through a golden elephant's mouth, proceeds the Sindhu (Sin-to) river; encircling the lake once, it flows into the south-western sea.

From the western side of the lake, from the mouth of a horse of lapis-lazuli, proceeds the river Vakshu (Po tsu), and encircling the lake once, it falls into the north-western sea. From the north side of the lake, through the mouth of a crystal lion, proceeds the river Siṭā (Si-to), and encircling the lake once, it falls into the north-eastern sea.

River Hang. It was also written Hang-kia (Ch. Ed.)

32 Sin-to, the Sindhu or Indus; formerly written Sin-t'au (Ch. Ed.)

33 The Vakshu (Po-tsuer, formerly written Pōh-ch'ē) is the Oxus or Amu-Daria (Idrisi calls it the Wakhsh-ab), which flows from the Sarik-kul lake in the Pamir plateau, lat. 37° 27' N., long. 73° 40' E., at an elevation of about 13,950 feet. It is supplied by the melting snows of the mountains, which rise some 3500 feet higher along its southern shores. It is well called, therefore, the cool lake (Anavatapta). The Oxus issues from the western end of the lake, and after a course of upwards of a thousand miles, in a direction generally north-west, it falls into the southern end of the lake Aral (Wood). This lakeLieut. Wood intended to call Lake Victoria. Its name, Sarik-kul, is not recognised by later travellers, some of whom call it Kul-i-Pamir-kulan, the lake of the Great Pamir. Wood's Oxus, pp. 232, 233, note 1; Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xi. (1870), pp. 122, 123, 449, 450, vol. xlii. pp. 507, vol. xlvi. pp. 390ff., vol. xlvii. p. 34, vol. xlviii. p. 221; Bretschneider, Med. Geog., pp. 166 n., 167.

34 The Siṭā (Si-to, formerly written Si-t'ō) is probably the Yarkand river (the Zarafshan). This river rises (according to Prejevalski) in the Karakorum mountains, at an elevation of 18,850 feet (lat. 35° 30' N. long. 77° 45' E.). It takes a north and then a westerly course, and passing to the eastward of Lake Sarik-kul, bends to the north and finally to the east. It unites with the Kashgar and Khotan rivers, and they conjointly form the Tarim, which flows on to Lake Lob, and is there lost. The Siṭā is sometimes referred to the Jaxartes or the Sarik-kul river (Jour. Roy. As. Soc., N.S., vol. vi. p. 120). In this case it is identified with the Silis of the ancients (Urkert, Geographie der Griechen und Römer, vol. iii. 2, p. 238). It is probably the Side named by Ktesias,—stagnum in India in quo nihil innatet, omnia mergantur (Pliny, H. N., lib. xxxi. 2, 18). This agrees with the Chinese account that the Yellow River flows from the weak water (Joshuā), which is a river fabled to issue from the foot of the Kwis-lun mountain. It owes its name to the peculiar nature of the water, which is incapable of supporting even the weight of a feather (Mayer, sub voc.) This last remark agrees curiously with the comment on Jātaka xxi., referred to by Min-ayef in his Pāli Grammar (p. ix. Guyard's translation), which derives the name of Sidā from sad + ara, adding that the water is so subtle that the feather of a peacock cannot be supported by it, but is swallowed up (Pāli, siditi, from root sad, to sink). A river Silā is mentioned in the Mahābhārata (vi. 6, sl. '219), north of Mēru. Megasthenēs mentions both a fountain and river Silas which had the same peculiarity.
They also say that the streams of this river Sitâ, entering the earth, flow out beneath the Tsâh rock mountain, and give rise to the river of the middle country (China). At the time when there is no paramount wheel-monarch, then the land of Jambudvipa has four rulers.

On the south “the lord of elephants;” the land here is warm and humid, suitable for elephants.

On the west “the lord of treasures;” the land borders on the sea, and abounds in gems.

On the north “the lord of horses;” the country is cold and hard, suitable for horses.

On the east “the lord of men;” the climate is soft and


The “River of China” is the Yellow River. Concerning its source consult Baron Richthofen’s remarks on Prejevalsky’s Lob Nor (p. 137, seq.) The old Chinese opinion was that the source of the river was from the Milky Way—Tin-ho Mayers, p. 311). It was found afterwards that the source was in the Sing-suh-hai, i.e., the “starry sea,” which is marked on the Chinese map, and is probably the same as the Oring-nor.

This clause might also be rendered “when there is no wheel-king allotted to rule over Jambudvipa, then the earth (is divided between) four lords.”

Gajapati, a name given to kings; also the name of an old king of the south of Jambudvipa (Monier Williams, Sansk. Dict. sub voc.) Abu Zaid al Hassan says this was the title given by the Chinese to the “king of the Indies” (Renaudot, Mohamm. Trév. (Eng. edit., 1733), p. 53.

Chattrapati or Chattrapa, “lord of the umbrella,” a title of an ancient king in Jambudvipa (hence Satrap). Julien, p. lxxv. n.; Monier Williams, sub voc.

Aśvakapati (Jul.) I have translated king by “hard.” Julien has omitted it.

Narapati, one of the four mythical kings of Jambudvipa (Mon. Williams, sub voc.) It was assumed
agreeable (exhilarating), and therefore there are many men.

In the country of “the lord of elephants” the people are quick and enthusiastic, and entirely given to learning. They cultivate especially magical arts. They wear a robe thrown across them, with their right shoulder bare; their hair is done up in a ball on the top, and left undressed on the four sides. Their various tribes occupy different towns; their houses are built stage over stage.

In the country of “the lord of treasures” the people have no politeness or justice. They accumulate wealth. Their dress is short, with a left skirt. They cut their hair and cultivate their moustache. They dwell in walled towns and are eager in profiting by trade.

The people of the country of “the lord of horses” are naturally (t’ien tsê) wild and fierce. They are cruel in disposition; they slaughter (animals) and live under large felt tents; they divide like birds (going here and there) attending their flocks.

The land of “the lord of men” is distinguished for the wisdom and virtue and justice of the people. They wear a head-covering and a girdle; the end of their dress

---

42 So I take it. The expression shâ lûk means “to slaughter.” I do not understand Julien’s “et tuent leurs semblables.” There is a passage, however, quoted by Dr. Bretschneider (Notices of the Medieval Geography, &c., of Western Asia, p. 114), from Rubruquis, which alludes to a custom among the Tibetans corresponding to that in Julien’s translation—“post hos sunt Tebet, homines solentes comedere parentes suos defunctus.” But, which is not the case in the text, the barbarians are made to slay their kin in order to eat them. Conf. Rennaud, Relat., tom. i. p. 52; Renaudot, Moham. Trav. (Eng. ed., 1733), pp. 33, 46, and Remarks, p. 53; Rennie, Peking, vol. ii. p. 244; Yule’s Marco Polo, vol. i. pp. 292, 302.

The dynasty ruling at Vijayanagara by in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. The Arab travellers of the ninth century say the Chinese gave this title to the emperor of China, and also to “the king of Greece” (Renaudot, u. a., p. 53). Compare the Homeric epithet, Ἄραξ ἄραγεν. I have taken the “therefore” to be part of this sentence, not of the next.

43 This seems to me to be the meaning—“they wear a cross-scarf.” Julien translates, they wear a bonnet, “posé en travers.”

44 This passage seems to mean that their clothes, which are cut short, overlap to the left—literally, “short, fashion, left, overlapping” (jin, the place where garments overlap.—Medhurst, Ch. Dict., sub voc.)
(girdle) hangs to the right. They have carriages and robes according to rank; they cling to the soil and hardly ever change their abode; they are very earnest in work, and divided into classes.

With respect to the people belonging to these three rulers, the eastern region is considered the best; the doors of their dwellings open towards the east, and when the sun rises in the morning they turn towards it and salute it. In this country the south side is considered the most honourable. Such are the leading characteristics in respect of manners and customs relating to these regions.

But with regard to the rules of politeness observed between the prince and his subjects, between superiors and inferiors, and with respect to laws and literature, the land of “the lord of men” is greatly in advance. The country of “the lord of elephants” is distinguished for rules which relate to purifying the heart and release from the ties of life and death; this is its leading excellency. With these things the sacred books and the royal decrees are occupied. Hearing the reports of the native races and diligently searching out things old and new, and examining those things which came before his eyes and ears, it is thus he (i.e., Hiuen Tsiang) obtained information.

Now Buddha having been born in the western region and his religion having spread eastwards, the sounds of the words translated have been often mistaken, the phrases of the different regions have been misunderstood on account of the wrong sounds, and thus the sense has been lost. The words being wrong, the idea has been perverted. Therefore, as it is said, “it is indispensable to have the right names, in order that there be no mistakes.”

Now, men differ according to the firmness or weakness of their nature, and so the words and the sounds (of their languages) are unlike. This may be the result either of

46 Literally, carriages and robes have order or rank. It might also, without violence, be translated “(they possess) carriages and robes, and have order or rank.”
climate or usage. The produce of the soil differs in the same way, according to the mountains and valleys. With respect to the difference in manners and customs, and also as to the character of the people in the country of "the lord of men," the annals sufficiently explain this. In the country of "the lord of horses" and of "the lord of treasures" the (local) records and the proclamations explain the customs faithfully, so that a brief account can be given of them.

In the country of "the lord of elephants" the previous history of the people is little known. The country is said to be in general wet and warm, and it is also said that the people are virtuous and benevolent. With respect to the history of the country, so far as it has been preserved, we cannot cite it in detail; whether it be that the roads are difficult of access, or on account of the revolutions which have occurred, such is the case. In this way we see at least that the people only await instruction to be brought to submission, and when they have received benefit they will enjoy the blessing of civilization (pay \textit{\textquoteleft}homage\textquoteleft). How difficult to recount the list of those who, coming from far, after encountering the greatest perils (\textit{difficulties}), knock at the gem-gate\textsuperscript{47} with the choice tribute of their country and pay their reverence to the emperor. Wherefore, after he (\textit{Hiuen Tsiang}) had travelled afar in search of the law, in his moments of leisure he has preserved these records of the character of the lands (\textit{visited}). After leaving the black ridge, the manners of the people are savage (\textit{barbarous}). Although the barbarous tribes are intermixed one with the other, yet the different races are distinguishable, and their territories have well-defined boundaries. Generally speaking, as the land suits,\textsuperscript{48} they build walled towns and devote themselves to agriculture and raising cattle. They

\textsuperscript{47} The \textit{gena-gate}, I should think, is the \textit{Yuah-mun}, the western frontier of the empire, not the gate of the emperor\textquoteleft s palace.

\textsuperscript{48} Julien translates this \textit{generally speaking they are sedentary.}
naturally hoard wealth and hold virtue and justice in light esteem. They have no marriage decorum, and no distinction of high or low. The women say, "I consent to use you as a husband and live in submission, (and that is all)." When dead, they burn the body, and there is no determined period for mourning. They scar their faces and cut their ears. They crop their hair and tear their clothes. They slay their herds and offer them in sacrifice to the manes of the dead. When rejoicing, they wear white garments; when in mourning, they clothe themselves in black. Thus we have described briefly points of agreement in the manners and customs of these people. The differences of administration depend on the different countries. With respect to the customs of India, they are contained in the following records.

Leaving the old country of Kau-chang, from this neighbourhood there begins what is called the 'O-ki-ni country.

'O-ki-ni.

(Anciently called Wu-ki.)

The kingdom of 'O-ki-ni (Akni or Agni) is about 500 li from east to west, and about 400 li from north to south.

This sentence appears to allude to the custom of polyandry, or rather to the custom of the province of Kamul (Yule's Marco Polo, bk. i. ch. xii. vol. i. pp. 212, 214). It amounts to this: the woman says, "I consent whilst using you as a husband to submit," or "I consent to use you as a husband whilst dwelling under the roof." Julien translates it: "Ce sont les paroles des femmes qu'on suit; les hommes sont placés audessus d'elles."

They do all this when bereaved, that is, of their relatives, and when they mourn.

Leaving the ancient land of Kau-chang, i.e., the land which had long been occupied by the Uigurs or Turks. The route of Huen Tsiang up to this point is detailed in his life. Leaving Liang-chau (a prefecture in Kansuh), he proceeded to Kwa-chau; he then crossed the Hului river (Bulunghir) and advanced northward and westward through the desert. Having passed Hami and Pidshan, keeping westward, he comes to Turfan, the capital of the Uigur country. He then advances to 'O-ki-ni.

'O-ki-ni. This may otherwise be written Wu-ki,' Julien writes Yen-ki. The symbol 山 is said sometimes to have the sound yen. This country corresponds to Karshar, or Kara-shahr, near the lake Tenghiz (Bagarach).
The chief town of the realm is in circuit 6 or 7 li. On all sides it is girt with hills. The roads are precipitous and easy of defence. Numerous streams unite, and are led in channels to irrigate the fields. The soil is suitable for red millet, winter wheat, scented dates, grapes, pears, and plums, and other fruits. The air is soft and agreeable; the manners of the people are sincere and upright. The written character is, with few differences, like that of India. The clothing (of the people) is of cotton or wool. They go with shorn locks and without head-dress. In commerce they use gold coins, silver coins, and little copper coins. The king is a native of the country; he is brave, but little attentive to (military) plans, yet he loves to speak of his own conquests. This country has no annals. The laws are not settled. There are some ten or more Suñghārāmas with two thousand priests or so, belonging to the Little Vehicle, of the school of the Sarvāstivādas (Shwo-yih-tsai-yu-po). The doctrine of the Śūtras and the requirements of the Vinaya are in agreement with those of India, and the books from which they study are the same. The professors of religion read their books and observe the rules and regulations with purity and strictness. They only eat the three pure aliments, and observe the method known as the "gradual" one.

Going south-west from this country 200 li or so, surmounting a small mountain range and crossing two large rivers, passing westwards through a level valley some 700 li or so, we come to the country of K'iu-chi [anciently written Kuei-tzu].

---

53 T'ai yin, to carry off or lead here and there. The text means they lead the water in channels from reservoirs.
54 The transition doctrine between the Little and Great Vehicle.
55 The route here described to Kuchê would agree tolerably well with that laid down on Prejevalsky's map, viz., 200 li south-west to Korla, passing two rivers (for the Bulghatai-col and the Kaidu-gol, after uniting, appear to bifurcate before reaching Karashahr), crossing a spur of the Kurugh-tagh range, and then keeping westward for about 150 miles across a level valley-plain to Kuchê. See Bretschneider, Not. Med. Geog., p. 149. I may observe that the pronunciation of K'iu in K'iu-chi is determined in a note, as equal to k(u) and (w)uh, that is kuh.
Kingdom of K'iu-chi (Kuchê).

The country of K'iu-chi is from east to west some thousand li or so; from north to south about 600 li. The capital of the realm is from 17 to 18 li in circuit. The soil is suitable for rice and corn, also (a kind of rice called) keng-t'ao; it produces grapes, pomegranates, and numerous species of plums, pears, peaches, and almonds, also grow here. The ground is rich in minerals—gold, copper, iron, and lead, and tin. The air is soft, and the manners of the people honest. The style of writing (literature) is Indian, with some differences. They excel other countries in their skill in playing on the lute and pipe. They clothe themselves with ornamental garments of silk and embroidery. They cut their hair and wear a flowing covering (over their heads). In commerce they use gold, silver, and copper coins. The king is of the K'iu-chi race; his wisdom being small, he is ruled by a powerful minister. The children born of common parents have their heads flattened by the pressure of a wooden board.

There are about one hundred convents (saṅghārāmas) in this country, with five thousand and more disciples. These belong to the Little Vehicle of the school of the Sarvāstivādās (Shwo-yih-tsai-yu-po). Their doctrine (teaching of Śūtras) and their rules of discipline (principles of the Vinaya) are like those of India, and those who read them use the same (originals). They especially hold to the

---

56 A rice which is not glutinous (Jul.), i.e., common rice.
57 The grape in Chinese is pu-ta'u; this is one of the products which the earth is said to have produced naturally, and on which men (all flesh) fed for a period; those who took little retaining their whiteness of colour, those who ate greedily turning dark-coloured. (See in the Chung-hu-mo-ho-ti-king, k. i. fol. 3). The similarity between this word pu-ta'u and the Greek βότρυς has been pointed out by Mr. Kingsmill.
58 The mistake in the text of ming for yuen is pointed out by M. Julien.
59 The symbol ḫō sometimes means "embroidered work done by puncturing leather"—Medhurst. This seems more applicable to the passage than the other meaning of felt or coarse-wool.
60 This is a well-known custom among some tribes of North American Indians.
customs of the “gradual doctrine,” and partake only of the three pure kinds of food. They live purely, and provoke others (by their conduct) to a religious life.

To the north of a city on the eastern borders of the country, in front of a Déva temple, there is a great dragon-lake. The dragons, changing their form, couple with mares. The offspring is a wild species of horse (dragon-horse), difficult to tame and of a fierce nature. The breed of these dragon-horses became docile. This country consequently became famous for its many excellent 61 horses. Former records (of this country) say: “In late times there was a king called ‘Gold Flower,’ who exhibited rare intelligence in the doctrines (of religion). He was able to yoke the dragons to his chariot. When the king wished to disappear, he touched the ears of the dragons with his whip, and forthwith he became invisible.”

From very early time till now there have been no wells in the town, so that the inhabitants have been accustomed to get water from the dragon lake. On these occasions the dragons, changing themselves into the likeness of men, had intercourse with the women. Their children, when born, were powerful and courageous, and swift of foot as the horse. Thus gradually corrupting themselves, the men all became of the dragon breed, and relying on their strength, they became rebellious and disobedient to the royal authority. Then the king, forming an alliance with the Tuh-kiueh (Turks), 62 massacred the men of the city; young and old, all were

61 The word for “excellent” in the original is shen. There is a good deal said about these horses (called shen) in the account of the early intercourse of China with Turkestan (circ. 105 B.C.) See a paper by Mr. Kingsmill in the J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xiv. p. 99 n. Compare Marco Polo, bk. i. cap. 2, “excellent horses known as Turquans,” &c.; also Yule’s note 2, and what is said about the white mares.—Yule’s Marco Polo, vol. i. chap. 61, pp. 45, 46, 291.

62 The Tuh-kiueh, or Turks, are the same as the Hiung-nû or Karanirûs, who drove the Yueh-chi or Yueh-ti (Viddhals) from the neighbourhood of the Chinese frontier (J. R. A. S. loc. cit. p. 77); they are to be distinguished from the Tokhâri, who overran the Graeco-Baktrian kingdom and were driven thence by the Viddhals, who had fled before the Hiung-nû, and attacked the Tokhâri from the west (p. 81). See note 121 infra.
destroyed, so that there was no remnant left; the city is now a waste and uninhabited.

About 40 li to the north of this desert city there are two convents close together on the slope of a mountain, but separated by a stream of water, both named Chau-hu-li, being situated east and west of one another, and accordingly so called. (Here there is) a statue of Buddha, richly adorned and carved with skill surpassing that of men. The occupants of the convents are pure and truthful, and diligent in the discharge of their duties. In (the hall of) the eastern convent, called the Buddha pavilion, there is a jade stone, with a surface of about two feet in width, and of a yellowish white colour; in shape it is like a sea-shell; on its surface is a foot trace of Buddha, 1 foot 8 inches long, and eight inches or so in breadth; at the expiration of every fast-day it emits a bright and sparkling light.

Outside the western gate of the chief city, on the right and left side of the road, there are (two) erect figures of Buddha, about 90 feet high. In the space in front of these statues there is a place erected for the quinquennial assembly. Every year at the autumnal equinox, during ten several days, the priests assemble from all the country in this place. The king and all his people, from the highest to the lowest, on this occasion abstain from public business, and observe a religious fast; they listen to the

---

62 So I think the passage must be translated. It is not the mountain that is divided by a stream, but the convents which stand on the slope of the mountain. The mountain, therefore, would slope to the north or south, and the convents stand east and west of one another, with a stream between them.

63 That is, called the Eastern "Chau-hu-li" and the Western "Chau-hu-li." The expression chau-hu-li, although perfectly intelligible, is difficult to translate. The symbol li probably means a "pair" or "couple;" chau-hu means "supported, or dependent on, the brightness of the sun." The title, therefore, would be "bright-supported pair," referring, of course, to their receiving the eastern and western light of the sun respectively.

64 I do not think there are two images; the text says, "the image of Buddha exquisitely adorned," &c.

65 Called Pañchavarsha or Pañchavarshika, and instituted by Asoka. —Jul. See note 178 infra.
sacred teachings of the law, and pass the days without weariness.

In all the convents there are highly adorned images of Buddha, decorated with precious substances and covered with silken stuffs. These they carry (on stated occasions) in idol-cars, which they call the "procession of images." On these occasions the people flock by thousands to the place of assembly.

On the fifteenth and last day of the month the king of the country and his ministers always consult together respecting affairs of state, and after taking counsel of the chief priests, they publish their decrees.

To the north-west of the meeting-place we cross a river and arrive at a convent called 'O-she-li-ni.67 The hall of this temple is open and spacious. The image of Buddha is beautifully carved. The disciples (religious) are grave and decorous and very diligent in their duties; rude and rough (men)68 come here together; the aged priests are learned and of great talent, and so from distant spots the most eminent men who desire to acquire just principles come here and fix their abode. The king and his ministers and the great men of the realm offer to these priests the four sorts of provision, and their celebrity spreads farther and farther.

The old records say: "A former69 king of this country worshipped the 'three precious' ones.70 Wishing to pay homage to the sacred relics of the outer world, he intrusted the affairs of the empire to his younger brother on the mother's side. The younger brother having received such orders, mutilated himself in order to prevent any evil risings71 (of passion). He enclosed the mutilated

---

67 'O-she-li-ni, according to the Ch. text, means "extraordinary" or "unique;" it may possibly be intended for Asidhāraṇa.
68 So it seems to mean, fei tae ping shi, "criminals and rude (men) come together here."
69 I translate the symbol sien by "former" or "previous;" not by "first" or "the first." It appears to refer to a past king, indefinite as to time.
70 Buddha, the law, the community.
71 Or, "evil suspicions."
parts in a golden casket, and laid it before the king. 'What is this?' inquired the king. In reply he said, 'On the day of your majesty's return home, I pray you open it and see.' The king gave it to the manager of his affairs, who intrusted the casket to a portion of the king's bodyguard to keep. And now, in the end, there were certain mischief-making people who said, 'The king's deputy, in his absence, has been debauching himself in the inner rooms of the women.' The king hearing this, was very angry, and would have subjected his brother to cruel punishment. The brother said, 'I dare not fleen from punishment, but I pray you open the golden casket.' The king accordingly opened it, and saw that it contained a mutilated member. Seeing it, he said, 'What strange thing is this, and what does it signify?' Replying, the brother said, 'Formerly, when the king proposed to go abroad, he ordered me to undertake the affairs of the government. Fearing the slanderous reports that might arise, I mutilated myself. You now have the proof of my foresight. Let the king look benignantly on me.' The king was filled with the deepest reverence and strangely moved with affection; in consequence, he permitted him free ingress and egress throughout his palace.

"After this it happened that the younger brother, going abroad, met by the way a herdsman who was arranging to geld five hundred oxen. On seeing this, he gave himself to reflection, and taking himself as an example of what they were to suffer, he was moved with increased compassion, (and said), 'Are not my present sufferings the consequence of my conduct in some former condition of life?' He forthwith desired with money and precious jewels to redeem this herd of oxen. In consequence of this act of love, he recovered by degrees from mutilation, and on this account he ceased to enter the apartments of the women. The king, filled with wonder, asked him the

72 Inner palace, palace of the women, "the harem."
reason of this, and having heard the matter from beginning to end, looked on him as a 'prodigy' (khi-teh), and from this circumstance the convent took its name, which he built to honour the conduct of his brother and perpetuate his name."

After quitting this country and going about 600 li to the west, traversing a small sandy desert, we come to the country of Poh-luh-kia.

POH-LUH-KIA [BĀLUKĀ OR AKSU].

(Formerly called Che-meh or Kīh-meh.)

The kingdom of Poh-luh-kia is about 600 li from east to west, and 300 li or so from north to south. The chief town is 5 or 6 li in circuit. With regard to the soil, climate, character of the people, the customs, and literature (laws of composition), these are the same as in the country of K'iu-chi. The language (spoken language) differs however a little. It produces a fine sort of cotton and hair-cloth, which are highly valued by neighbouring (frontier) countries.

There are some ten saṅghārāmas here; the number of priests (priests and followers) is about one thousand. These follow the teaching of the "Little Vehicle," and belong to the school of the Sarvāstivādas (Shwo-yih-tsai-yu-po).
Going 300 li or so to the north-west of this country, crossing a stony desert, we come to Ling-shan78 (ice-mountain). This is, in fact, the northern plateau of the T'sung-ling range,77 and from this point the waters mostly have an eastern flow. Both hills and valleys are filled with snow-piles, and it freezes both in spring and summer; if it should thaw for a time, the ice soon forms again. The roads are steep and dangerous, the cold wind is extremely biting, and frequently fierce dragons impede and molest travellers with their inflictions.78 Those who travel this road should not wear red garments nor carry loud-sounding79 calabashes. The least forgetfulness of these precautions entails certain misfortune. A violent wind suddenly rises with storms of flying sand and gravel; those who encounter them, sinking through exhaustion, are almost sure to die.

Going 400 li or so, we come to the great Tsing lake.80

78 Ling-shan, called by the Mongols "Musur-aola," with the same meaning.—V. de St. Martin, p. 266.

77 I translate it thus, because it agrees with Hwuil-lib's account in the Life of Hiuen Tsang, although it may also be rendered "this is (or, these mountains are) to the north of the T'sung-ling. The waters of the plateau," &c. The T'sung-ling mountains are referred to in the Twelfth Book; they are called T'sung, either because the land produces a great quantity of onions (T'sung), or because of the blue (green!) colour of the mountain sides. On the south they join the great Snowy Mountains; on the north they reach to the "hot-sea," i.e., the Tsing lake, of which he next speaks. So that the Icy Mountains form the northern plateau of the range. The rivers which feed the Tarim do, in fact, take their rise here. Conf. Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xl. p. 344; Wood's Oezu, p. xl.

78 The inflictions or calamities alluded to are the sand and gravel storms, referred to below.

79 Or, it may be "ought not to carry calabashes nor shout loudly." Perhaps the reason why calabashes are forbidden is that the water freezing in them might cause them to burst with a loud sound, which would cause the "snow piles" to fall. Why "red garments" should be interdicted is not so plain, unless dragons are enraged by that colour.

80 The Tsing (limpid) lake is the same as Issyk-kul, or Temurtu. It is 5200 feet above the sea-level. It is called Jo-hai, "the hot sea," not because its waters are warm, but because when viewed from the Ice Mountain, it appears hot by comparison (note in the Life of Hiuen Tsang). The direction is not given here; but from Aksu to Issyk-kul is about 110 English miles to the north-east. Conf. Bretschneider, Med. Geog., note 57, p. 37; Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xxxix. pp. 318 ff., vol. xl. pp. 250, 344, 375-399, 449.
This lake is about 1000 li in circuit, extended from east to west, and narrow from north to south. On all sides it is enclosed by mountains, and various streams empty themselves into it and are lost. The colour of the water is a bluish-black, its taste is bitter and salt. The waves of this lake roll along tumultuously as they expend themselves (on the shores). Dragons and fishes inhabit it together. At certain (portentous) occasions scaly monsters rise to the surface, on which travellers passing by put up their prayers for good fortune. Although the water animals are numerous, no one dares (or ventures) to catch them by fishing.

Going 500 li or so to the north-west of the Tsing lake, we arrive at the town of the Su-yeh river. This town is about 6 or 7 li in circuit; here the merchants from surrounding countries congregate and dwell.

The soil is favourable for red millet and for grapes; the woods are not thick, the climate is windy and cold; the people wear garments of twilled wool.

Passing on from Su-yeh westward, there are a great number of deserted towns; in each there is a chieftain (or over each there is established a chief); these are not dependent on one another, but all are in submission to the Tuh-kiueh.

From the town of the Su-yeh river as far as the Kishwang-na country the land is called Su-li, and the people are called by the same name. The literature (written characters) and the spoken language are likewise so called. The primary characters are few; in the begin-

---

81 That is, the town of Su-yeh, situated on the river Chu or Chui. Hwui-lih also calls it the town of Su-yeh (k. ii. fol. 4 a). The same symbol (yeh) is used both in the Si-yu-ki, and the Life of Hiuen Tsang. The site of this town is not now known (vid. V. de St. Martin, ut sup., p. 271). It may be the present Constantinoepol, or perhaps Belasagun, the capital of the Kara-

82 Several tens.

83 Kašanna (Jul.) It is the modern Kesh, in lat. 39° 4' N., long. 66° 50' E. In Eiselt's Handbook (sub Kachania) it is said to be the region near Kermina. See note 116 infra.
ning they were thirty or so in number: the words are composed by the combination of these; these combinations have produced a large and varied vocabulary. They have some literature, which the common sort read together; their mode of writing is handed down from one master to another without interruption, and is thus preserved. Their inner clothing is made of a fine hair-cloth (linen); their outer garments are of skin, their lower garments of linen, short and tight. They adjust their hair so as to leave the top of the head exposed (that is, they shave the top of their heads). Sometimes they shave their hair completely. They wear a silken band round their foreheads. They are tall of stature, but their wills are weak and pusillanimous. They are as a rule crafty and deceitful in their conduct and extremely covetous. Both parent and child plan how to get wealth; and the more they get the more they esteem each other; but the well-to-do and the poor are not distinguished; even when immensely rich, they feed and clothe themselves meanly. The strong bodied cultivate the land; the rest (half) engage in money-getting (business).

Going west from the town Su-yeh 400 li or so, we come to the "Thousand springs." This territory is about 200 li square. On the south are the Snowy Mountains, on the other sides (three boundaries) is level tableland. The soil is well watered; the trees afford a grateful shade, and the flowers in the spring months are varied and like

---

84 So my copy has it: Julien translates it thirty-two.
85 Literally, "the flowing forth from these has gradually become large and varied."
86 "Some historical records" (Shuk-i); or, it may be, "they have books and records."
87 This difficult passage seems to mean that they use linen as an article of clothing; that their upper garments (jackets or jerkins) are of leather; their breeches are of linen, made short and tight.
88 That is, Myn-bulak (Bingheul), a country with innumerable lakes —Eitel. Myn-bulak lies to the north of the road from Aulii-ata to Tersa; the high mountains to which it clings are the Urtak-tau. "The Kirghizes, even now, consider Myn-bulak to be the best place for summer encampment between the Chu and the Syr-Daria." "Here there is good pasturage, with a dense and succulent herbage, and there are numerous clear springs." —Severtsof, *J. R. G. Soc.*, vol. xi. pp. 367-369.
tapestry. There are a thousand springs of water and lakes here, and hence the name. The Khân of the Tuh-kiueh comes to this place every (year) to avoid the heat. There are a number of deer here, many of which are ornamented with bells and rings; 89 they are tame and not afraid of the people, nor do they run away. The Khân is very fond of them, and has forbidden them to be killed on pain of death without remission; hence they are preserved and live out their days.

Going from the Thousand springs westward 140 or 150 li, we come to the town of Ta-lo-sse (Taras). 90 This town is 8 or 9 li in circuit; merchants from all parts assemble and live here with the natives (Tartars). The products and the climate are about the same as Su-yeh.

Going 10 li or so to the south, there is a little deserted town. It had once about 300 houses, occupied by people of China. Some time ago the inhabitants were violently carried off by the Tuh-kiueh, but afterwards assembling a number of their countrymen, they occupied this place in common. 91 Their clothes being worn out, they adopted the Turkish mode of dress, but they have preserved their own native language and customs.

89 Probably the "rings" (hwan) refer to neck-collars.
90 M. Viv. de St. Martin has remarked, in his Mémoire Analytique (Jul., Mém., tom. ii. pp. 267-273), that the distance from Lake Issyk-kul to Taras or Talas (which he places at the town of Turkistán, by the Jaxartes river), is too short by 1000 li; or, in other words, that from Su-yeh to the "Thousand springs" (Bingheul or Myn-bulak), instead of 400 li, should be 1400 li. The same writer explains that in Kiepert’s map of Turkistán there is a locality called Myn-bulak in the heights above the town of Turkistán, about a dozen leagues east from it. This would agree with the 140 or 150 li of Huien Tsiang. But see notes 93 and 95 below, and conf. Bretschneider’s valuable note, Med. Geog., p. 37, and Notes on Chin. Med. Trav., pp. 34, 75, 114; Klaproth, Nouv. Jour. Asiat., tom. xii. p. 283; Deguignes, Hist. des Huns, tom. ii. p. 500, tom. iii. pp. 219, 229; Yule’s Cathay, p. clxv.; Wood’s Ozus, p. xiii.; Rubruquis, in Rec. de Voy. et de Mém., tom iv. pp. 279, 280.
91 The little deserted town alluded to in the text is named elsewhere (St. Martin, Mémoires sur l’Arménie, tom. ii. p. 118). We gather from Huien Tsiang that the inhabitants were originally captives, carried off from China by the Turks, who assembled and formed a community in this place.
Going 200 li or so south-west from this, we come to the town called Peh-shwui ("White Water") 92 This town is 6 or 7 li in circuit. The products of the earth and the climate are very superior to those of Ta-lo-sse.

Going 200 li or so to the south-west, we arrive at the town of Kong-yu, 93 which is about 5 or 6 li in circuit. The plain on which it stands is well watered and fertile, and the verdure of the trees grateful and pleasing. From this going south 40 or 50 li, we come to the country of Nu-chih-kien.

**NU-CHIH-KIEN [NUJKEND].**

The country of Nu-chih-kien 94 is about 1000 li in circuit; the land is fertile, the harvests are abundant, the plants and trees are rich in vegetation, the flowers and

---

92 The town called "White Water" is the Isfjâb of Persian writers according to V. de St. Martin, p. 274.
93 The bearing south-west in this and the preceding case from Turkistân (if, with Julien, we identified that town with Taras) would take us over the Jaxartes and away from Tashkand (Che-shi). In the tabular statement given by St. Martin (p. 274) the bearings and distances are as follows:—From Ta-lo-sse to Peh-shwui, 200 li to the south; Peh-shwui to Kong-yu, 200 li southerly; Kong-yu to Nu-chih-kien, 50 li south; Nu-chih-kien to Che-shi, 200 li west. But the bearing from Taras to the "White Water" (Peh-shwui) is south-west, and from the "White Water" to Kong-yu is again south-west. We have then a short distance of 50 li to the south to Nu-chih-kien, after which there are 200 li west to Tashkand. Working back from Tashkand, which appears to be a certain point according to the distances and bearings given, we reach to about the River Talas, far to the eastward of Turkistân. If Aulié-ata on the Talas (lat. 43° 55' N., long. 71° 24' E., and 110 geog. miles from the river Chu) be his Ta-lo-sse, then his route would lie across the head waters of the Karagati—a feeder of the Chu, and of the Jar-su—an affluent of the Talas, where we should place the Thousand Springs. But Myn-bulak is to the west of the Talas on the way to Tersa (35 miles west of Aulié-ata), which may be Ta-lo-sse. From Tersa, on a river of the same name which flows between Myn-bulak and the Urtak-tau hills, his route must have been to the south-west, either by Chemkent to Tashkand—the same route as was afterwards followed by Chenghiz Khan; or he must have gone over the Aksai hills, on the road to Namangan, into the valley of the Chatkal or Upper Chirchik, and so south-west and then west to Tashkand. Myn-bulak, however, is north-east of Tersa, not east. See Severstof’s account of the country from Lake Issyk-kul to Tashkand in Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xi. pp. 353-358, 363-370, &c., also p. 410. The site of Kong-yu has not been ascertained.
fruit plentiful and agreeable in character. This country is famous for its grapes. There are some hundred towns which are governed by their own separate rulers. They are independent in all their movements. But though they are so distinctly divided one from the other, they are all called by the general name of Nu-chih-kien.

Going hence about 200 li west, we come to the country of Che-shi (stony country).

**CHE-SHI [CHÁJ].**

The country of Che-shi is 1000 or so li in circuit On the west it borders on the river Yeh. It is contracted towards the east and west, and extended towards the north and south. The products and climate are like those of Nu-chih-kien.

There are some ten towns in the country, each governed by its own chief; as there is no common sovereign over them, they are all under the yoke of the Tuh-kiueh. From this in a south-easterly direction some 1000 li or so, there is a country called Fei-han.

**FEI-HAN [FERGHÁNAR].**

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit. It is enclosed by mountains on every side. The soil is rich and fertile, of Taras in note 93 leads us to seek Nu-chih-kien on the Chatkal, to the east of Tashkand.

95 That is, Tashkand, which means in Turkish the "tower" or "residence of (tash) stone" (V. St. Martin, p. 276 n.), corresponding with the explanation in the text. Compare $\dot{a}t\dot{s}wos$ $\tau\omicron\omicron\nu\omicron\sigma\iota$ of Ptolemy, *Geog.*, I. xi. 4, 6, xii. 1, 3, 9, 10; VI. xiii. 2; Ouseley, *Orient. Geog.*, p. 269; Leyden and Erskine's *Memoirs of Baber* (edit. 1826), pp. xi. 99, 102; De guignes, *Hist. G. des Huns*, tom. ii. p. 497, tom. v. pp. 26, 31; Ritter, *Asien*, vol. v. p. 570; Klapproth, *Magaz. Asiat.*, tom. i. p. 31; and Bretschneider, *Med. Geog.*, pp. 159, 160. It is in lat. 41° 19' N., long. 69° 15' E., and in H. Moll's map (1702) is called Al-Chach, and placed 155 miles south-west from "Taras or Dahalan." Rawlinson identifies $\dot{a}t\dot{u}s\omicron\sigma\epsilon\omicron\nu\omicron\sigma\iota\varsigma$ with Tash-kurgán and with Kie-châ of Fabien.— *Jour. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xlii. p. 503. Yule, however, doubts this: Wood's *Oxus*, int. pp. xxxix., xl. 96 The River Yeh, i.e., the Sihun, Syr-daria, or Jaxartes.

97 The distance, about 200 miles south-east of Tashkand, takes us to the upper waters of the Jaxartes, the actual Khanate of Khokand. The pilgrim did not himself go there, but writes from report.
it produces many harvests, and abundance of flowers and fruits. It is favourable for breeding sheep and horses. The climate is windy and cold. The character of the people is one of firmness and courage. Their language differs from that of the neighbouring countries. Their form is rather poor and mean. For ten years or so the country has had no supreme ruler. The strongest rule by force, and are independent one of another. They divide their separate possessions according to the run of the valleys and mountain barriers. Going from this country westward for 1000 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Su-tu-li-sse-na.

**SU-TU-LI-SSE-NA [SUTRISHNA].**

The country of Su-tu-li-sse-na is some 1400 or 1500 li in circuit. On the east it borders on the Yeh river (Jaxartes). This river has its source in the northern plateau of the Tsung-ling range, and flows to the northwest; sometimes it rolls its muddy waters along in quiet, at other times with turbulence. The products and cus-

---

98 Hiuen Tsiang did not go to Ferghânah. The symbol used is chi, not hing. This will explain why the writer of the Life of Hiuen Tsiang (Hwui-lih) omits all mention of Ferghânah, and takes the pilgrim west from Tâshkand to Su-tu-li-sse-na, 1000 li. So that in the text we are to reckon 1000 li (200 miles approximately) not from Khokand, but from Tâshkand. It must be remembered that the kingdom or country of Su-tu-li-sse-na is spoken of, not a town.

99 Sutrishna (Satrughna), also called Ustrash, Ustrasha, Setrasha, and Isterashan) or Urasiana is a country "well known to Arabian geographers, situated between Ferghânah and Samarkand."—V. St. Martin, p. 278. It is described in the text as bordering on the Jaxartes on the east; we may suppose, therefore, that this river was its eastern boundary. It is said to be 1500 li in circuit; we may place the western boundary, therefore, some 500 li to the west of Khojend. This limit would meet the requirements of the text, where the country is described as reaching 1000 li west from Tâshkand. Of course west means to the west of south-west. The town of Sutrishna is now represented by Ura-Tape, Uratappa or Ura-tiubâ, which is some 40 miles south-west from Khojend and 100 miles south-south-west from Tâshkand (lat. 39.57 N., long. 69.57 E.) The Syr-daria, Sihun or Jaxartes, however, is to the north of Uratibu. Ouseley, Orient. Geog., p. 261; Ariana Antig., p. 162; Edrisi (Joubert’s transl.), tom. ii. pp. 203, 206; Baber’s Memoirs, pp. xli, 9.
toms of the people are like those of Che-shi. Since it has had a king, it has been under the rule of the Turks.

North-west from this we enter on a great sandy desert, where there is neither water nor grass. The road is lost in the waste, which appears boundless, and only by looking in the direction of some great mountain, and following the guidance of the bones which lie scattered about, can we know the way in which we ought to go.

Sā-mo-kiēn (Samarkand).

The country of Sā-mo-kiēn is about 1600 or 1700 li in circuit. From east to west it is extended, from north to south it is contracted. The capital of the country is 20 li or so in circuit. It is completely enclosed by rugged land and very populous. The precious merchandise of many foreign countries is stored up here. The soil is rich and productive, and yields abundant harvests. The forest trees afford a thick vegetation, and flowers and fruits are plentiful. The Shen horses are bred here. The inhabitants are skilful in the arts and trades beyond those of other countries. The climate is agreeable and temperate. The people are brave and energetic. This country is in the middle of the Hu people (or this is the middle

100 Here again there is no intimation that Hiuen Tsang traversed this desert. It is merely stated that there is such a desert on the north-west of the kingdom of Sutrishpā. It is the desert of Kizil-kūm. There is no occasion, therefore, to change the direction given in the text. (See Julien’s note in loco). Confi. Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xxxviii. pp. 435, 438, 445.

of the Hu). They are copied by all surrounding people in point of politeness and propriety. The king is full of courage, and the neighbouring countries obey his commands. The soldiers and the horses (cavalry) are strong and numerous, and principally men of Chih-kia. These men of Chih-kia are naturally brave and fierce, and meet death as a refuge (escape or salvation). When they attack, no enemy can stand before them. From this going south-east, there is a country called Mi-mo-ho.

**MI-MO-HO [MAGHIAN].**

The country Mi-mo-ho is about 400 or 500 li in circuit. It lies in the midst of a valley. From east to west it is narrow, and broad from north to south. It is like Sa-mo-kien in point of the customs of the people and products. From this going north, we arrive at the country K'ie-po-ta-na.

**K'IE-PO-TA-NA [KEBÜD].**

The country of K'ie-po-ta-na is about 1400 or 1500 li in circuit. It is broad from east to west, and narrow

---

102 A term applied to the foreign-speaking (Tartar) people by some Chinese authors.
103 These Chakas would seem to be the people of Chagháníán, who were evidently a warlike people.—*Jour. Roy. As. Soc.*, N.S., vol. vi. p. 102.
104 The rice country.—*Ch. Ed.*
105 Here we observe again that Huien Tsiang did not visit Mi-mo-ho, but simply gives a report of it. This place probably corresponds with the district of Maghián (lat. 39° 16' N., long. 67° 42' E.), 50 miles south-east of Samarkand. —*Mayendorf, Voyage a Boukhara*, pp. 161, 493; *Jour. Roy. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xi. pp. 449-451, 460, 461; and vol. xiii. pp. 263 ff., with Fedchenko’s map of the district.
106 The country of people in numbers.—*Ch. Ed.*
107 This district of Kebúd-Mohé-kêt, Këbúd, or Këşbúd, is named by the Arabian geographers (vid. V. de St. Martin, *Mémoire Analytique*, p. 281), but its situation is not given. M. V. de St. Martin places it in a north-westerly direction from Samarkand (vid. Jul. note in loco), but his calculation is founded on a misconception. Huien Tsiang does not reckon from this place to K’iuhshwang-ni-kia, but from Samarkand. This is plain from the use of the word king, and also from Hwul-lih (p. 60).—*Ouseley, Orient. Geog.*, p. 279; *Baber’s Mémoirs*, p. 85.
from north to south. It is like Sa-mo-kien in point of customs and products. Going about 300 li to the west (of Samarkand), we arrive at K’iuh-shwang-ni-kia.

**K’iuh-shwang-ni-kia [Kashania].**

The kingdom of K’iuh-shwang-ni-kia\(^{108}\) is 1400 or 1500 li in circuit; narrow from east to west, broad from north to south. It resembles Sa-mo-kien in point of customs and products. Going 200 li or so west from this country, we arrive at the Ho-han country.\(^{109}\)

**Ho-han [Kuan].**\(^{110}\)

This country is about 1000 li in circuit; in point of customs and products it resembles Sa-mo-kien. Going west from here, we come, after 400 li or so, to the country of Pu-ho.\(^{111}\)

**Pu-ho [Bokhára].**

The Pu-ho\(^{112}\) country is 1600 or 1700 li in circuit; it is broad from east to west, and narrow from north to south. In point of climate and products it is like Sa-mo-kien. Going west from this 400 li or so, we come to the country Fa-ti.\(^{113}\)

---

\(^{108}\) In Chinese "What country?" Kashania, described as a beautiful and important town of Sogd, half way between Samarkand and Bokhára. This exactly suits the text, which places it 300 li (60 miles) west of Samarkand.—Istakhri, Mordtmann’s *Transl.*, p. 131; Edrisi, *Tom. ii.* pp. 199, 201; Ouseley, *Orient. Geog.*, p. 258; Abu’l-Feda, *Choraz. et Marav. Desc.* p. 48.

\(^{109}\) Eastern reposure.—*Ch. Ed.

\(^{110}\) The part of the river of Sogd (Zarafshán) which waters the territory round Bokhára is called Kuan (V. de St. Martin, p. 282). We observe that Hsiuen Tsiang went to Kashania, and there we leave him; the accounts now given are hear-


\(^{111}\) Middle reposure country.—*Ch. Ed.

\(^{112}\) Pu-ho is probably Bokhára; the distance of course is too great, unless we consider the reference to be to the limits of the country. The symbols used by Hwui-lih are the same as in the Si-yu-ki; Julien has misled V. St. Martin by writing "Pou-kho." *Conf. Jour. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xxxviii. p. 432; Baber’s *Mém.*, p. 38; Moorcroft and Trebeck’s *Travels; Wolff’s Mission*; &c.

\(^{113}\) Western reposure country.—*Ch. Ed.*
FA-TI [BETIK]. 114

This country is 400 li or so in circuit. In point of customs and produce it resembles Sa-mo-kien. From this going south-west 500 li or so, we come to the country Ho-li-sih-mi-kia.

HO-LI-SIH-MI-KIA [KHWAÑRAZM].

This country lies parallel with 115 the banks of the river Po-ts'iu (Oxus). From east to west it is 20 or 30 li, from north to south 500 li or so. In point of customs and produce it resembles the country of Fa-ti; the language, however, is a little different.

From the country of Sa-mo-kien 116 going south-west 300 li or so, we come to Ki-shwang-na. 117

114 Fa-ti is no doubt Bétik. The distance from Pu-ho in the text differs from that given by Hwui-lih; the latter gives 100 li, which is doubtless correct. The whole distance from Samarkand west to the Oxus would thus be 1000 li, which corresponds to 200 miles, the actual measurement. The importance of Bétik is derived from its being the most usual place of passage over the river by those going from Bokhara to Khorsan.

115 Ho-li-sih-mi-ka corresponds with Khwárazm. It is the Khorasnia of Strabo, lib. xi. c. 8 (p. 513), Pliny, vi. 16. Pharasmanes, king of the Khorasmii, came to Alexander with 1500 horsemen and said that his kingdom was "next to the nation of the Kolkhi and the Amazon women."—Arrian, Anat., lib. iv. 15; conf. Herodotus, lib. iii. 93, 117; Ptolemy, Geog., lib. vi. c. 12, 4; Q. Curt., vii. 4, viii. 1; Dionys. Per., 746; Steph. Byz. sub voc.; Baber, Mem., p. xxxi. The bearing south-west in the text is west in Hwui-lih. The distance 500 li is the same in both. M. Viv. de St. Martin suggests north-west as the bearing, and adds that Hwui-lih makes the distance 100 li (Mémoire, p. 283, n. 1). This is a mistake. For notices respecting the power of the Khwárizmian empire and the proceedings of Chengiz Khan in destroying it;—vid. R. K. Douglas, Life of Jenghiz Khan, pp. xv. seq. It is true that Hiuen Tsiang says that Khwárazm runs parallel to both banks of the Oxus. But as Hwui-lih says it is bounded on the east by the Oxus, I think the symbol liang (two) is a mistake for si (west), in which case the text would make the country parallel to the west bank of the Oxus.

116 The pilgrim now takes us back to the country of Samarkand; he reckons 300 li in a south-west direction to Kesh. The reckoning, I think, is from Kashania, where we left him; this was probably the western limit of the kingdom of Samarkand. Kesh or Shahr-sabz (39° 24' N., 66° 53' E.) lies due south-west from this point about 70 miles. Baber's Memoirs, pp. 56 and 54; Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xi. p. 400; D'Herbelot, Bib. Or., p. 238; and see note 83 supra.

117 Country of historians.—Ch. Ed.
KI-SHWANG-NA [KESH].

This kingdom is about 1400 or 1500 li in circuit; in customs and produce it resembles the kingdom of Samo-kien.

From this place going south-west 200 li or so, we enter the mountains; the mountain road is steep and precipitous, and the passage along the defiles dangerous and difficult. There are no people or villages, and little water or vegetation. Going along the mountains 300 li or so south-east, we enter the Iron Gates. The pass so called is bordered on the right and left by mountains. These mountains are of prodigious height. The road is narrow, which adds to the difficulty and danger. On both sides there is a rocky wall of an iron colour. Here there are set up double wooden doors, strengthened with iron and furnished with many bells hung up. Because of the protection afforded to the pass by these doors, when closed, the name of iron gates is given.

Passing through the Iron Gates we arrive at the country

---

118 Hwui-lih also gives Ki-shwang-na as the name of this country (conf. V. St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 283, n. 3). 119 The iron gates, Kohlugha or Kallugah (Mong. "a barrier"), a mountain pass about 90 miles south-south-east from Samarkand, 50 miles south-south-east from Kesh, and 8 miles west of Derbent, in lat. 38° 11' N., long. 66° 54' E.

The distance and bearing from Kesh given in the text is south-west 200 li + south-east 300 li, which would give about the right distance in a straight line. These Iron Gates are marked on the Chinese maps; they are called *tich men to*, i.e., the iron-gate-island (or eminence) from which the Muh-ho (Amu) flows. There has been some confusion between this place and the iron gates at Derbend on the Caspian, called by the Turks *Demir Küpî*; compare Yule's *Marco Polo* (book i, cap. iv.), vol. i. pp. 52 and notes, pp. 55-58; and vol. ii. pp. 494, 495, 537. M. V. de St. Martin (Mémoire, p. 284) says that the pilgrim "indicates the beginning of the mountains at 200 li to the south-east of Ki-shwang-na, and the defile properly so called at 300 li farther on, in the same direction." But this is not so; the first bearing is south-west, then through the mountains in a south-east direction. For a notice of the Iron-gate pass, in connection with Chenghiz Khan, see Douglas, u. z., p. 66. Conf. Baber's *Mems.*, pp. xxxvi. 132; Gaubil, *Hist. de Géntchiscan*, p. 237; P. de la Croix, *Hist. de Timurîc*, tom. i. pp. 33, 62, &c.; Edrisi, tom. i. p. 484; Wood's *Oxus*, Yule's int., p. lxi; Markham's *Clav. Vigo*, p. 122; Bretschneider, *Chin.-Med. Tran.*, p. 41 and n.; *Med. Geog.*, p. 61.
of the Tu-ho-lo. The country, from north to south, is about 1000 li or so in extent, from east to west 3000 li or so. On the east it is bounded by the T’sung-ling mountains, on the west it touches on Po-li-sse (Persia), on the south are the great Snowy Mountains, on the north the Iron Gates. The great river Oxus flows through the midst of this country in a westerly direction. For many centuries past the royal race has been extinct. The several chieftains have by force contended for their possessions, and each held their own independently, only relying upon the natural divisions of the country. Thus they have constituted twenty-seven states, divided by natural boundaries, yet as a whole dependent on the Tu-
kiueh tribes (Turks). The climate of this country is warm and damp, and consequently epidemics prevail.

At the end of winter and the beginning of spring rain falls without intermission; therefore from the south of this country, and to the north of Lamghân (Lân-po), diseases from moisture (moist-heat) are common. Hence the priests retire to their rest (rain-rest) on the sixteenth day of the twelfth month, and give up their retirement on the fifteenth day of the third month. This is in consequence of the quantity of rain, and they arrange their instructions accordingly. With regard to the character of the people, it is mean and cowardly; their appearance is low and rustic. Their knowledge of good faith and rectitude extends so far as relates to their dealings one with another. Their language differs somewhat from that of other countries. The number of radical letters in their language is twenty-five; by combining these they express all objects (things) around them. Their writing is across the page, and they read from left to right. Their literary records have increased gradually, and exceed those of the people of Su-li. Most of the people use fine cotton for their dress; some use wool. In commercial transactions they use gold and silver alike. The coins are different in pattern from those of other countries.

Following the course of the Oxus as it flows down from the north, there is the country of Ta-mi.

**TA-MI [TERMED].**

This country is 600 li or so from east to west, and 400 li or so from north to south. The capital of the country

---

123 So Sze-ma-t’sien describes the people of Ta-hia: “There was no supreme ruler; each city and town elected its own chief. Its soldiers were weak and cowards in battle, fit only for traders.” (Kingsmill, loc. cit.)

is about 20 li in circuit, extended from east to west, and narrow from north to south. There are about ten saṅghārāmas with about one thousand monks. The stūpas and the images of the honoured Buddha are noted for various spiritual manifestations. Going east we arrive at Ch’i-ngoh-yen-na. 125

CH’I-NGOH-YEN-NA [CHAGHĀNĪN]. 126

This country extends about 400 li from east to west, and about 500 li from north to south. The capital is about 10 li in circuit. There are some five saṅghārāmas, which contain a few monks. Going east we reach Hwū-h-ło-mo.

HWŪH-ŁO-MO 127 [GARMA].

This country is some 100 li in extent from east to west,

125 Before entering on this excursus, it will be better to explain Huien Ts’iang’s actual route. From a comparison of the text with the narrative of Hwul-lih, it will be seen that, after leaving the Iron gates, and entering Tukhāra, he proceeded across the Oxus to the country called Hwo. This almost certainly is represented by Kunduz, on the eastern bank of the Surkh-āb. Here he met with the eldest son of the Khān of the Turks. This prince had married the sister of the king of Kao-chang, from whom Huyen Ts’iang had letters of recommendation. After some delay the pilgrim proceeded, in company with some priests from Balkh, to that city (Po-ho). Here he remained examining the sacred relics of his religion for some days. From this he departs southwards along the Balkh river to Dara-gaz, and there entering the mountains, he proceeds still southwards to Bāmiyān. So that of all the countries named betwixt the Oxus and the Hindu Kush, Huyen Ts’iang only himself visited Hwo (Kunduz), Po-ho (Balkh), Kie-chi (Gaz), and Fan-yen-na (Bāmiyān). This is gathered not only from the records found in Hwui-lih, but also from the use of the symbol king. The excursus begins from Termed, at which point he probably crossed the Oxus, and proceeds, as the text says, along the northern flow of the river.

126 Chaghānian, or Saghānian, probably corresponds with Hissār, on the Karategin (or northern) branch of the Oxus, as the text says; the town is in lat. 38° 29’ N., long. 69° 17’ E. It included the valley of the Surkhan and Upper Kasirnahan. Jour. R. As. Soc., N.S., vol. vi. p. 96; Baber’s Mem., p. xxxv.; Ouseley, Or. Geog., p. 277; Edrisi, tom. i. p. 480; Wood’s Oxus., Yule’s int., p. lxii; Ocean Highways, 1876, p. 328.

127 From the eastern direction given we should expect the river to bend eastwards; we find it does so. There can be little question, therefore, that Colonel Yule is right in restoring Hwúh-ło-mo to Garma, the capital of Karategin district, on the Surkh-āb or Vakhsh. Jour. R. As. Soc., N.S., vol. vi. p. 96; Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xlii. pp. 338 ff.; Wood’s Oxus, p. lxx; V. de St. Martin conjecturally identified it with Shadamān Hissār.
and 300 li from north to south. The capital is about 10 li in circuit. The king is a Turk of the Hi-su tribe. There are two convents and about one hundred monks. Going east we arrive at the Su-man country.

**SU-MAN [SUMÂN AND KULÂB].**

This country extends 400 li or so from east to west, and 100 li from north to south. The capital of the country is 16 or 17 li in circuit; its king is a Hi-su Turk. There are two convents and a few monks. On the south-west this country borders on the Oxus, and extends to the Kio-ho-yen-na country.

**KIO-HO-YEN-NA [KUBÂDIÂN].**

From east to west it is 200 li or so in extent; from north to south 300 li or so. The capital is 10 li or so in circuit. There are three convents and about one hundred monks. Still eastward is the country of Hu-sha.

**HU-SHA [WAKHSH].**

This country is about 300 li from east to west, and 500 li or so from north to south. The capital is 16 or 17 li in circuit. Going eastwards we arrive at Kho-to-lo.

**KHO-TO-LO [KHOTL].**

This kingdom is 1000 li or so from east to west, and extending to Kubâdiân (Kio-ho-yen-na), which lies between the Kafrmahan and Wagesh rivers,—the town of Kubâdiân being in lat. 37° 21' N., long. 68° 9' E., 57 miles N.N.E. of Khulm. Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xlii. pp 456, 509 n.

128 This expression "going east" need not imply that the country indicated lies to the eastward of the last named, but that it is eastward of the line of advance, which would in this case be the northern branch of the Oxus. Hence this country of Sumân, which has been identified with the Shumân of the Arab geographers (Edrisi, tom. ii. p. 203; Abulfeda, Chor. et Matar., p. 38; Ouseley, Or. Geog., p. 277), is said to have the Oxus on the south-west, extending to Kubâdiân (Kio-ho-yen-na), which lies between the Kafrmahan and Wagesh rivers,—the town of Kubâdiân being in lat. 37° 21' N., long. 68° 9' E., 57 miles N.N.E. of Khulm. Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xlii. pp 456, 509 n.


130 Kho-to-lo is represented by Khotl or Khotlân, the Kutl of
the same from north to south. The capital is 20 li or so in circuit. On the east it borders on the Tsung-lung mountains, and extends to the country of Kiu-mi-to.

**KIU-MI-TO [KUMIDHA,\(^{131}\) OR DARWAZ AND ROŠHĀN].**

This country extends 2000 li from east to west, and about 200 li from north to south. It is in the midst of the great Tsung-lung mountains. The capital of the country is about 20 li in circuit. On the south-west it borders on the river Oxus;\(^{132}\) on the south it touches the country of Shi-ki-ni.\(^{133}\)

Passing the Oxus on the south,\(^{134}\) we come to the kingdom of Ta-mo-sih-teh-ti,\(^{135}\) the kingdom of Po-fo-


Kiu-mi-to would correctly be restored to Kumidha, which naturally represents the country of the Kómédai of Ptolemy (*Geog.*, lib. vi. c. 12, 3, c. 13, 2, 3; lib. vii. c. 1, 42), through which the ancient caravans travelled eastward for silk. It corresponds with Darwáz (the gate), or the valley of Ráaht. See *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N.S., vol. vi. pp. 97, 98; *Jour. Asiat.*, ser. vi. tom. v. p. 270; Édrisi, tom. i. p. 483; *Jour. As. S. Beng.*, vol. xvii. pt. ii. p. 15; Wood’s *Oxus*, pp. xxxix, lxxv, 248, 249; *Jour. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xii. p. 339; *Proc. R. G. S.*, vol. i. (1879) p. 65.

That is, to the south of the Amu or Panja. The pilgrim having described the districts first in a northerly direction, then east of the main stream, now leaving the valley of the Shignon, which runs along the northern side of the Panja, he recounts the names of districts to the south of that river.

Ta-mo-sih-teh-ti was restored doubtfully to Tamanāthi by Julian. It is the Termistat of the Arab geographers, one stage from the famous stone bridge on the Wāsh-āb or Surkh-āb, and one of the chief towns of Khutl.—*Jour. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xlii. p. 508 n. See also Wood’s *Oxus*, pp. lxxi, 260;

Julien has made a mistake (*Mém.*, t. ii. p. 201) in giving the width of the valley at 400 or 500 li; it should be 4 or 5 li, according to the India Office Library copy. It would thus be a valley some 300 miles long, and about a mile wide. On Captain Trotter’s map the long valley of Wakhân extends through more than two degrees of longitude, viz., from 72° to 74° 30’ E. long.; but following the winding of the river it might probably approach the length assigned by Hiuen Tsang. See also Yule, *u. a.* pp. 111–113.


In-po-kin, probably Yamghân, the old name of the valley of the Kokcha, from Jerm upwards.—Yule.

Kiu-lang-na represents Kurán, a name applied to the upper part of the Kokcha valley, about Lajward (Wood). Celebrated for mines of *lapis-lazuli*.—See Yule, *u. a.*

Hi-mo-to-lo. This certainly would correspond with Himata, the Chinese explanation being “under the Snowy Mountains” (*hima + tala*).—Julien, *Mem.*, tom. i. p. 173. Colonel Yule has identified it with Darâim, or, as it is otherwise given, Darah-i-aim. (See his remarks, *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N.S., vol. vi. p. 108; Wood’s *Oxus*, p. lxxxvii.

138 Po-li-ho must be in the neighbourhood of the Varsakh river, a tributary of the Kokcha. Wood, in his map, has a district called Farokhar or Farkhar, which may represent Po-li-ho or Parika.

141 Khi-lî-seh-mo is no doubt Khrishma or Kisim, north of Farkhar, and thirty-two miles east of Tâlikân. Yule’s *Marco Polo*, vol. i. p. 163.

143 Ho-lo-hu represents Râgh, an important sîf in the north of Badakshân between the Kokcha and the Oxus (Yule).

146 O-li-ni. This, as Colonel Yule says, “is assuredly a district on both sides of the Oxus,” of which the chief place formerly bore the name of Ahreng; the Hazrat Imâm of Wood’s map, 26 miles north of Kunduz. Yule, *u. a.* p. 106; P. de la Croix, *H. de Tiûrée*, t. i. pp. 172, 175; *Institutes de Timur*, p. 95.

144 Mung-kin. Julien has by mistake given the circuit of this district as 4000 li (*Mém.*, tom. ii. p. 194), instead of 400 li. This has been observed by Colonel Yule (p. 105, *u. a.*). It probably is represented by the district from Tâlikân and Khânâbad, and the valley of the Forkhan, in the east of Kunduz or Kataghân. This Tâlikân is the Thâlikân of the Arab geographers. Marco Polo visited it. Ouseley, *Orient. Geog.*, pp. 223, 224, 230, 231; Baber’s *Mem.*, pp. 38, 130; Yule’s *Marco Polo*, vol. i. p. 160. Conf. Burns, *Trav. in Bokhara*, vol. iii., p. 8; Wood’s *Oxus*, pp. lxxvi, 156; Bretschneider, *Med. Geog.*, p. 195. There is a district called Munjân, in the south of Badakshân, between the sources of the Kokcha and Gogar-dasht.
we come to the kingdom of Chen-seh-to, the kingdom of 'An-ta-la-po (Andarâb), remarks concerning which may be found in the return records.

Going south-west from the country of Hwo, we arrive at the kingdom of Fo-kia-lang (Baghlân).

**FO-KIA-LANG [BAGHLAN].**

This country is 50 li or so from east to west, and 200 li or so from north to south; the capital is about 10 li in circuit. Going south, we come to the country of Hi-lu-sih-min-kien (Rúl-samangân).

**HI-LU-SIH-MIN-KIEN [PUI-SAMANGÁN].**

This country is about 1000 li in circuit, the capital about 14 or 15 li. On the north-west it borders on the kingdom of Ho-lin (Khulm).

**HO-LIN [KHULM].**

This country is 800 li or so in circuit, the capital is 5 or 6 li in circumference; there are about ten convents and 500 monks. Going west, we come to the country of Po-ho (Balkh).

**PO-HO [BALKH].**

This country is about 800 li from east to west, and 400 li from north to south; on the north it borders on the Oxus. The capital is about 20 li in circuit. It is

---

145 Chen-seh-to, for Kwo-seh-to, i.e., Khousta or Khost, located by Yule between Tálikán and Indarâb. A district now known as Khost is in Afghanistan, south of the Kurrám valley. *Jour. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xxxii. p. 311.

146 An-ta-la-po, i.e., Andarâb or Indarâb. Lat. 35° 40' N.; long. 69° 27' E.


called generally the little Rājagriha. This city, though well (strongly) fortified, is thinly populated. The products of the soil are extremely varied, and the flowers, both on the land and water, would be difficult to enumerate. There are about 100 convents and 3000 monks, who all study the religious teaching of the Little Vehicle.

Outside the city, towards the south-west, there is a convent called Navasaṅghārāma, which was built by a former king of this country. The Masters of Buddhism, who dwell to the north of the great Snowy Mountains, and are authors of Śāstras, occupy this convent only, and continue their estimable labours in it. There is a figure of Buddha here, which is lustrous with (reflects the glory of) noted gems, and the hall in which it stands is also adorned with precious substances of rare value. This is the reason why it has often been robbed by chieftains of neighbouring countries, covetous of gain.

This convent also contains (possesses) a statue of Pi-

149 So I think it ought to be translated. It is called the "Little Rājagriha" in consequence of the numerous Buddhist sites in its neighbourhood, vying in that respect with the Magadha capital. This is plainly intimated in the Life of Huien Tsang (Julien's trans., p. 64), where the Khān says that "it is called the Little Rājagriha: its sacred relics are exceedingly numerous;" the latter being the explanation of the former. On Balkh, see Burnes, Travels (1st ed.), vol. i. pp. 237-240; Ferrier, Caravan Journ., pp. 206, 207; B. de Meynard, Les Prairies d'Or, t. iv. p. 48; Dict. Géog.-Hist. de Perse, p. 571; Jour. R. Geog. Soc., vol. xlii. p. 510; De Herbelot, Bibl. Orient., p. 167; Hyde, Hist. Rel. vct. Pers., p. 494; Yule's Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 158; Cathay, p. 179; Bretschneider, Med. Geog., p. 196; Chin. Med. Trav., pp. 47, 117.

150 Julien gives south-east by mistake.

151 This passage seems to require the use of a past tense, "this convent formerly (su) had;" and so Julien renders it. But it appears to me improbable, if the statue of Vaiśravana was in existence when the foray was made, "in recent times," that it should have been lost or destroyed so soon afterwards. Moreover, the symbol su has sometimes the sense of "a present condition" (as, for example, in the Chung Yung, xiv. 1, 2). Considering the sentence which follows, where the interior of the Saṅghārāma is spoken of, I should prefer to think that su is a mistake for t'üen; they both have the meaning of "before" or "formerly," but t'üen also has the sense of "in front of." In this case the passage would run: "In front of the Saṅghārāma there is a figure of Vaiśravana Dēva." This Dēva was the protector of the convent, not so much that he was Kubēra, the god of wealth, as that he was the guardian of the north.
sha-men (Vaiśravaṇa) Dēva, by whose spiritual influence, in unexpected ways, there is protection afforded to the precincts of the convent. Lately the son of the Khan Yeh-hu (or She-hu), belonging to the Turks, becoming rebellious, Yeh-hu Khan broke up his camping ground, and marched at the head of his horde to make a foray against this convent, desiring to obtain the jewels and precious things with which it was enriched. Having encamped his army in the open ground, not far from the convent, in the night he had a dream. He saw Vaiśravaṇa Dēva, who addressed him thus: “What power do you possess that you dare (to intend) to overthrow this convent?” and then hurling his lance, he transfixed him with it. The Khan, affrighted, awoke, and his heart penetrated with sorrow, he told his dream to his followers, and then, to atone somewhat for his fault, he hastened to the convent to ask permission to confess his crime to the priests; but before he received an answer he died.

Within the convent, in the southern hall of Buddha, there is the washing-basin which Buddha used. It contains about a peck, and is of various colours, which dazzle the eyes. It is difficult to name the gold and stone of which it is made. Again, there is a tooth of Buddha about an inch long, and about eight or nine tenths of an inch in breadth. Its colour is yellowish white; it is pure and shining. Again, there is the sweeping brush of Buddha, made of the

This was perhaps the most northern Buddhist establishment in existence; at any rate, it was built for the convenience of northern priests.

182 This sentence may otherwise be rendered: “Lately the son of the Turk Yeh-hu-khan, whose name was Sse-yeh-hu-khan, breaking up his camping ground,” &c. Yeh-hu is the Khan that Hsiian Tsang met on the rich hunting grounds of the Chu’i river (Vie de Hsien Tsang, p. 55). If the name of his son was Sse-yeh-hu, then doubtless it is he who purposed to sack the Sanghārāma. But if sse has the sense of “rebelling,” then it would be Yeh-hu-khan himself who is referred to. I am inclined to think it must have been the son, whose name was Sse; but the repetition of the name Yeh-hu-khan is perplexing. The symbols po-lo correspond with the Turkish work bulak, camping ground or cantonment.

183 Teou, a dry measure of ten pints.

154 This may mean—the golden-like stone of which it is made has a difficult name, or the metal (gold) and stone are difficult to name.
plant "Ka-she" (कास्ति). It is about two feet long and about seven inches round. Its handle is ornamented with various gems. These three relics are presented with offerings on each of the six fast-days by the assembly of lay and cleric believers. Those who have the greatest faith in worship see the objects emitting a radiance of glory.

To the north of the convent is a stūpa, in height about 200 feet, which is covered with a plaster hard as 155 the diamond, and ornamented with a variety of precious substances. It encloses a sacred relic (she-li), and at times this also reflects a divine splendour.

To the south-west of the convent there is a Vihāra. Many years have elapsed since its foundation was laid. It is the resort (of people) from distant quarters. There are also a large number of men of conspicuous talent. As it would be difficult for the several possessors of the four different degrees (fruits) of holiness to explain accurately their condition of saintship, therefore the Arhats (Lo-han), when about to die, exhibit their spiritual capabilities (miraculous powers), and those who witness such an exhibition found stūpas in honour of the deceased saints. These are closely crowded together here, to the number of several hundreds. Besides these there are some thousand others, who, although they had reached the fruit of holiness (i.e., Arhatship), yet having exhibited no spiritual changes at the end of life, have no memorial erected to them.

At present the number of priests is about 100; so irregular are they morning and night in their duties, that it is hard to tell saints from sinners.156

To the north-west of the capital about 50 li or so we arrive at the town of Ti-wei; 40 li to the north of this

155 It may be "hard as the diamond," or "shining like the diamond."

156 There is evidently a false reading here. I think the character 無, which, in connection with the following character, 有, means "re miss and idle," is for 有, which would qualify 有 in the sense of "absence of idleness." The passage would then read: "Morning and night there is an absence of idleness, but it is difficult to conjecture who are saints and who not."
town is the town of Po-li. In each of these towns there is a stūpa about three chang (30 feet) in height. In old days, when Buddha first attained enlightenment after advancing to the tree of knowledge, he went to the garden of deer; at this time two householders meeting him, and beholding the brilliant appearance of his person, offered him from their store of provisions for their journey some cakes and honey. The lord of the world, for their sakes, preached concerning the happiness of men and Dēvas, and delivered to them, his very first disciples, the five rules of moral conduct and the ten good qualities (śhen, virtuous rules). When they had heard the sermon, they humbly asked for some object to worship (offer gifts). On this Tathāgata delivered to them some of his hair and nail-cutttings. Taking these, the merchants were about to return to their own country, when they asked of Buddha the right way of venerating these relics. Tathāgata forthwith spreading out his Saṅghāti on the ground as a square napkin, next laid down his Uttarāsaṅga and then his Saṅkakshikā; again over these he placed as a cover his begging-pot, on which he erected his mendicant's staff. Thus he placed them in order, making thereby

167 This passage might perhaps also be rendered “after gazing with delight on the Bōdhi tree.” The symbol ទឺស has such a meaning, and it would be in strict agreement with the legend.
168 That is, the garden at Banaras.
169 Two merchant-lords (chàngchêf).
169 A “very first to hear the five,” &c.
170 That is, the five Sīlās and the ten Sīlās. See Childers, Pali Dict., sub sīlā. The story of the two merchants alluded to in the text is one well known in the Buddhist legend. It will be found in Spence Hardy’s Manual of Buddhism (2d ed.) pp. 185, 187, and note; also in the Po-sho-hing-tsan-king, p. 167; Bigandet, Legend of Gaudama, vol. 1. p. 108; Beal, Rom. Legend, p. 236. The incident is also found amongst the Amārkātī sculptures (Tree and Serp. Worship, pl. ivii. fig. 1, middle disc).
172 Their own country was Suvarṇabhumi or Burma.
173 This translation differs from that of M. Julien. I take the construction thus: I sāng kia chi, “taking his saṅghāti;” fanq thee po, “as a square napkin” (i.e., folding it into this shape); hia, “he placed it underneath.” The rest of the sentence, then, will follow as I have translated it. The monument erected as a shrine for the relics given on this occasion is said to be the far-famed Shwê-dagun at Rângun.—As. Researches, vol. xvi., quoted by Spence Hardy, M. B., p. 187 n.
(the figure of) a stūpa. The two men taking the order, each went to his own town, and then, according to the model which the holy one had prescribed, they prepared to build a monument, and thus was the very first stūpa of the Buddhist religion erected.

Some 70 li to the west of this town is a stūpa about two chang (20 feet) in height. This was erected in the time of Kāśyapa Buddha. Leaving the capital and going south-west, entering the declivities of the Snowy Mountains, there is the country of Jui-mo-to [Jumadh?].

JUI-MO-TO [JUMADHA ?].

This country is 50 or 60 li from east to west, and 100 li or so from north to south. The capital is about 10 li in circuit. Towards the south-west is the country of Hu-shi-kien (Jūgān).

HU-SHI-KIEN [JŪZGĀNA].

This country is about 500 li from east to west, and about 1000 li from north to south. The capital is 20 li in circuit. It has many mountains and river-courses. It produces excellent (shen) horses. To the north-west is Ta-la-kien.

TA-LA-KIEN [TĀLIKĀN].

This country is 500 li or so from east to west, and 50 or 60 li from north to south. The capital is 10 li about in circuit. On the west it touches the boundaries of Persia. Going 100 li or so south from the kingdom of Po-ho (Balkh), we arrive at Kie-chi.

164 A position near Sir-i-pul seems indicated.—Yule, u. s., p. 101.
165 On the borders of Khorasān, in the valley of the Murghāb.—Quseley, Orient. Geog., pp. 175, 220; Edrisi, tom. i. pp. 468, 478; Jour. As., ser. vi., tom. xiii. pp. 175-179. There is a Tālikān also in Badak-shān. See n. 145 ante.
166 Here the true itinerary is resumed. Huien Tsang now leaves Balkh, and travels south about twenty miles to Gaz or Darah-Gaz. “This valley will be found in Macartney’s map to Elphinstone, in the map to Ferrier’s Travels, &c., about one march south of Balkh, about half-way between that town and
Kie-chi [Gachi or Gaz].

This country from east to west is 500 li or so, from west to south 300 li. The capital is 4 or 5 li in circuit. The soil is stony, the country a succession of hills. There are but few flowers or fruits, but plenty of beans and corn. The climate is wintry; the manner of the people hard and forbidding. There are some ten convents or so, and about 200 priests. They all belong to the school of the Sarvástivādas, which is a branch of the Little Vehicle.

On the south-east we enter the great Snowy Mountains. These mountains are high and the valleys deep; the precipices and hollows (crevasses) are very dangerous. The wind and snow keep on without intermission; the ice remains through the full summer; the snow-drifts fall into the valleys and block the roads. The mountain spirits and demons (demon sprites) send, in their rage, all sorts of calamities; robbers crossing the path of travellers kill them. Going with difficulty 600 li or so, we leave the country of Tukhāra, and arrive at the kingdom of Fan-yen-na (Bāmiyān).

Fan-yen-na [Bāmiyān].

This kingdom is about 2000 li from east to west, and 300 li from north to south. It is situated in the midst

Dehas. Ibn Haukal also states that the hill-country south of Balkh is called Ghaz (Ouseley, Or. Geog., pp. 243, 244, 270). Darah-Gaz is mentioned in Timur’s Institutes (p. 59), and it was the scene of a rout of Humayūn’s little army by the Uzbek in 1549.—Erskine’s Baber and Humayun, vol. ii. pp. 373, 376; Yule, Jour. R. As. Soc., N.S., vol. vii. p. 102; Jour. As. Soc. Bengal, vol. xxii. p. 164.

167 My text gives 200 as the number of the priests; but the error is in the printing: it ought to be 300.

VOL. I.
of the Snowy Mountains. The people inhabit towns either in the mountains or the valleys, according to circumstances. The capital leans on a steep hill, bordering on a valley 6 or 7 li in length. On the north it is backed by high precipices. It (the country) produces spring-wheat and few flowers or fruits. It is suitable for cattle, and affords pasture for many sheep and horses. The climate is wintry, and the manners of the people hard and uncultivated. The clothes are chiefly made of skin and wool, which are the most suitable for the country. The literature, customary rules, and money used in commerce are the same as those of the Tukhâra country. Their language is a little different, but in point of personal appearance they closely resemble each other. These people are remarkable, among all their neighbours, for a love of religion (a heart of pure faith); from the highest form of worship to the three jewels, down to the worship of the hundred (i.e., different) spirits, there is not the least absence (decrease) of earnestness and the utmost devotion of heart. The merchants, in arranging their prices as they come and go, fall in with the signs afforded by the spirits. If good, they act accordingly; if evil, they seek to propitiate the powers. There are ten convents and about 1000 priests. They belong to the Little Vehicle, and the school of the Lôkôttaravâdins (Shwo-ch'uh-shi-pu).

To the north-east of the royal city there is a mountain, on the declivity of which is placed a stone figure of Buddha,

---

176 The suh-mai is "late wheat;" wheat sown in the spring.
177 Buddha, Dharma, and Saâgha.
178 This sentence might be rendered better thus: "The merchants conjecture in coming and going whether the gods and spirits (or the heavenly spirits) afford propitious omens; if the indications are calamitous, they offer up their prayers (seek religious merit)."

Grote (Hist. Greece, vol. xii. p. 271 n.) supposes that Alexander crossed into Bâktria by Bâmiyân: see Arrian, Anab., lib. iii. c. 29, 1; Strabo, Geog., lib. xv. c. 2, 11; Wilson, Ariana Ant., pp. 179 f.; also note 175 n. 170 Or, "according to the resources or strength of the place."
171 Such it appears is the meaning. The town rests on, or is supported by, a precipitous cliff, and borders on a valley 6 or 7 li in length.
erect, in height 140 or 150 feet.\textsuperscript{175} Its golden hues sparkle on every side, and its precious ornaments dazzle the eyes by their brightness.

To the east of this spot there is a convent, which was built by a former king of the country. To the east of the convent there is a standing figure of Sākya Buddha, made of metallic stone (\textit{teeou-shih} \textsuperscript{176}), in height 100 feet. It has been cast in different parts and joined together, and thus placed in a completed form as it stands.

To the east of the city 12 or 13 li there is a convent, in which there is a figure of Buddha lying in a sleeping position, as when he attained \textit{Nirvāṇa}. The figure is in length about 1000 feet or so.\textsuperscript{177} The king of this (country),

\textsuperscript{175} These rock-hewn figures of Buddha in Bāmiyān have been objects of curiosity down to the present day. They were seen during the campaign in Afghanistan in 1843, and doubtless remain to the present day. The most recent notice of them is in General Kaye's paper. \textit{Proc. R. Geol. Soc.}, vol. i. (1879), pp. 248, 249. He says: "On the opposite side of the valley from the great (standing) image, about a mile to the west, a stone gully leads into the hills. A short way up this there is a nearly insulated rock, on the flat summit of which there is in relief a recumbent figure, bearing a rude resemblance to a huge lizard," which figure the people now call Aṣhadā, or the dragon slain by a Muhammadan pīr (see also ib., p. 338). Hyde, quoting Masālik Mašālik and the \textit{Farhang-i-Jahānīyir} of Ibn Fakred-din Anjū, says the two larger statues are 50 cubits high, one called \textit{Surkh-but} (red image) and the other \textit{Khink-but} (grey image), and at some distance is a smaller one "in forus vetulus," called \textit{Neer}. The \textit{Ain-i-Akbari} says the larger of the two is 80 ells (cubits?) and the lesser 50 in height; Burnes's estimate is 120 and 70 feet. Wilford gives a tolerably minute account of Bāmiyān and these figures.

\textsuperscript{176} This \textit{teeou-shih} is described by Medhurst (\textit{sub voc.}) as "a kind of stone resembling metal. The Chinese call it the finest kind of native copper. It is found in the Po-sze country (Persia) and resembles gold. On the application of fire it assumes a red colour, and does not turn black. When mercury falls to the ground this substance will attract it." But from the statement that each part of this figure was cast separately, it is plain that it was made of metal, probably brass or bronce. Julien translates it by laiton, brass.

\textsuperscript{177} If this sleeping figure of Buddha was lying within the building, it is unreasonable to suppose it could be 1000 feet in length. The sleeping figures of Buddha at Moulmein, I
every time he assembles the great congregation of the Wu-che (Moksha), having sacrificed all his possessions, from his wife and children down to his country’s treasures, gives in addition his own body; then his ministers and the lower order of officers prevail on the priests to barter back these possessions; and in these matters most of their time is taken up.

To the south-west of the convent of the sleeping figure (of Buddha), going 200 li or so, passing the great Snowy Mountains on the east, there is a little watercourse (or valley), which is moist with (the overflowings of) standing springs, bright as mirrors; the herbage here is green and bright. There is a saṅghārāma here with a tooth of Buddha, also the tooth of a Pratyêka Buddha, who lived at the beginning of the Kalpa, which is in length about five inches, and in breadth somewhat less than four inches. Again, there is the tooth of a golden-wheel king, in length three inches, and in surface (breadth) two inches. There is also the iron begging-dish of Sāṇakavasa, a great Arhat, which is capable of holding eight or nine shing (pints). These three sacred objects, am told by a friend who visited the caves there and measured the figures, were 60 yards in length. The figures of Buddha entering Nirvāṇa in the Sinhalese temples are often very large. One in Cave xxvi. at Ajanţâ is fully 23 feet in length. See Ferguson and Burgess, Cave Temples, p. 344; and note 175 supra. The text of Hsiuen Tsang is probably corrupt in this passage.

The Moksha Mahâparishad; a meeting, as it seems, held every five years for the benefit of the priests (Buddhist community). On these occasions there were recitations of the law, and offerings were made to the priesthood. These assemblies were generally made on some favourite mountain. It was also called Pañchavarshisê parishad. See Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 170; and note 66 supra.

179 In such matters as these there is most concern shown.
180 Ts'ang, a light green.
181 A Pratyêka Buddha is one who has attained enlightenment, that is, become a Buddha, but for himself alone.
182 That is, a monarch of the four dvipa or suvarṇachakravartin.
183 Sāṇakavâsa, or Sânavâsika, according to some Northern accounts, was the fourth patriarch or president of the Buddhist community (Fo-sho-king-tsan-king, xiv.) Other authorities speak of him as the third patriarch. See Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.; Rémuzaat, Med. Asiat., tom. i. p. 118; Neumann, Zeitschr. f. d. Kunde d. Morg., vol. iii. p. 124; Euliks, Chin. Buddhism, pp. 66-69; Lassen, Ind. Alterthüme. (3d edit.), vol. ii. p. 1201. He lived 100 years after Buddha.
queathed by the holy personages referred to, are all contained in a yellow-golden sealed case. Again, there is here the Saṅghaṭi robe, in nine pieces of Saṅkavaṣa; the colour is a deep red (rose-red); it is made of the bark (peel) of the She-no-kia plant. Saṅkavaṣa was the disciple of Ānanda. In a former existence he had given the priests garments made of the Saṅkaka plant (fibre), on the conclusion of the rainy season. By the force of this meritorious action during 500 successive births he wore only this (kind of) garment, and at his last birth he was born with it. As his body increased so his robe grew larger, until the time when he was converted by Ānanda and left his home (i.e., became an ascetic). Then his robe changed into a religious garment; and when he was fully ordained it again changed into a Saṅghaṭi, composed of nine pieces. When he was about to arrive at Nirvāṇa he entered into the condition of Samādhi, bordering on complete extinction, and by the force of his vow in attaining wisdom (he arrived at the knowledge) that this khaḍya garment would last till the bequeathed law (testament) of Śākya (was established), and after the destruction of this law then his garment also would perish. At the present time it is a little fading, for faith also is small at this time!

Going eastward from this, we enter the defiles of the Snowy Mountains, cross over the black ridge (Siāh Kōh), and arrive at the country of Kia-pi-shi.

184 I.e., composed of nine parts sewn together.
185 The Saṅkaka plant, a kind of hemp called the Bengal jān.
186 The ordinary succession of the patriarchs is, after Buddha, (1) Kāsya, (2) Ānanda, (3) Madhyāntika, (4) Saṅkavaṣa. The last named is sometimes identified with Yaśa, the son of Kana, who was one of the chief leaders in the second council 100 years after Buddha. He may be the same as Sonaka in the Southern records, who died, according to Rhys Davids (Numismata Orientalia, pp. 46, 47), in A.D. 124; conf. Bühler, Ind. Ant., vol. vii. p. 150.
187 "At the conclusion of the retirement during the rainy season." It was customary for the priests to retire into a fixed residence during the three months of the rainy season. When the retirement broke up (kiia nyān ku jīh) robes and other presents were given to the priests.
188 I.e., a vestment worn by the religious.
189 Or “he secured the privilege, by the earnestness of his vow, that his robe,” &c.
Kia-pi-shi [Kapiśa].

This country is 4000 li or so in circuit. On the north it abuts on the Snowy Mountains, and on three sides it borders on the “black ridge” (the Hindu Kush). The capital of the country is 10 li or so in circuit. It produces cereals of all sorts, and many kinds of fruit-trees. The shen horses are bred here, and there is also the scent (scented root) called Yu-kin. Here also are found objects of merchandise from all parts. The climate is cold and windy. The people are cruel and fierce; their language is coarse and rude; their marriage rites a mere inter-mingling of the sexes. Their literature is like that of the Tukhāra country, but the customs, common language, and rules of behaviour are somewhat different. For clothing they use hair garments (wool); their garments are trimmed with fur. In commerce they use gold and silver coins, and also little copper coins, which in appearance and stamp differ from those of other countries. The king is a Kshattriya by caste. He is of a shrewd

190 Kapiśa is the Kavāra (or Kāśī) of Ptolemy (Geog., lib. vi. c. 13, 4), and the Capissa of Pliny (H. N., lib. vi. c. 23, 25), the capital of a district called Capissene. It is perhaps also the Caphusa of Solinus (Polyh., c. 54). See Lassen’s discussion, Ind. Alterth., vol. iii. pp. 135, 591, 879–889. Ptolemy placed it 155 miles N. 15° E. from Kāśīvra or Kabul, the Kāpūl or Kāvul of the Bundahis; but this distance is far too great. Julien supposes the district to have occupied the Panjšir and Tagāo valleys in the north border of Kohistán, and that the capital may have been either in the valley of the Nijrā or of the Tagāo. Conf. Baber’s Mem., pp. 144 f.; Masson, Narrative of Jour., vol. iii. p. 168; Wilson, Ariana Ant., p. 117; Pānini has Kāpiśi (iv. 2, 99).

191 Curcuma (Jal.) The Curcuma belongs to the natural order of Zingiberaceae; the different species are stemless plants with tuberous roots. The scented species referred to in the text is probably the Curcuma xedoaria, or broad-leaved turmeric. The tubers are aromatic, and when ground the powder is used not only as a stimulating condiment in curry powders, &c., but as a perfume. In Sanskrit it is called haridro, with forty-six synonyms.

192 The original, kwei keu mu yang, has, I suspect, the meaning of “stamp and inscription;” literally it would mean the pattern or fashion (mu yang) of the compass and square (kwei keu), or the circular and square part are different, &c. But the expression may also simply mean, “the size and form.” It possibly refers to the copper coins of Kanishka or Kanērki.
character (nature), \(^{103}\) and being brave and determined, he has brought into subjection the neighbouring countries, some ten of which he rules. He cherishes his people \(^{194}\) with affection, and reverences much the three precious objects of worship. Every year \(^{195}\) he makes a silver figure of Buddha eighteen feet high, and at the same time he convokes an assembly called the Mākṣa Mahāparishad when he gives alms to the poor and wretched, and relieves the bereaved (widows and bereaved).

There are about 100 convents in this country and some 6000 priests. They mostly study the rules of the Great Vehicle. The stūpas and saṅghārāmas are of an imposing height, and are built on high level spots, from which they may be seen on every side, shining in their grandeur (purity). \(^{196}\) There are some ten temples of the Dēvas, and 1000 or so of heretics (different ways of religion); there are naked ascetics, and others who cover themselves with ashes, and some who make chaplets of bones, which they wear as crowns on their heads. \(^{197}\)

To the east of the capital \(^{198}\) 3 or 4 li, at the foot of a

\(^{103}\) This passage may also be rendered: “He is distinguished for wisdom and tact; he is by nature brave and determined,” &c. Hwuilih uses the expression ming lioh, instead of chi lioh; evidently alluding to his tact or shrewdness, by which he had brought the neighbouring countries into his power.

\(^{194}\) “The hundred families.”

\(^{195}\) The expression suī certainly means “a year” or “yearly;” but it may also have the sense of “periodically.” This would suit the context perhaps better, as the “great assemblies” were usually convoked “every five years.”

\(^{196}\) It seems that the passage requires some such rendering as this. The symbol ch‘ang indicates “a high level spot, from which there is a good prospect” (Medhurst). Mr. Simpson’s account of the stūpas in the Jellalābād valley would favour this translation (Buddhist Architec-

\(^{197}\) The three sects here enumerated are known as (1) the Nirgranthas or Digambara Jainas; (2) Pāśupatas; and (3) Kapāladhārinas.

\(^{198}\) There is some difficulty in fixing the name and site of the capital of Kapīsa. General Cunningham identifies it with Uplān (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 19). His opinion is based on a statement I have not been able to verify, viz., that on leaving Bāmiyān, Huen Tsang travelled 600 li in an easterly direction over “snowy mountains and black hills” to the capital of Kia-pi-shi. I can find no distance given either in the Si-yu-ki or by Hwuilih. From Bāmiyān south-
mountain in the north, is a great saṅghārāma with 300 or so priests in it. These belong to the Little Vehicle and adopt its teaching.  

According to tradition, Kanishka Rāja of Gandhāra in old days having subdued all the neighbouring provinces and brought into obedience people of distant countries, he governed by his army a wide territory, even to the east of the T'sung-ling mountains. Then the east to the "humid valley" is 200 li. After this the account simply says: "Going in an easterly direction, &c., we come to Kia-pi-shi." Nor can I find any corroboration of the statement that "on leaving the capital of Kapise, Huien Tsiang was accompanied by the king as far as the town of Kiu-lu-sa-pang, a distance of one yōjana to the northwest" (op. cit., p. 20). Hwul-lih indeed states (i. 266) that the king of Kapisa accompanied the pilgrim 6 li from the frontiers of his kingdom; but that gives us no clue to the name or site of the capital. V. St. Martin makes Opian the capital of Fo-li-sha-sa-t'ang-na (Mem., tom. ii. p. 190). Huien Tsiang does not give the name of the chief city, but he places it 600 li to the west of Lan-po (Lamghān), which again is 100 li to the north-west of Na-kielo-ho (Nagarahāra). Supposing the site of Nagarahāra to be at the point of junction of the Kābul river with the Surkhār or Surkār-rud, we should have to place the capital of Kapisa on the declivity of the Hindu Kush, not far from the little town of Ghorband, or perhaps near Kushān, 10 miles west of Opian.

I find in Julien's translation that this saṅghārāma was called Jin-kia-lan (the humane saṅghārāma, or, of "the man"). It is wanting in my text. India Office, No. 1503.

Kanishka Rāja, of Gandhāra. He is often called in Chinese Buddhist books "the Chandan Kanika" (see Po-shu-king-f'an-king, pages xxviii., xxix.) This may simply mean Kanishka of Gandhāra, the use of Chandana for gandha being common. The mountains of Gandhāra are often explained as the "perfume mountains," as though from gandha. But in an old Buddhist map in my possession the Gandhāra mountains are called the earth-holding (ti chi), as though gan were from an old root, γαν or γαν, and dχρη, to hold. Kanishka was king of the Yueh-chi, and the rise of his dynasty is placed by Chinese authors in the first century B.C. On his coins he is styled in the corrupt Greek legends Kanikas Kōpa, and in the Baktrian-Pali legends and Manikya inscription he is called Kanishka the Kushana, or "of the Gushana family," connecting him with the tribe called by the Chinese Kwei-shwang. Korano and Kushāna are only different forms of the same word. Prinsep, Essays, vol. i. pp. 145 f.; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. pp. 806 f.; J. As. S. Ben., vol. xxxii. pp. 144 f.; Arch. Surv. W. Ind. Rep., vol. ii. p. 50; Num. Chron., N. S., vol. xiv. pp. 161 f. The date of Kanishka is yet undetermined. According to Lassen (Ind. Alt., vol. ii. [2d ed.] pp. 766, 768), he lived between A.D. 10 and A.D. 40. The Northern Buddhists place him (as we shall see farther on) 400 years after the Nirvāṇa. But as Huien Tsiang places Asoka only 100 years after Buddha, the error appears to be in the date of the Nirvāṇa; and thus Kanishka was really about 300 years after Asoka. Recent writers argue that Kanishka lived in the latter part of the first century, and
tribes who occupy the territory to the west of the river, fearing the power of his arms, sent hostages to him. Kanishka-rāja having received the hostages, treated them with singular attention, and ordered for them separate establishments for the cold and hot weather; during the cold they resided in India and its different parts, in the summer they came back to Kapiśa, in the autumn and spring they remained in the kingdom of Gandhāra; and so he founded saṅghāramas for the hostages according to the three seasons. This convent (of which we are now speaking) is the one they occupied during the summer, and it was built for that purpose.

that the Śaka era (A.D. 78) originated with his reign. See Bühler, *Ind. Ant.*, vol. vi. pp. 149 ff.; vol. vii. pp. 141 ff.; Oldenberg, *ib.*, vol. x. pp. 213 ff.; Fergusson, *Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N.S., vol. xii. pp. 261 ff.; Max Müller, *India*, p. 293. R. Davids has come to the conclusion that the Nairātīya is within a few years of 412 B.C. (*Numismata Orientalia*, part vi. p. 56). If this could be established, it would accord pretty well with the Northern legend referred to, and the date of Kanishka's power might have been, as Lassen supposes, between 10 A.D. and 40 A.D.

The district to the west of the river, i.e., the Yellow River, were the people of the Tangut empire. (For an explanation of the word Tangut, and other particulars, see Yule, *Marco Polo*, vol. i. p. 209; Bretnschneider, *Med. Geog.*, p. 123). In my copy there is no mention made of "dependent princes" (Julien in loc.); the expression is "fan seei," which I take to be equivalent to "the associated tribes." The word *fan* is used for the Tibetans. This would explain Yule's remark (op. cit., p. 209) that "the word Tanggod (Tangut) is properly a Mongol plural designating certain tribes of Tibetan blood."

In Hwui-lih's account (*Vie de Hioen Thsang*, p. 72), we are told there was only one hostage, and he was a son of the Emperor of China. There is a curious story found among the sermons of Asvaghōsa—who was contemporary with Kanishka—of a son of the Emperor of China coming to India to seek a cure for his blindness. He dwelt in a monastery in which there was a great preacher. On a certain occasion he preached so eloquently that the entire congregation was moved to tears. Some of these tears were applied to the eyes of the blind prince, and he recovered (Sermon 54). There was plainly an intercourse kept up between China, or the eastern frontiers of China, and North India from an early period.

The name of this convent is given by Hwui-lih (K. ii. fol. 10 a) as Sha-lo-kia, which is restored by Julien (t. ii. p. 503) doubtfully to Sharaka. Dr. Eitel (Handbook sub voc.) has followed him in this restoration. It seems to be referred to by I-Tsung in his account of the travels of Hwui-lun (*Jour. R. As. Soc.*, N.S., vol. xiii. p. 570). I am of opinion that Sha-lo-kia ought to be restored to Serika, and that it was so called because it was built for the Chinese hostages or hostage. This name for China (Serika) indeed is not known in Chinese literature; but it is plain that this establish-
Hence the pictures of these hostages on the walls; their features, and clothing, and ornaments are like the people of Eastern Hia (China).\textsuperscript{204} Afterwards, when they were permitted to return to their own country, they were remembered in their old abode,\textsuperscript{205} and notwithstanding the intervening mountains and rivers, they were without cessation reverenced with offerings, so that down to the present time the congregation of priests on each rainy season \textsuperscript{206} (\textit{frequent this spot}); and on the breaking up of the fast they convene an assembly and pray for the happiness of the hostages,—a pious custom still existing.

To the south of the eastern door of the hall of Buddha

\begin{quote}
Bretschi\dssen, \textit{Notes, Med. Geog., \\&c.}, p. 35, n. 81.
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{206} So I understand the passage. It is not that the hostages remembered their old abode, but that the memory of the hostages remained with the priests of the Sha-lo-kia convent. Hence, after the summer rest was over, the priests used to hold a special assembly in order to invoke a blessing on their memory. M. Julien has translated it so in the \textit{Life} of Hiouen Thsang, p. 72, but in this passage he has inverted the sense.

\textsuperscript{206} The rainy season (\textit{varaha}), as is well known, was observed by the Buddhists as a period of retreat, not in the sense of fasting, or, as it has been translated, Lent, but for the purpose of shelter, and also, as stated in the \textit{Vinaya}, to avoid trampling down the young herbage. After the three months' rest, of which there were two kinds,—viz., either the first three months, \textit{i.e.}, beginning at the appointed time, and continuing for three consecutive months, or else the second three months, that is, when through inability to begin at the appointed time the retreat was entered on a month later, and therefore lasted a month later,—the retreat was broken up, and presents, \&c., were made to the congregation.
belonging to this saṅghārāma there is a figure of the
Great Spirit King; beneath his right foot they have
hollowed the earth for concealing treasures therein. This
is the treasury place of the hostages, therefore we find this
inscription, "When the saṅghārāma decays let men take
(of the treasure) and repair it." Not long ago there was a
petty (frontier) king of a covetous mind and of a wicked
and cruel disposition; hearing of the quantity of jewels
and precious substances concealed in this convent, he
drove away the priests and began digging for them. The
King of the Spirits had on his head the figure of a parrot,
which now began to flap its wings and to utter screams.
The earth shook and quaked, the king and his army were
thrown down prostrate on the ground; after a while, arising
from the earth, he confessed his fault and returned.

Above a mountain pass to the north of this convent
there are several stone chambers; it was in these the
hostages practised religious meditation. In these recesses
many and various gems (precious things) are concealed:
on the side there is an inscription that the Yakshas (Yo-cha)
guard and defend the places (precincts). If any one wishes
to enter and rob the treasures, the Yakshas by spiritual

207 This great spirit-rāja is the
same as Vaśravana, "the cele-
brated" (πρεσεκυντος). He is called
Mahākāla, "the great black one;"
in Japan he is still called Dai
Gakf, "the great black," and is
generally figured as an old man of
dwarfish size, with a sack on his
back. I have often myself examined
the figure on the hearths of the
kitchens at Hakodate. He is in
one sense the same as Kuvêra.
For further remarks on this point
see Academy, July 3, 1880; Indian
208 The convent was three or four
li to the east of the capital, and at
the foot of a northern mountain,
which mountain formed one side of
a pass. In General Cunningham's
map referred to, there is such a nor-
thern mountain detached from the
Paghman range, and a pass between
it and the main line of hills. Just
beyond this pass we find Chārikar,
close to Opân. If we may rely on
these coincidences, the capital of
Kapiša would be to the west of this
pass about a mile, whilst Chārikar
would derive its name from the Sha-
o-lo-kia monastery. The text, it must
be noticed, does not require the
mountain pass to be distinct from
the northern mountain, at the base
of which the convent was built, but
it means that the chambers were
excavated on the northern scarps of
the pass. The context, moreover,
requires this. For some interesting
notices respecting the Buddhist
caves of Afghanistan, see Jour. Roy.
transformation appear in different forms, sometimes as lions, sometimes as snakes, and as savage beasts and poisonous reptiles; under various appearances they exhibit their rage. So no one dares to attempt to take the treasures.

At 2 or 3 li to the west of the stone chambers, above a great mountain pass, there is a figure of Kwan-tsz’-tsai Bôdhisattva; those who with sincere faith desire (vow or pray) to see him, to them the Bôdhisattva appears coming forth from the image, his body of marvellous beauty, and he gives rest and reassurance to the travellers.

Thirty li or so to the south-east of the capital we arrive at the convent of Râhula (Ho-lo-hu-lo); by its side is a stûpa about 100 feet in height. On sacred days (fast days) this building reflects a brilliant light. Above the cupola, from between the interstices of the stone, there exudes a black scented oil, whilst in the quiet night may be heard the sounds of music. According to tradition, this stûpa was formerly built by Râhula, a great minister of this country. Having completed this work of merit (religious work), he saw in a night-dream a man who said to him, “This stûpa you have built has no sacred relic (she-li) in it as yet; to-morrow, when they come to offer, you must make your request to the king” (for the offering brought).

209 The meaning is, above a high mountain side, i.e., as it seems, above a high peak, which would form the beginning of the pass on the western side.

210 Kwan-tsz’-tsai or Avalokitéśvara, “the god that looks down.” He is best known in Nepál as Padmapáni; in Tibet he is called Pyan-tsz’-tsi-gzigs-dbyaṅ-phug (pron. Chens-resi-vanchug); in China, as Kwan-yin; and in Japan as Kuan-nûn. In Sanskrit he is also known as Karu-nârâmanva, Abhayamadâ ("the remover of fear"), Abbyutgata-râja ("the great august king"), &c. See Burnouf, Int. à l’Hist. du Buddh. Ind., 2d ed.), pp. 92, 101, 197–202, 557–559; Lotus, pp. 261 ff.; 301; 352, 428


211 Above “the covering shaped liked a pâtra,” i.e., the cupola or dome.
On the morrow, entering the royal court, he pressed his claim (or he advanced and requested), and said: "Your unworthy subject ventures to make a request." The king replied: "And what does my lord require?" Answering, he said, "That your majesty would be pleased to favour me by conferring on me the first offering made this day." The king replied: "I consent."

Râhula on this went forth and stood at the palace gate. Looking at all who came towards the spot, suddenly he beheld a man holding in his hand a relic casket (pitcher). The great minister said, "What is your will? what have you to offer?" He replied, "Some relics of Buddha." The minister answered, "I will protect them for you. I will first go and tell the king." Râhula, fearing lest the king on account of the great value of the relics should repent him of his former promise, went quickly to the saṅghârâma and mounted the stûpa; by the power of his great faith, the stone cupola opened itself, and then he placed the relics therein. This being done, he was quickly coming out when he caught the hem of his garment in the stone. The king sent to pursue him, but by the time the messengers arrived at the stûpa, the stones had closed over him; and this is the reason why a black oily substance exudes from the crevices of the building.

To the south of the city 40 li or so, we come to the town of Si-pi-to-fo-la-sse (Śvetāvāra). In the case

212 So it appears to me the passage should be translated, "the first offering." Julien renders it as if there were only a single offering.
213 That is, he caught his garment in the stone of the inner portion of the stûpa before he could escape to the exterior. The relic casket, as is well known, is placed in a chamber in the upper-middle part of the cupola or dome.
214 This bearing is given in my text; it seems to be wanting in Julien's.
215 Julien restores this name to Sphitavara doubtfully. V. de St. Martin (Mémoire, &c., p. 300) suggests Śvetāvāra. As this seems to be more in agreement with the Japanese equivalents in my text, I have adopted it. The situation or name of this city is unknown. General Cunningham suggests Saptavarsa or Sattavasa, and connects with this name, "the Thatagush of the inscriptions of Darius, who are, the Sattagual of Herodotus" (Anc. Geog., p. 26). If we suppose the Chehel Dukhtar peak to be the same as the mountain called O-li-no
of earthquakes, and even when the tops of the mountains fall, there is no commotion around this city.

Thirty li or so to the south of the town of Si-po-to-fa-lasse we come to a mountain called 'O-lu-no (Aruṇa). The crags and precipices of this mountain are of a vast height, its caverns and valleys are dark and deep. Each year the peak increases in height several hundred feet, until it approaches the height of Mount Tsu-na-hi-lo (Sunagir) in the kingdom of Tsu-ku-cha (Tsaukūṭa); then when it thus faces it, suddenly it falls down again. I have heard this story in neighbouring countries. When first the heavenly spirit Suna came from far to this mountain desiring to rest, the spirit of the mountain, affrighted, shook the surrounding valleys. The heavenly spirit said, "Because you have no wish to entertain me, therefore this tumult and confusion; if you had but entertained me for a little while, I should have conferred on you great riches and treasure; but now I go to Tsu-ku-cha to the mountain Tsu-na-hi-lo, and I will visit it every year. On these occasions, when the king and his ministers offer me their tribute, then you shall stand face to face with me." Therefore Mount 'O-lu-no having increased to the height (aforesaid), suddenly falls down again at the top.

About 200 li to the north-west of the royal city we come to a great snowy mountain, on the summit of which

(about to be noticed), then measuring north about six miles, we should come to Begrām; from this, eight miles north—according to our text—would take us up the Panjshir river, and not to the capital. There is no bearing given in the French translation, and it is possible that the symbol for south in our text has been interpolated. From Hiuen Tsang's remark "that the city of Śvētāvāras could not be destroyed," we may perhaps identify it with the Tetragonis of Pliny, Hist. Nat., lib. vi. c. 25.

218 'O-lu-no may be restored to Aruṇa, "the red." The symbol na, however, is especially referred to in a note as being equal in sound to n(o)c + (k)o, i.e., no.

217 The symbols Tsu-na-hi-lo would give Sūnahrī. The Japanese phonetic equivalent for hi is given as ki or gi, which (if correct) gives us Sūnagir. Julien suggests Kāshunahilla.

218 The kingdom of Tsaukūṭa appears, from the return journey, to be the same as Sewistān. The high mountain of Tukatu may perhaps represent the Tsu-na-hi-lo of the text. Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. iii. p. 884.
is a lake. Here whoever asks for rain or prays for fine weather, according to his request so he receives.

Tradition says in old time there was an Arhat (*Lo-han*) belonging to Gandhāra (*Kien-t’o-lo*) who constantly received the religious offerings of the Nāga king of this lake. On the arrival of the time for the mid-day meal, by his spiritual power he rose with the mat on which he sat into the air, and went (*to the place where the Nāga dwelt*). His attendant, a Śrāmaṇēra (*novice*), secretly catching hold of the under part of the mat, when the time came for the Arhat to go, was transported in a moment with him (*to the palace of the Nāga*). On arriving at the palace, the Nāga saw the Śrāmaṇēra. The Nāga-rāja asking them to partake of his hospitality, he provided the Arhat with “immortal food,” but gave to the Śrāmaṇēra food used by men. The Arhat having finished his meal, began then to preach for the good of the Nāga, whilst he desired the Śrāmaṇēra, as was his custom, to wash out his alms-bowl. Now the bowl happened to have in it some fragments of (*the heavenly*) food. Startled at the fragrance of this food,²¹⁹ forthwith there arose in him an evil determination (*vow*). Irritated with his master, and hating the Nāga, he uttered the prayer (*vow*) that the force of all his religious merit might now be brought into operation with a view to deprive the Nāga of life, and, “May I,” he said, “myself become a Nāga-king.”

No sooner had the Śrāmaṇēra made this vow than the Nāga perceived his head to be in pain.

The Arhat having finished his preaching concerning the duty of repentance, the Nāga-rāja confessed his sins, condemning himself. But the Śrāmaṇēra still cherishing hatred in his heart, confessed not. And now having returned to the *saṅghārāma*, in very truth the prayer he had put up in consequence of the power of his religious merit was accomplished, and that very night he died and

²¹⁹ That is, startled to find from different from that which he had re-
the fragrance that this food was ceived.
became a Nāga-rāja. Then filled with rage, he entered the lake and killed the other Nāga king, and took possession of his palace; moreover, he attached to himself the whole fraternity of his class (i.e., all the Nāgas) to enable him to carry out his original purpose. Then fiercely raising the winds and tempests, he rooted up the trees and aimed at the destruction of the convent.

At this time Kanishka-rāja, surprised at the ravages, inquired of the Arhat as to the cause, on which he told the whole circumstance. The king therefore, for the sake of the Nāga, founded a saṅghārāma at the foot of the Snowy Mountains, and raised a stūpa about 100 feet in height. The Nāga, cherishing his former hatred, raised the wind and rain. The king persevering in his purpose of charity, the Nāga redoubled his fury (angry poison), and became exceedingly fierce. Six times he destroyed the saṅghārāma and the stūpa, and on the seventh occasion Kanishka, confused by his failure, determined to fill the Nāga's lake and overthrow his palace. He came therefore with his soldiers to the foot of the Snowy Mountains.

Then the Nāga-rāja, being terrified and shaken with apprehension, changed himself into an aged Brāhmaṇ, and bowing down before the king's elephant, he remonstrated with the king, and said, "Mahārāja, because of your accumulated merit in former births, you have now been born a king of men, and you have no wish which is not gratified. Why then to-day are you seeking a quarrel with a Nāga? Nāgas are only brutish creatures. Nevertheless amongst lower creatures\(^{221}\) the Nāga possesses great power, which cannot be resisted. He rides on the clouds, drives the winds, passes through space, and glides over the waters; no human power can conquer him.\(^{222}\) Why then is the king's heart so angry? You have now raised the army

\(^{220}\) That is (as it seems), for the sake of the Nāga who was dead.

\(^{221}\) Among the lower creatures belonging to an evil class; referring to the evil ways or modes of birth (jīti). The three evil ways are birth as a beast, as a prāta, or a demon.

\(^{222}\) Or, "it is no human power which restrains him."
of your country to fight with a single dragon; if you conquer, your renown will not spread very far; but if you are conquered, then you will suffer the humiliation of defeat. Let me advise the king to withdraw his troops."

The king Kanishka hesitating to comply, the dragon returned to his lake. His voice, like the thunderclap, shook the earth, and the fierce winds tore up the trees, whilst stones and sand pelted down like rain; the sombre clouds obscured the air, so that the army and the horses were filled with terror. The king then paid his adoration to the Three Precious ones, and sought their help, saying, "My abounding merit during former births has brought about my state as king of men. By my power I have restrained the strong and conquered the world (Jambudvīpa). But now (as it appears), by the onslaught of a dragon-beast overcome, this, verily, is proof of my poor merit! Let the full power of all my merit now appear!"

Then from both his shoulders there arose a great flame and smoke. The dragon fled, the winds hushed, the mists were melted, and the clouds were scattered. Then the king commanded each man of his army to take a stone and thus to fill up the dragon lake.

Again the dragon king changed himself into a Brāhmaṇ, and asked the king once more, "I am the Nāga king of yonder lake. Affrighted by your power, I tender my submission. Would that the king in pity might forgive my former faults! The king indeed loves to defend and cherish all animated beings, why then alone against me is he incensed? If the king kill me, then we both shall fall into an ‘evil way’—the king, for killing; I, for cherishing an angry mind. Deeds and their consequences

223 Or, "an acknowledged - afar renown;" or it may be, as in Julien's translation, "the renown of one who conquers the distant;" this, however, appears strained.
224 A great smoke - brightness. The flames on the shoulders are observable on some of the Kanerki coins. We may compare with these flames the two ravens that sit on the shoulders of Óðinn, and also "the echo of heathen thought" which makes the dove sit on Christ's shoulder at his baptism (Grimm's Teutonic Mythology, by Stallybrass, vol. i. p. 143).
will be plainly manifested when the good and evil are brought to light."

The king then agreed with the Nāga that if hereafter he should again be rebellious there should be no forgiveness. The Nāga said, "Because of my evil deeds I have received a dragon form. The nature of Nāgas is fierce and wicked, so that they are unable to control themselves; if by chance an angry heart rises in me, it will be from forgetfulness of our present compact. The king may now build the saṅghārāma once more; I will not venture to destroy it again. Each day let the king send a man to observe the mountain top; if it is black with clouds, then let him sound the ghanṭā (drum or cymbal) loudly; when I hear the sound of it, my evil purpose will subside."

Forthwith the king renewed his work in raising the saṅghārāma and stūpa. People look out for the clouds and mists on the mountain top down to the present day. Tradition says that in this stūpa there is a considerable quantity (a pint, or shing) of relics of Tathāgata, consisting of his bones and flesh, and that wonderful miracles are wrought thereby, which it would be difficult to name separately. At one time, from within the stūpa there arose suddenly a smoke, which was quickly followed by a fierce flame of fire. On this occasion the people said the stūpa was consumed. They gazed for a long time till the fire was expended and the smoke disappeared, when they beheld a Sarīra like a white pearl gem, which moved with a circular motion round the surmounting pole of the stūpa; it then separated itself and ascended up on high to the region of the clouds, and after scintillating there awhile, again descended with a circular motion.  

---

225 The words rendered "relics," &c., are in the original "bone and flesh sarīras;" that is, "bone and flesh remains," or body-relics.

226 The symbol for "gem" is of uncertain meaning. There is a precious gem from the Lu country called yu-fan. It is the latter of these two words that occurs in the text, connected with chu, a pearl. I have therefore translated chu-fan by pearl-gem.

227 This account probably refers to some electrical phenomenon. The surmounting pole of the stūpa was provided with metal rings or discs,
To the north-west of the capital there is a large river on the southern bank of which, in a convent of an old king, there is a milk-tooth of Śâkya Bôdhisattva; it is about an inch in length.

To the south-east of this convent there is another, which is also called the convent of the old king; in this is a piece of the skull-bone of Tathâgata; the surface of it is about an inch in breadth, its colour a yellowish white; the little hair orifices are plainly seen. There is, moreover, a hair-top of Tathâgata of a dark auburn colour; the hair turns to the right; drawing it out, it is about a foot long; when folded up it is only about half an inch. These three objects are reverenced with offerings by the king and the great ministers on each of the six fast (holy) days.

To the south-west of the convent of the skull-bone is the convent of the wife of the old king, in which there is a gilded stûpa (copper gilt), about 100 feet in height. Tradition says in this stûpa is about a pint of the relics of Buddha. On the fifteenth day of each month, in the evening, it reflects a circular halo of glory which lights up the dew-dish. Thus it shines till the morning, when it gradually disappears and enters the stûpa.

To the south-west of the town is Mount Pi-lo-sa-lo (Pilusâra); the mountain spirit takes the form of an elephant, hence the name. In old days, when Tathâgata was alive, the spirit, called Pilusâra (siang-kien, i.e., elephant-fixed), asked the Lord of the World and 1200 Arhats (to partake of his hospitality). On the mountain crag is a great solid rock; here it was Tathâgata received the offerings of the spirit. Afterwards Asôka-rûjâ erected and was capped generally with a metal “pitcher” (so called). This would naturally act as a lightning conductor.

228 This great river may be the affluent of the Kâbul river flowing through the Ghôrband valley. It flows about east and west after leaving the valley; the southern bank, therefore, would be that nearest the site of the capital.

229 That is, a hair from the top-knot hair.

230 I.e., the circular dish at the top of the surmounting pole.

231 Elephant-firm.
on this same rock a stūpa about 100 feet in height. It is now called the stūpa of the Elephant-strength (Pīlusāra). They say that in this also is about a pint measure of the relics of Tathāgata.

To the north of the Pīlusāra Stūpa is a mountain cavern, below which is a Nāga fountain. It was here that Tathāgata, having received from the spirit some food (rice) with the Arhats, cleansed his mouth and rubbed his teeth with a piece of willow branch.232 This he planted in the ground, and it forthwith took root, and is now a bushy grove. Afterwards men built here a saṅghārama, and called it the convent of the Pi-to-kia (the willow twig).

Going eastward from this 600 li or so, across a continuation of mountains and valleys, the peaks being of a stupendous height, and skirting the "black ridge,"233 we enter North India, and crossing the frontier, come to the country of Lan-po (Lamghān).

232 The wood commonly used in India is that of the Khadira tree, the Acacia Catechu. After being used as a tooth-cleaner it is generally split in two, and one part used to scrape the tongue. Hence probably the name Pi-to-kiu given in the text, which seems to be a form of the Sanskrit vidala, leafless; or, as Julien suggests, of Vaitraku, a reed, a twig.

233 That is, the Siāh Kōh, or the range which separates Lamghān from the upper valley of the Kāo and that of the Pīcha.
BOOK II.

Relates to Three Countries, viz., (1) Lan-po, (2) Na-kie lo-ho and (3) Kien-lo-lo.

1. Names of India.

On examination, we find that the names of India (T’ien-chu) are various and perplexing as to their authority. It was anciently called Shin-tu, also Hien-tau; but now, according to the right pronunciation, it is called In-tu. The people of In-tu call their country by different names according to their district. Each country has diverse customs. Aiming at a general name which is the best sounding, we will call the country In-tu.¹ In Chinese this name signifies the Moon. The moon has many names, of which this is one. For as it is said that all living things ceaselessly revolve in the wheel (of transmigration) through the long night of ignorance, without a guiding star, their case is like (the world), the sun gone down; as then the torch affords its connecting light, though there be the shining of the stars, how different from the bright (cool) moon; just so the bright connected light of holy men and sages, guiding the world as the shining of the moon, have made this country eminent, and so it is called In-tu.

The families of India are divided into castes, the Brähmanś particularly (are noted) on account of their purity and nobility. Tradition has so hallowed the name of this tribe that there is no question as to difference of place, but the people generally speak of India as the country of the Brähmanś (Po-lo-men).

¹ See Jour. Asiat., sér. iv. tom. x. p. 91.
2. Extent of India, Climate, &c.

The countries embraced under this term of India are generally spoken of as the five Indies. In circuit this country is about 90,000 li; on three sides it is bordered by the great sea; on the north it is backed by the Snowy Mountains. The north part is broad, the southern part is narrow. Its shape is like the half-moon. The entire land is divided into seventy countries or so. The seasons are particularly hot; the land is well watered and humid. The north is a continuation of mountains and hills, the ground being dry and salt. On the east there are valleys and plains, which being well watered and cultivated, are fruitful and productive. The southern district is wooded and herbaceous; the western parts are stony and barren. Such is the general account of this country.


To give a brief account of matters. In point of measurements, there is first of all the yōjana (yu-shen-na); this from the time of the holy kings of old has been regarded as a day’s march for an army. The old accounts say it is equal to 40 li; according to the common reckoning in India it is 30 li, but in the sacred books (of Buddha) the yōjana is only 16 li.

In the subdivision of distances, a yōjana is equal to eight krōśas (keu-lu-shē); a krōśa is the distance that the lowing of a cow can be heard; a krōśa is divided into 500 bows (dhanus); a bow is divided into four cubits (hastas); a cubit is divided into 24 fingers (āngulis); a finger is divided into seven barleycorns (yavas); and so on to a louse (yūka), a nit (likshā), a dust grain, a cow’s hair, a sheep’s hair, a hare’s down, copper-water, and so on for seven divisions,

2 Has many fountains.
3 An enumeration corresponding to that in the text will be found in the Lalita Viśāra (Foucaux, p. 142) and in the Romantic Legend of Buddha (p. 87). The expression copper-water may refer to the size of the small hole made in the tamarī or copper cup for the admission of water.
till we come to a small grain of dust; this is divided sevenfold till we come to an excessively small grain of dust (aṇu); this cannot be divided further without arriving at nothingness, and so it is called the infinitely small (paramāṇu).

4. Astronomy, the Calendar, &c.

Although the revolution of the Yin and Yang principles and the successive mansions of the sun and moon be called by names different from ours, yet the seasons are the same; the names of the months are derived from the position (of the moon in respect) of the asterisms.

The shortest portion of time is called a t'sa-na (kshaṇa); 120 kshaṇas make a ta-t'sa-na (takshaṇa); 60 of these make a la-fo (lava); 30 of these make a mau-hu-li-to (muhūrta); five of these make “a period of time” (kāla); six of these make a day and night (ahorātra), but commonly the day and night are divided into eight kalās.

The period from the new moon till full moon is called the white division (Śukla-paksha) of the month; the period from the full moon till the disappearance (of the light) is called the dark portion (Krishṇa-paksha). The dark portion comprises fourteen or fifteen days, because the month is sometimes long and sometimes short. The preceding dark portion and the following light portion together form a month; six months form a “march” (hing, s. ayana). The sun when it moves within (the equator) is said to be on its northward march; when it moves without (the equator) it is on its southern march. These two periods form a year (vatsara).

The year, again, is divided into six seasons. From the 16th day of the 1st month till the 15th day of the 3d month is the season of gradual heat; from the 16th day of

---

4 Three in the day, three in the night.—Ch. Ed.
5 Four for the day and four for the night; each of these kalās is again divided into four parts or periods (she).—Ch. Ed.
6 Uttardyana.
7 Dakshināyana.
the 3d month till the 15th day of the 5th month is called
the season of full heat; from the 16th day of the 5th month
till the 15th day of the 7th month is called the rainy season;
from the 16th day of the 7th month till the 15th day of the
9th month is called the season of growth (vegetation); from
the 16th day of the 9th month to the 15th day of the 11th
month is called the season of gradual cold; from the 16th
day of the 11th month to the 15th day of the 1st month is
called the season of great (full) cold.⁸

According to the holy doctrine of Tathāgata, the year is
divided into three seasons. From the 16th day of the 1st
month till the 15th day of the 5th month is called the hot
season; from the 16th day of the 5th month till the 15th
day of the 9th month is called the wet season; from the
16th day of the 9th month to the 15th day of the 1st
month is called the cold season. Again, there are four
seasons, called spring, summer, autumn, winter. The
three spring months are called Chi-ta-lo (Chaitra) month,
Fei-she-kie (Vaiśāka) month, She-se-ch'a (Jyeśṭha);
these correspond with the time from the 16th day of the
1st month to the 15th of the 4th month. The three
summer months are called 'An-sha-ch'a (Āshāḍha) month,
Chi-lo-fa-na (Śrāvaṇa) month, Po-ta-lo-pa-to (Bhādrapada)
month; these correspond to the time between the 16th
day of the 4th month to the 15th day of the 7th month.
The three autumn months are called, 'An-shi-po-kru⁹-che
(Āśvayuja) month, Kia-li-ta-ka (Kārttika) month, Wi¹⁰
kia-chi-lo (Mārgaśīrsha) month; these correspond to the
time between the 16th day of the 7th month to the
15th day of the 10th month. The three months of
winter are called Po-sha (Pushya) month, Ma-ku (Māgha)
month, and Po-li-kiu-na (Phālguna) month; these cor-

⁸ These six seasons (ṛītasas) are res-
pectively (1) Vasanta, including the
months of Chaitra and Vaiśākha; (2)
Grishma—Jyeśṭha and Āshā-
dha; (3) Varsha—Śrāvaṇa and
Bhādrapada; (4) Saradā—Āśvina
and Kārttika; (5) Hemanta—Mār-
gaśīrsha and Pushya; and (6) S'ii-
tra—Māgha and Phālguna. In the
south they are reckoned as begin-
ing a month later.
⁹ The symbol ku is for ṣu.—Julien
in loc.
¹⁰ The symbol wi is for ma.—Jul.
respond with the time between the 16th day of the 10th month to the 15th day of the 1st month in China. In old times in India the priestly fraternity, relying on the holy teaching of Buddha, had a double  
resting-time (during the rains), viz., either the former three months or the latter three months; these periods were either from the 16th day of the 5th month to the 15th day of the 8th month, or from the 16th day of the 6th month to the 15th day of the 9th month.

Translators of the Sūtras (King) and the Vinaya (liu) belonging to former generations employed the terms Tsokhia and Tsola-hia\(^\text{12}\) to signify the rest during the rainy season; but this was because the ignorant (common) people of the frontier countries did not understand the right sounds of the language of the middle country (India), or that they translated before they comprehended the local phrases: this was the cause of error. And for the same reason occur the mistakes about the time of Tathāgata’s conception, birth, departure from his home, enlightenment, and Nirvāṇa, which we shall notice in the subsequent records.

5. Towns and Buildings.

The towns and villages have inner gates;\(^\text{13}\) the walls are wide and high; the streets and lanes are tortuous, and the roads winding. The thoroughfares are dirty and

\(^{11}\) I have preferred not to alter the text, and so translate the passage literally. The “double period” of rest during the rainy season was an early ordinance, found in the Vinaya. It was so arranged that those who were prevented from arriving at the appointed time might begin their “rest” a month later. If, however, we suppose the symbol liang to be a mistake for yu, then the passage will run thus: “The priestly fraternity retired into fixed dwellings during the rainy season.” See Burnouf, Introd., p. 254.

\(^{12}\) I cannot but think that hia and la in these phrases are intended to be phonetic equivalents for Varsha, and that the author is pointing out the error of those who adopted such inadequate sounds. M. Julien’s explanation, however, may be the correct one (vid. Julien in loc., n. 1).

\(^{13}\) Such is the meaning generally assigned to the symbols leu yen. I do not understand the translation given by Julien; the texts perhaps are different.
the stalls arranged on both sides of the road with appropriate signs. Butchers, fishers, dancers, executioners, and scavengers, and so on, have their abodes without the city. In coming and going these persons are bound to keep on the left side of the road till they arrive at their homes. Their houses are surrounded by low walls, and form the suburbs. The earth being soft and muddy, the walls of the towns are mostly built of brick or tiles. The towers on the walls are constructed of wood or bamboo; the houses have balconies and belvederes, which are made of wood, with a coating of lime or mortar, and covered with tiles. The different buildings have the same form as those in China: rushes, or dry branches, or tiles, or boards are used for covering them. The walls are covered with lime and mud, mixed with cow’s dung for purity. At different seasons they scatter flowers about. Such are some of their different customs.

The saṅghārāmas are constructed with extraordinary skill. A three-storied tower 14 is erected at each of the four angles. The beams and the projecting heads are carved with great skill in different shapes. The doors, windows, and the low walls are painted profusely; the monks’ cells are ornamental on the inside and plain on the outside. 15 In the very middle 16 of the building is the hall, high and wide. There are various storeyed chambers and turrets of different height and shape, without any fixed rule. The doors open towards the east; the royal throne also faces the east.

14 The phrase chung koh means "a storeyed room or pavilion;" so at least I understand it. M. Julien translates as though it meant a double-storeyed room, or a pavilion with two storeys. The passage literally translated is: “Angle towers rise on the four sides; there are (or they are) storeyed buildings of three stages.”

15 I take li shu to mean “the monks” or “the religious,” the dark-clad.

16 The phrase ngou shiḥ may mean “the sleeping apartments,” as Julien translates; but I hesitate to give it this meaning, because the monks slept in their cells, and not in a dormitory. The hall I take to be the hall for religious worship. The account here given corresponds very closely with the description of the
6. Seats, Clothing, &c.

When they sit or rest they all use mats; the royal family and the great personages and assistant officers use mats variously ornamented, but in size they are the same. The throne of the reigning sovereign is large and high, and much adorned with precious gems: it is called the Lion-throne (simhāsana). It is covered with extremely fine drapery; the footstool is adorned with gems. The nobility use beautifully painted and enriched seats, according to their taste.

7. Dress, Habits, &c.

Their clothing is not cut or fashioned; they mostly affect fresh-white garments; they esteem little those of mixed colour or ornamented. The men wind their garments round their middle, then gather them under the armpits, and let them fall down across the body, hanging to the right. The robes of the women fall down to the ground; they completely cover their shoulders. They wear a little knot of hair on their crowns, and let the rest of their hair fall loose. Some of the men cut off their moustaches, and have other odd customs. On their heads the people wear caps (crowns), with flower-wreaths and jewelled necklets. Their garments are made of Kiau-she-ye (kausëya) and of cotton. Kiau-she-ye is the product of the wild silkworm. They have garments also of Ts'o-mo (kshauma), which is a sort of hemp; garments also made of Kien-po-lo (kambala) which is woven from fine goat-hair; garments also made from Ho-la-li (karâla). This stuff is made from the fine hair of a wild animal: it is seldom this can be woven, and therefore the stuff is very valuable, and it is regarded as fine clothing.

In North India, where the air is cold, they wear short

\[\text{Vihāras in Nepal at the present day.}\]
\[\text{The expression here used may mean "matted beds" or "seats."}\]
\[\text{It is commonly used to denote the}\]
\[\text{niśhādyd (Pāli, niśdānām) or mats used by Buddhists.}\]
\[\text{The Japanese equivalents are}\]
\[\text{Ka-ra-tai.}\]
and close-fitting garments, like the Hu people. The dress and ornaments worn by non-believers are varied and mixed. Some wear peacocks’ feathers; some wear as ornaments necklaces made of skull bones (the Kapāla-
dhārinas); some have no clothing, but go naked (Nir-
granthas); some wear leaf or bark garments; some pull out their hair and cut off their moustaches; others have bushy whiskers and their hair braided on the top of their heads. The costume is not uniform, and the colour, whether red or white, not constant.

The Shamanas (Śramaṇas) have only three kinds\(^{19}\) of robes, viz., the Sang-kio-ki, the Ni-fo-si-na. The cut of the three robes is not the same, but depends on the school. Some have wide or narrow borders, others have small or large flaps. The Sang-kio-ki covers the left shoulder and conceals the two armpits. It is worn open on the left and closed on the right. It is cut longer than the waist. The Ni-fo-se-na has neither girdle nor tassels. When putting it on, it is plaited in folds and worn round the loins with a cord fastening. The schools differ as to the colour of this garment: both yellow and red are used.

The Kshattriyas and the Brāhmaṇas are cleanly and wholesome in their dress, and they live in a homely and frugal way. The king of the country and the great ministers wear garments and ornaments different in their character. They use flowers for decorating their hair, with gem-decked caps; they ornament themselves with bracelets and necklaces.

There are rich merchants who deal exclusively\(^{20}\) in gold trinkets, and so on. They mostly go bare-footed; few wear sandals. They stain their teeth red or black; they bind up their hair and pierce their ears; they ornament their noses, and have large eyes. Such is their appearance.

\(^{19}\) There are only two names given in the text. The first, viz., the Sang-kia-chi—Saṅghaṭi is omitted. The other two are the Saṅkakṣhikī and the Nirdeṇa.

\(^{20}\) It may also mean that the great merchants use only bracelets.

\(^{21}\) This may also mean “they have handsome noses.”
8. Cleanliness, Ablutions, &c.

They are very particular in their personal cleanliness, and allow no remissness in this particular. All wash themselves before eating; they never use that which has been left over (from a former meal); they do not pass the dishes. Wooden and stone vessels, when used, must be destroyed; vessels of gold, silver, copper, or iron after each meal must be rubbed and polished. After eating they cleanse their teeth with a willow stick, and wash their hands and mouth.

Until these ablutions are finished they do not touch one another. Every time they perform the functions of nature they wash their bodies and use perfumes of sandal-wood or turmeric.

When the king washes they strike the drums and sing hymns to the sound of musical instruments. Before offering their religious services and petitions, they wash and bathe themselves.


The letters of their alphabet were arranged by Brahmā-dēva, and their forms have been handed down from the first till now. They are forty-seven in number, and are combined so as to form words according to the object, and according to circumstances (of time or place): there are other forms (inflexions) used. This alphabet has spread in different directions and formed diverse branches, according to circumstances; therefore there have been slight modifications in the sounds of the words (spoken language); but in its great features there has been no change. Middle India preserves the original character of the language in its integrity. Here the pronunciation is soft and agreeable, and like the language of the Dēvas. The pronunciation of the words is clear and pure, and fit as a

22 Julien translates "when the king is going out;" but in my copy it is as in the text.
model for all men. The people of the frontiers have contracted several erroneous modes of pronunciation; for according to the licentious habits of the people, so also will be the corrupt nature of their language.

With respect to the records of events, each province has its own official for preserving them in writing. The record of these events in their full character is called Ni-lo-pi-ch’ā (Nilapiṭa, blue deposit). In these records are mentioned good and evil events, with calamities and fortunate occurrences.

To educate and encourage the young, they are first taught (led) to study the book of twelve chapters (Siddhavastu). 23

After arriving at the age of seven years and upwards, the young are instructed in the five Vidyās, Śāstras of great importance. 24 The first is called the elucidation of sounds (Śabdavidyā). This treatise explains and illustrates the agreement (concordance) of words, and it provides an index for derivatives.

The second vidyā is called Kiou-ming (Śilpasthānavidyā); it treats of the arts, mechanics, explains the principles of the Yin and Yang and the calendar.

The third is called the medicinal treatise (Chikitsavidyā); it embraces formulae for protection, secret charms (the use of) medicinal stones, acupuncture, and mugwort.

The fourth vidyā is called the Hētuvidyā (science of causes); its name is derived from the character of the work, which relates to the determination of the true and false, and reduces to their last terms the definition of right and wrong.

The fifth vidyā is called the science of "the interior"

---

23 This work in twelve chapters is that called Siddhavastu (Sih-ti-chang) in the Fan-i-ming-i-tsi (book xiv. 17 a). It is called Sih-ti-lo-su-to by I-tsing (Nam hāe, iv. 8 a) by mistake for Sih-ti-po-su-to, i.e., Siddhavastu. For some remarks on this subject see Max Müller’s letter to the Academy, Sept. 25, 1880; also Indian Antiqu., vol. ix, p. 307.

24 Or, it may be translated “the great Śāstra, or Śāstras of the five Vidyās,” in Chinese, Ming. See below, Book iii. note 102.
(Adhyātmavidyā); it relates to the five vehicles, their causes and consequences, and the subtle influences of these.

The Brāhmans study the four Vēda Sāstras. The first is called Shau (longevity); it relates to the preservation of life and the regulation of the natural condition. The second is called Sse (sacrifice); it relates to the (rules of) sacrifice and prayer. The third is called Ping (peace or regulation); it relates to decorum, casting of lots, military affairs, and army regulations. The fourth is called Shu (secret mysteries); it relates to various branches of science, incantations, medicine.

The teachers (of these works) must themselves have closely studied the deep and secret principles they contain, and penetrated to their remotest meaning. They then explain their general sense, and guide their pupils in understanding the words which are difficult. They urge them on and skilfully conduct them. They add lustre to their poor knowledge, and stimulate the desponding. If they find that their pupils are satisfied with their acquirements, and so wish to escape to attend to their worldly duties, then they use means to keep them in their power. When they have finished their education, and have attained thirty years of age, then their character is formed and their knowledge ripe. When they have secured an occupation they first of all thank their master for his attention. There are some, deeply versed in antiquity, who devote themselves to elegant studies, and live apart from the world, and retain the simplicity of their character. These rise above mundane presents, and are as insensible to renown as to the contempt of the world. Their name having spread afar, the rulers appreciate them highly, but

---

25 The five Vehicles, i.e., the five degrees of religious advance among the Buddhists: (1) The vehicle of Buddha, (2) of the Bōdhisattvas, (3) of the Pratyēka Buddha, (4) of the ordained disciple, (5) of the lay disciple.

26 The four Vēdas, in the order they are here spoken of, are the Āyur Vēda, the Yajnir Vēda, the Śima Vēda, the Atharva Vēda.
are unable to draw them to the court. The chief of the country honours them on account of their (mental) gifts, and the people exalt their fame and render them universal homage. This is the reason of their devoting themselves to their studies with ardour and resolution, without any sense of fatigue. They search for wisdom, relying on their own resources. Although they are possessed of large wealth, yet they will wander here and there to seek their subsistence. There are others who, whilst attaching value to letters, will yet without shame consume their fortunes in wandering about for pleasure, neglecting their duties. They squander their substance in costly food and clothing. Having no virtuous principle, and no desire to study, they are brought to disgrace, and their infamy is widely circulated.

So, according to the class they belong to, all gain knowledge of the doctrine of Tathāgata; but, as the time is distant since the holy one lived, his doctrine is presented in a changed form, and so it is understood, rightly or not, according to the intelligence of those who inquire into it.


The different schools are constantly at variance, and their contending utterances rise like the angry waves of the sea. The different sects have their separate masters, and in various directions aim at one end.

There are Eighteen schools, each claiming pre-eminence. The partisans of the Great and Little Vehicle are content to dwell apart. There are some who give themselves up to quiet contemplation, and devote themselves, whether walking or standing still or sitting down, to the acquirement of wisdom and insight; others, on the contrary, differ from these in raising noisy contentions about their faith. According to their fraternity, they are governed by distinctive rules and regulations, which we need not name.

The Vinaya (liu), discourses (lun), sūtras (king), are equally Buddhist books. He who can entirely explain one class of these books is exempted from the control of
the karmadāna. If he can explain two classes, he receives
in addition the equipments of an upper seat (room); he
who can explain three classes has allotted to him different
servants to attend to and obey him; he who can explain
four classes has "pure men" (upāsakas) allotted to him as
attendants; he who can explain five classes of books is
then allowed an elephant carriage; he who can explain
six classes of books is allowed a surrounding escort.
When a man's renown has reached to a high distinction,
then at different times he convokes an assembly for dis-
cussion. He judges of the superior or inferior talent of
those who take part in it; he distinguishes their good or
bad points; he praises the clever and reproves the faulty;
if one of the assembly distinguishes himself by refined
language, subtle investigation, deep penetration, and severe
logic, then he is mounted on an elephant covered with
precious ornaments, and conducted by a numerous suite to
the gates of the convent.

If, on the contrary, one of the members breaks down in
his argument, or uses poor and inelegant phrases, or if he
violates a rule in logic and adapts his words accordingly,
they proceed to disfigure his face with red and white, and
cover his body with dirt and dust, and then carry him off
to some deserted spot or leave him in a ditch. Thus they
distinguish between the meritorious and the worthless,
between the wise and the foolish.

The pursuit of pleasure belongs to a worldly life, to
follow knowledge to a religious life; to return to a worldly
life from one of religion is considered blameworthy. If
one breaks the rules of discipline, the transgressor is
publicly reproved: for a slight fault a reprimand is
given or a temporary banishment (enforced silence); for
a grave fault expulsion is enforced. Those who are
thus expelled for life go out to seek some dwelling-place,
or, finding no place of refuge, wander about the roads;
sometimes they go back to their old occupation (resume
lay life).

With respect to the division of families, there are four classifications. The first is called the Brâhmana (Po-lo-men), men of pure conduct. They guard themselves in religion, live purely, and observe the most correct principles. The second is called Kshattriya (T'sa-ti-li), the royal caste. For ages they have been the governing class: they apply themselves to virtue (humanity) and kindness. The third is called Vaisya (fei-she-li), the merchant class: they engage in commercial exchange, and they follow profit at home and abroad. The fourth is called Sudra (Shu-lo-lo), the agricultural class: they labour in ploughing and tillage. In these four classes purity or impurity of caste assigns to every one his place. When they marry they rise or fall in position according to their new relationship. They do not allow promiscuous marriages between relations. A woman once married can never take another husband. Besides these there are other classes of many kinds that intermarry according to their several callings. It would be difficult to speak of these in detail.

12. Royal Family, Troops, Weapons.

The succession of kings is confined to the Kshattriya (T'sa-li) caste, who by usurpation and bloodshed have from time to time raised themselves to power. Although a distinct caste, they are regarded as honourable (or lords).

The chief soldiers of the country are selected from the bravest of the people, and as the sons follow the profession of their fathers, they soon acquire a knowledge of the art of war. These dwell in garrison around the palace (during peace), but when on an expedition they march in front as an advanced guard. There are four divisions of the army, viz.—(1) the infantry, (2) the cavalry, (3) the chariots, (4) the elephants. The elephants are covered with strong armour, and their tusks are provided with

27 I.e., the pataukdya, avakkdya, rathakdya, and hastikdya divisions.
sharp spurs. A leader in a car gives the command, whilst two attendants on the right and left drive his chariot, which is drawn by four horses abreast. The general of the soldiers remains in his chariot; he is surrounded by a file of guards, who keep close to his chariot wheels.

The cavalry spread themselves in front to resist an attack, and in case of defeat they carry orders hither and thither. The infantry by their quick movements contribute to the defence. These men are chosen for their courage and strength. They carry a long spear and a great shield; sometimes they hold a sword or sabre, and advance to the front with impetuosity. All their weapons of war are sharp and pointed. Some of them are these— spears, shields, bows, arrows, swords, sabres, battle-axes, lances, halberds, long javelins, and various kinds of slings. All these they have used for ages.

13. Manners, Administration of Law, Ordeals.

With respect to the ordinary people, although they are naturally light-minded, yet they are upright and honourable. In money matters they are without craft, and in administering justice they are considerate. They dread the retribution of another state of existence, and make light of the things of the present world. They are not deceitful or treacherous in their conduct, and are faithful to their oaths and promises. In their rules of government there is remarkable rectitude, whilst in their behaviour there is much gentleness and sweetness. With respect to criminals or rebels, these are few in number, and only occasionally troublesome. When the laws are broken or the power of the ruler violated, then the matter is clearly sifted and the offenders imprisoned. There is no infliction of corporal punishment; they are simply left to live or die, and are not counted among men. When the rules of propriety or

28 Compare the weapons in the hands of soldiers represented in the Ajanțā frescoes. — Burgess, Notes on the Buddhist Rock-Temples of Ajanțā, &c., pp. 11, 20, 51, 67, 68, 72, 73, &c.
justice are violated, or when a man fails in fidelity or filial piety, then they cut his nose or his ears off, or his hands and feet, or expel him from the country or drive him out into the desert wilds. For other faults, except these, a small payment of money will redeem the punishment. In the investigation of criminal cases there is no use of rod or staff to obtain proofs (of guilt). In questioning an accused person, if he replies with frankness the punishment is proportioned accordingly; but if the accused obstinately denies his fault, or in despite of it attempts to excuse himself, then in searching out the truth to the bottom, when it is necessary to pass sentence, there are four kinds of ordeal used—(1) by water, (2) by force, (3) by weighing, (4) by poison.

When the ordeal is by water, then the accused is placed in a sack connected with a stone vessel and thrown into deep water. They then judge of his innocence (truth) or guilt in this way—if the man sinks and the stone floats he is guilty; but if the man floats and the stone sinks then he is pronounced innocent.

Secondly, by fire. They heat a plate of iron and make the accused sit on it, and again place his feet on it, and apply it to the palms of his hands; moreover, he is made to pass his tongue over it; if no scars result, he is innocent; if there are scars, his guilt is proved. In case of weak and timid persons who cannot endure such ordeal, they take a flower-bud and cast it towards the fire; if it opens, he is innocent; if the flower is burnt, he is guilty.

Ordeal by weight is this: A man and a stone are placed in a balance evenly, then they judge according to lightness or weight. If the accused is innocent, then the man weighs down the stone, which rises in the balance; if he is guilty, the man rises and the stone falls.

Ordeal by poison is this: They take a ram and make an incision in its right thigh, then mixing all sorts of poison with a portion of the food of the accused man, they place it in the incision made in the thigh (of the an-
mal); if the man is guilty, then the poison takes effect and the creature dies; if he is innocent, then the poison has no effect, and he survives.

By these four methods of trial the way of crime is stopped.

14. Forms of Politeness.

There are nine methods of showing outward respect—(1) by selecting words of a soothing character in making requests; (2) by bowing the head to show respect; (3) by raising the hands and bowing; (4) by joining the hands and bowing low; (5) by bending the knee; (6) by a prostration; (7) by a prostration on hands and knees; (8) by touching the ground with the five circles; (9) by stretching the five parts of the body on the ground.

Of these nine methods the most respectful is to make one prostration on the ground and then to kneel and laud the virtues of the one addressed. When at a distance it is usual to bow low; when near, then it is customary to kiss the feet and rub the ankles (of the person addressed).

Whenever orders are received at the hands of a superior, the person lifts the skirts of his robes and makes a prostration. The superior or honourable person who is thus reverenced must speak gently (to the inferior), either touching his head or patting his back, and addressing him with good words of direction or advice to show his affection.

When a Śramana, or one who has entered on the religious life, has been thus respectfully addressed, he simply replies by expressing a good wish (vow).

Not only do they prostrate themselves to show reverence, but they also turn round towards the thing revered in many ways, sometimes with one turn, sometimes with three: if from some long-cherished feeling there is a call for marked reverence, then according to the desire of the person.

29 To kneel on all-fours.—Wells Williams.
30 K'i sang, to bow to the ground.—W. W.
15. Medicines, Funeral Customs, &c.

Every one who falls sick fasts for seven days. During this interval many recover, but if the sickness lasts they take medicine. The character of these medicines is different, and their names also. The doctors differ in their modes of examination and treatment.

When a person dies, those who attend the funeral raise lamentable cries and weep together. They rend their garments and loosen their hair; they strike their heads and beat their breasts. There are no regulations as to dress for mourning, nor any fixed time for observing it.

There are three methods of paying the last tribute to the dead: (1) by cremation—wood being made into a pyre, the body is burnt; (2) by water—the body is thrown into deep flowing water and abandoned; (3) by desertion—the body is cast into some forest-wild, to be devoured by beasts.

When the king dies, his successor is first appointed, that he may preside at the funeral rites and fix the different points of precedence. Whilst living they give (their rulers) titles according to their character (virtue); when dead there are no posthumous titles.

In a house where there has been a death there is no eating allowed; but after the funeral they resume their usual (habits). There are no anniversaries (of the death) observed. Those who have attended a death they consider unclean; they all bathe outside the town and then enter their houses.

The old and infirm who come near to death, and those entangled in a severe sickness, who fear to linger to the end of their days, and through disgust wish to escape the troubles of life, or those who desire release from the trifling affairs of the world and its concerns (the concerns of life), these, after receiving a farewell meal at the hands of their relatives or friends, they place, amid the sounds of music, on a boat which they propel into the midst of
the Ganges, where such persons drown themselves. They think thus to secure a birth among the Dévas. Rarely one of these may be seen not yet dead on the borders (of the river).

The priests are not allowed to lament or cry for the dead; when a father or mother of a priest dies they recite their prayers, recounting (pledging) their obligations to them; reflecting on the past, they carefully attend to them now dead. They expect by this to increase the mysterious character of their religious merit.

16. Civil Administration, Revenues, &c.

As the administration of the government is founded on benign principles, the executive is simple. The families are not entered on registers, and the people are not subject to forced labour (conscription). The private demesnes of the crown are divided into four principal parts; the first is for carrying out the affairs of state and providing sacrificial offerings; the second is for providing subsidies for the ministers and chief officers of state; the third is for rewarding men of distinguished ability; and the fourth is for charity to religious bodies, whereby the field of merit is cultivated (planted). In this way the taxes on the people are light, and the personal service required of them is moderate. Each one keeps his own worldly goods in peace, and all till the ground for their subsistence. These who cultivate the royal estates pay a sixth part of the produce as tribute. The merchants who engage in commerce come and go in carrying out their transactions. The river-passages and the road-barriers are open on payment of a small toll. When the public works require it, labour is exacted but paid for. The payment is in strict proportion to the work done.

The military guard the frontiers, or go out to punish the refractory. They also mount guard at night round the palace. The soldiers are levied according to the requirements of the service; they are promised certain payments
and are publicly enrolled. The governors, ministers, magistrates, and officials have each a portion of land consigned to them for their personal support.

17. Plants and Trees, Agriculture, Food, Drink, Cookery.

The climate and the quality of the soil being different according to situation, the produce of the land is various in its character. The flowers and plants, the fruits and trees are of different kinds, and have distinct names. There is, for instance, the Amala fruit (Ngān-mo-lo), the Āmla fruit (Ngān-mi-lo), the Madhuka fruit (Mo-tu-kia), the Bhadra fruit (po-tu-lo), the Kapittha fruit (kie-pi-ta), the Amalā fruit (O-mo-lo), the Tinduka fruit (Chin-tu-kia), the Udumbara fruit (Wu-tan-po-lo), the Mōcha fruit (Mau-che), the Nārikēla fruit (Na-li-ki-lo), the Panasa fruit (Panna-so). It would be difficult to enumerate all the kinds of fruit; we have briefly named those most esteemed by the people. As for the date (Tsau), the chestnut (Liḥ), the loquat (Pī), and the persimmon (Thī), they are not known. The pear (Li), the wild plum (Naï), the peach (T'au), the apricot (Hang or Mui), the grape (Po-tau), &c., these all have been brought from the country of Kaśmir, and are found growing on every side. Pomegranates and sweet oranges are grown everywhere.

In cultivating the land, those whose duty it is sow and reap, plough and harrow (weed), and plant according to the season; and after their labour they rest awhile. Among the products of the ground, rice and corn are most plentiful. With respect to edible herbs and plants, we may name ginger and mustard, melons and pumpkins, the Heun-to (Kaṇḍu?) plant, and others. Onions and garlic are little grown; and few persons eat them; if any one uses them for food, they are expelled beyond the walls of the town. The most usual food is milk, butter, cream, soft sugar, sugar-candy, the oil of the mustard-seed, and all sorts of cakes made of corn are used as food. Fish,
mutton, gazelle, and deer they eat generally fresh, sometimes salted; they are forbidden to eat the flesh of the ox, the ass, the elephant, the horse, the pig, the dog, the fox, the wolf, the lion, the monkey, and all the hairy kind. Those who eat them are despaired and scorned, and are universally reproved; they live outside the walls, and are seldom seen among men.

With respect to the different kinds of wine and liquors, there are various sorts. The juice of the grape and sugarcane, these are used by the Kshatriyas as drink; the Vaiśyas use strong fermented drinks; the Śramāns and Brāhmaṇs drink a sort of syrup made from the grape or sugarcane, but not of the nature of fermented wine. The mixed classes and base-born differ in no way (as to food or drink) from the rest, except in respect of the vessels they use, which are very different both as to value and material. There is no lack of suitable things for household use. Although they have saucepans and stewpans, yet they do not know the steamer used for cooking rice. They have many vessels made of dried clay; they seldom use red copper vessels: they eat from one vessel, mixing all sorts of condiments together, which they take up with their fingers. They have no spoons or cups, and in short no sort of chopstick. When sick, however, they use copper drinking cups.


Gold and silver, teou-shih (native copper), white jade, fire pearls, are the natural products of the country; there are besides these abundance of rare gems and various kinds of precious stones of different names, which are collected from the islands of the sea. These they exchange for other goods; and in fact they always barter in their com-

31 Sāwa lo, high-flavoured spirits.
32 Called, therefore, “not-wine-body,” t.e., non-alcoholic.
33 If fo is a mistake for kiang, as it probably is, the substance would be “amber.”
mercial transactions, for they have no gold or silver coins, pearl shells, or little pearls.\textsuperscript{34}

The boundaries of India and the neighbouring countries are herein fully described; the differences of climate and soil are briefly alluded to. Details referring to these points are grouped together, and are stated succinctly; and in referring to the different countries, the various customs and modes of administration are fully detailed.

**LAN-PO [LAMGHĀN].**

The kingdom of Lan-po\textsuperscript{35} is about 1000 li in circuit, and on the north is backed by the Snowy Mountains; on three sides it is surrounded by the Black-ridge Mountains. The capital of the country is about 10 li in circuit. As for some centuries the royal family has been extinct, the chiefs have disputed for power among themselves, without the acknowledged superiority of any one in particular. Lately it has become tributary to Kapiṣā. The country is adapted for the production of rice, and there are many forests of sugar-cane. The trees, though they produce many fruits, yet few are ripened. The climate is backward; the hoar-frosts are plenty, but not much snow. In common there is abundance and contentment. The men (people) are given to music. Naturally they are untrustworthy and thievish; their disposition is exacting one over the other, and they never give another the preference over themselves. In respect of stature they are little, but they are active and impetuous. Their garments are made of white linen for the most part, and what they

\textsuperscript{34} This translation differs from Julien's. The text is probably corrupt.

\textsuperscript{35} Lan-po corresponds with the present Lamghān, a small country lying along the northern bank of the Kābul river, bounded on the west and east by the Alingar and Kunar rivers.—Cunningham. The Sanskrit name of the district is Lampaka, and the Lampākas are said to be also called Murandās (Mahābh., vii. 4847; Réinaud, Mém. s. t'Inde, p. 353; and Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. p. 877, vol. iii. p. 136 f.). Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 42) places a tribe called Λαμπάρας, Λαμπάρας, or Λαμπάρας in this district. The modern name is vulgarly pronounced Laghman. See Baber's Memoirs, pp. 133, 135, 140 ff.; Cunningham, Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 43.
wear is well appointed. There are about ten saṅghā-
rāmas, with few followers (priests). The greater portion
study the Great Vehicle. There are several scores of diffe-
rent Dēva temples. There are few heretics. Going south-
east from this country 100 li or so, we cross a great
mountain (ridge), pass a wide river, and so come to Na-
kie-lo-ho [the frontiers of North India].

NA-KIE-LO-HO [NAGARAḤĀRA].

The country of Nagarahāra (Na-kie-lo-ho) is about
600 li from east to west, and 250 or 260 li from north to
south. It is surrounded on four sides by overhanging
precipices and natural barriers. The capital is 20 li or
so in circuit. It has no chief ruler; the commandant
and his subordinates come from Kapiśa. The country
is rich in cereals, and produces a great quantity of
flowers and fruits. The climate is moist and warm.
Their manners are simple and honest, their disposition
ardent and courageous. They think lightly of wealth and
love learning. They cultivate the religion of Buddha,
and few believe in other doctrines. The saṅghārāmas are
many, but yet the priests are few; the stūpas are deso-
late and ruined. There are five Dēva temples, with about
one hundred worshippers.36

36 The situation of the town of Nagarahāra (the old capital of the
Jalālābād district) has been satisfac-
torily determined by Mr. W. Simp-
He places the site of the town in the
angle formed by the junction of the
Surkhar and Kābul rivers, on their
right banks. Both the direction
and the distance from Lamghān
(about twenty miles south-east)
would place us on this spot. The
mountains crossed by the pilgrim
were the Siāh Kūh, and the river
would be probably the Kābul river
at Darunta. The Sanskrit name—
Nagarahāra—occurs in an inscription
which was discovered by Major
Kittoe in the ruined mound of Gho-
ṣrāwā in the district of Bihār (J. A. S.
B., vol. xvii. pt. i. pp. 492, 494, 498 f.)
The district corresponds with the
Nāγara Διονυσίουμ of Ptolemies (lib.
vii. c. 1, 43). It is called the city of
Dippākara by Hwul-ih (Jul.
Vie, p. 78), just as he calls Hidda
the city of “the skull-bone” (l. c.)
37 Worshippers or “men of diffe-
rent religious faith.” The usual
term for “non-believer” in Chinese
is wai-tau, an “outside-religion
man.” This term corresponds with
the Pāli bākilo, used in the same
way. The Buddhists are now spoken
of by the Muhammadans as Kafir
log, “infidel people” (Simpson, u. s.,
p. 186.
Three li to the east of the city there is a stūpa in height about 300 feet, which was built by Aśoka Rāja. It is wonderfully constructed of stone beautifully adorned and carved. Śākya, when a Bōdhisattva, here met Dīpankara Buddha (Jen-tang-fo), and spreading out his deerskin doublet, and unbinding his hair and covering with it the muddy road, received a predictive assurance. Though the passed kalpa brought the overthrow of the world, the trace of this event was not destroyed; on religious (fast) days the sky rains down all sorts of flowers, which excite a religious frame of mind in the people, who also offer up religious offerings.

To the west of this place is a Kia-lan (saṅghārāma) with a few priests. To the south is a small stūpa: this was the place where, in old time, Bōdhisattva covered the mud (with his hair). Aśoka-rāja built (this stūpa) away from the road.

Within the city is the ruined foundation of a great stūpa. Tradition says that it once contained a tooth of Buddha, and that it was high and of great magnificence. Now it has no tooth, but only the ancient foundations remain.

By its side is a stūpa 30 feet or so in height; the old stories of the place know nothing of the origin of this fabric; they say only that it fell from heaven and placed itself here. Being no work of man’s art, it is clearly a spiritual prodigy.

The Chinese expression seems to refer to the successive layers of checkered stones peculiar to these topes. See W. Simpson’s and also Mr. Swinnerton’s account.—Ind. Antiq., vol. viii. pp. 198 & 227 f.

The incident referred to in the text, viz., the interview between Dīpankara Buddha and the Bōdhisattva Sumedha, is a popular one in Buddhist sculpture and mythology. There is a representation of it among fragments in the Lahore Museum; another representation is among the sculptures of the Kanheri caves (Archæol. Surv. W. Ind, Rep., vol. iv. p. 66). The legend I translated from the Chinese (J. R. A. Soc., N.S., vol. vi. pp. 377 ff). Fa-hien also refers to it (Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 43). See also some remarks on this legend, Ind. Antiq., vol. xi. p. 146; and conf. Rhys David’s Buddha. Birth-Stories, pp. 3 f.

This is a difficult passage, and is probably corrupt. The phrase “ts’ui-pi,” towards the end, may mean “in an out-of-the-way place.” The reference is to the spot where predictive assurance was given to Sumedha that he should become a Buddha.
To the south-west of the city about 10 li is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata, when living in the world, alighted, having left Mid-India and passed through the air for the sake of converting men. The people, moved by reverence, erected this building. Not far to the east is a stūpa; it was here Bōdhisattva met Dipaṅkara Buddha and bought the flowers.\(^{41}\)

About 20 li to the south-west of the city we come to a small stone ridge, where there is a saṅghārāma with a high hall and a storied tower made of piled-up stone. It is now silent and deserted, with no priests. In the middle is a stūpa 200 feet or so in height, built by Aśoka-rajā.

To the south-west of this saṅghārāma a deep torrent rushes from a high point of the hill and scatters its waters in leaping cascades. The mountain sides are like walls; on the eastern side of one is a great cavern, deep and profound, the abode of the Nāga Gopāla. The gate (or entrance) leading to it is narrow; the cavern is dark; the precipitous rock causes the water to find its way in various rivulets into this cavern. In old days there was a shadow of Buddha to be seen here, bright as the true form, with all its characteristic marks.\(^{42}\) In later days men have not seen it so much. What does appear is only a feeble likeness. But whoever prays with fervent faith, he is mysteriously endowed, and he sees it clearly before him, though not for long.

In old times, when Tathāgata was in the world, this dragon was a shepherd who provided the king with milk and cream. Having on one occasion failed to do so, and having received a reprimand, he proceeded in an angry temper to the stūpa of “the predictive assurance,” and

\(^{41}\) He bought the flowers of a girl, who consented to sell them only on condition that she should ever hereafter be born as his wife. See the account in the “Legend of Dipaṅkara Buddha” (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. vii. pp. 377 ff.). The incident of the flowers remaining over the head as a “baldachin,” is represented in the Lāhor sculpture referred to above, note 39. See Fergusson, Tree and Serp. Worship, pl. L.

\(^{42}\) See note 5 p. 1, and p. 145, note 76.
there made an offering of flowers, with the prayer that he might become a destructive dragon for the purpose of afflicting the country and destroying the king. Then ascending the rocky side of the hill, he threw himself down and was killed. Forthwith he became a great dragon and occupied this cavern, and then he purposed to go forth and accomplish his original wicked purpose. When this intention had risen within him, Tathâgata, having examined what was his object, was moved with pity for the country and the people about to be destroyed by the dragon. By his spiritual power he came from Mid-India to where the dragon was. The dragon seeing Tathâgata, his murderous purpose was stayed, and he accepted the precept against killing, and vowed to defend the true law; he requested Tathâgata to occupy this cavern evermore, that his holy disciples might ever receive his (the dragon's) religious offerings.\textsuperscript{43}

Tathâgata replied, "When I am about to die; I will leave you my shadow, and I will send five Arhats to receive from you continual offerings. When the true law is destroyed,\textsuperscript{44} this service of yours shall still go on; if an evil heart rises in you, you must look at my shadow, and because of its power of love and virtue your evil purpose will be stopped. The Buddhas who will appear throughout this \textit{Bhadra-kalpa}\textsuperscript{45} will all, from a motive of pity, intrust to you their shadows as a bequest." Outside the gate of the Cavern of the Shadow there are two square stones; on one is the impression of the foot of Tathâgata, with a wheel-circle (\textit{lin-siang}) beautifully clear, which shines with a brilliant light from time to time.

On either side of the Cavern of the Shadow there are

\textsuperscript{43} This is evidently the meaning of the passage: the request was, not that the dragon might dwell in the cavern, but that Tathâgata would live there with his disciples. Fa-hian refers to this cave.

\textsuperscript{44} The "true law" was to last 500 years; the "law of images" 1000 years.

\textsuperscript{45} This period is that in which we now are, during which 1000 Buddhas are to appear.
several stone chambers; in these the holy disciples of Tathāgata reposed in meditation.

At the north-west corner of the cave of the shadow is a stūpa where Buddha walked up and down. Beside this is a stūpa which contains some of the hair and the nail-parings of Tathāgata.

Not far from this is a stūpa where Tathāgata, making manifest the secret principles of his true doctrine, declared the Skandha-dhātu-ayatanas (Yun-kiaï-king). 46

At the west of the Cave of the Shadow is a vast rock, on which Tathāgata in old time spread out his kṣaṭyā 47 robe after washing it; the marks of the tissue still exist.

To the south-east of the city 30 li or so is the town of Hi-lo (Hidda); 48 it is about 4 or 5 li in circuit; it is high in situation and strong by natural declivities. It has flowers and woods, and lakes whose waters are bright as a mirror. The people of this city are simple, honest, and upright. There is here a two-storied tower; the beams are painted and the columns coloured red.

46 The symbol “chu” (āyatanā) in this passage must be connected with the previous “yun kiai.” The yun kiai chu are the eighteen dhātu, for which see Childers’ Pāli Dict. (sub voc.) Vide also the Turvangama Sūtra (Catena of Buddhist Scrip., p. 297 n. 2). There is no word in my text for king, given by Julien.

47 Kṣaṭyā refers to the colour of the Buddhist upper robe, which was of brick-red or yellow colour (kaṭhāya).

48 The city of Hi-lo or Hidda (concerning which restoration, see V. de St. Martin’s Mém., u. s., p. 304), about six miles south-east of Nagarahrā, is described by Fa-hian (cap. xiii.) The Viḥāra of the skull-bone is there said to be placed within a square enclosure, and it is added, “though the heavens should quake and the earth open, this place would remain unmoved.” Compare with this the remark of Hiuen Tsang respecting Śvētāvāras (sup. p. 61) and its name of Tērpoṣanī. It is curious, too, that this place (the neighbourhood of Hidda) is called Bēgrām, and so also is Śvētāvāras (i.e., Karṣana or Tetrāgōnīa). Both Bēgrām and Nagarāhāra appear to mean “the city.” This town or Nagarahrāra may be the Nyssa or Nysa of Arrian (lib. v. cap. i.) and Curtius (lib. viii. cap. x. 7), in which case there would be no need to derive Dionysopolis—the Nagarā of Ptolemy—from Udānapura, although, as General Cunningham remarks (Anc. Geog. of Ind., p. 46), the name Ajāna, given to Nagarahrāra (according to Masson) might well be corrupted from Ujjāna or Udyāna. Compare with the text the account found in Hwulih (Vie, p. 76). Conf. Nouv. Jour. Asiatique, tom. vii. pp. 338 f.; Masson, Var. Jour., vol. iii. pp. 254 ff.; Wilson, Ariana Ant., pp. 43, 105 f.
In the second storey is a little stūpa, made of the seven precious substances; it contains the skull-bone of Tathāgata; it is 1 foot 2 inches round; the hair orifices are distinct; its colour is a whitish-yellow. It is enclosed in a precious receptacle, which is placed in the middle of the stūpa. Those who wish to make lucky or unlucky presages (marks) make a paste of scented earth, and impress it on the skull-bone; then, according to their merit, is the impression made.

Again there is another little stūpa, made of the seven precious substances, which encloses the skull-bone of Tathāgata. Its shape is like a lotus leaf; its colour is the same as that of the other, and it is also contained in a precious casket, sealed up and fastened.

Again, there is another little stūpa, made of the seven precious substances, in which is deposited the eyeball of Tathāgata, large as an Āmra fruit and bright and clear throughout; this also is deposited in a precious casket sealed up and fastened. The Saṅghāṭi robe of Tathāgata, which is made of fine cotton stuff of a yellow-red colour, is also enclosed in a precious box. Since many months and years have passed, it is a little damaged. The staff of Tathāgata, of which the rings are white iron (tin?) and the stick of sandalwood, is contained in a precious case (a case made of a precious substance). Lately, a king, hearing of these various articles that they formerly belonged to Tathāgata as his own private property, took them away by force to his own country and placed them in his palace. After a short time, going to look at them, they were gone;

40 The ko hena is the water-lily, but it is also a general name for mallows (Medhurst, s. v.) This bone is that of the uṣṇīṣha or top of the skull.
41 Such seems to be the meaning. Julien has taken it as though kia-sha referred to another garment, but it seems merely to denote the robe called Saṅghāṭi.
51 The religious staff, khakkharam or hikkala, was so called from the noise it made when shaken. Conf. hikk; Ch. sek; Sek cheung, an abbot’s crozier or staff (Wells Williams). It is described in the Sha-men-yih-yung (fol. 14 a). See p. 47, ante.
52 Scarcely had an hour elapsed.
and after further inquiries he found they had returned to
their original place. These five sacred objects (relies)
often work miracles.

The king of Kapiśa has commanded five pure-conduct
men (Brāhmaṇs) to offer continually scents and flowers to
these objects. These pure persons, observing the crowds
who came to worship incessantly, wishing to devote them-
selves to quiet meditation, have established a scale of
fixed charges, with a view to secure order, by means of
that wealth which is so much esteemed by men. Their
plan, in brief, is this:—All who wish to see the skull-
bone of Tathāgata have to pay one gold piece; those who
wish to take an impression pay five pieces. The other
objects in their several order, have a fixed price; and
yet, though the charges are heavy, the worshippers are
numerous.

To the north-west of the double-storied pavilion is a
stūpa, not very high or large, but yet one which possesses
many spiritual (miraculous) qualities. If men only touch
it with a finger, it shakes and trembles to the foundation,
and the bells and the jingles moving together give out a
pleasant sound.

Going south-east from this, crossing mountains and
valleys for 500 li or so, we arrive at the kingdom of
Kien-t’o-lo (Gandhāra).

Kien-t’o-lo—Gandhāra.

The kingdom of Gandhāra is about 1000 li from east
to west, and about 800 li from north to south. On the
cast it borders on the river Sin (Sindh). The capital of
the country is called Po-lu-sha-pu-lo; it is about 40 li

53 The phrase तेजेश्व, which is
54 The country of Gandhāra is
of frequent occurrence in Buddhist
that of the lower Kābul valley, lying
composition, seems to mean “more-
along the Kābul river between the
over” or “besides this.”
the lower Kābul valley, lying
VOL. I.
Khoaspe (Kunar) and the Indus.
It is the country of the Gandara of
Ptolemy (Geog., lib. vi. c. 1, 7). The
capital was Purushapura now Peshā-
war. The Gandarīi are mentioned
by Hekataios (Fr. 178, 179) and
Herodotos (lib. iii. c. 91, lib. vii. c.
G
in circuit. The royal family is extinct, and the kingdom is governed by deputies from Kapiśa. The towns and villages are deserted, and there are but few inhabitants. At one corner of the royal residence there are about 1000 families. The country is rich in cereals, and produces a variety of flowers and fruits; it abounds also in sugar-cane, from the juice of which they prepare "the solid sugar." The climate is warm and moist, and in general without ice or snow. The disposition of the people is timid and soft: they love literature; most of them belong to heretical schools; a few believe in the true law. From old time till now this border-land of India has produced many authors of śāstras; for example, Nārāyaṇadēva, Asaṅga Bōdhisattva, Vasubandhu Bōdhisattva, Dharmatrāta, Manorhita, Pārśva the noble, and so on. There are about 1000 saṅghārāmas, which are deserted and in ruins. They are filled with wild shrubs, and solitary to the last degree. The stūpas are mostly decayed. The heretical temples, to the number of about 100, are occupied pell-mell by heretics.

Inside the royal city, towards the north-east, is an old foundation (or a ruinous foundation). Formerly this was the precious tower of the pātra of Buddha. After the Nirvāṇa of Buddha, his pātra coming to this country, was


65 The Kung shing is the fortified or walled portion of the town, in which the royal palace stood.

66 There is a symbol pūh before this name, which, as Julien has remarked, is inserted by mistake. The Chinese equivalents for the names of these writers are as follows: Na-lo-yen-tin (Nārāyaṇadēva), Wu-ch’o-p’u-sa (Asaṅga Bōdhisattva), Shi-shin-p’u-sa (Vasubandhu Bōdhisattva), Pa-ku (Dharmatrāta), Ju-i (Manorhita), Hie-tsun (Arya Pārśvika). All these, the text says, were born in Gandhāra.

55 M. Julien has pointed out the error in the text and supplied this meaning.

55 Julien has north-west.
worshipped during many centuries. In traversing different countries it has come now to Persia. 59

Outside the city, about 8 or 9 li to the south-east, there is a pipala tree about 100 feet or so in height. Its branches are thick and the shade beneath sombre and deep. The four past Buddhas have sat beneath this tree, and at the present time there are four sitting figures of the Buddhas to be seen here. During the Bhadrakalpa, the 996 other Buddhas will all sit here. Secret spiritual influences guard the precincts of the tree and exert a protecting virtue in its continuance. Śākya Tathāgata sat beneath this tree with his face to the south and addressed Ānanda thus:—"Four hundred years after my departure from the world, there will be a king who shall rule it called Kanishka (Kia-ni-se-kia); not far to the south of this spot he will raise a stūpa which will contain many various relics of my bones and flesh."

To the south of the Pippala tree is a stūpa built by King Kanishka; this king ascended the throne four hundred years after the Nirvāṇa, 60 and governed the whole of Jambudvīpa. He had no faith either in wrong or right (crime or religious merit), and he lightly esteemed the law of Buddha. One day when traversing a swampy grove (bushy swamp) he saw a white hare, which he followed as far as this spot, when suddenly it disappeared. He then saw a young shepherd-boy, who was building in the wood hard by a little stūpa about three feet high. The king said, "What are you doing?" The shepherd-boy answered and said, "Formerly Śākya Buddha, by his divine wisdom, delivered this prophecy: 'There shall be a king in this victorious (superior) land who shall erect a stūpa, which shall contain a great portion of my bodily relics.' The sacred merits of the great king (Kanishka)

60 See ante, p. 50, note 200, and inf. p 151, note 97.
in former births (suḥ), with his increasing fame, have made the present occasion a proper one for the fulfilment of the old prophecy relating to the divine merit and the religious superiority of the person concerned. And now I am engaged for the purpose of directing you to these former predictions." 61 Having said these words he disappeared.

The king hearing this explanation, was overjoyed. Flattering himself that he was referred to in the prophecy of the great saint, he believed with all his heart and paid reverence to the law of Buddha. Surrounding the site of the little stūpa he built a stone stūpa, wishing to surpass it in height, to prove the power of his religious merit. But in proportion as his stūpa increased the other always exceeded it by three feet, and so he went on till his reached 400 feet, and the circumference of the base was a li and a half. The storeys having reached to five, each 150 feet in height, then he succeeded in covering the other. The king, overjoyed, raised on the top of this stūpa twenty-five circlets of gilded copper on a staff, and he placed in the middle of the stūpa a peck of the Sarītras of Tathāgata, and offered to them religious offerings. Scarcely had he finished his work when he saw the little stūpa take its place at the south-east of the great foundation, and project from its side about half-way up. 62 The king was disturbed

61 Or, to arouse you to a sense of your destiny (your previous forecast).

62 Julien translates this differently—“he saw the little stūpa raise itself by the side of the other and exceed it by one-half.” The passage is undoubtedly a difficult one, and rendered more so by a faulty text. To understand it, we must observe that the building was a tower of five storeys, each 150 feet in height. The small stūpa or tower was enclosed in the middle of the lower basement. Suddenly, when the large tower was finished, the smaller one changed its position, and came to the south-east angle of the great foundation—i.e., of the lowest division or storey—and pierced through the wall of the larger building about half way up. Kanishka, ill at ease in the presence of this portent, ordered the greater building to be destroyed down to the second stage. On this being done the little tower again went back to the middle of the space enclosed by the basement of the larger one, and there overtopped it as before. So I understand the passage; and if this be so, the only alteration required in the text is in the last clause, where instead of siu, “little,” I would substitute ta, “great,” “it came out of, i.e., towered above, the great stūpa.”
at this, and ordered the stūpa to be destroyed. When they had got down to the bottom of the second storey, through which the other projected, immediately that one removed to its former place, and once more it surpassed in height the other. The king retiring said, “It is easy to commit errors in human affairs, but when there is divine influence at work it is difficult to counteract it. When a matter is directed by spiritual power, what can human resentment effect?” Having confessed his fault, therefore, he retired.

These two stūpas are still visible. In aggravated sickness, if a cure is sought, people burn incense and offer flowers, and with a sincere faith pay their devotions. In many cases a remedy is found.

On the southern side of the steps, on the eastern face of the great stūpa, there are engraved (or carved) two stūpas, one three feet high, the other five feet. They are the same shape and proportion as the great stūpa. Again, there are two full-sized figures of Buddha, one four feet, the other six feet in height. They resemble him as he sat cross-legged beneath the Bódhi tree. When the full rays of the sun shine on them they appear of a brilliant gold colour, and as the light decreases the hues of the stone seem to assume a reddish-blue colour. The old people say, “Several centuries ago, in a fissure of the stone foundation, there were some gold-coloured ants, the greatest about the size of the finger, the longest about a barley-corn in size. Those of the same species consorted together; by gnawing the stone steps they have left lines and marks as if engraved on the surface, and by the gold sand which they left (as deposits) they have caused the figures of Buddha to assume their present appearance.”

63 Or, human affairs are changeable and deceptive.  
64 The sense of ying in this passage is doubtful; it may mean “complicated” or “threatening (sickness),” or it may refer to complaints peculiar to children.  
65 The expression lo c’ho would seem to mean that the stūpas were engraved, not built. The particular named as to steps leading up to the stūpa is significant, as illustrating the architectural appearance and character of these buildings.
On the southern side of the stone steps of the great stūpa⁶⁶ there is a painted figure of Buddha about sixteen feet high. From the middle upward there are two bodies, below the middle, only one. The old tradition says: In the beginning, there was a poor man who hired himself out to get a living; having obtained a gold coin, he vowed to make a figure of Buddha. Coming to the stūpa, he spoke to a painter and said, "I wish now to get a figure of Tathāgata painted, with its beautiful points of excellence;⁶⁷ but I only have one gold coin; this is little enough to repay an artist. I am sorry to be so hampered by poverty in carrying out my cherished aim."

Then the painter, observing his simple truth, said nothing about the price, but promised to set to work to furnish the picture.

Again there was a man, similarly circumstanced, with one gold coin, who also sought to have a picture of Buddha painted. The painter having received thus a gold piece from each, procured some excellent colours (blue and vermilion) and painted a picture. Then both men came the same day to pay reverence to the picture they had had done, and the artist pointed each to the same figure, telling them, "This is the figure of Buddha which you ordered to be done." The two men looking at one another in perplexity, the mind of the artist understanding their doubts, said, "What are you thinking about so long? If you are thinking about the money, I have not defrauded you of any part. To show that it is so there must be some spiritual indication on the part of the picture."

⁶⁶ This is the literal translation; it may mean "on the southern side of the steps," as though there were steps only on the eastern side of the stūpa; or it may, by license, mean "on the steps of the stūpa, its southern face," as though the steps referred to were on the southern face. But the literal translation is preferable, in which case we may assume that a flight of steps on the eastern side led up to the platform on which the tower (stūpa) was built, and that the figures referred to were engraved between the pilasters of the terrace on the north and south sides of the steps.

⁶⁷ Or, "a beautifully-marked figure of Tathāgata." The marks (niang or lakṣahanā) of Buddha are well known.—See Burnouf, Lotus, p. 616, and ante, p. 1, note 5.
Scarcely had he finished when the picture, by some spiritual power, divided itself (from the middle upwards), and both parts emitted a glory alike. The two men with joy believed and exulted.

To the south-west of the great stūpa 100 paces or so, there is a figure of Buddha in white stone about eighteen feet high. It is a standing figure, and looks to the north. It has many spiritual powers, and diffuses a brilliant light. Sometimes there are people who see the image come out of an evening and go round the great stūpa. Lately a band of robbers wished to go in and steal. The image immediately came forth and went before the robbers. Affrighted, they ran away; the image then returned to its own place, and remained fixed as before. The robbers, affected by what they had seen, began a new life, and went about through towns and villages telling what had happened.

To the left and right of the great stūpa are a hundred little stūpas standing closely together, executed with consummate art. Exquisite perfumes and different musical sounds at times are perceived, the work of Rishis, saints, and eminent sages; these also at times are seen walking round the stūpas.

According to the prediction of Tathāgata, after this stūpa has been seven times burnt down and seven times rebuilt, then the religion of Buddha will disappear. The record of old worthies says this building has already been destroyed and restored three times. When (I) first arrived in this country it had just been destroyed by a fire calamity. Steps are being taken for its restoration, but they are not yet complete.

To the west of the great stūpa there is an old saṅghārāma which was built by King Kanishka. Its double towers, connected terraces, storeyed piles, and deep chambers

---

68 That is, circumambulate it, or perform the pradakṣiṇa.
69 The expression means, as M. Julien explains, arranged in order like the scales of a fish, that is, with regularity.
bear testimony to the eminence of the great priests who have here formed their illustrious religious characters (gained distinction). Although now somewhat decayed, it yet gives evidence of its wonderful construction. The priests living in it are few; they study the Little Vehicle. From the time it was built many authors of Śāstras have lived herein and gained the supreme fruit (of Arhatship). Their pure fame is wide-spread, and their exemplary religious character still survives.

In the third tower (double-storeyed tower) is the chamber of the honourable Pārvika (Pi-lo-shi-po), but it has long been in ruins; but they have placed here a commemorative tablet to him. He was at first a master of the Brāhmaṇs (or a Brāhmaṇ doctor), but when eighty years of age he left his home and assumed the soiled robes (of a Buddhist disciple). The boys of the town ridiculed him, saying, "Foolish old man! you have no wisdom, surely! Don’t you know that they who become disciples of Buddha have two tasks to perform, viz., to give themselves to meditation and to recite the Scriptures? And now you are old and infirm, what progress can you make as a disciple? Doubtless you know how to eat (and that is all)!" Then Pārvika, hearing such railing speeches, gave up the world and made this vow, "Until I thoroughly penetrate the wisdom of the three Piṭakas and get rid of the evil desire of the three worlds, till I obtain the six miraculous powers and reach the eight deliverances (vimokshas), I will not lie down to rest (my side shall not touch the sleeping mat)." From that day forth the day was not enough for him to walk in meditation or to sit upright in deep thought. In the daytime he studied incessantly the doctrine of the

70 Lit., in the pure streams of the high calling (traces).
71 Withdrew from “time and men.” It may be, withdrew for a time from men.
72 Whilst I do not understand, &c.
73 The six miraculous or spiritual powers are the abhijñās, so called; for which see Eitel’s Handbook, s. v., or Childers, Pali Dict., s. v. abhijñā. Five are enumerated in the Lotus, cap. v. see pp. 291, 345, 372, 379, 820; Introd., p. 263. For the vimokshas see Lotus, pp. 347, 824; Childers, Pali Dict., s. v. vimokha. See note 88, p 149, inf.
sublime principles \(\text{(of Buddhism)}\), and at night he sat silently meditating in unbroken thought. After three years he obtained insight into the three pitakas, and shook off all worldly desires,\(^{74}\) and obtained the threefold knowledge.\(^{75}\) Then people called him the honourable Pārśvika\(^{76}\) and paid him reverence.

To the east of Pārśvika’s chamber is an old building in which Vasubandhu\(^{77}\) Bōdhisattva prepared the ‘O-pi-tamoku-she-lun (Abhidharmakōśa Śāstra);\(^{78}\) men, out of respect to him, have placed here a commemorative tablet to this effect.

To the south of Vasubandhu’s house, about fifty paces or so, is a second storied-pavilion in which Manorhita,\(^{79}\) a master of Śāstras, composed the Vibhāṣā Śāstra. This learned doctor flourished in the midst of the thousand

\(^{74}\) Desire of the three worlds.
\(^{75}\) The trividyā, the threefold knowledge, viz., of the impermanence of all things (anitya), of sorrow (dukkha), and of unreality (anatman).
\(^{76}\) Pārśvika, Chin. Hie-ts’un, so named from pārśva (Chin. hie), “the side,” from his vow, here related, not to lie on his side. He is reckoned the ninth or tenth Buddhist patriarch (according as Vasumitra, the seventh, is excluded or not); Edkins, Chin. Buddh., p. 74; Lassen, I. A., vol. ii. p. 1202; Vassilief, pp. 48, 75 f. 203 f. 211; Ind. Ant., vol. iv. p. 141.

\(^{77}\) Vasubandhu (Fo-sin-fan-tho), translated Thien-sin and Shi-sin, according to northern accounts, the twenty-first patriarch of the Buddhist church, and younger brother of Asaṅga. But this succession of patriarchs is more than doubtful, for Buddhidharma, who is represented as the twenty-eighth patriarch, arrived in China a.d. 520; but according to Max Müller, Vasubandhu flourished in India in the second half of the sixth century (India, p. 306). If this date can be established, many of the statements of dates found in the Chinese Bud-

\(^{78}\) This is a work frequently named in these records. It was written by Vasubandhu to refute the errors of the Vaibhāṣikas, and was translated into Chinese by Paramārtha, a.d. 557-589. For an account of its origin see the Life of Buddha by Wong Puh, § 105, in J. R. A. S., vol. xx. p. 211; Edkins, Ch. Buddh., p. 120; Vassilief, pp. 77 f. 108, 130, 225.

\(^{79}\) Manorhita, otherwise written Manorata, Manorhata, or Manorath (Jul., Vie, p. 405), also Manura. This is explained by the Chinese Ju-i, an expression used for the Kalpa-vrikṣa or “wishing tree,” denoting power to produce whatever was wished; literally, “conformable (hita) to thought (mana, mind).” He is probably the same as Mañirata (Vassilief, Bouddhisme, p. 219). He is reckoned the twenty-second patriarch.—Lassen, I. A., vol. ii. p. 1205; Edkins, Ch. Buddh., pp. 82–84; M. Müller, India, pp. 289, 302; and note 77 ante.
years① after the Nirvāṇa of Buddha. In his youth he was devoted to study and had distinguished talent. His fame was wide spread with the religious, and laymen sought to do him hearty reverence. At that time Vikramāditya,② king of the country of Śrāvastī, was of wide renown. He ordered his ministers to distribute daily throughout India③ five lakhs of gold coin; he largely (everywhere) supplied the wants of the poor, the orphan, and the bereaved. His treasurer, fearing that the resources of the kingdom would be exhausted, represented the case to the king, and said, "Mahārāja! your fame has reached to the very lowest of your subjects, and extends to the brute creation. You bid me add (to your expenditure) five lakhs of gold to succour the poor throughout the world. Your treasury will thus be emptied, and then fresh imposts will have to be laid (on

① This expression, "in the midst of, or during, the thousand years," has a particular reference to the period of 1000 years which succeeded the period of 500 years after Buddha’s death. The 500 years is called the period of the "true law," the 1000 years "the period of images," i.e., image-worship; after that came the period of "no law." The phrase "during the 1000 years," therefore, in these records, means that the person referred to lived during the middle portion of the second period, that is, about a thousand years after Buddha. There is a useful note in Wong Puh’s life of Buddha (§ 204, J. R. A. S., vol. xx. p. 215) relating to this point, from which it appears that the accepted date of the Nirvāṇa in China at this time was 550 B.C. The period of 1000 years, therefore, would extend from 350 B.C. to 650 A.D. Wong Puh uses the expression ke-shì "the latter age," for "the thousand years." Manohrita is placed under Vikramāditya Harsha of Ujjain, and therefore lived about the middle of the 6th century A.D., according to M. Müller, India, p. 290.

② This is supposed to be the same as Vikramāditya or Harsha of Ujjain, according to Dr. J. Ferguson and Prof. M. Müller, the founder of the usual Śaṃvat era, 56 b.c. The Chinese equivalent for his name is chaou jih, or "leaping above the sun," or "the upspringing light," "the dawn." As to the mode in which this era of Vikramāditya might have been contrived, see Ferguson (J. R. A. S., N. S., vol. xii. p. 273). The starting-point from which these writers suppose it came into use is 544 A.D. The expression Vikramāditya of Śrāvastī, is the same as Vikramāditya of Ayodhya (Oudh), where we are told (Vassilieff, p. 219) he held his court. The town of Śrāvastī was in ruins even in Fa-hian’s time (cap. xx.)

③ "Throughout all the Indies," This passage may also be translated thus: "An envoy (shi shan) coming to India, he daily," &c. Julien refers it to one of his own envoys, but in any case the passage is obscure. Judging from the context, I think the meaning is, "he ordered his minister, in the next sentence called "his treasurer," to give throughout India on one day five lakhs for the poor."
the land cultivators), until the resources of the land be also exhausted; then the voice of complaint will be heard and hostility be provoked. Your majesty, indeed, will get credit for charity, but your minister\textsuperscript{83} will lose the respect of all." The king answered, "But of my own surplus I (wish to) relieve the poor. I would on no account, for my own advantage, thoughtlessly burthen (grind down) the country." Accordingly he added five lakhs for the good of the poor. Some time after this the king was engaged chasing a boar. Having lost the track, he gave a man a lakh for putting him on the scent again. Now Manôrhitâ, the doctor of Śâstra, once engaged a man to shave his head, and gave him offhand a lakh of gold for so doing.\textsuperscript{84} This munificent act was recorded in the annals by the chief historian. The king reading of it, was filled with shame, and his proud heart continually fretted about it,\textsuperscript{85} and so he desired to bring some fault against Manôrhitâ and punish him. So he summoned an assembly of different religious persons whose talents were most noted,\textsuperscript{86} to the number of one hundred, and issued the following decree: "I wish to put a check to the various opinions (wanderings) and to settle the true limits (of inquiry); the opinions of different religious sects are so various that the mind knows not what to believe. Exert your utmost ability, therefore, to-day in following out my directions." On meeting for discussion he made a second decree: "The doctors of law belonging to the heretics\textsuperscript{87} are distinguished

\textsuperscript{83} Such is plainly the meaning; the treasurer is speaking of himself. The antithesis requires it, "kun shang, shan hia." M. Julien translates it as referring to all the subjects.

\textsuperscript{84} M. Julien translates as follows: "Un jour le maître des Āstras Jou-i (Manôrhitâ) ayant envoyé un homme pour couper les cheveux au roi;" but in my text there is no word for "king," and the whole context seems to require another rendering. I translate the passage as referring to Manôrhitâ himself, who, although a writer of Āstras, was also a prince (vid. Eitel, s.v.)

\textsuperscript{85} I.e., that Manôrhitâ should have equalled him in munificence, and that he should be held up as an example.

\textsuperscript{86} "Whose virtuous deeds (good qualities) were high and profound." I find nothing about Brahmans in the text.

\textsuperscript{87} Or it may be, "the unbelievers and the doctors of Āstras are both eminent," &c.
for their ability. The Shamans and the followers of the law (of Buddha) ought to look well to the principles of their sect; if they prevail, then they will bring reverence to the law of Buddha; but if they fail, then they shall be exterminated." 88 On this, Manôrthita questioned the heretics and silenced 89 ninety-nine of them. And now a man was placed (sat on the mat to dispute with him) of no ability whatever, 90 and for the sake of a trifling discussion (Manôrthita) proposed the subject of fire and smoke. On this the king and the heretics cried out, saying, "Manôrthita, the doctor of Sàstras, has lost the sense of right connection (mistaken the order or sense of the phrase); he should have named smoke first and fire afterwards: this order of things is constant." Manôrthita wishing to explain the difficulty, was not allowed a hearing; on which, ashamed to see himself thus treated by the people, he bit out his tongue and wrote a warning to his disciple Vasubandhu, saying, "In the multitude of partisans there is no justice; among persons deceived there is no discernment." Having written this, he died.

A little afterwards Vikramâditya-râja lost his kingdom and was succeeded by a monarch who widely patronised those distinguished for literary merit. 91 Vasubandhu, wishing to wash out the former disgrace, came to the king and said, "Mahârâja, by your sacred qualities you rule the empire and govern with wisdom. My old master, Manôrthita, was deeply versed in the mysterious doctrine. The former king, from an old resentment, deprived him of his high renown. I now wish to avenge the injury done to my master." The king, knowing that Manôrthita was a man of superior intelligence, approved of the noble project of Vasubandhu; he summoned the heretics who had discussed with Manôrthita. Vasubandhu having exhibited

88 It ought probably to be rendered thus: "If they prevail, then I will reverence the law of Buddha; if they are defeated, I will utterly exterminate the priests."
89 Or, who looked at him with a dispirited (downcast) air.
90 Made to retire.
91 This would appear to be Silâditya of Ujjain, spoken of by Hiuen Tsang (Book xi.) as having lived about sixty years before his own time.
afresh the former conclusions of his master, the heretics were abashed and retired.

To the north-east of the svāghārāma of Kanishka-rāja about 50 li, we cross a great river and arrive at the town of Pushkalāvatī (Po-shi-kie-lo-fa-ti). It is about 14 or 15 li in circuit; the population is large; the inner gates are connected by a hollow (tunnel?).

Outside the western gate is a Deva temple. The image of the god is imposing and works constant miracles.

To the east of the city is a stūpa built by Asoka-rāja. This is the place where the four former Buddhas delivered the law (preached). Among former saints and sages many have come (descended spiritually) from Mid-India to this place to instruct all creatures (things). For example, Vasumitra, doctor of Śāstras, who composed the Chung-sse-fen-o-pi-ta-mo (Abhidharmaparakarana-pāda) Śāstra in this place.

To the north of the town 4 or 5 li is an old svāghārāma, of which the halls are deserted and cold. There are very few priests in it, and all of them follow the teaching of

---

92 Or Pushkarāvatī, the old capital of Gandhāra, said to have been founded by Pushkara or Pushkala, the son of Bharata and nephew of Rāma (Wilson, Viṣṇu-pur., vol. iii. p. 319). The district is called Puskaḷaṇī and Puskaḷaṇī by Arrian (Anab., lib. iv. c. 22, s. 9; Ind., c. 4, s. 11), and the capital Puskaḷaṇī or Puskaḷa (Ind., c. 1, s. 8), while Strabo calls the city Pusaḷaṇī (lib. xv. c. 21 s. 27). Pliny has Puscolai (lib. vi. c. 21, s. 62) and the people Puscolaites (c. 23, s. 78). Dionysius Perigetis has Puskaḷa (v. 1143), and the author of the Periplius Mar. Ἑρώθ. (s. 47) and Ptolemy Ποκελαῖ (lib. vii. c. 1, s. 44; v. 1. Ποκελαῖ). Alexander the Great besieged and took it from Astes (Hasti) and appointed Sangues (Sahjaya) as his successor. It was probably at Hashtanagarā, 18 miles north of Peshāwar, on the Svāt (Suastos), near its junction with the Kābul (Kophān or Kophās), the great river which the traveller here crossed. See Baber's Mem., pp. 136, 141, 251; Cunningham, Anc. Geog., pp. 49 f.; St. Martin, Géog. de l'Inde, p. 37; Bunbury, Hist. Anc. Geog., vol. i. p. 498; Wilson, Ariana Ant., pp. 185 f.; Ind. Ant., vol. v. pp. 33 f., 330; Lassen, J. A., vol. i. p. 501, vol. iii. p. 139; Reinaud, Mém. s. l'Inde, p. 65.

93 The phrase leu yen means the inner gates of a town or village (Medhurst, s. v. Yen), and tung lin means "deeply connected," or "are deep and connected." Julien translates it, "the houses rise in thick lines." The readings must be different.

94 Vasumitra, in Chinese Shi Yu, friend of the world.—Ch. Ed. He was one of the chief of the 500 great Arhats who formed the council convoked by Kanishka. Vassilief, pp. 49 f., 58 f., 78, 107, 113, 222 f.; Edkins, Ch. Buddh., pp. 72 f., 283; Burnouf, Int., pp. 399, 505 f.
the Little Vehicle. Dharmatrāta, master of Śāstras, here composed the Ts’a-o-pi-ta-ma-lun (Samyuktābhidharma Śāstra). 95

By the side of the saṅghārāma is a stūpa several hundred feet high, which was built by Asoka-rāja. It is made of carved wood and veined stone, the work of various artists. Sākya Buddha, in old time when king of this country, prepared himself as a Bōdhisattva (for becoming a Buddha). He gave up all he had at the request of those who asked, and spared not to sacrifice his own body as a bequeathed gift (a testamentary gift). Having been born in this country a thousand times as king, he gave during each of those thousands births in this excellent country, his eyes as an offering.

Going not far east from this, there are two stone stūpas, each about 100 feet in height. The right-hand one was built by Brahmā Dēva, that on the left by Śakra (king of Dévas). They were both adorned with jewels and gems. After Buddha’s death these jewels changed themselves into ordinary stones. Although the buildings are in a ruinous condition, still they are of a considerable height and grandeur.

Going north-west about 50 li from these stūpas, there is another stūpa. Here Sākya Tathāgata converted the Mother of the demons 96 and caused her to refrain from

95 According to the Ch’uʻh-yau king (Uddānavarga), Dharmatrāta was uncle of Vasumitra. (See Beal, Texts from the Buddhist Canon (Dharmapada), p. 8; Rockhill’s Uddānavarga, p. xi.) There was another Dharmatrāta, according to Tārānātha (Rockhill, p. xi.), who was one of the leaders of the Vaibhāshika school, and also another Vasumitra, who commented on the Abhidharma Kṣāra written by Vasubandhu, who lived probably in the fifth century A.D. But as the Chinese versions of the Dharmapada were made before Vasubandhu’s time, and the second Vasumitra lived after Vasubandhu, for he commented on his work, it is highly probable that the Dharmatrāta alluded to in the text was the compiler of the Northern versions of the “Verses of the Law” (Dharmapada) known both in China and Tibet. Dharmatrāta, according to a note in the text, was erroneously called Dharmatara.

96 The mother of the demons was, according to I-ting (K. i. § 9), called Háritt (Ko-li-ti), and was venerated by the Buddhists. “She had made a vow in a former birth to devour the children of Rājagriha, and was accordingly born as a Yakṣa, and became the mother of 500 children.
hurting men. It is for this reason the common folk of this country offer sacrifices to obtain children from her.

Going north 50 li or so from this, there is another stūpa. It was here Sāmaka Bōdhisattva (Shang-mu-kia), walking piously, nourished as a boy his blind father and mother. One day when gathering fruits for them, he encountered the king as he was hunting, who wounded him by mistake with a poisoned arrow. By means of the spiritual power of his great faith he was restored to health through some medicaments which Indra (Tien-tī), moved by his holy conduct, applied to the wound.

To the south-east of this place about 200 li, we arrive at the town Po-lu-sha. On the north of this town is

To nourish these she each day took a child (boy or girl) of Rāja-griha. People having told Buddha of it, he hid one of the Yaksha’s children called “the loved one.” The mother, having searched everywhere, at last found it by Buddha’s side. On this the Lord addressed her as follows: “Do you so tenderly love your child? but you possess 500 such. How much more would persons with only one or two love theirs?” On this she was converted and became a Upāsikā, or lay disciple. She then inquired how she was to feed her 500 children. On this Buddha said, “The Bhikshus who live in their monasteries shall every day offer you food out of their portion for nourishment.” Therefore in the convents of the western world, either within the porch of the gates or by the side of the kitchen, they paint on the wall a figure of the mother holding a child, and below sometimes five, sometimes three others in the foreground. Every day they place before this image a dish of food for her portion of nourishment. She is the most powerful among the followers (retinæ) of the four heavenly kings (Dēva-rājas). The sick and those without children offer her food to obtain their wishes. In China she is called Kwei-tsêu-mu.—Julien, Mémoires, tom. i. p. 120 n. My translation of I-tsing, however, differs from Julien’s. The Chalu-kyas and other royal families of the Dekhan claim to be descendants of Hāriti (Hārisputra). The above account from I-tsing relates to the figure of Hāriti in the Varāha temple at Tāmralipti. Possibly this temple may have been a Chālukya foundation, for the Varāha (boar) was one of their principal insignia.

98 This refers to Sāma, the son of Dukhula, in the Sāmajātaka. He is called in Fa-hian Shen (for Shen-ma), and this equivalent is also given in the text. See Trans. Int. Cong. Orient. (1874), p. 135. The Jātaka is represented among the Sânche sculptures (Tree and Serp. Worship, pl. xxxvi, fig. 1). For an account of it see Spence Hardy’s Eastern Monachism, p. 275; cf. Man. Buddh., p. 460. The story is also a Brahmanical one, occurring in the Rāmdyana.—Ind. Ant., vol. i. pp. 37–39.

99 That is, south-east from the stūpa of Sāmaka Bōdhisattva. I have not repeated the name of the place in this and other passages.

99 Following the route described in the text, we are taken first 4 or 5 li to the north of Pushkalavatī, next a little way to the east, then 50
a stūpa; here it was Sudāna the prince, having given in charity to some Brahmans the great elephant of his father the king, was blamed and banished. In leaving his friends, having gone out of the gate of the wall, it was here he paid adieu. Beside this is a saṅghārāma with about fifty priests or so, who all study the Little Vehicle. Formerly Īśvara, master of śāstras, in this place composed the O-pi-ta-mo-ming-ching-lun.

Outside the eastern gate of the town of Po-lu-sha is a saṅghārāma with about fifty priests, who all study the Great Vehicle. Here is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. In old times Sudāna the prince, having been banished from his home, dwelt in Mount Dantalōka. Here a Brahman begged his son and daughter, and he sold them to him.

To the north-east of Po-lu-sha city about 20 li or so we come to Mount Dantalōka. Above a ridge of that mountain is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja; it was here the prince

li to the north-west, then 50 li to the north. It is from this point we are to reckon 200 li to the south-west to Po-lu-sha. M. V. de St. Martin (Mémoire, p. 300) substitutes 250 li for 200, and he then reckons from Pushkalāvati. General Cunningham falls into the same mistake (Anc. Geog., p. 52), and identifies Po-lu-sha with Palodi, or the village of Pāli, situated on a dheri or mound of ruins (op. cit., p. 52). This would agree with Hiuen Tsang's distance and bearing, that is, from the stūpa of Sāmaka, which was some 90 to 100 li to the north-north-east of Pushkalāvati.

That is, Visvāntara, Visvāntara, or Vēssantara, the prince. His history is a popular one among Buddhists. See Spence Hardy's Man. of Budhism., p. 118; Ferguson, Tree and Serp. Worship, pl. xxxii.; Beal's Pa-hian, p. 194 n. 2; Burnouf, Lotus, p. 411; conf. Kathāsarit, 113, 9; Altar. Bṛdhm., vii. 27, 34. The particulars given in the text and in Pa-hian led to the identification of pl. xxxii. in Tree and Serp. Worship with this history. The same Jātaka is also found amongst the Amarāvatī sculptures, op. cit., pl. lxv. fig. i. With respect to the name Sudāna, the Chinese explanation (good teeth) is erroneous, as M. Julien has pointed out (p. 122 n.). Sudāna is the name of a Pratyekabuddha mentioned in the Trikānandolika, i. 1, 13.

So I translate the passage. M. Julien understands the number fifty to refer to the saṅghārāmas. But it would be an unusual circumstance to find fifty or more convents near one spot, nor does the text necessarily require it.

Restored doubtfully by Julien to Abhidharmapradī-sādhana Sāstra. It was perhaps the Sannyaktābhidharmahrdaya Sāstra, which Īśvara is said to have translated in 426 A.D. Īśvara's name is given in Chinese as Tsū-tee, "master," "lord," "self-existent."

Tan-ta-lo-kia, which might also be restored to Dandarika. The Japanese equivalent given in the text for lo is ra. General Cunningham identifies this mountain with the Montes Dædal of Justin (op. cit., p. 52.)
Sudāna dwelt in solitude. By the side of this place, and close by, is a stūpa. It was here the prince gave his son and daughter to the Brahman, who, on his part, beat them till the blood flowed out on the ground. At the present time the shrubs and trees are all of a deep red colour. Between the crags (of the mountain) there is a stone chamber, where the prince and his wife dwelt and practised meditation. In the midst of the valley the trees droop down their branches like curtains. Here it was the prince in old time wandered forth and rested.

By the side of this wood, and not far from it, is a rocky cell in which an old Rishi dwelt.

Going north-west from the stone cell about 100 li or so, we cross a small hill and come to a large mountain. To the south of the mountain is a sanghārama, with a few priests as occupants, who study the Great Vehicle. By the side of it is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. This is the place which in old time was occupied by Ekaśrīnga Rishi. This Rishi being deceived by a pleasure-woman, lost his spiritual faculties. The woman, mounting his shoulders, returned to the city.

To the north-east of the city of Po-lu-sha 50 li or so, we come to a high mountain, on which is a figure of the wife of Īśvara Dēva carved out of green (blueish) stone. This is Bhīmā Dēvi. All the people of the better class, and the lower orders too, declare that this figure was self-wrought. It has the reputation of working numerous miracles, and therefore is venerated (worshipped) by all, so that from every part of India men come to pay their vows and seek prosperity thereby. Both poor and rich assemble here from every part, near and distant. Those who wish to see the form of the divine spirit, being filled

---

104 This story of Ekaśrīnga seems to be connected with the episode of Śrīṅga in the Rāmdyāna. It is constantly referred to in Buddhist books. See Eitel’s Handbook, a. v.; Catena of Buddh. Scrip., p. 260; Romantic


105 Bhīmā is a form of Durgā, probably = Si-wang-mu of the Chinese.
with faith and free from doubt, after fasting seven days are privileged to behold it, and obtain for the most part their prayers. Below the mountain is the temple of Mahêsvara Déva; the heretics who cover themselves with ashes come here to offer sacrifice.

Going south-east from the temple of Bhimâ 150 li, we come to U-to-kia-han-ch'â. This town is about 20 li in circuit; on the south it borders on the river Sindh (Sin-to). The inhabitants are rich and prosperous. Here is amassed a supply of valuable merchandise, and mixed goods from all quarters.

To the north-west of U-to-kia-han-c'ha 20 li or so we come to the town of P'o-lo-tu-lo. This is the place where the Rîshi Pâñini, who composed the Ching-ming-lun was born.

Referring to the most ancient times, letters were very numerous; but when, in the process of ages, the world was destroyed and remained as a void, the Dévas of long life descended spiritually to guide the people. Such was the origin of the ancient letters and composition.

206 The same thing is said about Kwan-yin (Avalôkîtêsvara). For some account of the worship of Durgâ or Pârvati, and of Kwan-yin or Avalôkîtêsvara, as mountain deities, see J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xv. p. 333.
207 That is, the Pâsupata. Compare what Huen Tsang says in reference to Kwan-yin or Avalôkîtêsvara, viz., when he reveals himself on Mount Potaraka, he sometimes takes the form of Íôvara and sometimes that of a Pâsupata (book x. fol. 30). See also p. 60, n. 210 ante.
208 Restored by Julien to Uadhânda; identified by V. St. Martin with Ohind. Its south side rests on the Indus. The distance is 150 li from the temple of Bhimâ. If we actually project 150 li (30 miles) north-west from Ohind, it would bring us near Jamâlgarhi. About 50 li or 8 miles E.S.E. from it is Takht-i-Bhai, standing on an isolated hill 650 feet above the plain. The vast quantities of ruins found in this place indicate that it was once a centre of religious worship. Is this the site of Po-lu-shâ! Kapur dagarhi is 20 miles north-west from Ohind, and Takht-i-Bhai 13 miles E.N.E. from Kapur dagarhi. See p. 135.
209 The symbol p'o is for so (Jul.)
210 The town is Salâtura, the birthplace of Pâñini, who is known by the name of Sâlâturiya (Pâñini, iv. 3, 94). Cunningham identifies it with the village of Lahor, which he says is four miles north-west of Ohind.—Geog., p. 57. Conf. Weber, Hist. Sansk. Lit., p. 218, n.
211 The Vydkaranam.
212 Or, the Dévas who possessed long life.
213 I understand the symbol ku in this passage to mean "old" or "ancient."
From this time and after it the source (of language) spread and passed its (former) bounds. Brahmã Dêva and Šakra (Devendra) established rules (forms or examples) according to the requirements. Rishi's belonging to different schools each drew up forms of letters. Men in their successive generations put into use what had been delivered to them; but nevertheless students without ability (religious ability) were unable to make use (of these characters). And now men's lives were reduced to the length of a hundred years, when the Rishi Pâñini was born; he was from his birth extensively informed about things (men and things). The times being dull and careless, he wished to reform the vague and false rules (of writing and speaking)—to fix the rules and correct improprieties. As he wandered about asking for right ways, he encountered Ísvara Dêva, and recounted to him the plan of his undertaking. Ísvara Dêva said, "Wonderful! I will assist you in this." The Rishi, having received instruction, retired. He then laboured incessantly and put forth all his power of mind. He collected a multitude of words, and made a book on letters which contained a thousand ślokas; each śloka was of thirty-two syllables. It contained everything known from the first till then, without exception, respecting letters and words. He then closed it and sent it to the king (supreme ruler), who exceedingly prized it, and issued an edict that throughout the kingdom it should be used and taught to others; and he added that whoever should learn it from beginning to end should receive as his reward a thousand pieces of gold. And so from that time masters have received it and handed it down in its completeness for the good of the world. Hence the Brâhmaṇs of this town are well grounded in their literary work, and are of high renown for their talents, well informed as to things (men and things), and of a vigorous understanding (memory).

In the town of So-lo-tu-lo is a stâpa. This is the

113 Or, asking for wisdom or knowledge.
spot where an Arhat converted a disciple of Pāṇini. Tathāgata had left the world some five hundred years, when there was a great Arhat who came to the country of Kaśmir, and went about converting men. Coming to this place, he saw a Brahmachārin occupied in chastising a boy whom he was instructing in letters. Then the Arhat spake to the Brāhmaṇ thus: “Why do you cause pain to this child?” The Brāhmaṇ replied, “I am teaching him the Shing-ming (Śabdavidyā), but he makes no proper progress.” The Arhat smiled significantly, on which the Brāhmaṇ said, “Shamans are of a pitiful and loving disposition, and well disposed to men and creatures generally; why did you smile, honoured sir? Pray let me know!”

The Arhat replied, “Light words are not becoming, and I fear to cause in you incredulous thoughts and unbelief. No doubt you have heard of the Rīshi Pāṇini, who compiled the Śabdavidyā Śāstra, which he has left for the instruction of the world.” The Brāhmaṇ replied, “The children of this town, who are his disciples, revere his eminent qualities, and a statue erected to his memory still exists.” The Arhat continued: “This little boy whom you are instructing was that very (Pāṇini) Rīshi. As he devoted his vigorous mind to investigate worldly literature, he only produced heretical treatises without any power of true reason in them. His spirit and his wisdom were dispersed, and he has run through the cycles of continued birth from then till now. Thanks to some remnant of true virtue, he has been now born as your attached child; but the literature of the world and these treatises on letters are only cause of use-

114 The symbol yēn, according to Medhurst, means “to put forth vital energy;” yēn me, therefore, I take to denote “significance” or “meaning.” The smile of Buddha or an Arhat was supposed to indicate prophetic insight or vision. The same meaning is attached to “a smile” in many of our own medie-

115 “Light words,” in the sense of trifling or unmeaning words, or words spoken lightly.
less efforts to him, and are as nothing compared to
the holy teaching of Tathâgata, which, by its mysteri-
ous influences, procures both happiness and wisdom.
On the shores of the southern sea there was an old
decayed tree, in the hollows of which five hundred bats
had taken up their abodes. Once some merchants took
their seats beneath this tree, and as a cold wind was
blowing, these men, cold and hungry, gathered together a
heap of fuel and lit a fire at the tree-foot. The flames,
catching hold of the tree, by degrees it was burnt down.
At this time amongst the merchant troop there was one
who, after the turn of the night, began to recite a portion
of the Abhidharma Pitaka. The bats, notwithstanding the
flames, because of the beauty of the sound of the law
patiently endured the pain, and did not come forth
After this they died, and, according to their works, they
all received birth as men. They became ascetics, practised
wisdom, and by the power of the sounds of the law
they had heard they grew in wisdom and became Arhats
as the result of merit acquired in the world. Lately
the king, Kanishka, with the honourable Pârśvika, sum-
moning a council of five hundred saints and sages in
the country of Kaśmîr, they drew up the Viśāha
Śāstra. These were the five hundred bats who formerly
dwelt in that decayed tree. I myself, though of poor
ability, am one of the number. It is thus men differ in
their superior or inferior abilities. Some rise, others live
in obscurity. But now, O virtuous one! permit your
pupil (attached child) to leave his home. Becoming a
disciple of Buddha, the merits we secure are not to be
told."

The Arhat having spoken thus, proved his spiritual
capabilities by instantly disappearing. The Brâhman was
deeply affected by what he saw, and moved to believe.
He noised abroad through the town and neighbourhood
what had happened, and permitted the child to become a
disciple of Buddha and acquire wisdom. Moreover, he
himself changed his belief, and mightily reverenced the three precious ones. The people of the village, following his example, became disciples, and till now they have remained earnest in their profession.

From U-to-kia-han-ch'a, going north, we pass over some mountains, cross a river, and travelling 600 li or so, we arrive at the kingdom of U-chang-na (Udyâna).
BOOK III.


I. U-chang-na (Udyána).

The country of U-chang-na¹ is about 5000 li in circuit; the mountains and valleys are continuously connected, and the valleys and marshes alternate with a succession of high plateaux. Though various kinds of grain are sown, yet the crops are not rich. The grape is abundant, the

¹ Udyána (Prákrit, Ujjána), the U-chang of Fa-hian (cap. viii.), is so called because of its garden-like appearance. "Udyána lay to the north of Peshávar on the Swát river, but from the extent assigned to it by Hiuen Tsang the name probably covered the whole hill-region south of the Hindu Kush and the Dard country from Chitrál to the Indus."—Yule, Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 173; compare also Cunningham’s remarks, Geog. Anc. Ind., p. 81; Lassen, I. A., vol. i. p. 505, vol. iii. p. 138; and Bactrian Coins, (Eng. trans.) p. 96. It is described by Sung-yun as bordering on the Tsung-ling mountains to the north, and on India to the south. This writer gives a glowing description of the fertility and beauty of the valley and its neighbourhood (Beal’s Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 189). It was a flourishing centre of Buddhist worship. Fa-hian (cap. viii.) says "the law of Buddha is universally hon-
sugar-cane scarce. The earth produces gold and iron, and is favourable to the cultivation of the scented (shrub) called Yo-kin (turmeric). The forests are thick and shady, the fruits and flowers abundant. The cold and heat are agreeably tempered, the wind and rain come in their season. The people are soft and effeminate, and in disposition are somewhat sly and crafty. They love learning yet have no application. They practise the art of using charms (religious sentences as charms). Their clothing is white cotton, and they wear little else. Their language, though different in some points, yet greatly resembles that of India. Their written characters and their rules of etiquette are also of a mixed character as before. They greatly reverence the law of Buddha and are believers in the Great Vehicle.

On both sides of the river Su-po-fa-su-tu, there are some 1,400 old saṅghārāmas. They are now generally waste and desolate; formerly there were some 18,000 priests in them, but gradually they have become less, till now there are very few. They study the Great Vehicle; they practise the duty of quiet meditation, and have pleasure in reciting texts relating to this subject, but have no great understanding as to them. The (priests who) practise the rules of morality lead a pure life and purposely prohibit

China from South India. If we allow an interval of 100 years between the 23rd patriarch (Śrīnā) and the 28th (Bodhidharma), we should thus have the date of Mahirakula cir. 420 A.D., that is, just after Fa-hian's time. But in this case Vasubandhu, who was the 20th patriarch, must have flourished in the fourth century and not in the sixth, as Max Müller proposes (India, p. 290); ante, p. 105, n. 77. Mahirakula is, however, placed by Cunningham in A.D. 164–179, and Śrīnā's death is usually placed in the middle of the third century A.D. Remusat, Mel. Asiat., tome i. p. 124.

2 The employment of magical sentences is with them an art and a study, or a work of art. This country of Udyāna was the birthplace of Padma Sambhava, a great master of enchantments. Yule, Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 173.

3 Fa-hian says that in his days the people of this country were all followers of the Little Vehicle. Probably the re-introduction of Buddhist doctrine after the persecution had been effected by teachers of the Mahāyāna school.

4 That is, the Subhavastu, the Swāt river of the present day. It is named by Arrian the Sélos, and he says that it flows into the Kōphn at Peukalaitis. See note 24 infra.
the use of charms. The schools of the Vinaya traditionally known amongst them are the Sarvastivadins, the Dharmaguptas, the Mahisasakas, the Kasyaplyas, and the Mahasanghikas: these five.

There are about ten temples of Devas, and a mixed number of unbelievers who dwell in them. There are four or five strong towns. The kings mostly reign at Mungali (Mung-kie-li) as their capital. This town is about 16 or 17 li in circuit and thickly populated. Four or five li to the east of Mungali is a great stupa, where very many spiritual portents are seen. This is the spot where Buddha, when he lived in old time, was the Rishi who practised patience (Kshanti-rishi), and for the sake of Kaliraja endured the dismemberment of his body.

To the north-east of the town of Mungali about 250 or 260 li, we enter a great mountain and arrive at the foun-

---

8 This translation differs from Julian's, but I understand Hiuen Tsang to be alluding to the Hanyanists. Those who follow the rules (viz., of the Vinaya).

9 The rules of the Vinaya are handed down and followed; they have (or, there are) five schools. The purport of the text is apparently to show that there was a traditional knowledge of the old teaching to which Fa-hian refers. The new school, given to magic, had been introduced after the persecution; the old teaching was opposed to this, and the followers of that teaching resisted its use.


6 These five schools belong to the Little Vehicle—(1) The Dharmagupta (Fa-mih-pu), (2) Mahisasaka (Fa-ti-pu), (3) Kasyaplya (Yin-kwong-pu), (4) Sarvastivada (Shwo-yih-tsai-yoeu-pu), (5) Mahasanghika (Ta-chong-pu).

9 Mungali or Mangala, probably the Mangora of Wilford's surveyor, Mogal Beg, and the Manglavor of General Court's map (Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of India, p. 82). According to V. de St. Martin (Mem., p. 314), it should be Mangalavor (Maangala-pura). It was on the left bank of the Swat river. See J. A. S. Ben., vol. viii. pp. 311 f.; Lassen, I. A., vol. i. p. 138.

10 I.e., as a Bhodhisattva. The history of the Bodhisattva when he was born at Kshantirishe is frequently met with in Chinese Buddhist books. The account will be found in Wong Puh, 576 (J. R. A. S., vol. xx. p. 165). The name Kie-li (Kali) is interpreted in the original by "fight-quarrel." The lacuna which occurs in the text was probably the history of this Jin-josien (Kshantirishe), who suffered his hands to be cut off by Kali-raja, and not only was not angry, but promised the king that he should be born as Kondinya and become one of his (Buddha's) first disciples (Burnouf, Introd., p. 198).

11 "Enter a great mountain," i.e., a mountainous range. There is no mention made of "traversing a valley," as in Julian.
tain of the Nâga Apalâla; this is the source of the river Su-po-fa-su-tu. This river flows to the south-west.\textsuperscript{12} Both in summer and spring it freezes, and from morning till night snow-drifts are flying in clouds, the fine reflected colours of which are seen on every side.

This Nâga, in the time of Kâsyapa Buddha, was born as a man and was called King-ki (Gaṅgi). He was able, by the subtle influences of the charms he used, to restrain and withstand the power of the wicked dragons, so that they could not (afflict the country) with violent storms of rain. Thanks to him, the people were thus able to gather in an abundance of grain. Each family then agreed to offer him, in token of their gratitude, a peck of grain as a yearly tribute. After a lapse of some years there were some who omitted to bring their offerings, on which Gaṅgi in wrath prayed that he might become a poisonous dragon and afflict them with storms of rain and wind to the destruction of their crops. At the end of his life he became the dragon of this country; the flowings of the fountain emitted a white stream which destroyed all the products of the earth.

At this time, Śâkya Tathāgata, of his great pity guiding the world, was moved with compassion for the people of this country, who were so singularly afflicted with this calamity. Descending therefore spiritually,\textsuperscript{13} he came to this place, desiring to convert the violent dragon. Taking the mace of the Vajrapâṇi\textsuperscript{14} spirit, he beat against the mountain side. The dragon king, terrified, came forth and paid him reverence. Hearing the preaching of the law by Buddha, his heart became pure and his faith was awakened. Tathāgata forthwith for-
bad him to injure the crops of the husbandmen. Whereupon the dragon said, "All my sustenance comes from the fields of men; but now, grateful for the sacred instructions I have received, I fear it will be difficult to support myself in this way; yet pray let me have one gathering in every twelve years." Tathāgata compassionately permitted this. Therefore every twelfth year there is a calamity from the overflowing of the White River.

To the south-west of the fountain of the dragon A palāla ('O-po-lo-lo), about 30 li on the north side of the river, there is a foot trace of Buddha on a great rock. According to the religious merit of persons, this impression appears long or short. This is the trace left by Buddha after having subdued the dragon. Afterwards men built up a stone residence (over the impression). Men come here from a distance to offer incense and flowers.

Following the stream downwards 30 li or so, we come to the stone where Tathāgata washed his robe. The tissues of the kashāya stuff are yet visible as if engraved on the rock.

To the south of the town of Mungali 400 li or so we come to Mount Hila (Hi-lo). The water flowing through the valley here turns to the west, and then flowing again eastward remounts (towards its source). Various fruits and flowers skirt the banks of the stream and face the sides of the mountains. There are high crags and deep caverns, and placid streams winding through the valleys: sometimes are heard the sounds of people's voices, sometimes the reverberation of musical notes. There are, moreover, square stones here like long narrow bedsteads,15 perfected as if by the hand of men; they stretch in continuous lines from the mountain side down the valley. It was here Tathāgata dwelling in old days,
by listening to half a Gātha of the law was content to kill himself.  

Going south about 200 li from the town of Mungali, by the side of a great mountain, we come to the Mahāvana saṅghārāma. It was here Tathāgata in old days practised the life of a Bōdhisattva under the name of Sarvadatta-rāja. Fleeing from his enemy, he resigned his country and arrived secretly in this place. Meeting with a poor Brāhmaṇ who asked alms from him, and having nothing to give in consequence of his losing his country, he ordered him to bind him as a prisoner and take him to the king, his enemy, in order that he might receive a reward, which would be in the place of charity to him.  

Going north-west from the Mahāvana saṅghārāma down the mountain 30 or 40 li, we arrive at the Mo-su saṅghārāma. Here there is a stūpa about 100 feet or so in height.  

By the side of it is a great square stone on which is the impress of Buddha’s foot. This is the spot where Buddha in old time planted his foot, (which) scattered a kōti of rays of light which lit up the Mahāvana saṅghārāma, and then for the sake of Dēvas and men he recited the history of his former births (Jātakas). Underneath this stūpa (or at the foot of it) is a stone of a yellow-white colour, which is always damp with an unctuous (fatty) moisture; this is where Buddha, when he was in old time practising the life of a Bōdhisattva, having heard the words of the true law, breaking a bone of his own body, wrote (with the marrow) the substance of a book containing the words he had heard.

---

16 A gātha is a verse of thirty-two syllables.—Ch. Ed. This story of Bōdhisattva sacrificing his life for the sake of a half-gātha will be found in the Mahāparinirvāṇa Sūtra of the Northern School, K. xiv. fol. 11. I have translated it in Trübner’s Record. See also Ind. Antiq., vol. iv. p. 90; Upham, Doctrine and Literature of Buddhism, vol. iii. p. 306.  
17 In Chinese Tú-lin, “great forest.”—Ch. Ed.  
18 The Chinese equivalents are Sa-po-ta-ta, which are explained by, tsai-shi, “he who gives all.”  
19 For Mo-su-lo, Mādhura.—Julien. Mo-su is explained in text to mean “lentils” (masura).
Going west 60 or 70 li from the Mo-su saṅghārāma is a stūpa which was built by Asoka-rāja. It was here Tathāgata in old time, practising the life of a Bōdhisattva, was called Śivika (or Sibika) Rāja. Seeking the fruit of Buddhahood, he cut his body to pieces in this place to redeem a dove from the power of a hawk.

Going north-west from the place where he redeemed the dove, 200 li or so, we enter the valley of Shan-ni-lo-shi, where is the convent of Sa-pao-sha-ti. Here is a stūpa in height 80 feet or so. In old time, when Buddha was Lord Śakra, famine and disease were prevalent everywhere in this country. Medicine was of no use, and the roads were filled with dead. Lord Śakra was moved with pity and meditated how he might rescue and save the people. Then changing his form, he appeared as a great serpent, and extended his dead body all along the void of the great valley, and called from the void to those on every side (to look). Those who heard were filled with joy, and running together hastened to the spot, and the more they cut the body of the serpent the more they revived, and were delivered both from famine and disease.

By the side of this stūpa and not far off is the great stūpa of Sūma. Here in old time when Tathāgata was Lord Śakra, filled with concern for the world, afflicted

---

20 For the Śivi Jātaka see my Abstract of Four Lectures, pp. 33 seq. This story is a favourite one, and forms an episode in the Mahābhārata, iii. 13275–13300; the same story of the hawk and pigeon is told of Uṣnara in iii. 10560–10596. See also Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. ix. and lxiii. fig. 1, pp. 194, 225. The figures of the dove and hawk, which are sometimes seen in other Buddhist sculptures, e.g., Cunningham, Bharhut Stūpa, pl. xlv. 7, probably allude to this jātaka. Conf. Jour. Ceylon Br. R. As. Soc., vol. ii. (1853), pp. 5, 6; S. Hardy’s Eastern Monachism, pp. 277–279; Burgess, Notes on Ajanṭā Rock Temples, p. 76; Caves-Temples of India, pp. 291, 315.

21 The valley of Shan-ni-lo-shi may be restored to Sanirāja, “the giving king.” There is a note in the original which explains Shi-pikia (Śivika) by the word “to give;” but Śivika is generally interpreted in Chinese Buddhist books by “silver-white,” alluding perhaps to the “birch tree,” with its silver-white bark, which is one of the meanings of śivi. The explanation “to give” ought to be referred to sani, in the compound Sanirāja. The name of the convent, Sa-pao-sha-ti, is explained in the text by she-yo—serpent medicine, and is restored by Julien to Sarpāushadi.
with every kind of disease and pestilence, with his perfect knowledge of the case, he changed himself into the serpent Sûma; none of those who tasted his flesh failed to recover from their disease.

To the north of the valley Shan-ni-lo-shi, by the side of a steep rock, is a stûpa. Of those who, being sick, have come there to seek (restoration), most have recovered.

In old time Tathâgata was the king of peacocks; on one occasion he came to this place with his followers. Being afflicted with tormenting thirst, they sought for water on every side without success. The king of the peacocks with his beak struck the rock, and forthwith there flowed out an abundant stream which now forms a lake. Those who are afflicted on tasting or washing in the water are healed. On the rock are still seen the traces of the peacock’s feet.

To the south-west of the town of Mungali 60 or 70 li there is a great river, on the east of which is a stûpa 60 feet or so in height; it was built by Shang-kiun (Uttarāsêna). Formerly when Tathâgata was about to die, he addressed the great congregation and said: “After my Nirvâna, Uttarāsêna-râja, of the country Udyâna (U-chang-na), will obtain a share of the relics of my body. When the kings were about to divide the relics equally, Uttarāsêna-râja arrived after (the others); coming from a frontier country, he was treated with little regard by the others.” At this time the Dèvas published afresh the

22 The serpent Sûma (Su-mo-shê), translated by Julien, “serpent of water;” but I take Sûma to be a proper name. The serpent Sûma is probably another form of the Ahi, or cloud-snake of the Vîda (compare Tiele, Outlines of the History of Anc. Nations, p. 174). The Dèva of Adam’s Peak, who has so much to do with the serpents converted by Buddha, is called Sumana.

23 Mayûra-râja.

24 The Subhasvastu or Suvâstu (Rîg-Veda, viii. 19, 37; Mahâbhâr., vi. 333), the Zêsaros of Arrian (Ind., iv. 11), the Soûntos of Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 42), and the modern Swât river, at the source of which the dragon Apallâ lived. Conf. Fah-hian, ch. viii.; Vie de Hiouen Thsang, p. 86; Reinaud, Mém. sur l’Inde, p. 277; Saint-Martin, Géographie du Veda, p. 44; Mém Analyt. s. la Carte, &c., pp. 63, 64; Burnouf, Introd., p. 336, n. 2; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. (2d ed.), p. 140; J. A. S. Beng., vol. ix. p. 480; Wilson, Ariana Ant., pp. 183, 190, 194; and ante, notes 4 and 12, pp. 120, 122.

25 This may be also construed, “he was treated lightly on account of his rustic (frontier) appearance.”
words of Tathāgata as he was about to die. Then obtaining a portion of relics, the king came back to his country, and, to show his great respect, erected this stūpa. By the side of it, on the bank of the great river, there is a large rock shaped like an elephant. Formerly Uttarāsena-rāja brought back to his own land the relics of Buddha on a great white elephant. Arrived at this spot, the elephant suddenly fell down and died, and was changed immediately into stone. By the side of this the stūpa is built.

Going west of the town of Mungali 50 li or so, and crossing the great river, we come to a stūpa called Lu-hitaka (Rōhitaka); it is about 50 feet high, and was built by Asoka-rāja. In former days, when Tathāgata was practising the life of a Bōdhisattva, he was the king of a great country, and was called Ts’z’-li (power of love).26 In this place he pierced his body, and with his blood fed the five Yakshas.

To the north-east of the town of Mungali 30 li or so is the Ho-pu-to-shi stūpa,27 about 40 feet in height. In former days Tathāgata here expounded the law for the sake of men and Devas, to instruct (enlighten) and guide them. After Tathāgata had gone, from the earth suddenly arose (this stūpa); the people highly reverenced it, and offered flowers and incense without end.

To the west of the stone stūpa, after crossing the great river and going 30 or 40 li, we arrive at Vihāra, in which is a figure of Avalokiteśvara Bōdhisattva.28 Its spiritual

26 Ts’z’-li, restored by Julien to Maitribala; for this Jātaka see R. Mitra’s Nepalese Buddhist Literature, p. 50.
27 Ho-pu-to is for adbhuta, miraculous or unique (Ch. k’i-te). Julien suggests Adbhutāśma, the name of this stūpa of miraculous stone (k’i-te-shi), but it may be simply “a miraculous stone stūpa.” The expression “stone stūpa” is a common one, and indeed occurs in the following section.
28 Avalokiteśvara, in Chinese the phonetic symbols are ‘O-jo-lo-che-to-i-shi-fa-lo. There is a note in the text explaining the meaning of this name to be “the looking (kwan) or beholding god” (Ikvar, Ch. tez’tsaì, “self-existent”). The note adds that the old forms of translation, viz., Kwong-shai-yin, “luminous voice,” Kwan-shai-yin, “beholding or regarding voice,” Kwan-shai-tez’tsaì, “beholding the world god,” are all erroneous. But there is good reason for believing that the form Kwan-shai-yin, “be-
influences exhibit themselves in a mysterious way, and its miraculous powers (evidences) are manifested in an illustrious manner. The votaries of the law come together from every side, and offer it continual sacrifices (presents).

Going north-west 140 or 150 li from the statue of Kwantsz-tsai Bodhisattva, we come to the mountain of Lan-polu. The crest of this mountain has a dragon lake about 30 li or so in circuit. The clear waves roll in their majesty, the water pure as a bright mirror. In old days Pi-lu-tse-kia (Virūdhaka-rāja) having led his army to attack the Sākyas, four of the tribe resisted the advance. These were driven away by their clansmen, and each fled in a different direction. One of the Sākyas, having left the capital of the country, and being worn out by travel, sat down to rest in the middle of the road.

There appeared now a wild goose, who, in his flight (progress), alighted before him; and because of his docile ways, he at last mounted on his back. The goose then flying away, took him to the side of this lake. By this mode of conveyance the Sākya fugitive visited different kingdoms in various directions. Once having mistaken his way, he went to sleep by the side of the lake under

holding or attending to the voice of men," arose from a confusion of the "looking-down god" with a quality attributed to a similar deity of "hearing prayers" (Al Makah). (See J. R. As. S., N.S., vol. xv. p. 333 f.) It is singular, if the expression Kwan-yin is erroneous, that Hiuen Tsang, or rather Hwul-lih, uses it so constantly in his biography (see Vie, pp. 88, 141, 146, 163, 172, and in the context); ante, p. 60, n. 210.

29 For an account of this incident see below, Book vi. There is a corresponding account in the Mahāvamsa, p. 55. "While Buddha yet lived, driven by the misfortunes produced by the war of Prince Vipudhharho, certain members of the Sākya line retreating to Himavanto discovered a delightful and beautiful location, well watered and situated in the midst of a forest of lofty bo and other trees, &c." The account then goes on to speak of the pes-fowls (mayuras), and from that to trace the origin of the Mōriyan dynasty, to which Chandragupta belonged. The tale of the peacock bringing water from the rock, the serpent to which the dying people were to look, and the Mōriyan line of kings, might perhaps justify some reference to the name of the people inhabiting this district, viz., the Yūzafsais, Yūzaf being the Oriental form of the name of Joseph (V. de St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 313, n. 3). Conf. Max Müller, Hist. Anc. Sans. Lit., p. 285; Fo-sho-hing-tsuan-king, p. 336. The account of the Nāga maiden and the exiled wanderer (holy youth) which follows is also suggestive.
the shadow of a tree. At this time a young Nāga maiden was walking beside the lake, and suddenly spied the Sākyya youth. Fearing that she might not be able otherwise to accomplish her wish, she transformed herself into a human shape and began to caress him. The youth, because of this, awoke affrighted from his sleep, and addressing her said, "I am but a poor wanderer worn out with fatigue; why then do you show me such tenderness?" In the course of matters the youth, becoming deeply moved, prayed her to consent to his wishes. She said, "My father and mother require to be asked and obeyed in this matter. You have favoured me with your affection, but they have not yet consented." The Sākyya youth replied, "The mountains and valleys (surround us) with their mysterious shades; where then is your home?" She said, "I am a Nāga maiden belonging to this pool. I have heard with awe of your holy tribe having suffered such things, and of your being driven away from home to wander here and there in consequence. I have fortunately been able, as I wandered, to administer somewhat to your comfort, and you have desired me to yield to your wishes in other respects, but I have received no commands to that effect from my parents. Unhappily, too, this Nāga body is the curse following my evil deeds."  

The Sākyya youth answered, "One word uttered from the ground of the heart and agreed to (by us both) and this matter is ended." She said, "I respectfully obey your...

30 That is, to approach near and inquire or look upon him (tang). The word rendered "caress" in this passage means to smooth, or pat the head.

31 This passage may be rendered literally thus: "How much rather, alas! since on account of accumulated misery I have received this Nāga (serpent) body." The expression taik ho, "misery accumulated from evil deeds," corresponds with the phrase taik fuk, "much happiness derived from good works."

VOL. I.

(See Wells Williams, Tonic Dict., sub taik, to gather or hoard up.) There is a passage following the above omitted in the text: "A man and beast are different in their ways (of birth); such a union has not been heard of."

32 This may otherwise be translated: "One word permitted by you, my cherished desire is then accomplished." I take suh sin to be equal to suh yuen, a cherished desire; but the expression may also refer to the power of accumulated merit to effect
orders; let that follow whatever it be." Then the Śākyya youth said, "By the power of my accumulated merit let this Nāga woman be turned into human shape." The woman was immediately so converted. On seeing herself thus restored to human shape she was overjoyed, and gratefully addressed the Śākyya youth thus: "By my evil deeds (through the accumulation of evil deeds), I have been compelled to migrate through evil forms of birth, till now happily, by the power of your religious merit, the body which I have possessed through many kalpas has been changed in a moment. My gratitude is boundless, nor could it be expressed if I wore my body to dust (with frequent prostrations). Let me but acquaint my father and mother; I will then follow you and obey you in all things." The Nāga maiden then returning to the lake addressed her father and mother, saying, "Just now, as I was wandering abroad, I lighted upon a Śākyya youth, who by the power of his religious merit succeeded in changing me into human form. Having formed an affection for me, he desires to marry me. I lay before you the matter in its truth."

The Nāga-rāja was rejoiced to see his daughter restored to human form, and from a true affection to the holy tribe he gave consent to his daughter’s request. Then proceeding from the lake, he expressed his deep gratitude to the Śākyya youth, and said, "You have not despised creatures of other kinds, and have condescended to those beneath you. I pray you come to my abode, and there receive my humble services."

an object, the sasciha kiriṣya (satya- kiriṣya) of the Southern School of Buddhism. See Childers, Pāli Dict., sub voc.; also Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 40.

Julien translates this passage: "I am prepared to follow you." The meaning may also be, "only let that follow which you desire;" or, "only let that be accomplished which is the consequence of the past," i.e., your past deeds.

The literal translation of this passage is: "Desiring to make returns for this goodness, grinding my body to dust, I should not yet thank you enough. My heart desires to follow you in your travels; one thing restrains me, the propriety of things; let me," &c. Instead of "obey you," the word it may refer to ceremonial or marriage rites.

Literally, "sweepings and bat-
The Śākya youth having accepted the Nāga-rāja’s invitation, went forthwith to his abode. On this all the family of the Nāga received the youth with extreme reverence, and desired to delight his mind by an excess of feasting and pleasure; but the youth, seeing the dragon forms of his entertainers, was filled with affright and disgust, and he desired to go. The Nāga-rāja detaining him said, “Of your kindness depart not. Occupy a neighbouring abode; I will manage to make you master of this land and to obtain a lasting fame. All the people shall be your servants, and your dynasty shall endure for successive ages.”

The Śākya youth expressed his gratitude, and said, “I can hardly expect your words to be fulfilled.” Then the Nāga-rāja took a precious sword and placed it in a casket covered with white camlet, very fine and beautiful, and then he said to the Śākya youth, “Now of your kindness go to the king and offer him this white camlet as a tribute. The king will be sure to accept it as the offering of a remote (distant) person; then, as he takes it, draw forth the sword and kill him. Thus you will seize his kingdom. Is it not excellent?”

The Śākya youth receiving the Nāga’s directions, went forthwith to make his offering to the king of U-chang-na (Udyāna). When the king was about to take the piece of white camlet, then the youth took hold of his sleeve, and pierced him with the sword. The attendant ministers and the guards raised a great outcry and ran about in confusion. The Śākya youth, waving the sword, cried out, “This sword that I hold was given me by a holy Nāga wherewith to punish the contumelious and subdue the arrogant.” Being affrighted at the divine warrior, they submitted, and gave him the kingdom. On this he corrected abuses and established order; he advanced the good and relieved the unfortunate; and then with a great cortège he advanced towards the Nāga palace to acquaint him with the completion of his undertaking;
and then taking his wife he went back to the capital. Now the former demerits of the Nāga girl were not yet effaced, and their consequences still remained. Every time he went to rest by her side, from her head came forth the ninefold crest of the Nāga. The Śākya prince, filled with affright and disgust, hitting on no other plan, waited till she slept, and then cut off (the dragon’s crest) with his sword. The Nāga girl, alarmed, awoke and said, “This will bring no good hereafter to your posterity; it will not be ineffectual in slightly afflicting me during my life, and your children and grandchildren will all suffer from pains in the head.” And so the royal line of this country are ever afflicted with this malady, and although they are not all so continually, yet every succession brings a worse affliction. After the death of the Śākya youth his son succeeded under the name of Uttaresēna (U-ta-lo-si-na).

Just after Uttaresēna had come to power his mother lost her sight. Tathāgata, when he was going back from the subjugation of the Nāga Apalâla, descended from space and alighted in this palace. Uttaresēna was out hunting, and Tathāgata preached a short sermon to his mother. Having heard the sermon from the mouth of the holy one, she forthwith recovered her sight. Tathāgata then asked her, “Where is your son? he is of my family.” She said, “He went out hunting for a while this morning, but he will soon be back.” When Tathāgata with his attendants were bent on going, the king’s mother said, “Of my great fortune I have borne a child belonging to the holy family; and Tathāgata of his great compassion has again come down to visit my house as connected with him. My son will soon return; oh, pray remain for a short time!” The Lord of the World said, “This son of yours belongs to my family; he need only hear the truth to believe it and understand it. If he were not my relative I would remain to instruct his heart, but now I go. On his return, tell him that Tathāgata has gone from this to Kuśinagara (Keu-shi), where between the Sala trees he is about to
die, and let your son come for a share of the relics to
honour them."

Then Tathâgata with all his attendants took flight through
the air and went. Afterwards Uttarasêna-râja, whilst en-
gaged in the chase, saw, a long way off, his palace lighted
up as if with a fire. Being in doubt about it, he quitted the
chase and returned. On seeing his mother with her sight
restored he was transported with joy, and addressed her,
saying, "What fortunate circumstance has occurred to you
during my short absence that you should have got your
sight again as of old time?" The mother said, "After
you had gone out Tathâgata came here, and after hearing
him preach I recovered my sight. Buddha has gone from
here to Kuśinagara; he is going to die between the Sâla
trees. He commands you to go quickly to the spot to get
some of his relics."

The king having heard these words, uttered cries of
lamentation, and fell prostrate on the ground motionless.
Coming to himself, he collected his cortége and went to
the twin-trees, where Buddha had already died. Then
the kings of the other countries treated him scornfully,
and were unwilling to give him a share of the much-
prized relics they were taking to their own countries.
On this a great assembly of Dêvas acquainted them with
Buddha’s wishes, on which the kings divided the relics
equally, beginning with him.

Going north-west from the town of Mung-kia-li, crossing
a mountain and passing through a valley, we reascend
the Sin-tu river.\footnote{36 That is, we strike on the Indus river, and ascend it against its course.} The roads are craggy and steep; the
mountains and the valleys are dark and gloomy. Some-
times we have to cross by ropes, sometimes by iron chains
stretched (across the gorges). There are foot-bridges (or
covered ways) suspended in the air, and flying bridges’
across the chasms, with wooden steps let into the ground for
climbing the steep embankments. Going thus 1000 li or
so, we reach the river valley of Ta-li-lo, where stood once the capital of U-chang-na. This country produces much gold and scented turmeric. By the side of a great saṅghāraṇa in this valley of Ta-li-lo is a figure of Maitrēya Bōdhisattva, carved out of wood. It is golden coloured, and very dazzling in appearance, and possesses a secret spiritual power (of miracle). It is about 100 feet high, and is the work of the Arhat Madhyāntika. This saint by his spiritual power caused a sculptor to ascend into the Tushita (Tu-si-to) heaven, that he might see for himself the marks and signs (on the person of Maitrēya); this he did three times, till his task was finished. From the time of the execution of this image the streams of the law (religious teaching) began to flow eastward.

Going east from this, after climbing precipices and crossing valleys, we go up the course of the Sin-tu river; and then, by the help of flying bridges and footways made

27 Ta-li-lo, or Dāril or Dārail, a valley on the right or western bank of the Indus (long. 73° 44' E.), watered by a river Daril, containing half-a-dozen towns, and occupied by Dārdu or Dards, from whom it received its name (Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of India, p. 82). It is perhaps the same as the To-li of Fa-hian. Conf. Cunningham in J. A. S. Ben., vol. xvii. pt. ii. p. 19; and Ladak, pp. 2, 46 f. Julien has Talila.

28 Maitrēya is the “Buddha to come.” He is supposed now to be dwelling as a Bōdhisattva in the fourth Dēvalōkā heaven called Tu-shita (Hardy, Man. Buddh., p. 25; Burnouf, Introd., pp. 96, 606). This heaven is the place of desire for Buddhists like Hiuen Tsiang, who constantly prayed on his death-bed for the happiness of being born there. The short Chinese inscription lately found at Buddha Gayā is occupied chiefly with aspirations after this heaven (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xiii. pp. 552 f.; Ind. Ant., vol. x. p. 103). It is a belief opposed to the “paradise of the west” (Su-hāra), which probably is of foreign origin.

29 Madhyāntika, according to the Northern School of Buddhism, was a disciple of Ānanda (Fo-sho-king-tsenn-kung, xi.), converted shortly before the death of the latter. In Tibetan he is called Ni-mah-gung. See Asiatic Res., vol. xx. p. 92. By some he is reckoned as one of the first five patriarchs, and placed between Ānanda and Sāṇavāsa, but others do not reckon him among them. At Banaras the people were annoyed at the number of Bhikshus, and Madhyāntika, taking ten thousand of them, flew through the air to Mount Uṣīra, in Kuśāṇa, which he converted to Buddhism. See Vassileff, pp. 35, 39, 45, 225; Köppen, vol. i. pp. 145, 189 f. The Mahāvamsa (p. 71) speaks of a Majjhima who, after the third Buddhist synod, was sent to Kuśāṇa and the Himavanta country to spread the Buddhist faith. (See also Oldenberg, Dipavamsa, viii. 10.) Fa-hian (chap. viii.) says this image was carved about 300 years after the Nirvāṇa.
of wood across the chasms and precipices, after going 500 li or so, we arrive at the country of Po-1u-10 (Bolor).

**PO-LU-LO (BOLOR)**

The country of Po-1u-10\(^{40}\) is about 4000 li in circuit; it stands in the midst of the great Snowy Mountains. It is long from east to west, and narrow from north to south. It produces wheat and pulse, gold and silver. Thanks to the quantity of gold, the country is rich in supplies. The climate is continually cold. The people are rough and rude in character; there is little humanity or justice with them; and as for politeness, such a thing has not been heard of. They are coarse and despicable in appearance, and wear clothes made of wool. Their letters are nearly like those of India, their language somewhat different. There are about a hundred saṅghā-rāmas in the country, with something like a thousand priests, who show no great zeal for learning, and are careless in their moral conduct. Leaving this country and returning to U-to-kia-han-cha (Uḍakhānda),\(^{4}\)

\(^{40}\) According to Cunningham, Bolor is the modern Balti, Baltistân, or Little Tibet (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 84). Marco Polo also mentions a country called Bolor, but he places it E.N.E. from the Pamir plateau (Yule’s Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 187). Bolor may have included both Balti and the mountains adjoining the southern margin of Pamir. Indeed the Chinese included Chitral to the northern boundary of Swât under this term (Yule). Sung Yün refers to this country (Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 187). For other references see Yule (op. cit., p. 188). Although Hwui-lih says nothing about this visit to Bolor, yet the use of the symbol king shows that Hinen Tsiang personally visited the country. Marco Polo says of the people, “they are indeed an evil race.” He also calls them “savage idolaters” (op. cit., chap. xxxii.) Ptolemy (Geog., lib. vi. c. 15, 3) places the Bōlra at the foot of the Imaus mountains, in Little Tibet or Baltistân. This district was noted for its gold in very early times (conf. Herodotos, lib. iii. cc. 102, 105; Strabo, lib. ii. c. 1, 9; lib. xv. c. 1, 37; Arrian, Anab. Alex., lib. v. c. 4; Indika, c. 5; and Ind. Ant., vol. iv. pp. 225 ff.

we cross at the south the river Sin-tu. The river is about 3 or 4 li in width, and flows south-west. Its waters are pure and clear as a mirror as they roll along with impetuous flow. Poisonous Nāgas and hurtful beasts occupy the caverns and clefts along its sides. If a man tries to cross the river carrying with him valuable goods or gems or rare kinds of flowers or fruits, or especially relics of Buddha, the boat is frequently engulfed by the waves. After crossing the river we arrive at the kingdom of Ta-ch’a-shi-lo (Takshaśilā).

**TA-CH’A-SHI-LO (TAKSHAŚILĀ).**

The kingdom of Ta-ch’a-shi-lo is about 2000 li in circuit, and the capital is about 10 li in circuit. The royal family being extinct, the nobles contend for power by force. Formerly this country was in subjection to Kapiṣa, but latterly it has become tributary to Kia-shi-

---

42 So we find on his return journey Hiuen Tsang lost his books and flowers, and was nearly drowned in crossing the river about this spot (see Hwu-lih, K. v.; Vie, p. 263). On the return journey, Hiuen Tsang makes the distance from Takshaśilā to the Indus three days’ journey N.W. (Hwu-lih, Vie, p. 263). Fa-hien makes it seven days’ journey from Gandhāra (cap. xi.); Sung-yun also places it three days to the east of the Indus (Beal’s *Bud. Pilgrims*, p. 200). General Cunningham places the site of the city near Shah-dheri, one mile to the north-east of Kāla-ka-sarai, where he found the ruins of a fortified city, and was able to trace the remains of no less than fifty-five stūpaś—of which two were as large as the great Mānikyāla tope—twenty-eight monasteries, and nine temples (*Ane. Geog. of India*, p. 105). The classical writers notice the size and wealth of the city of Taśāla (Arrian, *Anab. Alex.*, lib. v. c. 8; Strabo, *Geog.*, lib. xv c. 1. 17, and 28; Pliny, *Hist. Nat.*, lib. vi. c. 17, 62, and c. 23; Ptolemy, *Geog.*, lib. vii. 1, 45; Dionysius Perig., 1141). Apollonius and Damis are said also to have visited Taxila about A.D. 45. Philostratus describes the carvings and pictures of a temple near the town, representing scenes from the conflict of Porus with Alexander (cap. 20, p. 71, ed. Olearii, 1709). For further remarks on the ruins and antiquities see Cunningham, *op. cit.*, pp. 104 f. M. V. de St. Martin, relying on the measurements given by Pliny derived from the records of Alexander’s expedition, places Taxila at Hassan-Abdal, eight miles north-west of Shah-dheri (vid. *Mémoire*, p. 319); conf. Wilson, *Ariana Ant.*, p. 196; *J. R. A. S.*, vol. v. p. 118; Burnouf, *Introduct.* pp. 322 f., 332, 361; *Lotus*, pp. 689 f.; *Bunbury, Hist. Ane. Geog.*, vol. i. pp. 443, 499. It is frequently mentioned in Sanskrit literature, e.g., *Mahābh.*, i. 682, 834; *Rāmdāyaṇa*, iv. 53, sū. 23; *Brīh. Sānkh.*, x. 8, and xiv. 26; *Pāṇini*, iv. 2, 82 and 3, 93.
mi-lo (Kaśmīr). The land is renowned for its fertility, and produces rich harvests. It is very full of streams and fountains. Flowers and fruits are abundant. The climate is agreeably temperate. The people are lively and courageous, and they honour the three gems. Although there are many saṅghārāmas, they have become ruinous and deserted, and there are very few priests; those that there are study the Great Vehicle.

North-west of the capital about 70 li is the tank of the Nāga-rāja Ėlāpatra (I-lo-po-to-lo);44 it is about 100 paces round, the waters are pure and sweet; lotus flowers of various colours, which reflect different tints in their common beauty (garnish the surface); this Nāga was a Bhikṣu who anciently, in the time of Kāśyapa Buddha, destroyed an Ėlāpatra tree. Hence, at the present time, when the people of that country ask for rain or fine weather, they must go with the Shamans to the side of the tank, and then cracking their fingers (or, in a moment), after praying for the desired object, they obtain it.

Going 30 li or so to the south-east of the Nāga tank, we enter a gorge between two mountains, where there is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. It is about 100 feet in height. This is where Śākya Tathāgata delivered a prediction, that when Maitreya, Lord of the World, appeared hereafter, there should also appear of themselves four great gem treasures, and that in this excellent land there should be one. According to tradition, we find that whenever there is an earthquake, and the mountains on every side are shaken, all round this sacred spot (treasure) to the distance of 100 paces there is perfect stillness. If men are

---

44 The story of the Nāga-rāja Ėlāpatra is a favourite one in Chinese Buddhist books. See Romantic Hist. of Buddha, p. 276 ff. (Stūpa of Bharhut, p. 27). Cunningham identifies the tank of Ėlāpatra with the fountain of Hasan Abdal called Bāhā-Wali. In the legend referred to above we are told that the Nāga stretched his body from Takhaṣ̱ilā to Banaras (compare the sculpture). In this case we should be led to Hasan Abdal as the site of Takhaṣ̱ilā. This Nāga is mentioned in Brahmanical literature also as the son of Kāśyapa and Kadrā. Maḥābhārata, i. 1551; Hārvān Śāstra, 228, 12821; Vīku-puṇḍara (Hall’s ed.), vol. ii. pp. 74, 285, 287, and vol. v. p. 251.
so foolish as to attempt to dig into the place (or ground surrounding it), the earth shakes again, and the men are thrown down headlong.

By the side of the stūpa is a saṅghārāma in ruins, and which has been for a long time deserted and without priests.

To the north of the city 12 or 13 li is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. On feast-days (religious commemoration days) it glows with light, and divine flowers fall around it, and heavenly music is heard. According to tradition, we find in late times there was a woman whose body was grievously afflicted with leprosy. Coming to the stūpa secretly, she offered worship in excess and confessed her faults. Then seeing that the vestibule (the open court in front of the stūpa) was full of dung and dirt, she removed it, and set to work to sweep and water it and to scatter flowers and perfumes; and having gathered some blue lotus flowers, she covered the ground with them. On this her evil leprosy left her, and her form became lovely, and her beauty doubled, whilst from her person there came the famed scent of the blue lotus, and this also is the reason of the fragrance of this excellent place. This is the spot where Tathāgata formerly dwelt when he was practising the discipline of a Bōdhisattva; he was then the king of a great country and was called Chen-ta-lo-po-la-po (Chandraprabha); he cut off his head, earnestly seeking the acquirement of Bōdhi: and this he did during a thousand successive births, (for the same object and in the same place). 45

By the side of the stūpa of the “sacrificed head” is a saṅghārāma, of which the surrounding courts are deserted and overgrown; there are (nevertheless) a few priests. It

45 This legend was the origin of the name Taksha-śīra, “the severed head,” given to the place, as noticed by Fa-hian and Sung-yun. The legend will be found in Rājendralāl Mitra’s Nepalese Buddhist Literature, pp. 310, viii. “The man” for whose sake he gave his head, as stated by Sung-yun (Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 200) and by Fa-hian (cap. xi.) was the wicked Brāhmaṇa Rudrākhaṇa.
was here in old days the master of śāstras Kumāralabdha, belonging to the school of Śāstras (Sāutrāntikas), composed several treatises.

Outside the city to the south-east, on the shady side of a mountain, there is a stūpa, in height 100 feet or so; this is the place where they put out the eyes of Ku-lang-na (for Ku-na-lang-na, Kunāla), who had been unjustly accused by his step-mother; it was built by Aśoka-rāja.

When the blind pray to it (or before it) with fervent faith, many of them recover their sight. This prince (Kunāla) was the son of the rightful queen. His person was graceful and his disposition loving and humane. When the queen-royal was dead, her successor (the step-queen) was dissolute and unprincipled. Following her wild and foolish preference, she made proposals to the prince; he, when she solicited him, reproached her with tears, and departed, refusing to be guilty of such a crime. The step-mother, seeing that he rejected her, was filled with wrath and hatred; waiting for an interval when she was with the king, she addressed him thus: “To whom should your majesty intrust the government of Ta-ch’ashi-lo but to your own son? The prince is renowned for his humanity and obedience; because of his attachment to the good his fame is in every mouth.” The king listening to her seducing words, agreed willingly with the vile plot, and forthwith gave orders to his eldest son in these

46 In Chinese Tong-shau, youth-receiving; the phonetic symbols are Ku-mo-lo-lo to.
47 The Sāutrāntika school of Buddhism was, according to Vassilief (Buddhisme, p. 233), founded by Dharmottara or Utaradharma; it was one of the two principal branches of the Hinayāna, or Little Vehicle, of Buddhism; the other branch being the Vaibhāšika school. On their tenets see Colebrooke, Misc. Essays, vol. i. pp. 391 f.; Köppen, Die Relig. d. Buddha, vol. i. pp. 151 f.; Burnouf, Introd., pp. 109, 397 f.; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. p. 460; Vassilief, pp. 34, 38, 48, 63 f., 114 f., 268, 273-286, 321.
48 That is, on the northern side.
49 Or, a south mountain; but probably nam is redundant.
50 The text requires some such expression as “willingly” or “when on easy terms with the king” she addressed him thus.
51 The text implies that he was gratified to accede to the terms of this plot of the adulteress, or this adulterous (kica) plot.
words: "I have received my royal inheritance in succession, and I desire to hand it down to those who follow me; my only fear is lest I should lose aught of it and so dishonour my ancestors. I now confide to you the government of Ta-ch’a-shi-lo. The affairs of a country are of serious importance; the feelings of men are contradictory; undertake nothing rashly, so as to endanger your authority; verify the orders sent you; my seal is the impression of my teeth; here in my mouth is my seal. There can be no mistake."

On this the prince, receiving his orders, went to establish order. And so months passed on, yet the step-mother’s hatred did but increase. Accordingly she wrote a dispatch and sealed it with red wax, and then, waiting till the king was asleep, she stamped it secretly with his tooth impression, and sent it off by a messenger with all dispatch as a letter of accusation. His ministers having read the letter, were confused, and looked at one another with dismay.

The prince then asked them what moved them so. They said, "The Mahârâja has sent a dispatch accusing the prince, and ordering both his eyes to be put out, and that he be taken with his wife to the mountains, and there left to die. Although this order has come, we dare not obey it; but we will ask afresh for directions, and keep you bound till the reply comes."

The prince said, "My father, if he has ordered my death, must be obeyed; and the seal of his teeth is a sure sign of the truth of the order. There can be no error." Then he ordered a Chaṇḍâla to pluck out his eyes; and

---

52 About fifty years after Alexander’s campaign the people of Tak-shaśilâ rebelled against Bindusâra, king of Magadha, who sent his eldest son, Susîma, to besiege the place. On his failure the siege was intrusted to Asóka, his younger son, to whom the people at once submitted. Here Asóka dwelt as viceroy of the Panjâb during his father’s lifetime, and here on the occasion of another revolt he placed his son Kunála, the hero of the legend in the text. Conf. Burnouf, Introd., pp. 163, 357, 360; J. A. S. Bev., vol. vi. p. 714.
53 Having perused the letter on their knees.
54 To the mountain valleys.
55 Awaiting the sentence or punishment.
having thus lost his sight, he wandered forth to beg for his daily support. As he travelled on far away, he came to his father’s capital town. His wife said to him, \textsuperscript{56} “There is the royal city.” “Alas!” he said, “what pain I endure from hunger and cold. I was a prince; I am a beggar. Oh, that I could make myself known and get redress for the false charge formerly brought against me!” \textsuperscript{57} On this he contrived to enter the king’s inner bureau, and in the after part of the night he began to weep, and with a plaintive voice, accompanied with the sound of a lute, \textsuperscript{58} he sang a mournful song.

The king, who was in an upper chamber, \textsuperscript{59} hearing these wonderful strains full of sadness and suffering, was surprised, and inquired. “From the notes of the lute and the sound of the voice I take this to be my son; but why has he come here?”

He immediately said to his court attendant, “Who is that singing so?”

Forthwith he brought the blind man into his presence and placed him before the king. The king, seeing the prince, overwhelmed with grief, exclaimed, “Who has thus injured you? Who has caused this misery, that my beloved son should be deprived of sight? Not one of all his people can he see. Alas! what an end to come to! \textsuperscript{60} O heavens! O heavens! what a misfortune is this!” \textsuperscript{61}

The prince, yielding to his tears, thanked (his father) and replied, “In truth, \textsuperscript{62} for want of filial piety have I thus been

\textsuperscript{56} Kunâla’s wife was called Chinkin-man, pure-gold-garland (Kâñ- chanamâlâ). The stepmother’s name was Tishyarakshita, and his mother’s Padmavati (Lien-hwa). His name is also spelt Kupâla.

\textsuperscript{57} This may be otherwise rendered: “Would that I could obtain a hearing, so as to vindicate myself completely from the former accusation.” Julien translates it: “I will expose anew my past faults.”

\textsuperscript{58} A wind.

\textsuperscript{59} A high tower or pavilion.

\textsuperscript{60} Or it may simply mean, “how was this brought about?”

\textsuperscript{61} Julien translates it, “how virtue has degenerated.” The symbol tìh, however, need not be rendered “virtue;” it refers to the reversal of fortune or condition.

\textsuperscript{62} The sense of the passage seems to require the force of ching to be, “Do you not know?" or “You are aware that my punishment is due to a charge of filial disobedience.”
punished by Heaven. In such a year and such a month and such a day suddenly there came a loving order (or an order from my mother). Having no means of excusing myself, I dared not shrink from the punishment." The king's heart, knowing that the second wife had committed this crime, without any further inquiry caused her to be put to death.  

At this time in the sāṅghārāma of the Bōdhi tree there was a great Arhat called Ghoṣha (Kiu-sha). He had the fourfold power of "explanation without any difficulties." He was completely versed in the Trividyaś. The king taking to him his blind son, told him all the matter, and prayed that he would of his mercy restore him to sight. Then that Arhat, having received the king's request, forthwith addressed to the people this order: "To-morrow I desire to declare the mysterious principle (of the law); let each person come here with a vessel in his hands to hear the law and receive in it his tears." Accordingly, they came together from every side (far and near), both men and women, in crowds. At this time the Arhat preached on the twelve Nidānas, and there was not one of those who heard the sermon but was moved to tears. The tears were collected in the vessels, and then, when his sermon was finished, he collected all these tears in one golden vessel, and then, with a strong affirmation, he said, "What I have said is gathered from the most mysterious of Buddha's doctrines; if this is not true, if there be error in what I have said, then let things remain as they are; but if it is otherwise, I desire that this blind

---

63 This story is also given by Burnouf, Introduct., pp. 362 f.
64 The sāṅghārāma of the Bōdhi tree was the convent built on the site of the Buddha Gayā temple.
65 For this fourfold power of unimpeded explanation consult Childers' Pāli Dict. s. v. pratimābhikkhā, also Eitel, Handbook s. v. pratimābhikkhā. Julien has an instructive note on this point. Conf. Burnouf, Lotus, p. 372.
66 For the trividyaś consult Eitel, sub voc.; Burnouf, Lotus, p. 372; Julien, Mém. s. l. Cont. Occid., tome i. p. 160; and ante, p. 105, n. 75.
man may recover his sight after washing his eyes with these tears.”

After finishing this speech he washed his eyes with the water, and lo! his sight was restored.

The king then accused the ministers (who had executed the order) and their associates. Some he degraded, others he banished, others he removed, others he put to death. The common people (who had participated in the crime) he banished to the north-east side of the Snowy Mountains, to the middle of the sandy desert.

Going south-east from this kingdom, and crossing the mountains and valleys about 700 li, we come to the kingdom of Sāng-ho-pu-lo (Sinhapura).

**Sang-ho-pu-lo [Sinhapura].**

The kingdom of Sāng-ho-pu-lo is about 3500 or 3600 li in circuit. On the west it borders on the river Sin-tu. The capital is about 14 or 15 li in circuit; it borders on the mountains. The crags and precipices which surround it cause it to be naturally strong. The ground is not highly cultivated, but the produce is abundant. The climate is cold, the people are fierce and value highly the quality of courage; moreover, they are much given to deceit. The country has no king or rulers, but is in dependence on Kāsmir. Not far to the south of the capital is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. The decorations

---

68 There is a similar story told by Aśvaghōsha; the Ghōsha of the text, however, must not be confused with him.

69 The distance from Takshaśilā to Sinhapura being 700 li, or about 140 miles, we should expect to find it near Taki or Narasiṅha (Cunningham, *Anc. Geog.*, map vi.). But the capital is described as being surrounded by mountain crags, which will not apply to the plain country of Taki. For the same reason the town of Sangohi, which M. V. de St. Martin refers to, cannot be the place in question. General Cunningham identifies it with Khetās or Ketakeh, the holy tanks of which are still visited by crowds of pilgrims from all parts of India (Anc. *Geog.*, p. 124). If this be so, the distance may probably include the double journey. The expression used by Hwui-lih (kan) seems to imply this. According to the subsequent account, Huien Tsang went to Sinhapura as an excursion, and returned to Takshaśilā. He probably went with Jain pilgrims who were visiting this tirtha, or holy place.
are much injured: spiritual wonders are continually connected with it. By its side is a saṅghārāma, which is deserted and without priests.

To the south-east of the city 40 or 50 li is a stone stūpa which was built by Asoka-rāja; it is 200 feet or so in height. There are ten tanks, which are secretly connected together, and on the right and left (of the walks joining them) are covered stones (balustrades) in different shapes and of strange character. The water of the tanks is clear, and the ripples are sometimes noisy and tumultuous. Dragons and various fishes live in the clefts and caverns bordering on the tanks or hide themselves in the waters. Lotus flowers of the four colours cover the surface of the limpid water. A hundred kind of fruits surround them, and glisten with different shades. The trees are reflected deep down in the water, and altogether it is a lovely spot for wandering forth.

By the side there is a saṅghārāma, which for a long time has been without priests. By the side of the stūpa, and not far off, is the spot where the original teacher of the white-robed heretics arrived at the knowledge of the principles he sought, and first preached the law. There is an inscription placed there to that effect. By the side of this spot is a temple of the Devas. The persons who frequent it subject themselves to austerities; day and night they use constant diligence without relaxation. The laws of their founder are mostly filched

---

70 The text has dragon-fishes, or dragons (serpents) and fishes, the tribes of the water.
71 Or disport themselves in the stream.
72 This refers to the Švētāmbaras, a sect of the Jains; Colebrooke (Essays, vol. i. p. 381) says that this is a less strict order, and of more modern date and inferior note compared with the Digambargas (noticed below, note 71). The Jainas were very influential about the time of Pulikēśa (Ind. Antiq., vol. ii. p. 194); Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. iv. pp. 97 f., 756 f. Whether the Jains preceded or succeeded the Buddhists, it is curious to have this testimony of Hiuen Tsiang that their original teacher arrived at enlightenment and first preached the law in this place, viz., Siśāmapura, and that there was an inscription placed here to that effect. Conf. Ind. Ant., vol. ii. pp. 134 f., 193 f., 258 f.
from the principles of the books of Buddha. These men are of different classes, and select their rules and frame their precepts accordingly.\textsuperscript{72} The great ones are called Bhikshus; the younger are called Srâmaññeras. In their ceremonies and modes of life they greatly resemble the priests (of Buddha), only they have a little twist of hair on their heads, and they go naked.\textsuperscript{74} Moreover, what clothes they chance to wear are white. Such are the slight differences which distinguish them from others. The figure of their sacred master\textsuperscript{75} they stealthily class with that of Tathâgata; it differs only in point of clothing;\textsuperscript{76} the points of beauty are absolutely the same.

From this place going back to the northern frontiers of Ta-ch'a-shi-lo, crossing the Sin-tu\textsuperscript{77} river and going southeast 200 li or so, we pass the great stone gates where formerly Mahâsattva, as a prince,\textsuperscript{78} sacrificed his body to feed

\\textsuperscript{72} Julien translates this passage thus: "On these laws (viz., of Buddha) he depended in framing his precepts and rules." This may perhaps be correct, but the plain translation of the passage is: "According to (their) classes, they frame (or possibly, "he framed") their laws, and arrange their regulations and precepts."

\textsuperscript{73} The Digambaras, or "sky-clad," are another division of the Jainas, and are identical with the Nirgranthas. Hiuen Tsang appears to confuse these with the "white-clad." For an account of the Digambara Jainas, see \textit{Ind. Antiq.}, vol. vii. p. 28; and vol. viii. p. 30, for the argument as to the relative antiquity of the Buddhist and Jaina sects; also conf. vol. i. p. 310; Fergusson and Burgess, \textit{Cave Temples of India}, pp. 485 ff.; \textit{Vassilief}, pp. 52, 70, 275.

\textsuperscript{74} The text has \textit{tin-sce}, heavenly master; but if \textit{tin} be a mistake for \textit{ta}, it would be their great master, viz., Mahâvira.

\textsuperscript{75} That is, the statues are alike, except that the Jaina ones are naked. This only applies to those of the Digambara Jainas. For these statues, see Fergusson and Burgess, \textit{Cave Temples}, pp. 485-500 and pl. xcv.; Burgess, \textit{Arch. Surv. West. India Reports}, vol. v. pp. 43-50, 51, 58. From this interesting allusion to the Jainas it is evident that Hiuen Tsang regarded them as dishonest separatists from Buddhism. The "points of beauty" referred to in the text are the thirty-two superior signs (\textit{siang}), and the eighty inferior (\textit{ho}), for which see references in note 5, p. 1, \textit{ante}.

\textsuperscript{76} It may be either that Hiuen Tsang went back to Ohind, and so crossed and recrossed the Indus, or that he calls the Suhân (Su-shôma. \textit{Sodes}) river by this name. The distance from Hasan Abdal to Mânikyâla (the body-offering spot) is just 40 miles (200 li), according to Cunningham's map (No. vi, \textit{Auc. Geog. of India}).

\textsuperscript{78} The incident of feeding the tigress is narrated in Hardy's \textit{Manual of Buddhism}, pp. 93, 94; but there it is said that the Bôdhisattva was a Brâhma; here he is called a prince. The rock or gate where he practised asceticism was called Munda or Eraka (\textit{op. cit. ibid}).
a hungry Wu-t'u (Ótu, a cat). To the south of this place 40 or 50 paces there is a stone stūpa. This is the place where Mahāsattva, pitying the dying condition of the beast, after arriving at the spot, pierced his body with a bamboo splinter, so as to nourish the beast with his blood. On this the animal, taking the blood, revived. On this account all the earth and the plants at this place are dyed with a blood colour, and when men dig the earth they find things like prickly spikes. Without asking whether we believe the tale or not, it is a piteous one.

To the north of the body-sacrifice place there is a stone stūpa about 200 feet high, which was built by King Aśoka. It is adorned with sculptures and tastefully constructed (built). From time to time spiritual indications are apparent. There are a hundred or so small stūpas, provided with stone niches for movable images (or stone movable niches) around this distinguished spot. Whatever sick there are who can circumambulate it are mostly restored to health.

To the east of the stūpa there is a saṅghārama, with about 100 priests given to the study of the Great Vehicle.

Going east from this 50 li or so, we come to an isolated mountain, where there is a saṅghārama with about 200 priests in it. They all study the Great Vehicle.

---

79 The compound wu-t'u, which is translated by Julien "a tiger" without explanation, is probably the Sanskrit Ótu, a cat.
80 "Pitying the exhausted condition of the hungry beast." The original implies that the beast had no strength and was dying from hunger. There is no reference to the tiger-cubs, nor is the number seven mentioned either here or by Fa-hian. For a full account of the legend and the ruins about Manikvāla, see Cunningham, op. cit., p. 153 ff., and conf. Ind. Ant., vol. xi, pp. 347 f., &c.
81 This stūpa has been identified by General Cunningham with that marked No. 5 on his plan of Manikvāla (Arch. Survey, vol. ii, pl. lxxii, p. 153). The clay is even now of a red colour.
82 "It is resplendent with divine brightness or glory."
83 Julien translates it "this funereal monument." but the symbol yung means "lustrous," referring, no doubt, to the glory which surrounded the stūpa.
Fruits and flowers abound here, with fountains and tanks clear as a mirror. By the side of this convent is a stūpa about 300 feet in height. Here Tathāgata dwelt in old time, and restrained a wicked Yaksha from eating flesh.

Going from this kingdom about 500 li or so along the mountains in a south-easterly direction, we come to the country of Wu-la-shi (Uraśa).

**Wu-la-shi [Uraśa].**

The kingdom of Wu-la-shi (Uraśa) is about 2000 li in circuit; the mountains and valleys form a continuous chain. The fields fit for cultivation are contracted as to space. The capital is 7 or 8 li in circuit; there is no king, but the country is dependent on Kaśmīr. The soil is fit for sowing and reaping, but there are few flowers or fruits. The air is soft and agreeable; there is very little ice or snow. The people have no refinement; the men are hard and rough in their disposition, and are much given to deceit. They do not believe in the religion of Buddha.

To the south-west of the capital 4 or 5 li is a stūpa about 200 feet or so in height, which was built by Aśoka-rāja. By its side is a saṅghārāma, in which there are but a few disciples, who study the Great Vehicle.

Going south-east from this, crossing over mountains and treading along precipices, passing over chain bridges, after 1000 li or so, we come to the country of Kia-shi-mi-lo (Kaśmīr).

---

84 Uraśa appears as the name of a city in the Mahābhārata under the form Uraga (i. 1027; and Rāga. vi. 59), probably by a slip (see Lassen, L. A., vol. ii. p. 155, n. 1); in the Rājataraṅgiṇī (v. 216) it is Uraśa, the capital of Uraśa—mentioned in Pāṇini (iv. 1, 154 and 178, and Uraśa in iv. 2, 82, and iv. 3, 93). Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 45) calls the country 'Aρσα or 'Οδαρσα, and its towns 'Ιθάγιος and Τάιδα (v. 1, Taśa), placing it between the upper waters of the Bidaspeś and Indus, that is, in the Hāzára country. Conf. Cunningham, Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 103; J. A. S. Beng., vol. xvii. pt. ii. pp. 21, 283; Lassen, L. A., vol. ii. p. 175.

85 Julien has "Little Vehicle."

86 Formerly written Ki-pin by mistake.—Ch. Ed.
The kingdom of Kaśmir is about 7000 li in circuit, and on all sides it is enclosed by mountains. These mountains are very high. Although the mountains have passes through them, these are narrow and contracted. The neighbouring states that have attacked it have never succeeded in subduing it. The capital of the country on the west side is bordered by a great river. It (the capital) is from north to south 12 or 13 li, and from east to west 4 or 5 li. The soil is fit for producing cereals, and abounds with fruits and flowers. Here also are dragon-horses and the fragrant turmeric, the *fō-chū* and medicinal plants.

The climate is cold and stern. There is much snow but little wind. The people wear leather doublets and clothes of white linen. They are light and frivolous, and of a weak, pusillanimous disposition. As the country is protected by a dragon, it has always assumed superiority among neighbouring people. The people are handsome in appearance, but they are given to cunning. They love learning and are well instructed. There are both heretics and believers among them. There are about 100 saṅghārāmas and 5000 priests. There are four *stīlpas* built by Aśoka-rāja. Each of these has about

---

87 Kaśmir in early times appears to have been a kingdom of considerable extent. The old name is said to have been Kāśyapapura, which has been connected with the Kaśyapa of Hekataios (Frug. 179, and Steph. Byzant.), χώρας Κασίμιας ἡ Σαχσία, said to have been in or near Pārśvā and called Kaśyapa by Herodotus (lib. iii. c. 102, lib. iv. c. 44), from which Skylax started on his voyage down the Indus. Ptolemy has Kaśyapal and its capital Kaśyapal (lib. vii. c. 1, 42, 47, 49; lib. viii. c. 26, 7), possibly for Kaśyapal. The name Kaśmir is the one used in the Mahābhārata. Pāṇini, &c. The character ascribed to the people by the Chinese pilgrim, is quite in accord with that given to them by modern travellers (see Vigne, *Travels in Kaśmir*, vol. ii. p. 142 f.) For further information see Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. i. pp. 50-53; and conf. Wilson, *Ariana Ant.*, pp. 136 f.; *Asiat. Res.*, vol. xv. p. 117; Köppen, *Die Religion d. Buddha*, vol. ii. pp. 12 f. 78; *Remusat, Nouv. Mêl. Asiat.*, tome i. p. 179; Vassilief, p. 40; *J. A. S. Ben.*, vol. vii. p. 165, vol. xxv. pp. 91-123; Yule’s *Marco Polo*, vol. i. pp. 177 f.; Cunningham, *Anc. Geoq. Ind.*, pp. 99 ff.; Troyer’s *Rājataravignis*, tome ii. pp. 293 ff.; Humboldt’s *Cent. Asien*, vol. i. p. 92. The “great river” is the Vītastā.

88 Lentilles de verre.—Jul.
a pint measure of relics of Tathâgata. The history of the country says: This country was once a dragon lake. In old times the Lord Buddha was returning to the middle kingdom (India) after subduing a wicked spirit in U-chang-na (Udyâna), and when in mid-air, just over this country, he addressed Ānanda thus: "After my Nirvāṇa, the Arhat Madhyântika will found a kingdom in this land, civilise (pacify) the people, and by his own effort spread abroad the law of Buddha."

In the fiftieth year after the Nirvāṇa, the disciple of Ānanda, Madhyântika (Mo-t’ien-ti-kia) the Arhat—having obtained the six spiritual faculties\(^9\) and been gifted with the eight Vimûkshas\(^9\)—heard of the prediction of Buddha. His heart was overjoyed, and he repaired to this country. He was sitting tranquilly in a wood on the top of a high mountain crag, and exhibited great spiritual changes. The dragon beholding it was filled with a deep faith, and requested to know what he desired. The Arhat said, "I request you to give me a spot in the middle of the lake just big enough for my knees."\(^9\)

On this the dragon withdrew the water so far, and gave him the spot. Then by his spiritual power the Arhat increased the size of his body, whilst the dragon king kept back the waters with all his might. So the lake became dry, and the waters exhausted. On this the Nâga, taking his flight, asked for a place.\(^9\)

The Arhat (then said), "To the north-west of this is a pool about 100 li in circuit; in this little lake you and your posterity may continue to dwell." The Nâga said, "The lake and the land being mutually transferred, let me then be allowed to make my religious offerings to you." Madhyântika said, "Not long hence I shall enter on the Nirvâṇa without remnants (anupadhīkṣha); although I should wish to allow your request, how can I do it?"

---
\(^9\) See references in note 73, p. 104.
\(^9\) It means asked for a place "to live in.
\(^9\) This is an abrupt combination;
The Nāga then pressed his request in this way: "May 500 Arhats then ever receive my offerings till the end of the law?" After which (I ask to be allowed) to return to this country to dwell (in it) as a lake." Madhyāntika granted his request.

Then the Arhat, having obtained this land by the exercise of his great spiritual power, founded 500 saṅghārāmas. He then set himself to procure by purchase from surrounding countries a number of poor people who might act as servitors to the priests. Madhyāntika having died, these poor people constituted themselves rulers over the neighbouring countries. The people of surrounding countries despising these low-born men, would not associate with them, and called them Kritiyas (Ki-li-to). The fountains now have begun to bubble up (in token of the end of the law having come).

In the hundredth year after the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata, Aśoka, king of Magadha, extended his power over the world, and was honoured even by the most distant people. He deeply reverenced the three gems, and had a loving regard for all living things. At this time there were 500 Arhats and 500 schismatical priests, whom the king honoured and patronised without any difference. Among the latter was a priest called Mahādēva, a man of deep learning and rare ability; in his retirement he sought a true renown; far thinking, he wrote treatises the principles of which were opposed to the holy doctrine. All who heard of him resorted to his company and adopted his views. Aśoka-rāja, not knowing either holy or common

93 I.e., till religion be done with.
94 In Chinese Māi-te, "bought people" (Sansk. krāta). In the Viśāku Purāṇa it is said that "unregenerate tribes, barbarians and other Sudras, will rule over the banks of the Indus and the regions of the Dakkī, of the Chandrabhāg and of Kaśmira" (Wilson, in Hall’s ed., vol. iv. p. 223), and the Bhāgavata has a similar statement, calling the "unregenerate" "other outcasts not enlightened by the Vedas" (ib. p. 224). See p. 156, n. 119 infra.
95 See-sing, the four varṇa or castes, or the four classes of living beings, according to the Chinese, produced (1) from eggs, (2) embryos (animals and men), (3) moisture, and (4) by transformation.
men, and because he was naturally given to patronise those who were seditious, was induced to call together an assembly of priests to the banks of the Ganges, intending to drown them all.

At this time the Arhats having seen the danger threatening their lives, by the exercise of their spiritual power flew away through the air and came to this country and concealed themselves among the mountains and valleys. Aśoka-rāja having heard of it, repented, and confessing his fault, begged them to return to their own country; but the Arhats refused to do so with determination. Then Aśoka-rāja, for the sake of the Arhats, built 500 saṅghārdmas, and gave this country as a gift to the priesthood.

In the four-hundredth year after the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata, Kanishka, king of Gandhāra, having succeeded to the kingdom, his kingly renown reached far, and he brought the most remote within his jurisdiction. During his intervals of duty he frequently consulted the sacred books of Buddha; daily he invited a priest to enter his palace and preach the law, but he found the different views of the schools so contradictory that he was filled with doubt, and he had no way to get rid of his uncertainty. At this time the honoured Pārśva said, “Since Tathāgata left the world many years and months have elapsed. The different schools hold to the treatises of their several masters. Each keeps to his own views, and so the whole body is torn by divisions.”

The king having heard this, was deeply affected and gave way to sad regrets. After awhile he spoke to Pārśva and said, “Though of no account personally, yet, thanks to the remnant of merit which has followed me through successive births since the time of the Holy One till now,

96 I.e., the difference between them.
97 That is, 300 years after Aśoka (B.C. 263-224), or about A.D. 75. Huen Tsiang places Aśoka only 100 years after Buddha, while in Aśoka’s own inscriptions the Teacher is placed 221 years before the first of Aśoka’s reign. The Avadāna Sataka supports this, placing the king two hundred years after Buddha. Conf. Ind. Ant., vol. vi. pp. 149 f.; Burnouf, Introductory, p. 355; Max Muller’s India, &c., p. 306.
I have come to my present state. I will dare to forget my own low degree, and hand down in succession the teaching of the law unimpaired. I will therefore arrange the teaching of the three *piṭakas* of Buddha according to the various schools." The honourable Pārśva replied, "The previous merit of the great king has resulted in his present distinguished position. That he may continue to love the law of Buddha is what I desire above all things.

The king then summoned from far and near a holy assembly (issued an edict to assemble the holy teachers).

On this they came together from the four quarters, and, like stars, they hurried together for myriads of li, men the most distinguished for talents and for holiness of life. Being thus assembled, for seven days offerings of the four necessary things were made, after which, as the king desired that there should be an arrangement of the law, and as he feared the clamour of such a mixed assembly (would prevent consultation), he said, with affection for the priests, "Let those who have obtained the holy fruit (as *arhats*) remain, but those who are still bound by worldly influences let them go!" Yet the multitude was too great. He then published another order: "Let those who have arrived at the condition of 'freedom from study' remain, and those who are still in a condition of learners go." Still there were a great multitude who remained. On this the king issued another edict: "Those who are in possession of the three enlightenments and have the six spiritual faculties may remain; the others can go." And

---

98 Literally, "the great king in previous conditions (sūh) having planted a good root—or, the root of virtue—has in consequence attained much happiness or merit."

99 The world-influences or bonds refer to the *kīṭas*. The five *kīṭas* are (1) desire, (2) hate, (3) ignorance, (4) vanity, (5) heresy. See Burnouf, *Lotus*, pp. 443 f. Or the reference may be to the five *niruṇāṇas*, for which see Childers, *Pali Dict.* sub voc.

100 In a note on this passage Julien explains that the first class, *Wu-hio*, designates the Arhats; the second, *Hio-jin*, those studying to become Śrāmanas.

101 For the *trīṣīdyas* and the *ṣaḍabhiṣiṇiṣas* see ante, n. 73 and 75, pp. 104, 105, and note 66, p. 142.

102 There is a phrase here used, *tes chs*, of frequent occurrence in Buddhist books. It means, "with these exceptions," — *his exceptis*. 
yet there was a great multitude who remained. Then he published another edict: "Let those who are acquainted both with the three Piṭakas and the five vidyās remain; as to others, let them go." Thus there remained 499 men. Then the king desired to go to his own country, as he suffered from the heat and moisture of this country. He also wished to go to the stone grot at Rājagṛha, where Kāśyapa had held his religious assembly (convocation). The honourable Pārśva and others then counselled him, saying, "We cannot go there; because there are many heretical teachers there, and different śāstras being brought under consideration, there will be clamour and vain discussion. Without having right leisure for consideration, what benefit will there be in making (fresh) treatises? The mind of the assembly is well affected towards this country; the land is guarded on every side by mountains, the Yākshas defend its frontiers, the soil is rich and productive, and it is well provided with food. Here both saints and sages assemble and abide; here the spiritual Rishis wander and rest."

The assembly having deliberated, they came to this resolution: "We are willing to fall in with the wishes of the king." On this, with the Arhats, he went from the spot where they had deliberated to another, and there founded a monastery, where they might hold an assembly (for the purpose of arranging) the Scriptures and composing the Viśākhā Śāstra.

108 The five vidyās (Wu-ming) are (1) Śāledavidyā, the treatise on grammar; (2) Adhyatmaṉavidyā, the treatise on inner principles or esoteric doctrines; (3) Chikitsavidyā, the treatise on medicine, magic formulas, and occult science (Eitel); (4) Hētuvividyā, the treatise on causes; (5) Silapathāvāvidyā, the treatise on the sciences, astronomy, meteorology, and mechanical arts. See ante, p. 78, note 24.

104 So I translate it. Literally it would be "the king had a desire for his own country;" i.e., for the highlands of Gandhāra.

105 The phrase may mean a stone, i.e., structural, house; or a stone chamber—a cave. It is generally supposed to have been a cave—the Saptaparna cave.

106 Or, what use in holding discussions?

107 This passage, which is unusually confused, may be translated also thus: "On this he went with the Arhats from that place, and came (to a place where) he founded
At this time the venerable Vasumitra (Shi-Yu) was putting on his robes outside the door (about to enter) when the Arhats addressed him and said, "The bonds of sin (the klēśas) not loosed, then all discussion is contradictory and useless. You had better go, and not dwell here."

On this Vasumitra answered, "The wise without doubt regard the law in the place of Buddha, appointed for the conversion of the world, and therefore you reasonably desire to compile true (orthodox) śāstras. As for myself, though not quick, yet in my poor way I have investigated the meaning of words. I have also studied with earnestness the obscure literature of the three pīṭakas and the recondite meaning of the five vidyās; and I have succeeded in penetrating their teaching, dull as I am."

The Arhats answered, "It is impossible; but if it is as you say, you can stand by a little and presently get the condition of 'past learning.' Then you can enter the assembly; at present your presence is not possible."

Vasumitra answered, "I care for the condition of 'past learning' as little as for a drop of spittle; my mind seeks only the fruit of Buddha; I do not run after little quests [little sideways]. I will throw this ball up into the air, and before it comes to earth I shall have got the holy condition [fruit] of 'past learning.'"

Then all the Arhats roundly scolded him, saying, "'Intolerably arrogant' is your right title. The fruit of 'past learning' is the condition praised by all the Buddhas. You are bound to acquire this condition and scatter the doubts of the assembly."

a monastery and collected the three Pīṭakas. Being about to compose the Pi-p'o-sha-lun (Vibhāṣā Śāstra), then," &c.

106 That is, taking the place of, or standing in the stead of, Buddha.

109 The assembly or convocation desires, &c. Or it may be translated thus: "Having collected the general, or right sense, you are now about to compose an orthodox treatise" (i.e., the Vibhāṣā Śāstra).

110 This at least seems to be the sense of the passage, but the force of the phrase ch'his in is doubtful.

111 That is, I seek only the condition of a Buddha.
Then Vasumitra cast the ball into the air; it was arrested by the Dévas, who, before it fell, asked him this question: “In consequence of obtaining the fruit of Buddha, you shall succeed Maitréya in his place (in the Tushita heaven); the three worlds shall honour you, and the four kinds of creatures (all flesh) shall look up to you with awe. Why then do you seek this little fruit?”

Then the Arhats, having witnessed all this, confessed their fault, and with reverence asked him to become their president. All difficulties that occurred in their discussion were referred to him for settlement. These five hundred sages and saints first composed in ten myriads of verses the Upadéśa Sástra to explain the Sátra Piṭaka. Next they made in ten myriads of verses the Vinaya Vibháṣhá Sástra to explain the Vinaya Piṭaka; and afterwards they made in ten myriad of verses the Abhidharma Vibháṣhá Sástra to explain the Abhidharma Piṭaka. Altogether they composed thirty myriad of verses in six hundred and sixty myriad of words, which thoroughly explained the three Piṭakas. There was no work of antiquity to be compared with (placed above) their productions; from the deepest to the smallest question, they examined all, explaining all minute expressions, so that their work has become universally known and is the resource of all students who have followed them.

---

112 This definition of the Upadéśa (U-po-ti-šo) Sástr, viz., a treatise to explain the Sátra Piṭaka (Su-ta-la-t’ang), confirms the explanation generally given of the whole class of works so named. Burnouf (Intro. Bud. Ind., p. 58) regards the term as equivalent to “instruction” or “explanation of esoteric doctrine.” In Népal the word is applied to the Tantra portion of the Buddhist writings. It is also used as an equivalent for Abhidharma. The Upadéśa class of books is the twelfth in the duodecimal division of the Northern School (Eitel, Handbook, n. voc.)

113 ‘O-pi-ta-mo-pi-po-sha-lun. This work is generally called the Abhidharma-mahávibháṣhá Sástra. It was translated into Chinese by Huen Tsang. It is said to be a commentary on Kátvya’ṇaputra’s Jñánapraṇadhána Sástra, belonging to the Sarvástiváda class of books. It is in forty-three chapters (vargás), and consists of 438,449 Chinese characters. See Bunyiu Nanjio’s Catalogue, No. 1263.

114 Thousand ancient; but is tsien an error?

115 Literally, “branches and leaves were investigated; shallow and deep places fathomed.”
Kanishka-rāja fortieth ordered these discourses to be engraved on sheets of red copper. He enclosed them in a stone receptacle, and having sealed this, he raised over it a stupa with the Scriptures in the middle. He commanded the Yakshas to defend the approaches to the kingdom, so as not to permit the other sects to get these śāstras and take them away, with the view that those dwelling in the country might enjoy the fruit of this labour.

Having finished this pious labour, he returned with his army to his own capital.

Having left this country by the western gate, he turned towards the east and fell on his knees, and again bestowed all this kingdom on the priesthood.

After Kanishka’s death the Kṛṣṭya race again assumed the government, banished the priests, and overthrew religion.

The king of Himatala, of the country of To-hu-lo (Tukhāra), was by descent of the Śākya race. In the six-hundredth year after the Nirvāṇa of Buddha, he succeeded to the territory of his ancestor, and his heart was
deeply imbued with affection for the law of Buddha. Hearing that the Kritiyas had overthrown the law of Buddha, he assembled in his land the most warlike (courageous) of his knights, to the number of three thousand, and under the pretence of being merchants laden with many articles of merchandise and with valuable goods, but having secretly concealed on their persons warlike instruments, they entered on this kingdom, and the king of the country received them as his guests with special honour. He then selected five hundred of these, men of great courage and address, and armed them with swords and provided them with choice merchandise to offer to the king.

Then the king of Himatala, flinging off his cap, proceeded towards the throne; the king of the Kritiyas, terrified, was at a loss what to do. Having cut off the king’s head, (the king of Himatala) said to the officers standing below, “I am the king of Himatala, belonging to Tukhâra. I was grieved because this low-caste ruler practised such outrages; therefore I have to-day punished his crimes; but as for the people, there is no fault to be found with them.” Having banished the ministers in charge of the government to other states and pacified this country, he commanded the priests to return, and built a saṅghārāma, and there settled them as in old time. Then he left the kingdom by the western gate (pass), and when outside he bowed down with his face to the east, and gave in charity to the priesthood (the kingdom).

As for the Kritiyas, as they had more than once been put down by the priests and their religion overthrown, in lapse of time their enmity had increased so that they hated the law of Buddha. After some years

122 “He planted his heart in the law of Buddha, and the streams of his affection flowed into the sea of the law.”
123 That is, the king of Himatala.
124 If the symbol in the text is intended for ch’hang, it should be translated “flinging away his robe,” that is, the robe (or web of rich cloth) that concealed the sword. If it be maou, then it would be “flinging away his cap.”
they came again into power. This is the reason why at the present time this kingdom is not much given to the faith and the temples of the heretics are their sole thought.

About 10 li to the south-east of the new city and to the north of the old city, and on the south of a great mountain, is a saṅghārāma with about 300 priests in it. In the stūpa (attached to the convent) is a tooth of Buddha in length about an inch and a half, of a yellowish-white colour; on religious days it emits a bright light. In old days the Kritiya race having destroyed the law of Buddha, the priests being dispersed, each one selected his own place of abode. On this occasion one Śramaṇa, wandering throughout the Indies to visit and worship the relics of Buddha (traces of the Holy One) and to exhibit his sincere faith, after a while came to hear that his native country was pacified and settled. Forthwith he set out on his return, and on his way he met with a herd of elephants rushing athwart his path through the jungle and raising a trumpeting tumult. The Śramaṇa having seen them, climbed up a tree to get out of their way; then the herd of elephants rushed down to drink at a pool and to cleanse themselves with the water; then surrounding the tree, they tore its roots, and by force dragged it to the ground. Having got the Śramaṇa, they put him on the back of one, and hurried off to the middle of a great forest, where was a sick elephant wounded (swollen with a sore), and lying on the ground

128 General Cunningham says Abu Rihán calls the capital Adiśṭan, which is the Sanskrit Adhishṭhāna or "chief town"; and that is the present city of Srinagar, which was built by Rāja Pravarasena about the beginning of the sixth century, and was therefore a comparatively new place at the time ofHiuen Tsang’s visit. The "old capital" was about two miles to the south-east of Takht-i-Sulmān, and is now called Pāndrōthān, a Kāšmiri corruption of Purāndhishṭhāna, or "the old chief city."—Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 93. Conf. Troyer’s Rājatarāṇi, tome i. p. 104, t. iii. pp. 336–357; Asiat. Rer., vol. xv. p. 19; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. p. 912. The mountain is Hariparvata or Hör-parvāt, now Takht-i-Sulmān.

129 Not to drink, but to draw in the water and use it for cooling themselves.
at rest. Taking the hand of the priest, it directed it to the place of the hurt, where a rotten (broken) piece of bamboo had penetrated. The Śramaṇa thereupon drew out the splinter and applied some medicinal herbs, and tore up his garment to bind the foot with it. Another elephant taking a gold casket, brought it to the sick elephant, who having received it gave it forthwith to the Śramaṇa. The Śramaṇa opening it, found in the inside Buddha’s tooth. Then all the elephants surrounding him, he knew not how to get away. On the morrow, being a fast-day, each elephant brought him some fruit for his mid-day meal. Having finished eating, they carried the priest out of the forest a long way (some hundred li), and then they set him down, and, after salutation paid, they each retired.

The Śramaṇa coming to the western borders of the country, crossed a rapid river; whilst so doing the boat was nearly overwhelmed, when the men, consulting together, said, “The calamity that threatens the boat is owing to the Śramaṇa; he must be carrying some relics of Buddha, and the dragons have coveted them.”

The master of the ship having examined (his goods), found the tooth of Buddha. Then the Śramaṇa, raising up the relic, bowed his head, and called to the Nāgas and said, “I now intrust this to your care; not long hence I will come again and take it.” Then declining to cross the river, he returned to the bank and departed. Turning to the river he sighed and said, “Not knowing how to restrain these Nāga creatures has been the cause of my calamity.” Then going back to India, he studied the rules of restraining dragons, and after three years he returned towards his native country, and having come to the river-side he built and appointed there an altar. Then the Nāgas brought the casket of Buddha’s tooth and gave it to the Śramaṇa; the Śramaṇa took it and brought it to this saṅghārāma and henceforth worshipped it.

127 That is, he did not land on the other side, but went back in the boat.
Fourteen or fifteen li to the south of the saṅghārāma is a little saṅghārāma in which is a standing figure of Avalokiteśvara Bōdhisattva. If any one vows to fast till he dies unless he beholds this Bōdhisattva, immediately from the image it comes forth glorious in appearance.

South-east of the little saṅghārāma about 30 li or so, we come to a great mountain, where there is an old (ruined) saṅghārāma, of which the shape is imposing and the masonry strong. But now it is in ruins; there is only left one angle where there is a small double tower. There are thirty priests or so, who study the Great Vehicle. This is where of old Saṅghabhadra, a writer of śāstras, composed the Shun-ching-li-lun 128 (Nyāyānusāra Śāstra); on the left and the right of the saṅghārāma are stūpas where are enshrined the relics (śāriras) of great Arhats. The wild beasts and mountain apes gather flowers to offer as religious oblations. Throughout the year they continue these offerings without interruption, as if it were a traditional service. Many miraculous circumstances occur in this mountain. Sometimes a stone barrier is split across; sometimes on the mountain-top there remain the traces of a horse; but all things of this sort are only mistaken traces of the Arhats and Śrāmanerās, who in troops frequent this spot, and with their fingers trace these figures, as if riding on horses or going to and fro (on foot), and this has led to the difficulty in explaining these marks.129

Ten li to the east of the saṅghārāma of Buddha’s tooth, between the crags of a mountain to the north, 130 is a small

128 The śāstra composed by Seng-kia-po-t’o-lo (Saṅghabhadra) was called in the first instance Kiu-she-po-lun, or “the śāstra which destroys the ūdra like hail” (karakā). This title was employed to denote the power of the treatise to overturn the Abhidharma-ūdha śāstra composed by Vasubandhu. The title was afterwards changed by Vasubandhu himself to Nyāyānusāra śāstra (Shun-ching-li-lun). See Book iv. infra.

129 This passage, which is obscure, seems to mean that the Śrāmanerās who follow the Arhats, or the Śrāmanerās who are Arhats (for it appears from one of Aśvaghōsa’s sermons (Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 120) that a Śrāmanerā may arrive at this condition), amuse themselves by tracing figures of horses on the rocks, and therefore such traces have no meaning beyond this.

130 That is, as it seems, a range of mountains called the Northern Range.
saṅghārāma. In old days the great master of śāstras called So-kin-ta-lo (Skandhila) composed here the treatise called Chung-sse-fün-pi-pō-sha.\textsuperscript{131}

In the little convent is a stūpa of stone about 50 feet high, where are preserved the sartras of the bequeathed body of an Arhat.

In former times there was an Arhat whose bodily size was very great, and he eat and drank as an elephant. People said in raillery, “He knows well enough how to eat like a glutton, but what does he know of truth or error?” The Arhat, when about to pass to Nirvāṇa, addressing the people round him, said, “Not long hence I shall reach a condition of anāpadiśesa (without a remnant).\textsuperscript{132} I wish to explain how I have attained to the excellent law.”\textsuperscript{133} The people hearing him again laughed together in ridicule. They all came together in an assembly to see him put to shame.\textsuperscript{134} Then the Arhat spoke thus to the people: “I will tell you how, for your advantage, my previous conditions of life and the causes thereof. In my former birth I received, because of my desert, the body of an elephant, and I dwelt in Eastern India, in the stable of a king. At this time this country possessed a Shaman who went forth to wander through India in search of the holy doctrine of Buddha, the various sūtras and śāstras. Then the king gave me to the Shaman. I arrived in this country carrying on my back the books of Buddha. Not long after this I died suddenly. The merit I had obtained by carrying these sacred books eventuated in my being born as a man, and then again I died as a mortal.\textsuperscript{135} But,
thanks to the merit I possessed, I soon (was born in the same condition, and) assumed the coloured clothes of a hermit. I diligently set after the means of putting off (the shackles of existence), and gave myself no repose. Thus I obtained the six supernatural powers and cut off my connection with the three worlds. However, when I eat I have preserved my old habits, but every day I moderate my appetite, and only take one-third of what my body requires as nourishment.” Although he thus spoke, men were still incredulous. Forthwith he ascended into the air and entered on the Samādhi called the brilliancy of flame. From his body proceeded smoke and fire, and thus he entered Nirvāna; his remains (bones) fell to the earth, and they raised a stūpa over them.

Going north-west 200 li or so of the royal city, we come to the saṅghārāma called “Mai-lin.” It was here the master of såstras called Pūrṇa composed a commentary on the Viśhāśa Sāstra.

To the west of the city 140 or 150 li there is a great river, on the borders of which, to the north, resting on the southern slope of a mountain, is a saṅghārāma belonging to the Mahāsaṅghika (Ta-chong-pu) school, with about 100 priests. It was here in old time that Fo-ti-la (Bodhila), a master of såstras, composed the treatise Tsih-chin-lun.

From this going south-west, and crossing some mountains and traversing many precipices, going 700 li or so, we come to the country Pun-nu-tso (Punach).

Julien doubtfully restores mai-lin to Vikrītavana.

In Chinese, Yuen-mun.

I have adopted this restoration from Julien. The Chinese symbols might also be restored to Buddhatarā.

The Tsih-chin-lun is restored by Julien doubtfully to Tattvasaṅgha Sāstra. This treatise belonged to the Mahāsaṅghika collection.
PUN-NU-TSO [PUNACH].

This kingdom is about 2000 li in circuit, with many mountains and river-courses, so that the arable land is very contracted. The seed is sown, however, at regular intervals, and there are a quantity of flowers and fruits. There are many sugar-canies, but no grapes. Amalas, Udumbaras, Môchas, &c., flourish, and are grown in large quantities like woods; they are prized on account of their taste. The climate is warm and damp. The people are brave. They wear ordinarily cotton clothing. The disposition of the people is true and upright; they are Buddhists. There are five saṅghārāmas, mostly deserted. There is no independent ruler, the country being tributary to Kaśmir. To the north of the chief town is a saṅghārāma with a few priests. Here there is a stūpa which is celebrated for its miracles.

Going south-east from this 400 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Ho-lo-she-pu-lo (Râjapuri).

HO-LO-SHE-PU-LO [RâJAPURI].

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit; the capital town is about 10 li round. It is naturally very strong, with many mountains, hills, and river-courses, which cause the arable land to be contracted. The produce therefore is small. The climate and the fruits of the soil are like those of Pun-nu-tso. The people are quick and hasty; the country has no independent ruler, but is subject to Kaśmir. There are ten saṅghārāmas, with a very small number of priests. There is one temple of Dēvas, with an enormous number of unbelievers.

141 Punacha, or Punach, is described by Cunningham (Anc. Geog., 128) as a small state, called Punats by the Kaśmirs, bounded on the west by the Jhelam, on the north by the Pir Paślâl range, and on the east and south-east by the small state of Râjaouri.

142 An-mo-lo is Myrobalan emblica, and Meu-che, the plantain.

143 They have faith in the three gems.

144 Identified by Cunningham with the petty chiefship of Râjaouri or Râjapuri, south of Kaśmir and south-east of Punach (op. cit., p. 129).
From the country of Lan-po till this, the men are of a coarse appearance, their disposition fierce and passionate, their language vulgar and uncultivated, with scarce any manners or refinement. They do not properly belong to India, but are frontier people, with barbarous habits.

Going south-east from this, descending the mountains and crossing a river, after 700 li we come to the kingdom of Tsih-kia (Takka).

END OF BOOK III.
BOOK IV.


I. KINGDOM OF TSEH-KIA (TAKKA).

This kingdom\(^1\) is about 10,000 li in circuit. On the east it borders on the river Pi-po-che (Vipāśā);\(^2\) on the west it borders on the Sin-tu river. The capital of the country is about 20 li in circuit. The soil is suitable for rice and produces much late-sown corn. It also produces gold,

\(^1\) Takkadēśa, the country of the Bāhikas, is named in the Rāja-tarāsiṅgī (v. 150), and said to be a part of the kingdom of Gurjāra, which Rāja Alakhāna was obliged to cede to Kaśmir between the years 883 A.D. and 901 A.D. (Cunningham, Geog., 149). The Čakkas were a powerful tribe living near the Chenāb, and were at one time the undisputed lords of the Panjāb. The kingdom of Tēs-h-kia is probably, therefore, that of the Čakkas. Asiat. Res., vol. xv. pp. 108 f.; Lassen, I. A., vol. i. p. 973. Julien restores it to Tchēka. It seems that Hiuen Tsang kept to the south-west from Rājapuri, and crossed the Chenāb after two days' march near the small town of Jammu or Jambu (perhaps the Juyapura of Hwui-lih), and then pressed on the next day to the town of Sākala, where he arrived the day after. The distance would thus be about 700 li, or 140 miles (Cunningham's Anc. Geog., map vi., compared with Elphinstone's map (India); on this last map the trade route is so marked). In the translation of Hwui-lih, M. Julien has made the distance from Rājapuri to Tchēka to be 200 li (p. 95); it should be 700 li, as in the original. He has also translated how jhā by to-morrow (lendemain), instead of the day after the morrow.

\(^2\) The Vipāśā or Vipāt, the Biyas river, the most eastern of the five rivers of the Panjāb, the Hyphasis (Tphasis) of Arrian (Anab., lib. vi. c. 8, Ind., cc. 2, 3, 4; Diodorus, lib. xvii. c. 93). Pliny (lib. vii. c. 17, 21) and Curtius (lib. ix. c. 1) call it Hypasis, and Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. i. 26, 27) has Bāsāras, while Strabo has Traft. It rises in the Himālaya, and, after a course of about 220 miles, joins the Satlaj south-east of Amītār.
silver, the stone called teou, copper and iron. The climate is very warm, and the land is subject to hurricanes. The people are quick and violent, their language coarse and uncultivated. For clothing they wear a very shining white fabric which they call kiau-che-ye (Kauṣṭhya, silk), and also morning-red cloth (chau hia), and other kinds. Few of them believe in Buddha; many sacrifice to the heavenly spirits (Dėvas and spirits). There are about ten saṅghārāmas and some hundreds of temples. There were formerly in this country many houses of charity (goodness or happiness—Punyasālās) for keeping the poor and the unfortunate. They provided for them medicine and food, clothing and necessaries; so that travellers were never badly off.

To the south-west of the capital about 14 or 15 li we come to the old town of Šākala (She-kie-lo). Although

3 The teou-shih, of which such frequent mention is made by Huien Tsang, is said to be a compound of equal parts of copper and calamine (silicate of zinc). See Julien in loc., n. 2. Medhurst (Dict. a. v.) calls it "native copper."

4 The chau-kia robe. This may mean either court-red or morning-red; it may refer to its colour, but more probably to its lightness. We should have expected a phonetic combination in this name, as in the preceding, viz., Kauṣṭhya, but chau-kia has no phonetic value, although it might be compared with the Sanskrit śūkha (ma).

5 Šākala. Pāṇini (iv. 2, 75) has Šākala, the Ζάγγαλα of Arrian (Anab. Alex., lib. v. c. 22), and probably the same place as Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. i. 46) designates by Ζάγγαλα ἐκ Εὐθυκία. Šākala occurs in the Mahābhārata (ii. 1196, vii. 2033) as the capital of the Madras. Burnouf, Introd., pp. 559 f.; Ind. Ant., vol. i. pp. 22 f.; Wilson, Ariana Ant., pp. 195 f.; As. Res., vol. xv. pp. 107 f.; J. A. S. B., vol. vi. pp. 57 f.; Lassen, Zeitschr. f. d. K. d. Morg., vol. i. p. 353, vol. iii. pp. 154 f., 212; Ind. Alt., vol. i. p. 301. Šākala has been identified by General Cunningham with Sānglawala-Tiba, to the west of the Rāvi (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 180). The capital of the country is not named by Huien Tsang. It appears from Hwu lih that the pilgrim went straight to Šākala, and did not visit the capital. He places it 14 or 15 li to the north-east of Šākala. Although the route taken is differently described in "the Life" and in the Si-yu-ki, yet in the main it is sufficiently clear. After leaving Rājapurī the pilgrim travels south-west for two days, and, crossing the Che-năb, he lodged for one night in a temple belonging to the heretics just outside Jayapura. The second day after leaving this town (direction not given) he arrived at Šākala. Proceeding a little way to the eastward of a town called Nārasiṃha (the situation of which is not given, but was probably a short distance east of Šākala), he was robbed by brigands and lodged in a neighbouring village; starting from which on the next day, he passed the frontiers of the kingdom of Takka, and reached a large town with many thousand
its walls are thrown down, the foundations are still firm and strong. It is about 20 li in circuit. In the midst of it they have built a little town of about 6 or 7 li in circuit; the inhabitants are prosperous and rich. This was the old capital of the country. Some centuries ago there was a king called Mo-hi-lo-kiu-lo (Mahirakula), who established his authority in this town and ruled over India. He was of quick talent, and naturally brave. He subdued all the neighbouring provinces without exception. In his intervals of leisure he desired to examine the law of Buddha, and he commanded that one among the priests of superior talent should wait on him. Now it happened that none of the priests dared to attend to his command. Those who had few desires and were content, did not care about distinction; those of superior learning and high renown despised the royal bounty (glitter). At this time there was an old servant in the king’s household who had long worn the religious garments. He was of distinguished ability and able to enter on discussion, and was very eloquent. The priests put him forward in answer to the royal appeal. The king said, “I have a respect for the law of Buddha, and I inhabitants. This was probably Lahor, the old Lohâwar (the Râvi was evidently the boundary of Takka). He remained here one month, and then proceeding eastward, he arrived at the capital of a country Chinapati, 500 li from Śākala. This was probably the large old town of Patti, 10 miles to the west of the Biyas river. About 10 miles south-west of this (the Si-yuki has 500 li by mistake for 50) was a monastery; this would place us at the point of the confluence of the Biyas and Satlaj rivers. The question to be settled is whether at this point there is a mountain or a hill round which for a distance of 20 li monasteries and stūpas could be grouped. General Cunningham speaks of this neighbourhood as constituting the sandy bed of the Biyas river (op. cit., p. 201). But, at any rate, such a situation agrees with the next measurement of 140 or 150 li to Jālaṇḍhar. We should thus have a total of 660 li (132 miles) eastward from Śākala to Jālaṇḍhara, which is as nearly as possible correct as projected on General Cunningham’s map (op. cit. No. vi.)

4 For Mahirakula, see ante, Book iii. n. 1. The interpretation of the name is given by the Chinese editor as Tu-tao, i.e., “great tribe or family;” but māhira or mihira signifies “the sun;” it should therefore be “the family of the sun.”

7 The kingdoms of the neighbouring districts all submitted to him.

8 Or “eminent virtue;” but ōh (virtue) refers to general gifts or endowments.
invited from far any renowned priest (to come and instruct me), and now the congregation have put forward this servant to discuss with me. I always thought that amongst the priests there were men of illustrious ability; after what has happened to-day what further respect can I have for the priesthood?" He then issued an edict to destroy all the priests through the five Indies, to overthrow the law of Buddha, and leave nothing remaining.

Báláditya"-râja, king of Magadha, profoundly honoured the law of Buddha and tenderly nourished his people. When he heard of the cruel persecution and atrocities of Mahirakula (Ta-tso), he strictly guarded the frontiers of his kingdom and refused to pay tribute. Then Mahirakula raised an army to punish his rebellion. Báláditya-râja, knowing his renown, said to his ministers, "I hear that these thieves are coming, and I cannot fight with them (their troops); by the permission of my ministers I will conceal my poor person among the bushes of the morass."

Having said this, he departed from his palace and wandered through the mountains and deserts. Being very much beloved in his kingdom, his followers amounted to

9 Báláditya, explained by yeou jih, i.e., the young sun or the rising sun. Julien translates it too literally, "le soleil des enfants." Julien has observed and corrected the mistake in the note, where the symbol is yan for yeou. With respect to the date of Báláditya, who was contemporary with Mahirakula who put Simha, the twenty-third Buddhist patriarch, to death, we are told that he was a grandson of Buddhagupta (Hwui-lijk, p. 150, Julien's trans.), and according to General Cunningham (Archæologia, vol. ix. p. 21) Buddhagupta was reigning approximately A.D. 349, and his silver coins extend his reign to A.D. 368. His son was Tathátagupta, and his successor was Báláditya. Allowing fifty years for these reigns, we arrive at 420 A.D. for the end, probably, of Báláditya's reign. This, of course, depends on the initial date of the Gupta period; if it is placed, as Dr. Oldenberg (Ind. Antiq., vol. x. p. 321) suggests, A.D. 319, then the reign of Buddhagupta will have to be brought down 125 years later, and he would be reigning 493 A.D.; in this case Báláditya would be on the throne too late for the date of Simha, who was certainly many years before Buddhaharma (the twenty-eighth patriarch), who reached China A.D. 520. The earlier date harmonises with the Chinese records, which state that a Life of Vasubandhu, the twenty-first patriarch, was written by Kumárajiva A.D. 409, and also that a history of the patriarchs down to Simha, whom we place hypothetically about 420 A.D., was translated in China A.D. 472; both these statements are possible if the date proposed be given to Báláditya.
many myriads, who fled with him and hid themselves in the islands of the sea.

Mahirakula-rāja, committing the army to his younger brother, himself embarked on the sea to go attack Bālāditya. The king guarding the narrow passes, whilst the light cavalry were out to provoke the enemy to fight, sounded the golden drum, and his soldiers suddenly rose on every side and took Mahirakula alive as captive, and brought him into the presence (of Bālāditya).

The king Mahirakula being overcome with shame at his defeat, covered his face with his robe. Bālāditya sitting on his throne with his ministers round him, ordered one of them to tell the king to uncover himself as he wished to speak with him.

Mahirakula answered, “The subject and the master have changed places; that enemies should look on one another is useless; and what advantage is there in seeing my face during conversation?”

Having given the order three times with no success, the king then ordered his crimes to be published, and said, “The field of religious merit connected with the three precious objects of reverence is a public blessing; but this you have overturned and destroyed like a wild beast. Your religious merit is over, and unprotected by fortune you are my prisoner. Your crimes admit of no extenuation and you must die.”

At this time the mother of Bālāditya was of wide celebrity on account of her vigorous intellect and her skill in casting horoscopes. Hearing that they were going to kill Mahirakula, she addressed Bālāditya-rāja and said, “I have understood that Mahirakula is of remarkable beauty and vast wisdom. I should like to see him once.”

Bālāditya-rāja (Yeou-jih) ordered them to bring in Mahirakula to the presence of his mother in her palace. Then she said, “Alas! Mahirakula, be not ashamed! Worldly

9 It may be translated, “an island of the sea.”
11 Belonging to the world or creatures born in the world.
things are impermanent; success and discomfiture follow one another according to circumstances. I regard myself as your mother and you as my son; remove the covering from your face and speak to me."

Mahirakula said, "A little while ago I was prince of a victorious country, now I am a prisoner condemned to death. I have lost my kingly estate and I am unable to offer my religious services;¹² I am ashamed in the presence of my ancestors and of my people. In very truth I am ashamed before all, whether before heaven or earth. I find no deliverance.¹³ Therefore I hide my face with my mantle." The mother of the king said, "Prosperity or the opposite depends on the occasion; gain and loss come in turn. If you give way to events (things), you are lost; but if you rise above circumstances, though you fall, you may rise again. Believe me, the result of deeds depends on the occasion. Lift the covering from your face and speak with me. I may perhaps save your life."

Mahirakula, thanking her, said, "I have inherited a kingdom without having the necessary talent for government, and so I have abused the royal power in inflicting punishment; for this reason I have lost my kingdom. But though I am in chains, yet I desire life if only for a day. Let me then thank you with uncovered face for your offer of safety." Whereupon he removed his mantle and showed his face. The king's mother said, "My son is well-favoured;¹⁴ he will die after his years are accomplished." Then she said to Bālāditya, "In agreement with former regulations, it is right to forgive crime and to love to give life. Although Mahirakula has long accumulated sinful actions, yet his remnant of merit is not altogether exhausted. If you kill this man, for twelve

¹² The ancestral sacrifices.
¹³ Perhaps a better translation would be: "In truth I am ashamed; whether I cast my eyes downward or upward, in heaven or earth I am unable to find deliverance."
¹⁴ This is an obscure sentence; Julien translates it "have a care for yourself; you must accomplish the term of your life."
years you will see him with his pale face before you. I gather from his air that he will be the king of a small country; let him rule over some small kingdom in the north."

Then Bâlâditya-râja, obeying his dear mother's command, had pity on the prince bereft of his kingdom; gave him in marriage to a young maiden and treated him with extreme courtesy. Then he assembled the troops he had left and added a guard to escort him from the island.

Mahirakula-râja's brother having gone back, established himself in the kingdom. Mahirakula having lost his royal estate, concealed himself in the isles and deserts, and going northwards to Kaśmîr, he sought there an asylum. The king of Kaśmîr received him with honour, and moved with pity for his loss, gave him a small territory and a town to govern. After some years he stirred up the people of the town to rebellion, and killed the king of Kaśmîr and placed himself on the throne. Profiting by this victory and the renown it got him, he went to the west, plotting against the kingdom of Gândhâra. He set some soldiers in ambush and took and killed the king. He exterminated the royal family and the chief minister, overthrew the stûpas, destroyed the saṅghârâmas, altogether one thousand six hundred foundations. Besides those whom his soldiers had killed there were nine hundred thousand whom he was about to destroy without leaving one. At this time all the ministers addressed him and said, "Great king! your prowess has gained a great victory, and our soldiers are no longer engaged in conflict. Now that you have punished the chief, why would you charge the poor people with fault? Let us, insignificant as we are, die in their stead."

The king said, "You believe in the law of Buddha and greatly reverence the mysterious law of merit. Your aim is to arrive at the condition of Buddha, and then you will declare fully, under the form of Jîtakas, my evil

---

15 That is to say, when they had arrived at the condition of omni-science they would in future ages declare how Mahirakula was suffering
deeds, for the good of future generations. Now go back to your estates, and say no more on the subject."

Then he slew three ten myriads of people of the first rank by the side of the Sin-tu river; the same number of the middle rank he drowned in the river, and the same number of the third rank he divided among his soldiers (as slaves). Then he took the wealth of the country he had destroyed, assembled his troops, and returned. But before the year was out he died. At the time of his death there was thunder and hail and a thick darkness; the earth shook and a mighty tempest raged. Then the holy saints said in pity, "For having killed countless victims and overthrown the law of Buddha, he has now fallen into the lowest hell, where he shall pass endless ages of revolution." 18

In the old town of Śākala (She-ki-lo) is a saṅghārāma with about 100 priests, who study the Little Vehicle. In old days Vasubandhu (Shi-t'sin) Bodhisattva composed in this place the treatise called Shing-i-tai (Paramārthasatya Śāstra).

By the side of the convent is a stūpa about 200 feet high; on this spot the four former Buddhas preached the law, and here again are the traces of their walking to and fro (king-hing).

To the north-west of the saṅghārāma 5 or 6 li is a stūpa about 200 feet high built by Aśoka-raja. Here also the four past Buddhas preached.

About 10 li to the north-east of the new capital we come to a stūpa of stone about 200 feet in height, built by Aśoka. This is where Tathāgata, when he was going under some form of birth or other, in consequence of his evil deeds. This was one of the methods of Buddha's teaching.

18 The expression tu lo means "to wither away like a falling leaf."

17 The lowest hell is the Wu-kan-ti-yuh, the hell without interval (arichi), i.e., without interval of rest, a place of incessant torment. It is the lowest of the places of torment. See Catena of Buddhist Scriptures, p. 59.

This may also mean that his torments even then, i.e., after this punishment, would not be finished. The Buddhist idea of the suffering in Aśvichi was not connected with its eternal duration. See Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.
northward on his work of conversion, stopped in the middle of the road. In the records of India (In-tu-ki) it is said, "In this stūpa are many relics; on holidays they emit a bright light."

From this going east 500 li or so, we come to China-po-ti (Chinapatī) country.

**CHI-NA-PO-TI (CHINAPATI).**

This country is about 2000 li in circuit. The capital is about 14 or 15 li round. It produces abundant harvests; the fruit trees are thinly scattered. The people are contented and peaceful; the resources of the country are abundant. The climate is hot and humid; the people are timid and listless. They are given to promiscuous study, and there are amongst them believers and the contrary. There are ten saṅghārāmas and eight Dēva temples.

Formerly, when Kanishka-rāja was on the throne, his fame spread throughout the neighbouring countries, and his military power was recognised by all. The tributary princes to the west of the (Yellow) River, in recognition of his authority, sent hostages to him. Kanishka-rāja having received the hostages, he treated them with marked attention. During the three seasons of the year

---

19 That is, from Śākala; not from the large city (Labor) on the frontiers of Takka, as V. de St. Martin states (Mémoire, p. 330).

20 The country of Chinapatī appears to have stretched from the Rāvi to the Satlaj. General Cunningham places the capital at Chinā or Chinigari, 11 miles north of Ambitsar (Arch. Survey, vol. xiv. p. 54). This situation does not agree with the subsequent bearings and distances. It is, for example, some 60 miles (300 li) north-west from Sultānpur (Tāmasavana) instead of 10 miles (50 li): moreover, Jálaṅdhara bears south-east from Chinā instead of north-east, and the distance is nearly 70 miles instead of 28 or 30. The situation of the large and very old town called Patti or Pati, 10 miles to the west of the Biyas river and 27 to the north-east of Kasūr, appears to suit the measurements and bearings as nearly as possible (Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 200). It is unfortunate, however, that the distances in General Cunningham's maps in the Anc. Geog. of Ind., and the volume of the Arch. Survey do not agree.

21 Literally, sowing and reaping are rich and productive.

22 I translate it thus after Julien, as there is some obscurity in the text. It might, perhaps, be rendered "the united tribes of the Fan people." The Fan were Tibetans or associated tribes.
he appointed them separate establishments, and afforded them special guards of troops. This country was the residence of the hostages during the winter. This is the reason why it is called Chinapati, after the name of the residence of the hostages.

There existed neither pear nor peach in this kingdom and throughout the Indies until the hostages planted them, and therefore the peach is called Chināni, and the pear is called Chinarājaputra. For this reason the men of this country have a profound respect for the Eastern land. Moreover (when they saw me) they pointed with their fingers, and said one to another, “This man is a native of the country of our former ruler.

To the south-east of the capital 500 li or so, we come to the convent called Ta-mo-su-fa-na (dark forest, i.e., Tāmasavana). There are about 300 priests in it, who study the doctrine of the Sarvāstivāda school. They (the congregation) have a dignified address, and are of conspicuous virtue and pure life. They are deeply versed in the teaching of the Little Vehicle. The 1000 Buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa will explain, in this country, to the assembly of the Devas the principles of the excellent law.

Three hundred years after the Nirvāna of Buddha the

23 Literally, “four soldiers stood on guard,” i.e., they had four soldiers outside their quarters to protect them.
24 Rendered in a note “Tang fung, i.e., “lord of China;” this seems to show that Pāti is the right restoration of po-ti (compare Cunningham, Arch. Surv. of India, vol. xiv. p. 54). The fact of the name China being given to this country on account of the hostages confirms the restoration of Charaka to Seriku, ante, Book i. p. 57, n. 203.
25 Cunningham remarks that there can be no doubt of the introduction of the China peach, as in the northwest of India it is still known by that name (op. cit., p. 54).
26 That is, of Kanishka and his associates. They belonged to the Gushān tribe of the Yuei-chi, who came originally from the borders of China. See ante, p. 56, n. 200.
27 In the life of Huien Tsang by Hwui-lih, the distance given from the capital of Chinapati to the convent of “the dark forest” is 50 li (Book ii. p. 102, Julien’s translation). This is probably the correct distance; the 500 li in the text is an error of the copyist. The convent is fixed by General Cunningham at Sūltānapur or Dalla Sūltānapur. It is one of the largest towns in the Jālaṇdhara Doab (op. cit., p. 55).
master of śāstras called Kātyāyana composed here the 
Fa-chi-lun (Abhidharmaṇā-prasthāna Śāstra).\textsuperscript{28}

In the convent of the dark forest there is a stūpa about 
200 feet high, which was erected by Aśoka-rāja. By its 
side are traces of the four past Buddhas, where they sat 
and walked. There is a succession of little stūpas and 
large stone houses facing one another, of an uncertain 
number; here, from the beginning of the kalpa till now, 
saints who have obtained the fruit (of Arhats) have reached 
Nirvāṇa. To cite all would be difficult. Their teeth and 
bones still remain. The convents gird the mountain \textsuperscript{29} for 
about 20 li in circuit, and the stūpas containing relics 
of Buddha are hundreds and thousands in number; they 
are crowded together, so that one overshadows the other.

Going north-east from this country, 140 or 150 li, we 
come to the country of Che-lan-ta-lo (Jālandhara).

**CHE-LAN-T’O-LO (JĀLANDHARA).**

This kingdom \textsuperscript{30} is about 1000 li from east to west, and 
about 800 li from north to south. The capital is 12 
or 13 li in circuit. The land is favourable for the cultiva-

\textsuperscript{28} This work was translated into 
Chinese by Saṅghadēva and another in A.D. 353. Another trans-
lation was made by Hiuen Tsang A.D. 657. If the usual date of Bud-
wha’s Nirvāṇa be adopted (viz., 400 years before Kanishka), Kātyāyana 
would have flourished in the first century or about 20 B.C. See Weber, 
Sansk. Liter., p. 222. His work was 
the foundation of the Abhidharma-
mahāvihārahā Śāstra, composed dur-
ing the council under Kanishka. (See 
Bunyiu Nanjio, Catalogue of Bud-
dhism Tripiṭa, No. 1163).

\textsuperscript{29} There is probably a false reading 
in the text, either (1) Shan, a 
mountain, is a mistake for saṅg, 
which would give us saṅg-kia-lan, 
"saṅghārāma," instead of kia-lan, 
or else (2) shan is for yau, a very 
common misprint. In the first case 
the translation would then be "the teeth and bones still exist around 
the saṅghārāma;" or, if the second 
reading be adopted, the rendering 
would be "the teeth and bones 
still exist all round, from (you) the 
kia-lan, for a circuit of 20 li," &c. 
Perhaps the first correction is prefer-
able. I am satisfied the reading, as 
it is, is corrupt.

\textsuperscript{30} Jālanḍhara, a well-known 
place in the Panjāb (lat. 31° 19' N., 
long. 75° 28' E.). We may therefore 
safely reckon from it in testing 
Hiuen Tsang’s figures. From Sul-
tânpur to Jālanḍhara is as nearly as 
possible 50 miles north-east. Hiuen 
Tsang gives 150 or 140 li in the 
same direction. Assuming the 
capital of Chinapati to be 50 li 
north-west of Sultânpur, that dis-
tance and bearing would place us 
on the right bank of the Biyās 
river, near the old town of Patti,
tion of cereals, and it produces much rice. The forests are thick and umbrageous, fruits and flowers abundant. The climate is warm and moist, the people brave and impetuous, but their appearance is common and rustic. The houses are rich and well supplied. There are fifty convents, or so; about 2000 priests. They have students both of the Great and Little Vehicle. There are three temples of Dévas and about 500 heretics, who all belong to the Páṣupatas (cinder-sprinkled).

A former king of this land showed great partiality for the heretics, but afterwards, having met with an Arhat and heard the law, he believed and understood it. Therefore the king of Mid-India, out of regard for his sincere faith, appointed him sole inspector of the affairs of religion (the three gems) throughout the five Indies. Making light of party distinctions (this or that), with no preference or dislike, he examined into the conduct of the priests, and probed their behaviour with wonderful sagacity. The virtuous and the well-reported of, he reverenced and openly rewarded; the disorderly he punished. Wherever there were traces of the holy one (or, ones), he built either stūpas or saṅghārāmas, and there was no place within the limits of India he did not visit and inspect.

Going north-east from this, skirting along some high mountain passes and traversing some deep valleys, follow-

Reckoning back to Śākala, the distance (Cunningham’s Anc. Geog. Ind., map vi.) is just 100 miles north of west. Hiuen Tsiang gives 500 li west. From this it seems that the computation of fire li to the mile is, in this part of India at least, a safe one. For a full account of Jālandhara and its importance, see Cunningham (op. cit., pp. 137 ff.) It is sometimes stated that the council under Kanishka was held in the Jālandhara convent, that is, the Tāmasavana Saṅghārāma (V. de St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 333 n.). The fact that Katvyāyana lived and wrote in this establishment, and that the great work of the council was to write a commentary on his sāstra, would so far be in accord with the statement. Hiuen Tsiang on his return journey was accompanied to Jālandhara by Udita, the king of North India, who made this his capital (Vīc, p. 260). Shortly after this a Shaman, Yuan-chiu, from China stopped here four years, studying Sanskrit with the Mung king, perhaps the same Udita (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xiii. p. 563). The way through Kāpiśa was shortly after this time (664 a.d.) occupied by the Arāha (op. cit., p. 564).
ing a dangerous road, and crossing many ravines, going 700 li or so, we come to the country of K'iu-lu-to (Kulūta).

K'iu-lu-to (Kulūta).

This country is about 3000 li in circuit, and surrounded on every side by mountains. The chief town is about 14 or 15 li round. The land is rich and fertile, and the crops are duly sown and gathered. Flowers and fruits are abundant, and the plants and trees afford a rich vegetation. Being contiguous to the Snowy Mountains, there are found here many medicinal (roots) of much value. Gold, silver, and copper are found here—fire-drops (crystal) and native copper (teou). The climate is unusually cold, and hail or snow continually falls. The people are coarse and common in appearance, and are much afflicted with goitre and tumours. Their nature is hard and fierce; they greatly regard justice and bravery. There are about twenty saṅghārāmas, and 1000 priests or so. They mostly study the Great Vehicle; a few practise (the rules of) other schools (vikāyas). There are fifteen Déva temples: different sects occupy them without distinction.

Along the precipitous sides of the mountains and hollowed into the rocks are stone chambers which face one another. Here the Arhats dwell or the Rishis stop.

In the middle of the country is a stūpa built by Asoka-rāja. Of old the Tathāgata came to this country with his followers to preach the law and to save men. This stūpa is a memorial of the traces of his presence.

Going north from this, along a road thick with dangers and precipices, about 1800 or 1900 li, along mountains and valleys, we come to the country of Lo-u-lo (Lahul). The present capital is Sultānpur (Cunningham). The old capital was called Nagara or Nagarkot.

North of this 2000 li or so, travelling by a road dan-

31 Kulūta, the district of Kulu in the upper valley of the Biyās river. It is also called Kōlūka and Kēlūta, —Râmāy., iv. 43, 8; Brth. Saikh., xiv. 22, 29; Wilson, Hind. Theat., vol. ii. p. 165; Saint-Martin, Étude sur la Géog. Grec., pp. 300 f. The present capital is Sultānpur (Cunningham). The old capital was called Nagara or Nagarkot.

32 Lahul, the Lho-yal of the Tibetans.
gerous and precipitous, where icy winds and flying snow (assault the traveller), we come to the country of Mo-lo-so (called also San-po-ho).\textsuperscript{33}

Leaving the country of K’iu-lu-to and going south 700 li or so, passing a great mountain and crossing a wide river, we come to the country of She-to-t’u-lo (Śatadru).

**She-to-t’u-lo (Śatadru).**

This country\textsuperscript{34} is about 2000 li from east to west, and borders on a great river. The capital is 17 or 18 li in circuit. Cereals grow in abundance, and there is very much fruit. There is an abundance of gold and silver found here, and precious stones. For clothing the people wear a very bright silk stuff; their garments are elegant and rich. The climate is warm and moist. The manners of the people are soft and agreeable; the men are docile and virtuous. The high and low take their proper place. They all sincerely believe in the law of Buddha and show it great respect.

Within and without the royal city there are ten saṅghārāmas, but the halls are now deserted and cold, and there are but few priests. To the south-east of the city 3 or 4 li is a stūpa about 200 feet high, which was built by Aśoka-rāja. Beside it are the traces where the four past Buddhas sat or walked.

Going again from this south-west about 800 li, we come to the kingdom of Po-li-ye-to-lo (Pāryātra).

\textsuperscript{33} This country is also called San-po-ho (Sampaha?).—Ch. Ed. The suggestion of General Cunningham that Mo-lo-so should be read Marpo (Mo-lo-po, St. Martin, Mém., p. 331) is quite admissible. Mo-lo is equal to mar, and the symbol so is often mistaken for po. The province of Ladāk is called Mar-po, or the “red district,” from the colour of the soil. The distance given by Huien Tsang viz., 4600 li from Jālaādhara, is no doubt much in excess of the straight route to Ladāk, but as he went no further than Kulāta himself, the other distances, viz., 1900 + 2000 li, must have been gathered from hearsay. Doubtless the route would be intricate and winding.

\textsuperscript{34} Śatadru—also spelt Sutudri, Śatudri, and Sitadrus, “flowing in a hundred branches”—the name of the Satlaj (Gerard’s Koonaur, p. 28). It is the Hesidrus (or Hesudrus?) of Pliny (H. N., lib. vi. c. 17, 21) and the Ζαγάδρα or Ζαζάδρα of Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 27, 42). See Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. i. p. 57. It also appears to have been the name of a kingdom of which Sarhind was probably the chief town, referred to in the text.
PO-LI-YE-TO-LO (PÂRYÂTRA).

This country is about 3000 li in circuit, and the capital about 14 or 15 li. Grain is abundant and late wheat. There is a strange kind of rice grown here, which ripens after sixty days. There are many oxen and sheep, few flowers and fruits. The climate is warm and fiery, the manners of the people are resolute and fierce. They do not esteem learning, and are given to honour the heretics. The king is of the Vaiśya caste; he is of a brave and impetuous nature, and very warlike.

There are eight saṅghārāmas, mostly ruined, with a very few priests, who study the Little Vehicle. There are ten Dēva temples with about 1000 followers of different sects.

Going east from this 500 li or so, we come to the country of Mo-t'‑u-‑lo (Mathurā).

MO-T'‑U-‑LO (Mathurā).

The kingdom of Mo-t’‑u-‑lo is about 5000 li in circuit. The capital is 20 li round. The soil is rich and fertile, and fit for producing grain (sowing and reaping). They give principal care to the cultivation of 'An-mo-lo (trees),

33 Pâryâtra is said in the next section to be 500 li (100 miles) west of Mathurâ or Muttra. This would favour the restoration of the Chinese Posi‑ye‑to‑lo to Vîrata or Bairāt. The distance and bearing from Sarhind, however, given in the text, do not agree with this. Bairāt is some 220 miles south of Sarhind.

34 Julien states (p. 206, n. 3) that this is a species of "dry rice" or "mountain rice," called Tchentch'ing-tao, which, according to a Chinese account, ripens in this period of time.

35 The people of Vîrata were always famous for their valour; hence Manu directs that the van of an army should be composed of men of Matsya or Virâta (amongst others). Cunningham, Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 341. Mathurâ, on the Yamunâ, in the ancient Śrâsanâkâ district, lat. 27° 25' N., long. 77° 41' E. For a description of the Buddhist remains discovered in the neighbourhood of this city, see Cunningham, Arch. Surv. of India, vol. i. pp. 231 ff., and vol. iii. p. 13ff.; Growse's Mathurâ (2d ed.), pp. 95-116; Ind. Ant., vol. vi. pp. 216 ff. It is the Môthora of Arrian (Ind., c. 8) and Pliny (H. N., lib. vi. c. 19, s. 22), and the Môthora η τῶν θεών of Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 49). Conf. Lassen, J. A., vol. i. p. 158; Bp. He. Sanbh., iv. 26, xvi. 17; Pâñini, iv. 2, 82; Burnouf, Intr., pp. 130, 336.
which grow in clusters like forests. These trees, though called by one name, are of two kinds; the small species, the fruit of which, when young, is green, and becomes yellow as it ripens; and the great species, the fruit of which is green throughout its growth.

This country produces a fine species of cotton fabric and also yellow gold. The climate is warm to a degree. The manners of the people are soft and complacent. They like to prepare secret stores of religious merit. They esteem virtue and honour learning.

There are about twenty saṅghārāmas with 2000 priests or so. They study equally the Great and the Little Vehicles. There are five Dēva temples, in which sectaries of all kinds live.

There are three stūpas built by Aśoka-rāja. There are very many traces of the four past Buddhas here. There are also stūpas to commemorate the remains of the holy followers of Sākya Tathāgata, to wit, of Śāriputra (She-li-tseu), of Mūdgalaputra (Mo-te-kia-lo-tseu), of Pūrṇamaitrāyaṇīputra (Pu-la-na-meī-ta-li-yen-ni-ta-lo), of Upāli (Yeu-po-li), of Ānanda (O-nan-to), of Rāhula (Lo-hu-lo), of Mañjuśrī (Man-chu-sse-li), and stūpas of other Bōdhisattvas. Every year during the three months in which long fasts are observed, and during the six fast-days of each month, the priests resort to these various stūpas and pay mutual compliments; they make their religious offerings, and bring many rare and precious objects for presents. According to their school they visit the sacred object (figure) of their veneration. Those who study the Abhidharma honour Śāriputra; those who practise meditation honour Mūdgalaputra; those who recite the sūtras honour Pūrṇamāi-
trāyāṇḍputra; those who study the Vinaya reverence Upāli. All the Bhikshunis honour Ānanda, the Śrāmaññeras honour Rāhula; those who study the Great Vehicle reverence the Boddhisattvas. On these days they honour the stūpas with offerings. They spread out (display) their jewelled banners; the rich (precious) coverings (parasols) are crowded together as network; the smoke of incense rises in clouds; and flowers are scattered in every direction like rain; the sun and the moon are concealed as by the clouds which hang over the moist valleys. The king of the country and the great ministers apply themselves to these religious duties with zeal.45

To the east of the city about 5 or 6 li we come to a mountain saṅghārāma.46 The hill-sides are pierced (widened) to make cells (for the priests). We enter it 47

44 Those not yet fully ordained; or, literally, those who have not yet taken on them all the rules, i.e., of the Pratimokṣa. The Śrāmaññeras, or young disciples (novices), are referred to; they are called anupasaṃpaṇa, not fully ordained. See Childers’ Pali Dict. sub voc.
45 Literally, "prepare good (fruit) by their zeal (careful attention)."
46 This passage is obscure and unsatisfactory. In the first place, the bearing from the city must be wrong, as the river Jamná washes the eastern side of the city for its whole length. If west be substituted for east, we are told by General Cunningham (Arch. Survey of India, vol. iii. p. 28) that the Chauhánā mounds, about one mile and a half from the town in that direction, have no hollows such as Hiuen Tsang describes. If north be substituted for east, the Katrá mound is not a mile from the town. But in the second place, the Chinese text is obscure. I do not think we can translate yih shan kia lan—literally “one-mountain-saṅghārāma”—by “a saṅghārāma situated on a mountain.” There is the same phrase used in connection with the Tāmasavāna convent (supra, p. 174). I have supposed that shan in that passage is a misprint. General Cunningham remarks (Arch. Survey, vol. xiv. p. 56), that Hiuen Tsang compares this monastery to a mountain: if this were so, the text would be intelligible; but I can find no such statement. If the text is not corrupt, the most satisfactory explanation I can offer is that the mounds which seem to abound in the neighbourhood of Mathurā (and also the high mound at Sultānpur) had been used by the early Buddhist priests as “mountain-convents,” that is, the mounds had been excavated, as the sides of mountains were, for dwelling-places. It is possible, also, to make yi shan a proper name for Ekaparrakta; the passage would then read “5 or 6 li to the east of the city is the Ekaparvataka monastery.”
47 The word used in the text (yin) favours another rendering, viz., “the valley being the gate.”
through a valley, as by gates. This was constructed by the honourable Upagupta.\(^{48}\) There is in it a stūpa containing the nail-parings of the Tathāgata.

To the north of the sanghārāma, in a cavern (or between two high banks), is a stone house about 20 feet high and 30 feet wide. It is filled with small wooden tokens (slips) four inches long.\(^{49}\) Here the honourable Upagupta preached; when he converted a man and wife, so that they both arrived at (confronted) the fruit of Arhatship, he placed one slip (in this house). He made no record of those who attained this condition if they belonged to different families or separate castes (tribes).

Twenty-four or five li to the south-east of the stone house there is a great dry marsh, by the side of which is a stūpa. In old days the Tathāgata walked to and fro in this place. At this time a monkey holding (a pot of) honey offered it to Buddha. Buddha hereupon ordered him to mingle it with water, and to distribute it everywhere among the great assembly.\(^{50}\) The monkey, filled

\(^{48}\) Upagupta (Yu-po-kiu-to, in Chinese Kin-hu, and in Japanese Uvakikta), a Sūdra by birth, entered on a monastic life when seventeen years old, became an Arhat three years later, and conquered Māra in a personal contest. He laboured in Mathurā as the fourth patriarch. (Eitel, Handbook, s. voc.) The personal contest alluded to is related fully as an Avadāna by Aśvaghōsa in his sermons. Māra found Upagupta lost in meditation, and placed a wreath of flowers on his head. On returning to consciousness, and finding himself thus crowned, he entered again into samādhi, to see who had done the deed. Finding it was Māra, he caused a dead body to fasten itself round Māra’s neck. No power in heaven or earth could disentangle it. Finally Māra returned to Upagupta, confessed his fault, and prayed him to free him from the corpse. Upagupta consented on condition that he (Māra) would exhibit himself under the form of Buddha “with all his marks.” Māra does so, and Upagupta, overpowered by the magnificence of the (supposed) Buddha, falls down before him in worship. The tableau then closes amid a terrific storm. Upagupta is spoken of as “a Buddha without marks” (Alekshanako Buddhaḥ).—Burnouf, Introd., p. 336, n. 4. See also Fo-sho-kung-than king, p. xii. He is not known to the Southern school of Buddhism. He is made a contemporary of Aśoka by the Northern school, and placed one hundred years after the Niserīṇa. Conf. Edkins, Chinn. Buddhism, pp. 67-70; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. ii. p. 1201.

\(^{49}\) Literally, “four-inch wooden tokens fill up its interior!” But according to another account (Wong püh, § 177), the tokens or rods were used at the cremation of Upagupta.

\(^{50}\) Mr. Growse would identify this spot with Damdana mound near Sarai Jamālūr, “at some distance to the south-east of the kutra, the trad-
with joy, fell into a deep hole and was killed. By the power of his religious merit he obtained birth as a man.

To the north of the lake not very far, in the midst of a great wood, are the traces of the four former Buddhas walking to and fro. By the side are stupas erected to commemorate the spots where Śāriputra, Mādulaputra, and others, to the number of 1250 great Arhats, practised samādhi and left traces thereof. The Thañḍagata, when in the world, often traversed this country preaching the law. On the places where he stopped there are monuments (trees or posts) with titles on them.

Going north-east 500 li or so, we come to the country of Satāni-shī-fa-lo (Stañeśvara).

**Satāni-shī-fa-lo (Stañeśvara).**

This kingdom is about 7000 li in circuit, the capital 20 li or so. The soil is rich and productive, and abounds with grain (cereals). The climate is genial, though hot. The manners of the people are cold and insincere. The families are rich and given to excessive luxury. They are much addicted to the use of magical arts, and greatly honour those of distinguished ability in other ways. Most of the people follow after worldly gain; a few give themselves to agricultural pursuits. There is a large accumulation here of rare and valuable merchandise from every quarter. There are three saṅghārāmas in this country, with about 700 priests. They all study (practise or use)

ditional site of ancient Mathurā.”—Growse’s Mathura (2d ed.), p. 100; Cunningham, Arch. Surv. Rep., vol. i. p. 233. The legend of the monkey is often represented in Baudhā sculptures (see Ind. Ant., vol. ix. p. 114). In this translation I follow Julien. The literal rendering is, “Buddha ordered a water-mingling everywhere around the great assembly.” The “great assembly” is the Saṅghā or congregation, generally represented as 1250 in number. Probably the verb sa is understood, “to give it everywhere,” &c.

51 The pilgrim probably left Mathurā and travelled back by his former route till he came to Hāṇi, where he struck off in a north-west direction for about 100 miles to Thañeśvar or Stañeśvara. This is one of the oldest and most celebrated places in India, on account of its connection with the Pāndus. See Cunningham, Anc. Geo. of India, p. 331; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. 3, p. 153, n.; Hall, Vāsavadatta, p. 51.
the Little Vehicle. There are some hundred Dēva temples, and sectaries of various kinds in great number.

On every side of the capital within a precinct of 200 li in circuit is an area called by the men of this place "the land of religious merit." This is what tradition states about it:—In old time there were two kings of the five Indies, between whom the government was divided. They attacked one another's frontiers, and never ceased fighting. At length the two kings came to the agreement that they should select on each side a certain number of soldiers to decide the question by combat, and so give the people rest. But the multitude rejected this plan, and would have none of it. Then the king (of this country) reflected that the people are difficult to please (to deal with). A miraculous power (a spirit) may perhaps move them (to action); some project (out-of-the-way plan) may perhaps settle (establish) them in some right course of action.

At this time there was a Brāhmāṇ of great wisdom and high talent. To him the king sent secretly a present of some rolls of silk, and requested him to retire within his after-hall (private apartment) and there compose a religious book which he might conceal in a mountain cavern. After some time, when the trees had grown over (the mouth of the cavern), the king summoned his ministers before him as he sat on his royal throne, and said: "Ashamed of my little virtue in the high estate I occupy, the ruler of heaven (or, of Dēvas) has been pleased to reveal to me in a dream, and to confer upon me a divine book which is now concealed in such-and-such a mountain fastness and in such-and-such a rocky corner."

---

This is also called the Dharma-kaśhētra, or the "holy land:" and Kuru-kaśhētra, from the number of holy places connected with the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas, and with other heroes of antiquity. For some remarks on the probable extent of this district, see Anc. Geog. of India, p. 333, Arch. Surv. of India, vol. ii. pp. 212 f., and vol. xiv. p. 100; Thom-
On this an edict was issued to search for this book, and it was found underneath the mountain bushes. The high ministers addressed their congratulations (to the king) and the people were overjoyed. The king then gave an account of the discovery to those far and near, and caused all to understand the matter; and this is the upshot of his message: "To birth and death there is no limit—no end to the revolutions of life. There is no rescue from the spiritual abyss (in which we are immersed). But now by a rare plan I am able to deliver men from this suffering. Around this royal city, for the space of 200 li in circuit, was the land of 'religious merit' for men, apportioned by the kings of old. Years having rolled away in great numbers, the traces have been forgotten or destroyed. Men not regarding spiritual indications (religion) have been immersed in the sea of sorrow without power of escape. What then is to be said? Let it be known (from the divine revelation given) that all those of you who shall attack the enemy's troops and die in battle, that they shall be born again as men; if they kill many, that, free from guilt, they shall receive heavenly joys. Those obedient grandchildren and pious children who assist (attend) their aged parents in walking about this land shall reap happiness (merit) without bounds. With little work, a great reward. Who would lose such an opportunity, (since,) when once dead, our bodies fall into the dark intricacies of the three evil ways? Therefore let every man stir himself to the utmost to prepare good works."

On this the men hastened to the conflict, and regarded death as deliverance. The king accordingly issued an

---

56 This differs from Julien's version; the literal translation is "many slain, guiltless, they shall receive the happiness of heaven as their reward (merit)." It seems to imply that if they shall be killed after slaying many of the enemy, they shall be born in heaven.

57 Or, "their relations and the aged." It is an obscure passage, but the allusion is probably to those who attend to the wounded or the bereaved.

58 There may be a reference to mourning for distant relatives, implying that this also shall be rewarded.

59 I.e., of hell, of famished demons, and of brutes.

60 The phrase ju kuei, "as re-
edict and summoned his braves. The two countries
engaged in conflict, and the dead bodies were heaped
together as sticks, and from that time till now the plains
are everywhere covered with their bones. As this relates
to a very remote period of time, the bones are very large
ones.\textsuperscript{61} The constant tradition of the country, therefore,
has called this "the field of religious merit" (or "happiness").

To the north-west of the city 4 or 5 li is a stūpa about
300 feet high, which was built by Asoka-rāja. The bricks
are all of a yellowish red colour, very bright and shining,
within is a peck measure of the relics of Buddha. From
the stūpa is frequently emitted a brilliant light, and many
spiritual prodigies exhibit themselves.

Going south of the city about 100 li, we come to a
convent called Ku-hwān-ch’ā (Gōkānta?).\textsuperscript{62} There are
here a succession of towers with overlapping storeys,\textsuperscript{63} with
intervals between them for walking (pacing). The priests
are virtuous and well-mannered, possessed of quiet
dignity.

Going from this north-east 400 li or so, we come to the
country of Su-lo-kin-na (Srughna).

\textbf{Su-lo-kin-na (Srughna).}

This country\textsuperscript{64} is about 6000 li in circuit. On the
eastern side it borders on the Ganges river, on the north

\textsuperscript{61} Lin māng = connected ridge-poles (?).
\textsuperscript{63} Hiuen Tsang reckons his dis-
tance from the capital as usual.

\textsuperscript{62} There is a Vedic legend about
Indra, who slew ninety times nine
Vṛtrás near this spot. The site of
Asthipur, or "bone-town," is still
pointed out in the plain to the west
of the city.—Cunningham, \textit{Geo.}, p.
336; \textit{Arch. Surv.}, vol. ii. p. 219.

\textsuperscript{64} This may also be restored to
Gōvinda.

The distance indicated from Sthánés-
vara in a north-east direction would
take us to Kālṣi, in the Jaunsār
district, on the east of Sirmur. Cun-
ingham places Srughna at Sugh, a
place about fifty miles north-east
from the Gōkānta monastery. Hwu-
lih makes the direction east instead
of north-east. Srughna, north of
Hāstinapura, is mentioned by
Panini (i. 3, 25; ii. 1, 14; schol.;
iv. 3, 25, 86), and by Varāha Mih-
Hall’s \textit{Vasavadatta}, in. p. 51. 1t
it is backed by great mountains. The river Yamunā (Chen-mu-na) flows through its frontiers. The capital is about 20 li in circuit, and is bounded on the east by the river Yamunā. It is deserted, although its foundations are still very strong. As to produce of soil and character of climate, this country resembles the kingdom of Sa-t'a-ni-shi-fa-lo (Sthânēśvara). The disposition of the people is sincere and truthful. They honour and have faith in heretical teaching, and they greatly esteem the pursuit of learning, but principally religious wisdom (or, the wisdom that brings happiness).

There are five saṅgharāmas with about 1000 priests; the greater number study the Little Vehicle; a few exercise themselves in other (exceptional) schools. They deliberate and discuss in appropriate language (choice words), and their clear discourses embody profound truth. Men of different regions of eminent skill discuss with them to satisfy their doubts. There are a hundred Deśa temples with very many sectaries (unbelievers).

To the south-west of the capital and west of the river Yamunā is a saṅgharāma, outside the eastern gate of which is a stūpa built by Asāka-rāja. The Tathāgata, when in the world in former days, preached the law in this place to convert men. By its side is another stūpa in which there are relics of the Tathāgata's hair and nails. Surrounding this on the right and left are stūpas enclosing the hair and nail relics of Sāriputra and of Mu-te-kia-lo (Maudgalyāyana) and other Arhats, several tens in number.

After Tathāgata had entered Nirvāṇa this country was the seat of heretical teaching. The faithful were per-

appears from Cunningham’s account of the pillar of Firuz Shāh, which was brought from a place called Topur or Topera, on the bank of the Jamnā, in the district of Salora, not far from Khizrābād, which is at the foot of the mountains, 90 kos from Dehli, which place Cunningham identifies with Paota, not far from Kālsī (Archaeol. Surv., vol. i. p. 166), that this neighbourhood was famous in olden days as a Buddhist locality. I think we should trust Huen Tsiang’s 400 li north-east from Sthānēśvara, and place the capital of Srughna at or near Kālsī, which Cunningham also includes in the district. Conf. Cunningham, Arch. Surv., vol. ii. pp. 220 ff.; Anc. Geogr., p. 345.
verted to false doctrine, and forsook the orthodox views. Now there are five saṅghārāmas in places where masters of treatises\(^{65}\) from different countries, holding controversies with the heretics and Brāhmans, prevailed; they were erected on this account.

On the east of the Yamunā, going about 800 li, we come to the Ganges river.\(^{66}\) The source of the river (or the river at its source) is 3 or 4 li wide; flowing south-east, it enters the sea, where it is 10 li and more in width. The water of the river is blue, like the ocean, and its waves are wide-rolling as the sea. The scaly monsters, though many, do no harm to men. The taste of the water is sweet and pleasant, and sands of extreme fineness\(^{67}\) border its course. In the common history of the country this river is called Fo-shwui, the river of religious merit,\(^{68}\) which can wash away countless\(^{69}\) sins. Those who are weary of life, if they end their days in it, are born to heaven and receive happiness. If a man dies and his bones are cast into the river, he cannot fall into an evil way; whilst he is carried by its waters and forgotten by men, his soul is preserved in safety on the other side (in the other world).

At a certain time there was a Bódhisattva of the island of Simhala (Chi-sse-tseu—Ceylon) called Dēva, who profoundly understood the relationship of truth\(^{70}\) and the nature of all composite things (fū).\(^{71}\) Moved with pity at

\(^{65}\) That is, Buddhist doctors or learned writers (writers of śāstras).
\(^{66}\) In Hwui-lih the text seems to require the route to be to the source of the Ganges. The distance of 800 li would favour this reading; but it is hard to understand how a river can be three or four li (three-quarters of a mile) wide at its source. See the accounts of Gaṅgādvāra, Gaṅgānti, or Gaṅgōтри, by Rennell, &c.
\(^{67}\) Hence the comparison so frequently met with in Buddhist books, "as numerous as the sands of the Ganges."

\(^{68}\) The Mahābhadra.
\(^{69}\) Heaped-up sin, or although heaped up: I do not think Julien's "quoiqu'on soit chargé de crimes" meets the sense of the original.
\(^{70}\) Or, all true relationship; the symbol sāṅg corresponds with lakṣaṇa; it might be translated, therefore, "all the marks of truth."
\(^{71}\) The symbol fū corresponds with dharma, which has a wide meaning, as in the well-known text, ye dharmāḥ hītā-prabhāra, &c.
the ignorance of men, he came to this country to guide and direct the people in the right way. At this time the men and women were all assembled with the young and old together on the banks of the river, whose waves rolled along with impetuosity. Then Dēva Bōdhisattva composing his supernatural appearance 72 bent his head and dispersed it (the rays of his glory?) again 73—his appearance different from that of other men. There was an unbeliever who said, “What does my son in altering thus his appearance?” 74

Dēva Bōdhisattva answered: “My father, mother, and relations dwell in the island of Ceylon. I fear lest they may be suffering from hunger and thirst; I desire to appease them from this distant spot.”

The heretic said: “You deceive yourself, my son; 75 have you no reflection to see how foolish such a thing is? Your country is far off, and separated by mountains and rivers of wide extent from this. To draw up this water and scatter it in order to quench the thirst of those far off, is like going backwards to seek a thing before you; it is a way never heard of before.” Then Dēva Bōdhisattva said: “If those who are kept for their sins in the dark regions of evil can reap the benefit of the water, why should it not reach those who are merely separated by mountains and rivers?”

Then the heretics, in presence of the difficulty, confessed themselves wrong, and, giving up their unbelief, received the true law. Changing their evil ways, they reformed themselves, and vowed to become his disciples. 76

72 His agreeable splendour, dipping up and drawing in.
73 This passage is obscure. Julien’s translation is as follows: “Dēva Bōdhisattva softened the brightness of his figure and wished to draw some water; but the moment he bent his head at that point the water receded in streams (en jaillissait).” It may be so; or it may refer to his miraculous appearance, drawing in and dispersing again the brightness of his figure. The subsequent part of the narrative, however, seems to denote that he “drew in” some water, and then scattered or dispersed it.
74 Literally, “My son! why this difficult, or wonderful (occurrence)?”
75 Or, “you deceive yourself, sir!” The expression ngo teeu seems to mean more than “doctor” or “sir.”
76 The history of Dēva Bōdhisattva is somewhat confusing. We know this much of him, that he was a disciple of Nāgārjuna, and his suc-
After crossing the river and going along the eastern side of it, we come to the country of Ma-ti-pu-lo (Matipura).

MA-TI-PU-LO (MATIPURA).

This country is about 6000 li in circuit; the capital is about 20 li. The soil is favourable for the growth of cereals, and there are many flowers and kinds of fruit. The climate is soft and mild. The people are sincere and truthful. They very much reverence learning, and are deeply versed in the use of charms and magic. The followers of truth and error are equally divided. The king belongs to the caste of the Śudras (Shu-t’o-lo). He is not a believer in the law of Buddha, but reverences and worships the spirits of heaven. There are about twenty sanghārāmas, with 800 priests. They mostly study the Little Vehicle and belong to the school of Sarvāstivādas (Shwo-i-tsie-yau). There are some fifty Dēva temples, in which men of different persuasions dwell promiscuously.

Four or five li to the south of the capital we come to a little sanghārāma having about fifty priests in it. In old time the master of sāstras called Kiu-na-po-

cessor as fourteenth (or according to others, fifteenth) patriarch. He is called Kanadēva, because, according to Vassilief (p. 219), he gave one of his eyes (kūna, “one-eyed”) to Mahēvāra, but more probably because he bored out (kūna, “perforated”) the eye of Mahēvāra. For this story see Wong Pūh, § 183 (J. R. As. Soc., vol. xx. p. 207), where the Chinese ts’ho answers to kūna. See Edkins, Chin. Buddh., pp. 77-79; Lassen, I. A., vol. ii. p. 1204. He is also called Aryadeva. According to others he is the same as Chandrakirtti (J. As. S. Ben., vol. vii. p. 144), but this cannot be the Chandrakirtti who followed the teaching of Buddhapālita (Vassilief, p. 207), for Buddhapālita composed commentaries on the works of Aryadeva (ibid.). It seems probable from the statement in the text that Dēva was a native of Ceylon. B. Nanjio says not (Catalogue, col. 370); but if not he evidently dwelt there. He was the author of numerous works, for a list of which see B. Nanjio (loc. cit.) He probably flourished towards the middle or end of the first century A.D.

77 Matipura has been identified with Madawar or Mundore, a large town in Western Rohilkand, near Bijnor (V. de St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 344; Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of India, p. 349). The people of this town were perhaps the Mathai of Megasthenes (Arrian, Indica, c. 4; Ind. Ant., vol. v. p. 332). 78 That is, the Buddhists and Brāhmaṇa, or other sectaries.
la-po (Guṇaprabha), 79 composed in this convent the treatise called Pin-chin, 80 and some hundred others. When young, this master of śāstras distinguished himself for his eminent talent, and when he grew up he stood alone in point of learning. He was well versed in knowledge of men (or things), was of sound understanding, full of learning, and widely celebrated. 81 Originally he was brought up in the study of the Great Vehicle, but before he had penetrated its deep principles he had occasion to study the Vibhāṣā Śāstra, on which he withdrew from his former work and attached himself to the Little Vehicle. He composed several tens of treatises to overthrow the Great Vehicle, and thus became a zealous partisan of the Little Vehicle school. Moreover, he composed several tens of secular books opposing and criticising the writings of former renowned teachers. He widely studied the sacred books of Buddha, but yet, though he studied deeply for a long time, there were yet some ten difficulties which he could not overcome in this school.

At this time there was an Arhat called Dēvasena, 82 who went once and again to the Tushita (Tu-shi-to) heaven. Guṇaprabha begged him to obtain for him an interview with Maitrêya in order to settle his doubts.

79 In Chinese, Têh knoung, “the brightness of virtue, or good qualities.”
80 Restored doubtfully by Julien to Tattva-vibhangha Śāstra (p. 220 n. 2), and by Eitel to Tattva-satya Śāstra (Handbook, sub voc. Guṇaprabha).
81 This expression, to-uen, may mean “celebrated,” or it may refer to Guṇaprabha when a young disciple. It is a phrase applied to Ananda before he arrived at enlightenment (see Catena of Buddhist Scrip., p. 289 and n. 2). It is also generally applied to Vaiśravana, as an explanation of his name “the celebrated” (compare πρεσβύτερος); and it is very probable that the story found in Buddhist books of Vaiśravana’s conversion and his consent to protect the Śrāvakas is simply the result of these names being derived from the same root, śru. The Chinese to-tean, when referred to a young disciple, is equal to the Sanskrit viśhakā, a learner (see Burnouf, Lotus, p. 295). Guṇaprabha is said by Vassiliev (Bouddhisme, p. 78) to have been a disciple of Vasubandhu, and to have lived at Mathurā in the Agrapura monastery: he was guru at the court of the king Śrī Harsha (doubtfully). Perhaps in this quotation Mathurā has been mistaken for Matipura, in which case the convent referred to in the text would be called Agrapura.
82 Ti-po-si-na, in Chinese Tien-kian, army of the gods.
Dêvasêna, by his miraculous power, transported him to the heavenly palace. Having seen Maitrêya (Tse-shi) Guṇaprabha bowed low to him, but paid him no worship. On this Dêvasêna said, “Maitrêya Bôdhisattva holds the next place in becoming a Buddha, why are you so self-conceited as not to pay him supreme reverence? If you wish to receive benefit (building up, edification) from him, why do you not fall down?”

Guṇaprabha replied: “Reverend sir! this advice is honest, and intended to lead me to right amendment; but I am an ordained Bhikshu, and have left the world as a disciple, whereas this Maitrêya Bôdhisattva is enjoying heavenly beatitude, and is no associate for one who has become an ascetic. I was about to offer him worship, but I feared it would not be right."

Bôdhisattva (Maitrêya) perceived that pride of self (ât-mamada) was bound up in his heart, so that he was not a vessel for instruction; and though he went and returned three times, he got no solution of his doubts. At length he begged Dêvasêna to take him again, and that he was ready to worship. But Dêvasêna, repelled by his pride of self, refused to answer him.

Guṇaprabha, not attaining his wish, was filled with hatred and resentment. He went forthwith into the desert apart, and practised the samâdhi called fa-tung (opening intelligence); but because he had not put away the pride of self, he could obtain no fruit.

To the north of the saṅghârâma of Guṇaprabha about three or four li is a great convent with some 200 disciples in it, who study the Little Vehicle. This is where Saṅghabhadrâ (Chung-hin), master of sâstras, died. He was a native of Kâsmîr, and was possessed of great ability and vast penetration. As a young man he was singularly accomplished, and had mastered throughout the Vîbhâshâ Sâstra (Pi-po-sha-lun) of the Sarvâstivâda school.

At this time Vasubandhu Bôdhisattva was living. He was seeking to explain that which it is beyond the power
of words to convey by the mysterious method (way) of profound meditation. With a view to overthrow the propositions of the masters of the Vībhāṣīka school, he composed the Abhidharma-kosha Śāstra. The form of his composition is clear and elegant, and his arguments are very subtle and lofty.

Sāṇghabhadrā having read this work, took his resolution accordingly. He devoted himself during twelve years to the most profound researches, and composed the Kin-shépao-hun (Ksharakakā Śāstra) in 25,000 slōkas, containing altogether 800,000 words. We may say that it is a work of the deepest research and most subtle principles. Addressing his disciples, he said, “Whilst I retire from sight, do you, distinguished disciples, take this my orthodox treatise and go attack Vasubandhu; break down his sharp-pointed arguments, and permit not this old man alone to assume the leading name.”

Thereupon three or four of the most distinguished of his disciples took the treatise he had composed, and went in search of Vasubandhu. At this time he was in the country of Chêka, in the town of Śākala, his fame being spread far and wide. And now Sāṇghabhadrā was coming there; Vasubandhu having heard it, forthwith ordered (his disciples) to prepare for removal (dress for travel). His disciples having (cherishing) some doubts, the most eminent of them began to remonstrate with him, and said, “The high qualities of our great master transcend those of former men of note, and at the present day your wisdom is far spread and acknowledged by all. Why, then, on hearing the name of Sāṇghabhadrā are you so fearful

83 Yih-sia, i.e., samādhi or dhyāna.
85 It will be seen that this translation differs from Julien’s, but I think it is in agreement with the text and context.
86 Sāṇghabhadrā could not have been the teacher of Vasubandhu, as Professor Max Müller thinks (India, pp 303 f., 309, 312). He is probably the same as Sāṇghadēsa, named by Vassiliev (Boudhaisme, p. 206).
87 For Chêka, see above, Book iv. p. 165 ante.
and timid? We, your disciples, are indeed humbled thereat.”

Vasubandhu answered, “I am going away not because I fear to meet this man (doctor), but because in this country there is no one of penetration enough to recognise the inferiority of Sanghabhadra. He would only vilify me as if my old age were a fault. There would be no holding him to the śāstra, or in one word I could overthrow his vagaries. Let us draw him to Mid-India, and there, in the presence of the eminent and wise, let us examine into the matter, and determine what is true and what is false, and who should be pronounced the victor or the loser.”

Forthwith he ordered his disciples to pack up their books, and to remove far away.

The master of śāstras, Sanghabhadra, the day after arriving at this convent, suddenly felt his powers of body (hi, vital spirits) fail him. On this he wrote a letter, and excused himself to Vasubandhu thus: “The Tathāgata having died, the different schools of his followers adopted and arranged their distinctive teaching; and each had its own disciples without hindrance. They favoured those of their own way of thinking; they rejected (persecuted) others. I, who possess but a weak understanding, unhappily inherited this custom from my predecessors, and coming to read your treatise called the Abhidharma-kōśa, written to overthrow the great principles of the masters of the Vihārīs’ school, abruptly, without measuring my strength, after many years’ study have produced this śāstra to uphold the teaching of the orthodox school. My wisdom indeed is little, my intentions great. My end is now approaching. If the Bûdhisattva (Vasubandhu), in spreading abroad his subtle maxims and disseminating his profound reasonings, will vouchsafe not to overthrow my production, but will let it remain whole and entire for posterity, then I shall not regret my death.”

It will be seen again that this translation differs materially from that of M. Julien.
Then, selecting from his followers one distinguished for his talents in speaking, he addressed him as follows: "I, who am but a scholar of poor ability, have aspired to surpass one of high natural talent. Wherefore, after my approaching death, do you take this letter which I have written, and my treatise also, and make my excuses to that Bôdhissattva, and assure him of my repentance."

After uttering these words he suddenly stopped, when one said, "He is dead!"

The disciple, taking the letter, went to the place where Vasubandhu was, and having come, he spoke thus: "My master, Sânghabhadra, has died; and his last words are contained in this letter, in which he blames himself for his faults, and in excusing himself to you asks you not to destroy his good name so that it dare not face the world."

Vasubandhu Bôdhissattva, reading the letter and looking through the book, was for a time lost in thought. Then at length he addressed the disciple and said: "Sânghabhadra, the writer of sâstras, was a clever and ingenious scholar (inferior scholar). His reasoning powers (lî), indeed, were not deep (enough), but his diction is somewhat (to the point)." If I had any desire to overthrow Sânghabhadra's sâstra, I could do so as easily as I place my finger in my hand. As to his dying request made to me, I greatly respect the expression of the difficulty he acknowledges. But besides that, there is great reason why I should observe his last wish, for indeed this sâstra may illustrate the doctrines of my school, and accordingly I will only change its name and call it Shun-ching-li-lun (Nyâyânusâra Sâstra)." The disciple remonstrating said, "Before Sânghabhadra's death the great master (Vasubandhu) had removed far away; but now he has obtained the sâstrâ, he proposes

---

89 Or it may be complimentary, "his phraseology or composition is exceptionally elegant."
90 In full—'O-pi-ta-mo-shun-chan-
to change the title; how shall we (the disciples of Saṅghabhādha) be able to suffer such an affront?"

Vasubandhu Bōdhisattva, wishing to remove all doubts, said in reply by verse: "Though the lion-king retires afar off before the pig, nevertheless the wise will know which of the two is best in strength." 91

Saṅghabhādha having died, they burnt his body and collected his bones, and in a stūpa attached to the saṅghārāma, 200 paces or so to the north-west, in a wood of Āmra 92 (An-mo-lo) trees, they are yet visible.

Beside the Āmra wood is a stūpa in which are relics of the bequeathed body of the master of śāstras Vimalamitra (Pi-mo-lo-mi-to-lo). 93 This master of śāstras was a man of Kāśmir. He became a disciple and attached himself to the Sarvāstivāda school. He had read a multitude of sūtras and investigated various śāstras; he travelled through the five Indies and made himself acquainted with the mysterious literature of the three Pūtakas. Having established a name and accomplished his work, being about to retire to his own country, on his way he passed near the stūpa of Saṅghabhādha, the master of śāstras. Putting his hand (on it), 94 he sighed and said, "This master was truly distinguished, his views pure and eminent. After having spread abroad the great principles (of his faith), he purposed to overthrow those of other schools and lay firmly the fabric of his own. Why then should his fame not be eternal? I, Vimalamitra, foolish as I am, have received at various times the knowledge of the deep principles of his departed wisdom; his distinguished qualities have been cherished through successive generations. Vasubandhu, though dead, yet lives in the tradition of the school. That which I know so perfectly (ought to be preserved). I will write, then, such śāstras as will cause the learned men of Jambudvīpa to

---

91 From the Jātaka of the lion and the pig who rolled himself in filth. Fausböll, Ten Jātakas, p. 65.
92 In Chinese, Wou hau yau, "spotless friend."
93 Mango trees—Mangifera indica.
94 "On his heart."—Julien.
forget the name of the Great Vehicle and destroy the fame of Vasubandhu. This will be an immortal work, and will be the accomplishment of my long-meditated design."

Having finished these words, his mind became confused and wild; his boastful tongue heavily protruded, whilst the hot blood flowed forth. Knowing that his end was approaching, he wrote the following letter to signify his repentance:—"The doctrines of the Great Vehicle in the law of Buddha contain the final principles. Its renown may fade, but its depth of reason is inscrutable. I foolishly dared to attack its distinguished teachers. The reward of my works is plain to all. It is for this I die. Let me address men of wisdom, who may learn from my example to guard well their thoughts, and not give way to the encouragement of doubts." Then the great earth shook again as he gave up life. In the place where he died the earth opened, and there was produced a great ditch. His disciples burnt his body, collected his bones, and raised over them (a stūpa). At this time there was an Arhat who, having witnessed his death, sighed and exclaimed, "What unhappiness! what suffering! To-day this master of śāstras yielding to his feelings and maintaining his own views, abusing the Great Vehicle, has fallen into the deepest hell (Aśvīchi)!

On the north-west frontier of this country, on the eastern shore of the river Ganges, is the town of Mo-yu-lo; it is about 20 li in circuit. The inhabitants are very numerous. The pure streams of the river flow round it on every side; it produces native copper (teou shih), pure crystal, and precious vases. Not far from the town, the text has "five tongues;"

possibly the symbol seu, five, is for seu, loquacious or bragging.

This may also be rendered, "the masters who teach the doctrines of the Great Vehicle declare the final (highest) principles of the law of Buddha."

There is no word for stūpa in the original.

That is Mayāpura, or Hari-dwāra. It is now on the western bank of the Ganges. Julien makes it Mayūra.
and standing by the Ganges river, is a great Dēva temple, where very many miracles of divers sorts are wrought. In the midst of it is a tank, of which the borders are made of stone joined skilfully together. Through it the Ganges river is led by an artificial canal. The men of the five Indies call it "the gate of the Gaṅgā river." This is where religious merit is found and sin effaced. There are always hundreds and thousands of people gathered together here from distant quarters to bathe and wash in its waters. Benevolent kings have founded here "a house of merit" (Punyasālā). This foundation is endowed with funds for providing choice food and medicines to bestow in charity on widows and bereaved persons, on orphans and the destitute.

Going north from this 300 li or so, we come to P'ō-lo-hih-mo-pu-lo country (Brahmapura).

P'ō-lo-hih-mo-pu-lo (Brahmapura).

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit, and surrounded on all sides by mountains. The chief town is about 20 li round. It is thickly populated, and the householders are rich. The soil is rich and fertile; the lands are sown and reaped in their seasons. The country produces teou-shih (native copper) and rock crystal. The climate is rather cold; the people are hardy and uncultivated. Few of the people attend to literature—most of them are engaged in commerce.

The disposition of the men is of a savage kind. There are heretics mixed with believers in Buddha. There are five saṅghārāmas, which contain a few priests. There are ten Dēva temples, in which persons of different opinions dwell together.

This country is bounded on the north by the great

---

99 Gaṅgādāra. The canal still exists; the present name, Hari-dwāra, means the gate of Hari or Vishnu; this is a comparatively modern name (Cunningham, p. 353).

100 Cunningham identifies Brahmapura with British Garhwal and Kumāun (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 356).
Snowy Mountains, in the midst of which is the country called Su-fa-la-na-kiu-ta-lo (Suvarṇagōtra). From this country comes a superior sort of gold, and hence the name. It is extended from east to west, and contracted from north to south. It is the same as the country of the "eastern women." For ages a woman has been the ruler, and so it is called the kingdom of the women. The husband of the reigning woman is called king, but he knows nothing about the affairs of the state. The men manage the wars and sow the land, and that is all. The land produces winter wheat and much cattle, sheep, and horses. The climate is extremely cold (icy). The people are hasty and impetuous.

On the eastern side this country is bordered by the Fan kingdom (Tibet), on the west by San-po-ho (Sampaha or Malasa (?)), on the north by Khotan.

Going south-east from Ma-ti-pu-lo 400 li or so, we come to the country of Kiu-pi-shwong-na.

**KIU-PI-SHWONG-NA (GOVIśANA).**

This kingdom is about 2000 li in circuit, and the capital about 14 or 15 li. It is naturally strong, being fenced in with crags and precipices. The population is numerous. We find on every side flowers, and groves, and lakes (ponds) succeeding each other in regular order. The climate and the products resemble those of Mo-ti-pu-lo. The manners of the people are pure and honest. They

---

101 In Chinese Kiu-shi, "golden people." Below it is said that San-po-ho was limited on the west by Su-fa-la-na-kiu-to-lo (Suvarṇagōtra, called also the kingdom of women), which itself touched on the east the country of T'u-fan (Tibet), and on the north the kingdom of Yu-tien (Khotan). Suvarṇagōtra is here placed on the frontier of Brahmāpura.

102 There is a country of the "western women" named by Huen Ts'iang in Book xi. See also Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. ii. p. 397.

103 Julien restores this to Goviśana. Cunningham is satisfied that the old fort near the village of Ujain represents the ancient city of Goviśana. This village is just one mile to the east of Kāśipur. Hwui-lih does not mention this country, but reckons 400 li from Matipura to Ahiśkāṭra in a south-easterly direction. This distance and bearing are nearly correct.
are diligent in study and given to good works. There are many believers in false doctrine, who seek present happiness only. There are two saṅghārāmas and about 100 priests, who mostly study the Little Vehicle. There are thirty Dēva temples with different sectaries, who congregate together without distinction.

Beside the chief town is an old saṅghārāma in which is a stūpa built by King Aśoka. It is about 200 feet high; here Buddha, when living, preached for a month on the most essential points of religion. By the side is a place where there are traces of the four past Buddhas, who sat and walked here. At the side of this place are two small stūpas containing the hair and nail-parings of Tathāgata. They are about 10 feet high.

Going from this south-east about 400 li, we come to the country of 'O-hi-chi-ta-lo (Ahikshētra).

'O-HI-CHI-TA-LO (AHIKSHĒTRA).

This country is about 3000 li in circuit, and the capital about 17 or 18 li. It is naturally strong, being flanked by mountain crags. It produces wheat, and there are many woods and fountains. The climate is soft and agreeable, and the people sincere and truthful. They love religion, and apply themselves to learning. They are clever and well informed. There are about ten saṅghā-
rāmas, and some 1000 priests who study the Little Vehicle of the Ching-liang school.

There are some nine Dēva temples with 300 sectaries. They sacrifice to Íśvara, and belong to the company of "ashes-sprinklers" (Pāsūpatas).

Outside the chief town is a Nāga tank, by the side of which is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rūja. It was here the

104 Ahikshētra, Ahikshatra, or Ahichchhatra, a place named in the Mahābhārata, i. 5515, 6348; Hari-
rasuśūla, 1114; Pāṇini, iii. 1, 7. It was the capital of North Pāṇchāla or Rohilkhārāj. Lassen, l.c. Alt., vol. i. p. 747; Wilson's Visk.-pur. (Hall’s ed.), vol. ii. p. 161.
105 In the text wuáng is a mistake for ching, but the school is properly the Sāṇhāmatiya school.
Tathāgata, when in the world, preached the law for the sake of a Nāga-rāja for seven days.\(^{106}\) By the side of it are four little stūpas; here are traces where, in days gone by, the four past Buddhas sat and walked.

From this going south 260 or 270 li, and crossing the Ganges river, proceeding then in a south-west direction, we come to Pi-lo-shan-na (Virasana) country.

**Pi-lo-shan-na (Virasana ?)**

This country\(^{107}\) is about 2000 li in circuit. The capital town about 10 li. The climate and produce are the same as those of Ahikshētra. The habits of the people are violent and headstrong. They are given to study and the arts. They are chiefly heretics (attached in faith to heresy); there are a few who believe in the law of Buddha. There are two saṅghārāmas with about 300 priests, who attach themselves to the study of the Great Vehicle. There are five Dēva temples occupied by sectaries of different persuasions.

In the middle of the chief city is an old saṅghārama, within which is a stūpa, which, although in ruins, is still rather more than 100 feet high. It was built by Aśoka-rāja. Tathāgata, when in the world in old days, preached here for seven days on the Wen-kīā-chi-kīng (Skandhā-dhātu-upasthāna Sūtra ?).\(^{108}\) By the side of it are the

---

106. The old story connected with this place was that Rāja Adi was found by Drōna sleeping under the guardianship of a serpent, hence the name Ahi-chhata (serpent canopy). This story was probably appropriated by the Buddhists. For a full account of this place and its present condition, see Cunningham, *Archaeol. Survey of India*, vol. i. p. 259 ff.

107. Restored (doubtfully) by Julien to Virasana. General Cunningham identifies it (conjecturally) with a great mound of ruins called Atraṇjīkhāra, four miles to the south of Karsāna. Hsiian Tsang probably crossed the Ganges near Sahāwar, a few miles from Soron: this appears to answer to the distance of 260 or 270 li—about 50 miles. General Cunningham says 23 to 25 miles, but on his Map x. the distance is 50 miles.

108. Julien (p. 236, n. 1) renders this literally “one who dwells in the world called Ouen-kīai;” but wen-kīai represents skandha-dhātu, and chu is the Chinese symbol for upasthāna.
traces where the four former Buddhas sat and walked in exercise.

Going hence south-east 200 li or so, we come to the country of Kie-pi-tha (Kapitha).  

KIE-PI-THA (KAPITHA).

This country is about 2000 li in circuit, and the capital 20 li or so. The climate and produce resemble those of Pi-lo-shan-na. The manners of the people are soft and agreeable. The men are much given to learning. There are four saṅghārāmas with about 1000 priests, who study the Ching-liang (Sāmmatiya) school of the Little Vehicle. There are ten Dēva temples, where sectaries of all persuasions dwell. They all honour and sacrifice to Mahēśvara (Ta-ṭseu-t'sai-tien).

To the east of the city 20 li or so is a great saṅghārāma of beautiful construction, throughout which the artist has exhibited his greatest skill. The sacred image of the holy form (of Buddha) is most wonderfully magnificent. There are about 100 priests here, who study the doctrines of the Sāmmatiya (Ching-liang) school. Several myriads of “pure men” (religious laymen) live by the side of this convent.

Within the great enclosure of the saṅghārāma there are three precious ladders, which are arranged side by side from north to south, with their faces for descent to the east. This is where Tathāgata came down on his return from the Trayāstrimśas heaven. In old days Tathāgata, going up from the “wood of the conqueror” (Shing-lin, Jētavana), varāha Mihira was probably educated at Kapitha.

109 Written formerly Stīng-kia-shē Saṅkāśya.

110 This corresponds with the present Saṅkisa, the site of which was discovered by General Cunningham in 1842. It is just 40 miles (200 li) south-east of Atrañjī. The name of Kapitha has entirely disappeared, although there is a trace of it in a story referred to in Arch. Surv. of India, vol. i. p. 271, n. Dr. Kern thinks that the astronomer Varāha Mihira was probably educated at Kapitha.

111 I translate ντρ by “sacrifice,” because of the curious analogy with words of the same meaning used in this sense in other languages (compare the Greek νοεω; Lat. sacrificare; Sansk. kṣāya, &c.) It may mean simply “to worship” or “serve.”

112 This story of Buddha’s descent from heaven is a popular one among
ascended to the heavenly mansions, and dwelt in the Saddharma Hall, preaching the law for the sake of his mother. Three months having elapsed, being desirous to descend to earth, Śakra, king of the Dèvas, exercising his spiritual power, erected these precious ladders. The middle one was of yellow gold, the left-hand one of pure crystal, the right-hand one of white silver.

Tathāgata rising from the Saddharma hall, accompanied by a multitude of Dèvas, descended by the middle ladder. Māha-Brahmā-rāja (Fan), holding a white chañma, came down by the white ladder on the right, whilst Śakra (Shi), king of Dèvas (Dēvēndra), holding a precious canopy (parasol), descended by the crystal ladder on the left. Meanwhile the company of Dèvas in the air scattered flowers and chanted their praises in his honour. Some centuries ago the ladders still existed in their original position, but now they have sunk into the earth and have disappeared. The neighbouring princes, grieved at not having seen them, built up of bricks and chased stones ornamented with jewels, on the ancient foundations (three ladders) resembling the old ones. They are about 70 feet high. Above them they have built a vihāra in which is a stone image of Buddha, and on either side of this is a ladder with the figures of Brahmā and Śakra, just as they appeared when first rising to accompany Buddha in his descent.

On the outside of the vihāra, but close by its side, there is a stone column about 70 feet high which was erected by Asoka-rāja (Wu-yeu). It is of a purple colour, and shining as if with moisture. The substance is hard and finely grained. Above it is a lion sitting on its haunches, and

Buddhists. It is described by Fabian (cap. xvi.), and is represented in the sculptures at Sāñchi, Tree and Serp. Wor. pl. xxvii. fig. 3, and Bharhat, Stāpa of Bharhat, pl. xvii. See Journ. R. As. Soc., N o, vol. v. pp. 164 ff. For the Trayastrimśas, see Burnell, Introd. p. 541, and Lotus, pp. 219, 249, 279.

113 That is, the preaching hall used by Śakra and the gods of the “thirty-three heaven” for religious purposes.

114 Ts'en ku, “sitting in a squatting position.” This expression is
facing the ladder. There are carved figures inlaid,\textsuperscript{113} of wonderful execution, on the four sides of the pillar and around it. As men are good or bad these figures appear on the pillar (or disappear).

Beside the precious ladder (temple), and not far from it, is a stūpa where there are traces left of the four past Buddhas, who sat and walked here.

By the side of it is another stūpa. This is where Tathāgata, when in the world, bathed himself. By the side of this is a vihāra on the spot where Tathāgata entered Samādhi. By the side of the vihāra there is a long foundation wall 50 paces in length and 7 feet high; this is the place where Tathāgata took exercise.\textsuperscript{116} On the spots where his feet trod are figures of the lotus flower. On the right and left of the wall are (two) little stūpas, erected by Śakra and Brahmā-rāja.

In front of the stūpas of Śakra and Brahmā is the place where Utpalavarnā (Lin-hwa-sih) the Bhikshunī,\textsuperscript{117} wishing to be the first to see Buddha, was changed into a Chakravartin-rāja when Tathāgata was returning from the palace of Īśvara Dēva to Jambudvīpa. At this time Subhūtī (Su-pu-ti),\textsuperscript{118} quietly seated in his stone cell, thought thus with himself: "Now Buddha is returning down to dwell with men—angels lead and attend him. And now why should I go to the place? Have I not heard him declare that all existing things are void of reality? Since this is the nature of all things, I have already seen with

rendered by Julien "lying down" (couchant), but it appears to mean "sitting on his heels or haunches;" but in either case the position of the animal would differ from that of the standing elephant discovered by General Cunningham at Saṅkisa (Arch. Survey, vol. i. p. 278).

\textsuperscript{115} Teau loc, vid. Med. sub loc.

\textsuperscript{116} There was a similar stone path at Nālandā with lotus flowers carved on it. (See I-taing and Jour. R. As. &c., N.S., vol. xiii. p. 571).

\textsuperscript{117} The restoration to Utpalavarnā is confirmed by Fa-hian's account (c. xvii.) Julien had first Pundarikavarnā, which he afterwards altered to Padmavati.

\textsuperscript{118} Subhūtī is the representative of the later idealism of the Buddhist creed. He is the mouthpiece for arguments put forth in the Prājñā Pāramita works (the Vajracchedikā), to show that all things are unreal, the body of the law (dharmakāya) being the only reality.
my eyes of wisdom the spiritual (fā) body of Bud-
dhā." 19

At this time Utpalavarnā Bhikshunti, being anxious to
be the first to see Buddha, was changed into a Chakra-
vartin monarch, with the seven gems 120 (ratnāṅā) accom-
panying her, and with the four kinds of troops to escort
and defend her. Coming to the place where the lord of
the world was, she reassumed her form as a Bhikshunti,
on which Tathāgata addressed her and said: "You are
not the first to see me! Subhūti (Chen-hien), compre-
hending the emptiness of all things, he has beheld my
spiritual body (dharmakāya)." 121

Within the precinct of the sacred traces miracles are
constantly exhibited.

To the south-east of the great stūpa is a Nāga tank.
He defends the sacred traces with care, and being thus
spiritually protected, one cannot regard them lightly.
Years may effect their destruction, but no human power
can do so. Going north-west from this less that 200 li,
we come to the kingdom of Kie-po-kio-she (Kanyā-
kubja).

119 This differs somewhat from
Julien's version. He gives "je me
suis attaché à la nature de toutes
les lois;" but it appears to me that
the construction is chu-fā-sin-y-shi,
"the nature of things (fā—dharma)
being thus (shi), therefore I have
already seen," &c.

120 For the Seven Precious Things
belonging to a wheel king, see
Sénart, La Legende du Buddha,
c. 1.
121 For an account of the three
bodies of all the Buddhas, see J. R.
BOOK V.

Contains the following countries:—(1) Kie-jo-kio-she-kwô; (2) 'O-yu-lo; (3) 'O-ye-mu-k'ie; (4) Po-lo-ye-kia; (5) Kiao-shang-nî; (6) Pisu-kia.

KIE-JO-KIO-SHE-KWÔ (KANYÁKUBJA).

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit; the capital, on the west, borders on the river Ganges. It is about 20 li in length and 4 or 5 li in breadth. The city has a dry ditch round it, with strong and lofty towers facing one another. The flowers and woods, the lakes and ponds, bright and pure and shining like mirrors, (are seen on every side). Valuable merchandise is collected here in great quantities. The people are well off and contented, the houses are rich and well found. Flowers and fruits abound in every place, and the land is sown and reaped in due seasons. The climate is agreeable and soft, the manners

1 The capital, Kanyákubja (Kie-jo-kio-she-kwô), now called Kanauj. The distance from Kapitha or Sañkisa is given by Hiuen Tsang as somewhat less than 200 li, and the bearing north-west. There is a mistake here, as the bearing is south-east, and the distance somewhat less than 300 li. Kanauj was for many hundred years the Hindu capital of Northern India, but the existing remains are few and unimportant. Kanauj is mentioned by Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 2, 22), who calls it Karóyía. The modern town occupies only the north end of the site of the old city, including the whole of what is now called the Kilah or citadel (Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of Ind., p. 380). This is probably the part alluded to by Hiuen Tsang in the context. It is triangular in shape, and each side is covered by a ditch or a dry nala, as stated in the text. Fa-hian places Kanauj 7 yojanas south-east of Sañkisa.

2 That is, borders or lies near the western bank of the Ganges. Julien translates it, "is near the Ganges."

3 The reference seems to be to the inner or fortified portion (citadel) of the capital city. Julien translates as if it referred to all the cities. The symbol k'uang means "a dry ditch."

4 Or the ponds only.
of the people honest and sincere. They are noble and gracious in appearance. For clothing they use ornamented and bright-shining (fabrics). They apply themselves much to learning, and in their travels are very much given to discussion⁶ (on religious subjects). (The fame of) their pure language is far spread. The believers in Buddha and the heretics are about equal in number. There are some hundred saṅghārāmas with 10,000 priests. They study both the Great and Little Vehicle. There are 200 Dēva temples with several thousand followers.

The old capital of Kanyākubja, where men lived for a long time, was called Kusumapura.⁶ The king’s name was Brahmadatta.⁷ His religious merit and wisdom in former births entailed on him the inheritance of a literary and military character that caused his name to be widely reverenced and feared. The whole of Jambudvipa resounded with his fame, and the neighbouring provinces were filled with the knowledge of it. He had 1000 sons famed for wisdom and courage, and 100 daughters of singular grace and beauty.

At this time there was a Rishi living on the border of the Ganges river, who, having entered a condition of ecstasy, by his spiritual power passed several myriad of years in this condition, until his form became like a decayed tree. Now it happened that some wandering birds having assembled in a flock near this spot, one of them let drop on the shoulder (of the Rishi) a Nyagrōḍha (Nî-ku-liu) fruit, which grew up, and through summer and winter afforded him a welcome protection and shade. After a succession of years he awoke from his ecstasy. He arose and desired to get rid of the tree, but feared to injure the nests of the birds in it. The men of the time,

---

⁵ This passage, which is confused, seems to refer to their going about here and there to discuss questions relating to religion. The purity of their discourses, i.e., the clearness of their arguments, is wide-spread or renowned.
⁶ Keu-su-mo-pu-jo, in Chinese Hwa-kung, flower palace.
⁷ In Chinese Fan-shen, “Brahma-given.”
extolling his virtue, called him "The great-tree (Mahâ-vrîksha) Rîshi." The Rîshi gazing once on the river-bank as he wandered forth to behold the woods and trees, saw the daughters of the king following one another and gambolling together. Then the love of the world (the world of desire—Kâmadhûtu), which holds and pollutes the mind, was engendered in him. Immediately he went to Kusumapura for the purpose of paying his salutations to the king and asking (for his daughter).

The king, hearing of the arrival of the Rîshi, went himself to meet and salute him, and thus addressed him graciously: "Great Rîshi! you were reposing in peace—what has disturbed you?" The Rîshi answered, "After having reposed in the forest many years, on awaking from my trance, in walking to and fro I saw the king's daughters; a polluted and lustful heart was produced in me, and now I have come from far to request (one of your daughters in marriage).

The king hearing this, and seeing no way to escape, said to the Rîshi, "Go back to your place and rest, and let me beg you to await the happy period." The Rîshi, hearing the mandate, returned to the forest. The king then asked his daughters in succession, but none of them consented to be given in marriage.

The king, fearing the power of the Rîshi, was much grieved and afflicted thereat. And now the youngest daughter of the king, watching an opportunity when the king was at liberty, with an engaging manner said, "The king, my father, has his thousand sons, and on every side his dependents are reverently obedient. Why, then, are you sad as if you were afraid of something?"

The king replied, "The great-tree-Rîshi has been pleased to look down on you to seek a marriage with one of you,

---

8 Or it may be rendered, "What outward matter has been able to excite for a while the composed passions of the great Rishi?" It does not seem probable that the king was acquainted with the Rishi's intention; he could not, therefore, use the words as if expostulating with him.

9 His ten thousand kingdoms.

10 That is, on the daughters generally.
and you have all turned away and not consented to comply with his request. Now this Rishi possesses great power, and is able to bring either calamities or good fortune. If he is thwarted he will be exceedingly angry, and in his displeasure destroy my kingdom, and put an end to our religious worship, and bring disgrace on me and my ancestors. As I consider this unhappiness indeed I have much anxiety."

The girl-daughter replied, "Dismiss your heavy grief; ours is the fault. Let me, I pray, in my poor person promote the prosperity of the country."

The king, hearing her words, was overjoyed, and ordered his chariot to accompany her with gifts to her marriage. Having arrived at the hermitage of the Rishi, he offered his respectful greetings and said, "Great Rishi! since you condescended to fix your mind on external things and to regard the world with complacency, I venture to offer you my young daughter to cherish and provide for you (water and sweep)." The Rishi, looking at her, was displeased, and said to the king, "You despise my old age, surely, in offering me this ungainly thing."

The king said, "I asked all my daughters in succession, but they were unwilling to comply with your request: this little one alone offered to serve you."

The Rishi was extremely angry, and uttered this curse (evil charm), saying, "Let the ninety-nine girls (who refused me) this moment become hump-backed; being thus deformed, they will find no one to marry them in all the world." The king, having sent a messenger in haste, found that already they had become deformed. From this time the town had this other name of the Kuíh-niú-shíng (Kanyákubja), i.e., "city of the humped-backed women." 11

The reigning king is of the Vaiśya 12 caste. His name

---

11 The Purāṇas refer this story to the curse of the sage Vaya on the hundred daughters of Kusanābha.

12 Vaiśya is here, perhaps, the name of a Rājput clan (Bais or Vaisa), not the mercantile class or
is Harshavardhana (Ho-li-sha-fa-t'an-na). A commission of officers hold the land. During two generations there have been three kings. (The king's) father was called Po-lo-kie-lo-fa-t'an-na (Prabhâkaravardhana); his elder brother's name was Râjyavardhana (Ho-lo-sha-fa-t'an-na).

Râjyavardhana came to the throne as the elder brother, and ruled with virtue. At this time the king of Karṇasuvarna (Kie-lo-na-su-fa-la-na), a kingdom of Eastern India—whose name was Śaśāṅka (She-shang-kia), frequently addressed his ministers in these words: "If a frontier country has a virtuous ruler, this is the unhappiness of the (mother) kingdom." On this they asked the king to a conference and murdered him.

The people having lost their ruler, the country became desolate. Then the great minister Po-ni (Bhanḍi), whose caste among the Hindus (Cunningham, op. cit., p. 377). Baiswâra, the country of the Bais Rajputs, extends from the neighbourhood of Lakhnau to Khara-Mânikpur, and thus comprises nearly the whole of Southern Oudh (ib.).


14 In Chinese, Tse kwong, to cause brightness. The symbol p'o is omitted in the text.

15 In Chinese, Wang tsang, kingly increase.


17 In Chinese. Yueh, the moon. This was Śaśāṅka Narândragupta, king of Gauḍa or Bengal.

18 Julien restores Po-ni to Bân. In Chinese it is equal to Pin-liu, "distinguished." Bâna, the well-known author of the Harshacharita, informs us that his name was Bhanḍin. He is referred to in the preface to Boyd's Nyâyânanda. I-tsing relates that Śilāditya kept all the best writers, especially poets, at his court, and that he (the king) used to join in the literary recitals; among the rest that he would assume the part of Jimûtavâhana Bôdhisattva, and transform himself into a Nâga amid the sound of song and instrumental music. Nan hae, § 32, k. iv. p. 6. Nîlmûtavâhana (Shîng yun, "cloud chariot") is the hero of the Nyâyânanda. The king Sri Harshâdeva, therefore, who is mentioned.
power and reputation were high and of much weight, addressing the assembled ministers, said, "The destiny of the nation is to be fixed to-day. The old king's son is dead: the brother of the prince, however, is humane and affectionate, and his disposition, heaven-conferred, is dutiful and obedient. Because he is strongly attached to his family, the people will trust in him. I propose that he assume the royal authority: let each one give his opinion on this matter, whatever he thinks." They were all agreed on this point, and acknowledged his conspicuous qualities.

On this the chief ministers and the magistrates all exhorted him to take authority, saying, "Let the royal prince attend! The accumulated merit and the conspicuous virtue of the former king were so illustrious as to cause his kingdom to be most happily governed. When he was followed by Rājyavardhana we thought he would end his years (as king); but owing to the fault of his ministers, he was led to subject his person to the hand of his enemy, and the kingdom has suffered a great affliction; but it is the fault of your ministers. The opinion of the people, as shown in their songs, proves their real submission to your eminent qualities. Reign, then, with glory over the land; conquer the enemies of your family; wash out the insult laid on your kingdom and the deeds of your illustrious father. Great will your merit be in such a case. We pray you reject not our prayer."

The prince replied, "The government of a country is a responsible office and ever attended with difficulties. The duties of a prince require previous consideration. As for myself, I am indeed of small eminence; but as my father

---

As the author both of the Ratnāvalī and the Nāgānanda, is Silāditya of Kanauj; and I-tsing has left us the notice that this king himself took the part of the hero during the performance of the Nāgānanda. The real author, however, Professor Cowell thinks, was Dhāvaka, one of the poets residing at the court of Śrī Harsha, whilst Bāna composed the Ratnāvalī. The Jātakamālā was also the work of the poets of Śrī Harsha's court. Abstr., &c., p. 197.
and brother are no more, to reject the heritage of the crown, that can bring no benefit to the people. I must attend to the opinion of the world and forget my own insufficiency. Now, therefore, on the banks of the Ganges there is a statue of Avalokiteśvara Boddhisattva which has evidenced many spiritual wonders. I will go to it and ask advice (request a response).” Fortwith, coming to the spot where the figure of the Boddhisattva was, he remained before it fasting and praying. The Boddhisattva recognising his sincere intention (heart), appeared in a bodily form and inquired, “What do you seek that you are so earnest in your supplications?” The prince answered, “I have suffered under a load of affliction. My dear father, indeed, is dead, who was full of kindness; and my brother, humane and gentle as he was, has been odiously murdered. In the presence of these calamities I humble myself as one of little virtue; nevertheless, the people would exalt me to the royal dignity, to fill the high place of my illustrious father. Yet I am, indeed, but ignorant and foolish. In my trouble I ask the holy direction (of the Boddhisattva).”

The Boddhisattva replied, “In your former existence you lived in this forest as a hermit (a forest mendicant), and by your earnest diligence and unremitting attention you inherited a power of religious merit which resulted in your birth as a king’s son. The king of the country, Karnasuvrana, has overturned the law of Buddha. Now when you succeed to the royal estate, you should in the same proportion exercise towards it the utmost love and pity. If you give your mind to compassionate the condition of the distressed and to cherish them, then before long you shall rule over the Five Indies. If you would establish your authority, attend to my instruction, and by my

19 “A forest mendicant” is the translation of Ara ya Bhikshu (lсан-gyо-pi-tа'u). It would appear from the text that the place where this statue of Avalokiteśvara stood was a wild or desert spot near the Ganges.

20 So I understand the passage as relating to a corresponding favour to the law of Buddha, in return for the persecution of Śaśāṅka.
secret power you shall receive additional enlightenment, so that not one of your neighbours shall be able to triumph over you. Ascend not the lion-throne, and call not yourself Mahārāja.”

Having received these instructions, he departed and assumed the royal office. He called himself the King’s Son (Kumāra); his title was Śilāditya. And now he commanded his ministers, saying, “The enemies of my brother are unpunished as yet, the neighbouring countries not brought to submission; while this is so my right hand shall never lift food to my mouth. Therefore do you, people and officers, unite with one heart and put out your strength.” Accordingly they assembled all the soldiers of the kingdom, summoned the masters of arms (champions, or, teachers of the art of fighting). They had a body of 5000 elephants, a body of 2000 cavalry, and 50,000 foot-soldiers. He went from east to west subduing all who were not obedient; the elephants were not unharnessed nor the soldiers unbelted (unhelmeted). After six years he had subdued the Five Indies. Having thus enlarged his territory, he increased his forces; he had 60,000 war elephants and 100,000 cavalry. After thirty years his arms reposed, and he governed everywhere in peace. He then

---

21 This appears to be the advice or direction given oracally (see Jour. R. As. Soc., N.S., vol. xv. p. 334)—

fi shing see tso che tso
fi ching ta wang che ho.

The promise is, that if this advice is followed, then, “by my mysterious energy (or, in the darkness), shall be added the benefit (happiness) of light, so that in the neighbouring kingdoms there shall be no one strong enough to resist (your arms).” Śilāditya did, in fact, conquer the whole of North India, and was only checked in the south by Pulikēśi (the Pulikēśi of Hiuen Tsiang, book xi. in-fra), whose title appears to have been Paramēśvara, given him on account of his victory over Śilāditya. (See Cunningham, Arch. Surv., vol. i. p. 281; Ind. Ant., vol. vii. pp. 164, 219, &c.) I may here perhaps observe that I-tsing, the Chinese pilgrim, notices his own visit to a great lord of Eastern India called Jih-yueh-kun, i.e., Chandrāditya rājabhṛitya (kṣan); this is probably the Chandrāditya, elder brother of Vikramāditya, the grandson of Pulakēśi Vallabha, the conqueror of Śri Harsha Śilāditya (vid. Jour. R. As. Soc., N.S., vol. i. p. 260; and Ind. Ant., vol. vii. pp. 163, 219; I-tsing, Nan hae, k. iv. fol. 5 b, and k. iv. fol. 12 a). I-tsing mentions that Chandrāditya was a poet who had versified the Vessantara Jātaka.
practised to the utmost the rules of temperance, and sought to plant the tree of religious merit to such an extent that he forgot to sleep or to eat. He forbade the slaughter of any living thing or flesh as food throughout the Five Indies on pain of death without pardon. He built on the banks of the river Ganges several thousand stūpas, each about 100 feet high; in all the highways of the towns and villages throughout India he erected hospices, provided with food and drink, and stationed there physicians, with medicines for travellers and poor persons round about, to be given without any stint. On all spots where there were holy traces (of Buddha) he raised saṅghārāmas.

Once in five years he held the great assembly called Māksa. He emptied his treasuries to give all away in charity, only reserving the soldiers’ arms, which were unfit to give as alms. Every year he assembled the Śramaṇas from all countries, and on the third and seventh days he bestowed on them in charity the four kinds of alms (viz., food, drink, medicine, clothing). He decorated the throne of the law (the pulpit) and extensively ornamented (arranged) the oratories. He ordered the priests to carry on discussions, and himself judged of their several arguments, whether they were weak or powerful. He rewarded the good and punished the wicked, degraded the evil and promoted the men of talent. If any one (of the priests) walked according to the moral precepts, and was distinguished in addition for purity in religion (reason), he himself conducted such an one to “the lion-throne” and received from him the precepts of the law. If any one, though distinguished for purity of life, had no distinction

22 Temperate restrictions; but hēn is difficult in this sense.

23 Punyasālās — Tsing-lec, pure lodging houses, or choultries.

24 There is an error in the text, as pointed out by Julien, n. 2. The text may mean he placed in these buildings “doctor’s medicines,” or “physicians and medicines.”

25 The expression in the text is Tan-she, which, as Julien has observed, is a hybrid term for giving away in dīna, or charity.

26 The expression may refer to mats or seats for discussion or for religious services.
for learning, he was reverenced, but not highly honoured. If any one disregarded the rules of morality and was notorious for his disregard of propriety, him he banished from the country, and would neither see him nor listen to him. If any of the neighbouring princes or their chief ministers lived religiously, with earnest purpose, and aspired to a virtuous character without regarding labour, he led him by the hand to occupy the same seat with himself, and called him "illustrious friend;" but he disdained to look upon those of a different character. If it was necessary to transact state business, he employed couriers who continually went and returned. If there was any irregularity in the manners of the people of the cities, he went amongst them. Wherever he moved he dwelt in a ready-made building during his sojourn. During the excessive rains of the three months of the rainy season he would not travel thus. Constantly in his travelling-palace he would provide choice meats for men of all sorts of religion. The Buddhist priests would be perhaps a thousand; the Brâhmaṇs, five hundred. He divided each day into three portions. During the first he occupied himself on matters of government; during the second he practised himself in religious devotion (merit) without interruption, so that the day was not sufficiently long. When I first received the invitation of Kumâra-râja, I said I would go from Magadha to Kâmarûpa. At this time Śilâditya-râja was visiting different parts of his empire, and found himself at Kie-mi-ou-ki-lo, when he gave the following

27 A hut or dwelling run up for the purpose. It seems to refer to a temporary rest-house, made probably of some light material. From the next sentence it seems that he carried about with him the materials for constructing such an abode.

28 It will be seen from this that Śilâditya, although leaning to Buddhism, was a patron of other religious sects.

29 This refers to the pilgrim himself. The Kumâra-râja who invited him was the king of Kâmarûpa, the western portion of Asam (see Book x.) Śilâditya was also called Kumâra. The invitation referred to will be found in the last section of the 4th book of the Life of Hiuen Tsang.

30 Here mî is an error for chu. The restoration will be Kajûghira or Kajînhara, a small kingdom on the banks of the Ganges, about 92 miles from Champâ. (Vide V. de St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 387.)
order to Kumāra-rāja: "I desire you to come at once to
the assembly with the strange Śramaṇa you are entertain-
ing at the Nālanda convent." On this, coming with Ku-
māra-rāja, we attended the assembly. The king, Śīlāditya,
after the fatigue of the journey was over, said, "From
what country do you come, and what do you seek in your
travels?"

He said in reply, "I come from the great Tang country,
and I ask permission to seek for the law (religious books)
of Buddha."

The king said, "Whereabouts is the great Tang country?
by what road do you travel? and is it far from this, or
near?"

In reply he said, "My country lies to the north-east
from this several myriads of li; it is the kingdom which
in India is called Mahâchina."

The king answered, "I have heard that the country
of Mahâchina has a king called Ts'ìn, the son of heaven,
when young distinguished for his spiritual abilities, when
old then (called) 'divine warrior.' The empire in
former generations was in disorder and confusion, every-
where divided and in disunion; soldiers were in conflict,
and all the people were afflicted with calamity. Then
the king of Ts'ìn, son of heaven, who had conceived from
the first vast purposes, brought into exercise all his
pity and love; he brought about a right understanding,
and pacified and settled all within the seas. His laws
and instruction spread on every side. People from other

\[\text{21} \] The context and Hiuen Tsiang's
reply indicate the reference to the
first emperor (Hwang-ti) She, or Urh she,
of the Ts'ìn dynasty (221 B.C.)
It was he who broke up the feudal
dependencies of China and central-
ised the government. He built the
great wall to keep out invaders,
settled the country, and established
the dynasty of the Ts'ìn. For his
conduct in destroying the books, see
Mayer's Manual, § 368. The refer-
ence (farther on) to the songs sung
in honour of this king illustrates the
character of Śīlāditya, who was
himself a poet.

\[\text{22} \] The first Japanese emperor was
called Zin mu, divine warrior; the
allusion in the text may be to the
Ts'ìn emperor being the first to style
himself Hwang ti; or it may be
simply that he was like a god in the
art of war.
countries brought under his influence declared themselves ready to submit to his rule. The multitude whom he nourished generously sang in their songs of the prowess of the king of Ts’in. I have learned long since his praises sung thus in verse. Are the records (laudatory hymns) of his great (complete) qualities well founded? Is this the king of the great Tang, of which you speak?"

Replying, he said, "China is the country of our former kings, but the ‘great Tang’ is the country of our present ruler. Our king in former times, before he became hereditary heir to the throne (before the empire was established), was called the sovereign of Ts’in, but now he is called the ‘king of heaven’ (emperor). At the end of the former dynasty the people had no ruler, civil war raged on every hand and caused confusion, the people were destroyed, when the king of Ts’in, by his supernatural gifts, exercised his love and compassion on every hand; by his power the wicked were destroyed on every side, the eight regions found rest, and the ten thousand kingdoms brought tribute. He cherished creatures of every kind, submitted with respect to the three precious ones. He lightened the burdens of the people and mitigated punishment, so that the country abounded in resources and the people enjoyed complete rest. It would be difficult to recount all the great changes he accomplished."

Śilāditya-rāja replied, "Very excellent indeed! the people are happy in the hands of such a holy king."

Śilāditya-rāja being about to return to the city of Kanyā-kubja, convoked a religious assembly. Followed by several hundreds of thousand people, he took his place on the southern bank of the river Ganges, whilst Kumāra-rāja,

---

23 This can hardly refer to the Sui dynasty, which preceded the "great Tang," as Julien says (p. 256 n.), but to the troubles which prevailed at the end of the Chow dynasty, which preceded the Ts’in.

24 That is, the eight regions of the empire, or of the world.

25 It is widely believed in China that the first Buddhist missionaries arrived there in the reign of the Ts’in emperor. For the story of their imprisonment and deliverance see Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 3.
attended by several tens of thousands, took his place on
the northern bank, and thus, divided by the stream of the
river, they advanced on land and water. The two kings led
the way with their gorgeous staff of soldiers (of the four
kinds); some also were in boats; some were on elephants;
sounding drums and blowing horns, playing on flutes and
harps. After ninety days they arrived at the city of
Kanyākubja, (and rested) on the western shore of the
Ganges river, in the middle of a flowery copse.

Then the kings of the twenty countries who had received
instruction from Śilāditya-rāja assembled with the Śramaṇas
and Brāhmaṇs, the most distinguished of their country,
with magistrates and soldiers. The king in advance had
constructed on the west side of the river a great saṅghā-
rāma, and on the east of this a precious tower about
100 feet in height; in the middle he had placed a golden
statue of Buddha, of the same height as the king himself.
On the south of the tower he placed a precious altar, in
the place for washing the image of Buddha. From this
north-east 14 or 15 li he erected another rest-house. It
was now the second month of spring-time; from the first
day of the month he had presented exquisite food to the
Śramaṇas and Brāhmaṇs till the 21st day; all along,
from the temporary palace38 to the saṅghārāma, there
were highly decorated pavilions, and places where mu-
sicans were stationed, who raised the sounds of their various
instruments. The king, on leaving the resting-hall (palace
of travel), made them bring forth on a gorgeously capar-
sioned great elephant a golden statue of Buddha about
three feet high, and raised aloft. On the left went the king,
Śilāditya, dressed as Śakra, holding a precious canopy,
whilst Kumāra-rāja, dressed as Brahmā-rāja, holding a
white chāmara, went on the right. Each of them had as
an escort 500 war-elephants clad in armour; in front and
behind the statue of Buddha went 100 great elephants,

38 The palace of travel, erected during a travelling excursion.
carrying musicians, who sounded their drums and raised their music. The king, Śilāditya, as he went, scattered on every side pearls and various precious substances, with gold and silver flowers, in honour of the three precious objects of worship. Having first washed the image in scented water at the altar, the king then himself bore it on his shoulder to the western tower, where he offered to it tens, hundreds, and thousands of silken garments, decorated with precious gems. At this time there were but about twenty Śramanaśas following in the procession, the kings of the various countries forming the escort. After the feast they assembled the different men of learning, who discussed in elegant language on the most abstruse subjects. At evening-tide the king retired in state to his palace of travel.

Thus every day he carried the golden statue as before, till at length on the day of separation a great fire suddenly broke out in the tower, and the pavilion over the gate of the saṅghārāma was also in flames. Then the king exclaimed, “I have exhausted the wealth of my country in charity, and following the example of former kings, I have built this saṅghārāma, and I have aimed to distinguish myself by superior deeds, but my poor attempts (feeble qualities) have found no return! In the presence of such calamities as these, what need I of further life?”

Then with incense-burning he prayed, and with this vow (oath), “Thanks to my previous merit, I have come to reign over all India; let the force of my religious conduct destroy this fire; or if not, let me die!” Then he rushed headlong towards the threshold of the gate, when suddenly, as if by a single blow, the fire was extinguished and the smoke disappeared.

The kings beholding the strange event, were filled with redoubled reverence; but he (the king), with unaltered face and unchanged accents, addressed the princes thus: “The fire has consumed this crowning work of my religious life. What think you of it?”
The princes, prostrate at his feet, with tears, replied, "The work which marked the crowning act of your perfected merit, and which we hoped would be handed down to future ages, has in a moment (a dawn) been reduced to ashes. How can we bear to think of it? But how much more when the heretics are rejoicing thereat, and interchanging their congratulations!"

The king answered, "By this, at least, we see the truth of what Buddha said; the heretics and others insist on the permanency of things, but our great teacher's doctrine is that all things are impermanent. As for me, my work of charity was finished, according to my purpose; and this destructive calamity (change) does but strengthen my knowledge of the truth of Tathāgata's doctrine. This is a great happiness (good fortune), and not a subject for lamentation."

On this, in company with the kings, he went to the east, and mounted the great stūpa. Having reached the top, he looked around on the scene, and then descending the steps, suddenly a heretic (or, a strange man), knife in hand, rushed on the king. The king, startled at the sudden attack, stepped back a few steps up the stairs, and then bending himself down he seized the man, in order to deliver him to the magistrates. The officers were so bewildered with fright that they did not know how to move for the purpose of assisting him.

The kings all demanded that the culprit should be instantly killed, but Śilāditya-rāja, without the least show of fear and with unchanged countenance, commanded them not to kill him; and then he himself questioned him thus:

"What harm have I done you, that you have attempted such a deed?"

The culprit replied, "Great king! your virtues shine without partiality; both at home and abroad they bring..."
happiness. As for me, I am foolish and besotted, unequal to any great undertaking; led astray by a single word of the heretics, and flattered by their importunity, I have turned as a traitor against the king."

The king then asked, "And why have the heretics conceived this evil purpose?"

He answered and said, "Great king! you have assembled the people of different countries, and exhausted your treasury in offerings to the Śramaṇas, and cast a metal image of Buddha; but the heretics who have come from a distance have scarcely been spoken to. Their minds, therefore, have been affected with resentment, and they procured me, wretched man that I am! to undertake this unlucky deed."

The king then straitly questioned the heretics and their followers. There were 500 Brāhmaṇs, all of singular talent, summoned before the king. Jealous of the Śramaṇs, whom the king had reverenced and exceedingly honoured, they had caused the precious tower to catch fire by means of burning arrows, and they hoped that in escaping from the fire the crowd would disperse in confusion, and at such a moment they purposed to assassinate the king. Having been foiled in this, they had bribed this man to lay wait for the king in a narrow passage and kill him.

Then the ministers and the kings demanded the extermination of the heretics. The king punished the chief of them and pardoned the rest. He banished the 500 Brāhmaṇs to the frontiers of India, and then returned to his capital.

To the north-west of the capital there is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. In this place Tathāgata, when in the world, preached the most excellent doctrines for seven days. By the side of this stūpa are traces where the four past Buddhas sat and walked for exercise. There is, moreover, a little stūpa containing the relics of Buddha's hair and nails; and also a preaching-place38 stūpa.

38 That is, erected in a place where Buddha had preached.
On the south and by the side of the Ganges are three saṅghārāmas, enclosed within the same walls, but with different gates. They have highly ornamented statues of Buddha. The priests are devout and reverential; they have in their service several thousands of “pure men.” In a precious casket in the vihāra is a tooth of Buddha about one and a half inches in length, very bright, and of different colours at morning and night. People assemble from far and near; the leading men with the multitude join in one body in worship. Every day hundreds and thousands come together. The guardians of the relic, on account of the uproar and confusion occasioned by the multitude of people, placed on the exhibition a heavy tax, and proclaimed far and wide that those wishing to see the tooth of Buddha must pay one great gold piece. Nevertheless, the followers who come to worship are very numerous, and gladly pay the tax of a gold piece. On every holiday they bring it (the relic) out and place it on a high throne, whilst hundreds and thousands of men burn incense and scatter flowers; and although the flowers are heaped up, the tooth-casket is not overwhelmed.

In front of the saṅghārāma, on the right and left hand, there are two vihāras, each about 100 feet high, the foundation of stone and the walls of brick. In the middle are statues of Buddha highly decorated with jewels, one made of gold and silver, the other of native copper. Before each vihāra is a little saṅghārāma.

Not far to the south-east of the saṅghārāma is a great vihāra, of which the foundations are stone and the building of brick, about 200 feet high. There is a standing figure of Buddha in it about 30 feet high. It is of native copper (bronze?) and decorated with costly gems. On the four surrounding walls of the vihāra are sculptured pic-

39 Julien translates this by “Brāhmaṇa” men” is a common one for lay be-
maṇa;” but the expression “pure lievers or Upāsakas.
tures. The various incidents in the life of Tathāgata, when he was practising the discipline of a Bödhisattva are here fully portrayed (engraved).

Not far to the south of the stone vihāra is a temple of the Sun-dèva. Not far to the south of this is a temple of Mahēśvara. The two temples are built of a blue stone of great lustre, and are ornamented with various elegant sculptures. In length and breadth they correspond with the vihāra of Buddha. Each of these foundations has 1000 attendants to sweep and water it; the sound of drums and of songs accompanied by music, ceases not day nor night.

To the south-east of the great city 6 or 7 li, on the south side of the Ganges, is a stūpa about 200 feet in height, built by Asoka-rāja. When in the world, Tathāgata in this place preached for six months on the impermanency of the body (anatma), on sorrow (dukha), on unreality (anitya), and impurity.40

On one side of this is the place where the four past Buddhas sat and walked for exercise. Moreover, there is a little stūpa of the hair and nails of Tathāgata. If a sick person with sincere faith walks round this edifice, he obtains immediate recovery and increase of religious merit.

To the south-east of the capital, going about 100 li, we come to the town of Na-po-ti-po-ku-lo (Navadēvakula).41 It is situated on the eastern bank of the Ganges, and is about 20 li in circuit. There are here flowery

40 These were the subjects on which he preached—anatma, anitya, dukha, asuddhis. For some remarks on the last of these, see Spence Hardy, East. Monach., p. 247; and Childers, Pali Dict., sub Asubho. Julien's translation, “sur le vide (l'inutilité) de ses moccrations,” is outside the mark. Fa-hian alludes to this sermon, cap. xviii. (see Beal's edition, p. 71, n. 1).

41 For some remarks on this place see V. St. Martin, Memoire, p. 350; Cunningham, Anc Geog. of India, p. 382; Arch. Survey of India, vol. i. p. 294; and compare Fa-hian, loc. cit., n. 2.
groves, and pure lakes which reflect the shadows of the trees.

To the north-west of this town, on the eastern bank of the Ganges river, is a Déva temple, the towers and storeyed turrets of which are remarkable for their skilfully carved work. To the east of the city 5 li are three saṅghārāmas with the same wall but different gates, with about 500 priests, who study the Little Vehicle according to the school of the Sarvāstivādins.

Two hundred paces in front of the saṅghārāma is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. Although the foundations are sunk in the ground, it is yet some 100 feet in height. It was here Tathāgata in old days preached the law for seven days. In this monument is a relic (śarira) which ever emits a brilliant light. Beside it is a place where there are traces of the four former Buddhas, who sat and walked here.

To the north of the saṅghārāma 3 or 4 li, and bordering on the Ganges river, is a stūpa about 200 feet high, built by Aśoka-rāja. Here Buddha preached for seven days. At this time there were some 500 demons who came to the place where Buddha was to hear the law; understanding its character, they gave up their demon form and were born in heaven. By the side of the preaching-stūpa is a place where there are traces of the four Buddhas who sat and walked there. By the side of this again is a stūpa containing the hair and nails of Tathāgata.

From this going south-east 600 li or so, crossing the Ganges and going south, we come to the country of 'O-yu-t’o (Ayōdhya).

'O-YU-T’O (AYŌDHYA).

This kingdom is 5000 li in circuit, and the capital about

42 This expression, “born in heaven,” is one frequently met with in Buddhist books. In the old Chinese inscription found at Buddha Gayā, the pilgrim Chi-tō vowed to exhort 30,000 men to prepare themselves in their conduct for a birth in heaven. J. R. As. S., N.S., vol. xiii. p. 553. And in the Dhammapada it is constantly mentioned.

43 The distance from Kanauj or from Navadēvakula to Ayōdhya, on
20 li. It abounds in cereals, and produces a large quantity of flowers and fruits. The climate is temperate and agreeable, the manners of the people virtuous and amiable; they love the duties of religion (merit), and diligently devote themselves to learning. There are about 100 saṅghārāmas in the country and 3000 priests, who study both the books of the Great and the Little Vehicle. There are ten Dēva temples; heretics of different schools are found in them, but few in number.

In the capital is an old saṅghārāma; it was in this place that Vasubandhu 44 Bōdhisattva, during a sojourn of several decades of years, composed various śāstras both of the Great and Little Vehicle. By the side of it are some ruined foundation walls; this was the hall in which Vasubandhu Bōdhisattva explained the principles of religion and preached for the benefit of kings of different countries, eminent men of the world, Śramāṇa and Brāhmaṇas.

To the north of the city 40 li, by the side of the river Ganges, is a large saṅghārāma in which is a stūpa about 200 feet high, which was built by Aśoka-rāja. It was here that Tathāgata explained the excellent principles of the law for the benefit of a congregation of Dēvas during a period of three months.

By the side is a stūpa to commemorate the place where are traces of the four past Buddhas, who sat and walked here.

To the west of the saṅghārāma 4 or 5 li is a stūpa containing relics of Tathāgata’s hair and nails. To the north of this stūpa are the ruins of a saṅghārāma; it was not far from Allahābād, which is impossible. General Cunningham suggests an alteration of the distance to 60 li, and identifies O-yu-to with an old town called Kākūpur, twenty miles north-west from Kāshpur (Cawnpoor) (Anc. Geog., p. 385).

44 Vasubandhu laboured and taught in Ayōdhyā (Vassilief, Boudhisme, p. 220. Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.)
here that Śrīlabdha 45 (Shi-li-lo-to), a master of śāstras belonging to the Sautrāntika school, composed the Vibhāṣā Śāstra of that school.

To the south-west of the city 5 or 6 li, in an extensive grove of Āmra trees, is an old saṅghārāma; this is where Asaṅga 46 Bodhisattva pursued his studies and directed the men of the age. 47 Asaṅga Bodhisattva went up by night to the palace of Maitreya Bodhisattva, and there received 48 the Yogāchārya Śāstra, 49 the Mahāyana Śutrā-lanākāratikā, 50 the Madyānta Viśhaṅga Śāstra, 51 &c., and afterwards declared these to the great congregation, in their deep principles.

North-west of the Āmra grove about a hundred paces is a stūpa containing relics of the hair and nails of Tathāgata. By its side are some old foundation walls. This is where Vasubandhu Bodhisattva descended from the Tushita heaven and beheld Asaṅga Bodhisattva. Asaṅga Bodhisattva was a man of Gandhāra. 52 He was born in the middle of the thousand years following the departure of Buddha from the world; and possessed of deep spiritual insight, he soon acquired a knowledge of the doctrine (of Buddha). He became a professed disciple, and attached himself to the school of the Mahiśāsakas, but afterwards altered his views and embraced the teaching of the Great Vehicle. His brother, Vasubandhu Bodhisattva, belonged to the school of the Sarvāstivādins, and had inherited a

45 In Chinese shing-shou, victory-received.
46 Asaṅga Bodhisattva was elder brother of Vasubandhu. His name is rendered into Chinese by Wu-cho, without attachment.
47 I have adopted this translation from Julien: it is not, however, entirely satisfactory; ts'ing-yih certainly means “to ask for more,” and in this sense it might refer to pursuit of study; but I think it means he requested more information or more light, and it seems from the sentence following that this was the case, for he ascended into heaven and received certain books from Maitreya.
48 Not, as Julien translates, “explained to the great assembly,” but received certain books from Maitreya, and afterwards explained them to the great congregation (saṅgha) in the Āmra grove.
49 Yu-kia-sse-ti-lun.
50 Chwang - yan - ta - shing - khang-lun.
51 Chung-pin-fen-pi-lun.
52 According to the Life of Vasubandhu, translated by Chin-ti, he was born in Purushapura, in North India.
wide fame, with a strong intelligence and penetrating wisdom and remarkable acumen. The disciple of Asaṅga was Buddhhasimha, a man whose secret conduct was unfathomable, of high talent and wide renown.

These two or three worthies had often talked together in this way: "We all are engaged in framing our conduct so as to enjoy the presence of Maitrēya after death. Whoever of us first dies and obtains the condition (of being so born in the heaven of Maitrēya), let him come and communicate it to us, that we may know his arrival there."

After this Buddhhasimha was the first to die. After three years, during which there was no message from him, Vasubandhu Bōdhisattva also died. Then six months having elapsed, and there being no message either from him, all the unbelievers began to mock and ridicule, as if Vasubandhu and Buddhhasimha had fallen into an evil way of birth, and so there was no spiritual manifestation.

After this, Asaṅga Bōdhisattva, during the first division of a certain night, was explaining to his disciples the law of entailing (or conferring on others) the power of samādhi, when suddenly the flame of the lamp was eclipsed, and there was a great light in space; then a Rishi-dēva, traversing through the sky, came down, and forthwith ascending the stairs of the hall, saluted Asaṅga. Asaṅga, addressing him, said, "What has been the delay in your coming? What is your present name?" In reply he said, "At the time of my death I went to the Tushita heaven, to the inner assembly (i.e., the immediate presence) of Maitrēya, and was there born in a lotus flower. On the flower presently opening, Maitrēya, in laudatory terms,

53 This was the desire of the early Buddhists after death to go to Maitrēya, in the Tushita heaven. It is plainly so in the Gayā inscription, referred to above. Afterwards the fable of a Western Paradise was introduced into Buddhism, and this took the place of Maitrēya's heaven.
54 This idea of being born in or on a lotus flower gave rise to the name of "the lotus school," applied to the Tśing-t'u, or "pure land" section of Buddhists. But it is a belief not confined to any one school. The medieval legend of the flower which opens in Paradise on the death of a pure child is a touching survival of the same thought.
addressed me, saying, 'Welcome! thou vastly learned one! welcome! thou vastly learned one!' I then paid him my respects by moving round his person, and then directly came here to communicate my mode of life." Asaṅga said, "And where is Buddhasimha?" He answered, "As I was going round Maitrēya I saw Buddhasimha among the outside crowd, immersed in pleasure and merriment. He exchanged no look with me; how then can you expect him to come to you to communicate his condition?" Asaṅga answered, "That is settled; but with respect to Maitrēya, what is his appearance and what the law he declares?" He said, "No words can describe the marks and signs (the personal beauty) of Maitrēya. With respect to the excellent law which he declares, the principles of it are not different from those (of our belief). The exquisite voice of the Bōdhisattva is soft and pure and refined; those who hear it can never tire; those who listen are never satiated."

To the north-west of the ruins of the preaching-hall of Asaṅga about 40 li, we come to an old saṅghārāma, bordering the Ganges on the north. In it is a stūpa of brick, about 100 feet high; this is the place where Vasubandhu first conceived a desire to cultivate the teaching of the Great Vehicle. He had come to this place from North India. At this time Asaṅga Bōdhisattva commanded his followers to go forward to meet him. Having come to the place, they met and had an interview. The disciple of Asaṅga was reposing outside the open window (of Vasubandhu), when in the after part of the night he began to recite the Daśabhūmi Sūtra. Vasubandhu having heard it, understood the meaning, and was deeply

---

55 Of course the idea is that time in the Tushita heaven is not measured as on earth. It took six months for this flower to open.
56 This singular account of the heaven of Maitrēya explains the fervent longing of Huen Tsiang on his dying bed to participate in the happiness of those born there (see Vīr, p. 345).
57 Vasubandhu had been brought up in the Little Vehicle school. For the account of his conversion to the principles of the Great Vehicle see Wong Pāh, § 185, J. R. As. S., vol. xx. p. 206.
grieved that this profound and excellent doctrine had not come to his ears in time past, and he laid the blame on his tongue as the origin of his sin of calumniating (the Great Vehicle), "and so," said he, "I will cut it out." Seizing a knife, he was about to do so, when he saw Asaṅga standing before him, who said, "Indeed the doctrine of the Great Vehicle is very profound; it is praised by all the Buddhas, exalted by all the saints. I would teach it to you, but you yourself now understand it; but now, at the very time of understanding it, what good, in the presence of this holy teaching of the Buddhas, to cut out your tongue? Do it not, but (rather) repent; and as in old time you abused the Great Vehicle with your tongue, now with the same member extol it. Change your life and renew yourself; this is the only good thing to do. There can be no benefit from closing your mouth and ceasing to speak." Having said this he disappeared.

Vasubandhu, in obedience to his words, gave up his purpose of cutting out his tongue. On the morrow morning he went to Asaṅga and accepted the teaching of the Great Vehicle. On this he gave himself up earnestly to think on the subject, and wrote a hundred and more śāstras in agreement with the Great Vehicle, which are spread everywhere, and are in great renown.

From this going east 300 li or so on the north of the Ganges, we arrive at 'O-ye-mo-khi (Hayamukha).

'O-ye-mu-khi [Hayamukha]

This kingdom is 2400 or 2500 li in circuit, and the chief town, which borders on the Ganges, is about 20 li round. Its products and climate are the same as those of Ayodhya. The people are of a simple and honest disposition. They diligently apply themselves to learning and cultivate

---

58 This country has not been satisfactorily identified. Cunningham places the capital at Daudia Khera, about 104 miles north-west of Allahabad.
religion. There are five saṅghārāmas, with about a thousand priests. They belong to the Sāmmatiya school of the Little Vehicle. There are ten Dēva temples, occupied by seetaries of various kinds.

Not far to the south-east of the city, close to the shore of the Ganges, is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja, 200 feet high. Here Buddha in old time repeated the law for three months. Beside it are traces where the four past Buddhas walked and sat.

There is also another stone stūpa, containing relics of Buddha’s hair and nails.

By the side of this stūpa is a saṅghārāma with about 200 disciples in it. There is here a richly adorned statue of Buddha, as grave and dignified as if really alive. The towers and balconies are wonderfully carved and constructed, and rise up imposingly (or, in great numbers) above the building. In old days Buddhādāsa (Fo-to-to-so), a master of śāstras, composed in this place the Mahāvihārāḥ Śāstra of the school of the Sarvāstivādins.

Going south-east 700 li, passing to the south of the Ganges, we come to the kingdom of Po-lo-ye-kia (Prayāga).

Po-lo-ye-kia (Prayāga).

This country is about 5000 li in circuit, and the capital, which lies between two branches of the river, is about 20 li round. The grain products are very abundant, and fruit-trees grow in great luxuriance. The climate is warm and agreeable; the people are gentle and compliant in their disposition. They love learning, and are very much given to heresy.

There are two saṅghārāmas with a few followers, who belong to the Little Vehicle.

There are several Dēva temples; the number of heretics is very great.

59 Julien has pointed out that the symbol po is for so. The Chinese rendering is “servant of Buddha.”

60 The modern Prayāga or Allāhabād, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumna rivers.
To the south-west of the capital, in a Champaka (Chen-po-kia) grove, is a stūpa which was built by Asoka-rāja; although the foundations have sunk down, yet the walls are more than 100 feet high. Here it was in old days Tathāgata discomfited the heretics. By the side of it is a stūpa containing hair and nail relics, and also a place where (the past Buddhas?) sat and walked.

By the side of this last stūpa is an old saṅghārāma; this is the place where Dēva Bōdhisattva composed the śāstra called Kwang-pih (Śata śāstra vaipulyam), refuted the principles of the Little Vehicle and silenced the heretics. At first Dēva came from South India to this saṅghārāma. There was then in the town a Brāhmaṇ of high controversial renown and great dialectic skill. Following to its origin the meaning of names, and relying on the different applications of the same word, he was in the habit of questioning his adversary and silencing him. Knowing the subtle skill of Dēva, he desired to overthrow him and refute him in the use of words. He therefore said:

"Pray, what is your name?" Dēva said, "They call me Dēva." The heretic rejoined, "Who is Dēva?" He answered, "I am." The heretic said, "And ‘I’, what is that?" Dēva answered, "A dog." The heretic said, "And who is a dog?" Dēva said, "You." The heretic answered, "And ‘you’, what is that?" Dēva said, "Dēva." The heretic said, "And who is Dēva?" He said, "I." The heretic said, "And who is ‘I’?" Dēva said, "A dog." Again he asked, "And who is a dog?" Dēva said, "You." The heretic said, "And who is ‘you’?" Dēva answered, "Dēva." And so they went on till the heretic understood; from that time he greatly reverenced the brilliant reputation of Dēva.

In the city there is a Dēva temple beautifully ornamented and celebrated for its numerous miracles. According to their records, this place is a noted one (śṛt—fortunate ground) for all living things to acquire religious merit.
If in this temple a man gives a single farthing, his merit is greater than if he gave a 1000 gold pieces elsewhere. Again, if in this temple a person is able to content life so as to put an end to himself, then he is born to eternal happiness in heaven.

Before the hall of the temple there is a great tree with spreading boughs and branches, and casting a deep shadow. There was a body-eating demon here, who, depending on this custom (viz., of committing suicide), made his abode here; accordingly on the left and right one sees heaps of bones. Hence, when a person comes to this temple, there is everything to persuade him to despise his life and give it up: he is encouraged thereto both by the promptings of the heretics and also by the seductions of the (evil) spirit. From very early days till now this false custom has been practised.

Lately there was a Brāhmaṇ whose family name was Tseu (putra); he was a man of deep penetration and great learning, of lucid wit and high talent. This man coming to the temple, called to all the people and said, “Sirs, ye are of crooked ways and perverse mind, difficult to lead and persuade.” Then he engaged in their sacrifices with them, with a view afterwards to convert them. Then he mounted the tree, and looking down on his friends he said, “I am going to die. Formerly I said that their doctrine was false and wicked; now I say it is good and true. The heavenly Rishis, with their music in the air, call me. From this fortunate spot will I cast down my poor body.” He was about to cast himself down when his friends, having failed by their expostulations to deter him, spread out their garments underneath the place where he was on the tree, and so when he fell he was preserved. When he recovered he said, “I thought I saw in the air the Devas calling me to come, but now by the

---

61 This tree is the well-known of worship at Allahabad (Cunningham, Akshaya Vata, or “undecaying banyan tree,” which is still an object.
stratagem of this hateful (heretical) spirit (viz., of the tree), I have failed to obtain the heavenly joys."

To the east of the capital, between the two confluents of the river, for the space of 10 li or so, the ground is pleasant and upland. The whole is covered with a fine sand. From old time till now, the kings and noble families, whenever they had occasion to distribute their gifts in charity, ever came to this place, and here gave away their goods; hence it is called the great charity enclosure. At the present time Silâditya-rāja, after the example of his ancestors, distributes here in one day the accumulated wealth of five years. Having collected in this space of the charity enclosure immense piles of wealth and jewels, on the first day he adorns in a very sumptuous way a statue of Buddha, and then offers to it the most costly jewels. Afterwards he offers his charity to the residen- tiary priests; afterwards to the priests (from a distance) who are present; afterwards to the men of distinguished talent; afterwards to the heretics who live in the place, following the ways of the world; and lastly, to the widows and bereaved, orphans and desolate, poor and mendicants.

Thus, according to this order, having exhausted his treasuries and given food in charity, he next gives away his head diadem and his jewelled necklaces. From the first to the last he shows no regret, and when he has finished he cries with joy, "Well done! now all that I have has entered into incorruptible and imperishable treasuries."

After this the rulers of the different countries offer their jewels and robes to the king, so that his treasury is replenished.

To the east of the enclosure of charity, at the confluence of the two rivers, every day there are many hundreds of men who bathe themselves and die. The people of this country consider that whoever wishes to be born in heaven
ought to fast to a grain of rice, and then drown himself in the waters. By bathing in this water (they say) all the pollution of sin is washed away and destroyed; therefore from various quarters and distant regions people come here together and rest. During seven days they abstain from food, and afterwards end their lives. And even the monkeys and mountain stags assemble here in the neighbourhood of the river, and some of them bathe and depart, others fast and die.

On one occasion when Śilādatya-rāja distributed the alms in charity, there was a monkey who lived apart by the river-side under a tree. He also abstained from food in private, and after some days he died on that account from want.

The heretics who practise asceticism have raised a high column in the middle of the river; when the sun is about to go down they immediately climb up the pillar; then clinging on to the pillar with one hand and one foot, they wonderfully hold themselves out with one foot and one arm; and so they keep themselves stretched out in the air with their eyes fixed on the sun, and their heads turning with it to the right as it sets. When the evening has darkened, then they come down. There are many dozens of ascetics who practise this rite. They hope by these means to escape from birth and death, and many continue to practise this ordeal through several decades of years.

Going from this country south-west, we enter into a great forest infested with savage beasts and wild elephants, which congregate in numbers and molest travellers, so that unless in large numbers it is difficult (dangerous) to pass this way.

Going 500 li or so, we come to the country Kiāu-shāng-mi (Kausāmbi).

62 The distance is properly 50 li, as stated by Hwui-lih. The capital however, is 150 li from Prayāga.
KAUSÂMBI.

KIAU-SHANG-MI [KAUSÂMBI].

This country is about 6000 li in circuit, and the capital about 30 li. The land is famous for its productiveness; the increase is very wonderful. Rice and sugarcanes are plentiful. The climate is very hot, the manners of the people hard and rough. They cultivate learning and are very earnest in their religious life and in virtue. There are ten sañghârâmas, which are in ruins and deserted; the priests are about 300; they study the Little Vehicle. There are fifty Dêva temples, and the number of heretics is enormous.

In the city, within an old palace, there is a large vihâra about 60 feet high; in it is a figure of Buddha carved out of sandal-wood, above which is a stone canopy. It is the work of the king U-to-yen-na (Udâyana). By its spiritual qualities (or, between its spiritual marks) it produces a divine light, which from time to time shines forth. The princes of various countries have used their power to carry off this statue, but although many men have tried, not all the number could move it. They therefore worship copies of it, and they pretend that the likeness is a true one, and this is the original of all such figures.

When Tathâgata first arrived at complete enlightenment, he ascended up to heaven to preach the law for the benefit of his mother, and for three months remained absent. This king (i.e., Udâyana), thinking of him with affection, desired to have an image of his person; therefore he asked Mûdgâlyâyanaputra, by his spiritual power, to transport an artist to the heavenly mansions to observe the excellent marks of Buddha’s body, and carve a sandal-wood

63 This has been identified with Kosâmbi-nagar, an old village on the Jumna, about thirty miles from Allahâbâd (Cunningham). Kosâmbi is mentioned in the Râmâyana. It is the scene of the drama of Râma-râlli, composed by Bâya in the court of Sri-Harsha or Silâditya.

64 A copy of this sandal-wood figure was brought from a temple near Pekin, and is referred to in Beal’s Buddhist Pilgrims, p. lxxv. A facsimile of it is stamped on the cover of that work. The story of Udâyana, king of Kosâmbi, is referred to by Kilidâsa in the Mâyâdâta.
statue. When Tathâgata returned from the heavenly palace, the carved figure of sandal-wood rose and saluted the Lord of the World. The Lord then graciously addressed it and said, “The work expected from you is to toil in the conversion of heretics, and to lead in the way of religion future ages.”

About 100 paces to the east of the vihâra are the signs of the walking and sitting of the four former Buddhas. By the side of this, and not far off, is a well used by Tathâgata, and a bathing-house. The well still has water in it, but the house has long been destroyed.

Within the city, at the south-east angle of it, is an old habitation, the ruins of which only exist. This is the house of Ghôshira (Kun-shi-lo) the nobleman. In the middle is a vihâra of Buddha, and a stûpa containing hair and nail relics. There are also ruins of Tathâgata’s bathing-house.

Not far to the south-east of the city is an old saṅghârâma. This was formerly the place where Gôshira the nobleman had a garden. In it is a stûpa built by Aśoka-râja, about 200 feet high; here Tathâgata for several years preached the law. By the side of this stûpa are traces of the four past Buddhas where they sat down and walked. Here again is a stûpa containing hair and nail relics of Tathâgata.

To the south-east of the saṅghârâma, on the top of a double-storeyed tower, is an old brick chamber where Vasubandhu Bôdhisattva dwelt. In this chamber he composed the Vidyâmātrasiddhi Śāstra (Wei-chi-lun), intended to refute the principles of the Little Vehicle and confound the heretics.

To the east of the saṅghârâma, and in the middle of an Âmra grove, is an old foundation wall; this was the place

65 “To teach and convert with diligence the unbelieving, to open the way for guiding future generations, this is your work.” I take the symbol sîc to refer to unbelievers; Julien makes it an interrogative (ye).

66 Âsvaghôsa alludes to the conversion of Ghôshira, Fo-sho-hing-tean-king, v. 1710. See also Fa-hien, c. xxxiv.
where Asaṅga Bodhisattva composed the śāstra called \textit{Hin-yang-shing-kiau}.

To the south-west of the city 8 or 9 li is a stone dwelling of a venomous Nāga. Having subdued this dragon, Tathāgata left here his shadow; but though this is a tradition of the place, there is no vestige of the shadow visible.

By the side of it is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja, about 200 feet high. Near this are marks where Tathāgata walked to and fro, and also a hair and nail stūpa. The disciples who are afflicted with disease, by praying here mostly are cured.

The law of Śākyya becoming extinct, this will be the very last country in which it will survive; therefore from the highest to the lowest all who enter the borders of this country are deeply affected, even to tears, ere they return.

To the north-east of the Nāga dwelling is a great forest, after going about 700 li, through which we cross the Ganges, and going northward we arrive at the town of Kia-shi-po-lo (Kaśapura).\textsuperscript{67} This town is about 10 li in circuit; the inhabitants are rich and well-to-do (happy).

By the side of the city is an old saṅghārāma, of which the foundation walls alone exist. This was where Dharma-pāla\textsuperscript{68} Boddhisattva refuted the arguments of the heretics. A former king of this country, being partial to the teaching of heresy, wished to overthrow the law of Buddha, whilst he showed the greatest respect to the unbelievers. One day he summoned from among the heretics a master of śāstras, extremely learned and of superior talents, who clearly understood the abstruse doctrines (of religion). He had composed a work of heresy in a thousand ślokas, consisting of thirty-two thousand words. In this work he contradicted and slandered the law of Buddha, and represented his own school as orthodox. Whereupon (the king)

\textsuperscript{67} This place has been identified with the old town of Sultānpur on the Gomati river. The Hindu name of this town was Kuşabhavanapura, or simply Kuşapura (Cunningham).

convoked the body of the (Buddhist) priests, and ordered them to discuss the question under dispute, adding that if the heretics were victorious he would destroy the law of Buddha, but that if the priests did not suffer defeat he would cut out his tongue as proof of the acknowledgment of his fault. 69 At this time the company of the priests being afraid they would be defeated, assembled for consultation, and said, "The sun of wisdom having set, the bridge of the law 70 is about to fall. The king is partial to the heretics; how can we hope to prevail against them? Things have arrived at a difficult point; is there any expedient to be found in the circumstances, as a way of escape?" The assembly remained silent, and no one stood up to suggest any plan.

Dharmapāla Bodhisattva, although young in years, had acquired a wide renown for penetration and wisdom, and the reputation of his noble character was far spread. He was now in the assembly, and standing up, with encouraging words addressed them thus: "Ignorant though I am, yet I request permission to say a few words. Verily I am ready to answer immediately to the king's summons. If by my lofty argument (discourse) I obtain the victory, this will prove spiritual protection; but if I fail in the subtle part of the argument, this will be attributable to my youth. In either case there will be an escape, so that the law and the priesthood will suffer no loss." They said, "We agree to your proposition," and they voted that he should respond to the king's summons. Fortwith he ascended the pulpit.

Then the heretical teacher began to lay down his captious principles, and to maintain or oppose the sense of the words and arguments used. At last, having fully

69 This refers to the dream of king Ajātaśatru, for which see Wong Pāh, § 178. This section of Wong Pāh shows that the great Kāśyapa is supposed by Buddhists still to be within the Cock's-Foot Mountain awaiting the coming of Maitrēya.

70 It would seem from the context that it was the heretical teacher who asked the king to call the assembly, and that if he was defeated he said he would cut out his own tongue.
explained his own position, he waited for the opposite side to speak.

Dharmapāla Bōdhisattva, accepting his words, said with a smile, “I am conqueror! I will show how he uses false arguments in advocating his heretical doctrines, how his sentences are confused in urging his false teaching.”

The opponent, with some emotion, said, “Sir, be not high-minded! If you can expose my words you will be the conqueror, but first take my text fairly and explain its meaning.” Then Dharmapāla, with modulated voice, followed the principles of his text (thesis), the words and the argument, without a mistake or change of expression.

When the heretic had heard the whole, he was ready to cut out his tongue; but Dharmapāla said, “It is not by cutting out your tongue you show repentance. Change your principles—that is repentance!” Immediately he explained the law for his sake; his heart believed it and his mind embraced the truth. The king gave up his heresy and profoundly respected the law of Buddha (the orthodox law).

By the side of this place is a stūpa built by Asoka-rāja; the walls are broken down, but it is yet 200 feet or so in height. Here Buddha in old days declared the law for six months; by the side of it are traces where he walked. There is also a hair and nail stūpa.

Going north from this 170 or 180 li, we come to the kingdom of Pi-so-kia (Viśākhā).

Pi-so-kia (Viśākhā).

This kingdom 71 is about 4000 li in circuit, and the capital about 16 li round. The country produces abundance of cereals, and is rich in flowers and fruits. The climate is soft and agreeable. The people are pure and honest. They are very diligent in study, and seek to gain merit (by doing good) without relaxation. There are 20 saṅghārāmas and about 3000 priests, who study the Little Vehicle according

71 This country is supposed by Cunningham to be the same as Sā-kēta, the Sa-chi of Fa-hien, which is the same as Ayodhyā or Oudh.
to the Saṇṭhatiya school. There are about fifty Dēva temples and very many heretics.

To the south of the city, on the left of the road, is a large saṅghārāma; this is where the Arhat Dēvasarma wrote the Shih-shin-lun (Vijñānakāya Śāstra), in which he defends the position that there is no "I" as an individual. The Arhat Gōpa (Kiu-po) composed also in this place the Shing-kiau-iu-shih-lun, in which he defends the position that there is an "I" as an individual. These doctrines excited much controversial discussion. Again, in this place Dharmapāla Bōdhisattva during seven days defeated a hundred doctors belonging to the Little Vehicle.

By the side of the saṅghārāma is a stūpa about 200 feet high, which was built by Aśoka-rāja. Here Tathāgata in old days preached during six years, and occupied himself whilst so doing in guiding and converting men. By the side of this stūpa is a wonderful tree which is 6 or 7 feet high. Through many years it has remained just the same, without increase or decrease. Formerly when Tathāgata had cleansed his teeth, he threw away in this place the small piece of twig he had used. It took root, and produced the exuberant foliage which remains to the present time. The heretics and Brāhmaṇs have frequently come together and cut it down, but it grows again as before.

Not far from this spot are traces where the four past Buddhas sat and walked. There is also a nail and hair stūpa. Sacred buildings here follow one another in succession; the woods, and lakes reflecting their shadows, are seen everywhere.

Going from this north-east 500 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Shi-sah-lo-fu-sih-tai (Śrāvastī).

END OF BOOK V.

72 For many arguments on this question of "no personal self," see the Life of Buddha (Buddhacharita) by Aśaghūsha, passim; also Wong Pūh, § 190.

73 This tree is also noticed by Fa-hian in his account of Sa-chi, and it is this which has led General Cunningham to identify Viśākhā with Sāketa or Ayūdhyā.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

VOL. I.

NOTE I.—There is an important work called the Shih-kia-fang-chi, or "An Account of Buddhist Regions," written by Tao-Sün, who lived A.D. 595-667, in which the three routes from China to India are named (part i. fol. 10 b.) The first is to the south-west of Lake Lop to Tibet and Nêpâl; the second or middle route is from Shen-shen or Leu-lan or Na-fo-po (Tao-Sün speaks of these as one place) to Khotan and so on; the third route is the outward one followed by Hiuen Tsang. Tao-Sün, in speaking of the Po-lo-mo-lo Mountain (vide infra, vol. ii. p. 214), renders it "the black bee Mountain." Perhaps the Temple of Boram Deo, "in a secluded valley at the foot of the Mekhala Hills, near Kamarda," is connected with the worship of Durgâ under this name (Cunningham, Arch. Sâra, vol. xvii. p. iv.)

Page xv. line 21.—For Hwâi Sâng, read Hweî Sâng.

Page xxxiv.—The custom of putting a sacred object on the head in token of reverence, is still observed in the Greek Church; conf. the Liturgy of St. Chrysostom (Neale's Greek Liturgies, p. 127) where the sacred vessel is carried on the head of the deacon.

Page xxxv.—The idea of a square vihâra being indestructible would confirm the opinion given (p. 62, vol. i. n. 215) that Svetavâras is the Tetragonis of Pliny; the treasure city of Rameses is also described as "solid upon the earth, like the four pillars of the firmament" (Funeral Tent of an Egyptian Queen, p. 18).

VOL. I.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

Page xl.—The "yellow spring" may be compared with the Pāli odakantiko.

Page xli.—The "marks and impressions" are probably the wheel marks, &c., on the bottom of a Buddha's foot; cf. p. 204 infra.

Page xlii. line 9.—The phrase shang-tso refers to the chief of the Sthaviras or priests.

Page xliii.—The symbol ku which I here (last line) translate by "ruins," is so used throughout Fa-hian; Huien Tsiang uses the full phrase ku ke; cf. K. II. fol. 12, of the Si-yu-ki, also infra, p. 92.

Page li.—The charioteer called Chhandaka is elsewhere called Kapiṭaka (Chung-hu-mo-ho-ti-kiing, passim).

Page lxii. line 10.—I have taken the phrase "peh tung hia" (north, east, below) to be an error for tung peh king (going north-east).

Page lxiv. line 10.—The Lōkāntarika hells are described as being outside the iron girdle that surrounds a Sakwala.

Page lxix.—With the "one-footed men," compare the Sansc. ākacharanā.

Page lxxx. line 18.—The phrase for "rested" is not to be confined to the "summer rest" of the Buddhists; it frequently means "remained at rest," or "in quiet;" cf. "the daily use of the Shamans," p. 15.

Page lxxxi. line 4.—Read Liu for Lin.

Page lxxxiii. line 21.—For five read six.

Page 17, n. 52.—For Bagarach read Bagarash.

Page 25, n. 79.—Red garments are the badge of those condemned to death: vide the Nāgānanda, Boyd's translation, p. 62, 63, 67.

Page 105, n. 77.—Vasubandhu is sometimes called the twentieth patriarch, cf. p. 120, n. 2.

Page 135, last line.—For note 4 read 41.

Page 146, n. 80.—For Manikvāla read Manikyāla.

Page 176, n. 30.—The expression, the "Mung" king, is frequently used by I-tsing. Perhaps he is the same as the Baldā-ṛāi, or the Great King or Lord Paramount of the Muslims (vide Thomas, The Indian Balhard, p. 11).

Page 237, line 17.—Omit the comma after li, and insert one after "which."
SI-YU-KI.

BUDDHIST RECORDS

OF

THE WESTERN WORLD

VOL. II.
## CONTENTS

**BOOK VI.—FOUR COUNTRIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Shi-lo-fu-shi-ti (Śrāvastī)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Kie-pi-lo-fa-su-tu (Kapilavastu)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lan-mo (Rāmagrāma)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kiu-shi-na-kie-lo (Kusinagara)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOOK VII.—FIVE COUNTRIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Po-lo-ni-sse (Vārānasi)</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Chen-chu (Ghazipur)</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fei-she-li (Vaiśālī)</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fo-li-shi (Vṛijjī)</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ni-po-lo (Nēpāl)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOOK VIII.—MO-KIE-T'Ō (MAGADHA)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>82–137</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOOK IX.—MAGADHA (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>138–185</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOOK X.—SEVENTEEN COUNTRIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I-lan-na-po-fa-to (Hiraṇyaparvata)</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Chen-po (Champā)</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kie-chu-hoh-khi-lo (Kajughira or Kajīgara)</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pun-na-fa-t'ān-na (Pūndravarddhana)</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kia-mo-lu-po (Kāmarūpa)</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>San-mo-ta-ch'a (Samotaṭa)</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Tan-mo-li-ti (Tāmraliptī)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Kie-lo-na-su-fa-la-na (Kbrasuvarṇa)</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>U-ch'a (Uḍra)</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Kong-u-t'ō (Kōnyōdhaka)</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

BOOK X.—continued
(11) Kie-ling-kia (Kaliāga) 207
(12) Kiao-sa-lo (Kōsala) 209
(13) 'An-ta-lo (Andhra) 217
(14) T'o-na-kie-tse-kia (Dhanakāṭaka) 221
(15) Chu-li-ye (Chulya or Chōla) 227
(16) Ta-lo-pi-ch'a (Drāvida) 228
(17) Mo-lo-ku-ch'a (Malakūṭa) 230

BOOK XI.—TWENTY-THREE COUNTRIES 235–282
(1) Sāng-kia-lo (Sīṃhala) 235
(2) Kong-kin-na-pu-lo (Kōakaṇapura) 253
(3) Mo-ho-la-ch'a (Mahārāṣṭra) 255
(4) Po-lu-kie-ch'e-p'o (Bharukachha) 259
(5) Mo-la-p'o (Mālavā) 260
(6) 'O-ch'a-li (Atali) 265
(7) K'ie-ch'a (Kachcha) 266
(8) Fa-li-pi (Valabhi) 266
(9) 'O-nan-t'o-pu-lo (Ānandapura) 268
(10) Su-la-ch'a (Surāṣṭra) 268
(11) Kiu-che-lo (Gurjara) 269
(12) U-shē-yen-na (Ujjayinī) 270
(13) Chi-ki-t'o (?) 271
(14) Mo-hi-shi-fa-lo-pu-lo (Mahēśvarapura) 271
(15) Sin-tu (Sindh) 272
(16) Mu-lo-san-p'u-lo (Mūlasthānapura) 274
(17) Po-fa-to (Parvata) 275
(18) 'O-tin-p'o-chi-lo (Aṭyanabakēla) 276
(19) Lang-kie-lo (Laṅgala) 277
(20) Po-la-sse (Persia) 277
(21) Pi-to-shi-lo (Pitāsilā) 279
(22) 'O-fan-ch'a (Avanḍa ?) 280
(23) Fa-la-na (Varanā or Varṇu) 281

BOOK XII.—TWENTY-TWO COUNTRIES 283–326
(1) Tsu-ku-ch'a (Tsaukūṭa) 283
(2) Fo-li-shi-sa-t'ang-na (Parśusthāna) 285
(3) 'An-ta-lo-po (Andarūb) 286
## CONTENTS.

**Book XII.—continued.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4) K'woh-si-to (Khost)</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Hwoh (Kunduz)</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Mung-kin (Munjān)</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) 'O-li-ni (Ahreng)</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Ho-lo-hu (Ragh)</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) Ki-li-seh-mo (Khrishma, or Kishm)</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Po-li-ho (Bolor)</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) Hi-mo-ta-lo (Himatala)</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) Po-to-chang-na (Badakshān)</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) In-po-kin (Yamgan)</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) Kiu-lang-na (Kurāna)</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15) Ta-mo-sih-teh-ti (Termistat)</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) Shi-k'i-ni (Shikhnān)</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) Shang-mi (Šambi)</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18) K'ie-p'an-t'o (Khabandha)</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19) U-sha (Oeh)</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) Kie-sha (Kashgār)</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) Cho-kiu-kia (Chakuka? Yarkiang)</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) Kiu-sa-ta-na (Khōtān)</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Index.** 327

**Corrections.** 370
BUDDHIST RECORDS OF THE WESTERN WORLD.

BOOK VI.

Contains an account of four countries, viz., (1) Shi-lo-fu-shi-ti; (2) Kie-pi-lo-fu-see-to; (3) Lan-mo; (4) Ku-shi-na-k’ie-lo.

SHI-LO-FU-SHI-TI [ŚRĀVASTI].

The kingdom of Śrāvasti (Shi-lo-fu-shi-ti)¹ is about 6000 li in circuit. The chief town is desert and ruined. There is no record as to its exact limits (area). The ruins of the walls encompassing the royal precincts² give a circuit

¹ The town of Śrāvasti, also called Dharmapaṭṭana (Trikṛṣṇāśrama, ii. 1, 13), in Uttarā (Northern) Kōśala, has been identified by Cunningham with a great ruined city on the south bank of the Rāpti called Sāhat Māhet, about 58 miles north of Ayōdhya. As Hiuen Tsang gives the bearing north-east, and the distance about 500 li, he evidently did not travel by the shortest route. Fa-hian (chap. xx.), on the contrary, gives the distance eight yōjanasa, and the bearing (corrected) due north, both of which are correct. For a full account of Sāhat Māhet see Cunningham, Arch. Survey of Ind., vol. i. p. 331 ff.; see also J. R. As. S., vol. v. pp. 122 ff. It figures also in Brahmanical literature, in which it is said to have been founded by Śrāvasta, the son of Śrāva and grandson of Yuvanāśva. Harivamśa, 670; Vīśn. Pur., vol. iii. p. 263; Hall’s Vaiśnavaśāstra, Int. p. 53; Mahābhār., iii. 12518; Pāṇini, iv. 2, 97; Bhāgav. Pur., ix. 6. 21. With respect, however, to the date of Vikramaditiya of Śrāvasti, Cunningham seems to be misled by the statement of Hiuen Tsang (ante, p. 106) that he lived in the middle of the thousand years after Buddha, as though this meant 500 A.D., whereas it means, as stated before, in the middle of the thousand years which succeeded the 500 years after Buddha, in the middle of the “period of images,” in fact. See also Burnouf, Introd., pp. 20 ff., 150, 209, 280; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. iii. pp. 200 f.; Vassilieff, pp. 38, 75, 188, 218.

² Julien translates here and elsewhere kung shing by palace, but it
of about 20 li. Though mostly in ruins, still there are a few inhabitants. Cereals grow in great abundance; the climate is soft and agreeable, the manners of the people are honest and pure. They apply themselves to learning, and love religion (merit). There are several hundreds of saṅghārāmas, mostly in ruin, with very few religious followers, who study the books of the Saṃmatiya (Ching-liang-pu) school. There are 100 Dēva temples with very many heretics. When Tathāgata was in the world, this was the capital of the country governed by Prasēnajitārāja (Po-lo-si-na-chi-to-wang).

Within the old precincts of the royal city are some ancient foundations; these are the remains of the palace of King Shing-kwan (Prasēnajita).

From this not far to the east is a ruinous foundation, above which is built a small stūpa; these ruins represent the Great Hall of the Law, which King Prasēnajita built for Buddha.

By the side of this hall, not far from it, above the ruins a stūpa is built. This is where stood the vihāra which King Prasēnajita built for Prajāpati Bhikshuni, the maternal aunt of Buddha.

should be “the royal precincts,” or the portion of the city in which the royal palace stood, and which was defended by a surrounding wall. Cunningham is right therefore in his remarks on this point, p. 332, loc. cit.

Praśēnajita—In the Aśoka Aravinda the following genealogy is given:

2. Ajātaśatru, his son, 512.
3. Udayāhādra, his son, 480.
4. Mundā, his son, 46.
5. Kākavarnin, his son, 456.
6. Sahālin, his son.
7. Tulakuchi, his son.
8. Mahāmāndala, his son, cir. 375.
9. Praśēnajit, his son.
10. Nanda, his son.
12. Susāma, his son.


4 The Saddharma Mahāsāla.

5 Prajāpati, formerly written, as a note tells us, Pajāpati, with the meaning “lord of creatures”; it may be observed here that Hiuen Tsang is the first to introduce the Sans-
Still east of this is a stūpa to record the site of the house of Sudatta (Shen-shi).

By the side of the house of Sudatta is a great stūpa. This is the place where the Āṅgulimālīya (Yang-kiu-li-mo-lo) gave up his heresy. The Āṅgulimālīyas are the unlucky caste (the criminals) of Srāvasti. They kill everything that lives, and maddening themselves, they murder men in the towns and country, and make chaplets for the head of their fingers. The man in question wished to kill his mother to complete the number of fingers, when the Lord of the World (Buddha), moved by pity, went to him to convert him. Beholding the Lord from far, the Āṅgulimālīya rejoicing said, “Now I shall be born in heaven; our former teacher declared that whoever injures a Buddha or kills his mother, ought to be born in the Brahmā heaven.”

Addressing his mother, he said, “Old woman! I will leave you for a time till I have killed that great Shaman.” Then taking a knife, he went to attack the Lord. On this Tathāgata stepped slowly as he went, whilst the Āṅgulimālīya rushed at him without slacking his pace.

The Lord of the World addressing him said, “Why do you persevere in your evil purpose and give up the better feelings of your nature and foster the source of evil?” The Āṅgulimālīya, hearing these words, understood the wickedness of his conduct, and on that paid reverence to Buddha, and sought permission to enter the law (i.e., the religious profession of Buddha), and having persevered with

krit forms of proper names into the Chinese translations. Before him the Prākrit, or provincial, forms are used; for example, in Fa-hian, instead of Po-lo-si-na-chi-to for Pra-senajita, we have Po-sz-nih, corresponding with Pasenat or Pasenadi; instead of Srāvasti, we have She-wei for Sewet, &c. For further instances see Fo-sho-hing-tsun-king, p. 213, notes 1, 2.

6 Sudatta, formerly written Su-ta, the same as Anāthapindada, “the friend of the orphan and destitute.” For an account of his conversion and subsequent career, see Fo-sho-hing-tsun-king, p. 201, f.

7 The Āṅgulimālīyas were a sect founded by a converted brigand, who wore round his neck a string of fingers.
diligence in his religious progress, he obtained the fruit of an Arhat.

To the south of the city 5 or 6 li is the Jëtavana. This is where Anâthapindada (Ki-ku-to) (otherwise called) Sudatta, the chief minister of Prasênajita-râja, built for Buddha a vihâra. There was a saîghârdma here formerly, but now all is in ruins (desert).

On the left and right of the eastern gate has been built a pillar about 70 feet high; on the left-hand pillar is engraved on the base a wheel; on the right-hand pillar the figure of an ox is on the top. Both columns were erected by Aśoka-râja. The residences (of the priests) are wholly destroyed; the foundations only remain, with the exception of one solitary brick building, which stands alone in the midst of the ruins, and contains an image of Buddha.

Formerly, when Tathâgata ascended into the Trâyastrimśas heaven to preach for the benefit of his mother, Prasênajita-râja, having heard that the king Udâyana had caused a sandal-wood figure of Buddha to be carved, also caused this image to be made.

The nobleman Sudatta was a man of "humanity" and talent. He had amassed great wealth, and was liberal in its distribution. He succoured the needy and destitute, and had compassion on the orphan and helped the aged. During his lifetime they called him Anâthapindada (Ki-ku-to—friend of the orphan) on account of his virtue. He, hearing of the religious merit of Buddha, conceived a

---

8 Shi-to-lin, the garden of Jêta, the prince royal. For the sale of this garden to Sudatta (Shen-shi) and the circumstances attending it, see Fo-sho-hing tsan-ling, p. 217. For a representation of the scene of the history, see Bharhut Stûpa, pl. lvi.

9 Julien’s translation of this passage is very confusing. He says, "On the top of the left-hand pillar is a dome (coupole); on the pinnacle (faîte) of the right-hand pillar is sculptured the body of an elephant." But, in fact, the text says, "On the face (pedestal, tsan) of the left-hand pillar is the mark (figure) of a wheel (the symbol of dharmâ); on the top of the right-hand pillar is the form of an ox. This is in agreement with Fa-hian’s account. The only doubt is whether tsan may not mean "the top;" in that case the wheel would be on the top of the left-hand pillar, as Fa-hian says (chap. xx.)
deep reverence for him, and vowed to build a vihāra for him. He therefore asked Buddha to condescend to come to receive it. The Lord of the World commanded Śāriputra (She-li-tseu) to accompany him and aid by his counsel. Considering the garden of Jēta (Shi-to-yuen), the prince, to be a proper site on account of its pleasant and upland position, they agreed to go to the prince to make known the circumstances of the case. The prince in a jeering way said, "If you can cover the ground with gold (pieces) I will sell it (you can buy it)."

Sudatta, hearing it, was rejoiced. He immediately opened his treasuries, with a view to comply with the agreement, and cover the ground. There was yet a little space not filled. The prince asked him to desist, but he said, "The field of Buddha is true; I must plant good seed in it." Then on the vacant spot of ground he raised a vihāra.

The Lord of the World forthwith addressed Ānanda and said, "The ground of the garden is what Sudatta has bought; the trees are given by Jēta. Both of them, similarly minded, have acquired the utmost merit. From this time forth let the place be called the grove of Jēta (Shi-to) and the garden of Anāthapiṇḍada (Ki-ku-to).

To the north-east of the garden of Anāthapiṇḍada (Ki-ku-to) is a stūpa. This is the place where Tathāgata washed with water the sick Bhikshu. Formerly, when Buddha was in the world, there was a sick Bhikshu (Pi-tsu), who, cherishing his sorrow, lived apart by himself in a

---

10 This incident of the broken promise is referred to by Aśvaghōsa, Po-sho-king-tsān-king, p. 217, and seems to be the subject of the Bharhut sculpture, pl. xiv. fig. 9, where "the little space not filled" is represented, and the broken promise denoted by the broken surface of the ground. It would perhaps be too bold to suggest chitu pātthā-lā for the inscription, where pātthā would be the aorist form of pradd, and the meaning would be "taken or caught (la) in breaking what he gave." The tree certainly favours this identification; and the august figure by the side of Jēta would denote the "Lord of the World," or perhaps "the magistrate" or Śāriputra.

11 I.e., the system of Buddha is founded on truth; alluding to the wish of Jēta to annul the agreement.

12 I.e., where there were no trees.
solitary place. The Lord of the World seeing him, inquired, "What is your affliction, living thus by yourself?" He answered, "My natural disposition being a careless one and an idle one, I had no patience to look on a man sick (to attend on the sick), and now when I am entangled in sickness there is nobody to look on me (attend to me)." Tathāgata, moved with pity thereat, addressed him and said, "My son! I will look on you!" and then touching him, as he bent down, with his hand, lo! the sickness was immediately healed; then leading him forth to the outside of the door, he spread a fresh mat for him and himself, washed his body and changed his clothes for new ones.

Then Buddha addressed the Bhikshu, "From this time be diligent and exert yourself." Hearing this, he repented of his idleness, was moved by gratitude, and, filled with joy, he followed him.

To the north-west of the garden of Anāthapindāda is a little stūpa. This is the place where Mudgalaputra (Mo-te-kia-lo-tseu) vainly exerted his spiritual power in order to lift the girdle (sash) of Śāriputra (She-li-tseu). Formerly, when Buddha was residing near the lake Wu-jeh-no, in the midst of an assembly of men and Dēvas, only Śāriputra (She-li-tseu) was absent (had not time to join the assembly) Then Buddha summoned Mudgalaputra, and bade him go and command him to attend. Mudgalaputra accordingly went.

Śāriputra was at the time engaged in repairing his religious vestments. Mudgalaputra addressing him said, "The Lord, who is now dwelling beside the Anavatapta lake, has ordered me to summon you."

Śāriputra said, "Wait a minute, till I have finished repairing my garment, and then I will go with you."

---

13 This differs from Julien’s version; he makes the fault of the Bhikshu to consist in neglecting his own sickness; but it seems rather to have been his former indifference to the sickness of others. For an incident somewhat like that in the text, see Sacred Books of the East, vol. xvii. p. 241.

14 No feverish affliction, i.e., cool; antaravatapta. See ante, vol. i. p. 11, note 28.
Mudgalaputra said, "If you do not come quickly, I will exert my spiritual power, and carry both you and your house to the great assembly."

Then Sāriputra, loosing his sash, threw it on the ground and said, "If you can lift this sash, then perhaps my body will move (or, then I will start)." Mudgalaputra exerted all his spiritual power to raise the sash, yet it moved not. Then the earth trembled in consequence. On returning by his spiritual power of locomotion to the place where Buddha was, he found Sāriputra already arrived and sitting in the assembly. Mudgalaputra sighing said, "Now then I have learned that the power of working miracles is not equal to the power of wisdom." 15

Not far from the stūpa just named is a well. Tathāgata, when in the world, drew from this well for his personal use. By the side of it is a stūpa which was built by Aśoka-rāja; in it are some sārīras 16 of Tathāgata; here also are spots where there are traces of walking to and fro and preaching the law. To commemorate both these circumstances, (the king) erected a pillar and built the stūpa. A mysterious sense of awe surrounds the precincts of the place; many miracles are manifested also. Sometimes heavenly music is heard, at other times divine odours are perceived. The lucky (happy) presages (or, the omens that indicate religious merit) would be difficult to recount in full.

Not far behind the saṅghārāma (of Anāthapindada) is the place where the Brahmachārins killed a courtesan, in order to lay the charge of murdering her on Buddha (in order to slander him). Now Tathāgata was possessed of the tenfold powers, 17 without fear, perfectly wise, honoured

---

15 Mudgalaputra excelled all the other disciples in miraculous power, Sāriputra excelled in wisdom. Fo-sho-hing-tean king, ver. 1406.
16 There is no mention of Sāriputra in the text, as Julien translates; the two symbols, she li, for sārīra, misled him.
17 Buddha was called Daśabala (shi-li) on account of the ten powers he possessed, for which see Burnouf, Lotus, p. 781, and Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 394.
18 Abhaya, an epithet given to every Buddha (Eitel, Landbook, s. v.)
by men and Dēvas,\textsuperscript{19} reverenced by saints and sages; then the heretics consulting together said, "We must devise some evil about him, that we may slander him before the congregation." Accordingly they allured and bribed this courtesan to come, as it were, to hear Buddha preach, and then, the congregation having knowledge of the fact of her presence, they (the heretics) took her and secretly killed her and buried her body beside a tree, and then, pretending to be affected with resentment, they acquainted the king (with the fact of the woman's death). The king ordered search to be made, and the body was found in the Jētavanā. Then the heretics with a loud voice said, "This great Śramaṇa Gautama\textsuperscript{20} is ever preaching about moral duty and about patience (forbearance), but now having had secret correspondence with this woman, he has killed her so as to stop her mouth; but now, in the presence of adultery and murder, what room is there for morality and continence?" The Dēvas then in the sky joined together their voices and chanted, "This is a slander of the infamous heretics."

To the east of the saṅghārāma 100 paces or so is a large and deep ditch; this is where Dēvadatta,\textsuperscript{21} having plotted to kill Buddha with some poisonous medicine, fell down into hell. Dēvadatta was the son of Drōṇḍaṇa-rāja (Ho-wang). Having applied himself for twelve years with earnestness, he was able to recite 80,000 (verses) from the treasury of the law. Afterwards, prompted by covetousness, he wished to acquire the divine (supernatural) faculties. Associating himself with evil companions, they consulted together, and he spake thus: "I possess thirty marks (of a Buddha), not much less than Buddha himself; a great

\textsuperscript{19} Devamamussapujitam.  
\textsuperscript{20} This is Buddha's gotra name, taken from the name probably of the Purōhita of the Sākyas. It is used in Northern books as a term of disrespect.  
\textsuperscript{21} Dēvadatta (Ti-po-ta-to) the cousin of Buddha, being the son of Drōṇḍaṇa, Buddha's uncle. He is also said to be his brother-in-law, being brother to Yasōdhara, Buddha's wife. He was tempted to aim at the first place in the Buddhist community, and when he failed in this he plotted to take the life of Buddha. (See Oldenberg, Buddha, p. 160.)
company of followers surround me; in what respect do I differ from Tathāgata?" Having thought thus, he forthwith tried to put a stumbling-block in the way of the disciples, but Śāriputra and Mudgalaputra, obedient to Buddha's behest, and endowed with the spiritual power of Buddha himself, preached the law exhorting the disciples to re-union. Then Dēvadatta, not giving up his evil designs, wickedly placed some poison under his nails, designating to kill Buddha when he was paying him homage. For the purpose of executing this design he came from a long distance to this spot, but the earth opening, he went down alive into hell.

To the south of this again there is a great ditch, where Kukālī²² the Bhikshunī slandered Tathāgata, and went down alive into hell.

To the south of the Kukālī ditch about 800 paces is a large and deep ditch. Chanścha,²³ the daughter of a Brāhmaṇa, calumniated Tathāgata, and here went down alive into hell. Buddha was preaching, for the sake of Dēvas and men, the excellent doctrines of the law, when a female follower of the heretics, seeing from afar the Lord of the World surrounded by a great congregation who venerated and reverenced him, thought thus with herself, "I will this very day destroy the good name of this Gautama, in order that my teacher may alone enjoy a wide reputation." Then tying a piece of wood next her person, she went to the garden of Anāthapiṇḍada, and in the midst of the great congregation she cried with a loud voice and said, "This preacher of yours has had private intercourse with me, and I bear his child in my womb, the offspring of the Śākya tribe." The heretics all believed it, but the prudent knew it was a slander. At this time, Śakra, the king of Dēvas, wishing to dissipate all doubt about the matter, took the form of a

²² Kukālī (Kiu-kia-li-pi-tsu) also called Kōkālī, interpreted "bad-time." She is also called Gōpālī; she was a follower of Dēvadatta.

²³ For the history of this woman, called Chinčhi (Chan-che) or Chin-chimanā, see Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 275; also Fa-hian, chap. xx.
white rat, and nibbled through the bandage that fastened the (wooden) pillow to her person. Having done so, it fell down to the ground with a great noise, which startled the assembly. Then the people, witnessing this event, were filled with increased joy; and one in the crowd picking up the wooden bolster, held it up and showed it to the woman, saying, "Is this your child, thou bad one?" Then the earth opened of itself, and she went down whole into the lowest hell of Āvīchā, and received her due punishment.

These three ditches are unfathomable in their depth; when the floods of summer and autumn fill all the lakes and ponds with water, these deep caverns show no signs of the water standing in them.

East of the sanghārāma 60 or 70 paces is a vihāra about 60 feet high. There is in it a figure of Buddha looking to the east in a sitting posture. When Tathāgata was in the world in old days, he discussed here with the heretics. Farther east is a Dēva temple of equal size with the vihāra. When the sun is rising, the Dēva temple does not cast its shade on the vihāra, but when it is setting, the vihāra obscures the Dēva temple.

Three or four li to the east of the vihāra "which covers with its shadow" is a stūpa. This is where Śāriputra discussed with the heretics. When Sudatta first bought the garden of the Prince Jēta for the purpose of building a vihāra for Buddha, then Śāriputra accompanied the nobleman to inspect and assist the plan. On this occasion six masters of the heretics sought to deprive him of his spiritual power. Śāriputra, as occasion offered, brought them to reason and subdued them. There is a vihāra by the side, in front of which is built a stūpa; this is where Tathāgata defeated the heretics and acceded to the request of Viśākhā.

24 These gullfs or ditches have all been identified by Cunningham. See *Arch. Surrey*, vol. i. p. 342.
25 That is, accepted her offer to build a vihāra. For the history of Viśākhā, see Hardy, *Man. of Budh.*, p. 220 seq.
On the south of the stūpa erected on the spot where Buddha acceded to Viśākhā's request is the place where Virūḍhaka-rāja, having raised an army to destroy the family of the Śākyas, on seeing Buddha dispersed his soldiers. After King Virūḍhaka had succeeded to the throne, stirred up to hatred by his former disgrace, he equipped an army and moved forward with a great force. The summer heat being ended and everything arranged, he commanded an advance. At this time a Bhikṣhu, having heard of it, told Buddha; on this the Lord of the World was sitting beneath a withered tree; Virūḍhaka-rāja, seeing him thus seated, some way off alighted from his chariot and paid him reverence, then as he stood up he said, "There are plenty of green and umbrageous trees; why do you not sit beneath one of these, instead of under this withered one with dried leaves, where you walk and sit?" The Lord said, "My honourable tribe is like branches and leaves; these being about to perish, what shade can there be for one belonging to it?" The king said, "The Lord of the World by his honourable regard for his family is able to turn my chariot." Then looking at him with emotion, he disbanded his army and returned to his country.

By the side of this place is a stūpa; this is the spot where the Śākya maidens were slaughtered. Virūḍhaka-rāja having destroyed the Śākyas, in celebration of his victory, took 500 of the Śākya maidens for his harem. The girls, filled with hatred and rage, said they would never obey the king, and reviled the king and his household. The king, hearing of it, was filled with rage, and ordered them all to be slaughtered. Then the officers, obedient to the king's orders, cut off their hands and feet, and cast them into a ditch. Then all the Śākya maidens, nursing their grief, invoked Buddha. The Lord

26 Virūḍhaka was the son of Prasānajit by a servant-woman of the Śākyas. He had asked a wife
by his sacred power of insight having beheld their pain and agony, bade a Bhikshu take his garment and go to preach the most profound doctrine to the Śākya girls, viz., on the bonds of the five desires, the misery of transmigration in the evil ways, the pain of separation between loved ones, and the long period (distance) of birth and death. Then the Śākya maidens, having heard the instructions of Buddha, put away the defilement of sense, removed all pollutions, and obtained the purity of the eyes of the law; then they died and were all born in heaven. Then Śakra, king of Dēvas, taking the form of a Brāhman, collected their bones and burnt them. Men of succeeding years have kept this record.

By the side of the stūpa commemorating the slaughter of the Śākyas, and not far from it, is a great lake which has dried up. This is where Virūḍhaka-rāja went down bodily into hell. The world-honoured one having seen the Śākya maidens, went back to the Jētavana, and there told the Bhikshus, “Now is King Virūḍhaka’s end come; after seven days’ interval a fire will come forth to burn up the king.” The king hearing the prediction, was very frightened and alarmed. On the seventh day he was rejoiced that no harm had come, and in order to gratify himself he ordered the women of his palace to go to the lake, and there he sported with them on its shores, strolling here and there with music and drinking. Still, however, he feared lest fire should burst out. Suddenly, whilst he was on the pure waters of the lake, the waves divided, and flames burst forth and consumed the little boat in which he was, and the king himself went down bodily into the lowest hell, there to suffer torments.

To the north-west of the saṅghārāma 3 or 4 li, we come to the forest of Obtaining-Sight (Āptanētravana ?) where are vestiges of Tathāgata, who walked here for exercise, and the place where various holy persons have engaged in profound meditation. In all these places they have erected posts with inscriptions or else stūpas.
Formerly there was in this country a band of 500 robbers, who roamed about through the towns and villages and pillaged the border of the country. Prasenajita-rāja having seized them all, caused their eyes to be put out and abandoned them in the midst of a dark forest. The robbers, racked with pain, sought compassion as they invoked Buddha. At this time Tathāgata was in the vihāra of the Jētavana, and hearing their piteous cries (i.e., by his spiritual power), he was moved to compassion, and caused a soft wind to blow gently from the Snowy Mountains, and bring with it some medicinal (leaves?) which filled up the cavity of their eye-sockets. They immediately recovered their sight, and lo! the Lord of the World was standing before them. Arriving at the heart of wisdom, they rejoiced and worshipped. Fixing their walking-staves in the ground, they departed. This was how they took root and grew.

To the north-west of the capital 16 li or so, there is an old town. In the Bhadra-kalpa when men lived to 20,000 years, this was the town in which Kāśyapa Buddha was born. To the south of the town there is a stūpa. This is the place where he first met his father after arriving at enlightenment.

To the north of the town is a stūpa, which contains relics of the entire body of Kāśyapa Buddha. Both these were built by Asoka-rāja. From this point going south-east 500 li or so, we come to the country of Kie-pi-lo-fa-sse-ti (Kapilavastu).

KIE-PI-LO-FA-SSE-TI [KAPILAVASTU].

This country is about 4000 li in circuit. There are

27 The expression used here is the same as that employed by Fa-hian when speaking of the great Kāśyapa (chap. xxxiii.), whose "entire body" is preserved in the Cock's-foot Mountain near Buddha Gayā.

28 This is the country of Buddha's birth. The story of his ancestors' occupation of this district will be found in Sp. Hardy, *Man. of Budh*, chap. vi., and elsewhere. Speaking generally, the country of Kapilavastu is the tract of land lying be-
some ten desert cities in this country, wholly desolate and ruined. The capital is overthrown and in ruins. Its circuit cannot be accurately measured. The royal precincts within the city measure some 14 or 15 li round. They were all built of brick. The foundation walls are still strong and high. It has been long deserted. The peopled villages are few and waste.

There is no supreme ruler; each of the towns appoints its own ruler. The ground is rich and fertile, and is cultivated according to the regular season. The climate is uniform, the manners of the people soft and obliging. There are 1000 or more ruined saṅghārāmas remaining; by the side of the royal precincts there is still a saṅghārāma with about 3000 (read 30) followers in it, who study the Little Vehicle of the Saṃmatiya school.

There are a couple of Dēva temples, in which various sectaries worship (live). Within the royal precincts are some ruined foundation walls; these are the remains of the proper palace of Śuddhodana-rāja; above is built a vihāra in which is a statue of the king. Not far from this is a ruined foundation, which represents the sleeping
tween the Ghâgrâ river and the Gaṇḍakâ, from Faḻzâbâd to the confluence of these rivers. The direct measurement gives a circuit of 550 miles, which would represent upwards of 600 miles by road. Hsiun Tsang estimates the circuit at 4000 li. The capital of the country, called by the same name, has been identified by Mr. Carleyle, with a site called Bhuila, in the north-western part of the Basta district, about 25 miles north-east from Faḻzâbâd. It is plain that if this is so, the distance from Śrâvasti given by Hsiun Tsang is much in excess of the actual distance. See Arch. Survey of India, vol. xii. p. 83.

29 The expressions used in the text are very marked; the pilgrim says "desert cities ten in number are waste and desolate to the highest degree."
30 Here we have again the expression kung shing to denote the fortified part of the town, within which was the palace and its surroundings. This is in agreement with Mr. Carleyle's remark in Archaeol. Survey of India, vol. xii. p. 144.
31 Or, the inhabited suburbs or streets.
32 It may be either "the proper," i.e., private, or "the principal" palace (chhing). From Mr. Carleyle's remarks we may perhaps conclude that this palace was situated in the southern portion of the enclosed precinct. The vihāra had evidently been built after the palace was in ruins. The statue of the king seems to have been there in Hsiun Tsang's time.
palace of Mahâmâyâ, the queen. Above this they have erected a vihâra in which is a figure of the queen.

By the side of this is a vihâra; this is where Bôdhisattva descended spiritually into the womb of his mother. There is a representation of this scene drawn in the vihâra. The Mahâsthavira school say that Bôdhisattva was conceived on the 30th night of the month U-ta-lo’-an-sha-cha (Utarâshâdha). This is the 15th day of the 5th month (with us). The other schools fix the event on the 23rd day of the same month. This would be the 8th day of the 5th month (with us).

To the north-east of the palace of the spiritual conception is a stûpa; this is the place where Asita the Rishi prognosticated the fortune (took the horoscope or signs of) the royal prince. On the day when the Bôdhisattva was born there was a gathering (a succession) of lucky indications. Then Śuddhâdana-râja summoned all the soothsayers, and addressing them said, “With respect to this child, what are the fortunate and what the evil (signs)? As it is right, so do you clearly answer me.” In reply they said, “According to the record of the former saints the signs are especially fortunate. If he remains in secular life he will be a Chakravartin monarch; if he leaves his home he will become a Buddha.”

Mr. Carley le excavated a site which he thinks represents this “bed-chamber.” If we may judge from the size of the building (71 feet square), it would represent the palace of the king and the chamber of the queen. The fact of its being built of “very large ancient bricks” certainly favours the identification of the place with the inner city described by Hiuen Tsang.

Mr. Carley le places this vihâra about 50 feet W.N.W. from the bed-chamber ruins, the stûpa of Asita being situated to the north-east of it.

This representative scene is one of the best known of the Buddhist sculptures. See Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. xxxiii.; Stûpa of Bharhut, pl. xxviii.; Lalita Vistara (Fourcaux), pl. v.

The horoscope cast by Asita the soothsayer is another well-known incident in the Buddhist legend Fo-sho-king-tsan-king, vv. 70 ff. For an interesting representation of it see Mrs. Speirs’ Life in Ancient India, p. 248, also Burgess, Cave Temples (Ajañâ), p. 308. The stûpa of Asita is supposed by Mr. Carley le to be the solid brick structure he found about 400 feet N.N.E. from the bed-chamber of Mâyâ. This may be so; but the horoscope was actually cast within the palace.

Arriveat complete, equal, perfect,
At this time the Rishi Asita, coming from afar, stood before the door, and requested to see the king. The king, overjoyed, went forth to meet and reverence him, and requested him to be seated on a precious chair; then addressing him he said, "It is not without an object that the Great Rishi has condescended to visit me this day." The Rishi said, "I was quietly resting (or, observing the summer rest) in the palace of the Devas, when I suddenly saw the multitude of the Devas dancing together for joy. I forthwith asked why they rejoiced in this extravagant way, on which they said, 'Great Rishi, you should know that to-day is born in Jambudvīpa, of Māyā, the first queen of Śuddhodana-rāja of the Śākya line, a royal son, who shall attain the complete enlightenment of sambodhi, and become all-wise.' Hearing this, I have come accordingly to behold the child; alas! that my age should prevent me awaiting the holy fruit."

At the south gate of the city is a stūpa. This is where the royal prince, when contending with the Śākya princes, cast the elephant away. The royal prince having contended in the public competition (of arts and athletic exercises), was left entirely alone (without compere) among them all, (or, in every exercise). And now the wisdom. "To leave his home" means, if he becomes a hermit or ascetic. The signs on the child's body are alluded to in ver. 45 of the Buddha-charita (Fo-sho-king-tsam-king), and the exact words of the prediction in the following verse, 46.

23 From this it is plain that the site on which the stūpa was afterwards built was originally a part of the palace.

26 Shau mo tsuk to, moving their hands and feet. Such a scene among the Devas will be found in Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. lxxiii. fig. 2.

27 Julien remarks in a note that this phrase yeh tsai chi (Sambuddhasa) corresponds to the name given to the prince, viz., Sarvārthasiddha, but this signifies "possessed of every excellency" (yeh tsai you i).

41 That is, either seeing him arrived at the holy fruit of a Buddha, or myself arriving at the holy fruit of an Arhat by his teaching.

42 The spot should be just inside the southern gate of the city, not necessarily the royal city or the palace precincts, but the entire city. The story as it is generally received is that the elephant when it fell blocked the gate entrance, and that Nanda pulled it off the road and left it on one side. The prince then flung the elephant across the moat. It must, therefore, have been within the moat.
Mahārāja Śuddhodana, after receiving congratulations (or, congratulating him), was about to go back to the city. 

At this time the coachman was leading out the elephant and just about to leave the city. Dēvadatta, confident as ever in his brute strength, was just entering the gate from without; forthwith he asked the coachman, “Who is going to ride on this gaily caparisoned elephant?” He said, “The royal prince is just about to return, therefore I am going to meet him.” Dēvadatta, in an excited manner, pulled the elephant down, and struck his forehead and kicked his belly, and left him lying senseless, blocking the way so that no one could pass. As they could not move him out of the way, the passers-by were stopped on their route. Nanda coming afterwards, asked, “Who has killed the elephant?” They said, “It was Dēvadatta.” Forthwith he (Nanda) drew it on one side of the road. The prince-royal then coming, again asked, “Who had done the foul deed of killing the elephant?” They replied, “Dēvadatta killed it and blocked up the gate with it, and Nanda drew it on one side to clear the road.” The royal prince then lifted the elephant on high and threw it across the city moat; the elephant falling on the ground caused a deep and wide ditch; the people since then have commonly called it “the fallen-elephant ditch.”

By the side of this is a vihāra in which is a figure of the royal prince. By the side of this again is a vihāra; this was the sleeping apartment of the queen and the prince; in it is a likeness of Yasodharā and (the child)

Julien makes this return refer to the prince. But there is no mention made of him, but of the king.

That is, the “Hastigarta.” There is a circular tank about 340 feet to the south of the ditch of Bhuila which is still called the “Hāthi Kund” or “Hāthi Gadhe.” General Cunningham is perfectly convinced that this is the spot indicated in the text (Arch. Surv., vol. xii. Introd.) But, of course, the whole matter is legendary. The vihāras by the side of this ditch, and said to be built on the site of the palace of the prince and his wife, would indicate that his palace was outside the walls; how, then, are we to explain the story of his flight from the palace?
Rāhula. By the side of the queen's chamber is a vihāra with a figure of a pupil receiving his lessons; this indicates the old foundation of the school-house of the royal prince.

At the south-east angle of the city is a vihāra in which is the figure of the royal prince riding a white and high-prancing horse; this was the place where he left the city. Outside each of the four gates of the city there is a vihāra in which there are respectively figures of an old man, a diseased man, a dead man, and a Śrāman. It was in these places the royal prince, on going his rounds, beheld the various indications, on which he received an increase of (religious) feeling, and deeper disgust at the world and its pleasures; and, filled with this conviction, he ordered his coachman to return and go home again.

To the south of the city going 50 li or so, we come to an old town where there is a stūpa. This is the place where Krakučehchhanda Buddha was born, during the Bhadra-kalpa when men lived to 60,000 years.

To the south of the city, not far, there is a stūpa; this is the place where, having arrived at complete enlightenment, he met his father.

To the south-east of the city is a stūpa where are that Tathāgata's relics (of his bequeathed body); before it is erected a stone pillar about 30 feet high, on the top of which is carved a lion. By its side (or, on its side) is a

45 Julien gives "a white elephant."
46 That is, the sights which met the prince's gaze when he left the city on his excursion. These predictive signs are well known. They are found also in the History of Barisam and Josaph (Bodhisat), to which I called attention in the year 1869, Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 86, n. Mr. Carleyle notices four mounds outside the citadel of Bhulla corresponding with the sites of these vihāras.
47 Krakučehchhanda was the first of the five Buddhas of the Bhadra kalpa. The fabled birthplace of this Buddha must be sought about a yōjana (8 miles) to the south-west of Kapilavastu, and not, as Mr. Carleyle indicates, at Nagra, 7¼ miles to the north-west of that place. Fa-hian visited this place after leaving Śrāvasti, then went north about 8 miles, then east 8 miles to Kapilavastu. Ind. Ant., vol. xi. p. 293.
48 Mr. Carleyle, when at Nagra, thought he had discovered the pedestal on which this pillar stood; the pillar was gone, and the natives denied all knowledge of it or its history. Their ignorance is not to
record relating the circumstances of his Nirvāṇa. It was erected by Aśoka-rāja.

To the north-east of the town of Krakuchchhandha Buddha, going about 30 li, we come to an old capital (or, great city) in which there is a stūpa. This is to commemorate the spot where, in the Bhadra-kalpa when men lived to the age of 40,000 years, Kanakamuni Buddha was born. 49

To the north-east of the city, not far, is a stūpa; it was here, having arrived at complete enlightenment, he met his father.

Farther north there is a stūpa containing the relics of his bequeathed body; in front of it is a stone pillar with a lion on the top, and about 20 feet high; on this is inscribed a record of the events connected with his Nirvāṇa; this was built by Aśoka-raja.

To the north-east of the city about 40 li is a stūpa. This is the spot where the prince sat in the shade of a tree to watch the ploughing festival. Here he engaged in profound meditation and reached the condition of “absence of desire.” 50 The king seeing the prince in the shade of the tree and engrossed in quiet contemplation, and observing that whilst the sun’s rays shed their bright light around him, yet the shadow of the tree did not move,
his heart, recognising the spiritual character of the prince, was deeply reverent.

To the north-west of the capital there are several hundreds and thousands of stūpas, indicating the spot where the members of the Sākyas tribe were slaughtered. Virūdhaka-rāja having subdued the Sākyas, and captured the members of their tribe to the number of 9990 myriads of people, then ordered them to be slaughtered. They piled their bodies like straw, and their blood was collected in lakes. The Dévas moved the hearts of men to collect their bones and bury them.

To the south-west of the place of massacre are four little stūpas. This is the place where the four Sākyas withstood an army. When first Prasēnajita became king, he sought an alliance by marriage with the Sākya race. The Sākyas despised him as not of their family, and so deceived him by giving him as a wife a child of a servant, whom they largely endowed. Prasēnajitara-rāja established her as his principal queen, and she brought forth in due time a son, who was called Virūdhaka-rāja. And now Virūdhaka was desirous to go to the family of his maternal uncles to pursue his studies under their direction. Having come to the south part of the city, he there saw a new preaching-hall, and there he stopped his chariot. The Sākyas hearing of it, forthwith drove him away, saying, "How dare you, base-born fellow! occupy this abode, an abode built by the Sākyas, in appearance (or, intended for) an abode of Buddha?"

After Virūdhaka had succeeded to the throne he longed to revenge his former insult; he therefore raised an army

---

51 The enmity of Virūdhaka (Phul-tse-kia) was owing to the insult the Sākyas had paid his father in wedding him to a slave, and also to the epithet "base born" they applied to him (see ante, vol. i. p. 123). His father, Prasēnajita, was not a kinsman of the Sākyas (as Mr. Carleyle states, p. 173), but an alien. The position the Sākyas held as "a holy family" is a peculiarity not yet thoroughly understood. The site of the slaughter has been identified with a place called Bhatā or Badhā, about 8 miles to the north-west of Bhuila.
and occupied this place with his troops, who took possession of the fields. Four men of the Śâkyas who were engaged in ploughing between the watercourses 52 immediately opposed the progress of the soldiers, and having scattered them, entered the town. Their clansmen, considering that their tribe was one in which there had been a long succession of universal monarchs, and that the honourable children of such righteous kings 53 had dared to act cruelly and impetuously, and without patience to kill and slay, and so had brought disgrace on their family, drove them away from their home.

The four men, having been banished, went to the north among the Snowy Mountains; one became king of the country of Bamiyan, one of Udyâna, one of Himatâla, one of Šâmbi (Kausâmbi?). They have transmitted their kingly authority from generation to generation without any interruption. 54

To the south of the city 3 or 4 li is a grove of Nyagrodha trees in which is a stūpa built by Asoka-râja. This is the place where Śâkyya Tathâgata, having returned to his country after his enlightenment, met his father and preached the law. 55 Śuddhodana-râja, knowing that Tathâgata had defeated Mâra and was engaged in travelling about, leading people to the truth and converting them, was moved by a strong desire to see him, and considered how he could pay him the reverence due to him. He therefore sent a messenger to invite Tathâgata, saying, “Formerly you promised, when you had completed your purpose to become a Buddha, to return to your native place. These are your words still unperformed; now then

52 Hân man, the rills dividing fields.
53 This is a difficult passage, and the translation doubtful, but it is less obscure than that in the French. The idea is that Śâkyya children, descended from holy kings, ought not to have resisted even an invader.
54 This story of the banishment of the Śâkya youths is met with in the Southern records (Mahâvamsâ). See Max Müller, Hist. Anc. Sanâk. Lit., p. 285. The story of the king of Udyâna and the Nâga girl occurs above, Book iii, vol. i. p. 129.
55 For this part of Buddha’s history see Fô-sho-hing-tsan-king, varga 19.
is the time for you to condescend to visit me." The messenger having come to the place where Buddha was, expressed to him the king's desire (mind). Tathāgata in reply said, "After seven days I will return to my native place." The messenger returning, acquainted the king with the news, on which Šuddhodana-rāja ordered his subjects to prepare the way by watering and sweeping it, and to adorn the road with incense and flowers; and then, accompanied by his officers of state, he proceeded 40 li beyond the city, and there drew up his chariot to await his arrival. Then Tathāgata with a great multitude advanced; the eight Vajrapānis surrounded him as an escort, the four heavenly kings went before him; divine Śakra, with a multitude of Dēvas belonging to the world of desires (Kāma-lōka), took their place on the left hand; Brahmā-rāja with Dēvas of Rūpa-lōka accompanied him on the right. The Bhikshu priests walked in order behind, Buddha by himself, as the full moon among the stars, stood in the midst; his supreme spiritual presence shook the three worlds, the brightness of his person exceeded that of the seven lights; 56 and thus traversing the air he approached his native country. 57 The king and ministers having reverenced him, again returned to the kingdom, and they located themselves in this Nyagrōdha grove.

By the side of the saṅghārāma, and not far from it, is a stūpa; this is the spot where Tathāgata sat beneath a great tree with his face to the east and received from his aunt a golden-tissued kashāya garment. 58 A little farther on is another stūpa; this is the place where Tathāgata converted eight king's sons and 500 Śākyas.

Within the eastern gate of the city, on the left of the road, is a stūpa; this is where the Prince Siddārtha practised (athletic sports and competitive) arts.

56 Sun, moon, and five planets.
57 The exaggeration found in the visit of Buddha to his native country is common to all the records.
58 This is the garment supposed to be kept by the great Kāśyapa in the Cock's-foot Mountain for Maitrēya. Buddha's aunt was Mahāprajāpati, who was at the head of the female disciples.
Outside the gate is the temple of Ṣvāra-dēva. In the temple is a figure of the Dēva made of stone, which has the appearance of rising in a bent position. This is the temple which the royal prince when an infant (in swaddling clothes) entered. King Śuddhodana was returning from the Lumbīnī (Lavani—La-fa-ni) garden, after having gone to meet the prince. Passing by this temple the king said, “This temple is noted for its many spiritual exhibitions (miracles). The Śākya children who here seek divine protection always obtain what they ask; we must take the royal prince to this place and offer up our worship.” At this time the nurse (foster-mother), carrying the child in her arms, entered the temple; then the stone image raised itself and saluted the prince. When the prince left, the image again seated itself.

Outside the south gate of the city, on the left of the road, is a stūpa; it was here the royal prince contended with the Śākyas in athletic sports (arts) and pierced with his arrows the iron targets.

From this 30 li south-east is a small stūpa. Here there is a fountain, the waters of which are as clear as a mirror. Here it was, during the athletic contest, that the

---

50 This is, as it seems, the meaning of the passage, literally, “the appearance of rising, bendingly,” i.e., rising and bending. This rendering, which differs so widely from Julien’s, is confirmed by the scene found in Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. lxxi (upper disc), where the large figure “rising bendingly” is that of Śvāra, and the cloth with the feet marked on it represents the infant Buddha. Sudhodana and Māyā (or Prajakat) are also represented.

51 In the plate referred to above, there are none but women present (except Sudhodana), as if they were praying for their children.

52 The account of the contest with the Śākya princes will be found in the Romantic Legend of Buddha. See also Fa-hian, p. 86, n. 3. The spot is identified by Mr. Carleyle; Report, p. 187.

53 Fa-hian places this stūpa at the same distance and in the same direction. It has been identified with a spot called Sur-kui, a corruption of Sara-kūpa (arrow well), about 4½ miles due south of the former stūpa (Arch. Survey, vol. xii. p. 188). The bearing does not, however, correspond with that given by the Chinese pilgrims. The story of the arrow is given in the Laiba Vistara, p. 149.
arrow of the prince, after penetrating the targets, fell and buried itself up to the feather in the ground, causing a clear spring of water to flow forth. Common tradition has called this the arrow fountain (Sarakūpa); persons who are sick by drinking the water of this spring are mostly restored to health; and so people coming from a distance taking back with them some of the mud (moist earth) of this place, and applying it to the part where they suffer pain, mostly recover from their ailments.

To the north-east of the arrow well about 80 or 90 li, we come to the Lumbini (Lavani) garden. Here is the bathing tank of the Śākyas, the water of which is bright and clear as a mirror, and the surface covered with a mixture of flowers.

To the north of this 24 or 25 paces there is an Aśoka-flower tree, which is now decayed; this is the place where Boddhisattva was born on the eighth day of the second half of the month called Vaiśākha, which corresponds with us to the eighth day of the third month. The school of the Sthāviras (Shang-tso-pu) say it was on the fifteenth day of the second half of the same month, corresponding to the fifteenth day of the third month with us. East from this is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja, on the spot where the two dragons bathed the body of the prince. When Boddhisattva was born, he walked without assistance in the direction of the four quarters, seven paces in each direction, and said, “I am the only lord in heaven and earth; from this time forth my births are finished.” Where his feet had trod there sprang up great lotus flowers. Moreover, two dragons sprang forth, and, fixed in the air, poured down the one a cold and the other a warm water stream from his mouth, to wash the prince.

To the east of this stūpa are two fountains of pure

64 Wu-yu-shu. It is curious that it should be so frequently stated that the child was born under a sal tree (Carlleyle, op. cit., p. 200, and elsewhere); S. Hardy, Man. Bud., p. 167.

65 For all these events the ordinary Lives of Buddha may be consulted. I have been unable to follow Mr. Carlleyle in his various identifications of the spots named in the text.
water, by the side of which have been built two stūpas. This is the place where two dragons appeared from the earth. When Bōdhisattva was born, the attendants and household relations hastened in every direction to find water for the use of the child. At this time two springs gurgled forth from the earth just before the queen, the one cold, the other warm, using which they bathed him.

To the south of this is a stūpa. This is the spot where Śakra, the lord of Dévas, received Bōdhisattva in his arms. When Bōdhisattva was born, then Śakra, the king of Dévas, took him and wrapped him in an exquisite and divine robe.

Close to this there are four stūpas to denote the place where the four heavenly kings received Bōdhisattva in their arms. When Bōdhisattva was born from the right side of his mother, the four kings wrapped him in a golden-coloured cotton vestment, and placing him on a golden slab (bench) and bringing him to his mother, they said, “The queen may rejoice indeed at having given birth to such a fortunate child!” If the Dévas rejoiced at the event, how much more should men!

By the side of these stūpas and not far from them is a great stone pillar, on the top of which is the figure of a horse, which was built by Aśoka-raja. Afterwards, by the contrivance of a wicked dragon, it was broken off in the middle and fell to the ground. By the side of it is a little river which flows to the south-east. The people of the place call it the river of oil. This is the stream which the Dévas caused to appear as a pure and glistening pool for the queen, when she had brought forth her child, to wash and purify herself in. Now it is changed and become a river, the stream of which is still unctuous.

From this going east 300 li or so, across a wild and deserted jungle, we arrive at the kingdom of Lan-mo (Rāmagrāma).

66 It is plain from this that “the where the child was born, and flowed river of oil” was close to the spot through the garden.
LAN-mo [Râmagrâma].

The kingdom of Lan-mo 67 has been waste and desolate for many years. There is no account of its extent. The towns are decayed and the inhabitants few.

To the south-east of the old capital (town) there is a brick stûpa, in height less than 100 feet. Formerly, after the Nirvâna of Tathâgata, a previous king of this country having got a share of the sarîras of his body, returned home with them, and to honour these relics he built (this stûpa). Miraculous signs are here displayed, and a divine light from time to time shines around.

By the side of the stûpa is a clear lake (tank). A dragon at certain periods 68 comes forth and walks here, and changing his form and snake-like exterior, marches round the stûpa, turning to the right to pay it honour. The wild elephants come in herds, gather flowers, and scatter them here. Impelled by a mysterious power, they have continued to offer this service from the first till now. In former days, when Aśoka-râja, dividing the relics, built stûpas, having opened the stûpas built by the kings of the seven countries, he proceeded to travel to this country, and put his hand to the work (viz., of opening this stûpa); 69 the dragon, apprehending the desecration of the place, changed himself into the form of a Brâhman, and going in front, he bowed down before the elephant 70

---

67 The Chinese equivalents give us simply Râma, but that is the name of the country. Râmagrâma would be the old capital. There can be no doubt as to the restoration; the Mahâvastu refers to the relio tower of Râmagrâma (Turnour's Mahâv., pp. 184, 185), which is described by Hiuen Tsang and Fa-hian. The site has not been satisfactorily determined. See Cunningham, Anc. Geog., pp. 420 f.
68 Or it may be translated "every day."
69 This translation differs entirely from Julien’s; the story, however, of Aśoka’s dividing the relics which the seven kings had acquired after the cremation is well known. (See Po-sho-king-tyan-king, vers. 2297, 2298).
70 It is possible that siang (elephant) in this passage is a misprint for chow (head): it would then be, “knocking his head (khow chow) before the king, he said,” &c.; but as there is allusion to a carriage or conveyance in the next sentence, the reading may be correct.
and said, "Mahârâja! your feelings are well affected to the law of Buddha, and you have largely planted (good seed) in the field of religious merit. I venture to ask you to detain your carriage awhile and condescend to visit my dwelling." The king replied, "And where is your dwelling? is it near at hand?" The Brâhman said, "I am the Nâga king of this lake. As I have heard that the great king desires to build a superior field of merit, I have ventured to ask you to visit my abode." The king, receiving this invitation, immediately entered the dragon precinct, and sitting there for some time, the Nâga advanced towards him and said, "Because of my evil karma I have received this Nâga body; by religious service to these sarîras of Buddha I desire to atone for and efface my guilt. Oh, that the king would himself go and inspect (the stûpa, or, the relics) with a view to worship. Aśoka-râja having seen (the character of the place), was filled with fear, and said, "All these appliances for worship are unlike anything seen amongst men." The Nâga said, "If it be so, would that the king would not attempt to destroy the stûpa!" The king, seeing that he could not measure his power with that of the Nâga, did not attempt to open the stûpa (to take out the relics). At the spot where the dragon came out of the lake is an inscription to the above effect.

Not far from the neighbourhood of this stûpa is a saṅghârâma, with a very few priests attached to it. Their conduct is respectful and scrupulously correct; and one Śrâmaṇera manages the whole business of the society. When any priests come from distant regions, they entertain them with the greatest courtesy and liberality; during three days they keep them in their society, and offer them the four necessary things.

The old tradition is this: Formerly there were some Bhikshus who agreed to come together from a distance,

71 I.e., to obtain a superior merit by building stûpas.
72 For a similar account, see Fa-hian, chap. xxiii.
73 Food, drink, clothing, medicine.
74 So I translate tung chi, "were of the same mind." Julien renders
and to travel to worship this stūpa. They saw when they had arrived a herd of elephants, coming and departing together. Some of them brought on their tusks shrubs (leaves and branches), others with their trunks sprinkled water, some of them brought different flowers, and all offered worship (as they stood) to the stūpa. When the Bhikshus saw this, they were moved with joy and deeply affected. Then one of them giving up his full orders (ordination), vowed to remain here and offer his services continually (to the stūpa), and expressing his thoughts to the others, he said, "I indeed, considering these remarkable signs of abounding merit, count as nothing my own excessive labours during many years amongst the priests." This stūpa having some relics of Buddha, by the mysterious power of its sacred character draws together the herd of elephants, who water the earth around the bequeathed body (of the saint). It would be pleasant to finish the rest of my years in this place, and to obtain with the elephants the end (at which they aim)." They all replied, "This is an excellent design; as for ourselves, we are stained by our heavy (sins); our wisdom is not equal to the formation of such a design; but according to your opportunity look well to your own welfare, and cease not your efforts in this excellent purpose."

Having departed from the rest, he again repeated his earnest vow, and with joy devoted himself to a solitary life during the rest of his days.

it, "their brethren," as the equivalent of "those of the same mind," and he makes these invite (siang chau) the other. It may be so, but there were evidently no brethren at the stūpa, as the narrative shows. This old tradition is also related by Fa-hian (chap. xxiii.)

75 This appears to me to be the meaning of the passage: The Bhikshu was led by witnessing the devotion of the elephants to count his own conduct as trifling compared with theirs. He therefore casts in his lot with them. M. Julien takes a different view of the meaning of the original.
On this he constructed for himself a leafy pannasālá, led the rivulets so as to form a pool, and at their proper seasons gathered flowers, and watered and swept and garnished the stūpa. Thus during a succession of years he persevered without change of purpose or plan.

The kings of the neighbouring countries, hearing the history, greatly honoured him; gave up their wealth and treasure, and together founded the saṅghārāma. Then they requested (the Śrāmanēra) to take charge of the affairs of the congregation; and from that time till now there has been no interruption in the original appointment, and a Śrāmanēra has ever held the chief office in the convent.

Eastward from this convent, in the midst of a great forest, after going about 100 li, we come to a great stūpa built by Ašoka-rāja. This is the place where the prince-royal, after having passed from the city, put off his precious robes, loosed his necklace, and ordered his coachman to return home. The prince-royal in the middle of the night traversing the city, at early dawn arrived at this place, and then, heart and body bent on accomplishing his destiny, he said, “Here have I come out of the prison stocks. Here have I shaken off my chains.” This is the place where he left for the last time his harnessed horse, and taking the mani gem from his crown, he commanded his coachman, saying, “Take this gem, and, returning, say to my father the king, now I am going away, not in considerate disobedience, but to banish lust, and to destroy the power of impermanence, and to stop all the leaks of existence.”

77 Pannasāla is a Sinhalese word for “leafy hut,” i.e., a residence made out of boughs of trees.
78 His coachman, or equerry, was called Chaṇḍaka. For an account of his dismissal see Fo-sho-hing-tsang-king, varga 6.
79 The place appears to be “Manēya,” about 34 miles E.S.E. of Bhūlia.
80 It is true that keā means “a chariot;” but it also means “a horse saddled for service;” and as all the evidence, both of the books and sculptures, is in favour of the prince sending back his “horse,” I have used this translation. But it may also be translated “chariot,” as the answer of Chaṇḍaka seems to require.
81 Mo-ṇi, generally called the chaṇḍāmāṇi.
Then Chaṇḍaka (Chen-to-kia) replied, "What heart can I have to go back thus, with a horse without a rider?" The prince having persuaded him with gentle words, his mind was opened and he returned.

To the east of the stūpa where Chaṇḍaka returned is a Jambu tree with leaves and branches fallen off but the trunk still upright. By the side of this is a little stūpa. This is the place where the prince exchanged his precious robe for one made of deerskin. The prince had cut off his hair and exchanged his lower garments, and although he had got rid of his collar of precious stones, yet there was one divine garment (still on his person). "This robe," he said, "is greatly in excess (of my wants); how shall I change it away?" At this time a Śuddhāvāsa-dēva transformed himself into a hunter with robes of deerskin, and holding his bow and carrying his quiver. The prince, raising his garment, addressed him thus: "I am desirous to exchange garments with you. Oh, that you would assent." The hunter said "Good!" The prince, loosing his upper garment, gave it to the hunter. The hunter having received it, resumed his Deva body, and holding the garment he had obtained, rose into the air and departed.

By the side of the stūpa commemorating this event, and not far from it, is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. This is the spot where the prince had his head shaved. The prince taking a knife (sword) from the hands of Chaṇḍaka, himself cut off his locks. Śakra, king of Dēvas, took the hair to his heavenly palace to offer it worship. At this time a Śuddhāvāsa-dēva, transforming himself into a barber, and holding his razor in his hand, advanced towards the prince. The latter hereupon addressed him, "Can you shave off the hair? Will you favour me by so doing to

---

82 His robe ornamented with various gems. I find nothing about "a hunter" in the text, although it was with a hunter the exchange was made.

83 A Dēva of the "pure abodes;" a Dēva of the five highest Rūpabrahma heavens. See Childers' Pāli Dict. sub voc. Sattalōka.
me?” The transformed Dèva being so directed, accordingly shaved his head.

The time when the prince left the city and became a recluse is not quite fixed. Some say that Bôdhisattva was then nineteen years of age; others say he was twenty-nine, and that it was on the eighth day of the second half of the month Vaisâkha, which corresponds to our fifteenth day of the third month.

To the south-east of the head-shaving stûpa, in the middle of a desert, going 180 or 190 li, we come to a Nyagrôdhâ grove in which there is a stûpa about 30 feet high. Formerly, when Tathâgata had died and his remains had been divided, the Brâhmans who had obtained none, came to the place of cremation, and taking the remnant of coals and cinders to their native country, built this stûpa over them, and offered their religious services to it. Since then wonderful signs have occurred in this place; sick persons who pray and worship here are mostly cured.

By the side of the ashes stûpa is an old saṅghârâma, where there are traces of the four former Buddhas, who walked and sat there.

On the right hand and left of this convent there are several hundred stûpas, among which is one large one built by Asôka-râja; although it is mostly in ruins, yet its height is still about 100 feet.

From this going north-east through a great forest, along a dangerous and difficult road, where wild oxen and herds of elephants and robbers and hunters cause incessant trouble to travellers, after leaving the forest we come to the kindom of Kiu-shi-na-k’ie-lo (Kuśinagara).

**KIU-SHI-NA-K’IE-LO [Kuśinagara].**

The capital of this country is in ruins, and its towns

---

84 This is the “Ashes Dâgoba,”
85 Kuśinagara, Kuśinagari, Ku-
and villages waste and desolate. The brick foundation walls of the old capital are about 10 li in circuit. There are few inhabitants, and the avenues of the town are deserted and waste. At the north-east angle of the city gate is a stūpa which was built by Aśoka-rāja. This is the old house of Chunda (Chun-t'o); in the middle of it is a well which was dug at the time when he was about to make his offering (to Buddha). Although it has overflowed for years and months, the water is still pure and sweet.

To the north-west of the city 3 or 4 li, crossing the Ajitavati ('O-shi-to-fa-ti) river, on the western bank, not far, we come to a grove of sāla trees. The sāla tree is like the Huḥ tree, with a greenish white bark and leaves very glistening and smooth. In this wood are four trees of an unusual height, which indicate the place where Tathāgata died.

There is (here) a great brick vihāra, in which is a figure of the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata. He is lying with his head to the north as if asleep. By the side of this vihāra is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja; although in a ruinous state, yet it is some 200 feet in height. Before it is a stone and burial, has been identified by Wilson and Cunningham with the present village of Kasia, 35 miles to the east of Gorakhpūr. It stood close to the Hiranyavati river (Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, v. 2200); this must be the same as the Little Gandakī river, or one of its feeders. The channel of this river, however, has undergone frequent changes. See J. R. As. S., vol. v. pp. 123 f.; Burnouf, Introd. (2d ed.), pp. 75; 347; Lassen, Ind. Alt. (2d ed.), vol. i. pp. 171, 662; Lalita Vistara, pp. 416 f., 419 ff.

Cunningham speaks of the bricks of which the stūpas were built (Arch. Survey, vol. i. p. 77).

Aśvaghōsha speaks of the Lung-siang gate, which must have led towards the river (Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, v. 2200).

Chunda was a householder who invited Buddha to his house and there gave him his last repast (Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, v. 1947). For an account of Chunda's offering, according to the later school of Buddhism, see as above, Note iii., pp. 365 ff.

In Chinsse Wu-shing, "invincible." This is the same as the Shihai-na-fa-ti or Hiranyavati river, in Chinese Yeu-kin-ho, "the river that has gold."

The record generally speaks of two sāla trees (Shorea robusta) (Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, v. 1950), and they are represented in the sculpture of the Nirvāṇa in Cave xxvi. at Ajantā (Burgess, Cave Temples, pl. I.).
pillar to record the _Nirvāṇa_ of Tathāgata; although there is an inscription on it, yet there is no date as to year or month.

According to the general tradition, Tathāgata was eighty years old when, on the 15th day of the second half of the month Vaiśākha, he entered _Nirvāṇa_. This corresponds to the 15th day of the 3rd month with us. But the Sarvāstivādins say that he died on the 8th day of the second half of the month Kārtika, which is the same as the 8th day of the 9th month with us. The different schools calculate variously from the death of Buddha. Some say it is 1200 years and more since then. Others say, 1300 and more. Others say, 1500 and more. Others say that 900 years have passed, but not 1000 since the _Nirvāṇa_.

By the side of the _vihāra_, and not far from it, is a _stūpa_. This denotes the place where Bōdhisattva, when practising a religious life, was born as the king of a flock of pheasants (chi—S. _kapiṇjala_), and caused a fire to be put out. Formerly there was in this place a great and shady forest, where beasts and birds congregated and built their nests or dwelt in caves. Suddenly a fierce wind burst from every quarter, and a violent conflagration spread on every side. At this time there was a pheasant who, moved by pity and tenderness, hastened to plunge itself in a stream of pure water, and then flying up in the air, shook the drops from its feathers (on the flames). Whereupon Śakra, king of Dēvas, coming down, said (to the bird), “Why are you so foolish as to tire yourself, thus fluttering your wings? A great fire is raging, it is burning down the forest trees and the desert grass; what can such a tiny creature as you do to put it out?” The bird said, “And who are you?” He replied, “I am Śakra, king of

---

91 The various dates here recorded would correspond with 552 B.C., 652 B.C., 852 B.C., and a date between 252 B.C. and 352 B.C. By this last Huen Tsang probably means to place the _Nirvāṇa_, a hundred years before Aśoka, i.e., about 325 B.C., which is the date he employs elsewhere. The Southern date is 543 B.C., but the most recent researches place it between 477 and 482 B.C. This is generally accepted.
Dèvas." The bird answered, "Now Śakra, king of Dèvas, has great power of religious merit, and every wish he has he can gratify; to deliver from this calamity and avert the evil would be as easy as opening and shutting his hand. There can be no propriety in permitting this calamity to last. But the fire is burning fiercely on every side, there is no time for words." And so saying he flew away again, and ascending up, sprinkled the water from his wings. Then the king of the Dèvas took the water in the hollow of his hand and poured it out on the forest and extinguished the fire; the smoke was cleared away and the living creatures saved. Therefore this śūpa is still called "the extinguishing-fire śūpa."

By the side of this, not far off, is a śūpa. On this spot Bôdhisattva, when practising a religious life, being at that time a deer, saved (or, rescued) living creatures. In very remote times this was a great forest; a fire burst out in the wild grass that grew in it. The birds and beasts were sorely distressed. Before them was the barrier of a swiftly flowing river. Behind them the calamity of the raging fire which barred their escape. There was no help for it but to plunge into the water, and there drowned, they perished. This deer, moved by pity, placed his body across the stream, which lashed his sides and broke his bones, whilst he strove with all his strength to rescue the drowning creatures. A worn-out hare coming to the bank, the deer with patience bearing his pain and fatigue, got him safely across, but his strength being now worn out, he was engulfed in the water and died. The Dèvas collecting his bones raised this śūpa.

92 This may be otherwise translated: "if my request is without effect, with whom lies the fault?"
93 Taking a handful of water.
94 There is an error in the text, sha (killed) for keś (delivered). Julien translates the passage "took the form of a deer, and sacrificed his life." The former part, "took the form of a deer," cannot be correct, the original is wei luh, being a deer; with regard to the second part, "sacrificed his life," the original is sha sîng, which is literally "to kill living animals for food." I have preferred to consider shâ a mistake for keś, to deliver.
95 It is difficult to understand why the birds should be afraid of the river.
To the west of this place, not far off, is a stūpa. This is where Subhadra\(^{96}\) (Shen-hien) died (entered Nir-vāṇa). Subhadra was originally a Brāhmaṇ teacher. He was 120 years of age; being so old, he had acquired in consequence much wisdom. Hearing that Buddha was about to die, he came to the two\(^{97}\) (sāla) trees, and asked Ānanda, saying, “The Lord is about to die; pray let me ask him respecting some doubts I have, which still hamper me.” Ānanda replied, “The Lord is about to die; pray do not trouble him.” He said, “I hear that Buddha is difficult to meet in the world, and that the true law is difficult to hear. I have some grave doubts; there is no ground for fear.” On being invited, Subhadra at once entered, and first asked Buddha, “There are many different persons who call themselves masters, each having a different system of doctrine, and pretending therewith to guide the people. Is Gautama (Kiutamo)\(^{98}\) able to fathom their doctrine?” Buddha said, “I know their doctrine thoroughly;” and then for Subhadra’s sake he preached the law.

Subhadra having heard (the sermon), his mind, pure and faithful, found deliverance, and he asked to be received into the church as a fully ordained disciple. Then Tathāgata addressed him saying, “Are you able to do so? Unbelievers and other sectaries who prepare themselves for a pure mode of life\(^{99}\) ought to pass a four years’ novitiate, to exhibit their conduct and test their disposition; if their characters and words be unexcep-

\(^{96}\) For the circumstances attending the conversion of Subhadra (Su-po-t’o-lo), see Po-sho-king-tsan-king, varga 26, p. 290. In Chinese his name is Shen-hien, “the very virtuous.”

\(^{97}\) Here the two trees are referred to. The four which existed in Huien Tsang’s time were probably of a later date, and had been planted two at the head and two at the feet where Buddha died.

\(^{98}\) The expression “Gautama” is used by Subhadra because he was a Brāhmaṇ unbeliever.

\(^{99}\) This does not, as it appears, refer to the life of a Śramaṇa, but to the preparation of a Brahma-chāra; the previous discipline of the Brāhma (Fa-hsing...). The “unbelievers,” in Chinese Wai-tao, translated Tirthikas, in the Mahāvyutpatti.
tionable, then such persons may enter my profession; but in your case, whilst living amongst men, you have observed their discipline. There should be no difficulty, then, to prevent your full ordination?"

Subhadra said, "The Lord is very pitiful and very gracious, without any partiality. Is he then willing to forego in my case the four years of the threefold preparatory discipline?" 100

Buddha said, "As I before stated, this has been done whilst living among men."

Then Subhadra, leaving his home immediately, took full orders as a priest. Then applying himself with all diligence, he vigorously disciplined both body and mind, and so being freed from all doubt, in the middle of the night (of Buddha's Nirvāṇa), not long after (the interview), he obtained the fruit, and became an Arhat without any imperfection. Being thus perfected in purity, he could not bear to await Buddha's death (great Nirvāṇa), but in the midst of the congregation, entering the samādhi of "fire-limit" (Agni-dhātu), and after displaying his spiritual capabilities, he first entered Nirvāṇa. He was thus the very last convert of Tathāgata, and the first to enter Nirvāṇa. This is the same as the hare who was last saved in the story that has just been told.

Beside (the stūpa of) Subhadra's Nirvāṇa is a stūpa; this is the place where the Vajrapāni (Chi-kin-kang) 101

100 The whole of this passage is obscure; the reference seems to be to a four years' preparatory course of discipline practised by the Śī-kasyamūṇa (pupil); for the threefold character of their discipline, see Fo-koue-ki, p. 182. This previous course of discipline Buddha is willing to remit in the case of Subhadra, because he had already practised it "in the world," that is, in his own religious training.

101 This incident is also referred to by Fa-hian (Beal, Buddhist Pilgrims, p. 95). There is some difficulty in the matter, because the Mallas, who were present at the Nirvāṇa, are called lih see, and they did "sink prostrate on the earth" (Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, ver. 2195). But the text seems to refer to some superhuman being, for the Vajrapāni is called "holding-diamond - mace - spiritual - secret - vestige - mighty - lord;" this phrase is explained by Eitel (Handbook, sub voc. Vajrapāni) to refer to Indra, a sort of demon king, with 500 Yaksha followers. In the great picture of the Nirvāṇa brought from Japan by Mr. Borlase, and exhibited for a time at Bethnal Green, there is such a figure lying on the ground.
fell fainting on the earth. The great merciful Lord of the World, having, according to the condition of the persons concerned, finished his work of converting the world, entered on the joy of the *Nirvāṇa* between the two *śāla* trees; with his head to the north, he there lay asleep. The Mallas, with their diamond maces and divine though secret characteristics, seeing Buddha about to die, were deeply affected with pity, and cried, "Tathāgata is leaving us and entering the great *Nirvāṇa*; thus are we without any refuge or protection to defend us; the poisonous arrow has deeply penetrated our vitals, and the fire of sorrow burns us up without remedy!" Then letting go their diamond clubs, they fell prostrate on the earth, and so remained for a long time. Then rising again, and deeply affected with compassion and love, they thus spake together, "Who shall now provide us a boat to cross over the great sea of birth and death? Who shall light a lamp to guide us through the long night of ignorance?"

By the side where the diamond (*mace-holders*) fell to the earth is a *stūpa*. This is the place where for seven days after Buddha had died they offered religious offerings. When Tathāgata was about to die, a brilliant light shone everywhere; men and Dēvas were assembled, and together showed their sorrow as they spake thus one to the other, "Now the great Buddha, Lord of the World, is about to die, the happiness of men is gone, the world has no reliance." Then Tathāgata, reposing on his right side upon the lion-bed, addressed the great congregation thus, "Say not Tathāgata has gone for ever (*perished*), because he dies; the body of the law *endures for ever! unchangeable is this!* Put away all mortals, and disciples of Buddha, and they offered their services after his death for seven days. *The Dharmākāya*, the spiritual presence of Buddha in his words.
idleness, and without delay seek for emancipation (from the world)."

Then the Bhikshus sobbing and sighing with piteous grief, Aniruddha \(^{104}\) bade the Bhikshus cease. "Grieve not thus," he said, "lest the Dëvas should deride." Then all the Mallas (Mo-la) having offered their offerings, desired to raise the golden coffin, and bring it to the place of cremation. Then Aniruddha addressed them all, and bade them stop, for the Dëvas desired to offer their worship during seven days.

Then the Dëvas (the heavenly host), holding exquisite divine flowers, discoursed through space the praises of his sacred qualities, each in full sincerity of heart offering his sacrifice of worship.

By the side of the place where the coffin was detained is a stûpa; this is where the queen Mahâmâyâ \(^{105}\) wept for Buddha.

Tathâgata having departed, and his body being laid in the coffin, then Aniruddha, ascending to the heavenly mansions, addressed the queen Mâyâ and said, "The supremely holy Lord of Religion has now died!"

Mâyâ having heard of it, suppressed her sobs, and with the body of Dëvas came to the two sîla trees. Seeing the saṅghâṭi robe, and the pâtra, and the religious staff, she embraced them as she recognised each, and then ceased awhile to act,\(^{106}\) till once again with loud accents she cried, "The happiness of men and gods is done! The world's eyes put out! All things are desert, without a guide!"

\(^{104}\) Aniruddha (Ô-ni-liu-t'ô). There is some difficulty in knowing whether Aniruddha (cousin of Buddha, being a son of Amîrtôdana), or Anuruddha is referred to in the text; in the one case, Burnouf (Lotus, p. 294) states that Anuruddha was the personal attendant on Buddha at the time of his death; but, on the other hand, Asvaghôsa (Fo-sho, ver. 2123) derives the name of this person from a+niruddha not-stopped, in agreement with the Tibetan ma hyaga-pa, celui qui n'a pas été arrêté (Lotus, p. 293); As. Res. vol. xx. p. 440). Conf. Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.

\(^{105}\) In the picture alluded to above (n. 97) there is a representation of Anuruddha or Aniruddha conducting Mahâmâyâ from heaven to the scene of the Nirvâna.

\(^{106}\) That is, she fainted.
Then by the holy power of Tathâgata the golden coffin of itself opened; spreading abroad a glorious light, with hands conjoined, and sitting upright, he saluted his loving mother (and said), "You have come down from far; you who live so religiously need not be sad!"

Ānanda, suppressing his grief, inquired and said, "What shall I say hereafter when they question me?" In answer he rejoined, "(Say this), when Buddha had already died, his loving mother Mâyâ, from the heavenly courts descending, came to the twin sâla trees. Then Buddha, bent on teaching the reverent among men, from out his golden coffin, with hands conjoined, for her sake, preached the law."

To the north of the city, after crossing the river, and going 300 paces or so, there is a stûpa. This is the place where they burnt the body of Tathâgata. The earth is now of a blackish yellow, from a mixture of earth and charcoal. Whoever with true faith seeks here, and prays, is sure to find some relics of Tathâgata.

When Tathâgata died, men and Dévas, moved with love, prepared a coffin made of the seven precious substances, and in a thousand napkins swathed his body; they spread both flowers and scents, they placed both canopies and coverings over it; then the host of Malla raised the bier and forward marched, with others following and leading on. Passing the golden river (Kin-ho) to the north, they filled the coffin up with scented oil, and piled high up the odorous wood and kindled it. Then, after all was burnt, there were two napkins left—one that lay next the body, the other from the outside covering. Then they divided the sarîras for the world's sake, the hair and nails alone remained untouched by fire. By the side of the place of cremation is a stûpa; here Tathâgata,

107 That is, those who have no reverence for parents. This incident, which is a late invention, would recommend itself to Hûn Tsiang as in agreement with the customs of his country, where the highest reverence of parents is inculcated.

108 The Ajítavati or Hiranyavatt.
for Kâśyapa’s sake, revealed his feet. When Tathâgata was in his golden coffin, and the oil poured on it and the wood piled up, the fire would not enkindle. When all the beholders were filled with fear and doubt, Aniruddha spoke, “We must await Kâśyapa.”

At this time Kâśyapa, with 500 followers from out the forest, came to Kusinagara, and asked Ánanda saying, “Can I behold Tathâgata’s body?” Ánanda said, “Swathed in a thousand napkins, enclosed within a heavy coffin, with scented wood piled up, we are about to burn it.”

At this time Buddha caused his feet to come from out the coffin. Above (or, on) the wheel sign there were different coloured marks. Addressing Ánanda then, he said, “And what are these?” Answering he said, “When first he died the tears of men and gods, moved by pity, falling upon his feet, left these marks.”

Then Kâśyapa worshipped and walked round the coffin uttering his praises. Then the scented wood caught fire of its own accord, and burnt the whole with a great conflagration.

When Tathâgata died he appeared three times from his coffin: first, when he put out his arm and asked Ánananda, “(Have you) prepared the way?” secondly, when he sat up and preached the law for his mother’s sake; and thirdly, when he showed his feet to the great Kâśyapa.

By the side of the place where he showed his feet is a stupa built by Asoka-râja. This is the place where the eight kings shared the relics. In front is built a stone pillar on which is written an account of this event.

When Buddha died, and after his cremation, the kings of the eight countries with their troops (four kinds of

---

100 Lnn ziang; see ante, vol. i. p. 94.
101 In the Vinaya it is stated that these marks were made by the tears of a woman who wept at his feet. See Abstract of Four Lectures, pp. 69, 82.
110 This is the literal translation; but it probably refers to Kâśyapa, as Julien explains (n. 1, p. 346); or the word che may be equal to “the chief,” alluding to Kâśyapa; the sentence would then be, “has the chief arrived?”
troops) sent a right-minded Brāhman (Drōna) to address the Mallas of Kuśinagara, saying, “The guide of men and gods has died in this country; we have come from far to request a share of his relics.” The Mallas said, “Tathâgata has condescended to come to this land; the guide of the world is dead! the loving father of all that lives has gone! We ought to adore the relics of Buddha; your journey here has been in vain, you will not gain your end.” Then the great kings having sought humbly for them and failed, sent a second message saying, “As you will not accede to our request, our troops are near.” Then the Brāhmaṇ addressing them said, “Reflect how the Lord, the great merciful, prepared religious merit by practising patience; through successive ages his renown will last. Your desire now to try force is not right. Divide then the relics into eight portions, so that all may worship them. Why resort to arms?” The Mallas, obedient to these words, divided the relics into eight parts.

Then Śakra the king of gods said, “The Dēvas also should have a share; dispute not their right.”

Anavatapta the Nāga also, and Muchilinda (Wen-lin), and Ėlāpatra (I-lo-po-ta-lo) also, deliberated and said, “We ought not to be left without a bequest; if we seek it by force it will not be well for you!” The Brāhmaṇ said, “Dispute not so!” Then he divided the relics into three portions, one for the Dēvas, one for the Nāgas, and one remnant for the eight kingdoms among men. This addition of Dēvas and Nāgas in sharing the relics was a source of great sorrow to the kings of men.

113 This name is given in the Fo-sho-king-ten-king, v. 2231. The phrase chi sing means “right minded,” or “impartial;” it may possibly be a proper name (Rtju-bhāva), as Julien supposes.

113 The argument of the Brāhmaṇ is given in full by Aśvaghōsha, Fo-sho-king-ten-king, pp. 328, 329.

114 In Tibetan Ma-dros-pa, the king of the Nāgas (snakes) of the lake of the same name. See Asiatic Res., vol. xx. p. 448.

115 Julien’s translation can hardly be correct; “the eight kings having obtained a double portion, the gods, the Nāgas, and the kings of men grieved much on that account.” The eight kings did not, in fact, obtain a double portion. The translation
To the south-west of the relic-dividing stūpa, going 200 li or so, we come to a great village; here lived a Brāhmaṇ of eminent wealth and celebrity, deeply learned in all pure literature, versed in the five Vidyās, acquainted with the three treasures (piṭakas). By the side of his home he had built a priest’s house, and had used all his wealth to adorn it with magnificence. If by chance any priests in their travels stopped on their way, he asked them to halt, and used all his means to entertain them. They might stop one night, or even throughout seven days. After this, Śaśāṅka-rāja having destroyed the religion of Buddha, the members of the priesthood were dispersed, and for many years driven away. The Brāhmaṇ nevertheless retained for them, through all, an undying regard. As he was walking he chanced to see a Śramaṇa, with thick eyebrows and shaven head, holding his staff, coming along. The Brāhmaṇ hurried up to him, and meeting him asked, “Whence come you?” and besought him to enter the priest’s abode and receive his charity. In the morning he gave him some rice-milk (rice balls with milk). The Śramaṇa having taken a mouthful, thereupon returned it (i.e., the rest) to his alms-bowl with a great sigh. The Brāhmaṇ who supplied the food prostrating himself said, “Eminent sir! (bhadanta), is there any reason why you should not remain with me one night? is not the food agreeable?” The Śramaṇa graciously answering said, “I pity the feeble merit possessed by the world, but let me finish my meal and I will speak to you further.” After finishing his food he gathered up his robes as if to go. The Brāhmaṇ said, “Your reverence agreed to speak with me, why then are you silent?” The Śramaṇa said, “I have not forgotten; but to talk with you is irksome; and the circumstance is likely to create doubt, but yet I will tell you in

is evidently chung fen, “the additional division,” tin lung, “among Dāvas and Nāgas,” jin wung mo puḥ pi, “the kings of men were much grieved.” That is, the relics were carried away from the world, and this caused the sorrow.

116 See ante, vol. i. p. 78.
brief. When I sighed, it was not on account of your offering of rice; for during many hundreds of years I have not tasted such food. When Tathagāta was living in the world I was a follower of his when he dwelt in the Venuvana-vihāra, near Rājagṛhya (Ho-lo-she-ki-li-hi); there it was, stooping down, I washed his pātra in the pure stream of the river—there I filled his pitcher—there I gave him water for cleansing his mouth; but alas! the milk you now offer is not like the sweet water of old! It is because the religious merit of Dēvas and men has diminished that this is the case!" The Brāhmaṇa then said, "Is it possible that you yourself have ever seen Buddha?" The Śramana replied, "Have you never heard of Rāhula, Buddha's own son? I am he! Because I desire to protect the true law I have not yet entered Nirvāṇa."

Having spoken thus he suddenly disappeared. Then the Brāhmaṇa swept and watered the chamber he had used, and placed there a figure of him, which he reverenced as though he were present.

Going 500 li through the great forest we come to the kingdom of P'o-lo-ni-sse (Bānāras).

117 In Chinese, Wang-sha-ch'ing.
BOOK VII.

Includes the following countries, (1) P'lo-nsi-sse; (2) Chen-chu; (3) Fi-sha-lai; (4) Fo-li-she; (5) Ni-po-lo.

P'lo-nsi-sse (Vārānasi\(^1\) or Bānāras)

This country is about 4000 li in circuit. The capital borders (on its western side) the Ganges river. It is about 18 or 19 li in length and 5 or 6 li in breadth; its inner gates are like a small-toothed comb;\(^2\) it is densely populated. The families are very rich, and in the dwellings are objects of rare value. The disposition of the people is soft and humane, and they are earnestly given to study. They are mostly unbelievers, a few reverence the law of Buddha. The climate is soft, the crops abundant, the trees (fruit trees) flourishing, and the underwood thick in every place. There are about thirty saṅghārāmas and 3000 priests. They study the Little Vehicle according to the Saṃmatiya school (Ching-liang-pu). There are a hundred or so Dēva temples with about 10,000 sectaries. They honour principally Mahēśvara (Ta-tseu-tsaï). Some cut their hair off, others tie their hair in a knot, and go

---

\(^1\) This is the restoration of the Chinese equivalents. A note in the original gives the sound of ni as = n(tu)+(he)ā, i.e., nā; the restoration, therefore, is Vāraṅāsī, the Sanskrit form of the name of Bānāras. It was so called because it lies between the two streams Varanā and Asi or Asī, affluents of the Ganges. See Sherring, Sacred City of the Hindus.

\(^2\) Julien gives here, “the villages are very close together;” but, as noticed before (p. 73, n. 13), the Chinese symbols leu yen mean “the inner gates” of a city, and the expression tsāh pē means “like a tooth comb.” I conclude it means that the inner gates of the city consisted of closely joined, and perhaps sharpened, iron or other bars.
naked, without clothes (Nirgranthas); they cover their bodies with ashes (Paśupatás), and by the practice of all sorts of austerities they seek to escape from birth and death.

In the capital there are twenty Dēva temples, the towers and halls of which are of sculptured stone and carved wood. The foliage of trees combine to shade (the sites), whilst pure streams of water encircle them. The statue of the Dēva Mahēśvara, made of teu-shih (native copper), is somewhat less than 100 feet high. Its appearance is grave and majestic, and appears as though really living.

To the north-east of the capital, on the western side of the river Varanâ, is a stāpa built by Asôka-râja (Wu-yau). It is about 100 feet high; in front of it is a stone pillar; it is bright and shining as a mirror; its surface is glistening and smooth as ice, and on it can be constantly seen the figure of Buddha as a shadow.

To the north-east of the river Varanâ about 10 li or so, we come to the saṅghārāma of Lu-ye (stag desert). Its precincts are divided into eight portions (sections), connected by a surrounding wall. The storeyed towers with projecting eaves and the balconies are of very superior work. There are fifteen hundred priests in this convent who study the Little Vehicle according to the Saṃmatiya school. In the great enclosure is a vihāra about 200 feet high; above the roof is a golden-covered figure of the Âmra (‘An-mo-lo—mango) fruit. The foundations of the building are of stone, and the stairs also, but the towers and niches

3 Not “life and death,” but “birth and death;” i.e., to arrive at a condition of uninterrupted life.

4 Julien here gives Pó-lo-ni-she by mistake, it should be Pó-lo-ni (read na), referring to the Varanâ or Baranâ (see Dr. Fitzedward Hall’s remarks in the Introduction to Sherring’s Sacred City of the Hindus; also Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 436 n.)

5 The same as Mrâgadâva, generally called Lu-yuen, “the deer garden.” This is the spot where Buddha preached his first sermon to the five mendicants. For an account of his march to Bânâras and the sermon he preached see Po-sho-hing-tean-king, varga 15, p. 168.

6 Probably meaning that the enclosure was an octagon, as the great tower of Dhamnek was (Arch. Survey, vol. i p. 111).
are of brick. The niches are arranged on the four sides in a hundred successive lines, and in each niche is a golden figure of Buddha. In the middle of the vihāra is a figure of Buddha made of teou-shih (native copper). It is the size of life, and he is represented as turning the wheel of the law (preaching).  

To the south-west of the vihāra is a stone stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. Although the foundations have given way, there are still 100 feet or more of the wall remaining. In front of the building is a stone pillar about 70 feet high. The stone is altogether as bright as jade. It is glistening, and sparkles like light; and all those who pray fervently before it see from time to time, according to their petitions, figures with good or bad signs. It was here that Tathāgata (ju-lai), having arrived at enlightenment, began to turn the wheel of the law (to preach).

By the side of this building and not far from it is a stūpa. This is the spot where Ājñāta Kauṇḍinya ('O-jo-kio-ch'ın-ju) and the rest, seeing Bōdhisattva giving up his austerities, no longer kept his company, but coming to this place, gave themselves up to meditation.  

By the side of this is a stūpa where five hundred Pratyēka Buddhas entered at the same time into Nirvāṇa. There are, moreover, three stūpas where there are traces of the sitting and walking of the three former Buddhas.

By the side of this last place is a stūpa. This is the spot where Maitrēya Bōdhisattva received assurance of his becoming a Buddha. In old days, when Tathāgata was living in Rājaṅrīha (Wang-she), on the Gridhrakūṭa

---

7 The wheel is the symbol of "preaching," or of dharma. The scene of Buddha's teaching near Bānāras is the district called Sārnāth, which, according to Cunningham, is a contraction of Sāraṅgānātha, lord of deer. Buddha himself was once the "king of deer," and this may be the origin of the name. For an account of the excavations made on this spot see Arch. Survey, vol. i. p. 107 ff.

8 The five ascetics who had accompanied the Bōdhisattva to Uralivla, and fasted with him for six years, when they saw him receive the rice milk of Nandā, supposing he had given up the object of his religious life, left him, and came to the deer park at Bānāras.
mountain, he spoke thus to the Bhikshus: "In future years, when this country of Jambudvipa shall be at peace and rest, and the age of men shall amount to 80,000 years, there shall be a Brāhmaṇ called Maitrēya (Sse-che). His body shall be of the colour of pure gold, bright and glistening and pure. Leaving his home, he will become a perfect Buddha, and preach the threefold law for the benefit of all creatures. Those who shall be saved are those who live, in whom the roots of merit have been planted through my bequeathed law. These all conceiving in their minds a profound respect for the three precious objects of worship, whether they be already professed disciples or not, whether they be obedient to the precepts or not, will all be led by the converting power (of his preaching) to acquire the fruit (of Boddhi), and final deliverance. Whilst declaring the threefold law for the conversion of those who have been influenced by my bequeathed law, by this means also hereafter others will be converted."  

At this time Maitrēya Boddhisattva (Mei-ta-li-ye-pu-sa) hearing this declaration of Buddha, rose from his seat and addressed Buddha thus: "May I indeed become that lord called Maitrēya." Then Tathāgata spoke thus: "Be it so! you shall obtain this fruit (condition), and as I have just 

9 The "Peak of the Vulture," near Rājagriha.  
10 Julien translates this by "three great assemblies." It is true hewy means "an assembly," but in this passage san hewy refers to the law "thrice repeated." Hence it is said to be "a triple twelve-part trustworthy knowledge of the four truths" (Oldenberg, Buddha, p. 129 and note. Compare also the phrase tikutiko chakamo in the Bharhut sculptures, pl. xxviii., the meaning of which has escaped General Cunningham. Mr. B. Nanjio, also, in his Catalogue of the Buddhist Tripiṭaka, pp. 9, 10, has not noticed that the Chinese symbol hewui corresponds with the Sanskrit kāta, and so has translated the phrase as though it referred to "an assembly."  
11 That is, those who shall be saved by the preaching of Maitrēya are those in whose hearts my bequeathed law shall have worked the necessary preparation.  
12 The same influence, i.e., of Maitrēya's teaching, will act as a "good friend" for their subsequent conversion. The expression "shen yau," "illustrious friend," refers to the guidance of Boddhi, or wisdom. There is some difficulty in understanding how this assurance could have been given to Maitrēya whilst Buddha was on the Grīhakāta mountain, and yet that the spot should be at Bānāras, unless, indeed, it was repeated there.
explained, such shall be the power (influence) of your teaching.”

To the west of this place there is a stūpa. This is the spot where Sākya Bōdhisattva (Shih-kia-pu-sa) received an assurance (of becoming a Buddha). In the midst of the Bhadra-kalpa when men’s years amounted to 20,000, Kāśyapa Buddha (Kia-she-po-fo) appeared in the world and moved the wheel of the excellent law (i.e., preached the law), opened out and changed the unclosed mind (of men), and declared this prediction to Prabhāpāla Bōdhisattva (Hu-ming-pu-sa).¹³ “This Bōdhisattva in future ages, when the years of men shall have dwindled to 100 years, shall obtain the condition of a Buddha and be called Sākya Muni.”

Not far to the south of this spot are traces where the four Buddhas of a bygone age walked for exercise. The length (of the promenade) is about fifty paces and the height of the steps (stepping spots) about seven feet. It is composed of blue stones piled together. Above it is a figure of Tathāgata in the attitude of walking. It is of a singular dignity and beauty. From the flesh-knot on the top of the head there flows wonderfully a braid of hair. Spiritual signs are plainly manifested and divine prodigies wrought with power (fineness, éclat).

Within the precincts of the enclosure (of the saṅghārāma)¹⁴ there are many sacred vestiges, with vihāras and stūpas several hundred in number. We have only named two or three of these, as it would be difficult to enter into details.

To the west of the saṅghārāma enclosure is a clear lake of water about 200 paces in circuit; here Tathāgata occasionally bathed himself. To the west of this is a great

¹³ Julien translates “and received from Prabhāpāla Bōdhisattva the prediction following.” But this would destroy the connection of the sentence; it is Kāśyapa Buddha who declares to Prabhāpāla that he (Prabhāpāla) shall become a Buddha. See Wong Pāh (J. R. As. S., vol. xx. p. 139), §§ 4, 5.
¹⁴ Or of the “deer park,” the modern Sārnāth.
tank about 180 paces round; here Tathāgata used to wash his begging-dish.

To the north of this is a lake about 150 paces round. Here Tathāgata used to wash his robes. In each of these pools is a dragon who dwells within it. The water is deep and its taste sweet; it is pure and resplendent in appearance, and neither increases nor decreases. When men of a bad character bathe here, the crocodiles (*kin-pilo,—kumbhītras*) come forth and kill many of them; but in case of the reverential who wash here, they need fear nothing.

By the side of the pool where Tathāgata washed his garments is a great square stone, on which are yet to be seen the trace-marks of his *kashāya* (*kia-sha*) robe. The bright lines of the tissue are of a minute and distinct character, as if carved on the stone. The faithful and pure frequently come to make their offerings here; but when the heretics and men of evil mind speak lightly of or insult the stone, the dragon-king inhabiting the pool causes the winds to rise and rain to fall.

By the side of the lake, and not far off, is a *stūpa*. This is where Bōdhisattva, during his preparatory life, was born as a king of elephants, provided with six tusks (*chhadanta*). 13 A hunter, desirous to obtain the tusks, put on a robe in colour like that of a religious ascetic, and taking his bow, awaited the arrival of his prey. The elephant king, from respect to the *kashāya* robe, immediately broke off his tusks and gave them to the hunter.

By the side of this spot, and not far from it, is a *stūpa* It was here Bōdhisattva, in his preparatory career, grieved to see that there was little politeness (*reverence*) amongst men, took the form of a bird, and joining himself to the

company of a monkey and a white elephant, he asked them in this place, "Which of you saw first this Nya-grôdha (Nic-kw-liw) tree?" Each having answered according to circumstances, he placed them according to their age. 16 The good effects of this conduct spread itself little by little on every side; men were able to distinguish the high from the low, and the religious and lay people followed their example.

Not far from this, in a great forest, is a stôpa. It was here that Dêvadatta and Bôdhisattva, in years gone by, were kings of deer and settled a certain matter. Formerly in this place, in the midst of a great forest, there were two herds of deer, each 500 in number. At this time the king of the country wandered about hunting through the plains and morasses. Bôdhisattva, king of deer, approaching him, said, "Mahârâja! you set fire to the spaces enclosed as your hunting-ground, and shoot your arrows and kill all my followers. Before the sun rises they lie about corrupting and unfit for food. Pray let us each day offer you one deer for food, which the king will then have fresh and good, and we shall prolong our life a little day by day." The king was pleased at the proposition, and turned his chariot and went back home. So on each day a deer from the respective flocks was killed.

Now among the herd of Dêvadatta there was a doe big with young, and when her turn came to die she said to her lord, "Although I am ready to die, yet it is not my child's turn."

The king of the deer (i.e., Dêvadatta) was angry, and said, "Who is there but values life?"

The deer answered with a sigh, "But, O king, it is not humane to kill that which is unborn." 17

She then told her extremity to Bôdhisattva, the king of deer. He replied, "Sad indeed; the heart of the loving

16 Here I follow Julien's translation, but there is probably an error in the text.

17 This may be translated other wise: "Our king is not humane in putting to death without reprieve;" or, "Our king is not humane; I die without reprieve."
mother grieves (is moved) for that which is not yet alive (has no body). I to-day will take your place and die."

Going to the royal gate (i.e., the palace), the people who travelled along the road passed the news along and said in a loud voice, "That great king of the deer is going now towards the town." The people of the capital, the magistrates, and others, hastened to see.

The king hearing of it, was unwilling to believe the news; but when the gate-keeper assured him of the truth, then the king believed it. Then, addressing the deer-king he said, "Why have you come here?"

The deer-(king) replied, "There is a female in the herd big with young, whose turn it was to die; but my heart could not bear to think that the young, not yet born, should perish so. I have therefore come in her place."

The king, hearing it, sighed and said, "I have indeed the body of a man, but am as a deer. You have the body of a deer, but are as a man." Then for pity's sake he released the deer, and no longer required a daily sacrifice. Then he gave up that forest for the use of the deer, and so it was called "the forest given to the deer," and hence its name, the "deer-plain" (or, wild).

Leaving this place, and going 2 or 3 li to the southwest of the saṅghārāma, there is a stūpa about 300 feet high. The foundations are broad and the building high, and adorned with all sorts of carved work and with precious substances. There are no successive stages (to this building) with niches; and although there is a standing pole erected above the cupola (fau poh), yet it has no encircling bells. By the side of it is a little stūpa. This

18 Commonly called the Mṛgāvā. This is the site referred to before,—the present Sārnāth or Sārāgānātha.
19 Julien translates this "a sort of vase belonging to a religious person, inverted;" but I take fau poh to mean the cupola of a stūpa, in agreement with the account given above, p. 47 and n. 163.

20 Lun-to, circular bells, or encircling bells, referring to the circular plates with bells generally attached to the surmounting pole of a stūpa. Julien translates, "it is not crowned with a cupola in form like a bell." This seems to be impossible, as it is before stated that the stūpa was surmounted by a pole.
the spot where Ṣṭhā Rājāṣhāṇa and the other men, five in number, declined to rise to salute Buddha.\textsuperscript{21} When first Sarvārthaśiddha (Sa-p’o-ho-la-t’a-si-to\textsuperscript{22}) left the city to sojourn in the mountains and to hide in the valleys, forgetful of self and mindful of religion, then Suddhodana-rāja (Tsing-fan) commanded three persons of his own tribe and household, and two of his maternal uncles, saying, “My son Sarvārthaśiddha has left his home to practise wisdom; alone he wanders through mountains and plains and lives apart in the forests. I order you, therefore, to follow him and find out where he dwells. You within (the family), his uncles, and you without (the family), ministers and people, exert yourselves diligently to find out where he has gone to live.” The five men, after receiving the order, went together, casting along the outposts of the country. And now, during their earnest search, the thought of leaving their homes occurred to them also,\textsuperscript{23} and so they thus spake one to the other: “Is it by painful discipline or by joyful means we attain to supreme wisdom?” Two of them said, “By rest and by pleasant discipline wisdom is obtained.” Three of them said, “It is by painful discipline.” Whilst they yet contended without agreeing, two to three, the prince had already entered on the painful discipline of the unbelievers, considering this to be the true way to overcome sorrow; and so, like them, he took only a few grains of rice and millet to support his body.

The two men seeing him thus, said, “This discipline of the prince is opposed to the true way (of escape); intel-

\textsuperscript{21} For an account of this incident see the Fo-sho-king-tsan-king, p. 172, vv. 1222, 1223. For the origin of Ṣṭhā Rājāṣhāṇa’s (‘O-jo-kiaoch’in-ju) name see op. cit. v. 1268.

\textsuperscript{22} This was the name given to Bōdhisattva by his parents. It is explained to mean “one by whom all objects are effected” (Monier Williams, Sans. Dict., sub voc. Sāra). In Chinese it is translated into “Yih-tsal-i-shing,” which seems to signify “one who is perfected in all ways,” or “the completely perfect.”

\textsuperscript{23} Such appears to be the force of the passage, as though the five men by their long search for the prince had become accustomed to a solitary life, and so were unwilling to return home.
ligence is obtained by agreeable methods, but now he is practising severe discipline, he cannot be our companion.” So they departed far off and lived in seclusion under the idea that they would (in their own way) attain the fruit (of enlightenment). The prince having practised austerities for six years without obtaining Bódhi, desired to give up his rigorous discipline, as being contrary to the truth; he then prepared himself to receive the rice-milk (offered by the girl), with a view, by this method, to obtain enlightenment. Then the three men (who advocated penance) hearing thereof, sighed and said, “His merit was just ripening, and now it is all dissipated! For six years enduring penance, and now in a day to lose all his merit!” On this they went together to seek for and consult with the two men. Having met them, they sat down and entered on an excited conversation. Then they spake together thus: “In old days we saw the Prince Sarvârthasiddha leave the royal palace for the desert valleys: he put off his jewels and robes, and assumed the skin doublet (of the hunter), and then, with all his might and determined will, gave himself to austerities to seek after the deep mysterious law and its perfect fruit. And now, having given all up, he has received the rice-milk of the young shepherd-girl, and ruined his purpose. We know now he can do nothing.”

The two men replied, “How is it, my masters, ye have seen this so late, that this man acts as a madman? When he lived in his palace he was reverenced and

24 The period of mortification is lengthened to seven years in the Southern accounts, or rather that Māra pursued the Bódhisattva for seven years up to the last vain attack he made upon him. See Oldenberg, Buddha, p. 420, Eng. trans. It is probable that the seven years’ torture said to have been undergone by St. George, and the legend generally, is borrowed from the story of Bódhisattva.

25 Julien has translated this passage as if it were spoken by “the two men” who were opposed to severe mortification as a method of religious discipline. But this necessitates the prediction that he would receive enlightenment after receiving the rice-milk, “Mais quand il aura reçu une bouillie de riz au lait, il obtiendra l’intelligence” (p. 365). This is highly improbable, and I have therefore translated it as in the text.
powerful; but he was not able to rest in quiet, and so went wandering far off through mountains and woods, giving up the estate of a Chakravartin monarch to lead the life of an abject and outcast. What need we think about him more; the mention of his name but adds sorrow to sorrow."

And now Boddhisattva having bathed in the Nairanjana river, seated himself under the Bodhi tree and perfected himself in supreme wisdom, and was named "The lord of devas and men." Then reflecting in-silence, he thought who was worthy (fit) to be instructed in the way of deliverance — "The son of Rama, Udra by name (Yo-t'eulan), he is fit to receive the excellent law, as he has reached the Samadhi, which admits of no active thought." 26

Then the Devas in space raised their voices and said, "Udra-Ramaputra has been dead for seven days." Then Tathagata sighing (said) with regret, "Why did we not meet? ready as he was to hear the excellent law and thereby to obtain quick conversion!"

Again he gave himself to consideration, and cast about through the world to seek (for some one to whom he might first preach). There is (he thought) Arada Kallama (O-lanka-lan), who has reached the ecstatic point "of having nothing to obtain;" 27 he is fit to receive the highest reason. Then again the Devas said, "He has been dead for five 28 days."

Again Tathagata sighed, in knowledge of his incom- pleted merit. Once more considering who was worthy to receive his instruction, he remembered that in the "deer park" there were the five men, 29 who might first receive the converting doctrine. Then Tathagata, rising from the Bodhi tree, went forward with measured step 30 and digni-

26 Naivasanjjā samādhi (Jul.)
27 Akiśchavyadvatana — (Julien).
28 In the Lalita Vistara the number of days is three. In the Buddhacharita there is no period named.
29 That is, the Mrigadava (Sarnath), at Baranaras.
30 Step by step, like the king of beasts (the lion), did he advance
fied mien to the “deer-park garden,” shining with glory; his (circle of) hair reflecting its brilliant colours, and his body like gold. Gracefully he advanced to teach those five men. They, on their parts, seeing him afar off, said one to another, “Here comes that Sarvârthasiddha; for years and months he has sought for the sacred fruit, and has not obtained it, and now his mind is relaxed, and so he comes to seek us as disciples (or, to seek our company); let us remain silent, and not rise to meet him or pay him respect.”

Tathâgata gradually approaching, his sacred appearance affecting all creatures, the five men, forgetting their vow, rose and saluted him, and then attached themselves to him with respect. Tathâgata gradually instructed them in the excellent principles (of his religion), and when the double season of rest was finished, they had obtained the fruit (of Bûdhi).

To the east of the “deer forest” 2 or 3 li, we come to a stûpa by the side of which is a dry pool about 80 paces in circuit, one name of which is “saving life,” another name is “ardent master.” The old traditions explain it thus: Many hundred years ago there was a solitary sage (a sorrowful or obscure master) who built by the side of this pool a hut to live in, away from the world. He practised the arts of magic, and by the extremest exercise of his spiritual power he could change broken fragments of bricks into

watchfully through the grove of wisdom.”—Po-sho kîng-tsan-king, v. 1199.

31 That is, the circle of hair between his eyes (the urna).

32 According to the Buddha-charita, vv. 1220, 1221, the five men were named Kaunâjînya, Daśabâla, Kââya, Vasîpa, Aśvajit, Bhadrika. The Lalita Vistara gives Mahânâma instead of Daśabâla. For the incident named in the text see Buddha-charita, loc. cit.

33 That is, the season of rain, during which the disciples retired into fixed homes. But this ordinance was not yet introduced into the Buddhist system; it seems to have been a custom, however, among religious communities before Buddha’s time, for in the Vinaya complaint is made to Buddha that his disciples continued to wander through the country when the seeds were first growing, contrary to the ordinary rule.

34 There is no expression for “pool,” as in the French translation.
precious stones, and could also metamorphose both men and animals into other shapes, but he was not yet able to ride upon the winds and the clouds, and to follow the Rishis in mounting upwards. By inspecting figures and names that had come down from of old, he further sought into the secret arts of the Rishis. From these he learned the following: "The spirit-Rishis are they who possess the art of lengthening life." If you wish to acquire this knowledge, first of all you must fix your mind on this—viz., to build up an altar enclosure 10 feet round; then command an 'ardent master' (a hero), faithful and brave, and with clear intent, to hold in his hand a long sword and take his seat at the corner of the altar, to cover his breath, and remain silent from evening till dawn. He who seeks to be a Rishi must sit in the middle of the altar, and, grasping a long knife, must repeat the magic formulae and keep watch (seeing and hearing). At morning light, attaining the condition of a Rishi, the sharp knife he holds will change into a sword of diamond (a gem-sword), and he will mount into the air and march through space, and rule over the band of Rishis. Waving the sword he holds, everything he wishes will be accomplished, and he will know neither decay nor old age, nor disease nor death." The man having thus obtained the method (of becoming a Rishi), went in search of such an "ardent master." Diligently he searched for many years, but as yet he found not the object of his desires. At length, in a certain town

---

35 The magic art of lengthening life, or of a long life. The "elixir of life" and the art of transmuting metals had been sought after in the East long before the Arabs introduced the study of alchemy into Europe. The philosopher's stone is the tan sha of the Chinese, i.e., the red bisulphuret of mercury, or cinnabar. See an article on T'auism in the Trans. of the China Branch of the R.A.S., part v. 1855, by Dr. Edkins, p. 86.

36 We may compare with this the ceremonies observed anciently on conferring the dignity of knighthood, especially the vigil before the altar. (Ingulphus, quoted by Mr. Thoms in his Book of the Court, p. 138.)

37 The account of this magic gem-sword may be compared with the "great brand, Excalibur," of King Arthur—

"But 'ere he dip the surface, rose an arm
Clothed in white samite, mystic, wonderful.
And caught him by the hilt, and brandished him
Three times. . . ."—Tennyson.
he encountered a man piteously wailing as he went along the way. The solitary master seeing his marks (the marks on his person),
was rejoiced at heart, and forthwith approaching him, he inquired, "Why do you go thus lamenting, and why are you so distressed?" He said, "I was a poor and needy man, and had to labour hard to support myself. A certain master seeing this, and knowing me to be entirely trustworthy, used me (engaged me for his work) during five years, promising to pay me well for my pains. On this I patiently wrought in spite of weariness and difficulties. Just as the five years were done, one morning for some little fault I was cruelly whipped and driven away without a farthing. For this cause I am sad at heart and afflicted. Oh, who will pity me?"

The solitary master ordered him to accompany him, and coming to his cabin (wood hut), by his magic power he caused to appear some choice food, and ordered him to enter the pool and wash. Then he clothed him in new garments, and giving him 500 gold pieces, he dismissed him, saying, "When this is done, come and ask for more without fear." After this he frequently bestowed on him more gifts, and in secret did him other good, so that his heart was filled with gratitude. Then the "ardent master" was ready to lay down his life in return for all the kindness he had received. Knowing this, the other said to him, "I am in need of an enthusiastic person.

During a succession of years I sought for one, till I was fortunate enough to meet with you, possessed of rare beauty and a becoming presence, different from others. Now, therefore, I pray you, during one night (to watch) without speaking a word."

The champion said, "I am ready to die for you, much it may be "your beauty (or figure) corresponds to the ideal portrait I had formed of it." So Julien translates; but if you ta would more naturally be rendered "unlike that of any other."

38 Siang, the marks indicating his noble character.
39 Wu-wei may also mean "seek it not elsewhere." Julien translates it "do not despise me."
40 "A brave champion"—Julien.
41 So I translate the passage, but.
more to sit with my breath covered." 42 Whereupon he constructed an altar and undertook the rules for becoming a Rishi, according to the prescribed form. Sitting down, he awaited the night. At the approach of night each attended to his particular duties. The "solitary master" recited his magic prayers; the champion held his sharp sword in his hand. About dawn suddenly he uttered a short cry, and at the same time fire descended from heaven, and flames and smoke arose on every side like clouds. The "solitary master" at once drew the champion into the lake, 43 and having saved him from his danger, he said, "I bound you to silence; why then did you cry out?"

The champion said, "After receiving your orders, towards the middle of the night, darkly, as in a dream, the scene changed, and I saw rise before me all my past history. My master 44 in his own person came to me, and in consolatory words addressed me; overcome with gratitude, I yet restrained myself and spoke not. Then that other man came before me; towering with rage, he slew me, and I received my ghostly body 45 (I wandered as a shade or shadowy body). I beheld myself dead, and I sighed with pain, but yet I vowed through endless ages not to speak, in gratitude to you. Next I saw myself destined to be born in a great Brâhman's house in Southern India, and I felt my time come to be conceived and to be brought forth. Though all along enduring anguish, yet from gratitude to you no sound escaped me.

42 From this it seems that the portion relating to "holding the breath" is omitted in the previous sentence.
43 That is, to escape the fire.
44 That is, "my lord or master, whom I now serve"—the solitary master or Rishi. It cannot be my old master, the one who treated him so cruelly (as Julien construes it), for he comes on the scene in the next sentence. The symbols sik see are not to be taken with chu, as though it were "my old master;" but with kis, as I have translated it, "there arose before me the former events of my life."
45 This ghostly body or shade (chung yin shan) corresponds with the ἐνδώλων of the Greeks—

Ψυχή καὶ ἐνδώλων, ἀγαθὸς
φέρεις οὐκ ἐν πάμπασ.

—Iliad, xxiii. 104.
After a while I entered on my studies, took the cap (of manhood), and I married; my parents dead, I had a child. Each day I thought of all your kindness, and endured in silence, uttering no word. My household connections and clan relatives all seeing this, were filled with shame. For more than sixty years and five I lived. At length my wife addressed me, 'You must speak; if not, I slay your son!' And then I thought, 'I can beget no other child, for I am old and feeble; this is my only tender son.' It was to stop my wife from killing him I raised the cry."

The "solitary master" said, "All was my fault; 'twas the fascination of the devil." The champion, moved with gratitude, and sad because the thing had failed, fretted himself and died. Because he escaped the calamity of fire, the lake is called "Saving the Life," and because he died overpowered by gratitude, it has its other name, "The Champion's Lake."

To the west of this lake there is a stūpa of "the three animals." In this place, when Bōdhisattva was practising his preparatory life, he burnt his own body. At the beginning of the kalpa in this forest wild, there lived a fox, a hare, and a monkey, three creatures of different kinds but mutually affectionate. At this time Śakra, king of Dēvas, wishing to examine into the case of those practising the life of a Bōdhisattva, descended spiritually in shape as an old man. He addressed the three animals thus: "My children, two or three, are you at ease and without fear?" They said, "We lie upon (tread on) the rich herbage, wander through the bosky brakes, and though of different kinds we are agreed together, and are at rest and joyful." The old man said, "Hearing that you, my chil-

46 Of Māra: it is plain that this weird story, taken in connection with the dream, the inability to move or speak, and the actual reference of it all to Māra, is but an account of "the enthusiastic hero's" suffering from "nightmare."

47 There appears to be an error in the text, as though saha (three) had been repeated, but the middle stroke of the first symbol erased. But as the same symbols are used in the next sentence, the meaning may be simply, "My children."
dren, two or three, were peaceful at heart and living in sweet accord, though I am old, yet have I come from far alone, forgetting my infirmities, to visit you; but now I am pressed with hunger, what have you to offer me to eat?” They said, “Wait here awhile, and we will go ourselves in search of food.” On this, with one mind and with single purpose, they searched through the different ways for food. The fox having skirted a river, drew out from thence a fresh carp fish. The monkey in the forest gathered fruits and flowers of different kinds. Then they came together to the appointed place and approached the old man. Only the hare came empty, after running to and fro both right and left. The old man spake to him and said, “As it seems to me, you are not of one mind with the fox and monkey; each of those can minister to me heartily, but the hare alone comes empty, and gives me nought to eat; the truth of what I say can easily be known.” The hare, hearing these words and moved by their power, addressed the fox and monkey thus, “Heap up a great pile of wood for burning, then I will give (do) something.” The fox and monkey did accordingly; running here and there, they gathered grass and wood; they piled it up, and when it was thoroughly alight the hare spake thus: “Good sir! I am a small and feeble thing; it is difficult for me to obtain you food, but my poor body may perhaps provide a meal.” On this he cast himself upon the fire, and forthwith died. Then the old man reassumed his body as King Śakra, collected all the bones, and after dolorous sighs addressed the fox and monkey thus: “He only could have done it (or, unprecedented event). I am deeply touched; and lest his memory should perish, I will place him in the moon’s disc to dwell.” Therefore through after ages all have said, “The hare is in the moon.” After this event men built a stūpa on the spot.48

48 The preceding story is known found also in the Chinese Jātaka, as The Hare Jātaka. It is given book; see also Fausböll, Five Jātaka, in Rhys Davids' Buddhism; it is kas, p. 58.
Leaving this country and going down the Ganges eastward 300 li or so, we come to the country of Chen-chu.

The Kingdom of Chen-chu⁴⁰ [Gházipur].

This kingdom is about 2000 li in circuit; its capital, which borders on the Ganges river, is about 10 li in circuit. The people are wealthy and prosperous; the towns and villages are close together. The soil is rich and fertile, and the land is regularly cultivated. The climate is soft and temperate, and the manners of the people are pure and honest. The disposition of the men is naturally fierce and excitable; they are believers both in heretical and true doctrine. There are some ten saṅghārāmas with less than 1000 followers, who all study the doctrines of the Little Vehicle. There are twenty Dēva temples, occupied by sectaries of different persuasions.

In a saṅghārāma to the north-west of the capital is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. The Indian tradition⁵⁰ says this stūpa contains a peck of the relics of Tathāgata. Formerly, when the Lord of the World dwelt in this place,⁵¹ during seven days he preached the excellent law for the sake of an assembly of the Dēvas.

Beside this place are traces where the three Buddhas of the past age walked and where they sat.

Close by is an image of Maitrēya Bōdhisattva: although of small dimensions, its spiritual presence is great, and its divine power is exhibited from time to time in a mysterious manner.

Going east from the chief city about 200 li, we come to a saṅghārāma called 'O-pi-t'o-kie-la-na ("Ears not

⁴⁰ Chen-chu, meaning "lord of conflict or battle," is the translation of Garjanapati, and has been identified by Cunningham with Gházipur, a town on the Ganges just 50 miles east of Bānāras. The original Hindu name of the place was Garjapur.

⁵⁰ Or the work called In-tu-ki, i.e., the Records of India.

⁵¹ Julien translates "in this convent," but the original names only "the place." It would be natural to suppose that Aśoka built the stūpa, and the saṅghārāmas was erected subsequently.
pierced"—Ayiddhakarna⁵²). The circuit (encircling wall) is not great, but the ornamental work of the building is very artistic. The lakes reflect the surrounding flowers, and the eaves of the towers and pavilions (or, the tower-pavilions) touch one another in a continuous line. The priests are grave and decorous, and all their duties are properly attended to. The tradition states: Formerly there were two or three Śramanás, passionately fond of learning, who lived in the country of Tu-ho-lo⁵³ (Tukhará), to the north of the Snowy Mountains, and were of one mind. Each day during the intervals of worship and reciting the scriptures, they talked together in this way: "The excellent principles of religion are dark and mysterious, not to be fathomed in careless talk. The sacred relics (traces) shine with their own peculiar splendour; let us go together from place to place, and tell our faithful (believing⁵⁴) friends what sacred relics we ourselves have seen."

On this the two or three associates, taking their religious staves,⁵⁵ went forth to travel together. Arrived in India, at whatever convent gates they called, they were treated with disdain as belonging to a frontier country, and no one would take them in. They were exposed to

⁵² The distance and bearing from Ghāzipur given in the text would indicate Bāliya as the site of this convent. There is a village called Bikapur, about one mile east of Bāliya, which Cunningham thinks may be a corruption of Ayiddhakarpūra. It may be the same vihāra as that called "Desert" by Fa-hian (cap. xxxiv.) But we can hardly accept Cunningham's restoration of Kneang ye (which simply means "wilderness" or "desert") to Vṛhuhāraṇya or Bṛhadārāṇya, which he thinks may have been corrupted into Biddhakarn.

⁵³ See vol. i. p. 37. For further remarks on the country Tu-ho-lo and the Tokhari people see a pamphlet by G. de Vasconcellos-Abreu on the probable origin of the Toukharí (De l’Origine probable des Toukhares), Louvain, 1883. This writer combats the opinion of Baron Richtofen and others that the Yue-chi and the Tokhari are identical. This is in agreement with vol. i. p. 57, n. 121, of the present work.

⁵⁴ "Our non-heretical friends or relatives," or it may be simply "our attached friends."

⁵⁵ There are two such foreign pilgrims with their staves sculptured at Amarāvati. Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. lxxxi. fig. 1. Mr. Ferguson suggests they may be Scythians; probably they are these Tokhari people. If this be so, their position beneath the palm-tree indicates the misery they endured, as described in the text; and the grouping may be compared with the "Judaea capta" medal.
the winds and the rains without, and within they suffered from hunger; their withered bodies and pallid faces showed their misery. At this time the king of the country in his wandering through the suburbs of the city saw these strange priests. Surprised, he asked them, "What region, mendicant masters, come you from? and why are you here with your unpierced ears and your soiled garments?" The Śramaṇas replied, "We are men of the Tu-ho-lo country. Having received with respect the bequeathed doctrine, with high resolve we have spurned the common pursuits of life, and following the same plan, we have come to see and adore the sacred relics. But alas! for our little merit, all alike have cast us out; the Śramaṇa of India deign not to give us shelter, and we would return to our own land, but we have not yet completed the round of our pilgrimage. Therefore, with much fatigue and troubled in heart, we follow on our way till we have finished our aim."

The king hearing these words, was much affected with pity, and forthwith erected on this fortunate (excellent) site a saṅghārāma, and wrote on a linen scroll the following decree: "It is by the divine favour of the three precious ones (Buddha, Dharma, Saṅgha) that I am sole ruler of the world and the most honoured among men. Having acquired sovereignty over men, this charge has been laid on me by Buddha, to protect and cherish all who wear the garments of religion (soiled or dyed garments). I have built this saṅghārāma for the special entertainment of strangers. Let no priest with pierced ears ever dwell in this convent of mine." Because of this circumstance the place received its name.

Going south-east from the convent of 'O-pi-t'o-kie-la-na about 100 li, and passing to the south of the Ganges, we come to the town Mo-ho-sa-lo (Mahâsâra), the in-

56 Hence the name, Aviddhakarma.
57 That is, the bequest or testamentary doctrine of Buddha's religion.
58 The town of Mahâsâra, has been identified by M. V. de St. Martin with Masár, a village six miles to the west of Arâ (Arrah).
habitants of which are all Brāhmans, and do not respect the law of Buddha. Seeing the Śrāmaṇ, they first inquired as to his studies, and ascertaining his profound knowledge, they then treated him with respect.

On the north side of the Ganges there is a temple of (Na-lo-yen) Nārāyaṇa-dēva. Its balconies and storied towers are wonderfully sculptured and ornamented. The images of the Dēvas are wrought of stone with the highest art of man. Miraculous signs, difficult to explain, are manifested here.

Going east from this temple 30 li or so, there is a stūpa built by Asōka-rāja. The greater part (a great half) is buried in the earth. Before it is a stone pillar about 20 feet high, on the top of which is the figure of a lion. There is an inscription cut in it (i.e., the pillar) respecting the defeat of the evil spirits. Formerly in this place there was some desert demons, who, relying on their great strength and (spiritual) capabilities, fed on the flesh and blood of men. They made havoc of men and did the utmost mischief. Tathāgata, in pity to living creatures, who were deprived of their natural term of days, by his spiritual power converted the demons, and led them, from reverence to him (kwai i), to accept the command against murder. The demons, receiving his instruction respectfully, saluted him (by the pradakshina). Moreover, they brought a stone, requesting Buddha to sit down, desiring to hear the excellent law (from his mouth), that they might learn how to conquer their thoughts and hold themselves in check. From that time the disciples of the unbelievers have all endeavoured to remove the stone which the demons placed for a seat; but though 10,000

59 According to Cunningham, the pilgrim must have crossed the Ganges above Revelganj, which is nearly due north of Masār exactly 16 miles. This point, near the confluence of the Ganges and Ghāgrā, is deemed especially holy.

60 That is, of Vishnu.

61 The expression used for "desert." (kwang ye) is the same as that found in Fa-hian, referred to above, n. 49.

62 The Chinese phrase kwai i corresponds with the Sanskrit sarāṇa, "to take refuge in." Hence General Cunningham traces the name of this district Sarāṇa to the incident recorded in the text.
of them strove to do so, they would be unable to turn it. Leafy woods and clear lakes surround the foundation on the right and left, and men who approach the neighbourhood are unable to restrain a feeling of awe.

Not far from the spot where the demons were subdued there are many saṅghārāmas, mostly in ruins, but there are still some priests, who all revere the doctrine of the Great Vehicle.

Going south-east from this 100 li or so, we come to a ruined stūpa, but still several tens of feet high. Formerly, after the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata, the great kings of the eight countries divided his relics. The Brāhmaṇ who meted out their several portions, smearing the inside of his pitcher with honey, after allotting them their shares, took the pitcher and returned to his country. He then scraped the remaining relics from the vessel, and raised over them a stūpa, and in honour to the vessel (pitcher) he placed it also within the stūpa, and hence the name (of Drūṇa stūpa) was given it. Afterwards Asōkā-rāja, opening (the stūpa), took the relics and the pitcher, and in place of the old one built a great stūpa. To this

63 See above, pp. 40, 41.
64 This translation is somewhat forced. Literally the passage runs thus—“honey - smearing - pitcher - within.”
65 The Drūṇa stūpa (called the Kumbhāṇa stūpa by Tourneur, J. A. S. B., vol. vii. p. 1013) is said to have been built by Ajātāsatru (Āśokārāma, translated by Burnouf, Intro., p. 372). It may have stood near a village called Degwāra. It is named the “golden pitcher stūpa” by Aśvaghōsha. Fo-sho, v. 2233 (compare Spence Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 351). The Brāhmaṇ himself is sometimes called Drūṇa, or Drūha, or Dauna. Drūṇa corresponds with the Chinese p’ing, a pitcher or vase. Julien, in a note (p. 383, n. 1), seems to imply that Drūṇa is simply a measure of capacity, and so he restores p’ing to karka. But it also means a vessel or vase; probably in this case the Brāhmaṇ’s pitcher. Compare Fo-sho, v. 1408; see also Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of India, p. 442.
66 Julien translates, “then he reconstructed the monuments and enlarged it;” but in the original, as in all cases when speaking of Asōka’s building, it is implied that he destroyed the old erection, and in its place he built “a great stūpa.” It would be gratifying if we could ascertain the character of the pre-Asōka monuments. They are said by Cunningham to have been “mere mounds of earth,” the sepulchral monuments of the early kings of the country even before the rise of Buddhism.—Anc. Geog. of India, p. 449.
day, on festival occasions (fast-days), it emits a great light.

Going north-east from this, and crossing the Ganges, after travelling 140 or 150 li, we come to the country of Fei-she-li (Vaiśāḷī).

Fei-she-li (Vaiśāḷī).

This kingdom ⁶⁷ is about 5000 li in circuit. ⁶⁸ The soil is rich and fertile; flowers and fruits are produced in abundance. The āmra fruit (mango) and the mōcha (banana) are very plentiful and much prized. The climate is agreeable and temperate. The manners of the people are pure and honest. They love religion and highly esteem learning. Both heretics and believers are found living together. There are several hundred saṅghārāmas, which are mostly dilapidated. The three or five ⁶⁹ which still remain have but few priests in them. There are several tens of Dēva temples, occupied by sectaries of different kinds. The followers of the Nirgranthas are very numerous.

The capital city of Vaiśāḷī (or, called Vaiśāḷī) is to a great extent in ruins. Its old foundations are from 60 to 70 li in circuit. The royal precincts are about 4 or 5 li round: there are a few people living in it. North-west

⁶⁷ The pilgrim must have crossed the Gaṇḍak river, not the Ganges. This river flows within 12 miles of Degwāra, the probable site of the Drōṇa stūpa. Vaiśāḷī, therefore, is to the east of the Gaṇḍak, and is placed by Cunningham on the site of the present village of Besārh, where there is an old ruined fort still called Rāja-Bisal-ka-garb, or the fort of the Rāja Visala. It is exactly 23 miles north-north-east from Degwāra. Vaiśāḷī was probably the chief town, or the first in importance, of the people called Vṛjjiś or Vajjia. These people were a northern race who had taken possession of this part of India (viz., from the foot of the mountains to the Ganges on the south, and from the Gaṇḍak on the west to the Ma-hānadi on the east) from an early period; how early we cannot say, but as early as the redaction of the Buddhist books at least. They may have been allied to the Viśdhals, the Yue-chi of Chinese authors. (See J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xiv. part ii.)

⁶⁸ This is much in excess of the actual measurement, even if the country of Vṛjjiś be included. But for these calculations of area or circuit the pilgrim had no data except the ordinary statements of the people, which would be certainly exaggerated.

⁶⁹ Julien proposes to substitute four for five. I have kept to the original, which is in accordance with Oriental idiom.
of the royal city (precincts) 5 or 6 li, is a saṅghārāma with a few disciples. They study the teaching of the Little Vehicle, according to the Sammatiya school.

By the side of it is a stūpa. It was here Tathāgata delivered the Vimalakīrtti Sūtra (Pi-mo-lo-kie-king), and the son of a householder, Ratnākara, and others offered precious parasols (to Buddha). To the east of this is a stūpa. It was here Śāriputra and others obtained perfect exemption (became Arhats).

To the south-east of this last spot is a stūpa; this was built by a king of Vaiśāli. After the Nirvāṇa of Buddha, a former king of this country obtained a portion of the relics of his body, and to honour them as highly as possible raised (this building).

The records of India state: In this stūpa there was at first a quantity of relics equal to a "hoh" (ten pecks). Aśoka-rāja opening it, took away nine-tenths of the whole, leaving only one-tenth behind. Afterwards there was a king of the country who wished again to open the stūpa, but at the moment when he began to do so, the earth trembled, and he dared not proceed to open (the stūpa).

To the north-west is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja; by the side of it is a stone pillar about 50 or 60 feet high, with the figure of a lion on the top. To the south of

79 So Julien restores p’ao-tai, treasure heap. It is sometimes restored to Ratnakūṭa (B. Nanjio, Catalogue, p. io sq.); but, as before stated, the Chinese symbol for kūṭa is huai, not t'ai. Ratnākara is perhaps the same as Yaśada.

71 Yaśada is generally represented with a parasol over his head. Much of the later Buddhist legend appears to have been borrowed or adopted from the history of Yaśada. Pl. lixii., fig. 3, Tree and Serpent Worship, probably relates to him.

72 The Lichhavis of Vaiśāli obtained a share of the relics of Buddha, and raised over them a stūpa. (See Varga 28 of the Po-sho-king-tsan-king). The scene found at Sāṇchi (pl. xxviii., fig. 1, Tree and Serpent Worship) probably refers to this stūpa and its consecration. The appearance of the men shows they were a Northern race; their hair and flowing hair-bands and musical instruments agree with the account given of the people of Kuché (vol. i. p. 19, ante). It is stated both in the Pāli and Northern Buddhist books that the Lichhavis were distinguished for their bright coloured and variegated dresses and equipages. All the evidence seems to point to these people being a branch of the Yue-chi.

73 The Lichhavis were called "lions." See Po-sho, v. 1906. It would seem that the four anima's
the stone pillar is a tank. This was dug by a band of monkeys (Markatakṣara) for Buddha’s use. When he was in the world of old, Tathāgata once and again dwelt here. Not far to the south of this tank is a stūpa; it was here the monkeys, taking the alms-bowl of Tathāgata, climbed a tree and gathered him some honey.

Not far to the south is a stūpa; this is the place where the monkeys offered the honey to Buddha. At the northwest angle of the lake there is still a figure of a monkey.

To the north-east of the saṅghārāma 3 or 4 li is a stūpa; this is the old site of the house of Vimalakīrtti (Pi-mo-lo-ki); various spiritual signs (manifestations) are exhibited here.

Not far from this is a spirit-dwelling (a chapel?), its shape like a pile of bricks. Tradition says this stone-pile is where the householder Vimalakīrtti preached the law when he was sick.

Not far from this is a stūpa; this is the site of the old residence of Ratnakara (P’ao ts’i).78

Not far from this is a stūpa; this is the old house of the lady Âmra.79 It was here the aunt of Buddha and other Bhikshunis obtained Nirvāṇa.

named in vol. i. pp. 11, 12, are typical of the four regions respectively; the “lion” would therefore typify Northern nations.

74 This scene is also found at Sanchi (pl. xxvi. fig. 2, Tree and Serpent Worship). It is on the same pillar as the consecration scene alluded to above. The pillar was evidently the work or gift of the Vaišālī people.

75 Vimalakīrtti is explained by the Chinese equivalents ku kru ching, i. e., undefiled reputation. He was a householder (chang-chê) of Vaiśālī and a convert to Buddhism. There is little said about him in the books; but he is supposed to have visited China (Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.)

76 This was probably one of the Vajjian shrines, Chetiyanī or Yak-kha-chetiyanī, of which we read in the Book of the Great Decease, and elsewhere. (Compare Sac. Bks. of the East, vol. xi. p. 4.)

77 Julien translates—“Tradition has preserved for it the name of ‘piled-up stone’ (Âmakāra?),” But there is no symbol for “name;” it is simply “tradition says.” Julien has omitted the title of “householder” (chang-chê).

78 There is some difficulty in restoring P’ao ts’i. Julien, in the passage before us, restores it to Ratnakara, but in note i (same page) he restores the same symbols to Ratnakāta.

79 For an account of the lady Âmra, see fo-sho-hing-tsan-king, varga 22. Julien restores the expression to “daughter of the Âmra” (Âmrâdârikâ). It may be so; but
To the north of the saṅgharāma 3 or 4 li is a stūpa; this indicates the place where Tathāgata stopped when about to advance to Kuśinagara to die, whilst men and Kinnaras followed him. From this not far to the northwest is a stūpa; here Buddha for the very last time gazed upon the city of Vaiśāli. Not far to the south of this is a vihāra, before which is built a stūpa; this is the site of the garden of the Âmra-girl, which she gave in charity to Buddha.

By the side of this garden is a stūpa; this is the place where Tathāgata announced his death. When Buddha formerly dwelt in this place, he told Ânanda as follows:—“Those who obtain the four spiritual faculties are able to extend their lives to a kalpa. What is the term of years of Tathāgata then?” Thrice he asked this question, and Ânanda answered not, through the fascination of Māra. Then Ânanda rising from his seat, gave himself up to silent thought in a wood. At this time Māra coming to Buddha, asked him, saying, “Tathāgata has for a long time dwelt in the world teaching and converting. Those whom he has saved from the circling streams (of transmigrating beings of the East, vol. xi. p. 64, and vol. xix. p. 283.

80 The Kinnaras are said to be the horse-faced musicians of Kuṭṭāra (Eitel, sub voc.); but the Chinese symbols describe them as “something different from men.” They may be seen figured in the sculpture at Sanchi, pl. xxvi. fig. 1, where they are coming to the place where Buddha stopped (figured by the oblong stone); this is another sculpture of the Vaiśāli pillar, and illustrates the notice in the text.


82 Or, the lady Âmra; for an account of the gift of the garden, see Fo-sho as above.


84 This interview of Māra (called Piśuna, the wicked one, in the Chinese version, S. B. E., vol. xix. p. 267) is again found among the Sāṃchi sculptures on the Vaiśāli pillar, pl. xxvi. fig. 1, lower scene. Māra is known by the escort of women, his daughters; he is here standing in front of the tree which symbolises Buddha’s presence. His appearance and escort here are the same as in pl. xxx. fig. 1, upper part; he is there represented above the scene of rejoicing among the Dévas of the Trayāstrimśas heaven around
gration) are as numerous as the dust or the sands. This surely is the time to partake of the joy of Nirvāṇa." Tathāgata taking some grains of dust on his nail, asked Māra, saying, "Are the grains of dust on my nail equal to the dust of the whole earth or not?" He answered, "The dust of the earth is much greater." Buddha said, "Those who are saved are as the grains of earth on my nail; those not saved like the grains of the whole earth; but after three months I shall die." Māra hearing it, was rejoiced and departed.

Meantime Ānanda in the wood suddenly had a strange dream, and coming to Buddha he told it to him, saying, "I was in the wood, when I beheld in my dream a large tree, whose branches and leaves in their luxuriance cast a grateful shade beneath, when suddenly a mighty wind arose which destroyed and scattered the tree and its branches without leaving a mark behind. Oh, forbid it that the lord is going to die! My heart is sad and worn, therefore I have come to ask you if it be so or not?"

Buddha answered Ānanda, "I asked you before, and the head-turban of Buddha after the great renunciation; he is fitly placed above that heaven as being the "lord of the world of desire," and therefore always described as occupying the upper mansion of this tier of heavens. His distress and rage are indicative of his condition of mind in knowledge of Bōdhisattva's renunciation. If the four identifications on this pillar are correct, we may conclude that the people of Vaisālī were a Northern people allied to the Yue-chi, which illustrates the observation of Csoma Körösí, "that Tibetan writers derive their first king about 250 B.C. from the Lītsabyis or Līchhavis" (Manual of Buddhism, p. 236, note). The Śākya family of Buddha is also said to belong to this tribe. Mémoire by V. de St. Martin, p. 367, note. The symbols used by the Chinese for the Yue-chi and for the Vṛjījas are the same. Unless we are to suppose a much earlier incursion of these people into India than is generally allowed, the date of the Southern books of Buddhism (the book of the Great Decease and others), which contain accounts respecting the character, habits, and dress of the Līchhavis (which correspond with the Northern accounts), must be brought down considerably later than the assumed date of the redaction of the Pāli canon. But, on the other hand, if it be true that the incursion of these people took place when Pāṭaliputra was strengthened as a fortified outpost to repel their advance, i.e., about the time of Buddha, then we must allow an early advance on their part into India. We know they were regarded as intruders, for Ajātaśatru, king of Magadha, was desirous to attack and root out "these Vajjians," and it was he also who strengthened the city of Pāṭaliputra. The question deserves consideration.
Māra so fascinated you that you did not then ask me to remain in the world. Māra-rāja has urged me to die soon, and I have covenanted to do so, and fixed the time. This is the meaning of your dream."  

Not far from this spot is a stūpa. This is the spot where the thousand sons beheld their father and their mother. Formerly there was a Rishi who lived a secret life amid the crags and valleys. In the second month of spring he had been bathing himself in a pure stream of water. A roe-deer which came to drink there just after, conceived and brought forth a female child, very beautiful beyond human measure, but she had the feet of a deer. The Rishi having seen it, adopted and cherished it (as his child). As time went on, on one occasion he ordered her to go and seek some fire. In so doing she came to the hut of another Rishi; but wherever her feet trod there she left the impression of a lotus-flower on the ground. The other Rishi having seen this, was very much surprised, and bade her walk round his hut and he would give her some fire. Having done so and got the fire, she returned. At this time Fan-yu-wang (Brahmadatta-rāja) going out on a short excursion, saw the lotus-flower traces, and followed them to seek (the cause). Admiring her strange and wonderful appearance, he took her back in his carriage. The soothsayers casting her fortune said, "She will bear a thousand sons." Hearing this, the other women did nothing but scheme against her. Her time having been accomplished, she brought forth a lotus-flower of a thousand leaves, and on each leaf was seated a boy. The other women slandered her on its account, and saying it was "an unlucky omen," threw (the lotus) into the Ganges, and it was carried away by the current.

---

85 For a full account of this incident, see, as before, The Sacred Books of the East, vols. xi. and xix.
86 Compare Fa-hian, p. 97 (Beal's edition). Julien has no notice of "the father" of the children; perhaps it is an error in my text.
87 If "yu" be taken in the sense of "given," Brahmadatta may be the right restoration. Julien proposes Brahmanadita doubtfully.
The king of Ujiyana (U-shi-yen), down the stream going out for an excursion, observed a yellow-cloud-covered box floating on the water and coming towards him. He took it and opened it, and there saw a thousand boys; being well nourished, when they came to perfect stature, they were of great strength. Relying on these, he extended his kingdom in every direction, and encouraged by the victories of his troops, he was on the point of extending his conquests to this country (i.e., Vaisâla). Brahmadatta-râja hearing of it, was much alarmed; fearing his army was not able to contend successfully with the invaders, he was at a loss what to do. At this time the deer-footed girl, knowing in her heart that these were her sons, addressed the king thus: “Now that these youthful warriors are approaching the frontier, from the highest to the lowest there is an absence of courage (heart). Your feeble wife by her thought is able to conquer those redoubtable champions.” The king not yet believing her, remained overwhelmed with fear. Then the deer-girl, mounting the city wall, waited the arrival of the warriors. The thousand youths having surrounded the city with their soldiers, the deer-girl said to them, “Do not be rebellious! I am your mother; you are my sons.” The thousand youths replied, “What extravagant words are these!” The deer-girl then pressing both her breasts, a thousand jets of milk flowed out therefrom, and by divine direction fell into their mouths. Then they laid aside their armour, broke their ranks, and returned to their tribe and family. The two countries mutually rejoiced, and the people rested in peace.

Not far from this spot is a stûpa. This is where Tathâgata walked for exercise, and left the traces thereof. In teaching (or, pointing to the traces) he addressed the congregation thus: “In ancient days, in this place, I returned to my family on seeing my mother. If you would

Fa-hian calls this place the spot where Buddha "laid aside his bow and his club."
know then, those thousand youths are the same as the thousand Buddhas of this Bhadra-kalpa."

To the east of the spot where Buddha explained this birth (jātaka) is a ruined foundation above which is built a stūpa. A bright light is from time to time reflected here. Those who ask (pray) in worship obtain their requests. The ruins of the turreted preaching-hall, where Buddha uttered the Samantamukha stātra and other sūtras, are still visible.

By the side of the preaching-hall, and not far from it, is a stūpa which contains the relics of the half body of Ānanda.

No far from this are several stūpas—the exact number has not yet been determined. Here a thousand Pratyēka Buddhas (To-kio) attained Nirvāṇa. Both within and without the city of Vaiśālī, and all round it, the sacred vestiges are so numerous that it would be difficult to recount them all. At every step commanding sites and old foundations are seen, which the succession of seasons and lapse of years have entirely destroyed. The forests are uprooted; the shallow lakes are dried up and stinking; nought but offensive remnants of decay can be recorded.

Going north-west of the chief city 50 or 60 li, we come to a great stūpa. This is where the Lichhavas (Li-ch'ep'o) took leave of Buddha. Tathāgata having left the city of Vaiśālī on his way to Kuśinagara, all the Lichhavas, hearing that Buddha was about to die, accompanied him wailing and lamenting. The Lord of the World having observed their fond affection, and as words were useless to calm them, immediately by his spiritual power caused to appear a great river with steep sides and deep, the waves of which flowed on impetuously. Then the Lichhavas were abruptly stopped on their way, moved with grief.

---

89 Pu-men-t'eo-lo-ni-king; this is a section of the Saddharma pundarika Sūtra, but we cannot suppose that any portion of this work is as old as the time of Buddha.

90 For an account of the division of Ānanda's body consult Fa-hian, cap. xxvi.

91 For this event see Fa-hian, cap. xxiv.
as they were. Then Tathāgata left them his pātra as a token of remembrance.

Two hundred li to the north-west of the city of Vaiśālī, or a little less, is an old and long-deserted city, with but few inhabitants. In it is a stūpa. This is the place where Buddha dwelt when, in old days, for the sake of an assembly of Boddhisattvas, men, and Devas, he recited an explanatory jātaka of himself when as a Boddhisattva he was a Chakravartin monarch of this city and called Mahâdève (Ta-tien). He was possessed of the seven treasures, and his rule extended over the world (the four empires). Observing the marks of decay in himself, and concluding in his mind about the impermanency of his body, he took a high resolve (being secretly affected by his reflections), left his throne, gave up his country, and, becoming a hermit, assumed the dark robes and gave himself to study.

Going south-east from the city 14 or 15 li, we come to a great stūpa. It was here the convocation of the seven hundred sages and saints was held. One hundred and ten years after the Nirvāna of Buddha there were in Vaiśālī some Bhikshus who broke the laws of Buddha and perverted the rules of discipline. At this time Yaśada (Ye-she-t'o) Âyushmat was stopping in the country of Kosala (Kiao-so-lo); Samboghâ (San-pu-kia) Âyushmat was dwelling in the country of Mathurâ; Rêvata (Li-po-to) Âyushmat was stopping in the country of Han-jo (Kanyâkubja?); Sâla (Sha-lo) Âyushmat was stopping in the country of Vaiśālī; Pujasumira (Fu-she-su-mi-lo=Kujjasobhita?) Âyushmat

92 That is, the seven treasures of a holy-wheel king, or Chakravartin. For an account of these treasures see Sénart, La Legende du Buddha, pp. 20 ff.
93 These marks of decay were the first white hairs that appeared on his head. On seeing these he resigned the throne to his son and became an ascetic. He is called Makkhadeva by Spence Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, pp. 129, 130.
94 This is generally called "the second Buddhist convocation." For an account of it see Oldenberg, Vinaya-pitakam, vol. i.; Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 83, &c., &c.
95 So the Chinese Chang-lo may be rendered.
96 Julien restores this doubtfully as Hañña.
97 Julien has omitted all mention of Sâla.
was stopping in the country of Sha-lo-li-fo (Salārībhu?): all these were great Arhats, possessed of independent power, faithful to the three piṭakas, possessed of the three enlightenments (vidyās), of great renown, knowing all that should be known, all of them disciples of Ānanda.

At this time Yaśada sent a message to summon the sages and saints to a convocation at the city of Vaiśālī. There was only wanting one to make up the 700, when Fu-she-su-mi-lo by the use of his divine sight saw the saints and sages assembled and deliberating about religious matters. By his miraculous power he appeared in the assembly. Then Sambōgha in the midst of the assembly, baring his right breast and prostrating himself, (arose) and exclaimed with a loud voice, “Let the congregation be silent, respectfully thoughtful! In former days the great and holy King of the Law, after an illustrious career, entered Nirvāṇa. Although years and months have elapsed since then, his words and teaching still survive. But now the Bhikshus of Vaiśālī have become negligent and pervert the commandments. There are ten points in which they disobey the words of the Buddha (the ten-power-dāsa-abāla). Now then, learned sirs, you know well the points of error; you are well acquainted with the teaching of the highly virtuous (bhadanta) Ānanda: in deep affection to Buddha let us again declare his holy will.”

Then the whole congregation were deeply affected; they summoned to the assembly the Bhikshus, and, according to the Vinaya, they charged them with transgression, bound afresh the rules that had been broken, and vindicated the holy law.

Going south 80 or 90 li from this place, we come to the saṅghārāma called Śvētapura (Shi-fei-to-pu-lo); its massive towers, with their rounded shapes and double storeys, rise in the air. The priests are calm and respectful, and all study the Great Vehicle. By the side of this building are traces where the four past Buddhas sat and walked.

By the side of these is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. It
was here, when Buddha was alive, that, on going southwards to the Magadha country, he turned northwards to look at Vaiśālī, and left there, on the road where he stopped to breathe, traces of his visit.

Going south-east from the Śvetapura saṅghārāma 30 li or so, on either (south and north) side of the Ganges river there is a stūpa; this is the spot where the venerable Ānanda divided his body between the two kingdoms. Ānanda was on his father's side cousin of Tathāgata. He was a disciple (śaṅkha) well acquainted with the doctrine (collectanea), thoroughly instructed in ordinary matters (men and things), and of masculine understanding. After Buddha's departure from the world he succeeded the great Kāśyapa in the guardianship of the true law, and became the guide and teacher of men devoted to religion (men not yet Arhats). He was dwelling in the Magadha country in a wood; as he was walking to and fro he saw a Śrāmaṇēra (novice) repeating in a bungling way a sūtra of Buddha, perverting and mistaking the sentences and words. Ānanda having heard him, his feelings were moved towards him, and, full of pity, he approached the place where he was; he desired to point out his mistakes and direct him in the right way. The Śrāmaṇēra, smiling, said, "Your reverence is of great age; your interpretation of the words is a mistaken one. My teacher is a man of much enlightenment; his years (springs and autumns) are in their full maturity. I have received from him personally the true method of interpreting (the work in question); there can be no mistake." Ānanda remained silent, and then went away, and with a sigh he said, "Although my years are many, yet for men's sake I was wishful to remain longer in the world, to hand down and defend the true law. But now men (all creatures) are stained with sin, and it is exceedingly difficult to instruct them. To stay longer would be useless: I will die soon." On this, going from Magadha, he went towards the city of Vaiśālī,

98 In Chinese, To-kan. He was the son of Śuklōdana-rāja.
and was now in the middle of the Ganges in a boat, crossing the river. At this time the king of Magadha, hearing of Ânanda's departure, his feelings were deeply affected towards him, and so, preparing his chariot, he hastened after him with his followers (soldiers) to ask him to return. And now his host of warriors, myriads in number, were on the southern bank of the river, when the king of Vaiśāli, hearing of Ânanda's approach, was moved by a sorrowful affection, and, equipping his host, he also went with all speed to meet him. His myriads of soldiers were assembled on the opposite bank of the river (the north side), and the two armies faced each other, with their banners and accoutrements shining in the sun. Ânanda, fearing lest there should be a conflict and a mutual slaughter, raised himself from the boat into mid-air, and there displayed his spiritual capabilities, and forthwith attained Nirvāṇa. He seemed as though encompassed by fire, and his bones fell in two parts, one on the south side, the other on the north side of the river. Thus the two kings each took a part, and whilst the soldiers raised their piteous cry, they all returned home and built stūpas over the relics and paid them religious worship.

Going north-east from this 500 li or so, we arrive at the country of Fo-li-shi (Vṛijji).  

**FO-LI-SHI (Vṛijji).**

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit. From east to west it is broad, and narrow from north to south. The soil is rich and fertile; fruits and flowers are abundant.

---

99 Northern people call this San-fa-shi-Samvaji. It is in Northern India.—Ch. Ed.
100 The country of the Vṛijjīs or Samvrjījīs, i.e., united Vṛijjīs, was that of the confederated eight tribes of the people called the Vṛijjīs or Vajīs, one of which, viz., that of the Lichhavis, dwelt at Vaiśālī. They were republicans, and, if we may rely on the inferences found in note 80 ante, they were a confederation of Northern tribes who had at an early date taken possession of this part of India. They were driven back by Ajātaśatrū, king of Magadha. Compare Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 449. Sacred Books of the East, xi. 2 ss.
The climate is rather cold; the men are quick and hasty in disposition. Most of the people are heretics; a few believe in the law of Buddha. There are about ten saṅghārāmas; the disciples (priests) are less than 1000. They study assiduously both the Great and Little Vehicles. There are several tens of Dēva temples, with a great number of unbelievers. The capital of the country is called Chen-shu-na. It is mostly in ruins. In the old royal precinct (citadel or inner city) there are yet some 3000 houses; it may be called either a village or a town.

To the north-east of the great river is a saṅghārāma. The priests are few, but they are studious and of a pure and dignified character.

From this going west along the side of the river, we find a stūpa about 30 feet high. To the south of it is a stretch of deep water. The great merciful Lord of the World converted here some fishermen. In days long past, when Buddha was living, there were 500 fishermen who joined in partnership to fish for and catch the finny tribes, whereupon they entangled in the river stream a great fish with eighteen heads; each head had two eyes. The fishermen desired to kill it, but Tathāgata being then in the country of Vaiśālī, with his divine sight saw what was going on, and raising within him a compassionate heart, he used this opportunity as a means for converting and directing (men). Accordingly, in order to open their minds, he said to the great congregation, “In the Vṛjji country there is a great fish; I wish to guide it (into the right way), in order to enlighten the fishermen; you therefore should embrace this opportunity.”

101 Julien restores this to Chañšuna. V. de St. Martin connects the name with Janaka and Janakapura, the capital of Mithila (Mémoire, p. 368). Compare Cunningham, Anc. Geogr., p. 445. The interesting account the last writer gives of the old mounds or stūpas (arranged as a cross) at the old town of Navandgarh in this territory (p. 449 op. cit.), and the respect which the Vajjians observed towards them, reminds us of the record of Herodotos respecting the veneration of the Skythians for the tombs (mounds) of their ancestors (Melpomene, 133).
On this the great congregation surrounding him, by their spiritual power passed through the air and came to the river-side. He sat down as usual, and forthwith addressed the fishermen: “Kill not that fish. By my spiritual power I will open the way for the exercise of expedients, and cause this great fish to know its former kind of life; and in order to this I will cause it to speak in human language and truly to exhibit human affections (feelings).” Then Tathāgata, knowing it beforehand, asked (the fish), “In your former existence, what crime did you commit that in the circle of migration you have been born in this evil way and with this hideous body?” The fish said, “Formerly, by the merit I had gained, I was born in a noble family as the Brāhmaṇ Kapitha (Kie-pi-tha). Relying on this family origin, I insulted other persons; relying on my extensive knowledge, I despised all books and rules, and with a supercilious heart I reviled the Buddhas with opprobrious words, and ridiculed the priests by comparing them to every kind of brute beast, as the ass, or the mule, or the elephant, or the horse, and every unsightly form. In return for all this I received this monstrous body of mine. Thanks, however, to some virtuous remnants during former lives, I am born during the time of a Buddha’s appearance in the world, and permitted to see his sacred form, and myself to receive his sacred instruction and to confess and repent of my former misdeeds.”

On this Tathāgata, according to the circumstance, instructed and converted him by wisely opening his understanding. The fish having received the law, expired, and by the power of this merit was born in heaven. On this he considered his body, and reflected by what circumstances he was thus born. So, knowing his former life and recollecting the circumstances of his conversion, he was moved with gratitude to Buddha, and, with all the Dēvas, with bended form he bowed before him and worshipped, and then having circumambulated him, he withdrew, and, standing apart, offered precious flowers and
unguents in religious service. The Lord of the World having directed the fishermen to consider this, and on their account preached the law, they were all forthwith enlightened and offered him profound respect. Repenting of their faults, they destroyed their nets, burnt their boats, and having taken refuge in the law, they assumed the religious habit, and by means of the excellent doctrine they heard came out of the reach of worldly influences and obtained the holy fruit (of Arhats).

Going north-east from this spot about 100 li, we come to an old city, on the west of which is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja, in height about 100 feet. Here Buddha, when living in the world, preached the law for six months and converted the Dēvas. Going north 140 or 150 paces is a little stūpa; here Buddha, for the sake of the Bhikshus, established some rules of discipline. West of this not far is a stūpa containing hair and nail relics. Tathāgata formerly residing in this place, men from all the neighbouring towns and villages flocked together and burnt incense, and scattered flowers, and lighted lamps and torches in his honour.

Going north-west from this 1400 or 1500 li, crossing some mountains and entering a valley, we come to the country of Ni-po-lo (Nēpāla).

**NI-PO-LO (NĒPĀL).**

This country is about 4000 li in circuit, and is situated among the Snowy Mountains. The capital city is about 20 li round. Mountains and valleys are joined together in an unbroken succession. It is adapted for the growth of cereals, and abounds with flowers and fruits. It produces red copper, the Yak and the Mingming bird (jivañjīva). In commerce they use coins made of red copper. The climate is icy cold; the manners of the people are false and perfidious. Their temperament is hard and fierce, with little regard to truth or honour. They are unlearned but skilful in the arts; their appearance is ungainly and
revolting. There are believers and heretics mixed together. The saṅghārāmas and Dēva temples are closely joined. There are about 2000 priests, who study both the Great and Little Vehicle. The number of heretics and sectaries of different sorts is uncertain. The king is a Kshattriya, and belongs to the family of the Licchavas. His mind is well-informed, and he is pure and dignified in character. He has a sincere faith in the law of Buddha.

Lately there was a king called Aṃśuvarman (An- chu-fa-mo), who was distinguished for his learning and ingenuity. He himself had composed a work on “sounds” (Śabḍavidyā); he esteemed learning and respected virtue, and his reputation was spread everywhere.

To the south-east of the capital is a little stream and a lake. If we fling fire into it, flames immediately arise; other things take fire if thrown in it, and change their character.

From this going back to Vaiśālī, and crossing the Ganges to the south, we arrive at the country of Mo-kie-t'o (Magadha).

END OF BOOK VII.

102 In Chinese, Kwang-cheu: the only Aṃśuvarman in the lists of Nepāl dynasties is placed by Prinsep immediately after Śivadēva, whose date he adjusted tentatively to A.D. 470. In Wright’s lists Śivadēva is omitted, and Aṃśuvarman stands at the head of the Thākuri dynasty. In an inscription of Śivadēva, Aṃśuvarman is spoken of as a very powerful feudal chieftain, who probably ruled at first in the name of Śivadēva, but afterwards assumed the supreme power; and in other inscriptions dated Sam. 39 and 45, he is styled king, and the traditional account says he married the daughter of his predecessor and began a new dynasty; but it makes him contemporary with Vikramāditya of Ujjani (? cir. 540 to 580 A.D., Max Müller, India, p. 289). From Hiuen Tsiang’s allusion we should be inclined to place Aṃśuvarman’s reign about A.D. 580-600. His sister Bhūgadēvi was married to a Prince Sūrasēna, and by him was the mother of Bhūgarvarman and Bhūg- yadēvi. Aṃśuvarman was probably succeeded by Jishnugupta, of whom we have an inscription dated Saṃ. 48. If these dates refer to the Śrī Harsha era, then Aṃśuvarman ruled about A.D. 644-652—at the close of the lifetime of Hiuen Tsiang—which is rather late. See Wright’s History of Nepāl, p. 170 f.; Prinsep’s Ind. Ant., vol. ii., U. T., p. 269; Ind. Ant., vol. ix. pp. 169-172.

103 But the pilgrim does not appear himself to have gone into Nepāl. He went to the capital of the Vṛj- jia, and there speaks from report. His return therefore must be calculated from this place.
BOOK VIII.

Contains the First Part of the Account of the Country of Magadha (Mo-kie-t’o).

The country of Magadha (Mo-kie-t’o) is about 5000 li in circuit. The walled cities have but few inhabitants, but the towns are thickly populated. The soil is rich and fertile and the grain cultivation abundant. There is an unusual sort of rice grown here, the grains of which are large and scented and of an exquisite taste. It is specially remarkable for its shining colour. It is commonly called "the rice for the use of the great." As the ground is low and damp, the inhabited towns are built on the high uplands. After the first month of summer and before the second month of autumn, the level country is flooded, and communication can be kept up by boats. The manners of the people are simple and honest. The temperature is pleasantly hot; they esteem very much the pursuit of learning and profoundly respect the religion of Buddha. There are some fifty saṅghārāmas, with about 10,000 priests, of whom the greater number study the teaching of the Great Vehicle. There are ten Deva temples, occupied by sectaries of different persuasions, who are very numerous.

To the south of the river Ganges there is an old city about 70 li round. Although it has been long deserted, its foundation walls still survive. Formerly, when men's

1 Or, it may mean the chief city or capital.
2 Yik, the towns; Julien gives the titles Mahādīlī and Sugandhikīd villages.
3 This appears to be the rice called Mahādīlī and Sugandhikīd villages.
lives were incalculably long, it was called Kusumapura (K'u-su-mo-pu-lo), 4 so called because the palace of the king had many flowers. Afterwards, when men’s age reached several thousands of years, then its name was changed to Pātaliputra 5 (Po-ch’a-li-tsü-ch’ing).

At the beginning there was a Brāhmaṇ of high talent and singular learning. Many thousands flocked to him to receive instruction. One day all the students went out on a tour of observation; one of them betrayed a feeling of unquiet and distress. His fellow-students addressed him and said, “What troubles you, friend?” He said, “I am in my full maturity (beauty) with perfect strength, and yet I go on wandering about here like a lonely shadow till years and months have passed, and my duties (manly duties) 6 not performed. Thinking of this, my words are sad and my heart is afflicted.”

On this his companions in sport replied, “We must seek then for your good a bride and her friends.” Then they supposed two persons to represent the father and mother of the bridegroom, and two persons the father and mother of the bride, 7 and as they were sitting under a Pātali (Po-ch’a-li) tree, they called it the tree of the son-in-law. 8 Then they gathered seasonable fruits and pure

4 Explained in a note to mean Hiang-hu-kong-sh’ing,—the city, or royal precinct, of the scented flower (kusuma).
5 The text seems to refer the foundation of this city to a remote period, and in this respect is in agreement with Diodoros, who says (lib. ii. cap. 39) that this city εἰρηνικὸς καὶ μεγάλη was founded by Heraclês. The Buddhist accounts speak of it as a village, Pātaligāma, which was being strengthened and enlarged by Ajātaśatru, contemporary of Buddha, for the purpose of repelling the advance of the Vṛtta. See Sac. Books of the East, vol. xi. pp. 16, 17; Bigandet, Life of Gautama, p. 257; Fo-sho-hsieng-ts’un-king, p. 249, n. 3; Cunningham, Anc. Geog. of India, p. 453.
6 So it seems, from the story following, the passage must be understood. Julien confines the meaning to his “studies” not yet completed. But there would be no point in the pretended marriage, if that were his regret.
7 This is the natural translation of the passage, and makes good sense without the alteration proposed by Julien.
8 That is, they made the tree the father-in-law of the student; in other words, he was to marry the daughter of the tree, a Pātali flower (Bignonia suaveolens). I can find no authority for Julien’s statement that the word son-in-law corresponds to Pātala; this statement is also repeated by Eitel, Handbook, sub voc. Pātala.
water, and followed all the nuptial customs, and requested a time to be fixed. Then the father of the supposed bride, gathering a twig with flowers on it, gave it to the student and said, "This is your excellent partner; be graciously pleased to accept her." The student's heart was rejoiced as he took her to himself. And now, as the sun was setting, they proposed to return home; but the young student, affected by love, preferred to remain.

Then the other said, "All this was fun; pray come back with us; there are wild beasts in this forest; we are afraid they will kill you." But the student preferred to remain walking up and down by the side of the tree.

After sunset a strange light lit up the plain, the sound of pipes and lutes with their soft music (was heard), and the ground was covered with a sumptuous carpet. Suddenly an old man of gentle mien was seen coming, supporting himself by his staff, and there was also an old mother leading a young maiden. They were accompanied by a procession along the way, dressed in holiday attire and attended with music. The old man then pointed to the maiden and said, "This is your worship's wife (lady)." Seven days then passed in carousing and music, when the companions of the student, in doubt whether he had been destroyed by wild beasts, went forth and came to the place. They found him alone in the shade of the tree, sitting as if facing a superior guest. They asked him to return with them, but he respectfully declined.

After this he entered of his own accord the city, to pay respect to his relatives, and told them of this adventure from beginning to end. Having heard it with wonder, he returned with all his relatives and friends to the middle of the forest, and there they saw the flowering tree become a great mansion; servants of all kinds were hurrying to and fro on every side, and the old man came forward and received them with politeness, and entertained them with all kinds of dainties served up amidst the sound of music.

9 We must suppose him to represent the tree, the real father.
After the usual compliments, the guests returned to the city and told to all, far and near, what had happened.

After the year was accomplished the wife gave birth to a son, when the husband said to his spouse, "I wish now to return, but yet I cannot bear to be separated from you (your bridal residence); but if I rest here I fear the exposure to wind and weather."

The wife having heard this, told her father. The old man then addressed the student and said, "Whilst living contented and happy why must you go back? I will build you a house; let there be no thought of desertion." On this his servants applied themselves to the work, and in less than a day it was finished.

When the old capital of Kusumapura was changed, this town was chosen, and from the circumstance of the genii building the mansion of the youth the name henceforth of the country was Pāṭaliputra pura (the city of the son of the Pāṭali tree).

To the north of the old palace of the king is a stone pillar several tens of feet high; this is the place where Aśoka (Wu-yau) rāja made "a hell." In the hundredth year after the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata, there was a king called Aśoka ('O-shu-kia), who was the great-grandson of Bimbisāra-rājā. He changed his capital from Rāja-grīha to Pāṭali (pura), and built an outside rampart to surround the old city. Since then many generations have

---

10 From this it would appear that Kusumapura was not on the same site as Pāṭaliputra. Rāja-grīha was the capital in the time of Ajātaśatru, and it was he who strengthened Pāṭaliputra. In the next clause it is said that Aśoka changed his capital from Rāja-grīha to Pāṭaliputra. He is described as the great-grandson of Bimbisāra, and therefore the grandson of Ajātaśatru. The Vāyu Purāṇa states that Kusumapura or Pāṭaliputra was founded by Rāja Udayāśva, the grandson of Ajātaśatru; but the Mahāvamsa makes Udaya the son of the king. See Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 453.

11 Hiuen Tsiang uses in this passage the phonetic equivalents for Aśoka, 'O-shu-kia; on this Dr. Oldenberg founds an argument that the king referred to is not Dharmāśoka, but Kālāśoka (Vinaya Piṭakam, vol. i., Introd., p.xxxiii. n.) But a note in the text states that 'O-shu-kia is the Sanskrit form of Wu-yau; the latter in the Chinese form, signifying "sorrowsless." For Bimbisara, see p. 102, n. 41.
passed, and now there only remain the old foundation walls (of the city). The saṅghārāmas, Dēva temples, and stūpas which lie in ruins may be counted by hundreds. There are only two or three remaining (entire). To the north of the old palace, and bordering on the Ganges river, there is a little town which contains about 1000 houses.

At first when Asoka (Wu-yau) rāja ascended the throne, he exercised a most cruel tyranny; he constituted a hell for the purpose of torturing living creatures. He surrounded it with high walls with lofty towers. He placed there specially vast furnaces of molten metal, sharp scythes, and every kind of instrument of torture like those in the infernal regions. He selected an impious man whom he appointed lord of the hell. At first every criminal in the empire, whatever his fault, was consigned to this place of calamity and outrage; afterwards all those who passed by the place were seized and destroyed. All who came to the place were killed without any chance of self-defence.

At this time a Śramaṇa, just entered the religious order, was passing through the suburbs begging food, when he came to hell-gate. The impious keeper of the place laid hold upon him to destroy him. The Śramaṇa, filled with fear, asked for a respite to perform an act of worship and confession. Just then he saw a man bound with cords enter the prison. In a moment they cut off his hands and feet, and pounded his body in a mortar, till all the members of his body were mashed up together in confusion.

The Śramaṇa having witnessed this, deeply moved with pity, arrived at the conviction of the impermanence (anitya) of all earthly things, and reached the fruit of "exemption from learning" (Arhatship). Then the infernal

12 This may refer to Kusumapura, the "flowery palace" city, or to the palace in the old town of Pātali-putra.

13 There seems to be only one man; Julien has "un troupe de scélérats." The story of this place of torment is found also in Fa-hsien, cap. xxxii.
lactor said, "Now you must die." The Śramana having become an Arhat, was freed in heart from the power of birth and death, and so, though cast into a boiling caldron, it was to him as a cool lake, and on its surface there appeared a lotus flower, whereon he took his seat. The infernal lactor, terrified thereat, hastened to send a messenger to the king to tell him of the circumstance. The king having himself come and beheld the sight, raised his voice in loud praise of the miracle.

The keeper, addressing the king, said, "Mahārāja, you too must die." "And why so?" said the king. "Because of your former decree with respect to the infliction of death, that all who came to the walls of the hell should be killed; it was not said that the king might enter and escape death."

The king said, "The decree was indeed established, and cannot be altered. But when the law was made, were you excepted? You have long destroyed life. I will put an end to it." Then ordering the attendants, they seized the lactor and cast him into a boiling caldron. After his death the king departed, and levelled the walls, filled up the ditches, and put an end to the infliction of such horrible punishments.

To the south of the earth-prison (the hell), and not far off, is a stūpa. Its foundation walls are sunk, and it is in a leaning, ruinous condition. There remains, however, the crowning jewel of the cupola.14 This is made of carved stone, and has a surrounding balustrade.15 This was the

14 Shai pao, the distinctive or strong ornament. It seems to refer to "the tee (ヒル)" as it is called; the ornamental enclosure above the cupola would represent the region of the heaven of the thirty-three Devas.

15 So the dome of Sāñchi is surmounted as restored by Mr. Fergusson, Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. ii. (see also the remarks of the same writer, op. cit. p. 100, 1st ed.) The enclosed space or box on the summit of the stūpa is not, however, a simulated relic-box, but represents the first heaven, or the Trayāstrīṃśas heaven of Śakra and the thirty-two Devas. The Devas, therefore, are constantly represented in the sculptures as surrounding this enclosure and offering their gifts, in token of the relics of Buddha (his hair, golden bowl, &c.), taken there for worship. The Tee or Hīl is the cone of metal circles, raised above this enclosed space, representing the lands (khetas, or kheṭras) above the Trayāstrīṃśas heaven.
first (or, one) of the 84,000 (stūpas). Aśoka-rāja erected it by the power (merit) of man in the middle of his royal precinct (or palace). It contains a ching (measure) of relics of Tathāgata. Spiritual indications constantly manifest themselves, and a divine light is shed round it from time to time.

After King Aśoka had destroyed the hell, he met Upagupta, a great Arhat, who, by the use of (proper) means, allured him in a right way according as the opportunity (or, springs of action, i.e., his power or capacity to believe) led, and converted him. The king addressed the Arhat and said, “Thanks to my acquired merit in former births, I have got (by promise) my kingly authority, but in consequence of my faults I did not, by meeting Buddha, obtain conversion. Now, then, I desire in all the greater degree to honour the bequeathed remains of his body by building stūpas.”

The Arhat said, “My earnest desire is that the great king by his merits may be able to employ the invisible powers (the spirits) as agents in fulfilling his vow to protect the three precious ones.” And then, because of the opportune occasion, he entered largely on the narrative of his offering the ball of earth, and on that account of Buddha’s prediction, as the origin of his desire to build.

The king having heard this, was overpowered, and he summoned the spirits to assemble, and commanded them, saying, “By the gracious disposal and spiritual efficacy of the guiding power of the King of the Law I have become, as the result of my good actions in former states of life, the highest amongst them. (I wish now) with especial care

18 Or it may probably be “by his religious merit as a man.”
17 For some remarks on Upagupta (Kin-hu), see vol. i. p. 182, n. 48.
18 Updya, expedients or skilful use of means.
19 The offering of the ball of earth refers to the circumstance related by Fa-hian at the opening of chap. xxxii. Julien has overlooked this, and refers the offering to the charity of Aśoka in giving Jambudvipa to the priests. But it is plain that no prediction of Buddha hinged on this. Kanishka is said also to have been converted by the relation of a prediction referring to him made by Buddha, and explained by a shepherd boy.
to prepare a means of paying religious worship to the bequeathed body of Tathāgata. Do you, then, spirits and genii, by your combined strength and agreement of purpose, raise stūpas for the relics of Buddha throughout the whole of Jambudvipa, to the very last house of all (i.e., to the extremity of the land). The mind (or purpose) is mine, the merit of completing it shall be yours. The advantage to be derived from this excellent act of religion I wish not to be confined to one person only; let each of you, then, raise a building in readiness (for completion), and then come and receive my further commands.”

Having received these instructions, the genii commenced their meritorious work in the several quarters where they were; and having finished the task (so far), they came together to ask for further directions. Asokarāja (Wu-yau-wang) having opened the stūpas of the eight countries where they were built, divided the relics, and having delivered them to the genii, he addressed the Arhat and said, “My desire is that the relics should be deposited in every place at the same moment exactly: although ardently desirous of this, my mind has not yet been able to perfect a plan for accomplishing it.”

The Arhat addressed the king and said, “Command the genii to go each to his appointed place and regard the sun. When the sun becomes obscured and its shape as if a hand covered it, then is the time: drop the relics into the stūpas.” The king having received these instructions, gave orders accordingly to the genii to expect the appointed day.

Meantime the king; Asoka, watching the sun’s disc,

20 The text is difficult. Julien translates it “dans chaque ville possédant un keou-chi (un kōti de souvarnas).” This may be correct, but the phrase mean keou chi seems to me to refer to the full tale of inhabited places—everywhere.
21 That is, Upagupta.
22 Such appears to be the meaning of the passage. Julien translates it, “my desire is not yet accomplished.” His desire was to find out a plan or method for depositing the relics at the same instant.
23 Or it may be, “await an appointed day.”
waited for the sign; then at noon (or the day) the Arhat, by his spiritual power, stretched forth his hand and concealed the sun. At the places where the stūpas had been built for completion, all (the genii) observing this event, at the same moment concluded the meritorious undertaking.

By the side of the stūpa, and not far from it, in a vihāra, is a great stone on which Tathāgata walked. There is still the impression of both his feet on it, about eighteen inches long and six inches broad; both the right and left impress have the circle-sign, and the ten toes are all fringed with figures of flowers (or flower scrolls) and forms of fishes, which glisten brightly in the light (morning light). In old time Tathāgata, being about to attain Nirvāṇa, was going northward to Kuśinagara, when turning round to the south and looking back at Magadha, he stood upon this stone and said to Ānanda, "Now for the very last time I leave this foot-impression, being about to attain Nirvāṇa, and looking at Magadha. A hundred years hence there shall be a King Aśoka; he shall build here his capital and establish his court; he shall protect the three religious treasures and command the genii."

When Aśoka (Wu-yau) had ascended the throne, he changed his capital and built this town; he enclosed the stone with the impression; and as it was near the royal precinct, he paid it constant personal worship. Afterwards the kings of the neighbourhood wished to carry it off to

24 So it must signify, not the inhabitants of the several places, but the genii who were awaiting the signal.
25 The circle-sign is the chakra; this is the principal mark on the sole of Buddha’s feet; see Alabaster’s Wheel of the Law, p. 286 and plate. Julien translates the passage as if the chakra were visible on the right and left of the feet, instead of on the right and left imprint of the feet.
26 It is plain that this prediction concerning Wu-yau-wang, supposed by Oldenberg always to refer to Dharmāśoka (see above, note 11), relates to O-chu-kia or Kālaśoka, for it was he, the grandson of Ajātashātru, who established his capital at Pātaliputra; so also in the next sentence. Hiuen Tsang probably translated all the records relating to Aśoka as though referring to the same person, using either 'O-shu-kia or 'O-yu, or Wu-yau, indifferently.
their own country; but although the stone is not large, they could not move it at all.

Lately Saśānka-rāja, when he was overthrowing and destroying the law of Buddha, forthwith came to the place where that stone is, for the purpose of destroying the sacred marks. Having broken it into pieces, it came whole again, and the ornamental figures as before; then he flung it into the river Ganges, but it came back to its old place.

By the side of the stone is a stūpa, which marks the place where the four past Buddhas walked and sat down, the traces of which still remain.

By the side of the vihāra which contains the traces of Buddha, and not far from it, is a great stone pillar about thirty feet high, with a mutilated inscription on it. This, however, is the principal part of it, viz., “Aśoka-rāja with a firm principle of faith has thrice bestowed Jam-budvīpa as a religious offering on Buddha, the Dharma, and the assembly, and thrice he has redeemed it with his jewels and treasure; and this is the record thereof.” Such is the purport of the record.

To the north of the old palace is a large stone house. It looks outside like a great mountain, and within it is many tens of feet wide. This is the house which Aśoka-rāja commanded the genii to build for his brother who had become a recluse. Early in his life Aśoka had a half-brother (mother’s brother) called Mahāṇḍra (Mo-hi-in-to-lo), who was born of a noble tribe. In dress he arrogated the style of the king; he was extravagant, wasteful, and cruel. The people were indignant, and the ministers and aged officers of the king came to him (the king), and remonstrated thus, “Your proud brother assumes a dignity as though he were some great one in comparison with others. If the government is impartial,

---

27 Mahāṇḍra (translated Tu-ti, great ruler) is generally spoken of as the son of Aśoka. The Sinhalese historical works speak of him as the first Buddhist mission-
then the country is contented; if men are agreed, then the ruler is in peace: these are the principles which have been handed down to us from our fathers. We desire that you will preserve the rules of our country, and deliver to justice those who would change them." Then Asoka-râja addressed his brother as he wept, and said, "I have inherited (as my rule of) government the duty of protecting and cherishing the people; how then have you, my brother, forgotten my affection and my kindness? It is impossible at the very beginning of my reign to neglect the laws. If I punish you, I fear the anger of my ancestors; on the other hand, if I excuse you, I fear the opinion of the people."

Mahendra, bowing his head, replied, "I have not guarded my conduct, and have transgressed the laws of the country; I ask only an extension of my life for seven days."

On this the king placed him in a dark dungeon, and placed over him a strict guard. He provided him with every kind of exquisite meat and every necessary article. At the end of the first day the guard cried out to him, "One day has gone; there are six days left." The sixth day having expired, as he had greatly sorrowed for his faults and had afflicted (disciplined) his body and his heart, he obtained the fruit of sanctity (became an Arhat); he mounted into the air and exhibited his miraculous powers (spiritual traces). Then separating himself from the pollution of the world, he went afar, and occupied the mountains and valleys (as a recluse).

Asoka-râja, going in his own person, addressed him as follows, "At first, in order to put in force the laws of the country, I desired to have you punished, but little did I think you would have attained to this highest rank of holiness. Having, however, reached this condition of detachment from the world, you can now return to your country."
The brother replied, "Formerly I was ensnared in the net of (worldly) affections, and my mind was occupied with love of sounds (music) and beauty; but now I have escaped all this (the dangerous city), and my mind delights in (the seclusion of) mountains and valleys. I would fain give up the world for ever (men's society) and dwell here in solitude."

The king said, "If you wish to subdue your heart in quiet, you have no need to live in the mountain fastnesses. To meet your wishes I shall construct you a dwelling."

Accordingly he summoned the genii to his presence and said to them, "On the morrow I am about to give a magnificent feast. I invite you to come together to the assembly, but you must each bring for your own seat a great stone." The genii having received the summons, came at the appointed time to the assembly. The king then addressed them and said, "The stones which are now arranged in order on the ground you may pile up, and, without any labour to yourselves, construct of them for me an empty house." The genii having received the order, before the day was over finished the task. Asoka-rāja then himself went to invite his brother to fix his abode in this mountain cell.

To the north of the old palace, and to the south of "the hell," is a great stone with a hollow trough in it. Asoka-rāja commissioned the genii as workmen to make this hollow (vase) to use for the food which he gave to the priests when he invited them to eat.

To the south-west of the old palace there is a little mountain. In the crags and surrounding valleys there are several tens of stone dwellings which Asoka-rāja made for Upagupta and other Arhats, by the intervention of the genii.

By the side of it is an old tower, the ruins of which are a mass of heaped-up stones. There is also a pond, the gentle ripples of which play over its surface as pure as a

---

29 Compare Fa-hian, chap. xxvii.
mirror. The people far and near call it the sacred water. If any one drinks thereof or washes in it, the defilement of their sins is washed away and destroyed.

To the south-west of the mountain is a collection of five stūpas. The foundations are lofty but ruinous; what remains, however, is a good height. At a distance they look like little hills. Each of them is several tens of paces in front. Men in after-days tried to build on the top of these little stūpas. The records of India state, "In old time, when Aśoka-rāja built the 84,000 stūpas, there was still remaining five measures of relics. Therefore he erected with exceptional grandeur five other stūpas, remarkable for their spiritual portents (miraculous exhibitions), with a view to indicate the fivefold spiritual body of Tathāgata.\(^{30}\) Some disciples of little faith talking together argued thus, 'In old time Nanda-rāja\(^{31}\) built these five (stūpas) as treasure-places for his wealth (seven precious substances).' In consequence of this gossip, in after-time a king of insincere faith, and excited by his covetousness, put his troops in movement, and came with his followers to dig (the stūpas). The earth shook, the mountains bent (fell), and the clouds darkened the sun, whilst from the stūpas there came a great sound like thunder. The soldiers with their leaders fell backward, and the elephants and horses took to flight. The king thus defeated, dared no longer to covet (the treasures). It is said, moreover (i.e., in the Indian records), 'With respect to the gossip of the priests there has been some doubt expressed, but we believe it to be true according to the old tradition.'"

\(^{30}\) Literally, the body of the law of Tathāgata (Ju-lai) divided into five parts. It may refer to the five skandhas; these are rūpa (nūh), vēdāna (sheu), sānyādāna (sāng), sānukāra (kīng), vijādāna (chī).

\(^{31}\) This refers to Nanda, the son of Mahānanda, called Mahāpadma, who was exceedingly avaricious. He was the son of a woman of the Śūdra class. He brought the whole earth under one umbrella (Viśnu-Purāṇa, p. 466, Wilson's translation). In the Mahāvamsa he is called Dhana-nanda, because he personally devoted himself to the hoarding of treasure (Max Müller, Hist. Anc. Sams. Lit., p. 281). The statement in the text, derived from "the old records of India," appears to identify Nanda with Aśoka, i.e., Kālaśoka.
To the south-east of the old city there is the saṅghārāma called K’iu-cha-o-lan-mo (Kukkuṭārāma), which was built by Aśoka-rāja when he first became a believer in the religion of Buddha. It was a sort of first-fruit (preparation in planting the root of virtue), and a pattern of majestic construction (lofty building). He gathered there a thousand priests; a double congregation of lay people and saints made their offerings of the four necessary things, and provided gratuitously all the articles for use. This building has long been in ruins, but the foundation walls are still preserved.

By the side of the saṅghārāma is a great stūpa called ‘O-mo-lo-kia (Āmalaka), which is the name of a fruit used as a medicine in India. King Aśoka having fallen sick and lingering for a long time, felt that he would not recover, and so desired to offer all his possessions (gems and valuables) so as to crown his religious merit (to plant high the field of merit). The minister who was carrying on the government was unwilling to comply with his wish. Some time after this, as he was eating part of an Āmalaka fruit, he playfully put the half of it (in the hand of the king) for an offering. Holding the fruit in his hand he said with a sigh to his minister, “Who now is lord of Jambudvipa?”

The minister replied, “Only your majesty.”

The king answered, “Not so! I am no longer lord; for I have only this half fruit to call my own! Alas! the wealth and honour of the world are as difficult to keep as

23 This convent or saṅghārāma must not be confounded with the Kukkuṭapādagiri, near Gayā. See Fa-hian, cap. xxxii. p. 132 n., also Arch. Survey of India, vol. xv. p. 4; Ind. Ant., vol. xii. p. 327; compare also Julien’s remark (p. 428, n. 1).
24 It may be “ministers;” the story of the text is found among Aśvaghōsha’s sermons. It is No. 26 as given in the Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 103.
25 In a trifling way. This translation is difficult. Julien translates it as though the king were amused as he played with the fruit, until he had reduced it to a half. This translation is more agreeable to the text. But, on the other hand, in Aśvaghōsha’s rendering of the story, he says that the minister offered the king a half Āmalaka fruit, to bestow in charity. The translation I have given requires the substitution of tan (to give in charity) for lan (cooked or thoroughly dressed).
it is to preserve the light of a lamp in the wind! My wide-spread possessions, my name and high renown, at close of life are snatched from me, and I am in the hands of a minister violent and powerful. The empire is no longer mine; this half fruit alone is left!"

Then he commanded an attendant officer to come, and he addressed him thus: "Take this half fruit and offer it in the garden (ārāma) of the cock (monastery) to the priests, and speak thus to the venerable ones, 'He who was formerly lord of Jambudvīpa, but now is master of only this half Âmala fruit, bows down before the priests (chief priest). I pray you (on behalf of the king) receive this very last offering. All that I have is gone and lost, only this half fruit remains as my little possession. Pity the poverty of the offering, and grant that it may increase the seeds of his religious merit.'"

The Sthavira, in the midst of the priests, spake thus in reply: "Âsākā-rāja by his former deeds may hope to recover. Whilst the fever has held his person, his avaricious ministers have usurped his power and amassed wealth not their own. But this offering of half a fruit will secure the king an extension of life." The king having recovered from his sickness, gave large offerings to the priests. Moreover he ordered the manager of the affairs of the convent (Tin-see—Karmmadāna) to preserve the seeds 35 of the fruit in a vessel of liquid fit for the purpose, and he erected this stūpa as a mark of gratitude for his prolonged life.36

To the north-west of Âmalaka stūpa, in the middle of an old saṅghārāma, is a stūpa; it is called "establishing the sound of the ghantā (Kīn-tī)." At first there were about 100 saṅghārāmas in this city; the priests were grave

35 Or, the stone or kernel. The Karmmadāna is the steward of the convent.

36 This passage is obscure, and the translation I give is not in agreement with M. Julien's. He makes the words of the Sthavira to be addressed to the other priests, and not to the messenger from the king. It appears to me that they were made in reply to the king's message, and include in them a promised anticipation of the king's recovery.
and learned, and of high moral character. The scholars among the heretics were silent and dumb. But afterwards, when that generation of priests had died out, their successors were not equal to those gone before. Then the teachers of the heretics, during the interval, gave themselves to earnest study with a view to the mastery. Whereupon they summoned their partisans, numbering 1000 to 10,000, to assemble together within the priest's precincts, and then they addressed them saying, with a loud voice, "Strike loudly the ghanṭā and summon all the learned men; let the foolish ones also stop and dispute; if we are wrong, let them overthrow us" (or, to overthrow their errors).

They then addressed the king and asked him to decide between the weak and the strong. And now the heretical masters were men of high talent and marked learning; the priests, although numerous, were weak in their points of verbal discussion.

The heretics said, "We have got the victory; from this time forth let no saṅghārāma dare to sound the ghanṭā to call together a congregation." The king confirmed this result of the discussion, and, in agreement with it, bound the priests to the penalty. They on their part retired with shame and chagrin. For twelve years the ghanṭā was not sounded.

At this time lived (Na-kia'-o-la-chu-na) Nāgārjuna Bōdhisattva in Southern India, as a youth of high renown for scholarship. When grown up he assumed a lofty title. Giving up his home and its pleasures, he practised himself in the acquisition of the deepest and most excellent principle of learning, and arrived at the first earth (the first degree). He had a great disciple called (Ti-po) Dèva, a man illustrious for wisdom and spiritual energy. This man, arousing himself to action, said, "At Vaiśālī the followers of learning (Buddhist learners) have been defeated in argument by the heretics, and now for twelve years, days, and months together, they have not sounded VOL. II.
the ghantā. I am bold enough to wish to overturn the mountain of heresy and to light the torch of true religion.”

Nāgārjuna replied, “The heretics of Vaiśāli are singularly learned; you are no match for them. I will go myself.”

Dēva said, “In order to trample down some rotten stems why should we overthrow a mountain? I am bold enough to think that by the instructions I have received I can silence all the heretics. But let my master assume the side of the heretics, and I will refute you according to the points of the thesis; and according as the question is decided, let my purpose to go or not be settled.”

Then Nāgārjuna took the side of the heretics, and Dēva set himself to overthrow his arguments. After seven days Nāgārjuna lost his superiority (was defeated), and said with a sigh, “False positions are easily lost; erroneous doctrines are defended with difficulty. You yourself can go; you will overthrow those men.”

Dēva Bōdhisattva’s early reputation being known to the heretics of Vaiśāli, they forthwith called an assembly, and went at once to the king, saying, “Mahārāja! you formerly condescended to attend to us and bind the Śramaṇas, not to sound the ghantā. We pray you issue an order that no foreign Śramaṇa be allowed to enter the city, lest they should combine together to bring about an alteration in the former law.” The king consented to their request, and gave strict orders to his officers to carry it out (to spy narrowly).

Dēva having come to the city, was not able to enter it; having understood the order, he made arrangements to change his garments, and wrapped up his kashāya robe in a bundle of grass (shrubs); then tucking up his garments, he went straight on with his bundle on his back, and entered the city. Having come to the middle of the city, he threw away his grass bundle, put on his robes, and came to this saṅghārāma, intending to stop there.
Knowing few people there, he had no place to lodge, and so he took up his night’s rest in the Ghanṭā Tower, and at early dawn he struck it (the ghanṭā) with all his might.

The people hearing it, on investigating the matter, found that the stranger of yesternight was a travelling Bhikshu. Forthwith all the saṅghārāmas repeated the sounds (of the ghanṭā).

The king hearing the noise, and inquiring about it closely, could not ascertain the origin of it all; coming to this saṅghārāma, they at length charged Dēva with the deed. Dēva answering said, “The ghanṭā is struck to assemble the congregation; if it is not used for that purpose, what use is it?”

The king’s people answered, “In former days the congregation of priests having been defeated in argument, it was decided the ghanṭā should not be sounded any more, and this is twelve years since.”

Dēva said, “Is it so? Nevertheless, I venture to sound afresh the drum of the law.”

The messenger told the king saying, “There is a strange Śramaṇa who wishes to wipe out the former disgrace (of the priests).”

Then the king assembled the men of learning (the Buddhists), and said, by way of decree, “Whoever is defeated shall die, as a proof of his inferiority.”

Then the heretics came together with their flags and drums, and begun to discuss together with respect to their opinions; each displayed the point of his argument to his best ability. Then Dēva Bōdhisattva, having mounted the preaching-throne, attending to their former arguments, and following each point, refuted them one by one. In less than one hour he refuted the sectaries, and the king and his ministers being satisfied, raised this venerable monument in honour of his extreme virtue (reverence).

To the north of the stūpa built where the ghanṭā was
sounded is an old foundation. This was the dwelling-place of a Brâhman that was inspired by demons. At the beginning there was in this city a Brâhman who had constructed for himself a hut in a wild and desert spot far from the haunts of men; he sacrificed to demons, seeking religious merit. By the assistance of such spiritual connection he discoursed in a high tone and disputed with eagerness. The report (echo) of his eloquent discourses resounded through the world. If any one came to propose a difficult question, he answered him after letting down a curtain. Old men of learning and of high talent could not wrest from him his precedence. Officers and people were silenced in his presence, and looked on him as a saint. At this time lived Āśvaghôsa Bôdhisattva (‘O-shi-po-kiu-sha-pu-sa’). His wisdom embraced all subjects, and in his career he had traversed the arguments of the three Vehicles (Little, Great, and Middle Vehicle?). He constantly spoke (about the Brâhman) thus: "This Brâhman is learned without a master; he is skilful without examining the ancients; he lives apart in the gloomy desert, and arrogates a great name. It is all done by the connivance of the evil spirits and the assistance of occult powers; this is the way he does it! Men, therefore, on account of his eloquence derived from the devil, are unable to reply, and exalt his renown and say he is invincible. I will go to his place, and see what all this means, and expose it."

Forthwith he went to his cabin and addressed him thus: "I have long felt respect for your illustrious qualities; pray keep up your curtain whilst I venture to

37 Translated into Chinese by Ma-ming, "the voice of the horse." For some remarks respecting him, see Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 95 ss. He is spoken of as the twelfth Buddhist patriarch. According to Tibetan accounts, he is the same as Mâtrijeta (mother-child), who composed hymns for Buddhist worship (op. cit., p. 141). Nâgârjuna also was a poet, and composed a work called Suhrâd lûkha (or likh), which he dedicated to his patron, Sadvaha, king of Southern Kûsala (I-ting, k. iv. fol. 5 b.)
express my mind to you." But the Brâhmaṇ, maintaining
an air of proud indifference, let down his curtain in
order to reply, and to the end would not face his
adversary.

Âsvaghoṣha feeling in his heart the presence of the
evil spirits, his feelings revolted, and he finished the
discussion; but as he retired he said, "I have found
him out, and he shall be overthrown." Going straight-
way to the king, he said, "Pray condescend to permit
me to propose a subject and discuss it with that lay-
doctor!"

The king, hearing the request, said with feeling, "Do
you know your man? Unless well learned in the three
vidyās and in the six supernatural faculties, who can
discuss with him?" Giving permission, he himself or-
dered his chariot in order to be present during the dis-
cussion, and to decide as to the victory.

Then Âsvaghoṣha discoursed on the minute words of
the three Piṭakas, and alluded to the great principles of
the five Vidyās, and nicely divided the length and breadth
of his argument with a high and various discourse. Then
the Brâhmaṇ following in the argument, Âsvaghoṣha
said, "You have lost the thread of the subject. You
must follow my points consecutively."

The Brâhmaṇ then was silent and closed his mouth.

Âsvaghoṣha finding fault, said, "Why do you not solve
the difficulty? Call the spirits to your help to give you
words as quickly as you can;" and then he lifted up his
curtain to see how he looked.

The Brâhmaṇ, terrified, cried out, "Stop! stop!"

Âsvaghoṣha, retiring, said, "This doctor has forfeited
his high renown. 'A hollow fame lasts not long,' as the
saying is."

The king answered and said, "Without the eminent
ability of a master, who can detect the errors of the
ignorant! The acumen of the person who knows men
casts honour on his ancestors, and shuts out possibility of
superiority among his successors. The country has a standing rule that such a person should ever be honoured and remembered."

Leaving the south-west angle of the city and going about 200 li, there is an old ruined saṅghārāma, by the side of which is a stūpa which from time to time reflects a divine light and displays many miracles. This place is frequented by crowds from a distance and near by, who offer up their prayers in worship. There are traces where the four past Buddhas sat and walked to and fro.

To the south-west of the old saṅghārāma about 100 li is the saṅghārāma of Tiladaka (Ti-lo-shi-kia). This building has four halls, belvideres of three stages, high towers, connected at intervals with double gates that open inwards (deeply). It was built by the last descendant of Bimbisāra-rāja (Pi-pi-sha-lo). He made much of high talent and exalted the virtuous. Learned men from different cities and scholars from distant countries flock.

In the French translation the distance given is 200 paces. The text does not require the distance of 200 li to be reckoned in a south-westerly direction from the city; the construction, indeed, is unusual, and it is possible that the symbol yu (corner) is an error for hinj (going); but as it stands, the text reads, "about two hundred li (from) the south-west angle of the city there is," &c. If the text be correct, some of the difficulties noticed by Cunningham (Anc. Geog. of Ind., p. 456) will be explained.

Make their requests in worship. Whatever the theory is as to the possibility of prayer in the Buddhist religion, the fact remains that prayer was offered up.

So Cunningham restores it. And the symbol shi may represent da as in Chandaka. It might also be made to represent Darśika, and as the last descendant of Bimbisāra-rāja was Nāga-dāsaka, I thought at one time that this might be the right restoration. But I-tsing gives Ti-lo-ch'U as an alternative reading (Nan hae, k. iv. fol. 12 b.), which can only represent Tilada (as in Man ch'a for Manḍaka, &c.) This monastery of Tiladaka was three yōjana west of Nālanda, or about twenty-one miles (Vie de H. T., p. 211). In this last passage Huen Ts'ian notices that there was an eminent priest called Prajñabhādra residing in this monastery when he visited it. When I-tsing was there a few years later, there was a priest called Prajñachandra there. Prof. Max Müller by some mistake has placed this temple of Tiladaka in Surat (India, p. 312), and he speaks of it as Si-ra-chü, but it is not so in I-tsing.

Or Vimbasa, juice of the Bimba (Bryonia grandis), (see ante, p. 85) his descendant Nāgadāsaka, who appears to have preceded the nine Nandas; he seems to be the same as Mahā-Nandīn. Conf. R. David's Numis. Orient., pp. 50 and 45. Is he the same as Kālādūkha? Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. i. p. 859, and Anh., p. xxxviii.
together in crowds, and reaching so far, abide in this saṅghārāma. There are 1000 priests in it who study the Great Vehicle. In the road facing the middle gate there are three vihāras, above which are placed the connected succession of metal rings (circles) with bells suspended in the air; below they are constructed storey above storey, from the bottom to the top. They are surrounded by railings, and the doors, windows, the pillars, beams, and staircases are all carved with gilt copper in relief, and in the intervals highly decorated. The middle vihāra contains an erect image of Buddha about thirty feet high. On the left is an image of Tāra (To-lo) Bōdhisattva;\(^{42}\) on the right, one of Avalokiteśvara (Kwan-tsz’-tsai) Bōdhisattva. Each of these images is made of metallic stone; their spiritually composed appearance inspires a mysterious awe, and their influence is felt from far (or, spreads far). In each vihāra there is a measure of relics which emit a supernatural brilliancy, and from time to time shed forth miraculous indications.

To the south-west of the Tilādaka saṅghārāma about 90 li we come to a great mountain of blue-clouded (variegated) marble,\(^{43}\) dark and tangled with wood. Here the divine Rīshis dwell; poisonous snakes and savage dragons inhabit their dens, whilst numerous beasts and birds of prey dwell in the forests. On the top is a large and remarkable rock, on which is built a stupa about ten feet or so high. This is the place where Buddha entered on ecstatic meditation. Of old, when Tathāgata descended as a spirit (to be born),\(^{44}\) he rested on this rock, and entered here the samādhi called “perfectly destroyed,” and passed the night so. Then the Dēvas and spiritual saints offered dark clouds.” This may be so; the original is literally, “cloud-rock-dark-tangled.”

\(^{42}\) Tāra, said to be a female deity of Tibetan origin, worshipped by the followers of the Yōgāchāra school (Eitel). Tārāvati is also a form of Durgā. *Ind. Ant.*, vol. x. p. 273.

\(^{43}\) Yun shih is “variegated marble” (cloud-stone). Whether this be the meaning in the text it is difficult to say. Julien gives “enveloped with dark clouds.”

\(^{44}\) The phrase Kiang shin, descend spiritually, is generally applied to the incarnation of Buddha; in this passage, however, it may simply mean “descended as a spirit.”
their offerings to Tathāgata, and sounded the drums and heavenly music, and rained down great flowers. Tathāgata leaving his ecstacy, the Dévas all reverenced him, and raised a stūpa composed of gold, silver, and precious stones. Now so long time has elapsed since then, that the precious substances are changed into stone. No one has visited the spot for ages; but looking at the mountain from a distance, one can see different kinds of beasts and snakes turning round it to the right. The Dévas and Rishis and spiritual saints accompany them in a body, praising and worshipping.

On the eastern summit of the mountain there is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata formerly stood for a time beholding the country of Magadha.

To the north-west of the mountain 30 li or so, on a declivity of the mountain, is a saṅghārāma; it is flanked by a high precipice, and the lofty walls and towers stand up in intervals of the rocks. The priests are about fifty in number, who all study the great Vehicle. This is the place where Guṇamati (Kiu-na-mo-ti) Bōdhisattva overcame the heretic. In the early time there was in this mountain a heretic called Mādhava (Mo-ta-po), who at first followed the law of the Saṅkhya (Seng-kie) system, and practised the acquirement of wisdom. He had studied to the bottom the doctrine of "the extreme void," as found in the orthodox and erroneous (books). His fame was great, and surpassed that of former teachers, and outweighed all then living. The king honoured him exceedingly, and named him "the treasure of the country." The ministers and people regarded him with admiration, and spoke of him as "the teacher of the household." The learned men of the neighbouring countries acknowledged his merits and honoured his virtue, and compared him to the most eminent of his predecessors; a man, verily! highly accomplished. He had as his means of subsistence two towns of the district, and the surrounding houses paid him for the privilege of building (tenant dues?).
At this time in Southern India there lived Gunamati, who in his youth had displayed great talents and acquired in early life a brilliant reputation. By close study he had penetrated the meaning of the three Pitakas, and investigated the four truths. Hearing that Madhava discussed on the most mysterious and subtle questions, he desired to humble him by overcoming him (in argument). He ordered one of his followers to carry a letter thus written (to his adversary): "I have heard with all respect of Madhava's virtuous ease. You must now, without thought of fatigue, take up again your ancient studies, for in three years' time I intend to overthrow your brilliant reputation."

And so in the second and third years he sent a messenger with the same tidings; and now when he was about to go to meet him, he again wrote a letter, saying: "The appointed period has expired; your studies, such as they are, I am now coming (to investigate); you ought to know the fact."

Madhava now was alarmed, and gave orders to his disciples and to the inhabitants of the towns: "From this time forth give no hospitality to the Sramaṇa heretics; let this order be generally known and obeyed."

At this time Gunamati Boddhisattva, with his staff in hand, arrived at the town of Madhava. The people who guarded the town, in agreement to the order, would give him no hospitality. The Brāhmans, moreover, deriding him, said, "What mean you by your shaven head and your singular dress? Begone from this! there is no place here for you to stop."

45 Translated by the Chinese "virtue and wisdom" (Tih kwei).
46 The four truths, the foundation of the Buddhist dogma, are—(1) the truth of "suffering" (duḥkha); (2) the increase or accumulation of misery from the passions (saṃsāra); (3) the extinction or destruction of suffering is possible (nirvāṇa); (4) the way or means (mārga). See Childers, Pali Dict., sub voc. Ariyaseecar; Burnouf, Lotus, p. 517; Manual of Buddhism, p. 496; also Julien in loco, n. 1.
47 That is, the two towns he held in feoffment.
48 Would have no intercourse with him.
Gunāmati Bōdhisattva desiring to overthrow the heretic, sought to remain the night in the town, and so he said with gentle words, “You, in pursuing your worldly studies, observe a pure conduct. I also, in studying higher truth, observe a pure line of conduct.” Our life being alike, why do you exclude me?"

But the Brāhmaṇs would have no words with him, and only drove him from the place. Leaving the town, he went into a great forest in which savage beasts prowled about to destroy all passers-by. At this time there was a faithful brother who, fearing the risk he ran from the beasts and the prickly thorns, hastened to him, staff in hand. Having met him, he said to the Bōdhisattva, “In Southern India there is a Bōdhisattva called Gunamati, of far-spread renown; because this man wants to come here to discuss principles of belief, the master of the town, being afraid of him and his fame, has strictly enjoined to give no shelter to the Śramanas, and because I am afraid lest some accident should happen to him, I have come to accompany him in his journey, and to assure him of safety (that he may rest free from fear of the other).”

Gunamati replied, “Most kind believer, I am Gunamati.” The disciple having heard this, with the greatest reverence replied to Gunamati thus: “If what you say be true, you must go quickly (onwards).” Leaving the deep forest, they stopped awhile on the open plain; the faithful believer, following with his torch (?) and holding his bow, kept guard on the right and left. The (first) division of the night being past, he addressed Gunamati and said, “It is better for us to go, lest men, knowing that you have come, should plot together to kill you.”

Gunamati, expressing his gratitude, said, “I dare not disobey you!” On this, following him, they came to the king’s palace and said to the door-keeper, there is a

---

49 They were both men of “pure conduct.” The expression “pure brother” is applied to the Buddhist convert. The word Brāhmaṇ also is explained by “a pure-lived man.”

50 As we both aim at pure conduct.

51 A pure believer
Śramana here who has come from a distance; he prays the king to agree in condescension to permit him to discuss with Mādhava.

The king hearing the news, moved by his feelings, said, "This man is bereft of reason," and then he ordered an officer to go to the place where Mādhava was, with this royal order: "There is a foreign Śramaṇa come here who seeks to discuss with you. I have now ordered the hall for the discussion to be prepared and watered; I have told those in the neighbourhood and far off to await the usual arrangements after your coming. Pray condescend to come forthwith."

Mādhava asked the messenger of the king, "This surely is the doctor Gunaṃati of South India." "Yes," he said, "it is he."

Mādhava hearing this, his heart was very sad, but as he could not well avoid the difficulty, he set out for the hall of discussion, where the king, the ministers, and the people were all assembled desiring to hear this great controversy. Gunaṃati first laid down the principles of his school, and continued his speech till the setting of the sun. Then Mādhava excusing himself on account of his age and infirmities, to defer his answer, asked permission to retire and meditate. He would then return and answer every objection (difficulty) in order.52 At the early morn he returned and ascended the throne, and so they went on to the sixth day, but on that day he vomited blood and died. When on the point of death he gave this command to his wife, "You have high talent; do not forget the affront paid to me." When Mādhava was dead, she concealed the fact and had no funeral ceremonies; and clothing herself in shining apparel, she entered forthwith the assembly where the discussion was held, and a general clamour was raised as the people said one to another, "Mādhava, who boasted of his talents, is unable to reply

52 This sentence appears to be explain the language used by Gunaṃati, parenthetical, and is introduced to mati.
to Gunamati, and so he sends his wife to make up for his deficiency."

Gunamati, addressing the wife, said, "He who could bind you, has been bound by me."

Madhava's wife, seeing the difficulty, retired. The king then said, "What secret words are these at which she remains silent?"

Gunamati said, "Alas! Madhava is dead! and his wife desires to come and discuss with me!"

The king said, "How know you this? Pray explain it to me."

Then Gunamati said, "When the wife came her face was pale as death, and her words were toned in bitter enmity. I knew therefore that Madhava is dead! 'Able to bind you,' is a phrase applicable to her husband."

The king having sent a messenger to verify the statement, he found it even so; then the king in gratitude said, "The law of Buddha is a mysterious one! Eminent sages succeed one another without interruption; with no personal object they guard themselves in wisdom and use their secret knowledge for the purpose of converting (transforming the world). According to the old rules of the country the praises of such a sage (or, of your virtue) should be ever celebrated."

Gunamati replied, "Whatever poor talents I have, I reserve them for the benefit of all that lives; and when I would draw them to the truth first of all I subdue their pride, then use the influences of converting power. Now then, in this case, O king, let the descendants of Madhava's territory for a thousand generations employ themselves in the service of a saṅghārāma. Your instructions will extend, then, from age to age, and your reputation will be immortal. Persons of a pure faith, conscious of protection, their religious merit will benefit the country for ages. They will be nourished as the priests are, and so the faithful will be encouraged to honour their virtue."
On this he founded the *saṅghārāma* to celebrate the victory.

At first, after the defeat of Mādhava, six Brāhmaṇs (*pure-lived men*), fleeing to the frontiers, told the heretics of the reverse they had suffered, and they selected men of eminent talent with a view hereafter to wipe out their disgrace.

The king having a sincere respect for Guṇamati, went in person, and addressed the following invitation to him: “Now the heretics, not measuring their strength aright, have plotted together, and dare to sound the drum of discussion. Pray, sir, condescend to crush these heretics.”

Guṇamati replied, “Let those who wish to discuss come together!”

Then the learned men among the heretics were rejoiced, and said, “We shall be sure of the victory today!” The heretics then laid down their principles with energy for the purpose of opening the discussion.

Guṇamati Bōdhisattva replied, “Now those heretics who fled from the difficulty they were in of obeying the king’s command, these are mean men. What have I to do to discuss with and answer such persons?” Then he added, “There is a young servant here by the pulpit who has been accustomed to listen to these discussions. He is well acquainted with abstract questions from attending by my side and listening to the high language of the disputants.”

Then Guṇamati, leaving the pulpit, said to the servant, “Take my place, and carry on the discussion.” Then all the assembly was moved with astonishment at this extraordinary proceeding. But the servant, sitting by the pulpit, immediately proceeded to examine the difficulties proposed. His arguments were clear like the water that wells from the fountain, and his points were true as the sound of the echo. After three replies the heretics were defeated, and once more they were obliged
to hide their disgrace and clip their wings. From this
time forth the saṅghārāma enjoined the endowment of
the town and dwellings.

South-west of the convent of Guṇamati about 20 li we
come to a solitary hill on which is a convent called (the
saṅghārāma of) Śīlabhadra (Shi-lo-po-t'o-lo). This is
the convent which the master of śāstras after his victory
causeld to be built out of the funds of a village which
were given up. It stands by the side of a single sharp
crag like a stūpa. It contains some sacred relics of
Buddha. This master of śāstras belonged to the family of
the king of Samatata (San-mo-ta-ch'a), and was of the
Brāhmaṇ caste. He loved learning and had gained a
wide reputation. Travelling through the Indies to exa-
mine into and seek after religious truth, he came to this
kingdom, and in the saṅghārāma of Nālanda (Na-lan-t'o)
he encountered Dharmapāla Bōdhisattva (Hu-fa-pu-sa).
Hearing him explain the law, his understanding was
opened, and he requested to become a disciple. He
inquired into the most subtle questions, and investig-
gated the way of deliverance to its conclusion; and thus
having reached the highest point of intelligence, he estab-

---

53 In Chinese, Kiais, "the sage
of moral conduct."
54 To assume the soiled or coloured
robes of a mendicant.
55 He inquired as to "the ex-
treme point of the end of all." This
idea of "a terminal fixed point of
all things" (yih-tou-sou kau-keng
kin-kou) corresponds to the Sanskrit
dhātu, and may be rendered "final
truth." It is the name of a Samā-
dhi; it is also used as a definition of
Nirvāṇa; it is the formal defini-
tion of the title of a well-known
Buddhist sûtra, the Śūraṃgama. In
this connection it denotes the inves-
tigation of the highest (mystical)
truth. This sûtra was written at
Nālanda; it was probably the work
of Dharmapāla (it must not be con-
fused with another work of the same
name translated by Kumārajīva, and
recited by Fa-hian at the Vulture
Peak near Rājagriha); it was
brought to China and translated
A.D. 795. In the commentary
(k. viii. fol. 30 b) it is said, "This
sūtra was brought from India and
belongs to the Mūrdhābhishiktas
school (Kun teng pu). According
to Colebrooke (Essays, p. 272), the
Mūrdhābhishiktas were a mixed
class sprung from a Brāhmaṇa and a
Kahatriya girl. The school named,
therefore, was probably founded on
a mixture of Brāhmaṇ and Buddhist
doctrine. Now Nālanda was espe-
cially a place of study both for the
Brahmanical and Buddhist books
(Edkins, Chinese Buddhism, p. 289).
This school, therefore, probably origi-
nated there.
lished his fame over men of his time, even to distant countries.

There was a heretic of South India who delighted in examining profound questions and searching out hidden matters, in penetrating obscure and abstruse points of doctrine. Hearing of Dharmapāla's fame, the pride of self rose up within him, and, moved by profound envy, he passed over mountains and rivers in order to sound the drum and seek discussion. He said, "I am a man of Southern India. It is reported that in the king's country there is a great master of śāstras; I am but ignorant, yet I would wish to discuss with him."

"It is true, as you affirm," the king said; and forthwith he sent a messenger to ask Dharmapāla thus: "There is a heretic of Southern India who has come from a long distance here, and desires to discuss with you. Will you condescend to come to the hall of assembly and discuss with him?"

Dharmapāla having heard the tidings, gathered up his garments and went, whilst Śilabhadra and the inferior disciples surrounded him as he advanced. Then Śilabhadra (the chief disciple) addressed him thus: "Whither goest thou so quickly?" Dharmapāla answered, "Since the sun of wisdom went down, and only the lamp of the inherited doctrine burns quietly, the heretics like clouds of ants and bees have risen; therefore I am now going to crush that one in discussion."

Śilabhadra said, "As I have myself attended at various discussions, let me destroy this heretic." Dharmapāla, knowing his history, allowed him to have his way.

At this time Śilabhadra was just thirty years old. The assembly, despising Śilabhadra was just thirty years old. The assembly, despising his youth, feared that it would be difficult for him alone to undertake the discussion. Dharmapāla knowing that the mind of his followers was

56 To sound the drum is an expression for a challenge to discuss the law.
57 Ta lun sse, explained by Julien (note 1, p. 453) to be equivalent to Mahāvāḍī.
58 That is, since the death of Buddha.
disturbed, hastened to relieve them and said, “In honouring the conspicuous talent of a person we do not say, ‘He has cut his teeth’ (count his years according to his teeth). As I see the case before us now, I feel sure that he will defeat the heretic; he is strong enough.”

On the day of discussion (assembly for discussion) the people came together from far and near; both old and young in numbers assembled. Then the heretical teacher on his part laid open his case with great emphasis, and penetrated to the utmost the abstruse points (of his argument). Śilabhadrā followed his arguments (principles), and refuted them by profound and subtle allegations. The heretic, his words being exhausted, was covered with shame and retired.

The king, in order to reward the virtue (of Śilabhadrā), gave him the revenues of this town as a bequest. The master of śāstras, declining the offer, said, “A master who wears the garments of religion (dyed garments) knows how to be contented with little and to keep himself pure. What would he do with a town?”

The king in reply said, “The King of the Law has passed into the obscure (abode), and the vessel of wisdom has been engulfed in the stream. If there are no distinctions now made (between the learned and ignorant), then no encouragement is given to the scholar to press forward in the attainment of religion. Pray, of your pity, accept my offering.”

The doctor, not persisting in his refusal, accepted the town and built this saṅghārāma, vast and magnificent, and endowed it with the revenues of the town, as a means of providing it with the offerings necessary for religious service.

Going to the south-west of the saṅghārāma of Śilabhadrā about 40 or 50 li, and crossing the Nairāñjana

60 Of the houses of the town. I understand it to mean the revenues of the saṅghārāma were derived from the rentals of the place; not that the people or the inhabitants were bound to the service of the priests.

61 This river is now called Phalgu; the name Lilājan or Nilānjana is confined to the western branch, which joins the Mohāni five miles above Gayā (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 457).
river we come to the town of Gayâ. This town is naturally strong (situated amid crags or precipices). It has but few inhabitants; there are about 1000 families of Brâhmaṇs only; they are the offspring (successors) of a Rishi. The king does not regard them as vassals and the people everywhere highly respect them.

To the north of the town 30 li or so there is a pure fountain of water. The tradition handed down in India is that it is called "holy water;" all who bathe or drink thereof are cleansed from whatever defilement of sin they have.

To the south-west of the town 5 or 6 li we come to Mount Gayâ (Kia-ye), with its sombre valley, streams, and steep and dangerous crags. In India the name commonly given to this is the divine (spiritual) mountain. From old days it has been the custom for the ruling sovereign when he comes to the throne, with a view to conciliate his subjects at a distance and to cause his renown to exceed previous generations, to ascend (this mountain) and declare his succession with accompanying ceremonies (religious ceremonies). On the top of the mountain is a stūpa about 100 feet high, which was built by Asoka-râja. Divine prodigies are exhibited by it, and a sacred effulgency often shines from it. In old days Tathâgata here delivered the P'ao-yun and other sūtras.

To the south-east of Mount Gayâ is a stūpa. This is the spot where Kâśyapa (Kia-she-po) was born. To the south of this stūpa are two others. These are the spots where Gayâkâśyapa (Kia-ye-kia-she-po) and Nâdi-kâśyapa (Nai-ti-kia-she-po) sacrificed as fire-worshippers.

---

61 Now called Brahma-Gayâ to distinguish it from Boudha-Gayâ, the place where Buddha reached enlightenment. The distance from Pârâbha to Gayâ is 60 miles by the highroad, about 70 by the route of Huen Tsiang. We do not know the direction of the "old convent," 200 li from Pârâbha, and therefore cannot test the correctness of Huen Tsiang's figures.

62 Restored to Ratnamâlgha Sûtra by Julien.

63 For an account of the three Kâśyapas and their conversion see Fo-sho-king-tsan-king, varga 16, vv. 1304 ss. For the scene of the "fire grot" see Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. xxiv. fig. 1.
To the east of the place where Gayâkâşyapa sacrificed to fire, crossing a great river, we come to a mountain called Prâgbôdhi (Po-lo-ki-po-ti). 64 Tathâgata, after diligently seeking for six years and not yet obtaining supreme wisdom, after this gave up his penance and accepted the rice-milk (of Sujâtâ). As he went to the north-east he saw this mountain that it was secluded and dark, whereupon he desired to seek enlightenment thereon. Ascending the north-east slope and coming to the top, the earth shook and the mountain quaked, whilst the mountain Dêva in terror spake thus to Bôdhisattva: “This mountain is not the fortunate spot for attaining supreme wisdom. If here you stop and engage in the ‘Samadhi of diamond,’ 65 the earth will quake and gape and the mountain be overthrown upon you.”

Then Bôdhisattva descended, and half-way down the south-west slope he halted. There, backed by the crag and facing a torrent, is a great stone chamber. Here he sat down cross-legged. Again the earth quaked and the mountain shook. Then a Dêva of the pure abode (Sudhavâsas) cried out in space, “This is not the place for a Tathâgata to perfect supreme wisdom. From this south-west 14 or 15 li, not far from the place of penance, there is a Pippala (Pi-po-lo) tree under which is ‘a diamond throne.’ 66 All the past Buddhas seated on this throne have obtained true enlightenment, and so will those yet to come. Pray, then, proceed to that spot.” 67

Then Bôdhisattva, rising up, the dragon dwelling in the cave said, “This cave is pure and excellent. Here you

64 In Chinese Ts’in-ching-kio-shan, i.e., “the mountain leading to (before) perfect intelligence.” When Tathâgata was about to attain to enlightenment he first ascended this mountain; hence the name.

65 Vajra samâdhi, because it penetrates all conditions of being (fa).

66 Vajrâsana, an imperishable throne. It was supposed to be the centre of the earth, and the spot where all the Buddhas arrived at complete wisdom.

67 The whole of this passage is spoken by the Dêva. Julien translates it differently.
may accomplish the holy (aim). Would that of your exceeding love you would not leave me."

Then Bôdhisattva having discovered that this was not the place for accomplishing his aim, to appease the dragon, he left him his shadow and departed. The Dêvas going before, led the way, and accompanied him to the Bôdhi tree. When Aśôka-râja came into power, he signalised each spot up and down this mountain which Bôdhisattva had passed, by erecting distinguishing posts and stûpas. These, though of different sizes, yet are alike in spiritual manifestations. Sometimes flowers fall on them from heaven; sometimes a bright light illumines the dark valleys. Every year, on the day of breaking up the season of Wass (Varshâs), religious laymen from different countries ascend this mountain for the purpose of making religious offerings to the faithful. They stop one night and return.

Going south-west from Mount Prâgbôdhi about 14 or 15 li, we come to the Bôdhi tree. It is surrounded by a brick wall (a wall of piled bricks) of considerable height, steep and strong. It is long from east to west, and short from north to south. It is about 500 paces round. Rare trees with their renowned flowers connect their shade and cast their shadows; the delicate sha 68 herb and different shrubs carpet the soil. The principal gate opens to the east, opposite the Nairañjanâ river. The southern gate adjoins a great flowery bank. The western side is blocked up and difficult of access (steep and strong). The northern gate opens into the great sanghâtârâma. Within the surrounding wall the sacred traces touch one another in all directions. Here there are stûpas, in another place vihâras. The kings, princes, and great personages throughout all Jambudvipa, who have accepted the bequeathed teaching as handed down to them, have erected these monuments as memorials.

In the middle of the enclosure surrounding the Bôdhi

68 The Sha t’so is the Cyperus iria of Linnaeus (Doolittle’s Handbook; ii. 432).
tree is the diamond throne (Vajrāsana). In former days, when the Bhadra-kalpa was arriving at the period of perfection (vivarṣa), when the great earth arose, this (throne) also appeared. It is in the middle of the great chilioscosm; it goes down to the limits of the golden wheel (the gold circle), and upwards it is flush with the ground. It is composed of diamond. In circuit it is 100 paces or so. On this the thousand Buddhas of the Bhadra-kalpa have sat and entered the diamond Samādhi; hence the name of the diamond throne. It is the place where the Buddhas attain the holy path (the sacred way of Buddhahood). It is also called the Bōdhimāṇḍa. When the great earth is shaken, this place alone is unmoved. Therefore when Tathāgata was about to reach the condition of enlightenment, and he went successively to the four angles of this enclosure, the earth shook and quaked; but afterwards coming to this spot, all was still and at rest. From the time of entering on the concluding portion of the kalpa, when the true law dies out and disappears, the earth and dust begin to cover over this spot, and it will be no longer visible.

After the Nirvāṇa of Buddha, the rulers of the different countries having learned by tradition the measurement of the diamond throne, decided the limits from north to south by two figures of Kwan-tsza’-tsai (Avalokiteśvara) Bōdhisattva, there seated and looking eastward.

The old people say that “as soon as the figures of this Bōdhisattva sink in the ground and disappear, the law of Buddha will come to an end.” The figure at the south angle is now buried up to its breast. The Bōdhi tree above the diamond throne is the same as the Pippala tree. In old days, when Buddha was alive, it was several hundred feet high. Although it has often been injured by cutting, it still is 40 or 50 feet in height. Buddha sitting under this tree reached perfect wisdom, and therefore it is called the (Samyak sambōdhi) tree of knowledge (Pu-ti-Bōdhi). The bark is of a yellowish-white colour, the leaves and twigs
of a dark green. The leaves wither not either in winter or summer, but they remain shining and glistening all the year round without change. But at every successive Nirvāṇa-day (of the Buddhas) the leaves wither and fall, and then in a moment revive as before. On this day (of the Nirvāṇa?) the princes of different countries and the religious multitude from different quarters assemble by thousands and ten thousands unbidden, and bathe (the roots) with scented water and perfumed milk; whilst they raise the sounds of music and scatter flowers and perfumes, and whilst the light of day is continued by the burning torches, they offer their religious gifts.

After the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata, when Asoka-rāja began to reign, he was an unbeliever (a believer in heresy), and he desired to destroy the bequeathed traces of Buddha; so he raised an army, and himself taking the lead, he came here for the purpose of destroying (the tree). He cut through the roots; the trunk, branches, and leaves were all divided into small bits and heaped up in a pile a few tens of paces to the west of the place. Then he ordered a Brāhmaṇ who sacrificed to fire to burn them in the discharge of his religious worship. Scarcely had the smoke cleared away, when lo! a double tree burst forth from the flaming fire, and because the leaves and branches were shining like feathers, it was called the “ashes bōdhi tree.” Asoka-rāja, seeing the miracle, repented of his crime. He bathed the roots (of the old tree) with perfumed milk to fertilise them, when lo! on the morning of the next day, the tree sprang up as before. The king, seeing the miraculous portent, was overpowered with deep emotion, and himself offered religious gifts, and was so overjoyed that he forgot to return (to the palace). The queen, who was an adherent of the heretics, sent secretly a messenger, who, after the first division of night, once more cut it down. Asoka-rāja in the morning coming again to worship at the tree, seeing only the mutilated trunk, was filled with exceeding grief. With the utmost sincerity he prayed as
he worshipped; he bathed the roots with perfumed milk, and in less than a day again the tree was restored. The king, moved by deep reverence at the prodigy, surrounded the tree with a stone (brick) wall above 10 feet, which still remains visible. In late times Śaśānka-rāja (She-shang-kia), being a believer in heresy, slandered the religion of Buddha, and through envy destroyed the convents and cut down the Bōdhi tree, digging it up to the very springs of the earth; but yet he did not get to the bottom of the roots. Then he burnt it with fire and sprinkled it with the juice of the sugar-cane, desiring to destroy it entirely, and not leave a trace of it behind.

Some months afterwards, the king of Magadha, called Pūrṇavarmā (Pu-la-na-fa-mo), the last of the race of Aśoka-rāja, hearing of it, sighed and said, "The sun of wisdom having set, nothing is left but the tree of Buddha, and this they now have destroyed, what source of spiritual life is there now?" He then cast his body on the ground overcome with pity; then with the milk of a thousand cows he again bathed the roots of the tree, and in a night it once more revived and grew to the height of some 10 feet. Fearing lest it should be again cut down, he surrounded it with a wall of stone 24 feet high. So the tree is now encircled with a wall about 20 feet high.

To the east of the Bōdhi tree there is a vihāra about 160 or 170 feet high. Its lower foundation-wall is 20 or more paces in its face. The building (pile) is of blue tiles (bricks) covered with chunam (burnt stone, lime); all the niches in the different storeys hold golden figures.69 The four sides of the building are covered with wonderful ornamental work; in one place figures of stringed pearls (garlands), in another figures of heavenly Rūshis. The whole is surrounded by a gilded copper Āmalaka fruit.70 The eastern face adjoins a storeyed pavilion, the projecting eaves of which rise one over the other to the height

69 There is no mention made of "figures of Buddha." 
70 Myrobolan-emblic; it is also called "a precious pitcher" or "a precious gourd." But see note at end of this Book.
of three distinct chambers; its projecting eaves, its pillars, beams, doors, and windows are decorated with gold and silver ornamental work, with pearls and gems let in to fill up interstices. Its sombre chambers and mysterious halls have doors in each of the three storeys. To the right and left of the outside gate are niches like chambers; in the left is a figure of Avalokitesvara Boddhisattva, and in the right a figure of Maitreya (T'se-shi) Boddhisattva. They are made of white silver, and are about 10 feet high. On the site of the present vihara Asoka-raja at first built a small vihara. Afterwards there was a Brahman who reconstructed it on a larger scale. At first this Brahman was not a believer in the law of Buddha, and sacrificed to Mahesvara. Having heard that this heavenly spirit (god) dwelt in the Snowy Mountains, he forthwith went there with his younger brother to seek by prayer (his wishes). The Deva said, "Those who pray should aim to acquire some extensive religious merit. If you who pray have not this ground (of merit), then neither can I grant what you pray for."

The Brahman said, "What meritorious work can I set about, to enable me to obtain my desire?"

The god said, "If you wish to plant a superior root (growth) of merit, then seek a superior field (in which to acquire it). The Bodhi tree is the place for attaining the fruit of a Buddha. You should straightway return there, and by the Bodhi tree erect a large vihara, and excavate a large tank, and devote all kinds of religious offerings (to the service). You will then surely obtain your wishes."

The Brahmans having received the divine communication, conceived a believing heart, and they both returned to the place. The elder brother built the vihara, the younger excavated the tank, and then they prepared large religious offerings, and sought with diligence their heart's desire (row). The result followed at once. The Brahman became the great minister of the king. He devoted all his emoluments to the work of charity. Having finished
the vihāra, he invited the most skilful artists to make a figure (likeness) of Tathāgata when he first reached the condition of Buddha. Years and months passed without result; no one answered the appeal. At length there was a Brāhmaṇ who came and addressed the congregation thus: "I will thoroughly execute (paint and mark) the excellent figure (or distinguishing points) of Tathāgata."

They replied, "For the purpose of doing this, what do you require?"

"Place in the vihāra a pile of scented earth and a lighted lamp; then when I have gone in, fasten the doors. After six months you may open them again."

Then the priests did as he directed. After four months, the six not being passed, the priests being astonished at the strange circumstance, opened the door to see what had happened. In the vihāra they found a beautiful figure of Buddha in a sitting position, the right foot uppermost, the left hand resting, the right hand hanging down. He was sitting facing the east, and as dignified in appearance as when alive. The throne was 4 feet 2 inches high, and 12 feet 5 inches broad. The figure was 11 feet 5 inches high; the two knees were 8 feet 8 inches apart, and the two shoulders 6 feet 2 inches. The signs and marks (of a Buddha) were perfectly drawn. The loving expression of his face was like life, only above his right breast the material was not yet completely rounded off. Having seen no man, they were satisfied that this was a miracle, and all of them were filled with strong emotion (piteously sighed) as they diligently sought to find out the secret (earnestly inquired in order to know). Now there was a Śramaṇa who was passing the night there. He was of an honest and truthful heart, and being affected by the circumstance (just related), he had a dream, in which he saw the forementioned Brāhmaṇ, who addressed him thus: "I am Maitrēya Bōdhisattva. Fearing that the mind of no artist could conceive the beauty of the sacred features, therefore I myself have come to paint and
delineate the figure of Buddha. His right hand hangs down in token that when he was about to reach the fruit of a Buddha, and the enticing Māra came to fascinate him, then the earth-spirits came to tell him thereof. The first who came forth advanced to help Buddha to resist Māra, to whom Tathāgata said, 'Fear not! By the power of patience he must be subdued!' Māra-rāja said, 'Who will bear witness for you?' Tathāgata dropped his hand and pointed to the ground, saying, 'Here is my witness.' On this a second earth-spirit leapt forth to bear witness (to testify). Therefore the present figure is so drawn, in imitation of the old posture of Buddha."

The brethren having understood this sacred miracle (spiritual reflection), were all moved with a tender emotion, and they placed above the breast, where the work was as yet unfinished, a necklace of precious stones and jewels, whilst on the head they placed a diadem of encircling gems, exceedingly rich.

Śaśāṅka-rāja having cut down the Bödhi tree, wished to destroy this image; but having seen its loving features, his mind had no rest or determination, and he returned with his retinue homewards. On his way he said to one of his officers, "We must remove that statue of Buddha and place there a figure of Mahēśvara."

The officer having received the order, was moved with fear, and, sighing, said, "If I destroy the figure of Buddha, then during successive kalpas I shall reap misfortune; if I disobey the king, he will put me to a cruel death and destroy my family; in either case, whether I obey or disobey, such will be the consequences; what, then, shall I do?"

On this he called to his presence a man with a believing heart (i.e., a believer in Buddha) to help him, and sent him to build up across the chamber and before the figure of Buddha a wall of brick. The man, from a feeling of shame at the darkness, placed a burning lamp (with the

\[71\] This is the Bhūmiśvara mudrā.
concealed figure); then on the interposing wall he drew a figure of (or, he made a figure of) Mahēśvara-dēva.

The work being finished, he reported the matter. The king hearing it, was seized with terror; his body produced sores and his flesh rotted off, and after a short while he died. Then the officer quickly ordered the intervening wall to be pulled down again, when, although several days had elapsed, the lamp was still found to be burning (unextinguished).

The figure still exists in its perfect state as it was made by the sacred art of the god. It stands in a dark chamber; lamps and torches are kept burning therein; but those who wish to see the sacred features cannot do so by coming into the chamber; they should in the morning reflect the sunlight by means of a great mirror on the interior of the room; the sacred marks may then be seen. Those who behold them find their religious emotions much increased. Tathāgata obtained complete enlightenment (Sāmyak sambodhi) on the eighth day of the latter half of the Indian month Vaiśākha (Fei-she-kie), which is with us the eighth day of the third month. But the Sthavira school (Shang-tso-pu) say on the fifteenth day of the second half of Vaiśākha, which corresponds with us to the fifteenth day of the third month. Tathāgata was then thirty years old, or, according to others, thirty-five years.

To the north of the Bōdhi tree is a spot where Buddha walked up and down. When Tathāgata had obtained enlightenment, he did not rise from the throne, but remained perfectly quiet for seven days, lost in contemplation. Then rising, he walked up and down during seven days to the north of the tree; he walked there east and west for a distance of ten paces or so. Miraculous flowers sprang up under his foot-traces to the number of eighteen. Afterwards this space was covered in by a brick wall about three feet high. According to the old belief, these

72 Julien thinks a translation should be adopted that would apply equally to a statue or a picture.
holy traces thus covered in, indicate the length or shortness of a man’s life. First of all, having offered up a sincere prayer, then count the measurement (or, pace the distance and measure); according as the person’s life is to be long or short, so will the measurement be greater or less.

On the left side of the road, to the north of the place where Buddha walked, is a large stone, on the top of which, as it stands in a great vihāra, is a figure of Buddha with his eyes raised and looking up. Here in former times Buddha sat for seven days contemplating the Boddhi tree; he did not remove his gaze from it during this period, desiring thereby to indicate his grateful feelings towards the tree by so looking at it with fixed eyes.

Not far to the west of the Boddhi tree is a large vihāra in which is a figure of Buddha made of teou-shih (brass), ornamented with rare jewels; he stands with his face to the east. Before it is a blue stone with wonderful marks upon it and strangely figured. This is (the place where) Buddha sat on a seven-gemmed throne made by Śakra Dēva-rāja when Brahma-rāja built a hall for him of seven precious substances, after he had arrived at complete enlightenment. Whilst he thus sat for seven days in reflection, the mysterious glory which shone from his person lit up the Boddhi tree. From the time of the holy one till the present is so long that the gems have changed into stone.

Not far to the south of the Boddhi tree is a stūpa about 100 feet high, which was built by Aśoka-rāja. Bōdhisattva having bathed in the Nairānjanā river, proceeded towards the Boddhi tree. Then he thought, “What shall I do for a seat? I will seek for some pure rushes when the day breaks.” Then Śakra-rāja (Shi) transformed himself into a grass-cutter, who, with his burden on his back, went along the road. Bōdhisattva addressing him said, “Can you give me the bundle of grass you are carrying on your back?”
The assumed grass-cutter, hearing the request, offered the grass with respect. Bôdhisattva having received it, went onwards to the tree.

Not far to the north of this spot is a stûpa. Bôdhisattva, when about to obtain enlightenment (the fruit of Buddha), saw a flock of blue birds rising up (rohin?) according to the lucky way. Of all the good omens recognised in India this is the most so Therefore the Dèvas of the pure abodes (Suddhavâsas accommodated their proceedings to the customary modes of the world, and caused the birds thus to encircle him as spiritually (miraculously) indicating his holiness.

To the east of the Bôdhi tree, on the left and right of the great road, there are two stûpas (one on each side). This is the place where Mâra-râja tempted Bôdhisattva. Bôdhisattva, when on the point of enlightenment, was tempted by Mâra to become a Chakravarttin (Lun-wang) monarch. On his refusing, he went away heavy and sorrowful. On this his daughters, asking him, went to try to entice the Bôdhisattva, but by his spiritual power he changed their youthful appearance into that of decrepit old women. Then leaning together on their sticks they went away.

To the north-west of the Bôdhi tree in a vihâra is the image of Kâsyapa Buddha. It is noted for its miraculous and sacred qualities. From time to time it emits a glorious light. The old records say, that if a man actuated by sincere faith walks round it seven times, he obtains the power of knowing the place and condition of his (former?) births.

73 The expression in the text seems to be phonetic. Julien translates "luh," literally by "deer." But the reference is to the blue birds rising up and circling round Bôdhisattva in a fortunate way, vid. Trees and Serpent Worship, pl. lviii. fig. 2, first section. The account of these signs is to be found in Wong Phâk, and in other legendary lives of Buddha.

74 To accept the letter inviting him to be a Chakravarttin, or the lot cast by the soothsayers with respect to his being a Chakravarttin (Ch'uen-lun-wang).

75 The temptation scene is represented in all the sculptures. See, e.g., Cave Temples, by Dr. Burgess, pl. xx. For an account of the different events named in the text and a description of the great temple of Gayâ built by a king of Ceylon, see Buddha Gayâ, by Dr. Raj Mitra.
To the north-west of the vihāra of Kāśyapa Buddha there are two brick chambers, each containing a figure of an earth-spirit. Formerly, when Buddha was on the point of obtaining enlightenment, Māra came to him, and each one (or one) became witness for Buddha. Men afterwards, on account of his merit, painted or carved this figure of him with all its points of excellence.

To the north-west of the wall of the Bōdhi tree is a stūpa called Yuh-kin-hiang (the saffron scent, Kuṅkuma); it is about 40 feet high; it was built by a merchant chief (srēshthā) of the country of Tsao-kiu-ch'ū (Tsaukuṭa). In old days there was a merchant-prince of this country who worshipped the heavenly spirits and sacrificed to them with a view to seek religious merit. He despised the religion of Buddha, and did not believe in the doctrine of "deeds and fruits." After a while, he took with him some merchants to engage in commercial transactions (to take goods for having or not having, i.e., for exchange). Embarking in a ship on the southern sea, a tempest arising, they lost their way, whilst the tumultuous waves encircled them. Then after three years, their provisions being gone and their mouths parched with thirst, when there was not enough to last the voyagers from morning till evening, they employed all their energies with one mind in calling on the gods to whom they sacrificed. After all their efforts no result followed (their secret desire not accomplished), when unexpectedly they saw a great mountain with steep crags and precipices and a double sun gleaming from far. Then the merchants, congratulating themselves, said, "We are fortunate indeed in encountering this great mountain; we shall here get some rest and refreshment." The merchant-master said, "It is no mountain; it is the Makara fish; the high crags and scarped precipices are but its fins and mane; the double suns are its eyes as they shine." Scarce had he finished when the sails of the ship began to draw; on which the merchant-master said to his companions, "I have heard
say that Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bôdhisattva is able to come to
the help of those in difficulties and give them rest; we
ought then with all faith to call upon that name.” So
with one accord and voice they paid their adorations and
called on the name. The high mountains disappeared,
the two suns were swallowed up, and suddenly they saw a
Śramaṇa with dignified mien and calm demeanour holding
his staff, walking through the sky, and coming towards
them to rescue them from shipwreck, and in consequence
they were at their own country immediately. Then
because their faith was confirmed, and with a view not to
lose the merit of their condition, they built a stûpa and
prepared their religious offerings, and they covered the
stûpa from top to bottom with saffron paste. After thus,
conceiving a heart of faith, those who were like-minded
resolved to pay their adoration to the sacred traces; beholding the Bôdhî tree, they had no leisure for words about
returning; but now, a month having elapsed, as they were
walking together, they said in conversation, “Mountains
and rivers separate us from our native country, and now
as to the stûpa which we built formerly, whilst we have
been here, who has watered and swept it?” On finishing
these words and coming to the spot (where this stûpa stands),
they turned round in token of respect; when suddenly
they saw a stûpa rise before them, and on advancing to
look at it, they saw it was exactly like the one they had
built in their own country. Therefore now in India they
call it the Kuṅkuma stûpa.

At the south-east angle of the wall of the Bôdhî tree
is a stûpa by the side of a Nyagrôdha (ni-ken-liu) tree.
Beside it there is a vihâra in which is a sitting figure of
Buddha. This is the spot where the great Brahmadêva
exhorted Buddha, when he had first acquired enlighten-
ment, to turn the wheel of the excellent law.

76 Kwai-ming, pay their adora-
tions; the same as kwai-t. Julien
translates it “placed their lot in
his hands.”

77 Can this be the scene repre-
sented in the Ajañṭa frescoes? See
Burgess, Caves Temples, pl. xvi.

78 Buddha was in doubt whether
Within the walls of the Bödhi tree at each of the four angles is a great stūpa. Formerly, when Tathāgata received the grass of good omen (Santi), he walked on the four sides of the Bödhi tree from point to point; then the great earth trembled. When he came to the diamond throne, then all was quiet and peaceable again. Within the walls of the tree the sacred traces are so thick together that it would be difficult to recite each one particularly.

At the south-west of the Bödhi tree, outside the walls, there is a stūpa; this is where the old house of the two shepherd-girls stood who offered the rice-milk to Buddha. By the side of it is another stūpa where the girls boiled the rice; by the side of this stūpa Tathāgata received the rice. Outside the south gate of the Bödhi tree is a great tank about 700 paces round, the water of which is clear and pure as a mirror. Nāgas and fishes dwell there. This was the pond which was dug by the Brāhmaṇs, who were uterine brothers, at the command of Mahēśvara (Ta-thseu-thsai).

Still to the south there is a tank; formerly, when Tathāgata had just acquired perfect enlightenment, he wished to bathe; then Śakra (Shi), king of Dēvas, for Buddha’s sake, caused a pond to appear as a phantom.

On the west is a great stone where Buddha washed his robes, and then wished to dry them; on this, Śakra, king of Dēvas, brought this rock from the great Snowy Mountains. By the side of this is a stūpa; this is where Tathāgata put on (?) the old garments offered him. Still to the south in a wood is a stūpa; this is where the poor old woman gave the old garments which Tathāgata accepted.

any were fit to hear him preach. On this, Brahmá (Fan), the lord of the “Saha world” (Mahābrahmā Sahampati), came and exhorted him to “turn the wheel,” for, he said, “as on the surface of a pond there are white and blue lotus flowers, some only in bud, some opening, others fully opened; thus it is with men: some are not yet fit to be taught, others are being made fit, whilst some are ready to receive the saving doctrine.” See the account in the chung-hu-mo-ho-ti Sūtra. See also Fo-sho, varga 14, v. 1183.
To the east of the pond which Śakra caused to appear, in the midst of a wood, is the lake of the Nāga king Muchilinda (Mu-chi-lin-t'o). The water of this lake is of a dark blue colour, its taste is sweet and pleasant; on the west bank is a small vihāra in which is a figure of Buddha. Formerly, when Tathāgata first acquired complete enlightenment, he sat on this spot in perfect composure, and for seven days dwelt in ecstatic contemplation. Then this Muchilinda Nāga-rāja kept guard over Tathāgata; with his folds seven times round the body of Buddha, he caused many heads to appear, which overshadowed him as a parasol; therefore to the east of this lake is the dwelling of the Nāga.

To the east of the tank of Muchilinda in a vihāra standing in a wood is a figure of Buddha, which represents him as thin and withered away.

At the side of this is the place where Buddha walked up and down, about 70 paces or so long, and on each side of it is a Pippala tree.

Both in old times and now, among the better classes and the poor, those who suffer from disease are accustomed to anoint the figure with scented earth, on which they get cured in many cases. This is the place where Bōdhisattva endured his penance. Here it was Tathāgata subdued the heretics and received the request of Māra, and then entered on his six years' fast, eating a grain of millet and of wheat each day; his body then became thin and withered and his face marred. The place where he walked up and down is where he took the branch of the tree (as he left the river) after his fast.

By the side of the Pippala tree which denoted the place of Buddha's fast is a stūpa; this is where Ajñāta-Kaundinya and the rest, to the number of five, resided. When first the prince left his home, he wandered through the mountains and plains; he rested in forests and by wells of water. Then Suddhōdana-rāja ordered five men to
follow him and wait on his person. The prince having entered on his penance, then Ajñāta Kaundinya and the rest gave themselves also to a diligent practice of the same.

To the south-west of this spot there is a stūpa. This is where Boddhisattva entered the Nairāñjana river to bathe. By the side of the river, not far off, is the place where Boddhisattva received the rice-milk.

By the side of this is a stūpa where the merchant-prince (householder) offered him the wheat and honey. Buddha was seated with his legs crossed beneath a tree, lost in contemplation, experiencing in silence the joys of emancipation. After seven days he aroused himself from his ecstasy. Then two merchant-princes travelling by the side of the wood were addressed by the Dēva of the place thus: “The prince-royal of the Śākyya family dwells in this wood, having just reached the fruit of a Buddha. His mind fixed in contemplation, he has for forty-nine days eaten nothing. By offering him whatsoever you have (as food) you will reap great and excellent profit.”

Then the two merchants offered some wheat-flour and honey from their travelling store. The World-honoured accepted and received it.

By the side of the merchant-offering place is a stūpa. This is the spot where the four Dēva-rajases presented (Buddha) with a pātra. The merchant-princes having made their offering of wheat-flour and honey, the Lord thought with himself in what vessel he should receive it. Then the four Dēva-rajases coming from the four quarters, each brought a golden dish and offered it. The Lord sat silently and accepted not the offerings, on the ground that such a costly dish became not the character of a hermit. The four kings casting away the golden dishes, offered silver ones; afterwards they offered vessels of crystal (po-ch’i), lapis-lazuli (liu-li), cornelian (ma-nao), amber (ku-ch’i), ruby (chin chu), and so on. The Lord of the World would accept neither of them. The four kings then returned to
their palaces and brought as an offering stone pātras, of a deep blue colour and translucent. Again presenting these, the Lord, to avoid accepting one and rejecting the others, forthwith joined them all in one and accepted them thus. Putting them one within the other, he made one vessel of the four. Therefore may be seen the four borders on the outside of the rim (of the dish).

Not far from this spot is a stūpa. This is the place where Tathāgata preached the law for the sake of his mother. When Tathāgata had acquired complete enlightenment, he was termed “the teacher of gods and of men.” His mother, Māyā, then came down from heaven to this place. The Lord of the World preached to her according to the occasion, for her profit and pleasure.

Beside this spot is a dry pool, on the border of which is a stūpa. This is where in former days Tathāgata displayed various spiritual changes to convert those who were capable of it.

By the side of this spot is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata converted Uravilvā-Kāśyapa (Yeu-leu-pin-lo-kia-she-po) with his two brothers and a thousand of their followers. Tathāgata, for the purpose of following out his office as “illustrious guide,” according to his opportunity (or in a suitable way), caused him (i.e., Kāśyapa) to submit to his teaching. On this occasion, when 500 followers of Uravilvā-Kāśyapa had requested to receive the instruction of Buddha, then Kāśyapa said, “I too with you will give up the way of error.” On this, going together, they came to the place where Buddha was. Tathāgata, addressing them, said, “Lay aside your leather garments and give up your fire-sacrificing vessels.” Then the disciples, in obedience to the command, cast into the Nairaṅjanā river their articles of worship (service or use). When Nadī-Kāśyapa (Nai-ti-kia-she-po) saw these vessels following the current of the river, he came with his followers to visit his brother. Having seen his conduct and changed behaviour, he also
took the yellow robes. Gayā-Kâśyapa also, with two hundred followers, hearing of his brother's change of religion, came to the place where Buddha was, and prayed to be allowed to practise a life of purity.

To the north-west of the spot where the Kâśyapa brothers were converted is a stūpa. This is the place where Tathāgata overcame the fiery Nâga to which Kâśyapa sacrificed. Tathāgata, when about to convert these men, first subdued the object of their worship, and rested in the house of the fiery Nâga of the Brahmachârisins. After the middle of the night the Nâga vomited forth fire and smoke. Buddha having entered Samadhi, likewise raised the brilliancy of fire, and the house-cell seemed to be filled with fiery flames. The Brahmacharins, fearing that the fire was destroying Buddha, all ran together to the spot with piteous cries, commiserating his fate. On this Uravilvā-Kâśyapa addressed his followers and said, "As I now gather (see), this is not a fire, but the Śramaṇa subduing the fiery Nâga," Tathāgata having got the fiery dragon firmly fixed in his alms-bowl, on the morrow came forth holding it in his hand, and showed it to the disciples of the unbelievers. By the side of this monument is a stūpa, where 500 Pratyēka Buddhas at the same time entered Nirvāṇa.

To the south of the tank of Muchilinda Nâga is a stūpa. This indicates the spot where Kâśyapa went to save Buddha during an inundation. The Kâśyapa brothers still opposing the divine method, all who lived far off or near reverenced their virtue, and submitted themselves to their teaching. The Lord of the World, in his character as guide of those in error, being very intent on their conversion, raised and spread abroad the thick clouds and caused the torrents to fall. The fierce waves surrounded the place where Buddha dwelt; but he alone was free from the flood. At this time Kâśyapa, seeing the clouds and

70 I.e., the methods Buddha had used for their conversion.
rain, calling his disciples, said, "The place where the Shaman dwells must be engulfed in the tide!"

Embarking in a boat to go to his deliverance, he saw the Lord of the World walking on the water as on land; and as he advanced down the stream, the waters divided and left the ground visible. Kâśyapa having seen (the miracle), his heart was subdued, and he returned.80

Outside the eastern gate of the wall of the Bôdhi tree, 2 or 3 li distant, there is the house of the blind Nâga This Nâga, by the accumulated effect of his deeds during former existences, was born blind, as a punishment, in his present birth. Tathâgata going on from Mount Prâgbôdhi, desired to reach the Bôdhi tree. As he passed this abode, the eyes of the Nâga were suddenly opened, and he saw Bôdhisattva going on to the tree of intelligence (Bôdhi). Then addressing Bôdhisattva, he said, "O virtuous master! ere long you will become perfectly enlightened! My eyes indeed have long remained in darkness; but when a Buddha appears in the world, then I have my sight restored. During the Bhadra-kalpa, when the three past Buddhas appeared in the world, then I obtained light and saw (for a while); and now when thou, O virtuous one! didst approach this spot, my eyes suddenly opened; therefore I know that you shall become a Buddha."

By the side of the eastern gate of the wall of the Bôdhi tree is a stûpa. This is where Mâra-râja tried to frighten Bôdhisattva. When first Mâra-râja knew that Bôdhisattva was about to obtain perfect enlightenment, having failed to confuse him by his enticements or to terrify him by his arts, he summoned his host of spirits and arranged his demon army, and arrayed his soldiers, armed with their weapons, as if to destroy the Bôdhisattva. On this the winds arose and the rains descended, the thunders rolled in space and the lightning gleamed, as it lit up the darkness; flames of fire and clouds of smoke burst forth;

80 See Tree and Serpent Worship, pl. xxxi. fig. 2.
sand and hailstones fell like lances, and were as arrows flying from the bow. Whereupon the Bôdhisattva entered the samádhi of "great love," and changed the weapons of the host to lotus flowers. Mâra’s army, smitten by fear, retreated fast and disappeared.

Not far from this are two stûpas built by Śakra, king of Dêvas, and by Brahma-râja.

Outside the northern gate of the wall of the Bôdhi tree is the Mahâbodhi saṅghârâma. It was built by a former king of Siêm-hala (Ceylon.) This edifice has six halls, with towers of observation (temple towers) of three storeys; it is surrounded by a wall of defence thirty or forty feet high. The utmost skill of the artist has been employed; the ornamentation is in the richest colours (red and blue). The statue of Buddha is cast of gold and silver, decorated with gems and precious stones. The stûpas are high and large in proportion, and beautifully ornamented; they contain relics of Buddha. The bone relics are as great as the fingers of the hand, shining and smooth, of a pure white colour and translucent. The flesh relics are like the great true pearl, of a bluish-red tint. Every year on the day of the full moon of (the month when) Tathâgata displayed great spiritual changes, they take these relics out for public exhibition.\(^1\) On these occasions sometimes a bright light is diffused, sometimes it rains flowers. The priests of this convent are more than 1000 men; they study the Great Vehicle and belong to the Sthavira (Shang-tso-pu) school. They carefully observe the Dharma Vinaya, and their conduct is pure and correct.

In old days there was a king of Ceylon, which is a country of the southern sea, who was truthful and a believer in the law of Buddha. It happened that his brother, who had become a disciple of Buddha (a houseless one), thinking on the holy traces of Buddha, went forth to wander through India. At all the convents he visited,

\(^1\) In India, the thirtieth day of the twelfth month; in China, the fifteenth day of the first month.
he was treated with disdain as a foreigner (a frontier countryman). On this he returned to his own country. The king in person went out to a distance to meet him, but the Śramaṇa was so affected that he could not speak. The king said, "What has so afflicted you as to cause this excessive grief?" The Śramaṇa replied, "I, relying on the dignity of your Majesty's kingdom, went forth to visit the world, and to find my way through distant regions and strange cities. For many years all my travels, during heat and cold, have been attended with outrage, and my words have been met with insults and sarcasm. Having endured these afflictions, how can I be light-hearted?"

The king said, "If these things are so, what is to be done?"

He replied, "In truth, I wish your Majesty in the field of merit would undertake to build convents throughout all India. You would thus signalise the holy traces, and gain for yourself a great name; you would show your gratitude for the advantage derived from your predecessors, and hand down the merit thereof to your successors."

He replied, "This is an excellent plan; how have I but just heard of it?"

Then he gave in tribute to the king of India all the jewels of his country. The king having received them as tribute, from a principle of duty and affection to his distant ally, he sent messengers to say, "What can I now do in return for the decree?"

The minister said, "The king of Śīrāha salutes the king of India (Mahā Śrī rāja). The reputation of the Mahārāja has spread far and wide, and your benefits have reached to distant regions. The Śramaṇas of this inferior country desire to obey your instructions and to accept your transforming influences. Having wandered through your superior country in visiting the sacred traces, I called at various convents and found
great difficulty in getting entertainment, and so, fatigued and very much worn by affronts, I returned home. I have therefore formed a plan for the benefit of future travellers; I desire to build in all the Indies a convent for the entertainment of such strangers, who may have a place of rest between their journey there and back. Thus the two countries will be bound together and travellers be refreshed."

The king said, "I permit your royal master to take \(\textit{for this purpose}\) one of the places in which Tathāgata has left the traces of his holy teaching."

On this the messenger returned home, having taken leave of the king, and gave an account of his interview. The ministers received him with distinction and assembled the Śramaṇas and deliberated as to the foundation of a convent. The Śramanas said, "The \(\textit{Bōdhi}\) tree is the place where all the past Buddhas have obtained the holy fruit and where the future ones will obtain it. There is no better place than this for carrying out the project."

Then, sending all the jewels of the country; they built this convent to entertain priests of this country \(\textit{Ceylon}\), and he caused to be engraved this proclamation on copper, "To help all without distinction is the highest teaching of all the Buddhas; to exercise mercy as occasion offers is the illustrious doctrine of former saints. And now I, unworthy descendant in the royal line, have undertaken to found this \textit{sanghārāma}, to enclose the sacred traces, and to hand down their renown to future ages, and to spread their benefits among the people. The priests of my country will thus obtain independence, and be treated as members of the fraternity of this country. Let this privilege be handed down from generation to generation without interruption."

For this cause this convent entertains many priests of Ceylon. To the south of the \textit{Bōdhi} tree 10 li or so, the sacred traces are so numerous that they cannot be each named. Every year when the Bhikshus break up their
yearly rest of the rains, religious persons come here from every quarter in thousands and myriads, and during seven days and nights they scatter flowers, burn incense, and sound music as they wander through the district and pay their worship and present their offerings. The priests of India, according to the holy instruction of Buddha, on the first day of the first half of the month Śrāvana enters on Wass. With us this is the sixteenth day of the fifth month; they give up their retreat on the fifteenth day of the second half of the month Āśvayuja, which is with us the fifteenth day of the eighth month.

In India the names of the months depend on the stars, and from ancient days till now there has been no change in this. But as the different schools have translated the accounts according to the dialects of the countries without distinguishing one from the other, mistakes have arisen, and as a consequence contradictions are apparent in the division of the seasons. Hence it is in some places they enter on Wass on the sixteenth day of the fourth month, and break up on the fifteenth day of the seventh month.

Note 1, p. 102.

The pilgrim’s route from Pâtna to Gayâ is difficult to settle. I think we must omit the passage on p. 102, l. 5, “going about 200 li,” and consider the “old sâṅghârâma” as being perhaps 10 li beyond the south-west angle of the city. This 10 li, together with the two distances of 100 li + 90 li to the “cloud-stone mountain,” will thus make up 200 li (put down by mistake), and correspond with the 6 or 7 yojanas in Hwui-lih from Patna to the Ti-lo-chi-kia convent. This last place I should identify with the Barabar Hills; but we must place the Tiladaka convent at Tilâra. Hiuen Tsiang did not actually visit the spots named between the Barabar Hills and Gayâ (see Ferguson’s remarks, J. R. A. S., vol. vi. part 2).

Note 2, p. 118.

With reference to the translation on p. 118, where the Chinese symbols ‘O-mo-lo-kia-ko have been rendered the “Āmalaka fruit,” as though this were the surmounting ornament of the great vihâra at

82 The district of the penance of Buddha.
Buddha Gayā, it is to be noticed that in the Chinese text these symbols are explained as being equivalent to “precious pitcher or vase” (pao p’ing). This phrase is frequently explained as “the sweet-dew dish or vase,” or, “the immortal dish.” M. Julien, in his note on the passage in question, restores the phonetic symbols, in deference to the Chinese explanation, to Amalakarka, that is, “pure dish or vase.” But the right restoration is doubtless Amara Karka, “the immortal dish or vase,” for, as before stated, “sweet-dew” is always rendered by “immortal” or “immortality.” This “sweet-dew dish or vessel” is represented in Chinese drawings as an oval bottle with a long narrow neck (see the illustration in the Liturgy of Avalokitesvara, “possessed of a thousand hands and a thousand eyes”). This explains the statement of Dr. Burgess (Ajantá Caves, xvii. § iv.): “Avalokitesvara holds the palm of his right hand forward and has a bottle with oval body and narrow neck in his left.” This is the Amara Karka. In the illustration of the pavement slab of the great temple of Gayā (i.e., the vihāra under present notice) given in the first volume of the Archaeological Survey of India, pl. vi. (following p. 8), there is the figure of a devotee praying in front of a stūpa, which is crowned with flags and a bottle or vase, doubtless the same as the Amara Karka. This illustrates the inscription found at Buddha Gayā and translated by Sir Charles Wilkins, in which the building of the temple is attributed to Amara Kosha; one of the nine gems of the court of King Vikramādiya. General Cunningham, then, is probably correct in saying that this great temple of Buddha Gayā was built between the time of Fa-hian and Huen Tsang. The crowning member or stone of a temple spire is called Amalabila, or “pure stone.”
BOOK IX.

The Second Part of the Country Magadha.

To the east of the Bôdhi tree, crossing the Nairâñjana (Ni-len-shan-na) river, in the middle of a wood, is a stûpa. To the north of this is a pool. This is the spot where a perfume elephant (Gandhâhasti) 1 waited on his mother. Formerly when Tathâgata was practiseing discipline as a Bôdhisattva, he was born as the offspring of a perfume-elephant, and lived in the mountains of the north. Wandering forth, he came to the border of this pool. His mother being blind, he gathered for her the sweet lotus roots, and drew pure water for her use, and cherished her with devotion and filial care. At this time there was a man who had changed his home, 2 who wandered here and there in the wood without knowing his way, and in his distress raised piteous cries. The elephant-cub heard him and pitied him; leading him on, he showed him his way to the road. The man having got back, forthwith went to the king and said, “I know of a wood 3 in which a perfume-elephant lives and roams. It is a very valuable animal. You had better go and take it.”

The king, assenting to his words, went with his soldiers to capture it, the man leading the way. Then pointing

2 Tui i shuk seems to imply that he had changed his place of abode, and so was at a loss to find his way about; or it may simply mean, “In the lapse of time it happened that,” &c. So Julien translates it.
3 The ruins of the stûpa and the lower portion of the shaft of the pillar raised on the spot where the young elephant was taken still exist at Bakrâ, on the eastern bank of the Lilâjan river, about one mile to the south-east of Buddha Gayâ (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 459).
to the elephant to show it to the king, immediately both his arms fell off as if cut by a sword. The king, though he saw this miracle, yet captured the elephant-cub, and bound it with cords, and returned to his palace. The young elephant having been bound (in order to tame it), for a long time would neither eat nor drink. The stablekeeper stated the matter to the king, who, on his part, came to see for himself, and asking the elephant the reason. "Lo!" he answered and said, "my mother is blind, and now for days together is without food or drink, and here I am bound in a dreary dungeon. How can I take my food with relish!" The king, pitying his feelings and resolution, therefore ordered him to be set free.

By the side of this (pool) is a stūpa, before which is built a stone pillar. In this place the Buddha Kaśyapa (Kia-she-po) long ago sat in meditation. By its side are traces where the four past Buddhas sat down and walked.

To the east of this spot, crossing the Mo-ho (Mahi) river, we come to a great forest in which is a stone pillar. This is the place where a heretic entered a condition of ecstasy and made a wicked vow. In old days there was a heretic called Udra-Rāmaputra (U-teou-lan-tseu). In mind he soared above the vapoury clouds, whilst he left his body among the wilds and marshes. Here in this sacred forest, restraining his spirit, he left his traces. Having acquired the five supernatural faculties, he reached the highest condition of Dhyāna, and the king of Magadhā greatly respected him. Each day at noon he invited him to his palace to eat. Udra-Rāmaputra, mounting through space, walking in the air, came and went without hindrance.

4 In a fond way, as we speak to dumb creatures.
5 The Mohana Nadı river.
6 Udra-Rāmaputra was one of the teachers to whom Bodhisattva went before his penance (Po-sho-hing-tsen-kung, varga 12); but it is uncertain whether he is the one referred to in the text. The expression, "restraining his spirit" means that when he confined his spirit within his body he left here bodily traces.
7 Pañchābhikijñās; see Childers, Pali Dict., sub voc. Abhiññā; Burnouf, Introd., p., 263; Lotus, pp. 820 ff.
The king of Magadha, expecting the moment of his arrival, kept watch for him, and, on his coming, respectfully placed for him his seat. The king being about to go forth on a tour, wished to put this affair in charge of some one during his absence, but he found no one in his inner palace whom he could select, capable of undertaking his commands. But (amongst his attendants) there was a little pet girl of modest appearance and well-mannered, so that in the whole palace none of his followers (wise folk) was able to excel her. The king of Magadha summoned this one, and said to her, "I am going some distance on a tour of observation, and I desire to put you in charge of an important business; you must, on your part, give all your mind to do thoroughly as I direct in the matter. It relates to that celebrated Rishi Udra-Râmaputtra, whom I have for a long time treated with reverence and respect. Now when he comes here at the appointed time to dine, do you pay him the same attention that I do." Having left these instructions, the king forthwith gave notice of his absence (non-attendance).

The little girl, according to her instructions, waited in expectation as usual. The great Rishi having come, she received him, and placed a seat for him. Udra-Râmaputtra having touched the young female, felt within him the impure risings of earthly passion (of the world of desire), and so he lost his spiritual capabilities. Having finished his meal, he spoke of going, but he was unable to rise in the air. Then feeling ashamed, he prevaricated, and addressing the maiden said, "I am able, as the result of the discipline I practise, to enter samâdhi, and then, my mind at rest, I can ascend into the air, and come and go without a moment's delay. I have heard long ago, however, that the people of the country desire to see me. In agreement with the rule of the olden time, our
utmost aim should be to benefit all that lives. How shall I regard only my own benefit and forget to benefit others? I desire, therefore, on this occasion, to go through the gate and walk on the ground, to bring happiness and profit to all those who see me going.”

The royal maiden hearing this, straightway spread the news far and wide. Then the people began with all their hearts to water and sweep the roads, and thousands upon thousands awaited to see him come. Udra-Rāmaputra, stepping from the royal palace, proceeded on foot to that religious forest. Then sitting down in silence, he entered Samādhi. Then his mind, quickly escaping outside, was yet limited within the boundaries of the forest. And now (as it wandered through the woods) the birds began to scream and flutter about, and as it approached the pond, the fishes began to jump and splash, till at last his feelings being wrought up, and his mind becoming confused, he lost his spiritual capabilities. Giving up his attempt at ecstasy, he was filled with anger and resentment, and he made this wicked vow “May I hereafter be born as a fierce and wicked beast, with the body of a fox and the wings of a bird, that I may seize and devour living creatures. May my body be 3000 li long, and the outspread of my wings each way 1500 li; then rushing into the forest, I will devour the birds, and entering the rivers, I will eat the fish.”

When he had made this vow his heart grew gradually at rest, and by earnest endeavours he resumed his former state of ecstasy. Not long after this he died, and was born in the first of the Bhuvāni heavens, where his years

10 That is, although his spirit was able to leave his body, yet, owing to his evil thoughts, it was unable to rise as before “above the vapoury clouds.”

11 This seems to show that although his spirit quickly passed “outside,” it was unable to obtain complete independence of his body.

12 That is, in the highest of the Arupa heavens. This heaven is called in Chinese 七住空界, i.e., the heaven where there is neither thought (consciousness) nor an absence of thought; in Pāli.
would be 80,000 kalpas. Tathāgata left this record of him: “The years of his life in that heaven being ended, then he will reap the fruit of his old vow and possess this ignoble body. From the streams of the evil ways of birth he may not yet expect to emerge.”

To the east of Mahā river we enter a great wild forest, and going 100 li or so, we come to the Ki’u-ki’u-chapo-to-shan (Kukkutapādagiri, the Cock’s-foot Mountain). It is also called Kiu-liu-po-to-shan (Gurupādāḥ giri). The sides of this mountain are high and rugged, the valleys and gorges are impenetrable. Tumultuous torrents rush down its sides, thick forests envelope the valleys, whilst tangled shrubs grow along its cavernous heights. Soaring upwards into the air are three sharp peaks; their tops are surrounded by the vapours of heaven, and their shapes lost in the clouds. Behind these hills the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa dwells wrapped in a condition of Nirvāṇa. People do not dare to utter his name, and therefore they speak of the “Guru-pādāḥ” (the venerable teacher.)

Mahā-Kāśyapa was a Śrāvaka and a disciple (or

“Nevassānāmāṇānā” (see Childers, Pāli Dict. sub voc. From the history given in the Fo-sho-king, it would seem that this refinement of language as to the character of the highest heaven is due to Udra-Rāmaputra. That is, although he is now in the highest heaven of substance (bhūva), where his life will last 80,000 great kalpas (an incalculable period), yet he is not saved from future misery. This exhibits the character of Buddha’s conception of Nirvāṇa, that it is a condition free from any possibility of a return to mundane or other bodily form of existence.

That is, the Mountain of the Venerable Master, i.e., Kāśyapa. Pāda is here added as a token of respect, as in Deva-pādāḥ, Kumārila-pādāḥ, &c. It seems to have been called the Cock’s-foot from its shape, the three peaks or spurs resembling the foot of the cock. Fa-hian places it 3 li to the south of Gayā, probably a mistake for 3 yojanas to the east (see Fa-hian, Beal’s ed., cap. xxxiii. n. 1). It has been identified by Cunningham with the village of Kur-kihar (vid. Arch. Survey, vol. i. pp. 14–16; vol. xv. p. 4; and Anc. Geog. Ind., p. 460). This hill of the cock’s foot must not be confused with the sanāhūrāna of the cock-garden near Patna. There is no evidence that there was a hill near this last establishment, and it is nowhere called the Kukkuta-pāda vihāra. The quotation made by Julien (vol. ii. 428 n.) refers to the hill near Gaya; so also does the note of Burnouf, Introd., p. 366. See also Schiefner’s Lebensbeschreibung Cākyamuni’s, p. 278; Ind. Ant., vol. xii. p. 327.

This is a difficult passage, but the sense is evident. Kāśyapa dwells in the mountain awaiting the arrival of Maitrāya; he cannot therefore have passed into complete Nirvāṇa.
a Śrāvaka disciple) perfectly possessed of the six supernatural faculties and the eight enfranchisements (ashtau vimokṣhas).

Tathāgata, his work of conversion being done, and just on the point of attaining Nirvāṇa, addressed Kāśyapa and said, "Through many kalpas I have undergone (diligently borne) painful penances for the sake of all that lives, seeking the highest form of religion. What I have all along prayed for (desired) I have now obtained to the full. Now, as I am desirous to die (enter Mahānirvāṇa), I lay on you the charge of the Dharma Pitaka. Keep and disseminate (this doctrine) without loss or diminution. The golden-tissued Kashāya robe given me by my foster-mother (mother’s sister) I bid you keep and deliver to Maitreya (T’se-ohi) when he has completed the condition of Buddha. All those who engage in the profession of my bequeathed law, whether they be Bhikshus, Bhikshunīs, Upāsakas, or Upāsikas, must first (i.e., before this be accomplished) cross over and escape the stream of transmigration."

Kāśyapa having received this commission to undertake to preserve the true law, summoned an assembly (council or convocation). This done, he continued twenty years (in charge of the order), and then, in disgust at the imperma-

---

17 See Childers, u. a., s. v. Vimokṣha; Burnouf, Lotus, pp. 347, 824 f. and ante, vol. i. p. 149, n. 90.
18 Mahāprajāpāti.
19 The word means “waste” or “distant;” as we might say, through “a waste of ages,” or “dreary ages.”
20 This passage is translated by Julien thus: “Which Maitreya after he became Buddha left, that it might be transmitted to you.” But this cannot be correct. Maitreya has not become Buddha. I translate it, “I deliver to you to keep, awaiting the time when Maitreya shall become perfect Buddha.”
21 This is the usual phrase used for “calling a convocation.”
nence of the world, and desiring to die, he went towards Cock's-foot Mountain. Ascending the north side of the mountain, he proceeded along the winding path, and came to the south-west ridge. Here the crags and precipices prevented him going on. Forcing his way through the tangled brushwood, he struck the rock with his staff, and thus opened a way. He then passed on, having divided the rock, and ascended till he was again stopped by the rocks interlacing one another. He again opened a passage through, and came out on the mountain peak on the north-east side. Then having emerged from the defiles, he proceeded to the middle point of the three peaks. There he took the Kashāya garment (chīvara) of Buddha, and as he stood he expressed an ardent vow. On this the three peaks covered him over; this is the reason why now these three rise up into the air. In future ages, when Maitrēya shall have come and declared the three-fold law, finding the countless persons opposed to him by pride, he will lead them to this mountain, and coming to the place where Kāśyapa is, in a moment (the snapping of the finger) Maitrēya will cause it to open of itself, and all those people, having seen Kāśyapa, will only be more proud and obstinate. Then Kāśyapa, delivering the robe, and having paid profound reverence, will ascend into the air and exhibit all sorts of spiritual changes, emitting fire and vapour from his body. Then he will enter Nirvāṇa. At this time the people, witnessing these miracles, will dismiss their pride, and opening their minds, will obtain the fruit (of holiness). Now, therefore, on the top of the mountain is a stūpa built. On quiet evenings those looking from a distance see sometimes a bright light as if were of a torch; but if they ascend the mountain there is nothing to be observed.23

23 The thrice-repeated law; see ante, p. 47, n. 10.
23 The three-peaked mountain here referred to has been identified by General Cunningham with the three peaks of the Murali moun-
tain, which stands three miles north-north-east of the town of Kurkhir. There is still a square basement surrounded by quantities of bricks on the highest or middle peak of the three. Arch. Survey, vol. xv. p. 5.
Going to the north-east of the Cock's-foot Mountain about 100 li, we come to the mountain called Buddhavana (Fo-to-fa-na), with its peaks and cliffs lofty and precipitous. Among its steep mountain cliffs is a stone chamber where Buddha once descending stayed; by its side is a large stone where Šakra (Shih), king of Dèvas, and Brahma-rāja (Fan-wang) pounded some ox-head (gōśṭrśha) sandal-wood, and anointed Tathāgata with the same. The scent (of this) is still to be perceived on the stone. Here also five hundred Arhats secretly dwell in a spiritual manner, and here those who are influenced by religious desire to meet with them sometimes see them, on one occasion under the form of Samañéras just entering the village to beg food, at other times as withdrawing (to their cells), on some occasions manifesting traces of their spiritual power in ways difficult to describe in detail.

Going about 30 li to the east, amongst wild valleys of the Buddhavana (Fo-to-fa-na) mountain, we come to the wood called Yashtivana (Ye-sse-chi). The bamboos that grow here are large; they cover the hill and extend through the valley. In former days there was a Brāhman, who hearing that the body of Śākya Buddha (Shih-kia-fo) was sixteen feet in height, was perplexed with doubt and would not credit it. Then taking a bamboo sixteen feet long, he desired to measure the height of Buddha; the body constantly overtopped the bamboo and exceeded the sixteen feet. So going on increasing, he could not find the right measurement. He then threw the bamboo on

24 "In Pāli called gosálam, among the Tibetans gorsh-i-sha, and among the Mongols gurshshka. It is apparently applied to sandal-wood having the odour of the cow's head" (Burnouf, Introd., p. 557). But perhaps its name is derived from its appearance, viz., a centre of silvery white wood within a darker outside circle. Compare the description of the bull that carried off Europa—

25 "The forest of the staff."
the ground and departed; but because of this it stood upright and took root.

In the midst of this wood is a stūpa which was built by Asoka-rāja. Here Tathāgata displayed for seven days great spiritual wonders (miracles) for the sake of the Dēvas, and preached the mysterious and excellent law.

In the forest of the staff (Yashṭīvana) not long since there was an Upāsaka named Jayasēna (She-ye-si-na), a Kshattriya of Western India. He was exceedingly simple-minded and moderate. He amused himself amid the forests and hills, dwelling in a sort of fairyland, whilst his mind wandered amid the limits of truth (true limits). He had deeply studied the mysteries both of orthodox and other treatises (inside and outside books). His language and observations were pure, and his arguments elevated; his presence was quiet and dignified. The Śramaṇas, Brāhmaṇas, heretics of different schools, the king of the country, the great ministers and householders, and persons of rank came together to visit him and personally to ask him questions. His pupils occupied sixteen apartments; and although nearly seventy years of age, he read with them diligently and without cessation, and applied their minds only to the study of Buddhist sūtras, rejecting all other engagements. Thus night and day he gave up body and mind to this pursuit alone.

It is a custom in India to make little stūpas of powdered scent made into a paste; their height is about six or seven inches, and they place inside them some written extract from a sūtra; this they call a dharma-śāstra (fa-shi-li). When the number of these has become large, they then build a great stūpa, and collect all the others within it, and continually offer to it religious

---


28 See the seals found at Bird-
offerings. This then was the occupation of Jaya-sêna (Ching-kian); with his mouth he declared the excellent law, and led and encouraged his students, whilst with his hand he constructed these stûpas. Thus he acquired the highest and most excellent religious merit. In the evening, again, he would walk up and down worshipping and repeating his prayers, or silently sit down in meditation. For eating or sleeping he had little time, and relaxed none of his discipline night or day. Even after he was an hundred years old his mind and body were in full activity. During thirty years he had made seven kôtis of these dharma-sarîra stûpas, and for every kôti that he made he built a great stûpa and placed them in it. When full, he presented his religious offerings and invited the priests; whilst they, on their part, offered him their congratulations. On these occasions a divine light shone around and spiritual wonders (miracles) exhibited themselves; and from that time forth the miraculous light has continued to be seen.

South-west of the Yashtivana about 10 li or so, on the south side of a great mountain, are two warm springs; the water is very hot. In old days, Tathâgata caused this water to appear, and washed himself therein. The pure flow of these waters still lasts without diminution. Men far and near flock here to bathe, after which those who have suffered from disease or chronic affections are often healed. By the side of the springs is a stûpa, to mark the place where Tathâgata walked for exercise.

To the south-east of the Yashtivana about six or seven

39 Or, invited the congregation of priests to a religious assembly to consecrate the service.
30 The Bamboo forest (Chang-lin) is still known as the Jakhti-ban; it lies to the east of the Buddhain hill (Buddhavana), and is frequented by the people for the purpose of cutting bamboos (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 461).
31 These springs are about two miles to the south of Jakhti-ban, at a place called Tapoban, which name is a common contraction of Tapta-pâni, or the “hot water” (Ibid.)
li we come to a great mountain. Before a cross-ridge of this mountain is a stūpa. Here in old days Tathāgata explained the law during the three months of rain for the benefit of men and Dēvas. Then Bimbisāra-rāja (Pin-pi-so-lo) wished to come to hear the law. He cut away the mountain, and piled up the stones to make steps in order to ascend. The width is about twenty paces and the length 3 or 4 li.

To the north of the great mountain 3 or 4 li is a solitary hill. Formerly the Rishi Vyāsa (Kwāng-po) lived here in solitude. By excavating the side of the mountain he formed a house. Some portions of the foundations are still visible. His disciples still hand down his teaching, and the celebrity of his bequeathed doctrine still remains.

To the north-east of the solitary hill 4 or 5 li there is a small hill, also standing alone. In the side of this hill (has been excavated) a stone chamber. In length and breadth it is enough to seat 1000 persons or so. In this place Tathāgata, when living in the world, repeated the law for three months. Above the stone chamber is a great and remarkable rock, on which Śakra, king of Dēvas, and Brahma-rāja pounded some ox-head sandal-wood, and with the dust sprinkled the body of Tathāgata. The surface of the stone still emits the scent of the perfume.

At the south-west angle of the stone house there is a lofty cavern which the Indians call the palace of the Asuras (O-su-lo). Formerly there was a good-natured fellow who was deeply versed in the use of magic formulae. He engaged with some companions, fourteen altogether, to covenant with one another to enter this lofty cavern. After going about 30 or 40 li, suddenly the whole place was

---

32 Or it may be “a transverse pass.”
33 The great mountain referred to in the text corresponds with the lofty hill of Handia, 1463 feet in height (Cunningham).
34 This restoration rests on M. Julien’s authority, as explained in his note (iii. 13).
35 Kwāng mon, see Medhurst, Chin. Dict., sub Mon, p. 994.
lighted up with great brilliancy, and they saw a walled city before them, with towers and look-outs all of silver and gold and lapis-lazuli (lieu-li). The men having advanced to it, there were some young maidens who stationed themselves at the gates, and with joyful laughing faces greeted them and paid them reverence. Going on a little farther they came to the inner city-gates, where there were two slave-girls holding each of them a golden vessel full of flowers and scents. Advancing with these, they waited the approach of the visitors, and then said, "You must first bathe yourselves in yonder tank, and then anoint yourselves with the perfumes and crown yourselves with the flowers, and then you may enter the city Do not hasten to enter yet; only that master of magic can come in at once." Then the other thirteen men went down at once to bathe. Having entered the tank, they all at once became confused, and forgot all that had taken place, and were (found) sitting in the middle of a rice field distant from this due north, over a level country about 30 or 40 li.

By the side of the stone house there is a wooden way (a road made with timber) about 10 paces wide and about 4 or 5 li. Formerly Bimbisāra-rāja, when about to go to the place where Buddha was, cut out a passage through the rock, opened up the valleys, levelled the precipices, and led a way across the river-courses, built up walls of stone, and bored through the opposing crags, and made ladders up the heights to reach the place where Buddha was located.

From this spot proceeding eastward through the mountains about 60 li, we arrive at the city Kuśāgāra-pura (Kiu-she-kie-lo-pu-lo), or "the royal city of best grass (lucky grass)." This is the central point of the kingdom of Magadha.37 Here the former kings of the country

35 Chan-tau, wooden bridges over mountain chasms (Khang-hi, quoted by Julien, note in loco).
37 Kuśāgārapura was the original capital of Magadha, and was called
fixed their capital. It produces much of the most excellent, scented, fortunate grass, and therefore it is called "the city of the superior grass." High mountains surround it on each side, and form as it were its external walls. On the west it is approached through a narrow pass, on the north there is a passage through the mountains. The town is extended from east to west and narrow from north to south. It is about 150 li in circuit. The remaining foundations of the wall of the inner city are about 30 li in circuit. The trees called Kie-ni-kia (Kanakas) border all the roads, their flowers exhale a delicious perfume, and their colour is of a bright golden hue. In the spring months the forests are all of a golden colour.

Outside the north gate of the palace city is a stūpa. Here Devadatta (Ti-p'o-to-lo) and Ajātaśatru-rāja Wi-sing-yun), having agreed together as friends, liberated the drunken elephant for the purpose of killing Tathāgata. But Tathāgata miraculously caused five lions to proceed from his finger-ends; on this the drunken elephant was subdued and stood still before him.

To the north-east of this spot is a stūpa. This is where Sāriputra (She-li-tseu) heard Āśvajita (O-shi-p'o-shi) the Bhikshu declare the law, and by that means reached the fruit (of an Arhat). At first Sāriputra was a layman; he was a man of distinguished ability and refinement, and was highly esteemed by those of his own time. At this time, with other students, he accepted the traditional teaching as delivered to him. On one occasion, being about to enter the great city of Rājaγṛtha, the Bhikshu Āsvajita (Ma-shing) was also just going his round of begging. Then Sāriputra, seeing him at a distance, addressed his disciples, saying, "Yonder man who comes, so full of dignity and nobleness, if he has not reached the fruit of sanctity

---

28 So also Fa-hian states that the five hills which surround the town are like the walls of a city (cap. xxviii.)

29 This is a perversion of the simple story found in the Fo-sho-king, vv. 1713 ss., and compare p. 246, n. 4.
(Arhatship), how is he thus composed and quiet? Let us stop awhile and observe him as he approaches." Now as Āśvajita Bhikshu had reached the condition of an Arhat, his mind was self-possessed, his face composed and of an agreeable refinement; thus, holding his religious staff, he came along with a dignified air. Then Śāriputra said, "Venerable sir! are you at ease and happy? Pray, who is your master, and what the system you profess, that you are so gladsome and contented?"

Āsvajita answering him said, "Know you not the royal prince, the son of Suddhodana-rāja, who gave up the condition of a Chakravarttin monarch, and from pity to the six kinds of creatures for six years endured penance and reached the condition of Sambodhi, the state of perfect omniscience? This is my master! As to his law, it has respect to a condition including the absence of existence, without nonentity; it is difficult to define; only Buddhas with Buddhas can fathom it; how much less can foolish and blind mortals, such as I, explain its principles. But for your sake I will recite a stanza in praise of the law of Buddha." Śāriputra having heard it, obtained forthwith the fruit of Arhatship.

To the north of this place, not far off, there is a very deep ditch, by the side of which is built a stūpa; this is the spot where Śrīgupta (She-li-kio-to) wished to destroy Buddha by means of fire concealed in the ditch and poisoned rice. Now Śrīgupta (Shing-mi) greatly honoured (believed in) the heretics, and his mind was deeply possessed by false views. All the Brahmachârins said, "The men of the country greatly honour Gautama (Kiao-ta-mo), and in consequence he causes our disciples to be without support. Invite him then to your house to eat, and before the door make a great ditch and fill it with fire, and cover it over slightly with wooden planks to conceal the fire; moreover,

40 The opposite of existence (yau, material or conditioned existence), and also of not-being. 41 The stanza he recited is given in the Fo-sho-king, v. 1392. See also p. 194, n. 2.
poison the food, so that if he escape the fire (fiery ditch), he will take the poison."

Śrīgupta, according to his directions, caused the poison to be prepared, and then all the people in the town, knowing the evil and destructive design of Śrīgupta against the Lord of the World, entreated Buddha not to go to the house. The Lord said, "Be not distressed; the body of Tathāgata cannot be hurt by such means as these." He therefore accepted the invitation and went. When his foot trod on the threshold of the door the fire in the pit became a tank of pure water with lotus flowers on its surface.

Śrīgupta having witnessed this, being filled with shame and fear lest his project should fail, said to his followers, "He has by his magical power escaped the fire; but there is yet the poisoned food!" The Lord having eaten the rice, began to declare the excellent law, on which Śrīgupta, having attended to it, himself became a disciple.

To the north-east of this fiery ditch of Śrīgupta (Shingmi), at a bend of the city, is a stūpa; this is where Jīvaka (Shi-fo-kia), the great physician, built a preaching-hall for Buddha. All round the walls he planted flowers and fruit trees. The traces of the foundation-walls and the decayed roots of the trees are still visible. Tathāgata, when he was in the world, often stopped here. By the side of this place are the remains of the house of Jīvaka, and the hollow of an old well also exists there still.

To the north-east of the palace city going 14 or 15 li, we come to the mountain Grīdhra-kūṭa (Ki-li-tho-kius-ch'a). Touching the southern slope of the northern mountain, it rises as a solitary peak to a great height, on which vultures make their abode. It appears like a high tower on which the azure tints of the sky are reflected, the colours of the mountain and the heaven being commingled.

42 For the history of Jīvaka see S. Hardy's Manual of Buddhism, p. 238.
When Tathāgata had guided the world for some fifty years, he dwelt much in this mountain, and delivered the excellent law in its developed form (kwang).\(^{43}\) Bimbisāra-rāja, for the purpose of hearing the law, raised a number of men to accompany him from the foot of the mountain to its summit. They levelled the valleys and spanned the precipices, and with the stones made a staircase about ten paces wide and 5 or 6 li long. In the middle of the road there are two small stūpas, one called "Dismounting from the chariot" (Hia-shing), because the king, when he got here, went forward on foot. The other is called "Sending back the crowd" (T'u-i-fan), because the king, separating the common folk, would not allow them to proceed with him. The summit of this mountain is long from the east to the west and narrow from north to south. There is a brick vihāra on the borders of a steep precipice at the western end of the mountain. It is high and wide and beautifully constructed. The door opens to the east. Here Tathāgata often stopped in old days and preached the law. There is now a figure of him preaching the law of the same size as life.

To the east of the vihāra is a long stone, on which Tathāgata trod as he walked up and down for exercise. By the side of it is a great stone about fourteen or fifteen feet high and thirty paces round. This is the place where Dēvadatta\(^{44}\) flung a stone from a distance to strike Buddha.

South of this, below the precipice, is a stūpa. Here

\(^{43}\) A great number of the later developed sūtras are said to have been delivered here. There is also a late form of belief which connects the spiritual form of Buddha with this mountain. It is barely possible that Buddha did in his later years declare a developed (mystical) form of his doctrine, and perhaps this mountain was the scene of his teaching; but the greater portion of the sūtras claiming the authority of his utterance here are fabulous. Compare Fa-hian, cap. xxix. The Vulture Peak is a part of the lofty hill now called Salla-giri, but no caves have been discovered there (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 466).

\(^{44}\) The story of Dēvadatta rolling down the stone will be found in Fa-hian, chap. xxix., also in the Fo-sho-king, p. 246, and in the Manual of Buddhism, p. 383. The accounts, however, slightly differ.
Tathâgata, when alive in old time, delivered the *Saddharmapundarika Sûtra*.\(^{45}\)

To the south of the vihâra, by the side of a mountain cliff, is a great stone house. In this Tathâgata, when dwelling in the world long ago, entered *Samâdhi*.

To the north-west of the stone house and in front of it is a great and extraordinary stone. This is the place where Ánanda (O-nan) was frightened by Mâra. When the venerable Ánanda had entered *Samâdhi* in this place, Mâra-râja, assuming the form of a vulture, in the middle of the night, during the dark portion of the month, took his place on this rock, and flapping his wings and uttering loud screams, tried to frighten the venerable one.\(^{46}\) Ánanda, filled with fear, was at a loss to know what to do; then Tathâgata, by his spiritual power, seeing his state, stretched out his hand to compose him. He pierced the stone wall and patted the head of Ánanda, and with his words of great love he spoke to him thus: “You need not fear the assumed form which Mâra has taken.” Ánanda in consequence recovered his composure, and remained with his heart and body at rest and in peace.

Although years and months have elapsed since then, yet the bird traces on the stone and the hole in the rock\(^{47}\) still remain visible.

By the side of the vihâra there are several stone houses,\(^{48}\) where Sâriputra and other great Arhats entered *Samâdhi*. In front of the stone house of Sâriputra is a

\(^{45}\) Fa-hian relates how he visited the cave on this peak, and wept in recollection of Buddha’s residence therein. Here also, he adds, “he delivered the *Sheu-ling-yan Sûtra.*” This is the *Surasigama Sûtra*. Huen Tsiang says he also delivered here the *Saddharma Pundartika Sûtra*. These *sûtras*, belonging to the last stage of Buddhist development, are referred to this mountain, as it was the scene of Buddha’s latest teaching. See Cunningham, *Anc. Geog.*, p. 467; see also Fergusson, *Cave Temples of India*, p. 50.

\(^{46}\) Fa-hian, chap. xxix.

\(^{47}\) Julien translates “The long cavern which traverses the flanks of the mountain.” But the “long cavern” is the hole referred to, piercing the side of the rock.

\(^{48}\) Probably caves or cells. Cunningham understands them to be small rooms built against the cliff (*Anc. Geog.*, p. 467). The Chinese quite bears out this idea.
great well, dry and waterless. The hollow (shaft) still remains.

To the north-east of the vihāra, in the middle of a rocky stream, is a large and flat stone. Here Tathāgata dried his Kashāya garment. The traces of the tissue of the robe still remain, as though they were cut out on the rock.

By the side of this, and upon a rock, is a foot-trace of Buddha. Although the “wheel” outline is somewhat obscure, yet it can be distinctly traced.

On the top of the northern mountain is a stūpa. From this point Tathāgata beheld the town of Magadha, and for seven days explained the law.

To the west of the north gate of the mountain city is the mountain called Pi-pu-lo (Vipula-giri). According to the common report of the country it is said, “On the northern side of the south-western crags of this mountain there were formerly five hundred warm springs; now there are only some ten or so; but some of these are warm and others cold, but none of them hot.” These springs have their origin to the south of the Snowy Mountains from the Anavatapta (Wu-jeh-no-chi) lake, and flowing underground, burst forth here. The water is very sweet and pure, and the taste is like that of the water of the lake. The streams (from the lake) are five hundred in number (branches), and as they pass by the lesser underground fire-abodes (hells), the power of the flames ascending causes the water to be

49 That is, as it seems, the capital of Magadha, viz., Rājagriha.
50 I have restored Pi-pu-lo to Vipula in deference to Julien. But it might be equally well restored to Vaibhāra or Baibhār, and as Cunningham in his map of Rājgrī (Arch. Survey, vol. i. pl. xiv.) places Baibhār to the west of the north gate of the town, it would be more agreeable to the account in the text to restore it so. On the other hand, as Huien Tsiang places the hot springs on the south-western slopes of Pi-po-lo, and as we are told that “the hot springs of Rājgrīha are found at the eastern foot of Mount Baibhār and the western foot of Mount Vipula” (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 466), it would seem that he must be speaking of Vipula.
hot. At the mouths of the various hot springs there are placed carved stones, sometimes shaped like lions, and at other times as the heads of white elephants; sometimes stone conduits are constructed, through which the water flows on high (aqueducts), whilst below there are stone basins, in which the water collects like a pond. Here people of every region come, and from every city, to bathe; those who suffer from any disease are often cured. On the right and left of the warm springs 52 are many stupas and the remains of vihāras close together. In all these places the four past Buddhas have sat and walked, and the traces of their so doing are still left. These spots being surrounded by mountains and supplied with water, men of conspicuous virtue and wisdom take up their abode here, and there are many hermits who live here also in peace and solitude.

To the west of the hot springs is the Pippala (Pipo-lo) stone house. 53 When the Lord of the World was alive in olden times, he constantly dwelt here. The deep cavern which is behind the walls of this house is the palace abode of an Asura (or, the Asuras). Many Bhiksusu who practise Samādhi dwell here. Often we may see strange forms, as of Nāgas, serpents, and lions, come forth from it. Those who see these things lose their reason and become dazed. Nevertheless, this wonderful place (excellent land) is one in which holy saints dwell, and occupying the spot consecrated by such sacred

52 The names of these warm springs are given by Cunningham (Anc. Geog., p. 466).
53 This stone house is mentioned also by Fa-hian, chap. xxx. He places it to the south of the new city, west about three hundred paces. It would therefore be in Mount Bālbhārā, and Cunningham suggests that Pi-pu-lo may be an equivalent for Vaibhāra (Arch. Survey, i. p. 21 n.). It may be so, but it is usually restored to Pippala. This stone house is supposed to be the same as the present Sonbhāndār, or “treasury of gold” (ibid.) General Cunningham also identifies the Sonbhāndār cave with the Sattapani cave. But this seems impossible. Mr. Fergusson’s remarks on this perplexing subject are intelligible and satisfactory. See Cave Temples of India, pp. 49, 50, and note.
traces, they forget the calamities and evils that threaten them.

Not long ago there was a Bhikshu of a pure and upright life, whose mind was enamoured of solitude and quiet; he desired to practise Samādhi concealed in this house. Some one protested and said, “Go not there! Many calamities happen there, and strange things causing death are frequent. It is difficult to practise Samādhi in such a spot, and there is constant fear of death. You ought to remember what has happened before time, if you would not reap the fruits of after-repentance.” The Bhikshu said, “Not so! My determination is to seek the fruit of Buddha and to conquer the Dēva Māra. If these are the dangers of which you speak, what need to name them?” Then his took his pilgrim’s staff and proceeded to the house. There he reared an altar and began to recite his magic protective sentences. After the tenth day, a maiden came forth from the cave and addressed the Bhikshu, saying, “Sir of the coloured robes! you observe the precepts, and, with full purpose, you adopt the refuge (found in Buddha); you aspire after (prepare) wisdom, and practise Samādhi, and to promote in yourself spiritual power, so that you may be an illustrious guide of men, you dwell here and alarm me and my fellows! But how is this in agreement with the doctrine of Tathāgata?” The Bhikshu said, “I practise a pure life, following the holy teaching (of Buddha). I conceal myself among the mountains and dells to avoid the tumult of life. In suddenly bringing a charge against me, I ask where is my fault?” She replied, “Your reverence! when you recite your prayers, the sound causes fire to burst into (my house) from without, and burns my abode; it afflicts me and my family! I pray you, pity us, and do not say your charmed prayers any more!”

The Bhikshu said, “I repeat my prayers to defend myself, and not to hurt any living thing. In former days,
a religious person (a disciple) occupied this place and practised Samādhi with a view to obtain the holy fruit and to help the miserable; then with unearthly sights he was frightened to death and gave up his life. This was your doing. What have you to say?"

She replied, "Oppressed with a weight of guilt, my wisdom is small indeed; but from this time forth I will bar my house and keep the partition (between it and this chamber). Do you, venerable one, on your part, I pray, repeat no more spiritual formulae."

On this the Bhikshu prepared himself in Samādhi, and from that time rested in quiet, none hurting him.

On the top of Mount Vipula (Pi-pu-lo) is a stūpa. This is where in old times Tathāgata repeated the law. At the present time naked heretics (Nirgranthas) frequent this place in great numbers; they practise penance night and day without intermission, and from morn till night walk round (the stūpa) and contemplate it with respect.

To the left of the northern gate of the mountain city (Girivjaja, Shan-shing), going east, on the north side of the southern crag (precipice or cliff), going 2 or 3 li, we come to a great stone house in which Dēvadatta formerly entered Samādhi.

Not far to the east of this stone house, on the top of a flat stone, there are coloured spots like blood. By the side of this rock a stūpa has been built. This is the place where a Bhikshu practising Samādhi wounded himself and obtained the fruit of holiness.

There was formerly a Bhikshu who diligently exerted himself in mind and body, and secluded himself in the practice of Samādhi. Years and months elapsed, and he had not obtained the holy fruit. Retiring from the spot, he upbraided himself, and then he added with a sigh, "I despair of obtaining the fruit of Arhatship (freedom from learning). What use to keep this body, the source of im-

54 I.e., to succour the people in the dark ways of birth, i.e., demons and pretas and "the lost."
pediment from its very character." Having spoken thus, he mounted on this stone and gashed his throat. Forthwith he reached the fruit of an Arhat, and ascended into the air and exhibited spiritual changes; finally, his body was consumed by fire, and he reached Nirvāṇa. Because of his noble resolution they have built (this stūpa) as a memorial. To the east of this place, above a rocky crag, there is a stone stūpa. This is the place where a Bhikshu practising Samādhi threw himself down and obtained the fruit. Formerly, when Buddha was alive, there was a Bhikshu who sat quietly in a mountain wild, practising the mode of Samādhi leading to Arhatship. For a long time he had exercised the utmost zeal without result. Night and day he restrained his thoughts, nor ever gave up his quiet composure. Tathāgata, knowing that his senses were fit for the acquirement (of emancipation), went to the place for the purpose of converting him (perfecting him). In a moment he transported himself from the garden of bamboos (Venuvana) to this mountainside, and there calling him, stood standing awaiting him.

At this time the Bhikshu, seeing from a distance the holy congregation, his heart and body ravished with joy, he cast himself down from the mountain. But by his purity of heart and respectful faith for Buddha's teaching before he reached the ground he gained the fruit of Arhatship. The Lord of the World then spoke and said, "You ought to know the opportunity." Immediately he ascended into the air and exhibited spiritual transformation. To show his pure faith they have raised this memorial.

Going about one li from the north gate of the mountain city we come to the Karandavenuvana (Kia-lan-t'o-chuh-yuen), where now the stone foundation and the

55 This incident is also related by Fa-hian, cap. xxx.
56 So I understand tan c'hi, "in the snapping of a finger." Julien translates it as though Buddha called the Bhikshu by cracking his fingers.
57 It may be either "calling him" or "calling an assembly."
58 The bamboo garden of Karanda, or Kalaṇḍa. For an account of this garden see Fa-hian, (Beal's edit., p. 117, n. 2), and also Julien in loco, n. 1; see also Burnouf, Introduct., 1st ed. p. 456; Lalita Vistara, p. 415.
brick walls of a vihāra exist. The door faces the east. Tathāgata, when in the world, frequently dwelt here, and preached the law for the guidance and conversion of men and to rescue the people. They have now made a figure of Tathāgata the size of life. In early days there was in this town a great householder (gr̥thapati) called Kāraṇḍa; at this time he had gained much renown by giving to the heretics a large bamboo garden. Then coming to see Tathāgata and hearing his law, he was animated by a true faith. He then regretted that the multitude of unbelievers should dwell in that place. "And now," he said, "the leader of gods and men has no place in which to lodge." Then the spirits and demons, affected by his faithfulness, drove away the heretics, and addressing them said, "Kāraṇḍa, the householder, is going to erect a vihāra here for the Buddha; you must get away quickly, lest calamity befall you!"

The heretics, with hatred in their heart and mortified in spirit, went away; thereupon the householder built this vihāra. When it was finished he went himself to invite Buddha. Thereon Tathāgata received the gift.

To the east of the Kāraṇḍaveṇuvana is a stūpa which was built by Ajātaśatru-ṛāja. After the Nirvāṇa of Tathāgata the kings divided the relics (she-li); the king Ajātaśatru returned then with his share, and from a feeling of extreme reverence built (a stūpa) and offered his religious offerings to it. When Asokā-ṛāja (Wu-yau) became a believer, he opened it and took the relics, and in his turn built another stūpa. This building constantly emits miraculous light.

By the side of the stūpa of Ajātaśatru-ṛāja is another stūpa which encloses the relics of half of the body of Ānanda. Formerly, when the saint was about to reach Nirvāṇa, he left the country of Magadha and proceeded to the town of Vaīśāḷi (Fei-she-li). As these two countries disputed (about him) and began to raise troops, the venerable one, from pity, divided his body into two parts. The king of Magadha, receiving his share, returned and offered
to it his religious homage, and immediately prepared in this renowned land, with great honour, to raise a stūpa. By the side of this building is a place where Buddha walked up and down.

Not far from this is a stūpa. This is the place where Śāriputra and Mudgalaputra dwelt during the rainy season.

To the south-west of the bamboo garden (Venuvana) about 5 or 6 li, on the north side of the southern mountain, is a great bamboo forest. In the middle of it is a large stone house. Here the venerable Kasyapa with 999 great Arhats, after Tathâgata’s Nirvâna, called a con-vocation (for the purpose of settling) the three Piṭakas. Before it is the old foundation-wall. King Ajâtaśatru made this hall for the sake of accommodating the great Arhats who assembled to settle the Dharma-piṭaka.

At first, when Mahâ Kasyapa was seated in silent (study) in the desert (mountain forests), suddenly a bright light burst forth, and he perceived the earth shaking. Then he said, “What fortunate change of events is there, that this miracle should occur?” Then exerting his divine sight, he saw the Lord Buddha between the two trees entering Nirvâna. Forthwith he ordered his followers to accompany him to the city of Kuśinagara (Ku-shi). On the way they met a Brahmâ holding in his hands a divine flower. Kasyapa, addressing him, said, “Whence come you? Know you where our great teacher is at present?” The Brâhmaṇ replied and said, “I have but just come from yonder city of Kuśinagara, where I saw your great master just entered into Nirvâna. A vast

58 This is the famous Sattapanni cave, in which the “first Buddhist council” was held “At the entrance of the Sattapança cave in the Magadha town (compare ante, n. 45) Giribbaja (i.e., Girivraja or Râjagriha) the first council was finished after seven months” (Dīpan-kara (Oldenberg) v. 5). In connection with this extract I would refer to the sentence preceding it

VOL. II.
multitude of heavenly beings were around him offering their gifts in worship, and this flower, which I hold, I brought thence."

Kasyapa having heard these words said to his followers, "The sun of wisdom has quenched his rays. The world is now in darkness. The illustrious guide has left us and gone, and all flesh must fall into calamity."

Then the careless Bhikshus said one to another with satisfaction, "Tathagata has gone to rest. This is good for us, for now, if we transgress, who is there to reprove or restrain us?"

Then Kasyapa, having heard this, was deeply moved and afflicted, and he resolved to assemble (collect) the treasure of the law (Dharma-pitaka) and bring to punishment the transgressors. Accordingly he proceeded to the two trees, and regarding Buddha, he offered worship.

And now the King of the Law having gone from the world, both men and Dèvas were left without a guide, and the great Arhats, moreover, were cleaving to (the idea of their) Nirvâna. Then the great Kâśyapa reflected thus: "To secure obedience to the teaching of Buddha, we ought to collect the Dharma-pitaka." On this he ascended Mount Sumeru and sounded the great gong (ghanṭa), and spake thus: "Now then, in the town of Râjagriha there is going to be a religious assembly.61 Let all those who have obtained the fruit (of arhatship) hasten to the spot."

In connection with the sounding of the gong the direction of Kâśyapa spread far and wide through the great chilicosm, and all those possessed of spiritual capabilities, hearing the instructions, assembled in convocation. At this time Kâśyapa addressed the assembly and said, "Tathâgatâ having died (attained to extinction or Nirvâna), the world is empty. We ought to collect the Dharma-pitaka, in token of our gratitude to Buddha. Now then, being about to accomplish this, there should be profound composure (quiet). How can this be done in the midst of

---

61 A business relating to religion; a religious proceeding.
such a vast multitude? Those who have acquired the three species of knowledge (trividya), who have obtained the six supernatural faculties (shaddabhiññas), who have kept the law without failure, whose powers of discrimination (dialectic) are clear, such superior persons as these may stop and form the assembly. Those who are learners with only limited fruit, let such depart to their homes."

On this 999 men were left; but he excluded Ānanda, as being yet a learner. Then the great Kāśyapa, calling him, addressed him thus: "You are not yet free from defects; you must leave the holy assembly." He replied, "During many years I have followed Tathāgata as his attendant; every assembly that has been held for considering the law, I have joined; but now, as you are going to hold an assembly after his death (wais), I find myself excluded; the King of the Law having died, I have lost my dependence and helper."

Kāśyapa said, "Do not cherish your sorrow! You were a personal attendant on Buddha indeed, and you therefore heard much, and so you loved (much), and therefore you are not free from all the ties that bind (the soul or affections)."

Ānanda, with words of submission, retired and came to a desert place, desiring to reach a condition "beyond learning;" he strove for this without intermission, but with no result. At length, wearied out, he desired one day to lie down. Scarcely had his head reached the pillow when lo! he obtained he condition of an Arhat.

He then went to the assembly, and knocking at the door, announced his arrival. Kāśyapa then asked him, saying, "Have you got rid of all ties? In that case exercise your spiritual power and enter without the door being opened!" Ānanda, in compliance with the order, entered through the keyhole, and having paid reverence to the priesthood, retired and sat down.

62 For a similar account of Ānanda's illumination, see Abstract of Four Lectures, p. 72, and compare the whole account. 63 In other accounts it is stated he entered through the wall.
At this time fifteen days of the summer rest (*Varshāvaśana*) had elapsed. On this Kāśyapa rising, said, "Consider well and listen! Let Ānanda, who ever heard the words of Tathāgata, collect by singing through 64 the *Sūtra-piṭaka*. Let Upāli (Yeu-po-li), who clearly understands the rules of discipline (*Vinaya*), and is well known to all who know, collect the *Vinaya-piṭaka*; and I, Kāśyapa, will collect the *Abhidharma-piṭaka*." The three months of rain 65 being past, the collection of the *Tripiṭaka* was finished. As the great Kāśyapa was the president (*Sthavira*) among the priests, it is called the Sthavira (*Chang-tso-pu*) convocation. 66

North-west of the place where the great Kāśyapa held the convocation is a *stūpa*. This is where Ānanda, being forbidden by the priests to take part in the assembly, came and sat down in silence and reached the fruit (*position*) of an Arhat. After this he joined the assembly.

Going west from this point 20 li or so, is a *stūpa* built by Aśoka-rāja. This is the spot where the "great assembly" (*Mahāsaṅgha*) formed their collection of books (or, held their assembly). Those who had not been permitted to join Kāśyapa's assembly, whether learners or those above learning (*Arhats*), to the number of 100,000 men, came together to this spot and said, "Whilst Tathāgata was alive we all had a common master, but now the King of the Law is dead it is different. We too wish to show our gratitude to Buddha, and we also will hold an assembly for collecting the scriptures." On this the common folk with the holy disciples came to the assembly (*all assembled*), the foolish and wise alike flocked together and collected the *Sūtra-piṭaka*, the *Vinaya-piṭaka*, the *Abhidharma-piṭaka*, the miscellaneous *Piṭaka* (*Khuddakanikāya*), 67 and

64 Chanting or rehearsing, *saṅgiti*.  
65 Or, the second "three months."  
66 It is to be noted that the season of *Wass* was twofold, either the first "three months," or, the second "three months."  
67 Or perhaps the *Sannipāta-nikāya*.  
68 This is contrary to the usual explanation, which makes the Sthavira school date from the second convocation at Vaiśāli.
the Dhārani-piṭaka. Thus they distinguished five Piṭakas. And because in this assembly both common folk and holy personages were mixed together, it was called “the assembly of the great congregation” (Mahāsaṅgha).

To the north of the Venuvana Vihāra about 200 paces we come to the Karandā lake (Karandaharada). When Tathāgata was in the world he preached often here. The water was pure and clear, and possessed of the eight qualities. After the Nirvāṇa of Buddha it dried up and disappeared.

To the north-west of the Karandahrada, at a distance of 2 or 3 li, is a stūpa which was built by Aśoka-rāja. It is about 60 feet high; by the side of it is a stone pillar on which is a record engraved relating to the foundation of the stūpa. It is about 50 feet high, and on the top has the figure of an elephant.

To the north-east of the stone pillar, not far, we come to the town of Rājagrīha (Ho-lo-shi-ki-li-hi). The outer walls of this city have been destroyed, and there are no remnants of them left; the inner city (walls), although in a ruined state, still have some elevation from the ground, and are about 20 li in circuit. In the first case, Bimbisāra-rāja established his residence in Kuśāgāra; in this place the houses of the people, being close together, were frequently burned with fire and destroyed. When one house was in flames, it was impossible to prevent the whole neighbourhood sharing in the calamity, and consequently the whole was burned up. Then the people made loud complaints, and were unable to rest quietly in their dwellings. The king said, “By my demerit the lower people are afflicted;

68 This account, too, differs from the common tradition, which makes this school of the great assembly date from the schism at Vaiśālī. The statement, however, of Huien Tsang, that the additional piṭakas were collated at this assembly is a useful and suggestive one.

69 For the eight qualities of water see J. R. A. S., vol. ii. pp. 1, 141.

70 “The royal abode” (Wang she). This is what Fa-hian calls “the new city.” It was to the north of the mountains.

71 That is, the walls of the royal precincts or the citadel.
what deed of goodness (meritorious virtue) can I do in order to be exempt from such calamities?” His ministers said, “Mahârâja, your virtuous government spreads peace and harmony, your righteous rule causes light and progress. It is by want of due attention on the part of the people that these calamities of fire occur. It is necessary to make a severe law to prevent such occurrences hereafter. If a fire breaks out, the origin must be diligently sought for, and to punish the principal guilty person, let him be driven into the cold forest. Now this cold forest (âttavana) is the place of corpses abandoned (cast out) there. Every one esteems it an unlucky place, and the people of the land avoid going there and passing through it. Let him be banished there as a cast-out corpse. From dread of this fate, the people will become careful and guard (against the outbreak of fire).” The king said, “It is well; let this announcement be made, and let the people attend to it.”

And now it happened that the king’s palace was the first to be burned with fire. Then he said to his ministers, “I myself must be banished;” and he gave up the government to his eldest son in his own place. “I wish to maintain the laws of the country (he said); I therefore myself am going into exile.”

At this time the king of Vâisâlî hearing that Bimbisâra-râja was dwelling alone in the “cold forest,” raised an army and put it in movement to invade (make a foray) when nothing was ready (to resist him). The lords of the marches (frontiers), hearing of it, built a town,72 and as the king was the first to inhabit it, it was called “the royal city” (Râjagrîha). Then the ministers and the people all flocked there with their families.

It is also said that Ajâtaâstru-râja first founded this

---

72 That is, as it seems, in the place where the king was living. From this it would appear that the site of the new town of Râjagrîha, had been before used as a burial-place for the people of the “old town.”
city, and the heir-apparent of Ajātashatru having come to the throne, he also appointed it to be the capital, and so it continued till the time of Asoka-rāja, who changed the capital to Pātaliputra, and gave the city of Rājagriha to the Brāhmaṇs, so that now in the city there are no common folk to be seen, but only Brāhmaṇs to the number of a thousand families.

At the south-west angle of the royal precincts³⁸ are two small saṅghārāmas; the priests who come and go, and are strangers in the place, lodge here. Here also Buddha, when alive, delivered the law (preached). Northwest from this is a stūpa; this is the site of an old village where the householder Jyotishka⁷⁴ (Ch'ü-ti-se-kia) was born.

Outside the south gate of the city, on the left of the road, is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata preached and converted Rāhula (Lo-hu-lo).⁷⁵

Going north from this 30 li or so, we come to Nālanda saṅghārāma.⁷⁶ The old accounts of the country say that to the south of this saṅghārāma, in the middle of an Ámra ('An-mo-lo) grove, there is a tank. The Nāga of this tank is called Nālanda.⁷⁷ By the side of it is built the saṅghārāma, which therefore takes the name (of the Nāga). But the truth is that Tathāgata in old days practised the life of a Bōdhisattva here, and became the king of a great country, and established his capital in this land. Moved by pity for living things, he delighted in continually relieving them. In remembrance of this virtue he was called "charity without intermission;" and the saṅg-

---
³⁸ I.e., of the inner city of Rājagriha.
⁷⁴ In Chinese Sing lih, "constellation" or "star collection."
⁷⁵ If this Lo-hu-lo be the son of Buddha, his conversion is generally stated to have occurred at Kapilavastu (Manual of Buddhism, p. 206).
⁷⁶ Nālanda has been identified with the village of Baragaon, which lies seven miles north of Rājgrīha (Cunningham, Anc. Geo., p. 468).
⁷⁸ So I understand the passage.
hārāma was called in perpetuation of this name. The site was originally an Āmra garden. Five hundred merchants bought it for ten kōtis of gold pieces and gave it to Buddha. Buddha preached the law here during three months, and the merchants and others obtained the fruit of holiness. Not long after the Nirvāṇa of Buddha, a former king of this country named Śakrāditya (Shi-kia-lo'-o-t'ie-to) respected and esteemed the (system of the) one Vehicle, and honoured very highly the three treasures. Having selected by augury a lucky spot, he built this saṅghārāma. When he began the work he wounded, in digging, the body of the Nāga. At this time there was a distinguished soothsayer belonging to the heretical sect of the Nirgranthas. He having seen the occurrence, left this record: "This is a very superior site. If you build here a saṅghārāma, it must of necessity become highly renowned. Throughout the five Indies it will be a model. For a period of a thousand years it will flourish still. Students of all degrees will here easily accomplish their studies. But many will spit blood because of this wound given to the Nāga."

His son, Buddhagupta-rāja (Fo-t’o-kio-to), who succeeded him, continued to labour at the excellent undertaking of his father. To the south of this he built another saṅghārāma.

Tathāgatagupta-rāja (Ta-tha-kie-to-kio-lo) vigorously practised the former rules (of his ancestors), and he built east from this another saṅghārāma.

Balāditya-rāja (P’o-lo-o-tie-lo) succeeded to the empire. On the north-east side he built a saṅghārāma.

It has no reference to the Nāga. The word Nālanda would thus appear to be derived from na + alaman + da, "not giving enough," or "not having enough to give."

The "one Vehicle," according to the authority quoted by Julien (n. 2 in loco) is "the vehicle of Buddha, which is compared to a car formed of seven precious substances, and drawn by a white ox." But the expression, "one Vehicle," is a common one in later Buddhist books to denote the nature of Buddha, to which we all belong, and to which we all shall return.

Triratnāṇī—Buddha, dharma, saṅgha.
The work being done, he called together an assembly for congratulation. He respected equally the obscure and the renowned, and invited common folk and men of religion (holiness) without distinction. The priests of all India came together for the distance of 10,000 li. After all were seated and at rest, two priests arrived. They led them up the three-storeyed pavilion. Then they asked them, saying, "The king, when about to call the assembly, first asked men of all degrees (common and holy). From what quarter do your reverences come so late?" They said, "We are from the country of China. Our teacher was sick. Having nourished him, we set out to accept the king's far-off invitation. This is the reason why we have arrived so late."

The assembly hearing this, were filled with astonishment, and proceeded at once to inform the king. The king knowing that they were holy persons, went himself to interrogate them. He mounted the pavilion, but he knew not where they had gone. The king then was affected by a profound faith; he gave up his country and became a recluse. Having done so, he placed himself as the lowest of the priests, but his heart was always uneasy and ill at rest. "Formerly (he said) I was a king, and the highest among the honourable; but now I have become a recluse, I am degraded to the bottom of the priesthood." Fortwith he went to the priests, and said words to the above effect. On this the saṅgha resolved that they who had not received the full orders should be classed according to their natural years of life. This saṅghārāma is the only one in which this law exists.

81 It is true the symbol shang in this phrase is not the same as that forming the second member of the word ho-shang (upādhyāya), but they are the same in sound, and therefore I think ho-shang in the text should be translated "teacher."
82 That is, the invitation coming from a long distance.
83 That is, he ascended the pavilion with three stages where the strangers from China had been received; but when he arrived he found they had departed.
84 The usual order was that they should be classed according to the number of years they had been "professed disciples;" but in the convent of Baladītya the order was that they should be classed accord-
This king's son, called Vajra (Fa-she-lo), came to the throne in succession, and was possessed of a heart firm in the faith. He again built on the west side of the convent a saṅghārāma.

After this a king of Central India built to the north of this a great saṅghārāma. Moreover, he built round these edifices a high wall with one gate. A long succession of kings continued the work of building, using all the skill of the sculptor, till the whole is truly marvellous to behold. The king said, "In the hall of the monarch who first began the saṅghārāma I will place a figure of Buddha, and I will feed forty priests of the congregation every day to show my gratitude to the founder."

The priests, to the number of several thousands, are men of the highest ability and talent. Their distinction is very great at the present time, and there are many hundreds whose fame has rapidly spread through distant regions. Their conduct is pure and unblamable. They follow in sincerity the precepts of the moral law. The rules of this convent are severe, and all the priests are bound to observe them. The countries of India respect them and follow them. The day is not sufficient for asking and answering profound questions. From morning till night they engage in discussion; the old and the young mutually help one another. Those who cannot discuss questions out of the Tripitaka are little esteemed, and are obliged to hide themselves for shame. Learned men from different cities, on this account, who desire to acquire quickly a renown in discussion, come here in multitudes to settle their doubts, and then the streams (of their wisdom) spread far and wide. For this reason some persons usurp the name (of Nalanda students), and in going to and fro receive honour in consequence. If men ing to their natural age, up to the time of their full ordination. The king, although he had become a disciple, was not fully ordained. But it is not said what king. The symbol, too, is ti, not wang. Is Śilāḍitya referred to? He was not to take the name of wang or ta wong (see vol. i. p. 213 n. 21).
of other quarters desire to enter and take part in the discussions, the keeper of the gate proposes some hard questions; many are unable to answer, and retire. One must have studied deeply both old and new (books) before getting admission. Those students, therefore, who come here as strangers, have to show their ability by hard discussion; those who fail compared with those who succeed are as seven or eight to ten. The other two or three of moderate talent, when they come to discuss in turn in the assembly, are sure to be humbled, and to forfeit their renown. But with respect to those of conspicuous talent of solid learning, great ability, illustrious virtue, distinguished men, these connect (their high names) with the succession (of celebrities belonging to the college) such as Dharmapâla (Hu-fa) 87 and Chandrapâla (Hu-yueh), 88 who excited by their bequeathed teaching the thoughtless and worldly; Guṇamati (Tih-hwui) 89 and Sthiramati (Kinhwui), 90 the streams of whose superior teaching spread abroad even now; Prabhamitra (Kwang-yeu), 91 with his clear discourses; Jinamitra (Shing-yeu), 92 with his exalted eloquence; the pattern and fame (sayings and doings) of Jñānachandra (Chi-yueh) 93 reflect his brilliant activity; Śīrabuddha (?) (Ming-min), and Śīlabhadra (Kiaihien), 94 and other eminent men whose names are lost. These illustrious personages, known to all, excelled in their attainments (virtue) all their distinguished predecessors, and passed the bounds of the ancients in their learning. Each of these composed some tens of treaties and commentaries

88 See Vassiliev; Max Müller, India, p. 311.
89 Max Müller, India, p. 305 and n., pp. 309–310 n., p. 362.
91 Po-lo-pho-mi-to-lo of Central India, by caste a Kshattriya. He reached China in A.D. 627, and died in 633 at the age of sixty-nine (Beal, Abs. Four. Lect., p. 28; Max Müller, Ind., p. 312).
92 Eitel, p. 37.
93 Max Müller, Ind., pp. 312–361; Eitel, Dîññhatacandra.
94 The favourite teacher of Huen Tsang. Vie, pp. 144, 212, 215, 225; Max Müller, India, pp. 310, 343; Eitel, s. v.
which were widely diffused, and which for their perspicuity are passed down to the present time.

The sacred relics on the four sides of the convent are hundreds in number. For brevity's sake we will recount two or three. On the western side of the saṅghārāma, at no great distance, is a vihāra. Here Tathāgata in old days stopped for three months and largely expounded the excellent law for the good of the Dēvas.

To the south 100 paces or so is a small stūpa. This is the place where a Bhikshu from a distant region saw Buddha. Formerly there was a Bhikshu who came from a distant region. Arriving at this spot, he met the multitude of disciples accompanying Buddha, and was affected inwardly with a feeling of reverence, and so prostrated himself on the ground, at the same time uttering a strong desire that he might obtain the position of a Chakravartī monarch. Tathāgata having seen him, spoke to his followers thus: "That Bhikshu ought much to be pitied. The power (character) of his religious merit is deep and distant; his faith is strong. If he were to seek the fruit of Buddha, not long hence he would obtain it; but now that he has earnestly prayed to become a Chakravartī king, he will in future ages receive this reward: as many grains of dust as there are from the spot where he has thrown himself on the earth down to the very middle of the gold wheel, so many Chakravartī kings will there be for reward; but having fixed his mind on earthly joys, the fruit of holiness is far off."

On this southern side is a standing figure of Kwantsz'-tsai (Avalokitēśvara) Bōdhisattva. Sometimes he is seen holding a vessel of perfume going to the vihāra of Buddha and turning round to the right.

95 This is the literal meaning of the symbols. Julien translates, "he has a profound virtue." It may mean that his religious merit, though deep, will have but a distant reward.

96 I.e., to the middle of the earth where the gold wheel is.

97 I.e., so many times will he be a Chakravartī king.

98 This seems to explain the words "deep and distant." See above n. 95.
To the south of this statue is a stūpa, in which are remains of Buddha’s hair and nails cut during three months. Those persons afflicted with children’s complaints, coming here and turning round religiously, are mostly healed.

To the west of this, outside the wall, and by the side of a tank, is a stūpa. This is where a heretic, holding a sparrow in his hand, asked Buddha questions relating to death and birth.

To the south-east about 50 paces, within the walls, is an extraordinary tree, about eight or nine feet in height, of which the trunk is twofold. When Tathāgata of old time was in the world, he flung his tooth-cleaner (dantakāshṭha) on the ground here, where it took root. Although many months and years have elapsed since then, the tree neither decreases nor increases.

Next to the east there is a great vihāra about 200 feet in height. Here Tathāgata, residing for four months, explained various excellent laws.

After this, to the north 100 paces or so, is a vihāra in which is a figure of Kwan-tsz-tsai Bōdhisattva. The disciples of pure faith, who offer their religious gifts, do not all see the place he occupies alike; it is not fixed. Sometimes he (i.e., the figure) seems to be standing by the side of the door; sometimes he goes out in front of the eaves. Religious people, both clerics and laics, from all parts come together in numbers to offer their gifts.

To the north of this vihāra is a great vihāra, in height about 300 feet, which was built by Balâditya-rāja (Po-lo-o-tie-to-wang). With respect to its magnificence,
its dimensions, and the statue of Buddha placed in it, it resembles (is the same as) the great vihāra built under the Bödhi tree. 102

To the north-east of this is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata in days gone by explained the excellent law for seven days.

To the north-west is a place where the four past Buddhhas sat down.

To the south of this is a vihāra of brass 102 built by Śilāditya-rāja. Although it is not yet finished, yet its intended measurement, when finished (to plan), will be 100 feet. 104

Next to the eastward 200 paces or so, outside the walls, is a figure of Buddha standing upright and made of copper. Its height is about 80 feet. A pavilion of six stages is required to cover it. It was formerly made by Pūrṇavarma-rāja (Mwan-cheu).

To the north of this statue 2 or 3 li, in a vihāra constructed of brick, is a figure of Tāra Bödhisattva (Tol-ło-p’u-sa). This figure is of great height, and its spiritual appearance very striking. Every fast-day of the year large offerings are made to it. The kings and ministers and great people of the neighbouring countries offer exquisite perfumes and flowers, holding gem-covered flags

102 This is the great vihāra supposed to have been built by Amarasêva. With respect to this and the whole subject, the controversies and theories respecting its date, see Dr. Rajendralal Mitra’s work on the stūpas at Buddha Gayā.

103 Yu-shih, “calamine stone, used in the formation of brass” (Medhurst). There is much confusion in the use of the symbols teou shí and yu shí. The former is explained by Medhurst (sub voc. t’höw) “as a kind of stone resembling metal, which the Chinese call the finest kind of native copper. It is found in the Posse country and resembles gold. On the application of fire it assumes a red colour, and does not turn black.” But yu shí (which seems to be intended in the passage in the text, although Julien renders it theou chi) is explained by Medhurst (sub voc. shih) to be “calamine stone, used in the formation of brass.” The calamine stone is the cadmia of Pliny—“fit et e lapide ceroso, quem vocant cadmiam” (vol. ii. cap. xxxiv. § 2). Cadmus is fabled to have discovered its use in the composition of brass, and hence the name. It may be called calamine from its place of exportation, Calamina, at the mouth of the Indus; hence the Chinese say it comes from Po-sse. Brass being capable of being rolled into thin sheets (latten or Dutch metal), might easily be used in covering the walls of a building. It was so used probably by Śilāditya in the case under notice.

104 Not in height, but in length,
and canopies, whilst instruments of metal and stone resound in turns, mingled with the harmony of flutes and harps. These religious assemblies last for seven days.

Within the southern gate of the wall is a large well. Formerly, when Buddha was alive, a great company of merchants parched with thirst came here to the spot where Buddha was. The Lord of the World, pointing to this place, said, "You will find water there." The chief of the merchants, piercing the earth with the end of the axle of his cart, immediately water rushed out from the ground. Having drunk and heard the law, they all obtained the fruit of holiness.

Going south-west 8 or 9 li from the sanghārāma, we come to the village of Kulika (Kiu-li-kia). In it is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. This is where the venerable Mudgalaputra (Mo-te-kia-lo-tseu) was born. By the side of the village is a stūpa. This is where the Venerable One reached complete Nirvāṇa, and in it are placed the remains of his bequeathed body. The venerable (Mahāmudgalaputra) was of a great Brāhmaṇ family, and was an intimate friend of Śāriputra when they were young. This Śāriputra was renowned for the clearness of his dialectic skill; the other for his persevering and deep penetration. Their gifts and wisdom were alike, and moving or standing they were always together. Their aims and desires from beginning to end were just the same. They had together left the world from distaste to its pleasures, and as hermits had followed Saṅjaya (Shen-she-ye) as their master. Śāriputra having met Asvajita (Mashiing) the Arhat, hearing the law, understood its holy (meaning). On returning he repeated what he had

105 Literally, Nirvāṇa "without remains" (anupādāsa). For the meaning of this phrase consult Childers, Pali Dict., sub voc. Nibbānam. Julien renders it Parinirvāṇa.

106 For an account of these two disciples, see Fo-sho-king, varga 17. They are called Seriyut and Mugalan in Pāli,—Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 181.

107 "There was at this time in Rajagaha a famous paribrajika called Saṅga. To him they (Seriyut and Mugalan) went, and they remained with him some time."—Manual of Buddhism, p. 195.

108 Or, understood the holy one, i.e., Asvajita.
heard for the sake of the venerable (Mudgalaputra). On this he understood the meaning of the law and reached the first fruit. Then with 250 followers he went to the place where Buddha was. The Lord of the World, seeing him at a distance, pointing him out, said to his disciples, “That one coming here will be the first among my followers in the exercise of spiritual faculties (miraculous powers).” Having reached the place where Buddha was, he requested to enter the law (the society). The Lord replying, said, “Welcome, O Bhikshu; carefully practise a pure life; and you shall escape the limits of sorrow.” Hearing this his hair fell off, and his common robes were changed into others. Observing in their purity the sections of the rules of moral discipline, and being in his exterior behaviour faultless, after seven days, getting rid of all the bonds of sin, he reached the condition of an Arhat and the supernatural powers.

East of the old village of Mudgalaputra, going 3 or 4 li, we come to a stūpa. This is the place where Bimbisāra-rāja went to have an interview with Buddha. When Tathāgata first obtained the fruit of a Buddha, knowing that the hearts of the people of the Magadha were waiting for him athirst, he accepted the invitation of Bimbisāra-rāja, and early in the morning, putting on his robes, he took his begging-dish, and with a thousand Bhikshus around him, on the right hand and the left (he advanced). In front and behind these there were a number of aged Brāhmans who went with twisted hair (jālīna), and being desirous of the law, wore their dyed garments (chitvāra). Followed by such a throng, he entered the city of Rāja-grīha.

Then Lord Śakra (Ti-shih), king of Dēvas, changing his appearance into that of a Mānava (Ma-na-p’o) youth, with a crown upon his head and his hair bound up, in his left hand holding a golden pitcher and in his right a precious staff, he walked above the earth four fingers
high, leading Buddha along the road in front, in the midst of the vast assembly. Then the king of the Magadha country, Bimbisâra (Pin-pi-so-lo) by name, accompanied by all the Brâhman householders within the land, and the merchants (ku-sse), 100,000 myriads in all, going before and behind, leading and following, proceeded from the city of Râjagriha to meet and escort the holy congregation.

South-east from the spot where Bimbasâra-râja met Buddha, at a distance of about 20 li, we come to the town of Kâlapiñaka (Kia-lo-pi-na-kia). In this town is a stûpa which was built by Asoka-râja. This is the place where Śâriputra, the venerable one, was born. The well 111 of the place still exists. By the side of the place 112 is a stûpa. This is where the venerable one obtained Nirvâna; the relics of his body, therefore, are enshrined therein. He also was of a high Brâhman family. His father was a man of great learning and erudition; he penetrated thoroughly the most intricate questions. There were no books he had not thoroughly investigated. His wife had a dream and told it to her husband. “Last night,” said she, “during my sleep my dreams were troubled by a strange man 113 whose body was covered with armour; in his hand he held a diamond mace with which he broke the mountains; departing, he stood at the foot of one particular mountain.” “This dream,” the husband said, “is extremely good. You will bear a son of deep learning; he will be honoured in the world, and will attack the treatises of all the masters and break down their teaching (schools). Being led to consider, he will become the disciple of one who is more than human.” 114

111 This may also mean “the stone foundation.”
112 Julien says, “by the side of the well.” But refer to the account of Mudgalaputra’s birthplace. The original is “the well of the village,” not “of the house.”
113 By intercourse with a strange man.
114 This is an obscure sentence, but it seems to correspond with the dream of the man standing at the foot of a mountain. Buddha is constantly spoken of as “a mountain of gold;” and the expression puh ju yih jin, “not as one man,” seems to allude to the superhuman character of Śâriputra’s future teacher.
And so in due course she conceived a child. All at once she was greatly enlightened. She discoursed in high and powerful language, and her words were not to be overthrown. When the venerable one began to be eight years old, his reputation was spread in every direction. His natural disposition was pure and simple, his heart loving and compassionate. He broke through all impediments in his way, and perfected his wisdom. He formed a friendship when young with Mudgalaputra, and being deeply disgusted with the world, and having no system to adopt as a refuge, he went with Mudgalaputra to the heretic Sanjaya's abode, and practised (his mode of salvation). Then they said together, "This is not the system of final deliverance, nor is it able to rescue us from the trammels of sorrow. Let us each seek for an illustrious guide. He who first obtains sweet dew, let him make the taste common to the other."

At this time the great Arhat Aśvajita, holding in his hand his proper measure bowl (pātra), was entering the city begging for food.

Sāriputra seeing his dignified exterior and his quiet and becoming manner, forthwith asked him, "Who is your master?" He answered, "The prince of the Śākya tribe, disgusted with the world, becoming a hermit, has reached perfect wisdom. This one is my master." Sāriputra added, "And what doctrine does he teach? May I find a way to hear it?" He said, "I have but just received instruction, and have not yet penetrated the deep doctrine." Sāriputra said, "Pray tell me (repeat) what you have heard." Then Aśvajita, so far as he could, explained it and spoke. Sāriputra having heard it, immediately

On the other hand, Julien translates it, "there will not be a greater honour for a man than to become his disciple;" or, "nothing will be considered so great an honour to a man as to become his disciple," and this perhaps is the meaning of the passage.

115 "The highest" or "absolute truth."
116 That is, "the water of immortality;" the doctrine of Buddha.
117 I.e., let him communicate the knowledge of that system of salvation (sweet dew).
reached the first fruit, and went forthwith with 250 of his followers, to the place where Buddha was dwelling.

The Lord of the World, seeing him afar off, pointing to him and addressing his followers, said, “Yonder comes one who will be most distinguished for wisdom among my disciples.” Having reached the place, he bent his head in worship and asked to be permitted to follow the teaching of Buddha. The Lord said to him, “Welcome, O Bhikshu.”

Having heard these words, he was forthwith ordained.\(^{118}\) Half a month after, hearing Buddha preach the law on account of a Brâhman\(^{119}\) called “Long-nails” (Dtrghanakha), together with other discourses,\(^{120}\) and understanding them with a lively emotion, he obtained the fruit of an Arhat. After this, Ānanda hearing Buddha speak about his Nirvāṇa, it was noised abroad and talked about (by the disciples). Each one was affected with grief. Śāriputra was doubly touched with sorrow, and could not endure the thought of seeing Buddha die. Accordingly, he asked the Lord that he might die first. The lord said, “Take advantage of your opportunity.”

He then bade adieu to the disciples and came to his native village. His followers, the Śrāmanēras, spread the news everywhere through the towns and villages. Ajātaśatru-rāja and his people hastened together as the wind, and assembled in clouds to the assembly, whilst Śāriputra repeated at large the teaching of the law. Having heard it, they went away. In the middle of the following night, with fixed (correct) thought, and mind restrained, he entered the Samādhi called “final extinction.” After awhile, having risen out of it, he died.

\(^{118}\) Admitted to undertake the duties of the moral code of discipline.

\(^{119}\) This Brāhman or Brahmacārīn (ch'ang-chao-fan-chi) is well known, as there is a work called Dtrghanakha pariśrājaka pariśrīchchha (Jal. note in loc.)

\(^{120}\) Or, the end of the discourse; but the symbol chu generally means “the rest.”
Four or five li to the south-east of the town Kālapinākā is a stūpa. This is the spot where a disciple of Śāriputra reached Nirvāṇa. It is otherwise said, "When Kāśyapa Buddha was in the world, then three kōtis of great Arhats entered the condition of complete Nirvāṇa in this place."

Going 30 li or so to the east of this last-named stūpa, we come to Indrśailaguhā mountain (In-t’o-lo-shi-lo-kia-ho-shan). The precipices and valleys of this mountain are dark and gloomy. Flowering trees grow thickly together like forests. The summit has two peaks, which rise up sharply and by themselves. On the south side of the western peak between the crags is a great stone house, wide but not high. Here Tathāgata in old time was stopping when Śakra, king of Dēvas, wrote on the stone matters relating to forty-two doubts which he had, and asked Buddha respecting them.

Then Buddha explained the matters. The traces of these figures still exist.Persons now try to imitate by comparison these ancient holy figures (figure forms).

121 For some remarks on Kālapinākā, see Fa-hian (Beal’s edition), p. III, n. 2.
122 "The-cavern.-of-Indra mountain." The "rocky hill standing by itself," named by Fa-hian, chap. xxviii., has been identified by General Cunningham (Arch. Survey, vol. i. p. 18) with the western peak of this hill. The northern range of hills, that stretch from the neighbourhood of Gayā to the bank of the Pañchāna river, a distance of about thirty-six miles, end abruptly in two lofty peaks; the higher of the two on the west is called Giryek. This is the one referred to by Fa-hian. (See Cunningham, Arch. Survey, vol. i. pp. 16, 17, and vol. iii. p. 150.)
123 Julien has omitted the symbol for west.
124 Now called Gidha-dwar; in Sanskrit, Gṛthdhradwāra, "the vulture’s opening."
125 That is, at it seems, he drew certain figures or letters on the stone, and asked Buddha to explain some difficulties he had as to the subject of these figures. These forty-two difficulties have no reference to the Book of Forty-two Sections.
126 This translation appears to me the only justifiable one. Julien has, "Now there is a statue there which resembles the ancient image of the saint (i.e., of the Buddha)." But if the symbol ts’a (this) be taken for the adverb "here," the natural translation would be: "Now there are here figures in imitation of these ancient sacred symbols or marks." The only doubt is whether ts’a sian, "these marks or figures," or "the figures here," be not an error for "Fo-sian," "the figure of Buddha," which occurs a little farther on.
Those who enter the cave to worship are seized with a sort of religious trepidation.

On the top of the mountain ridge are traces where the four former Buddhas sat and walked, still remaining. On the top of the eastern peak is a saṅghārāma; the common account is this: when the priests who dwell here look across in the middle of the night at the western peak, where the stone chamber is, they see before the image of Buddha lamps and torches constantly burning.

Before the saṅghārāma on the eastern peak of the Indraśailaguḥā mountain is a stūpa which is called Haṁsa (Keng-sha). Formerly the priests of this saṅghārāma studied the doctrine of the Little Vehicle, that is, the Little Vehicle of the “gradual doctrine.” They allowed therefore the use of the three pure articles of food, and they followed this rule without fail. Now afterwards, when it was not time to seek for the three pure articles of food, there was a Bhikshu who was walking up and down; suddenly he saw a flock of wild geese flying over him in the air. Then he said in a jocose way, “To-day the congregation of priests has not food sufficient, Mahāsattvas! now is your opportunity.” No sooner had he finished, than a goose, stopping its flight, fell down before the priest and died. The Bhikshu having seen this, told it to the priests, who, hearing it, were affected with pity, and said one to the other, “Tathāgata framed his law as a guide and en-

127 Keng-so-kia-lan, in Chinese Keng-sha. The lower peak on the east is crowned with a solid tower of brickwork, well known as Jāra-sandha-ka-baithak, or “Jārasandha’s throne.” This tower, the ruins of which still exist, is probably the stūpa alluded to in the text (comp. Cunningham, *Arch. Survey*, i. 19). But I am at a loss how to explain General Cunningham’s remark (*Arch. Survey*, iii. 141), that “close to the hot springs on the north-east slope of the Baibhār hill there is a massive foundation of a stone house 83 feet square, called Jarā-sandha-ka-baithak, or “Jārasandha’s throne.” This is explained, however, in Fergusson and Burgess’ *Cave Temples of India*, by the statement that there are two sites so named.

128 The advanced doctrine of the Little Vehicle (Hinayāna); compare Julien’s note, tome i. p. 3.
couragement (suitable to) the powers (springs) of each person; now we, following ‘the gradual doctrine,’ are using a foolish guide. The Great Vehicle is the true doctrine. We ought to change our former practice, and follow more closely the sacred directions. This goose falling down is, in truth, a true lesson for us, and we ought to make known its virtue by handing down the story to other ages, the most distant.” On this they built a stūpa to hand down to future ages the action they had witnessed, and they buried the dead goose beneath it.

Going 150 or 160 li to the north-east of the Indra-śila-guha mountain, we come to the Kapòtika (pigeon) convent. There are about 200 priests, who study the principles of the Sarvâstivâda school of Buddhism.

To the east is a stūpa which was built by Aśoka-râja. Formerly Buddha residing in this place, declared the law for one night to the great congregation. At this time there was a bird-catcher who was laying his snares for the feathered tribe in this wood. Having caught nothing for a whole day, he spoke thus, “My bad luck to-day is owing to a trick somewhere.” Therefore he came to the place where Buddha was, and said in a high voice, “Your speaking the law to-day, O Tathâgata, has caused me to catch nothing in all my nets. My wife and my children at home are hungry; what expedient shall I try to help them?” Then Tathâgata replied, “If you will light a fire, I will give you something to eat.”

Then Tathâgata made to appear a large dove, which fell in the fire and died. Then the bird-catcher taking it, carried it to his wife and children, and they ate it

129 I.e., Buddha’s law was intended to be adapted to circumstances.
130 This Kapòtika (pigeon) convent is identified by General Cunningham with the village of Par-bati, just 10 miles to the north-east of Giriyek. This would require us to change the 150 or 160 li of Hiuen Tsang into 50 or 60.
together. Then he went back to the place where Buddha was, on which, by the use of expedients, he framed his discourse so as to convert the bird-catcher. Having heard the discourse, he repented of his fault and was renewed in heart. Then he left his home, and practising wisdom, reached the holy fruit, and because of this the saṅghārāma was called Kapôtika.

To the south of this 2 or 3 li we come to a solitary hill,¹³¹ which is of great height, and covered with forests and jungle. Celebrated flowers and pure fountains of water cover its sides and flow through its hollows. On this hill are many vihāras and religious shrines, sculptured with the highest art. In the exact middle of the vihāra is a figure of Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bôdhisattva. Although it is of small size, yet its spiritual appearance is of an affecting character. In its hand it holds a lotus flower; on its head is a figure of Buddha.

There are always a number of persons here who abstain from food desiring to obtain a view of the Bôdhisattva. For seven days, and fourteen days, and even for a whole month (do they fast). Those who are properly affected see this Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bôdhisattva with its beautiful ¹³² marks, and thoroughly adorned with all its majesty and glory. It comes forth from the middle of the statue, and addresses kind words to these men.

In old days the king of the Simhala country, in the

¹³¹ This solitary hill is supposed to be "the hill standing by itself," named by Fa-hian (Cunningham, Reports, vol. xv. p. 7). Dr. Ferguson, on the other hand, identifies the hill of Behar with that site (J. R. A. S. N.S., vol. vi. p. 229), and this hill with the Shēkhpura range (ibid., p. 232).

¹³² One form of the worship of Kwan-yin will probably be found to have been derived from the Persian Anaitis or Anahita; the descriptions given of each are too similar to be attributed to accident. Especially on this point of "beauty" compare Sacred Books of the East, vol. xxiii. p. 82; also Bunyi Nanjio, Catalogue of Jap. and Chin. Books lately added to the Bodleian, col. 7, to show that Kwan-yin is identified with "pure water." Note also Edkin's Chinese Buddhism, p. 262, "Kwan-yin from beyond the sea." The description of Anahita's dress in the Abûn Yast (S. B. E., vol. xxiii.), §§ 126-131, corresponds with the representations in the Liturgy of Kwan-yin. The subject is too copious for a note.
early morning reflecting his face in a mirror, was not able to see himself, but he saw in the middle of a Tàla wood, on the top of a little mountain in the Magadha country of Jambudvîpa, a figure of this Bôdhisattva. The king, deeply affected at the benevolent appearance of the figure, diligently searched after it. Having come to this mountain, he found in fact a figure resembling the one he had seen. On this he built a vihâra and offered to it religious gifts. After this the king still recollecting the fame of the circumstance, according to his example, built vihâras and spiritual shrines. Flowers and incense with the sound of music are constantly offered here.

Going south-east from this shrine on the solitary mountain about 40 li, we come to a convent with about fifty priests, who study the teaching of the Little Vehicle. Before the saṅghârâma is a great stûpa, where many miracles are displayed. Here Buddha in former days preached for Brahma-đêva’s sake and others during seven days. By the side of it are traces where the three Buddhas of the past age sat and walked. To the north-east of the saṅghârâma about 70 li, on the south side of the Ganges river, we come to a large village, thickly populated. There are many Đêva temples here, all of them admirably adorned.

Not far to the south-east is a great stûpa. Here Buddha for a night preached the law. Going east from this we enter the desert mountains; and going 100 li or so, we come to the convent of the village of Lo-in-ni-lo.

Before this is a great stûpa which was built by Aśôka-

132 The worship of Kwan-yin as a mountain deity has been alluded to in the J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xv. pp. 333 f. I would remark here that it seems the worship of this deity was partly connected with Ceylon. The argument of the paper in the J. R. A. S. is to the same purport.

134 General Cunningham suggests the substitution of four li for forty. In that case the place indicated would be Apsar (see Arch. Survey, vol. xv. p. 10).

135 Both distance and direction point to the vicinity of Shekhpura (op. cit. p. 13).

136 Identified by Cunningham with Rajjâna. In Gladwin’s Ayin-Âkbari it is found under the form “Rowbenny,” which closely resembles the Chinese. Julien proposes Rôhinîla doubtfully. See also Fergusson (op. cit.), p. 233.
raja. Here Buddha formerly preached the law for three months. To the north of this 2 or 3 li is a large tank about 30 li round. During the four seasons of the year a lotus of each of the four colours opens its petals.

Going east we enter a great forest wild, and after 200 li or so we come to the country of I-lan-na-po-fa-to (Hiranyaparvata).
BOOK X.


I-LAN-NA-PO-FA-TO (HIRANYA-PARVATA).¹

This country is about 3000 li in circuit. The capital of the country is 20 li or so round, and is bounded on the north by the river Ganges.² It is regularly cultivated, and is rich in its produce. Flowers and fruits also are abundant. The climate is agreeable in its temperature. The manners of the people are simple and honest. There are ten saṅghārāmas, with about 4000 priests. Most of them study the Little Vehicle of the Sammatīya (Ching-liang-pu) school. There are some twelve Dēva temples, occupied by various sectaries.

¹ Hiranya-parvata, or the Golden Mountain, is identified by General Cunningham with the hill of Mongir. This hill (and the kingdom to which it gave its name) was from early date of considerable importance, as it commanded the land route between the hills and the river, as well as the water route by the Ganges. It is said to have been originally called Kashtaharana Parvata, as it overlooked the famous bathing-place on the Ganges called Kasṭaharana Ghāt, or “the pain-expelling bathing-place,” because all people afflicted with either grief or bodily pain were at once cured by bathing there. Cunningham remarks that “this name of Harana Parvata is clearly the original of Hwen Thaang’s I-lan-na-Pa-fo-to” (see the whole section, Arch. Survey of India, vol. xv. pp. 16, 17). The hill was also called Mudgalagiri. This may have originated the story of Mudgalaputra and the householder, Srutavimāśatīkṣṭi.

² There seems to be a confusion in the text. Literally it is, “The capital (hās) as a northern road or way the river Ganges.” There is a note in the original saying that the order is misprinted.
Lately the king of a border country deposed the ruler of this country, and holds in his power the capital. He is benevolent to the priests, and has built in the city two saṅghārāmas, each holding something less than 1000 priests. Both of them are attached to the Sarvāstivādin school of the Little Vehicle.

By the side of the capital and bordering on the Ganges river is the Hiraṇya (I-lan-na) mountain, from which is belched forth masses of smoke and vapour which obscure the light of the sun and moon. From old time till now Rishis and saints have come here in succession to repose their spirits. Now there is a Dēva temple here, in which they still follow their rules handed down to them. In old days Tathāgata also dwelt here, and for the sake of the Dēvas preached at large the excellent law.

To the south of the capital is a stūpa. Here Tathāgata preached for three months. By the side of it are traces of the three Buddhas of the past age, who sat and walked here.

To the west of this last-named spot, at no great distance, is a stūpa. This denotes the spot where the Bhikshu Śrutaviṃśatikōṭī (Shi-lu-to-p'in-she-ti-ku-chi) was born. Formerly there was in this town a rich householder (grīhapati), honoured and powerful. Late in life he had an heir born to his estate. Then he gave as a reward to the person who told him the news 200 lakhs of gold pieces. Hence the name given to his son was Śutraviṃ-

---

3 This translated into Chinese is Wen urh yik yih, that is, "hearing-two-hundred lakhs." The note adds that formerly it was translated by yih-urh, that is, laksha-karna. The reference in the story is to Sona Kolivisi, who, according to the Southern account, lived at Champa (see Sacred Books of the East, vol. xvii. p. 1). He is said to have been worth eighty cart-loads of gold, asiti-sakata-vīhe hirāṇṣam (op. cit., p. 13). But in the following section of the Mahāvagga (op. cit. 32) there is reference to another Sona called Kutiṇā, which Buddhaghōsha explains by saying that his ear-ornaments were worth a kōṭi; but Rhys Davids thinks this may be explained by his having pointed ears (p. 13, n. 3). It seems evident that the old form in Chinese, viz., yik urh, i.e., lakṣa-karṇa, refers to this Sona. The symbol yik is frequently used for kōṭi, in which case the translation would be kōṭi karṇa. Compare Cunningham's remarks about Rāja Karna (Arch. Surv., vol. xv. p. 16). Compare also Julien, tome ii. errata, p. 573, col. 1, line 16.
śatikôti (Wen-urh-pih-yih). From the time of his birth till he grew up his feet never touched the ground. For this reason there grew on the bottom of his feet hairs a foot long, shining and soft, and of a yellow gold colour. He loved this child tenderly, and procured for him objects of the rarest beauty. From his house to the Snowy Mountains he had established a succession of rest-houses from which his servants continually went from one to the other. Whatever valuable medicines were wanted, they communicated the same to each other in order, and so procured them without loss of time, so rich was this family. The world-honoured one, knowing the root of piety in this man was about to develop, ordered Mudgalaputra to go there and to instruct him. Having arrived outside the gate, he had no way to introduce himself (to pass through). Now the householder's family (or simply the householder) worshipped Sûrya-dëva. Every morning when the sun rose he turned towards it in adoration. At this time Mudgalaputra, by his spiritual power, caused himself to appear in the disc of the sun and to come down thence and stand in the interior. The householder's son took him to be Sûrya-dëva, and so offered him perfumed food (rice) and worshipped him. The scent of the rice, so exquisite was it, reached even to Râjagrîha. At this time Bimbisâra-râja, astonished at the wonderful perfume, sent messengers to ask from door to door whence it came. At length he found that it came from the Venuvana-vihâra, where Mudgalaputra had just arrived from the abode of the (rich) householder. The king finding out that the son of the householder had such miraculous (food), sent for him to come to court. The householder, receiving the order, considered with himself what was the easiest mode of transport; a galley (boat with banks of oars) is liable to accidents from wind and waves; a chariot is liable to accident from the frightened elephants

4 The symbol kisei, "to return," worship." The translation I have is probably a mistake for kwe, "to given differs from the French.
running away. On this he constructed from his own house to Rajagrīha a canal basin, and filled it full of mustard seed. Then placing gently on it a lordly boat furnished with ropes with which to draw it along, he went thus to Rajagrīha.

First going to pay his respects to the Lord of the World, he (i.e., Buddha) addressed him and said, “Bimbasāra-rāja has sent for you, no doubt desiring to see the hair beneath your feet. When the king desires to see it, you must sit cross legged with your feet turned up. If you stretch out your feet towards the king, the laws of the country exact death.”

The householder’s son, having received the instruction of Buddha, went. He was then led into the palace and presented (to the king). The king desiring to see the hair, he sat cross-legged with his feet turned up. The king, approving of his politeness, formed a great liking for him. Having paid his final respects, he then returned to the place where Buddha was.

Tathāgata at that time was preaching the law and teaching by parables. Hearing the discourse and being moved by it, his mind was opened, and he forthwith became a disciple. Then he applied himself with all his power to severe thought, with a view to obtain the fruit (of Arhatship). He walked incessantly up and down, until his feet were blood-stained.

The Lord of the World addressed him, saying, “You, dear youth, when living as a layman, did you know how to play the lute?” He said, “I knew.” “Well, then,”

---

5 In the Mahāvagga it is simply said, “and they carried Sona Kolivasa in a palanquin to Rajagriha” (S. B. E., xvii. 2).
6 This advice is given him by his parents in the Southern account. On the other hand, the visit of the eighty thousand overseers to Buddha and the miracles of Sāgata resulting in their conversion, are quite omitted here.
7 Walking up and down, thinking, is represented as a constant habit of the early Buddhist Sramaṇas (S. B. E., xvii. 17, n. 3). It is constantly referred to in Hiuen Tsiang, and the spots where the Buddhas had walked up and down appear to have been accounted sacred.
8 The viṣd, as in the Pāli.
said Buddha, "I will draw a comparison derived from this. The cords being too tight, then the sounds were not in cadence; when they were too loose, then the sounds had neither harmony nor charm; but when not tight and not slack, then the sounds were harmonious. So in the preparation for a religious life, the case is the same; too severe, then the body is wearied and the mind listless; too remiss, then the feelings are pampered and the will weakened." 9

Having received this instruction from Buddha, he moved round him in a respectful way, 10 and by these means he shortly obtained the fruit of Arhatship.

On the western frontier of the country, to the south of the river Ganges, we come to a small solitary mountain, with a double peak rising high. 11 Formerly Buddha in this place rested during the three months of rain, and subdued the Yaksha Vakula (Yo-c'ha Po-khu-lo). 12

Below a corner of the south-east side of the mountain is a great stone. On this are marks caused by Buddha sitting thereon. The marks are about an inch deep, five feet two inches long, and two feet one inch wide. Above them is built a stūpa.

Again to the south is the impression on a stone where Buddha set down his kiun-chi-kia (kundikā or water-vessel). In depth the lines are about an inch, and are like a flower with eight buds (or petals). 13

Not far to the south-east of this spot are the foot-traces of the Yaksha Vakula. They are about one foot five or

9 This comparison is found in the Sūtra of Forty-two Sections, No. xxxiii.
10 That is, keeping his right shoulder towards him (pradaksīna).
11 This mountain is identified by Cunningham with the hill of Mahādeva, which is situated east from the great irregular central mass of the Mongir hills (Arch. Surv., vol. xv. p. 19). Himen Tsiang does not appear himself to have visited this spot, as the symbol used is chi, not king. The passage might be translated, "there is a small solitary hill with successive crags heaped up." For an account of the neighbouring hot springs see Cunningham (op. cit. Appendix).
12 Vakula or Vakkula was also the name of a Sthavira, one of Buddha's disciples. Burnouf, Introd., p. 349; Lotus, pp. 2, 126.
13 Many of these marks or figures might probably be explained by a knowledge of the character of the rock formation. Buchanan describes the rock of Mahādeva as quartz or silicious hornstone.
six inches long, seven or eight inches wide, and in depth less than two inches. Behind these traces of the Yaksha is a stone figure of Buddha in sitting posture, about six or seven feet high.

Next, to the west, not far off, is a place where Buddha walked for exercise.

Above this mountain top is the old residence of the Yaksha.

Next, to the north is a foot-trace of Buddha, a foot and eight inches long, and perhaps six inches wide, and half an inch deep. Above it is a stūpa erected. Formerly when Buddha subdued the Yaksha, he commanded him not to kill men nor eat their flesh. Having respectfully received the law of Buddha, he was born in heaven.

To the west of this are six or seven hot springs. The water is exceedingly hot.¹⁴

To the south the country is bounded by great mountain forests in which are many wild elephants of great size.

Leaving this kingdom, going down the river Ganges, on its south bank eastwards, after 300 li or so, we come to the country of Chen-po (Champâ).

CHEN-PO (CHAMPÂ).¹⁵

This country (Champâ) is about 4000 li in circuit. The capital is backed to the north by the river Ganges, it is about 40 li round. The soil is level and fertile (fart

¹⁴ These springs as described by a recent visitor in the Pioneer, 17th August 1882 (see Cunningham, op. cit. Appendix); they are still so hot as to fill the valley with clouds of steam "like a cauldron."

or loamy); it is regularly cultivated and productive; the temperature is mild and warm (moderately hot); the manners of the people simple and honest. There are several tens of saṅghārāmas, mostly in ruins, with about 200 priests. They follow the teaching of the Little Vehicle. There are some twenty Dēva temples, which sectaries of every kind frequent. The walls of the capital are built of brick, and are several "tens of feet" high. The foundations of the wall are raised on a lofty embankment, so that by their high escarpment, they can defy (stop) the attack of enemies. In old times at the beginning of the kalpa, when things (men and things) first began, they (i.e., people) inhabited dens and caves of the desert. There was no knowledge of dwelling-houses. After this, a Dēvi (divine woman) descending in consequence of her previous conduct, was located amongst them. As she sported in the streams of the Ganges, she was affected by a spiritual power, and conceiving, she brought forth four sons, who divided between them the government of Jambudvīpa. Each took possession of a district, founded a capital, built towns, and marked out the limits of the frontiers. This was the capital of the country of one of them, and the first of all the cities of Jambudvīpa.

To the east of the city 140 or 150 li, on the south of the river Ganges, is a solitary detached rock,16 craggy and steep, and surrounded by water. On the top of the peak is a Dēva temple; the divine spirits exhibit many miracles (spiritual indications) here. By piercing the rock, houses have been made; by leading the streams (through each), there is a continual flow of water. There are wonderful trees (forming) flowering woods; the large rocks and dangerous precipices are the resort of men of

16 Either an islet or a detached rock. Cunningham identifies it with the picturesque rocky island opposite Pātharghāṭa with its temple-crowned summit (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 477). The same writer (Arch. Surv., vol. xv. p. 34) states, "Both bearing and distance point to the rocky hill of Kahalgoan (Kolong of the map), which is just 23 miles to the east of Bhāgalpur (Champā)."
wisdom and virtue; those who go there to see the place are reluctant to return.

In the midst of the desert wilts, that form the southern boundary of the country, are wild elephants and savage beasts that roam in herds.

From this country going eastwards 400 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Kie-chu-hoh-khi-lo (Kajughira).

**Kie-chu-hoh-khi-lo (Kajughira or Kajinghara).**

This kingdom is about 2000 li or so in circuit. The soil is level and loamy; it is regularly cultivated, and produces abundant crops; the temperature is warm; the people are simple in their habits. They greatly esteem men of high talent, and honour learning and the arts. There are six or seven saṅghārāmas with about 300 priests; and there are some ten Dēva temples frequented by sectaries of all sorts. During the last few centuries the royal line has died out, and the country has been ruled by a neighbouring state, so that the towns are desolate, and most of the people are found scattered in villages and hamlets. On this account, Śīlāditya-rāja, when roaming through Eastern India, built a palace in this place, in which he arranged the affairs of his different states. It was built of branches and boughs for a temporary residence, and burnt on his departure. On the southern frontiers of the country are many wild elephants.

On the northern frontiers, not far from the Ganges river, is a high and large tower made of bricks and stone. Its foundation, wide and lofty, is ornamented with rare

---

17 In a note we are told that the common pronunciation of this country is "Kie-ching-kie-lo." M. V. de St. Martin (Mémoire, p. 387) notices that in the Mahābhārata there is a country Kajingha named among the people of Eastern India; also in the Sinhalese Chronicles a town called Kajanghalé-Niyaāgamā, in the eastern region of Jambudvīpa. There is also a village called Kajēri marked in Rennell's map, just 92 miles (460 li) from Champa.
sculptures. On the four faces of the tower are sculptured figures of the saints, Dēvas, and Buddhas in separate compartments.

Going from this country eastward, and crossing the Ganges, after about 600 li we come to the kingdom of Pun-na-fa-tan-na (Puṇḍravarddhana).

**Pun-na-fa-tan-na (Puṇḍravarddhana).**

This country is about 4000 li in circuit. Its capital is about 30 li round. It is thickly populated. The tanks and public offices and flowering woods are regularly connected at intervals. The soil is flat and loamy, and rich in all kinds of grain-produce. The Panasa (Pan-na-so) fruit, though plentiful, is highly esteemed. The fruit is as large as a pumpkin. When it is ripe it is of a yellowish-red colour. When divided, it has in the middle many tens of little fruits of the size of a pigeon’s egg; breaking these, there comes forth a juice of a yellowish-red colour and of delicious flavour. The fruit sometimes collects on the tree-branches as other clustering fruits, but sometimes at the tree-roots, as in the case of the earth-growing fu ling. The climate (of this country) is temperate; the people

---

18 Prof. H. H. Wilson includes in the ancient Puṇḍra the districts of Rājāshāhī, Dinājpur, Raṅgpur, Nadiya, Bīrbhum, Barddwan, Mīdnapūr, Jangal Mahāls, Rāmqūd, Pachīt, Palaman, and part of Chūnār. It is the country of “sugar-cane,” puṇḍra, Bangāli puṇḍri-akh. The Puṇḍra people are frequently mentioned in Sanskrit literature, and Puṇḍravardddhana was evidently a portion of their country. Quart. Orient. Mag., vol. ii. p. 188; Viśāhu-pur., vol. ii. pp. 134, 170. Mr. Westmacott proposed to identify Puṇḍravardddhana with the adjacent pargāns or districts of Pāṇjāra and Borddhonkūṭtī (or Khēttāl) in Dinājpur, about 35 miles N.N.W. from Raṅgpur; but also suggested, as an alternative, Pōqdua or Pōdrowā, afterwards Firuzpur or Firuzābād, 6 miles northeast of Mālā, and 18 N.N.E. from Gauda. Mr. Fergusson assigned it a place near Raṅgpur. See Ind. Ant., vol. iii. p. 62; Hunter, Stat. Acc. Bengal, vol. viii. pp. 59 ff., 449; J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. vi. pp. 238 ff.; conf. Rāju-Taraśīgī, tom. iv. p. 421; Mahābha., ii. 1872. General Cunningham has more recently fixed on Mahāsthānagadha on the Karatoya, 12 miles south of Bardhankūṭī and 7 miles north of Baghra, as the site of the capital (Report, vol. xv. pp. v., 104, 110 f.)

19 This passage may also be translated thus: “Maritime offices (offices connected with the river navigation?) with their (surrounding) flowers and groves occur at regular intervals.”

20 Jack or bread fruit.

21 “A large and coarse squash.” Williams’ Tonic Dict., sub Ārād.

22 The radix China, according to
esteem learning. There are about twenty saṅghārāmas, with some 3000 priests; they study both the Little and Great Vehicle. There are some hundred Dēva temples, where sectaries of different schools congregate. The naked Nīgranthsas are the most numerous.

To the west of the capital 20 li or so is the Po-chi-p'o saṅghārama. Its courts are light and roomy; its towers and pavilions are very lofty. The priests are about 700 in number; they study the law according to the Great Vehicle. Many renowned priests from Eastern India dwell here.

Not far from this is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. Here Tathāgata, in old days, preached the law for three months for the sake of the Dēvas. Occasionally, on fast-days, there is a bright light visible around it.

By the side of this, again, is a place where the four past Buddhas walked for exercise and sat down. The bequeathed traces are still visible.

Not far from this there is a vihāra in which is a statue of Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bōdhisattva. Nothing is hid from its divine discernment; its spiritual perception is most accurate; men far and near consult (this being) with fasting and prayers.

From this going east 900 li or so, crossing the great river, we come to the country of Kia-mo-lu-po (Kāmarūpa).

KIA-MO-LU-PO (KĀMARŪPA).

The country of Kāmarūpa is about 10,000 li in circuit. The capital town is about 30 li. The land lies

Julien; the *pachyma coccus*, according to Doolittle’s *Vocabulary*, vol. ii. 423. Medhurst (sub voc. *ling*) names “the China root” which grows under old fir trees.

23 Julien restores this (with a query) to Vāśibhāsāṅghārama, “the convent which has the brightness of fire.”

low, but is rich, and is regularly cultivated. They cultivate the *Panasa* fruit and the *Na-lo-ki-lo* (Nārikēla) fruit. These trees, though numerous, are nevertheless much valued and esteemed. Water led from the river or from banked-up lakes (reservoirs) flows round the towns. The climate is soft and temperate. The manners of the people simple and honest. The men are of small stature, and their complexion a dark yellow. Their language differs a little from that of Mid-India. Their nature is very impetuous and wild; their memories are retentive, and they are earnest in study. They adore and sacrifice to the Dēvas, and have no faith in Buddha; hence from the time when Buddha appeared in the world even down to the present time there never as yet has been built one *saṅghārāma* as a place for the priests to assemble. Such disciples as there are of a pure faith, say their prayers (repeat the name of Buddha) secretly, and that is all. There are as many as 100 Dēva temples, and different sectaries to the number of several myriads. The present king belongs to the old line (*tso yan*) of Nārāyaṇa-dēva. He is of the Brāhmaṇ caste. His name is Bhāskara-varman, his title Kumāra (Keu-mo-lo). From the time that this family seized the land and assumed the government till the present king, there have elapsed a thousand successions (generations). The king is fond of learning, and the people are so likewise in imitation of him. Men of high talent from distant regions aspiring after office (?) visit his dominions as strangers. Though he has no faith in Buddha, yet he much respects Śramaṇas of learning. When he first heard that a Śramaṇa from China had come to Magadha to the Nālanda *saṅghārāma* from such a distance, to study with diligence the

---


25 The bread-fruit and the cocoa-nut.


27 The French translation is very confused. Julien appears to have overlooked the symbols *Chi-na-kwō* (the country of China).
profound law of Buddha, he sent a message of invitation by those who reported it as often as three times, but yet the Śramaṇa (i.e., Hiuem Tsiang) had not obeyed it. Then Śīlabhadra (Shi-lo-po-t’o-lo), master of śāstras, said, "You desire to show your gratitude to Buddha; then you should propagate the true law; this is your duty. You need not fear the long journey. Kumāra-rāja’s family respect the teaching of the heretics, and now he invites a Śramaṇa to visit him. This is good indeed! We judge from this that he is changing his principles, and desires to acquire merit (or, from merit acquired) to benefit others. You formerly conceived a great heart, and made a vow with yourself to travel alone through different lands regardless of life, to seek for the law for the good of the world. Forgetful of your own country, you should be ready to meet death; indifferent to renown or failure, you should labour to open the door for the spread of the holy doctrine, to lead onwards the crowds who are deceived by false teaching, to consider others first, yourself afterwards; forgetful of renown, to think only of religion (enlarge the law)."

On this, with no further excuses, he hastened in company with the messengers to present himself to the king. Kumāra-rāja said, "Although I am without talents myself, I have always been fond of men of conspicuous learning. Hearing, then, of your fame and distinction, I ventured to ask you here to visit me."

He replied, "I have only moderate wisdom, and I am confused to think that you should have heard of my poor reputation."

Kumāra-rāja said, "Well, indeed! from regard for the law and love of learning to regard oneself as of no account, and to travel abroad regardless of so great dangers, to wander through strange countries! This is the result of the transforming power of the king’s government, and the exceeding learning, as is reported, of the country. Now,

\[28\] To save all creatures (Jul.)
through the kingdoms of India there are many persons who sing about the victories of the Tsin king of the Mahâchina country. I have long heard of this. And is it true that this is your honourable birthplace?"

He said, "It is so. These songs celebrate the virtues of my sovereign."

He replied, "I could not think that your worthy self was of this country. I have ever had an esteem for its manners and laws. Long have I looked towards the east, but the intervening mountains and rivers have prevented me from personally visiting it."

In answer I said, "My great sovereign's holy qualities are far renowned, and the transforming power of his virtue reaches to remote districts. People from strange countries pay respect at the door of his palace, and call themselves his servants."

Kumâra-râja said, "If his dominion is so great (covering thus his subjects), my heart strongly desires to bear my tribute to his court. But now Śilâditya-râja is in the country of Kajâghira (Kie-chu-hoh-khi-lo), about to distribute large alms and to plant deeply the root of merit and wisdom. The Śramans and Brâhmans of the five Indies, renowned for their learning, must needs come together. He has now sent for me. I pray you go with me!"

On this they went together.

On the east this country is bounded by a line of hills. so that there is no great city (capital) to the kingdom. Their frontiers, therefore, are contiguous to the barbarians of the south-west (of China). These tribes are, in fact, akin to those of the Man²⁹ people in their customs. On inquiry I ascertained that after a two months' journey we reach the south-western frontiers of the province of Sz'chuen (Shuh). But the mountains and rivers present obstacles, and the pestilential air, the poisonous vapours,

²⁹ The 'Man people' (man lo) are the south-west barbarians (so named by the Chinese).
the fatal snakes, the destructive vegetation, all these causes of death prevail.

On the south-east of this country herds of wild elephants roam about in numbers; therefore, in this district they use them principally in war.

Going from this 1200 or 1300 li to the south, we come to the country of San-mo-ta-cha (Samatata).

San-mo-ta-cha (Samatata)

This country 30 is about 3000 li in circuit and borders on the great sea. The land lies low and is rich. The capital is about 20 li round. It is regularly cultivated, and is rich in crops, and the flowers and fruits grow everywhere. The climate is soft and the habits of the people agreeable. The men are hardy by nature, small of stature, and of black complexion; they are fond of learning, and exercise themselves diligently in the acquirement of it. There are professors (believers) both of false and true doctrines. There are thirty or so saṅghāråmas with about 2000 priests. They are all of the Sthāvira (Shang-tso-pu) school. There are some hundred Dēva temples, in which sectaries of all kinds live. The naked ascetics called Nirgranthas (Ni-kien) are most numerous.

Not far out of the city is a stūpa which was built by Asoka-rāja. In this place Tathāgata in former days preached the deep and mysterious law for seven days for the good of the Dēvas. By the side of it are traces where the four Buddhas sat and walked for exercise.

Not far from this, in a saṅghārama, is a figure of Buddha of green jade. It is eight feet high, with the marks on its person perfectly shown, and with a spiritual power which is exercised from time to time.

Going north-east from this to the borders of the

30 Eastern Bengal; Samōtaṭa or Samatata means "the shore country" or "level country" (Lassen Ind. Alt., iii. 681). It is named by Varāha Mihiya (Br. Samh., xiv. 6) along with Mithilā and Orissa.
ocean, we come to the kingdom of Śrīkṣhetra (Shi-lich'a-ta-lo).\textsuperscript{31}

Farther on to the south-east, on the borders of the ocean, we come to the country of Kāmalaṅkā (Kia-mo-lang-kia);\textsuperscript{32} still to the east is the kingdom of Dvārapati (To-lo-po-ti);\textsuperscript{33} still to the east is the country of Īsānapura (I-shang-na-pu-lo); still to the east is the country of Māhāchāmpa (Mo-ho-chen-po), which is the same as Lin-i. Next to the south-west is the country called Yamanadvīpa\textsuperscript{34} (Yavanadvīpa—Yen-nio-na-cheu). These six countries are so hemmed in by mountains and rivers that they are inaccessible;\textsuperscript{35} but their limits and the character of the people and country could be learned by inquiry.

From Samatata going west 900 li or so, we reach the country of Tan-mo-li-ti (Tămralipti).

**TAN-MO-LI-TI (TĂMRALIPTI).\textsuperscript{36}**

This country is 1,400 or 1,500 li in circuit, the capital about 10 li. It borders on the sea. The ground is low and rich; it is regularly cultivated, and produces flowers and fruits in abundance. The temperature is hot. The manners of the people are quick and hasty. The men are hardy and brave. There are both heretics and believers. There are about ten suṅghārāmas, with about 1,000 priests. The Dēva temples are fifty in number, in

\textsuperscript{31} Śrīkṣhetra or Tharekhettarā is the name of an ancient Burmese kingdom, whose capital city of the same name near Prome, on the Irāwādī; but this is south-east, whilst north-east, towards Śrihatta or Silhet, does not lead to "the borders of the ocean."

\textsuperscript{32} Kāmalaṅkā: Pegu (Haṅsāwādī) and the delta of the Irāwādī, called Rāmanya, and earlier Arāmana

\textsuperscript{33} Dvārapati is the classic name for the town and district of Sandowé, but in Burmese history it is also applied to Siam (Phayre, *Hist. of Burma*, p. 32).

\textsuperscript{34} Yamadvīpa is an island mentioned in the Vṛṣṭi-purāṇa, but probably fabulous.

\textsuperscript{35} *I.e.*, the pilgrim did not enter them.

\textsuperscript{36} Tāmulīrīt in Ptol. lib. vii. c. i, 73. Tămaliitti or Tămralipti, the modern Tamluk, on the Selai, just above its junction with the Hugli. *Jour R. A. S.* vol. v. p. 135; *Wilson, Vīṣṇu-pur.*, vol. ii. p. 177; *Lassen, J. A.*, vol. i. p. 177; *Varāha Mih., Br. S.*, x. 14; *Turnour, Ma-havano*, pp. 70, 115.
which various sectaries dwell mixed together. The coast of this country is formed by (or in) a recess of the sea; the water and the land embracing each other. Wonderful articles of value and gems are collected here in abundance, and therefore the people of the country are in general very rich.

By the side of the city is a stūpa which was built by Asōka-rāja; by the side of it are traces where the four past Buddhas sat and walked.

Going from this north-west 700 li or so, we come to the country Kie-lo-na-su-fa-la-na (Karṇasuvvarṇa).

KIE-LO-NA-SU-FA-LA-NA (KARṇASUVVARṆA).

This kingdom is about 1400 or 1500 li in circuit; the capital is about 20 li. It is thickly populated. The householders are very (rich and in ease). The land lies low and is loamy. It is regularly cultivated, and produces an abundance of flowers, with valuables numerous and various. The climate is agreeable; the manners of the people honest and amiable. They love learning exceedingly, and apply themselves to it with earnestness. There are believers and heretics alike amongst them. There are ten saṅghārāmas or so, with about 2000 priests. They study the Little Vehicle of the Sammatiya (Chingtian-gpu) school. There are fifty Dēva temples. The heretics are very numerous. Besides these there are three saṅghārāmas in which they do not use thickened milk (ū lōk), following the directions of Dēvadatta (Tī-p’ō-ta-to).

By the side of the capital is the saṅghārāma called

37 I.e., the coast of the country is that of a large bay.
38 Karṇa was the king of Aṅga, whose capital is placed at Karṇagarh near Bhāgalpur (M. Martin, E. Ind., vol. ii. pp. 31, 38 f., 46, 50.
39 Dēvadatta appears to have had a body of disciples; in consequence of his inferiority in point of influence to Buddha, he became his enemy. One of the rules of his sect was not to use butter. A sect revering him as a Buddha existed up to A.D. 400 (Eitel, s. v.) For an account of his more rigorous ascetic praxis, see Oldenberg, Buddha, pp. 160, 161.
Lo-to-wei-chi (Raktaviṭi), the halls of which are light and spacious, the storeyed towers very lofty. In this establishment congregate all the most distinguished, learned, and celebrated men of the kingdom. They strive to promote each other’s advancement by exhortations, and to perfect their character. At first the people of this country did not believe in Buddha; at this time there was a heretic of Southern India who wore over his belly copper-plates and on his head a lighted torch. With lofty steps, staff in hand, he came to this country. Sounding aloud the drum of discussion, he sought an adversary in controversy. Then a man said to him, “Why are your head and your body so strangely (arrayed)?” He said, “My wisdom is so great, I fear my belly will burst, and because I am moved with pity for the ignorant multitude who live in darkness, therefore I carry this light on my head.”

After ten days, no one was found to question him. Among all the learned and professed scholars there was not a single person to discuss with him. The king said, “Alas! what ignorance prevails in my territories, that no one should be able to challenge the difficult propositions of this stranger. What a disgrace to the country! We must scheme and seek through the most obscure retreats.”

Then one said to him, “In the forest there is a strange man who names himself a Śramaṇa, he is most diligent in study. He is now living apart in silence and obscurity, and so he has lived for a long time; who so well able

---

40 Meaning “red mud.” I adopt the Sanskrit restoration from Julien.
41 Literally, “to promote their mutual perfection by shaping and smoothing (in the sense of polishing) their reason and virtue.”
42 Julien refers this expression to the time when Hiuen Tsiang was there (p. 85, n. 3); in this case, it is possible that the allusion in vol. i. p. 4, n. 22, is to this encounter. But as the saṅghārāma was already built when Hiuen Tsiang visited the capital, it is difficult to understand how the event occurred at that time.
43 Wend ming—darkness.
44 It may also mean “the difficulty” resulting from the stranger’s challenge.
by his united virtue to controvert this irreligious man as he?" 45

The king hearing this, went himself to invite him to come. The Śramaṇa replying, said, "I am a man of South India; I stop here on my travels merely as a stranger. My abilities are small and commonplace; I fear lest you should not know it, but yet I will come according to your wish, though I am by no means certain as to the character of the discussion. If, however, I am not defeated, I will ask you to erect a saṅghārāma, and summon the fraternity to glorify and extol the law of Buddha." The king said, "I accept your terms, nor could I dare to forget your virtue." 46

Then the Śramaṇa, having accepted the king’s invitation, proceeded to the arena of controversy. Then the heretic went through (chanted) some 30,000 words of his school. His arguments were profound, his illustrations (figures or writing) ample; his whole discourse, both as to names and qualities, was captivating to sight and hearing.

The Śramaṇa, after listening, at once fathomed his meaning; no word or argument deceived him. With a few hundred words he discriminated and explained every difficulty, and then he asked (the heretic) as to the teaching (the principles) of his school. The words of the heretic were confused and his arguments devoid of force, and so his lips were closed and he could not reply. Thus he lost his reputation, and, covered with confusion, retired.

The king, deeply reverencing the priest, founded this

45 Julien translates this passage thus: "Could he conduct himself thus if he was not attached to the law and devoted to virtue?" The passage is difficult; literally it runs thus: "With this no-master, who is able so well as this (Śramaṇa) to embody the law, to unite virtue?" "To embody the law" means "to represent, or, vindicate, religion;" and "to unite virtue" means "so virtuously or fully."

46 The symbol tīh (virtue) sometimes stands for bhadanta, i.e., "your reverence" or "your excellency." It may also refer to the priesthood generally. It is applied in inscriptions to Sthaviras or priests.
convent; and from that time and afterwards the teaching of the law widely extended (through the kingdom).47

By the side of the saṅghārāma, and not far off, is a stūpa which was built by Aśoka-rāja. When Tathāgata was alive in the world he preached here for seven days, explaining (the law) and guiding (men). By the side of it is a vihāra; here there are traces where the four past Buddhas sat down and walked. There are several other stūpas in places where Buddha explained the excellent law.48 These were built by Aśoka-rāja.

Going from this 700 li or so in a south-westerly direction, we come to the country of U-cha.

U-cha (Udra).

This country is 7000 li or so in circuit; the capital city is about 20 li round. The soil is rich and fertile, and it produces abundance of grain, and every kind of fruit is grown more than in other countries. It would be difficult to name the strange shrubs and the famed flowers that grow here. The climate is hot; the people are uncivilised, tall of stature, and of a yellowish black complexion. Their words and language (pronunciation) differ from Central India. They love learning and apply themselves to it without intermission. Most of them believe in the law of Buddha. There are some hundred saṅghārāmas, with 10,000 priests. They all study the Great Vehicle. There are fifty Dēva temples in which sectaries of all sorts make their abodes. The stūpas,

47 Or, he widely extended the teaching of the law.
48 The original has king ṣā, the law of the sūtras; perhaps king is a mistake for miś, “excellent.”
49 Udra or Odra is Orissa (Mahābh., ii. 1174, iii. 1988); also called Uṭkala (Mahābh., vii. 122; Viṣṇupur, vol. ii. p. 160).
50 This capital is generally identified with Jajipura on the Baitani: Mr. Fergusson suggests Midnapur (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. vi. p. 249); his remarks (in this paper) on the whole of this part of the pilgrim’s route are of great interest. He first noticed that the journey of Huen Tsiang to Kāmarūpa was made from Nalanda on his return to that monastery from South India; he also points out the errors made by his predecessors in the same inquiry and corrects them.
to the number of ten or so, point out spots where Buddha preached. They were all founded by Ashoka-rāja.

In a great mountain on the south-west frontiers of the country is a saṅghārāma called Pushpagiri (Pussepok'il-li); the stone stūpa belonging to it exhibits very many spiritual wonders (miracles). On fast-days it emits a bright light. For this cause believers from far and near flock together here and present as offerings beautifully embroidered (flower) canopies (umbrellas); they place these underneath the vase at the top of the cupola, and let them stand there fixed as needles in the stone. To the north-west of this, in a convent on the mountain, is a stūpa where the same wonders occur as in the former case. These two stūpas were built by the demons, and hence are derived the extraordinary miracles.

On the south-east frontiers of the country, on the borders of the ocean, is the town Charitra (Che-li-ta-lo), about 20 li round. Here it is merchants depart for distant countries, and strangers come and go and stop here on their way. The walls of the city are strong and lofty. Here are found all sorts of rare and precious articles.

53 Remains, probably of a stūpa, have been found near Aska (J. R. A. S., vol. xx. p. 105).

52 Literally, "underneath the dew-vessel or vase." Here we have another instance of the custom of crowning the stūpa with a dew-vase, or "vessel of immortality" (amaraka). The custom would appear to have originated in the idea that "sweet dew" thus collected in a vessel had miraculous qualities as "the water of life." Dr. Burgess remarks that these flags were probably fixed on the capital of the stūpa, on which was placed the relic-casket (when not enshrined inside the capital over the garbhā of the stūpa).

53 It is satisfactory to find that Julien in this passage translates the "inverted vase or alms-dish" by cupola. It should have been so rendered throughout.

54 The expression shin kwee does not mean demons in a bad sense, but spiritual or divine beings. It might also be rendered "spirits and demons." Cunningham supposes the two hills named in the text to be Udayagiri and Khandagiri, in which many Buddhist caves and inscriptions have been discovered. These hills are 20 miles to the south of Katāk and 5 miles to the west of the grand group of temples at Bhuṇavādana (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 512).

Outside the city there are five convents \(^56\) one after the other; their storeyed towers are very high, and carved with figures of saints exquisitely done.

Going south 20,000 li or so is the country of Sinhala (Seng-kia-lo). In the still night, looking far off, we see the surmounting precious stone of the tooth-stūpa of Buddha brilliantly shining and scintillating as a bright torch burning in the air.

From this going south-west about 1200 li through great forests, we come to the kingdom of Kong-u-t'o (Kônyôdha).

**Kong-u-t'o (Kônyôdha ?).**

This kingdom \(^57\) is about 1000 li in circuit; the capital is 20 li round. It borders on a bay (angle of the sea). The ranges of mountains are high and precipitous. The ground is low and moist. It is regularly cultivated and productive. The temperature is hot, the disposition of the people brave and impulsive. The men are tall of stature and black complexioned and dirty. They have some degree of politeness and are tolerably honest. With respect to their written characters, they are the same as those of Mid-India, but their language and mode of pronunciation are quite different. They greatly respect the teaching of heretics and do not believe in the law of Buddha. There are some hundred Déva temples, and there are perhaps 10,000 unbelievers of different sects.

(from Hiuen Tsiang's remark, that the precious stone could be seen at a distance of 20,000 li) that he is confusing this Charitrapura with the one farther south, two days' sail from Ceylon.

\(^56\) M. Julien renders it "five stūpas" by mistake.

\(^57\) See *J. R. A. S.*, N.S., vol. vii. p. 250. Cunningham supposes this place to be Ganjam. The origin of the name Ganjam is not known. When Hiuen Tsiang returned to Magadha he found that Harashavardhana had just returned from a successful expedition against the king of Ganjam. Cunningham thinks that Ganjam was then annexed to the province of Orissa (Robert Sewell, *Asia*, vol. i. p. 2). Mr. Fergusson remarks that "Khordhagar in the neighbourhood of Bhu- vanēswar is just 170 miles southwest from Midnapur, and it is impossible to mistake the Chilka Lake as the great bay and the two seas of the text. Perhaps Hiuen Tsiang stopped here to visit the caves in the Khandagiri and Udayagiri hills" (*J. R. A. S.*, loc. cit.)
Within the limits of this country there are several tens of small towns which border on the mountains and are built contiguous to the sea. The cities themselves are strong and high; the soldiers are brave and daring; they rule by force the neighbouring provinces, so that no one can resist them. This country, bordering on the sea, abounds in many rare and valuable articles. They use cowrie shells and pearls in commercial transactions. The great greenish-blue elephant comes from this country. They harness it to their conveyances and make very long journeys.

From this going south-west, we enter a vast desert, jungle, and forests; the trees of which mount to heaven and hide the sun. Going 1400 or 1500 li, we come to the country of Kie-ling-kia (Kalinga).

KIE-LING-KIA (KALINGA).

This country is 5000 li or so in circuit; its capital is 20 li or so round. It is regularly cultivated and is productive. Flowers and fruits are very abundant. The forests and jungle are continuous for many hundred li. It produces the great tawny wild elephant, which are much prized by neighbouring provinces. The climate is

---

58 The phrase hai kiau does not necessarily imply "the confluence of two seas." It seems to mean that the towns were built near the mountains (the Mahândra Malâ?), but in communication with the sea-coast. So along the west coast of South America the towns built at the foot of the hills are in communication with the sea by ports of embarkation (embarcadores).

59 It may mean simply "dark coloured;" but ts'ing generally means "the colour of nature, as the azure of the sky or the green of growing plants" (Wells Williams). The phrase for black is un ts'ing.

60 The frontier line of Kâliâga cannot have extended beyond the Gôdâvari river on the south-west, and the Gaoliâ branch of the In-drâvati river on the north-west (Cunningham). For an account of the Kâliâga dêsa, see Sewell, op. cit., p. 19. The chief town was probably Râjamahêndri, where the Chalukyas perhaps established their capital. Either this place or Koriâga, on the sea-coast, agrees with the bearing and distance given in the text. If, however, we accept Mr. Fergusson's hypothesis that the capital of Kônyôdha was near Kaṭak, and calculating the li to be one-seventh of a mile, we shall have to seek for the capital of Kâliâga near Vijayanâgram. For a notice respecting Râjamahêndri see Sewell, Lists, &c., vol. i. p. 22.

61 The same word is used in the previous section; see n. 60.
burning; the disposition of the people vehement and impetuous. Though the men are mostly rough and uncivilised, they still keep their word and are trustworthy. The language is light and tripping, and their pronunciation distinct and correct. But in both particulars, that is, as to words and sounds, they are very different from Mid-India. There are a few who believe in the true law, but most of them are attached to heresy. There are ten saṅghārāmas, with about 500 priests, who study the Great Vehicle according to the teaching of the Sthavira school. There are some 100 Dēva temples with very many unbelievers of different sorts, the most numerous being the Nirgranthas [Ni-kin followers].

In old days the kingdom of Kaliṅga had a very dense population. Their shoulders rubbed one with the other, and the axles of their chariot wheels grided together, and when they raised their arm-sleeves a perfect tent was formed. There was a Rishi possessed of the five supernatural powers, who lived (perched) on a high precipice, cherishing his pure (thoughts). Being put to shame (insulted) because he had gradually lost his magic powers, he cursed the people with a wicked imprecation, and caused all dwelling in the country, both young and old, to perish; wise and ignorant alike died, and the population disappeared. After many ages the country was gradually repopulated by emigrants, but yet it is not properly inhabited. This is why at the present time there are so few who dwell here.

Not far from the south of the capital there is a stūpa about a hundred feet high; this was built by Aśoka-rāja. By the side of it there are traces where the four past Buddhas sat down and walked.

---

62 This description of their language will appear natural to those who have had Kling boys about them.
63 Digambara Jainas, ante, vol. i. p. 145, n. 74.
64 I.e., by stretching out their arms one to another, so close were they, there would be a continuous tent formed.
65 Explained by Julien as referring to the pañchābhiṣṇāt.
66 Julien translates gan by "cavern;" but it means "a rocky or precipitous mountain."
Near the northern frontier of this country is a great mountain precipice,\(^7\) on the top of which is a stone stūpa about a hundred feet high. Here, at the beginning of the kalpa, when the years of men's lives were boundless, a Pratyekā Buddha reached Nirvāṇa.

From this going north-west through forests and mountains about 1800 li, we come to the country of Kiao-sa-lo (Kōsala)

**Kiao-sa-lo (Kōsala).**

This country\(^6\) is about 5000 li in circuit; the frontiers consist of encircling mountain crags; forests and jungle are found together in succession. The capital\(^7\) is about 40 li round; the soil is rich and fertile, and yields abundant crops. The towns and villages are close together; the population is very dense. The men are tall and black complexioned. The disposition of the people is hard and violent; they are brave and impetuous. There are both heretics and believers here. They are earnest in study and of a high intelligence. The king is of the Kshatriya race; he greatly honours the law of Buddha, and his virtue and love are far renowned. There are about one hundred saṅghārāmas, and somewhat less than 10,000

---

\(^{67}\) Perhaps Mahendragiri

\(^{68}\) A Pratyekā Buddha is one who has reached enlightenment "for himself alone;" that is, he is not able to enlighten others by preaching or guiding. In Chinese it is rendered *tsh hioh*, "a solitary Buddha," for the same reason.

\(^{69}\) To be distinguished from Śrāvasti or Ayodhya, which district was also called Kōsala or Kōsala. See Wilson, *Vishnupura*, vol. ii. p. 172; Lassen, *J. A.*, vol. i. p. 165, vol. iv. p. 702. It lay to the south-west of Orissa and in the district watered by the upper feeders of the Mahanadi and Gōdāvari.

\(^{70}\) There is some uncertainty as to the capital of this country. General Cunningham, who identifies the ancient Kōsala with the modern province of Berar or Gondwāna, places it at Chāndā, a walled town 290 miles to the north-west of Rājamahendrī, with Nāgpura, Amarāvati, or Ilīchpur as alternatives; the three last-named towns appear to be too far from the capital of Kalinga. But if we allow five li to the mile, the distance either of Nāgpur or Amarāvati from Rājamahendrī would agree with the 1800 or 1900 li of Huen Tsiang. There is much mention in I-tsing's memoirs of priests visiting and remaining at a place called Amarāvati; it may refer to Kōsala. Mr. Fergusson, calculating the li at one-sixth of a mile, suggests either Wairagār or Bhāndak, both of them sites of old cities, as the capital. He prefers the former for reasons stated (*J. R. A. S.*, N.S., vol. vi. p. 265).
priests: they all alike study the teaching of the Great Vehicle. There are about seventy Déva temples, frequented by heretics of different persuasions.

Not far to the south of the city is an old saṅghārāma, by the side of which is a stūpa that was built by Aśoka-rāja. In this place Tathāgata, of old, calling an assembly, exhibited his supernatural power and subdued the unbelievers. Afterwards Nāgārjuna Bōdhisattva (Long-meng-p’u-sa) dwelt in the saṅghārāma. The king of the country was then called Sadvaha.\(^{71}\) He greatly prized and esteemed Nāgārjuna, and provided him with a city-gate hut.\(^{72}\)

At this time Ti-p’o (Déva) Bōdhisattva coming from the country of Chi-sse-tsueu (Ceylon), sought to hold a discussion with him. Addressing the gate-keeper he said, “Be good enough to announce me.” Accordingly the gate-keeper entered and told Nāgārjuna. He, recognising his reputation, filled up a pātra with water and commanded his disciple to hold the water before this Déva. Déva, seeing the water, was silent, and dropped a needle into it. The disciple held the pātra, and with some anxiety and doubt returned to Nāgārjuna. “What did he say,” he asked. The disciple replied, “He was silent and said nothing; he only dropped a needle into the water.”

Nāgārjuna said, “What wisdom! Who like this man! To know the springs of action (motives), this is the privilege of a god! to penetrate subtle principles is the privilege of an inferior saint.\(^{73}\) Such full wisdom as this entitles him to be allowed to enter forthwith.” He (the disciple) replied, “What a saying is this! is this then the sublime eloquence (skill) of silence?”

“This water,” he (Nāgārjuna) went on to say, “is shaped according to the form of the vessel that holds it;

---

\(^{71}\) Expressed phonetically by So-to-p’o-bo, with the meaning, “he who draws the good.”

\(^{72}\) Placed guards round his hut (Julien).

\(^{73}\) An inferior saint (ya shing) is an expression applied to Mencius compared with Confucius (Julien). In this passage the title is referred to Déva in comparison with Buddha,
it is pure or dirty according to the character of things (in it); it fills up every interstice; in point of clearness and comprehensiveness he, on beholding the water, compared it to the wisdom which I have acquired by study. Dropping into it a needle, he pierced it, as it were, to the bottom. Show this extraordinary man in here at once, and let him be presented."

Now the manner and appearance of Nâgârjuna were imposing, and inspired all with respect. In discussion all were awed by it, and submitted (bowed the head). Déva being aware of his excellent characteristics, had long desired to consult him, and he wished to become his disciple. But now as he approached he felt troubled in mind, and he was abashed and timid. Mounting the hall, he sat down awkwardly and talked darkly; but at the end of the day his words were clear and lofty. Nâgârjuna said, "Your learning exceeds that of the world and your fine distinctions shine brighter than the former (teachers). I am but an old and infirm man; but having met with one so learned and distinguished, surely it is for the purpose of spreading the truth and for transmitting without interruption the torch of the law, and propagating the teaching of religion. Truly this is one who may sit on the upper seat to expound dark sayings and discourse with precision."

Déva hearing these words, his heart conceived a degree of self-confidence, and being about to open the storehouse of wisdom, he first began to roam through the garden of dialectic and handle fine sentences; then having looked up for some indication of approval (confirmation of his argument), he encountered the imposing look of the master; his words escaped him; his mouth was closed; and leaving his seat, he made some excuse, and asked to be instructed.

Nâgârjuna said, "Sit down again; I will communicate

74 I have translated it thus; literally it runs "clear and limpid and of unfathomable fulness, as you showed it to him."
to you the truest and most profound principles which the king of the law himself verily handed down (*taught for transmission*)." Dëva then prostrated himself on the ground, and adored with all his heart, and said, "Both now and for ever I will dare to listen to your instructions."

Nâgârjuna Bôdhisattva was well practised in the art of compounding medicines; by taking a preparation (*pill* or *cake*), he nourished the years of life for many hundreds of years, so that neither the mind nor appearance decayed. Sadvaha-râja had partaken of this mysterious medicine, and his years were already several hundred in number. The king had a young son who one day addressed his mother thus, "When shall I succeed to the royal estate?" His mother said, "There seems to me to be no chance of that yet; your father the king is now several hundred years old, his sons and grandsons are many of them dead and gone through old age. This is the result of the religious power of Nâgârjuna, and the intimate knowledge he has of compounding medicines. The day the Bôdhisattva dies the king will also succumb. Now the wisdom of this Nâgârjuna is great and extensive, and his love and compassion very deep; he would give up for the benefit of living creatures his body and life. You ought, therefore, to go, and when you meet him, ask him to give you his head. If you do this, then you will get your desire."

The king's son, obedient to his mother's instructions, went to the gate of the convent. The doorkeeper, alarmed, ran away, and so he entered at once. Then Nâgârjuna Bôdhisattva was chanting as he walked up and down. Seeing the king's son he stopped, and said, "It is evening time now; why do you at such a time come so hastily to the priests' quarters? has some accident happened, or are

---

75 Some attribute 600 years to Nâgârjuna as his term of life (*Varâṣṭrī, Bouddhisme*, p. 76). This writer says, "In my opinion the 600 or 600 years of life given to Nâgârjuna refer to the development of the system of the Great Vehicle" (*op. cit.*, p. 77, n. 1).

76 To announce the arrival of the king's son (Julien). But it would seem to mean he ran away through fear.
you afraid of some calamity that you have hastened here at such a time?"

He answered, "I was considering with my dear mother the words of different śāstras, and the examples (therein given) of sages who had forsaken (given up) the world, and I was led to remark on the great value set on life by all creatures, and that the scriptures, in their examples given of sacrifice, had not enforced this duty of giving up life readily for the sake of those who desired it. Then my dear mother said, 'Not so; the Sugatas (shen shi) of the ten regions, the Tathāgatas of the three ages, whilst living in the world and giving their hearts to the object, have obtained the fruit. They diligently sought the way of Buddha; practising the precepts, exercising patience, they gave up their bodies to feed wild beasts, cut their flesh to deliver the dove. Thus Rāja Chandraprabha (Yueh-kwang) gave up his head to the Brāhmaṇ; Maitribāla (Ts'e li) rāja fed the hungry Yaksha with his blood. To recite every similar example would be difficult, but in searching through the history of previous sages, what age is there that affords not examples? And so Nāgārjuna Bōdhisattva is now actuated by similar high principles; as for myself, I have sought a man who for my advantage would give me his head, but have never yet found such a person for years. If I had wished to act with violence and take the life of a man (commit murder), the crime would have been great and entailed dreadful consequences. To have taken the life of an innocent child would have been infamous and disgraced my character. But the Bōdhisattva diligently practise the holy way and aspires after a while to the fruit of Buddha. His love extends to all beings and his goodness knows no bounds. He esteems life as a bubble, his body as decaying wood. He would not contradict his purpose in refusing such a gift, if requested."

77 For the story of Chandraprabha see R. Mitra’s Nepalese Bud- dhist Lit., p. 310; for Maitribāla, ibid., p. 50.
Nâgârjuna said, "Your comparisons and your words are true. I seek the holy fruit of a Buddha. I have learnt that a Buddha is able to give up all things, regarding the body as an echo, a bubble, passing through the four forms of life, continually coming and going in the six ways. My constant vow has been not to oppose the desires of living things. But there is one difficulty in the way of the king's son, and what is that? If I were to give up my life your father also would die. Think well of this, for who could then deliver him?"

Nâgârjuna, irresolute, walked to and fro, seeking for something to end his life with; then taking a dry reed leaf, he cut his neck as if with a sword, and his head fell from his body.

Having seen this, he (the royal prince) fled precipitately and returned. The guardian of the gate informed the king of the event from first to last, who whilst listening was so affected that he died.

To the south-west about 300 li we came to the Po-lo-mo-lo-ki-li (Brahmaragiri) mountain. The solitary peak of this mountain towers above the rest, and stands out with its mighty precipices as a solid mass of rock without approaches or intervening valleys. The king, Sadvaha, for the sake of Nâgârjuna Bôdhisattva, tunneled out this rock through the middle, and built and fixed therein (in

---

78 The four modes of life are described as creatures oviparous, viviparous, born from spawn or by transformation. See Vajracchedikâ, cap. 2.
79 The six ways of birth are (1.) as Dévas, (2.) as men, (3.) as Asuras, (4.) as Prêtas, (5.) as beasts, (6.) in hell.
80 It would seem that this is the right restoration. The Chinese explanation is "the black peak," but here fung, "a peak," is probably a mistake for fung, "a bee." Brahmara is an epithet of Durgâ or Chandâ. Assuming Bhândak to have been the capital of Kôsala, the Winjñâsani and Dewâlâ Hills, with the footprint of Bhima, i.e., Siva (or, if Bhimâ, then Durgâ), would answer to the hill of Sadvaha. It is tolerably certain that the Pó-lo-yu of Fa-hian is intended for Pârvati (his interpretation of "pigeon" (Pârvata) being derived from hear-say at Bârâras), and this corresponds with "Brahmara." Altogether it seems probable that the worship of Durgâ, or Chandâ, or Bhimâ, or Pârvati, was affected in this part of India, and probably gave rise to, or at any rate fostered, the worship of Avalokitesâvara or Kwan-yin. (See the question discussed, J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xv. p. 344.)
the middle) a saṅghārāma; at a distance of some 10 li, by tunnelling, he opened a covered way (an approach). Thus by standing under the rock (not knowing the way in) we see the cliff excavated throughout, and in the midst of long galleries (corridors) with eaves for walking under and high towers (turrets), the storeyed building reaching to the height of five stages, each stage with four halls with vihāras enclosed (united). In each vihāra was a statue of Buddha cast in gold, of the size of life, wrought (cast) with consummate art and singularly adorned and specially ornamented with gold and precious stones. From the high peak of the mountain descending streamlets, like small cascades, flow through the different storeys, winding round the side galleries, and then discharging themselves without. Scattered light-holes illumine the interior (inner chambers).

When first Sadvaha-rāja excavated this saṅghārāma, the men (engaged in it) were exhausted and the king’s treasures emptied. His undertaking being only half accomplished, his heart was heavily oppressed. Nāgārjuna addressing him said, “For what reason is the king so sad of countenance?” The king replied, “I had formed in the course of reflection a great purpose.” I ventured to undertake a meritorious work of exceeding excellence which might endure firm till the coming of Maitrēya, but now before it is completed my means are exhausted. So I sit disconsolate day by day awaiting the dawn, cast down at heart.”

Nāgārjuna said, “Afflict not yourself thus; the returns consequent on the high aims of a lofty religious purpose

---

81 It seems to mean that in each platform there were four halls, and each of these halls had a vihāra which were connected.
82 The description of this rock-monastery in the text shows that it is the same as that described by Fa-hian (pp. 139, 140, Beal’s edition). Neither Fa-hian nor Hiuen Tsang personally visited the spot. It would seem to have been utterly deserted and waste even in Fa-hian’s time. This favours the record of its early construction in the time of Nāgārjuna (about the first century B.C.)
83 Or, “as my great heart was revolving in chance thoughts.”
are not to be foiled: your great resolve shall without fail be accomplished. Return then to your palace; you shall have abundance of joy. To-morrow, after you have gone forth to roam through and observe the wild country round (the mountain wilds), then return to me and quietly discuss about the buildings." The king having received these instructions left him after proper salutation (turning to the right).

Then Nāgārjuna Bōdhisattva, by moistening all the great stones with a divine and superior decoction (medicine or mixture), changed them into gold. The king going forth and seeing the gold, his heart and his mouth mutually congratulated each other.\(^6\) Returning, he went to Nāgārjuna and said, "To-day as I roamed abroad, by the influence of the divine spirits (genii) in the desert, I beheld piles of gold." Nāgārjuna said, "It was not by the influence of the genii, but by the power of your great sincerity; as you have this gold, use it therefore for your present necessities, and fulfil your excellent work." So the king acted and finished his undertaking, and still he had a surplus. On this he placed in each of the five stages four great golden figures. The surplus still remaining he devoted to replenish the necessitous (deficient) branches of the exchequer.

Then he summoned 1000 priests to dwell (in the building he had constructed), and there to worship and pray. Nāgārjuna Bōdhisattva placed in it all the authoritative works of instruction spoken by Śākya Buddha, and all the explanatory compilations (commentaries) of the Bōdhisattvas, and the exceptional collection of the miscellaneous school.\(^5\) Therefore in the first (uppermost) storey they

---

\(^{6}\) That is, his words were in agreement with the happy thoughts entertained in his heart.

\(^{5}\) If this be the right rendering of the passage, then the "miscellaneous school" will refer to the ānupiṭṭha class of books. If, however, we adopt M. Julien's rendering, the passage will simply mean, "he collected these books (viz., the sūtras and abhidharma) and divided them into sections." But if we examine the entire passage, it seems to imply that Nāgārjuna collected (1.) The books claiming the authority of Buddha's utterance; (2.) the writ-
placed only the figure of Buddha, and the sūtras and śāstras; in the fifth stage from the top (i.e., in the lowest), they placed the Brāhmans (pure men) to dwell, with all necessary things provided for them; in the three middle storeys they placed the priests and their disciples. The old records state that when Sadvaha-rāja had finished, he calculated that the salt consumed by the workmen cost nine kōfis of gold pieces. Afterwards the priests having got angry and quarrelled, they went to the king to get the question settled. Then the Brāhmans said amongst themselves, "The Buddhist priests have raised a quarrel on some question of words." Then these wicked men consulting together, waiting for the occasion, destroyed the sanghārāma, and afterwards strongly barricaded the place in order to keep the priests out.

From that time no priests of Buddha have lived there. Looking at the mountain caves (or heights) from a distance, it is impossible to find the way into them (the caves). In these times, when they (the Brāhmans) introduce a physician into their abodes to treat any sickness, they put a veil over his face on going in and coming out, so that he may not know the way.

From this, going through a great forest south, after 900 li or so, we come to the country of 'An-ta-lo (Andhra).

'An-ta-lo (Andhra).

This country is about 3000 li in circuit; the capital is about 20 li round. It is called P'ing-k'i-lo (Vingila?)

The soil is rich and fertile; it is regularly cultivated, and produces abundance of cereals. The temperature is hot, and the manners of the people fierce and impulsive. The language and arrangement of sentences differ from Mid-India, but with reference to the shapes of the letters, they

\[\text{perspective difference} \]

\[\text{other miscellaneous books.}\]

\[\text{This is probably the old city of Veṅgi, north-west of Elur lake, between the Gōdāvari and Kṛishṇā rivers, which was certainly in the early Andhra dominions. In the neighbourhood are said to be rock temples and other remains.}\]
are nearly the same. There are twenty saṅghārāmas with about 3000 priests. There are also thirty Dēva temples with many heretics.

Not far from Viṅgila (?) is a great saṅghārāma with storeyed towers and balconies beautifully carved and ornamented. There is here a figure of Buddha, the sacred features of which have been portrayed with the utmost power of the artist. Before this convent is a stone stūpa which is several hundred feet high; both the one and the other were built by the Arhat 'O-che-lo (Achala).

To the south-west of the saṅghārāma of the Arhat 'O-che-lo not a great way is a stūpa which was built by Asāka-rāja. Here Tathāgata in old days preached the law, and exhibited his great spiritual powers, and converted numberless persons.

Going 20 li or so to the south-west of the saṅghārāma built by Achala (So-hing), we reach a solitary mountain on the top of which is a stone stūpa. Here Jina Bōdhisattva composed the In-ming-lun (Nyāyadrā-tāraka Śāstra or Hētuvidyā Śāstra?). This Bōdhisattva, after Buddha had left the world, received the doctrine and assumed the vestments (of a disciple). His wisdom and his desires (prayers or vows) were vast. The power of his great wisdom was deep and solid. Pitying the world, which was without any support (reliance), he designed to spread the sacred doctrine. Having weighed the character of

87 The Chinese translation of the Arhat's name is "he who acts," it should therefore be restored to Āchāra. The restoration otherwise might be Achala, who is mentioned in an inscription at Ajanta. See infra.

88 The phonetic symbols for Jina are Ch'īn-na; it is translated by t'ōng shēu, "youth-received," which Julien restores to Kumāralābha. But thus Jina cannot be translated by either of these phrases. (For an account of the works of this Bōdhisattva, see Bunyiu Nanjio, Catalogue, Appendix i. No. 10.) In Hwui-li (iv. fol. 5, b) the translation of Ch'īn-na is simply shēu.

89 There is much confusion here. The text gives only In-ming-lun, which must be restored to Hētuvidyā Śāstra; but Julien, in his list of errata, p. 568, corrects the text, and supplies the title of the work, In-ming-ching-li-men-lun, i.e., Nyāyadrā-tāraka Śāstra. This may be so, but this work is not named in Bunyiu Nanjio's Catalogue among those written by Jina.

90 I do not see in the text that he composed this Śāstra, but considering its character (i. e.), he, &c.
the *Hētwidyā Šāstra*, its words so deep, its reasonings so wide, and (having considered) that students vainly endeavoured to overcome its difficulties in their course of study, he retired into the lonely mountains and gave himself to meditation to investigate it so as to compose a useful compendium, that might overcome the difficulties (obscurities) of the work, its abstruse doctrines and complicated sentences. At this time the mountains and valleys shook and reverberated; the vapour and clouds changed their appearance, and the spirit of the mountain, carrying the Bōdhisattva to a height of several hundred feet, then repeated (chanted) these words, “In former days the Lord of the World virtuously controlled and led the people; prompted by his compassionate heart, he delivered the *Hētwidyā Šāstra*, and arranged in due order its exact reasonings and its extremely deep and refined words. But after the *Nirvāṇa* of Tathāgata its great principles became obscured; but now Jina Bōdhisattva, whose merit and wisdom are so extensive, understanding to the bottom the sacred well, will cause the *Hētwidyā Šāstra* to spread abroad its power (to add its weight) during the present day.”

Then the Bōdhisattva caused a bright light to shine and illumine the dark places (of the world), on which the king of the country conceived a deep reverence as he saw the sign of this brilliancy, and being in doubt whether he (i.e., Bōdhisattva) had not entered the *Vajrasamādhi* (or, diamond *Samādhi*); then he asked the Bōdhisattva to obtain the fruit of “no further birth.”

Jina said, “I have entered *Samādhi* from a desire to explain a profound *sūtra*; my heart awaits perfect enlightenment (*samyak sambodhi*), but has no desire for this fruit that admits of no rebirth.”

The king said, “The fruit of ‘no-birth’ is the aim of

91 It does not necessarily mean 92 That is, to acquire the privilege that Buddha composed this work, of an Arhat, but delivered (ahovo) or spake it.
all the saints. To cut yourself off from the three worlds, and to plunge into the knowledge of the ‘three vidyās,’ how grand such an aim! 93 May you soon attain it!"

Then Jina Bodhisattva, pleased at the request of the king, conceived the desire to reach the holy fruit which "exempts from learning." 94

At this time Manjusri Bodhisattva (Miu-ki-ts’iang-p’u-sa), knowing his purpose, was moved with pity. Wishing to arouse him to the truth and to awaken him in a moment, he came and said, "Alas! how have you given up your great purpose, and only fixed your mind on your own personal profit, with narrow aims, giving up the purpose of saving all! If you would really do good, you ought to transmit and explain the rules of the Yu-kiu-sseti-lun (Yogacharya-bhumi Sāstra) of Maitreya Bodhisattva. By that you may lead and direct students, and cause them to receive great advantage."

Jina Bodhisattva receiving these directions, respectfully assented and saluted the saint. Then having given himself to profound study, he developed the teaching of the Hētuvidyā Sāstra; but still fearing that the students thereof would dread its subtle reasonings and its precise style, he composed the Hētuvidyā Sāstra, 95 exemplifying the great principles and explaining the subtle language, in order to guide the learners. After that he explained fully the Yoga discipline.

From this going through the desert forest south 96 1000 li or so, we come to To-na-kie-tse-kia (Dhanakataka). 97

93 "This is the chief, or complete, thing."
94 This also is a phrase to denote the condition of Arhatship.
95 The title is defective. It probably refers to the Nyāyadvīra-tāraka Sāstra; but, on the other hand, this work was composed by Nāgārjuna (see B. Nanjio’s Catalogue, 1223). The whole of the passage in the text referring to Jina is obscure, and probably corrupt.
96 In the translation of Hwui-lih, Julien gives "vers le sud," which expression is quoted by Ferguson (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. vi. p. 262); but it is simply "going south" in the original.
97 Called also the Great Andhra country. Julien has Dhanakachekha; the Pali inscriptions at Amaravati and Nasik give Dhamhakataka, for which the Sanskrit would be Dhan-yakataka or Dhanyakataka; and in
This country is about 6000 li in circuit, and the capital some 40 li round. The soil is rich and fertile, and is regularly cultivated, affording abundant harvests. There is much desert country, and the towns are thinly populated. The climate is hot. The complexion of the people is a yellowish black, and they are by nature fierce and impulsive. They greatly esteem learning. The convents (saṅghārāmas) are numerous, but are mostly deserted and ruined; of those preserved there are about twenty, with 1000 or so priests. They all study the law of the Great Vehicle. There are 100 Dēva temples, and the people who frequent them are numerous and of different beliefs.

To the east of the capital (the city) bordering on (leaning against) a mountain is a convent called the Pūrvaśilā (Fo-p’o-shi-lo-seng). To the west of the city leaning against (maintained by) a mountain is a convent called Avarasilā. These were (or, this was) built by a former king to do honour to (for the sake of) Buddha.

an inscription of 1361 A.D. we have Dhānyavatīpurā, and these would identify the city of Dhāmīkatakā with Dhārāṇikōta close to Amaravati (Ind. Ant., vol. xi, pp. 95 f.). The symbol tse is-equivalent to the Sanskrit ta.

Mr. Fergusson concludes from a report addressed to Government by the late J. A. C. Boswell, and also from some photographs by Captain Ross Thompson, that almost beyond the shadow of a doubt Bejwādā is the city described by Hinu Tsang (op. cit., p. 265). But see Ind. Ant., ut cit.

The word is keu, to hold, to rely on. In the Analects (vi. 6, 2) there is the expression keu yu tīḥ, which Dr. Legge translates, "let every attainment in what is good be firmly grasped." I should suppose, therefore, the text means that the Pūrvasilā convent was supported by or enclosed by a mountain on the east of the city.

The symbol lo appears to be omitted. Fo-lo-po would be equal to Purva.

'O-fa-lo-shi-lo, Aparasilā or West Mount. Fergusson identifies this with the Amarāvati tope. The tope is 17 miles west of Bejwādā. It stands to the south of the town of Amarāvati, which again is 20 miles north-west of Guṇṭūr. The old fort called Dhārāṇikōta (which appears at one time to have been the name of the district) is just one mile west of Amarāvati. "This celebrated Buddhist tope was first discovered by Rāja Veṅkaṭādī Nāyudu's servants in A.D. 1796; it was visited by Colonel Mackenzie and his survey staff in 1797; it was greatly demolished by the Rāja, who utilised the sculptured
He hollowed the valley, made a road, opened the mountain crags, constructed pavilions and long (or, lateral) galleries; wide chambers supported the heights and connected the caverns. The divine spirits respectfully defended (this place); both saints and sages wandered here and reposed. During the thousand years following the Nirvana of Buddha, every year there were a thousand laymen and priests who dwelt here together during the rainy season. When the time was expired, all who had reached the condition of Arhats mounted into the air and fled away. After the thousand years the lay-

marbles for building materials up to the year 1816. It was again visited by Colonel Mackenzie, who made large excavations, in 1816. Further excavations in 1835 (?); examined by Sir Walter Elliot, who unearthed the ruins of the western gateway in 1840. Excavations recommenced (by Mr. R. Sewell) in May 1877. Further excavations (by Dr. James Burgess) in 1882–83. Sewell’s List of Antiquarian Remains in Madras, vol. i. p. 63. For a full and valuable account of the sculptures of this tope see Ferguson, Tree and Serpent Worship, also Burgess, Report on the Amarāvatī Stupa. An inscription discovered by Dr. Burgess among the stones of the stupa proves “beyond doubt that the Amarāvatī stūpa was either already built or was being built in the second century A.D., if not earlier” (Burgess, op. cit., p. 27).

This would appear to refer to his work in constructing a sort of “sacred way” leading to the tope. But the text does not supply any information beyond the fact of the excavations in connection with this western Sanighdrāna. But were these excavations confined to “the high mountain on the west of the town, full of caves, abutting on the river?” Perhaps an explanation may be found by supposing that the excavation of the mountain, &c., was independent of the building of the sanighdrāna. In Hwui-lih there is nothing said about the caverns, galleries, and tunnels; he simply states that “the eastern and western sanighdrānas were built by a former king of the country, and he thoroughly searched through all the examples (kwai shih, rules and patterns) [of similar buildings] to be found in Ta-hia.” Hiuen Tsiang says that “the eastern and western convents were built [the symbol ch’a in the text is lih in Hwui-lih; I regard it as a misprint] by a former king,” and then he goes on to say that “he moreover bored through the river valley, hollowed out a road, divided the crags, raised pavilions (turreted chambers) with lateral galleries, whilst wide chambers supported (pillowed) the heights and connected the caves.” This is all independent of building the sanighdrānas. I must confess, however, that the position of the stūpa, seventeen miles west of the town, and on the other side of the river, seems to be a difficulty. With reference to Ta-hia, it is generally translated Baktria (Brethesnieder, Notices of Mediaeval Geography, &c., p. 197). The rules and patterns of buildings in Baktria would, I should suppose, be those of the Greeks.

Fan fu, common disciples.

Or, it may mean all of them attained the condition of Arhats.
men and saints dwelt together; but for the last hundred years there have been no priests (dwelling here) in consequence of the spirit of the mountain changing his shape, and appearing sometimes as a wolf, sometimes as a monkey, and frightening the disciples; for this reason the place has become deserted and wild, with no priests to dwell there.

To the south of the city a little way is a great mountain cavern. It is here the master of śāstras P'ō-pi-fei-kia (Bhāvavivēka) remains in the palace of the Asuras ('O-ssu-lo), awaiting the arrival of Mātrēya Bōdhisattva as perfect Buddha. This master of śāstras was widely renowned for his elegant scholarship and for the depth of his vast attainments (virtue). Externally he was a disciple of Kapīla (Sāṅkhya), but inwardly he was fully possessed of the learning of Nāgārjuna. Having heard that Dharmapāla (Hu-fa-p'u-sa) of Magadha was spreading abroad the teaching of the law, and was making many thousand disciples, he desired to discuss with him. He took his religious staff in hand and went. Coming to Pāṭaliputra (Po-ch'a-li) he ascertained that Dharmapāla Bōdhisattva was dwelling at the Bōdhi tree. Then the master of śāstras ordered his disciples thus: "Go you to the place where Dharmapāla resides near the Bōdhi tree, and say to him in my name, 'Bōdhisattva (i.e., Dharmapāla) publishes abroad the doctrine of Buddha bequeathed to the world: he leads and directs the

105 According to the report quoted by Mr. Ferguson (op. cit., p. 263), "immediately south of the town (i.e., of Bejwādā) is a singular isolated rock or hill, along whose base and sides there are the remains of a considerable number of rock-caves, &c."

106 In Chinese Ts'ing-pin, "he who discusses with clearness" (Jul.); but in Wong-Pūḥ (§ 193) he is called Ming-pin, which seems more accurate. For the story of this doctor see Wong-Pūḥ (loc. cit.)

107 In this passage, as in the one relating to Kāśyapa in the Kukku-tapāda-giri, Julien has quite missed the sense; he translates as though Bhāvavivēka had become a Buddha.

108 In the text it is "externally he wore the clothes or costume of the Sāṅkhya (Sāṅg-k'ie), that is, he was a follower of Kapīla by outward profession. Julien has translated it as though Sāṅg-k'ie were equivalent to Sāṅg-k'ia-chi, but the symbols are quite different, and he himself gives Sāṅkhyā as the equivalent of Sāṅg-k'ie (pp. 470, 5-7).
ignorant. His followers look up to him with respect and humility, and so it has been for many days; nevertheless his vow and past determination have borne no fruit! Vain is it to worship and visit the Bôdhi tree. Swear to accomplish your object, and then you will be in the end guide of gods and men.”

Dharmapâla Bôdhisattva answered the messenger thus: “The lives of men (or, generations of men) are like a phantom; the body is as a bubble. The whole day I exert myself; I have no time for controversy; you may therefore depart—there can be no meeting.”

The master of sástras having returned to his own country, led a pure (quiet) life and reflected thus: “In the absence of Maitrêya as a Buddha, who is there that can satisfy my doubts?” Then in front of the figure of the Bôdhisattva Kwan-tsz’-tsai, he recited in order the Sin-to-lo-ni (Hrîdaya-dhârani), abstaining from food and drink. After three years Kwan-tsz’-tsai Bôdhisattva appeared to him with a very beautiful body, and

---

109 This passage is obscure, and I offer my translation only as tentative. It appears to me that the message to the Bôdhisattva was couched ironically. Bhâvavivêka challenges Dharmapâla on the ground that his aim has not yet been accomplished, and to go to the Bôdhi tree to worship is foolish and inoperative. “Vow to accomplish your purpose, and it shall be accomplished irrespective of worship or humility.” This would seem to have been the tendency of Nâgârjuna’s teaching, and Bhâvavivêka, though outwardly a follower of Kapila, was yet full of Nâgârjuna’s spirit.

110 That is, until Maitrêya becomes Buddha, who is there that can answer my doubts? It is not that Maitrêya has become Buddha, but until he does so become.

111 This is indirectly a most important passage. It shows that Bhâvavivêka, who was imbued “with the spirit of Nâgârjuna,” although professedly a follower of Kapila, exhibited his faith by going to Avalôkitêśvara. This, joined with the story of Sadvaha excavating the Brahmara (Durgâ) convent for Nâgârjuna, shows that the worship of Durgâ (the many-armed and the high) was the chief feature in the spirit of Nâgârjuna’s teaching; in other words, that the fusion between Buddhism and the native worship of hill gods dates from Nâgârjuna’s time, and was brought about by his influence.

112 This is a well-known sûtra or mantra, has been translated in the Journal of the R. A. S., 1875, p. 27; see also Bendall, Catalogue of MSS., &c., p. 117, add. 1485. The composition of this sûtra may, I think be attributed to Nâgârjuna, as the founder of the Mahâyâna doctrine.

113 This “beautiful body” of Avalôkitêśvara seems to be derived from foreign sources. The character of
addressed the master of śāstras thus: "What is your purpose (will)?" He said, "May I keep my body till Maitrêya comes." Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bôdhisattva said, "Man’s life is subject to many accidents. The world is as a bubble or a phantom. You should aim at the highest resolve to be born in the Tushita heaven, and there, even now,\textsuperscript{114} to see him face to face and worship."

The master of śāstras said, "My purpose is fixed; my mind cannot be changed."\textsuperscript{115} Bôdhisattva said, "If it is so, you must go to the country of Dhanakaṭaka, to the south of the city, where in a mountain cavern a diamond-holding (Vajrapâni) spirit dwells, and there with the utmost sincerity reciting the Chi-king-kang-t’o-lo-nî (Vajrapânídhârana), you ought to obtain your wish."

On this the master of śāstras went and recited (the dhârana). After three years the spirit said to him, "What is your desire, exhibiting such earnest diligence?" The master of śāstras said, "I desire that my body may endure till Maitrêya comes, and Avalôkiteśvara Bôdhisattva directed me to come here to request the fulfilment (of my desire). Does this rest with you, divine being?"

The spirit then revealed to him a formula and said, "There is an Asura’s palace in this mountain; if you ask according to the rule given you, the walls will open, and then you may enter and wait there till you see (Maitrêya)." "But," said the master of śāstras, "dwelling in the dark, how shall I be able to see or know when the Buddha the beauty may be seen from the plates supplied by Mr. B. Hodgson in the J. R. A. S., vol. vi. p. 276. There can be little doubt that we have here a link connecting this worship with that of Ardhvisura-anâhita, the Persian representative of the beautiful goddess of "pure water." Compare Anaitis as Venus, and the Venus-mountains in Europe (Fensberg), the survival of the worship of hill-gods. (See Karl Blind on "water-gods," &c., in the Contemporary Review.)

\textsuperscript{114} This is the aim of the true Buddhist convert, to be born in the heaven of Maitrêya after death, and there to hear his doctrine, so as to be able at his advent to receive his instruction and reach Nirvâna. Opposed to this is the foreign theory of a Western paradise.

\textsuperscript{115} This exhibits the character of Bhâvavivēka, who had charged Dharmapâla with want of a strong determination (oath). See ante, n. 109.
appears?” Vajrapāṇi said, “When Maitreya comes into the world, I will then advertise you of it.” The master of śāstras having received his instructions, applied himself with earnestness to repeat the sentences, and for three years, without any change of mind, he repeated the words to a nicety (mustard-seed). Then knocking at the rock-cavern, it opened out its deep and vast recesses. Then an innumerable multitude appeared before him looking about them, but forgetful of the way to return. The master of śāstras passed through the door, and addressing the multitude said, “Long have I prayed and worshipped with a view to obtain an opportunity to see Maitreya. Now, thanks to the aid of a spiritual being, my vow is accomplished. Let us therefore enter here, and together await the revelation of this Buddha.”

Those who heard this were stupefied, and dared not pass the threshold. They said, “This is a den of serpents; we shall all be killed.” Thrice he addressed them, and then only six persons were content to enter with him. The master of śāstras turning himself and advancing, then all the multitude followed him with their gaze as he entered. After doing so the stone walls closed

316 Julien translates this “SUR un grain de sènevé.” Referring to my translation in Wong-Puh, § 193, I had the honour to correspond with M. Julien on the subject, he only allowed that the point was worthy of consideration. His words are these: “Il me semble au contraire que cela signifie que la puissance des dhāranī recités sur une graine de sènevé fut telle que cette graine, malgré sa légèreté extrême, fut, étant projetée sur la pierre, la faire s’entrouvrir comme si elle avait été frappée avec un instrument d’une force, d’un poids extraordinaire.” But there is something to be said on the other side. To repeat a formula “to a mustard-seed,” is to repeat it perfectly (ad ungum); hence the name of Siddhārtha, “the perfect” (yih-tsoai-i-shing), the son of Śuddhodana, the promised Buddha, was just this, “the white mustard-seed” (Śiddhārtha), because he was “perfectly endowed.” Whether the phrase, “faith as a grain of mustard-seed” (ὁς κόκκον αὐτάτος) does not mean “perfect faith” (an Orientalism introduced into Palestine, ὃς used for ἐστι, or πέτσι) is a point I shall not urge; but probably the familiar story of “Open Sesame” is derived from the legend of Bhāravivēka and the “mustard-seed.” Both Ali Baba and the master of śāstras succeeded in opening the cavern gate by a “mustard-seed” formula. Cunningham connects the name of the place, Dhārani-kōta, with this legend (Anc. Geog., p. 538).
behind them, and then those left without chided themselves for neglecting his words addressed to them.

From this going south-west 1000 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Chu-li-ye (Chulya).

CHU-LI-YE (CHULYA OR CHÓLA).

The country of Chulya (Chóla) is about 2400 or 2500 li in circuit; the capital is about 10 li round. It is deserted and wild, a succession of marshes and jungle. The population is very small, and troops of brigands go through the country openly. The climate is hot; the manners of the people dissolute and cruel. The disposition of the men is naturally fierce; they are attached to heretical teaching. The sánghárámas are ruined and dirty as well as the priests. There are some tens of Dèva temples, and many Nirgrantha heretics.

At a little distance south-east of the city is a stūpa built by Asóka-rāja. Here Tathāgata in old time dwelt, and exhibited his spiritual power, and preached the sublime law, and defeated the heretics, delivering both men and Dèvas.

Not far to the west of the city there is an old sánghá-ráma. This was the place where Ti-p'o (Dèva) Bódhisattva discussed with an Arhat. In the first instance, Dèva Bódhisattva heard that in this convent there was an Arhat called Uttara (Wu-ta-lo) who possessed the six supernatural powers (shādabhijnās), and the eight vimók-shas (means of deliverance); forthwith he came from a distance to observe his manner as a model. Having arrived at the convent, he asked the Arhat for a night's lodging. Now in the place where the Arhat lived (in his cell) there was only one bed. Having entered, in the absence of a mat, he spread some rushes on the ground, and showing it to him, begged him to be seated. Having taken the seat, the Arhat entered into samádhi, and came out of it after midnight. Then Dèva proposed to him his
doubts, and prayed him to answer them. The Arhat took up each difficulty and explained it. Déva, closely examining each word, pressed his difficulties in the way of cross-examination, till after the seventh round of discussion the Arhat closed his mouth and declined (was unable) to reply. Then using secretly his divine faculties, he passed into the Tushita heaven, and there questioned Maitrêya. Maitrêya gave the required explanations, but because of their character he added, "This is the celebrated Déva who for a succession of kalpas has practised religion, and in the middle of the Bhadra-kalpa ought to attain the condition of Buddha. You do not know this. You should greatly honour him and pay him reverence."

In a moment he returned to his seat, and once more entered on a clear explanation (of the difficulties), which he expressed in great precision and language. Déva addressing him said, "This is the explanation of the holy wisdom of Maitrêya Bôdhisattva. It is not possible for you, reverend sir, to have discovered such profound answers." Then the Arhat said, "It is so, in truth; the will of Tathâgata." On this, rising from his mat, he offered him worship and profound reverence and praise.

Going from this south, we enter a wild forest district, and passing 1500 or 1600 li, we come to the country of Ta-lo-pi-ch’a (Drâvida).

**TA-LO-PI-CH’A (DRÁVIDA).**

This country is about 6000 li in circuit; the capital of the country is called Kâñchipura (Kin-chi-pu-lo), and is about 30 li round. The soil is fertile and regularly cultivated, and produces abundance of grain. There are

117 Or, do you not know this?
118 This must be Conjiveram. I do not think the text in Hwul-lih can be construed as Julien takes it, "the town of Kin-chi is situated on a port of the sea." The original runs thus: "The town of Kin-chi is the opening (mouth) of the southern sea of India, and in the direction of Siñhala the water journey is three days." It seems to imply that Conjiveram was the central town from which the traffic to Ceylon was conducted.
also many flowers and fruits. It produces precious gems and other articles. The climate is hot, the character of the people courageous. They are deeply attached to the principles of honesty and truth, and highly esteem learning; in respect of their language and written characters, they differ but little from those of Mid-India. There are some hundred of saṅghārāmas and 10,000 priests. They all study the teaching of the Sthavira (Chang-tso-pu) school belonging to the Great Vehicle. There are some eighty Dēva temples, and many heretics called Nirgranthas. Tathāgata in olden days, when living in the world, frequented this country much; he preached the law here and converted men, and therefore AŚoka-rāja built stūpas over all the sacred spots where these traces exist. The city of Kāñchipura is the native place of Dharmapāla Bōdhisattva. He was the eldest son of a great minister of the country. From his childhood he exhibited much cleverness, and as he grew up it increased and extended. When he became a young man, the king and queen condescended to entertain him at a (marriage) feast. On the evening of the day his heart was oppressed with sorrow, and being exceedingly afflicted, he placed himself before a statue of Buddha and engaged in earnest prayer (supplication). Moved by his extreme sincerity, the spirits removed him to a distance, and there he hid himself. After going many hundred li from this spot he came to a mountain convent, and sat down in the hall of Buddha. A priest happening to open the door, and seeing this youth, was in doubt whether he was a robber or not. After interrogating him on the point, the Bōdhisattva completely unboScored himself and told him the cause; moreover he asked permission to become a disciple. The priests were much astonished at the wonderful event, and forthwith granted his request. The king ordered search to be made for him in every direction, and at length finding out that Bōdhi-

120 Assumed the cap, toga virilis.
sattva had removed to a distance from the world, driven by the spirit (or, spirits), then he redoubled his deep reverence and admiration for him. From the time that Dharmapāla assumed the robes of a recluse, he applied himself with unflagging earnestness to learning. Concerning his brilliant reputation we have spoken in the previous records.

To the south of the city not a great way is a large saṅghārāma, in which men of the same sort, renowned for talent and learning, assemble and stop. There is a stūpa about 100 feet high which was built by Aśoka-rāja. Here Tathāgata, dwelling in old days, repeated the law and subdued the heretics, and converted both men and Dēvas in great number.

Going 3000 li or so south from this, we come to the country of Mō-lo-kiu-ch’a (Malakūṭa).

Mō-lo-kiu-ch’a (Malakūṭa).

This country is about 5000 li in circuit; the capital is about 40 li. The land and fields are impregnated with

---

121 Both here and in the preceding portion of the narrative the phrase used is shin fu, which may either mean “carried by spirits” (in the sense of divine spirits) or “driven by his own spirit.” Julien adopts the former rendering. We should in this case have expected to find the phrase kee Śhin, instead of shin. Hwui-lih, however, tells us that it was “a great king of the spirits” (one of the Mahādeva-rājas) that carried him away.

122 See ante, vol. i. p. 238. For some account of his writings, compare Hwui-lih, book iv. p. 191 (Jul.); see also note 87, book ix.

123 The distance given (3000 li or so) south from Conjiveram seems to be excessive. But none of the distances given by Hiuen Tsiang from kaurav are to be depended on. Compare, for example, the distance given from Charitra, in Orissa, to Ceylon, viz., about 20,000 li. This part of the pilgrim’s itinerary is beset with difficulties. In the text before us, the use of the symbol king would denote that he went personally to the Malakūṭa kingdom, but in Hwui-lih we are told that he heard only of this country, and his intention was evidently to embark, probably at the mouth of the Conjiveram river, for Ceylon, when he heard from the priests who came from that country to Kin-chi of the death of the king Rāja Buna Mugalān and the famine. Mr. Ferguson, assuming Nellore to have been the capital of Chōla (I may here notice, by the way, that the symbols used for this country are the same both in Hwui-lih and the Si-yu-ki, so that the “Djourya” adopted by Julien in the Life of Hiuen-Tsang is the same as “Tchoulyna” in the Si-yu-ki), is
salt, and the produce of the earth is not abundant. All
the valuables that are collected in the neighbouring islets
are brought to this country and analysed. The tempera-
ture is very hot. The men are dark complexioned. They
are firm and impetuous in disposition. Some follow the
true doctrine, others are given to heresy. They do not
see learning much, but are wholly given to commercial
gain. There are the ruins of many old convents, but only
the walls are preserved, and there are few religious fol-
lowers. There are many hundred Dēva temples, and a
multitude of heretics, mostly belonging to the Nirgranthas.

Not far to the east of this city is an old saṅghārāma
of which the vestibule and court are covered with wild
shrubs; the foundation walls only survive. This was
built by Mahēndra, the younger brother of Aśōka-rāja.

To the east of this is a stūpa, the lofty walls of which
are buried in the earth, and only the crowning part of the
cupola remains. This was built by Aśōka-rāja. Here
disposed to refer Kin-chi-pu-lo to Nāgapaṭṭaṇam, and so get over the
difficulty which arises from Hwui-
liih’s remark that “the town of Kin-
chi is at the sea-mouth on the
water-road to Ceylon,” and also the
distance from Nellore of 1500 or
1600 li. But this would involve us
in subsequent difficulties; the name of Kāṇṭhākura, moreover, is the
well-known equivalent for Conji-
veram, and it is impossible to dis-
regard this. M. V. de St. Martin,
relying on Hwui-liih, says (Mémoire,
p. 399) that Hiu-en-Tsian did not
go farther south than Kāṇṭhākura,
but, on the other hand, Dr. Burnell
is of opinion that Hiu-en-Tsian
returned from Malakūṭa to Kāṇṭhā-
kurā (Ind. Ant., vii. p. 39). It is
certain that on his way to the Kon-
kan he started from Drāvida; I am
disposed, therefore, to think that he
did not go farther south than Kin-
chi. In this case the subsequent
account he gives us of Malakūṭa,
Mount Malaya, and Potaraka, is
derived from hearsay. With regard
to Malakūṭa, Dr. Burnell has shown
(loc. cit.) that “this kingdom was
comprised roughly in the delta of the
Kāvērī.” This would lead us
to suppose that the capital was
somewhere near Kumbbhaghōram or
Āvār; but how then shall we ac-
count for the 3000 li of Hiu-en-
Tsiang’s the actual distance south
from Conjeveram to this neigh-
bourhood being only 150 miles, or,
at most, 1000 li. For an account
of Kumbbhaghōram, see Sewell, Lists
of Antiq. Remains in Madras,
vol. i. p. 274. Dr. Burnell gives
the name Malikūrām as possi-
bly that by which Kumbbhaghōram
was known in the seventh century
(ibid.). In a note the Chinese editor
remarks that Malakūṭa is also called
Chi-mo-lo; Julien restores this to
Tehimor (p. 121, n.), and also to
Tehimala “the Simour of M. Rein-
uard” (Jul., iii. 530). I have given
reasons for thinking that Chi-mo-lo
is the equivalent for Kūmīr (J. R.
Tathāgata in old days preached the law and exhibited his miraculous powers, and converted endless people. To preserve the traces of this event, this memorial tower was built. For years past it has exhibited spiritual signs, and what is wished for in its presence is sometimes obtained.

On the south of this country, bordering the sea, are the Mo-la-ye (Malaya) mountains, remarkable for their high peaks and precipices, their deep valleys and mountain torrents. Here is found the white sandal-wood tree and the Chan-l’an-ni-p’o (Chandanēva) tree. These two are much alike, and the latter can only be distinguished by going in the height of summer to the top of some hill, and then looking at a distance great serpents may be seen entwining it: thus it is known. Its wood is naturally cold, and therefore serpents twine round it. After having noted the tree, they shoot an arrow into it to mark it. In the winter, after the snakes have gone, the tree is cut down. The tree from which Kie-pu-lo (Karpūra) scent is procured, is in trunk like the pine, but different leaves and flowers and fruit. When the tree is first cut down and sappy, it has no smell; but when the wood gets dry, it forms into veins and splits; then in the middle is the scent, in appearance like mica, of the colour of frozen snow. This is what is called (in Chinese) long-nao-hiang, the dragon-brain scent.

124 These mountains, or this mountain, bordering on the sea, may either represent the Malabar Ghāṭa generally, or, more probably, the detached mass of the Ghāṭa south of the Koimbatur gap, apparently the true Malaya of the Paurānik lists. See Ind. Ant., vol. xiii. p. 38; Sewell, op. cit., p. 252. The term Ma-la-ya is also applied to a mountainous district in Ceylon, of which Adam’s Peak is the centre (Childers, Pāli Dict., sub voc.); compare J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xv. p. 336. It would seem, at any rate, if this district of Malaya, “bordering on the sea,” was a part of the kingdom of Malakūṭa, that the latter cannot be confined to the delta of the Kāvērī, but must be extended to the southern sea-coast. This would explain the alternative name of Chi-mo-lo (Kumārī). Malaya means any “mountainous region.”

125 That is, a tree “like the sandal-wood” (Jul., n. 1).

126 Compare Julien, note 2 (in loco), and Burnouf, Introd. to Buddhism, p. 620. The Malaya mountain is called Chandanaquri, part of the southern range of the Ghāṭa, because of the sandal-wood found there (Monier Williams, Sansc. Dict. s. v. Chandana).

127 That is, camphor.
To the east of the Malaya mountains is Mount Po-talo-kia (Potalaka).\textsuperscript{128} The passes of this mountain are very dangerous; its sides are precipitous, and its valleys rugged. On the top of the mountain is a lake; its waters are clear as a mirror. From a hollow proceeds a great river which encircles the mountain as it flows down twenty times and then enters the southern sea. By the side of the lake is a rock-palace of the Dévas. Here Avalôkitêśvara\textsuperscript{129} in coming and going takes his abode. Those who strongly desire to see this Bôdhisattva do not regard their lives, but, crossing the water (fording the streams), climb the mountain forgetful of its difficulties and dangers; of those who make the attempt there are very few who reach the summit. But even of those who dwell below the mountain, if they earnestly pray and beg to behold the god, sometimes he appears as Tsz'-tsai-t'-ien (Ísvâra-déva), sometimes under the form of a yôgi (a Pâniśupata); he addresses them with benevolent words and then they obtain their wishes according to their desires.

Going north-east from this mountain, on the border\textsuperscript{130} of the sea, is a town;\textsuperscript{131} this is the place from which they

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{128} The situation of this mountain has been discussed (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xv. p. 339 ff.
\textsuperscript{129} See vol. i. p. 60, n. 210.
\textsuperscript{130} The symbol used implies "a division of the sea," as though it were at a point where the sea divided into an eastern and western ocean.
\textsuperscript{131} There is no name given; it is simply stated there is a town from which they go to Ceylon. If it were intended to give the name Charitrapura to it, there would be no symbol between the word for "city or town" and the word "go." M. Julien's parenthesis has misled Dr. Burnell and others. Dr. Burnell has also argued on a mistaken translation as to the position of this town, which he identifies with Kâvérípaṭṭanaṃ (Ind. Ant., vol. vii. p. 40). Julien says, "Going from Malakûta in a north-eastern direction, on the borders of the sea is a town (called Che-li-ta-to, Charitrapura)." Conf. ante, p. 205, n. 55. But, in fact, the original states, "Going from this mountain, i.e., Mount Malaya, in a north-eastern direction, there is a town at the sea-dividing." So that Dr. Burnell's conclusions, so far as this part of his argument goes, are not supported by the text. On the other hand, it is stated by I-ting that "going west thirty days from Que-dáh, merchants used to arrive at Nâgavadana, whence after two days' voyage they reach Ceylon" (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. xiii. p. 562). This looks as though Nâgapaṭṭanaṃ were the town referred to by Hûuen Tsiang.
\end{flushright}
start for the southern sea and the country of Sāng-kia-lo (Ceylon). It is said commonly by the people that embarking from this port and going south-east about 3000 li we come to the country of Simhala.

END OF BOOK X.
BOOK XI.

Contains an account of twenty-three kingdoms, viz., (1) Sāng-kia-lo; (2) Kong-kien-na-po-lo; (3) Mo-ho-la-cha; (4) Po-lu-kie-che-p'o; (5) Mo-la-p'o; (6) O-cha-li; (7) Kie-ch'a; (8) Fa-la-pi; (9) O-nan-to-pu-lo; (10) Su-la-cha; (11) Kiu-che-lo; (12) U-shy-en-na; (13) Chi-kie-to; (14) Mo-hi-chi-fa-lo-po-lo; (15) Sin-to; (16) Mo-lo-san-pu-lo; (17) Po-fa-to; (18) O-tien-p'o-chi-lo; (19) Long-kie-lo; (20) Po-la-se; (21) Pi-to-chi-lo; (22) O-fan-cha; (23) Fa-la-na.

SĀNG-KIA-LO (SĪMHALA).\(^1\)

The kingdom of Siṃhala is about 7000 li in circuit;\(^2\) the capital is about 40 li round. The soil is rich and fertile; the climate is hot; the ground is regularly cultivated; flowers and fruits are produced in abundance. The population is numerous; their family possessions are rich in revenues. The stature of the men is small. They are black complexioned\(^3\) and fierce by nature. They love learning and esteem virtue. They greatly honour religious excellence, and labour in the acquisition of religious merit.

\(^{1}\) Siṃhala or Ceylon was not visited by Hiuen Tsang, for reasons given in the last book. Fa-hian, however, resided in the island for two years (cap. 49). For the various names by which this island has been known, we may refer to Vincent (Navigation of the Ancients, &c.) Colonel Yule doubts whether we owe the name Ceylon or Selian to Siṃhala (Marco Polo, ii. p. 254, note 1). Childers traces the derivation of the word Elu to this name Siḥala (Notes on the Sinhalese Language). See Ind. Ant., vol. xiii. pp. 33 ff.

\(^{2}\) For the exaggerated reports concerning the size of this island, we may refer to Tennent's Ceylon, cap. i., and Yule, Marco Polo (vol. ii. p. 254, n. 1). The circuit of the island is really under 700 miles. We must therefore allow 10 li to the mile if Hiuen Tsiang's statement is to be received. Fa-hian is much more nearly correct in his figures, but in his account we must substitute length for breadth (cap. 37).

\(^{3}\) This must refer to the Tamil population. The Siṃhalese are tall and comparatively fair.
This country was originally (called) Pāo-chu⁴ (Ratnadvipa), because of the precious gems found there. It was occupied by evil spirits.⁵

After this there was a king of a country of Southern India, whose daughter was affianced in a neighbouring country. On a fortunate day, having paid a complimentary visit, she was returning when a lion met her on the way. The servants of the guard left her and fled from the danger. Resting alone in her car, her heart was resigned to death. At this time the lion king, taking the woman on his back, went away and entered a lone valley in the deep mountains.⁶ He caught the deer and gathered the fruits according to their season, with which to nourish her. In the course of time she brought into the world a boy and a girl. In form and features they resembled human beings, but in disposition they were like the beast tribes.

The youth gradually grew up, and was possessed of great bodily strength, so that he could subdue the wildest

⁴ That is, the "isle or islet of gems." So it was called by the Arabs of the ninth century (Yule, op. cit., p. 255). The Javanese word for precious stone is selu, and from this, some think, comes the word Sālāna or Ceylon (ibid.). In any case the name itself, "gem-island," was an old one; the regular formation would give us Ratnadvipa.

⁵ The construction of the text and context is a little unusual. It seems to imply that because the island abundantly possessed gems and precious stones, it was a resting-place for demons and spirits, or demons. Of course it refers to the Rakshasas or Yakkhins. Comp. Weber, Rāmāyana, p. 25 (Boyd’s translation).

⁶ For notices of this legend see Prof. Vasconcellos Abreu, Fragmentos d’uma tentativa de Estudo scolástico da Epopeia Portugueza (Lisboa, 1880), pp. 40-75; or Ind. Ant., vol. xiii. pp. 33 ff.; Dīpankara, ch. ix.; Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. i. p. 241 n.; Burnouf, Introd., pp. 198 f. It owes its origin probably to the rape of a woman during a seaboard raid. Some of the northern tribes (invaders of India) affected the name of lion (sīṁha or li). Compare Fo-sho, v. 1788. There are three events (obscure in themselves, yet perhaps connected) which happened in India about the time of Buddha: (1.) The invasion of north-west of India by the Vṛjījī; (2.) the incursion of Yāvanas into Orissa; (3.) the invasion and conquest of Ceylon by Vījaya. These events may have had a mutual relationship; the pressure of the Vṛjījīs from the north-west would drive the intermediate tribes on Orissa, and from Orissa some of the adventurers would start for fresh conquests by sea. Precisely similar events occurred in the west a few centuries afterwards. Compare Fergusson, Cave Temples of India, p. 58; Beal, Abstract of Four Lectures, Introduction, ix., z., xi., and also the sculptures in the Gānāśa Gumpa and
beasts. When he came to man's estate, the wisdom of his manhood also came, and he asked his mother, saying, "What am I to be called? My father is a savage beast, and my mother is a human creature. But as you differ in kind, how can you have lived together?" Then the mother related the old story, and told it to her son. Her son, replying, said, "Men and beasts are of different kinds. We ought to hasten away from this." The mother replied, "I should have fled long ago, but I cannot help myself." Then the son from that time forth stopped at home whenever his father, the lion, roamed forth through the mountain passes, with a view to escape the difficult (position in which they were placed). And now on a certain occasion, his father having gone forth, he proceeded to carry away his mother and sister to a village inhabited by men. The mother then said, "You ought, both of you, to keep this matter secret, and say nothing about the first transaction, for if people were to come to hear of it, they would lightly esteem us."

On this she returned to her father's country, but it no longer belonged to her family, and the sacrifices of her ancestors had all died out. Having taken refuge in the town, all the men addressed her, saying, "From what kingdom do you come?" She said, "I belong to this country. Having wandered through strange places, we have come back, mother and son together (to our home)."

Then the village people were moved with pity, and provided them with necessary food. And now the lion king returning to his place, saw no one there. Thinking with affection of his son and daughter, he was moved with rage, and went away through the mountains and valleys, and roamed through the towns and villages, roaring frightfully and destroying the people, slaughtering and mangling every living thing. The town-folk went forth,
therefore, to pursue and capture him, in order to kill him. They beat the drums, sounded the conch, and with their bows and spears formed a large company; but yet they lagged behind (delayed) in order to escape danger. Then the king, fearing that their courage was little,\(^8\) organised a band of hunters to capture the lion. He himself went with an army consisting of the four kinds of troops, amounting to tens of thousands, and beat through the woods and jungle, and traversed the mountains and valleys \((in \, search \, of \, their \, prey)\). The lion raising his terrible roar, men and beasts flee in consternation.

Not being captured in the hunt, the king again made a proclamation, and promised that whoever captured the lion and freed the country from the affliction should be largely rewarded and his reputation widely published.

The son, hearing the royal decree, spake to his mother and said, "We have suffered much from hunger and cold. I certainly will answer to the appeal. Perhaps we may thus get enough to support us."

The mother said, "You ought not to think of it; for though he is a beast, yet he is still your father. What though we be wretched through want? this is no reason why you should encourage a wicked and murderous thought."\(^9\)

The son said, "Men and beasts are of a different kind. What room is there for the question of propriety in such a matter as this? Why should such a thought interfere with my plan?" So seizing a knife and concealing it in his sleeve, he went forth to answer to the appeal. On this a thousand people and ten thousand horsemen assembled in crowds \((like \, the \, clouds \, and \, vapour)\). The lion lay hid in the forest, and no one dared to approach him. On this the son forthwith advanced to him, and the father, tame and crouching, forgot in his sense of loving affection all

\(^8\) The virtue \((viz., \, of \, manliness)\)

\(^9\) Wicked, \(i.e., \, unnatural, \, against \, nature.\)
his previous hate. Then he (*the son*) plunged the knife into the middle of his bowels, but he still exhibited the same love and tenderness, and was free from all anger or revengeful feeling even when his belly was ripped up, and he died in agony.\(^{10}\)

The king then said, "Who is this man who has done such a wonderful deed?" Allured by promises of reward on the one hand, and alarmed by fear of punishment on the other, if he kept back anything, he at last revealed the whole from beginning to end, and told the touching story without reserve. The king said, "Thou wretch! if thou wouldest kill thy father, how much more those not related to thee! Your deserts indeed are great for delivering my people from the savage cruelty of a beast whose (*passions*) it is difficult to assuage, and whose hateful tempers are easily aroused; but to kill your own father, this is a rebellious (*unnatural*) disposition. I will reward your good deed largely, but you shall be banished from the country as the punishment of your crime. Thus the laws will not be infringed and the king's words not violated." On this he prepared two large ships (*boats*) in which he stored much provision (*cured rice or other grain*). The mother he detained in the kingdom, and provided her with all necessary things as the reward of the service done. The son and daughter each were placed in a separate boat, and abandoned to the chance of the waves and the wind. The boat in which the son was embarked, driven over the sea, came to this Ratnadvīpa. Seeing it abounded in precious gems, he took up his abode here.

Afterwards merchants seeking for gems frequently came to the island. He then killed the merchant chief and detained his children. Thus he extended his race. His sons and grandsons becoming numerous, they pro-

---

10 The cave pictures from Ajanṭā given in Mrs. Speir's *Life in Ancient India*, pp. 300 ff. seem to refer to the history of Viṣṇu and the "lion" legend; see also Burgess, *Cave Temples, &c.*, pp. 312 f.
ceeded to elect a king and ministers and to divide the people into classes. They then built a city and erected towns, and seized on the territory by force; and because their original founder got his name by catching a lion, they called the country (after his name) Simhala.

The boat in which the girl was embarked was driven over the sea till it reached Persia (Po-la-sse), the abode of the western demons, who by intercourse with her engendered a clan of women-children, and therefore the country is now called the Country of the Western Women;—this is the reason.

The men of the Simhā kingdom are small in stature and black-complexioned; they have square chins and high foreheads; they are naturally fierce and impetuous, and cruelly savage without hesitation. This is from their inherited disposition as descended from a beast; but another version of the story is that they are very brave and courageous.

The records of the Buddhist religion say: In the middle of a great iron city of this Ratnadvipa (P’ao-chu) was the dwelling of the Rākshasi women (Lo-t’sa). On the towers of this city they erected two high flagstaffs with lucky or unlucky signals, which they exhibited according to circumstances (to allure mariners), when merchants came to the island (Ratnadvipa). Then they changed themselves into beautiful women, holding flowers and scents, and with the sound of music they went forth to meet them, and caressingly invited them

11 Chih-sse-tecu, lion-catching; this seems also to be the meaning of simhala, where la means to catch or take. The Dipavamsa brings Vijaya, the son of Siūsha, from Simhapura in Lāja (Gujarat).

12 “If circumstances were propitious, they agitated the lucky flag or drapery; if they were unfortunate or unlucky, they moved the unpromising signal.” It would seem to mean that if a ship drew near the shore as if to anchor, then the favourable flag or signal was shown; but if she kept away on her voyage, then the unfavourable signal was displayed. Or it may mean that the signal was to allure mariners.

13 The curious parallel between the ways of these Rākshasas and the Sirens has attracted frequent notice. Compare Pausanias, book x. cap. vi. Σειρήνων νῆσος ἀνάπλως ὁμήρων, viz., of those who had listened to their songs. Homer, Odys.,
to enter the iron city; then having shared with them all sorts of pleasure, they shut them up in an iron prison, and devoured them at their leisure.

At this time there was a great merchant of Jambudvipa called Sāng-kia (Simha) whose son was called Sāng-kia-la (Simhala). His father having grown old, he was deputed to take charge of the house (family); he embarked, therefore, with 500 merchants to seek for precious stones; driven by the winds and waves, they came to Ratnadvipa.

Then the Rākshasis, displaying the lucky signal, began to wave it, and went forth with scents and flowers and the sound of music to meet them, and invite them to enter the iron city. The prince of the merchants accordingly, matched with the queen of the Rākshasis, gave himself up to pleasure and indulgence. The other merchants also selected each one a companion, and so, in the course of time, a son was born to each. After this, the Rākshasis, feeling tired of their old partners' love, (were preparing to) shut them up in the iron prison, and to seek new companions among other merchants.

At this time, Sāng-kia-la, moved in the night by an evil dream, and impressed with a sense of its bad augury, sought some mode of escape, and coming to the iron stronghold, he heard the sounds of piteous cries within. Forthwith he climbed a great tree, and questioned them, saying, "Who are you thus bound, and why these miserable cries?" They replied, "Do you not know then that the women who occupy this place are all Rākshasis? In former days, they allured us to enter the city with festive sounds of music, but when you arrived, they shut us up in this prison, and are gradually devouring our flesh. Now we are half eaten up; your turn too will soon come."

xii. 178, &c., with the account in Ind. Antiq., vol. x, p. 291, and the text and in the Romantic Academy, Aug. 13, 1881, pp. 120, Legend of Buddha, p. 339. See also 121.
Then Sāng-kia-la (Sinhal) said, "By what device then may we escape this danger?" They replied, and said, "We hear that on the sea-board there is a divine horse;¹⁴ and whoever prays with supreme faith he will safely carry him across."

Sinhal having heard this, secretly told the merchants his companions to assemble altogether on the sea-shore and there to offer up fervent prayers for deliverance. Then the divine horse came and addressed the men and said, "Each one of you grasp my hairy coat and look not behind; then will I deliver you and transport you across the sea out of danger's way. I will conduct you back to Jambudvīpa, to your happy homes (country)."

Then the merchants, obeying his directions, did each one implicitly as commanded. They seized the hairy coat (of the divine horse). Then he mounted aloft, traversed through the clouds, and passed the sea to the other side.

Then the Rākshasīs, perceiving all at once their husbands had escaped, spake one to another in surprise, and asked where they had gone. Then, taking each her child, they traversed to and fro the air. Perceiving, then, that the merchants had just left the shore, they issued a general order to unite in their flight to follow them. Not an hour had passed but they encountered them, and then, with mingled joy and tears, they came, and for a time restraining their grief they said, "We thought ourselves happy when first we met you, and made it our care to provide you homes, and for long have loved and cherished you, but now you are departing and deserting your wives and children, leaving them desolate. Who can bear the terrible grief that afflicts us! We pray you stay your departure and turn again with us to the city."

¹⁴ The horse is called Kēśi in the Abhinishkrurama Sūtra (Romantic Legend, loc. cit.) The reference appears to be to the change of monsoon, which would favour the departure of merchants (see note in the Romantic Legend). Avalokiteśvara is often spoken of as a white horse, i.e., as one who came across the sea.
But the minds of the merchants were as yet unwilling to consent. The Râkshasis, seeing their words had no effect, had recourse to seductive blandishments, and by their conduct excited the feelings of the merchants; in consequence of which, being unable to suppress their tender emotions, their steadfastness forsook them, and, hesitating to go on, they paused, and at length returned in company with the Râkshasis. The women, saluting and congratulating each other, closely holding to the men, went back.

Now the wisdom of Simhala was deep, and his firm purpose remained unchanged, and so he succeeded in traversing the ocean, and thus escaped the danger.

Then the queen of the Râkshasis returned alone to the iron city; on which the other women addressing her said, "You are without wisdom or astuteness, and so you are abandoned by your husband; since you have so little cleverness or capacity you cannot dwell here." On this the Râkshasi queen, taking her child, hastened her flight after Simhala. She indulged before him in excessive blandishments and entreated him tenderly to return. But Simhala repeated with his mouth some spiritual charms, and with his hand brandishing a sword, he said, "You are a Râkshasi and I am a man, men and demons belong to different classes, there can be no union between such; if you trouble me further with your entreaties I will take your life."

The Râkshasi woman, knowing the uselessness of further parley, darted through the air and disappeared. Coming to Simhala's house, she addressed his father Simha, and said, "I am a king's daughter belonging to such and such a country. Simhala took me as his wife, and I have borne him a son. Having collected gems and goods, we were returning to my lord's country when the ship, driven by the winds and the sea, was lost, and only I, my child, and Simhala were saved. After crossing rivers and mountains with great difficulty, hungry and worn out, I
said a word displeasing to my husband, and I found myself deserted, and as he left me he let fall bitter words and raged on me as if he were a Rakshasa. If I attempt to return, my native country is a very long distance off; if I stop, then I am left alone in a strange place: staying or returning I am without support. I have, therefore, dared to tell you the true state of things."

Simha said, "If your words be true, you have done right." Then she entered the king's house to dwell there. Not long after Simhala came, and his father addressing him said, "How is it you esteemed riches and gems so much and made so little of your wife and child?" Simhala said, "This is a Rakshasi." Then he related the whole previous history to his father and mother; then his relatives, angry on account of the whole affair, turned on her to drive her away; on which the Rakshasi went to the king and entreated him. The king wished to punish Simhala, but Simhala said, "The delusive influence of Rakshasis is very great."

Moreover, the king, regarding his son's words as untrue, and being moved in his mind (feelings) by her fascination, addressed Simhala and said, "Since you have decided to reject this woman, I will now protect her in my after-palace." Simhala said, "I fear she will cause you some misfortune, for the Rakshasas eat only flesh and blood."

But the king would not listen to Simhala's words, and accordingly took her as his wife. In the middle of the night following this, flying away, she returned to Ratnadvipa, and calling together 500 Rakshasa demon women, they all came to the king's palace, and there, by means of destructive charms and sorceries, they killed all living things within the building and devoured their flesh and

---

15 Or, it may be, "as if I were a Rakshast," and so Julien translates it. In this case we should supply the symbol nia (woman); but I observe that in the previous sentence where Simhala draws his sword he calls her a Rakshasa, not a Rakshast, so that either translation is correct.
drank their blood, whilst they carried off the rest of the corpses and with them returned to the "island of gems."

The next day, early, all the ministers were assembled at the king's gates, which they found fast closed, and not able to be opened. After waiting a long time, and not hearing any sounds of voices within, they burst open the doors and gates, and pressed forward together (into the house). Coming to the palace hall, they found no living thing therein but only gnawed bones. The officers looking at one another in astonishment, then bent down their heads in their confusion, and uttered lamentable cries. Being unable to fathom the cause of the calamity that had happened, Simhala related to them from beginning to end the whole story. The ministers and people then saw from whence the evil came.

On this, the ministers of the country, the aged men and different officers, inquired in order as to the best person to appoint to the high dignity (of the throne). All looked in the direction of Simhala, (so conspicuous for) religious merit and wisdom. Then speaking together, they said, "With respect to a ruler, the selection is no trivial matter; he needs to be devout and wise, and at the same time of quick natural parts. If he be not good and wise, he would not be able to give lustre to the succession; if he have no natural parts (skill or tact), how could he direct the affairs of state? Now this Simhala appears to be such a man: he discovered in a dream the origin of the calamity;16 by the effect of his virtue he encountered the divine horse, and he has loyally warned the king of his danger. By his prudence he has preserved himself; the succession should be his."

The result of the deliberation being known, the people joyfully raised him to the honourable position of king. Simhala was desirous of declining the honour, but was

16 Viz., of the Rakshasas.
not able to do so. Then keeping to the middle course, he respectfully saluted the different officers of state, and forthwith accepted the kingly estate. On this, he corrected the former abuses, and promoted to honour the good and virtuous; then he made the following decree, "My old merchant friends are in the country of the Râkshasis, but whether alive or dead I cannot tell. But in either case I will set out to rescue them from their danger; we must equip an army. To avert calamities and to help the unfortunate, this is the merit of a kingdom; to preserve treasures of precious stones and jewels, is the advantage of a state."

On this he arrayed his troops and embarked. Then on the top of the iron city the evil flag was agitated. 17

Then the Râkshasis seeing it, were filled with fear, and putting in practice their seducing arts, went forth to lead and cajole them. But the king, thoroughly understanding their false artifices, commanded the soldiers to recite some charmed words and to exhibit their martial bearing. Then the Râkshasis were driven back, and fled precipitately to rocky islets of the sea; others were swallowed up and drowned in the waves. On this they destroyed the iron city and broke down the iron prison; they delivered the captive merchants, obtained large stores of jewels and precious stones, and then summoning the people to change their abodes, he (Sînhalā) founded his capital in the "island of gems," built towns, and so found himself at the head of a kingdom. Because of the king's name the country was called Sînhalā. This name is also connected with the Jūtakas, relating to Śâkya Tathāgata.

The kingdom of Sînhalā formerly was addicted to immoral religious worship, but after the first hundred years following Buddha's death the younger brother of Aśoka-rāja, Mahendra by name, giving up worldly desires,

17 It would seem that "the evil flag" was a signal to warn the Râkshasis of danger.
sought with ardour the fruit of Arhatship. He gained possession of the six supernatural powers and the eight means of liberation; and having the power of instant locomotion, he came to this country. He spread the knowledge of the true law and widely diffused the bequeathed doctrine. From his time there has fallen on the people a believing heart, and they have constructed 100 convents, containing some 20,000 priests. They principally follow the teaching of Buddha, according to the dhārma of the Sthavira (Shang-t's'o-pu) school of the Mahāyāna sect.\textsuperscript{18} When 200 years had elapsed,\textsuperscript{19} through discussion, the one school was divided into two. The former, called the Mahāvihāravāsīnas\textsuperscript{20} (Mo-ho-pi-ho-lo-chu-pu), was opposed to the Great Vehicle and adhered to the teaching of the Little Vehicle; the other was called Abhayagirivāsīnas ('O-p'o-ye-k'i-li-chu-pu);\textsuperscript{21} they studied both vehicles, and widely diffused the Tripitakas. The priests attended to the moral rules, and were distinguished for their power of abstraction and their wisdom.\textsuperscript{22} Their correct conduct was an example for subsequent ages; their manners grave and imposing.

\textsuperscript{18} The Mahāyāna, or Great Vehicle, is generally supposed to have been unknown in the Southern school; but it is an elastic term, and in the present instance would refer probably to the developed doctrine (in what direction we hardly know) of the old school of the Sthaviras or elders.

\textsuperscript{19} That is, as it seems, two hundred years after the introduction of Buddhism into Ceylon. If so, the period referred to would be about the time of the reduction of the three pīṭakas to writing in Ceylon, viz., B.C. 75. Does the phrase just following this, “they widely diffused the Tripitakas,” refer to this event?

\textsuperscript{20} This school evidently followed the teaching of the Mahāvihāra priests. The Mahāvihāra was about 7 li to the south of the capital Anurādhapura. It was built by Déva-nampiyatissa, about 250 B.C. (Fa-hian, c. 39.) Compare Dipavamsa (Oldenberg), xix. 10. Oldenberg makes some remarks respecting the Athākāthā preserved in this monastery, op. cit. Introd., pp. 6, 7. See for some notice of the vihāra, Beal, Fa-hian, p. 159, n. 1.

\textsuperscript{21} For some account of the Abhayagiri vihāra see Dipavamsa, xix. 14, 17; Beal’s Fa-hian, p. 151, n. 1. It seems to have been the vihāra in which the tooth-relic was exhibited, Fa-hian, 157.

\textsuperscript{22} “Meditative powers” and “wisdom.” This would indicate a developed form of belief. It corresponds to the chi kuan school of Tien-tai in China. The same steps which led to the formation of the school there may have marked the development in Ceylon. It represents a compromise between quietism and practice of rules.
By the side of the king’s palace is the vihāra of Buddha’s tooth, several hundred feet high, brilliant with jewels and ornamented with rare gems. Above the vihāra is placed an upright pole on which is fixed a great Padma rāja (ruby) jewel. This gem constantly sheds a brilliant light, which is visible night and day for a long distance, and afar off appears like a bright star. The king three times a day washes the tooth of Buddha with perfumed water, sometimes with powdered perfumes. Whether washing or burning, the whole ceremony is attended with a service of the most precious jewels.

[The country of Simhala, formerly called the Kingdom of Lions, is also called the Sorrowless Kingdom; it is the same as South India. This country is celebrated for its precious gems; it is also called Ratnadvipa. Formerly, when Śākyamuni Buddha took an apparitional body called Simhala, all the people, and priests, in honour of his character, made him king, and therefore the country was called Simhala. By his mighty spiritual power he destroyed the great iron city and subdued the Rākhasi women, and rescued the miserable and distressed, and then founded a city, and built towns, and converted this district. In order to disseminate the true doctrine, he left a tooth to be kept in this land, firm as a diamond, indestructible through ages. It ever scatters its light like the stars or the moon in the sky, or, as brilliant as the sun, it lights up the night. All those who fast and pray in its presence obtain answers, like the echo (answers the voice). If the country is visited by calamity, or famine, or other plague, by use of earnest religious prayer, some

---

23 For some notice of the rubies of Ceylon, see Marco Polo, book iii. cap. xiv.
24 Or, every day thrice washes, &c.
25 This and the following paragraphs are interpolated in the text; they belong to the time of the Ming dynasty (third year of Yung-lo, A.D. 1405). I have translated a portion of the passage, the rest will be found in a note at the end of this Book xi.
26 Or the Aśoka kingdom. Compare the Aśoka garden of Rāvana, in the Rāmāyana.
27 To do him honour.
spiritual manifestation ever removes the evil. It is now called Si-lan-mount, but formerly Simhala country.

By the side of the king's palace is the vihåra of Buddha's tooth, which is decorated with every kind of gem, the splendour of which dazzles the sight like that of the sun. For successive generations worship has been respectfully offered to this relic, but the present king of the country, called A-li-fun-nai-'rh (Alibunar?), a man of So-li (Chôla), is strongly attached to the religion of the heretics and does not honour the law of Buddha; he is cruel and tyrannical, and opposed to all that is good. The people of the country, however, still cherish the tooth of Buddha.

By the side of the vihåra of Buddha's tooth is a little vihåra which is also ornamented with every kind of precious stone. In it is a golden statue of Buddha; it was cast by a former king of the country, and is of the size of life. He afterwards ornamented the head-dress (the ushnisha) with a precious gem.

In course of time there was a robber who formed the design to carry off the precious stone, but as it was guarded by a double door and a surrounding balustrade, the thief resolved to tunnel out an entrance underneath the obstacles, and so to enter the vihåra and take the jewel. Accordingly he did so, but on attempting to seize the gem, the figure gradually raised itself higher, and outreached the grasp of the thief. He, then, finding his efforts of no avail, in departing sighed out thus, "Formerly when Tathågata was practising the life of a Bôdhisattva, he cherished in himself a great heart and vowed that for

---

28 Si-lan-shan. Shan corresponds to girî, the name therefore would be Silangiri, reminding us of the Sirenum scopuli of Virgil, Æn. v. 864. It is evident that this name was given to Ceylon before the Portuguese arrived in India.

29 This has been already stated in the previous section. For an account of Buddha's tooth and the vihåra, see Beal's Fañian, p. 153, n. 1.; Eastern Monachism, by Spence Hardy, pp. 224, 226.

30 For Soli see Marco Polo (Yule), vol. ii. p. 272. The Chôlas had just before this conquered the Pallavas.

31 The rest of this passage will be found at the end of this book (xi.)
the sake of the four kinds of living things he would of his compassion give up everything, from his own life down to his country and its towns. But now the statue which stands in his place (bequeathed) grudges to give up the precious stone. His words, weighed against this, do not seem to illustrate his ancient conduct.” On this the statue lowered its head and let him take the gem. The thief having got it, went to the merchants to sell it; on which they all exclaimed and said, “This is the gem which our former king placed on the head-dress of the golden statue of Buddha. Where have you got it from, that you want to sell it surreptitiously to us?” Then they took him to the king and stated the case. The king then asked him from whom he had procured the gem, on which the thief said, “Buddha himself gave it to me. I am no robber.” The king not believing him, ordered a messenger to be sent immediately to ascertain the truth. On arriving he found the head of the statue still bent down. The king seeing the miracle, his heart was affected by a sincere and firm faith. He would not punish the man, but bought the gem again from him, and ornamented with it the head-dress of the statue. Because the head of the figure was thus bent on that occasion, it remains so until now.

By the side of the king’s palace there is built a large kitchen, in which daily is measured out food for eight thousand priests. The meal-time having come, the priests arrive with their pātras to receive their allowance. Having received and eaten it, they return, all of them, to their several abodes. Ever since the teaching of Buddha reached this country, the king has established this charity, and his successors have continued it down to our times. But during the last ten years or so the country has been in confusion, and there has been no established ruler to attend to this business.

32 Fa-hian also alludes to this charitable mode of feeding the priests, p. 155, op. cit.
In a bay on the coast of the country the land is rich in gems and precious stones. The king himself goes (there) to perform religious services, on which the spirits present him with rare and valuable objects. The inhabitants of the capital come, seeking to share in the gain, and invoke the spirits for that purpose. What they obtain is different according to their religious merit. They pay a tax on the pearls they find, according to their quantity.

On the south-east corner of the country is Mount Laṅkā. Its high crags and deep valleys are occupied by spirits that come and go; it was here that Tathāgata formerly delivered the Ling-kia-king (Laṅka Sūtra or Laṅkāvatāra).

Passing seawards to the south of this country some

33 Marco Polo (cap. xvi.) alludes to the pearl-fisheries off the west coast of Ceylon. He mentions Bettelar as the place of rendezvous. Colonel Yule thinks that this is Putlam, the Pattāla of Ibu Batuta. With reference to the account given by Marco Polo of the fishery, it is curious how, in all its particulars (except that of the charmers) it agrees with the arrangements of the pearl-fishery at La Paz, on the coast of Lower California. I have visited that fishery, and inquired into its management. The merchants fit out the boats and pay the gangs of divers (armadores); the shells are brought up in the same way as described by Marco Polo. The heap each day is divided into three parts—one for the State (estado), one for the Church (The Virgin), one for the chief merchant (armador), or sometimes, when the divers do not receive pay, they have a proportion of the last heap for themselves. The sharks which abound at La Paz can be seen swimming in the neighbourhood (so clear is the water under a cloudless and rainless sky), but the divers fear only one kind, which they call the Tintero (the tiger shark). They dive just as Marco Polo describes, and I may add that I never found one of them (experts though they were) remain down more than 58 seconds.

34 Laṅkā is sometimes spoken of as a city, sometimes as a mountain, and at other times applied to the whole island. Moreover, it is sometimes distinguished from Ceylon, and described as on the same meridian as Ujjayini. The mountain is spoken of as three-peaked (trikāta) in the Rāmāyana. It was the abode of Rāvana.

35 The Laṅkāvatāra Sūtra or the Saddharma Laṅkāvatāra Sūtra belongs to the later development and is of a mystical character. It refers everything to "the heart," which is simply the all-pervading atman. There are three translations of the sūtra in China; see B. Nanjio, Catalogue, 175, 176, 177. The title of 176, the "entering-Laṅkā-sūtra," would almost justify us in considering this sūtra as belonging to Vaishnavism. Bodhidharma, who arrived in China, A.D. 526, from South India, attached his faith to the teaching of this sūtra; it was therefore composed before his time. The earliest translation in China (No. 175) dates from A.D. 443, but this is
thousands of li, we arrive at the island of Narakira (Na-lo-ki-lo). The people of this island are small of stature, about three feet high; their bodies are those of men, but they have the beaks of birds; they grow no grain, but live only on cocoa-nuts.

Crossing the sea westward from this island several thousands of li, on the eastern cliff of a solitary island is a stone figure of Buddha more than 100 feet high. It is sitting facing the east. In the head-ornament (ushnīsha) is a stone called Yueh-ngai-chu (Chandra-kānta). When the moon begins to wane, water immediately runs down from this in a stream along the sides of the mountain, and along the ravines of the precipices.

At one time there was a band of merchants who were driven by the winds and waves during a storm, till they reached this solitary island. The sea-water being salt, they were unable to drink it, and were parched with thirst for a long time. But now on the fifteenth day, when the moon was full, from the head of the image water began to trickle forth, and they obtained deliverance. They all thought that a miracle had been wrought, and were affected with a profound faith; they

incomplete; the next (No. 176) dates from A.D. 513; the third from A.D. 700. The following quotation from Csoma Kőrösi is found in Spence Hardy's Manual of Buddhism, p. 356. "The second treatise or sūtra in the fifth volume of the Mdo is entitled in Sanskrit Ārya Lasūkāvatāra mahāyāna Sūtra, a venerable sūtra of high principles (or speculation) on the visiting of Lankā. This was delivered at the request of the lord of Lankā by Shākya, when he was in the city of Lankā on the top of the Malaya mountain, on the seashore, together with many priests and Boddhisattvas." It is stated by Hodgson that the Lasūkāvatāra is regarded in Nepal as the fourth dharma; "it consists of 3000 slocas, and states that Rāvana, lord of Lankā, having gone to the Malayagiri mountain, there heard the history of the Buddhas from Śakyamuni, and obtained Boddhīmāna" (ibid.) Lāṅkāgiri, then, is probably the same as Mount Potaraka spoken of at the end of the tenth book. 36 Perhaps the Maldive Islands; but see Yule, Marco Polo, ii. 249. Nārikera means cocoa-nut.

37 Julien translates, "when the moon is about to reflect its light from this jewel (d'y refléchir sa lumière);" but the literal rendering is, "when the moon is about to turn back its light," that is, "to wane."
determined then to delay on the island. Some days having elapsed, as soon as the moon began to be hidden behind the high steeps, the water did not flow out. Then the merchant-chief said, “It cannot have been specially on our account that the water ran down. I have heard that there is a pearl ‘loved by the moon,’ when the moon’s rays shine full on it, then the water begins to flow from it. The gem on the top of the statue of Buddha must be one of this sort.” Then having climbed the mountain to examine the case, they saw that it was a Chandrakânta pearl in the head-ornament of the figure. This is the origin of the story as it was told by those men.

Crossing the sea many thousand li to the west of this country, we come to a large island renowned for its precious stones (or Mahâratnadvipâ); it is not inhabited, except by spirits. Seen from a distance on a calm night, a light seems to shine from mountains and valleys. Merchants going there are much surprised to find nothing can be procured.

Leaving the country of Ta-lo-pi-ch’a (Drâvida) and travelling northwards, we enter a forest wild, in which are a succession of deserted towns, or rather little villages. Brigands, in concert together, wound and capture (or delay) travellers. After going 2000 li or so we come to Kong-kin-na-pu-lo (Koñkanâpura).

KONG-KIN-NA-PU-LO (KOÑKANÂPURA).

This country is about 5000 li in circuit. The capital is

---

38 Both General Cunningham and Mr. Ferguson give the direction north-west. This is a mistake (Anc. Geog., p. 552; J. R. A. S., vi. 266); but Hwul-lih has north-west. He moreover says that the pilgrim returned to the north-west. If we adopt the reading north, then the route would be a return one. The origin, as it seems, of the error in direction must be traced to M. V. de St. Martin (Mémoire, p. 400), who seems to adopt Hwul-lih’s text as his guide.

39 The passage may also be translated “passing through (or by) a deserted town and many little villages.”

40 Hwul-lih gives Kin-na-pu-lo, although in Julien we find Kong-kin-na-pu-lo. It may be an error in the text. In the passage before us
3000 li or so round. The land is rich and fertile; it is regularly cultivated, and produces large crops. The climate is hot; the disposition of the people ardent and quick. Their complexion is black, and their manners fierce and uncultivated. They love learning, and esteem virtue and talent. There are about 100 saṅghārāmas, with some 10,000 priests (followers). They study both the Great and the Little Vehicle. They also highly reverence the Dēvas, and there are several hundred temples in which many sectaries dwell together.

By the side of the royal palace is a great saṅghārāma with some 300 priests, who are all men of distinction. This convent has a great vihāra, a hundred feet and more in height. In it is a precious tiara belonging to Sarvārthasiddha (Yih-tsai-i-sh'ing) the prince. It is somewhat less than two feet in height, and is ornamented with gems and precious stones. It is kept in a jewelled casket. On fast-days it is brought out and placed on a high throne. They offer to it flowers and incense, on which occasions it is lit up with radiance.

By the side of the city is a great saṅghārāma in which is a vihāra about 50 feet high. In this is a figure of Maitrēya Bōdhisattva carved out of sandal-wood. It is about ten feet high. This also on fast-days reflects a bright light. It is the work of the Arhat Wen'-rh-pih-i (Śrūtvimśatikōṭi).

the country is Kong-kin-na-pu-lo, which is restored by Julien to Kon-kaṇāpura. It is stated that this country is in Southern India. There is no agreement as to the site of the capital. V. de St. Martin takes the pilgrim north-west to Vānavāsi (Mémoire, p. 401). General Cunningham thinks that Anagundi on the northern bank of the Tuṅga-bhadrā river is the place indicated (Anc. Geog., p. 552), whilst Mr. Fergusson would take the pilgrim from Nāgapaṭṭan to the centre of the Maisūr plateau somewhere east of Bednore (J. R. A. S., N.S., vol. vi. p. 267). Assuming, however, that his route was north, and that he was returning towards the neighbourhood of Chānda, we should have to look for the capital of Kong-kin-na near Golkonda.

41 For some reference to this person see ante, p. 187, n. 3. It seems likely that the allusion in the text is to Sona Kutikanna, as he was a disciple of Kātyāyana, who dwelt in Southern India (S. B. E., xvii. p. 32).
To the north of the city not far is a forest of Tāla trees about 30 li round. The leaves (of this tree) are long and broad, their colour shining and glistening. In all the countries of India these leaves are everywhere used for writing on. In the forest is a stūpa. Here the four former Buddhas sat down and walked for exercise, and traces of them still remain. Beside this is a stūpa containing the bequeathed relics of the Arhat Śrutavimśatikōṭi.

Not far to the east of the city is a stūpa which has sunk down into the ground from its foundations, but is still about thirty feet high. The old tradition says, In this stūpa is a relic of Tathāgata, and on religious days (holy days) it exhibits a miraculous light. In old days, when Tathāgata was in the world, he preached in this place, and exhibited his miraculous powers and converted a multitude of men.

Not far to the south-west of the city is a stūpa about a hundred feet high, which was built by Asoka-rāja. Here the Arhat Śrutavimśatikōṭi exhibited great miraculous powers and converted a great many people. By the side of it is a saṅghārāma, of which only the foundations remain. This was built by the fore-named Arhat.

From this going north-west, we enter a great forest wild, where savage beasts and bands of robbers inflicts injury on travellers. Going thus 2400 or 2500 li, we come to the country of Mo-ho-la-ch’a (Mahārāṣṭra).

MO-HO-LA-CH’A (MAHĀRĀṢṬRA).

This country is about 5000 li in circuit. The capital borders on the west on a great river. It is about 30 li

42 "The great kingdom;" the country of the Marāṭhas.
43 There have been various surmises as to the name of this capital. M. V. de St. Martin names Devagiri or Daulatabad, but this is not on a river. General Cunningham thinks Kalyān or Kalyānī is the place intended, to the west of which flows the Kailāsā river; but this is due south of Bharoch (the next station) instead of east. Mr. Fergusson names Toka, Phulthamba, or Paitan. However, the distance and direction from the capital of Koṅkaṇāpura is about 400 miles N.W. This seems to bring us near the river Tapti, or perhaps the Ghirnā river.
round. The soil is rich and fertile; it is regularly cultivated and very productive. The climate is hot; the disposition of the people is honest and simple; they are tall of stature, and of a stern, vindictive character. To their benefactors they are grateful; to their enemies relentless. If they are insulted, they will risk their life to avenge themselves. If they are asked to help one in distress, they will forget themselves in their haste to render assistance. If they are going to seek revenge, they first give their enemy warning; then, each being armed, they attack each other with lances (spears). When one turns to flee, the other pursues him, but they do not kill a man down (a person who submits). If a general loses a battle, they do not inflict punishment, but present him with woman's clothes, and so he is driven to seek death for himself. The country provides for a band of champions to the number of several hundred. Each time they are about to engage in conflict they intoxicate themselves with wine, and then one man with lance in hand will meet ten thousand and challenge them in fight. If one of these champions meets a man and kills him, the laws of the country do not punish him. Every time they go forth they beat drums before them. Moreover, they inebriate many hundred heads of elephants, and, taking them out to fight, they themselves first drink their wine, and then rushing forward in mass, they trample everything down, so that no enemy can stand before them.

The king, in consequence of his possessing these men and elephants, treats his neighbours with contempt. He is of the Kshattriya caste, and his name is Pulakêśi (Pulo-ki-she). His plans and undertakings are wide-spread, and his beneficent actions are felt over a great distance. His subjects obey him with perfect submission. At the present time Šîlâditya Mahârâja has conquered the nations from east to west, and carried his arms to remote districts, but the people of this country alone have not

44 That is, Šîlâditya of Kanauj (vol. i. p. 210 sq.)
submitted to him. He has gathered troops from the five Indies, and summoned the best leaders from all countries, and himself gone at the head of his army to punish and subdue these people, but he has not yet conquered their troops.

So much for their habits. The men are fond of learning, and study both heretical and orthodox (books). There are about 100 saṅghārāmas, with 5000 or so priests. They practise both the Great and Small Vehicle. There are about 100 Dēva temples, in which very many heretics of different persuasions dwell.

Within and without the capital are five stūpas to mark the spots where the four past Buddhas walked and sat. They were built by Asōka-rāja. There are, besides these, other stūpas made of brick or stone, so many that it would be difficult to name them all.

Not far to the south of the city is a saṅghārāma in which is a stone image of Kwan-tsz'-tsai Bōdhisattva. Its spiritual powers extend (far and wide), so that many of those who have secretly prayed to it have obtained their wishes.

On the eastern frontier of the country is a great mountain with towering crags and a continuous stretch of piled-up rocks and scarped precipice. In this there is a saṅghārāma constructed, in a dark valley. Its lofty halls and deep side-aisles stretch through the (or open into the) face of the rocks. Storey above storey they are backed by the crag and face the valley (watercourse).

This convent was built by the Arhat Āchāra (O-che-lo). This Arhat was a man of Western India. His

45 This must refer to the famous Baudhā rock-temples at Ajaṇṭā, in the Indhyādri range of hills, cut in the lofty and almost perpendicular rocks that hem in a wild secluded glen. See Fergusson and Burgess, Cave Temples, pp. 280–347; Arch. Sur. West. Ind. Reports, vol. iv. pp. 43–59.

46 In the inscription on the Chaitya cave, No. xxvi., at Ajaṇṭā, we read that “The ascetic Sthavira Achala, who glorified the faith and was grateful, caused to be built a mountain dwelling (śailagrīha) for the Teacher, though his desires were fulfilled” (Arch. Sur. West. Ind. Reports, vol. iv., p. 135). This apparently decides the name of the Arhat mentioned here. But as the
mother having died, he looked to see in what condition she was re-born. He saw that she had received a woman's body in this kingdom. The Arhat accordingly came here with a view to convert her, according to her capabilities of receiving the truth. Having entered a village to beg food, he came to the house where his mother had been born. A young girl came forth with food to give him. At this moment the milk came from her breasts and trickled down. Her friends having seen this considered it an unlucky sign, but the Arhat recounted the history of her birth. The girl thus attained the holy fruit (of Arhatship). The Arhat, moved with gratitude for her who had borne and cherished him, and remembering the end of such good works, from a desire to requite her, built this sanghârâma. The great vihāra of the convent is about 100 feet or so in height; in the middle is a stone figure of Buddha about 70 feet or so high. Above it is a stone canopy of seven stages, towering upwards apparently without support. The space between each canopy is about three feet. According to the old report, this is held in its place by the force of the vow of the Arhat. They also say it is by the force of his miraculous powers; others say by the virtue of some magical compound; but no trustworthy account has yet explained the reason of the wonder. On the four sides of the vihāra, on the stone walls, are painted different scenes in the life of Tathâgata's preparatory life as a Bôdhisattva: the

Chinese translation of the name is So king (he who does, or, the doer), we retain the equivalent Achâra.

47 Compare the words of the inscription given in the preceding note, "who glorified the faith and was grateful."

48 See the drawings of Cave xix. and of the dâgaba in it, Buddhist Cave Temples (Arch. Sur. W. Ind. Rep., vol. iv., pl. xxx., xxxi.; Cave Temples, pl. xxxvi., xxxvii. The measurements given "by report" are vastly exaggerated, as such matters very often are in India. But possibly there may have been a structural building against the face of the rock, with a dâgaba of larger dimensions, though by no means of the size indicated in the text. It is more probable, however, that the report is only an exaggerated account of the rock-cut chaityas. Huien Tsang does not appear to have visited them personally.

49 In mosaic, "carved and inlaid" (teou low).
wondrous signs of good fortune which attended his acquisition of the holy fruit (of a Buddha), and the spiritual manifestations accompanying his Nirvāṇa. These scenes have been cut out with the greatest accuracy and fineness. On the outside of the gate of the saṅghārāma, on the north and south side, at the right hand and the left, there is a stone elephant. The common report says that sometimes these elephants utter a great cry and the earth shakes throughout. In old days Jina (or Channa) Bōdhisattva often stopped in this saṅghārāma.

Going from this 1000 li or so to the west, and crossing the Nai-mo-to (Narmadā) river, we arrive at the kingdom of Po-lu-kie-che-po (Bharukachheva; Barygaza or Bharōch).

PO-LU-KIE-CH’E-P’O (BHARUKACHHA).

This kingdom is 2400 or 2500 li in circuit. Its capital is 20 li round. The soil is impregnated with salt. Trees and shrubs are scarce and scattered. They boil the seawater to get the salt, and their sole profit is from the sea. The climate is warm. The air is always agitated with gusts of wind. Their ways are cold and indifferent; the disposition of the people crooked and perverse. They do not cultivate study, and are wedded to error and true

---

50 This must refer to the famous Ajaṇṭā frescoes.
51 This seems to refer to two elephants in alto rilievo that were sculptured on the rock in front of Cave xv., but which are now scarcely recognisable. See Fergusson and Burgess, Cave Temples, p. 306.
53 Hwu-lih gives north-west. M. Julien has translated it north-east, by mistake (Vic, &c., p. 203).
54 Bharōch appears in a Pāli inscription at Junnar (Arch. Surv. West. Ind. Rep., vol. iv. p. 96) under the form Bharukachha; in Sanskrit it is Bharukachchha (Bṛh. Sanh., v. 40, xiv. 11, xvi. 6; Vassilief, p. 45) and Br̥jgu, Bharukachcha (Bhāg. Pur., viii. 18, 21; As. Rea., vol. ix. p. 104; inscrip. in J. Amer. Or. Soc., vol. vii. p. 33) or Br̥jgu, Bharukachcha—from the locality being the traditional residence of the sage Br̥jgu. The Bhārgava Brahmans of Bharōch are the representatives of an early colony of the school of Bhṛgu. Bharukachcha is represented by the Greek Bār̥γaca eμπόρων of Ptolemy (lib. vii. c. 1, 62) and of the author of the Perīplus Mar. Eryth. (s. 42, &c.); Strabo (lib. xv. c. 1, 73) has Bār̥γaν. See Lassen, I. A., vol. i. pp. 113, 136. It was from Bharōch the Sramana came who burnt himself at Athens.
doctrine alike. There are some ten svāghārāmas, with about 300 believers. They adhere to the Great Vehicle and the Sthāvira school. There are also about ten Dēva temples, in which sectaries of various kinds congregate.

Going from this 56 north-west about 2000 li, we come to the country of Mo-la-po (Mālava).56

Mo-la-p’ō (Mālava).

This country is about 6000 li in circuit. The capital is some 30 li round. It is defended (or supported) by the Mahi river on the south and east.57 The soil is rich and fertile, and produces abundant harvests. Shrubs and trees are numerous and flourishing. Flowers and fruit are met with in great quantities. The soil is suitable in an especial manner for winter wheat. They mostly eat biscuits and (or, made of) parched corn-flour. The disposition of the men is virtuous and docile, and they are in general of remarkable intelligence. Their language is elegant and clear, and their learning is wide and profound.

Two countries in India, on the borders, are remarkable for the great learning of the people, viz., Mālava on the south-west, and Magadha on the north-east. In this they esteem virtue and respect politeness (humanity). They are of an intelligent mind and exceedingly studious; nevertheless the men of this country are given to heretical

56 The geography of this part of the pilgrim’s route is involved in obscurities. I can only therefore offer some remarks on the text. In Hwui-lih the symbol used is chī, not king, from which it might have been gathered that Hiuen Tsiang did not himself visit this country, or at least on this occasion. But in the text the symbol king is used, so that no weight can be given to this supposition.

57 The symbol ku implies that the capital was “held by” (either defended or supported by) the Mahi river on the south-east, or on the south and east. This would seem to take us to the neighbourhood of Dongarpur (Elphinstone’s map). Cunningham considers Dhāranagāra to be intended, in which V. de St. Martin agrees.
belief as well as the true faith, and so live together. There are about 100 saṅghārāmas in which some 2000 priests dwell. They study the Little Vehicle, and belong to the Sammatiya school. There are 100 Déva temples of different kinds. The heretics are very numerous, but principally the Pāṣupatas (the cinder-covering heretics).

The records of the country state: Sixty years before this flourished Śilāditya, a man of eminent wisdom and great learning; his skill in literature was profound. He cherished and protected the four kinds of creatures, and deeply respected the three treasures. From the time of his birth to his last hour, his face never crimsoned with anger, nor did his hands ever injure a living thing. His elephants and horses drank water that had been strained, after which he gave it them, lest any creature living in the water should be injured. Such were his love and humanity. During the fifty years and more of his reign, the wild beasts became familiar with men, and the people did not injure or slay them. By the side of his palace he built a vihāra. He exhausted the skill of the artists, and used every kind of ornament in decorating it. In it he put images of the seven Buddhas, Lords of the World. Every year he convoked an assembly called Mokṣha mahāparishad, and summoned the priests of the four quarters. He offered them “the four things” in religious charity; he also gave them sets of three garments used in their religious services, and also bestowed on them the seven precious substances and jewels in wonderful variety. This meri-

58 This can hardly refer to Ujjain, therefore, because we are told subsequently that the convents there were in ruins, and only about 300 priests in them. It is curious, however, that the circuit of this capital, thirty li (Julien has twenty li, by mistake), and that of Ujjain are the same.

59 See ante, book ii. note 91.

60 Viviparous, oviparous, born from spawn, or by transformation (fū) [water-insects, and so on].

61 Buddha, dharma, saṅgha.

torious custom has continued in practice without interruption till now.

To the north-west of the capital about 200 li, we come to the town of the Brâhmans. By the side of it is a hollow ditch; into this the winter and summer streams flow continually, but though through decades of days the water runs into the hollow, yet it never seems to increase in quantity. By the side of it again is a little stûpa. The old traditions of the country say: Formerly a Brâhman of an exceedingly haughty mind fell alive into this pit and went down to hell. In old days there was a Brâhman born in this town, who was acquainted with all things, and of learning beyond all the eminent men of his time. He had penetrated the secrets and dark sayings of books sacred and profane. He was acquainted with the calculations of astronomy as if they were in his hand; his fame was wide-spread and his behaviour without blemish. The king very highly esteemed him, and the people of the country made much of him. He had some 1000 disciples, who appreciated his doctrine and respected his character. He constantly said of himself, "I am come into the world for the purpose of publishing abroad the holy doctrine and to guide the people. Among the former sages, or those who have arrived at wisdom after them, there is none to compare with me. Mahâsvaradéva, Vâsudéva, Nârâyânadéva, Buddha-lôkanâtha, men everywhere worship these, and publish abroad their doctrine, represent them in their effigies, and pay them worship and honour. But now I am greater than they in character, and my fame exceeds that of all living. Why should they then be so notorious, for they have done no wonderful thing."

63 This may be Brâhmanapura; there is a city of the Brâhmans named by Arrian (Exped. Alex.; vi. 7) and by Diodorus, called by him Harmatelia (vii. 465). See also Cunningham, Anc. Geog., pp. 267, 268. But the town named in the text cannot be near Harmatelia.

64 Or it may be a proper name, "the great-proud Brâhman."
Accordingly, he made out of red sandal-wood figures of Mahēśvaradēva, Vāsudēva, Nārāyaṇadēva, Buddhakālanātha, and placed them as feet to his chair, and wherever he went as a rule he took this chair with him, showing his pride and self-conceit.

Now at this time there was in Western India a Bhikshu, Bhadraruchi (Po-to-lo-liu-chi) by name; he had thoroughly exhausted the Hētuvidyā (Śāstra) and deeply investigated the sense of different discourses (treatises). He was of excellent repute, and the perfume of his exceeding goodness (morality) spread in every direction. He had few desires and was contented with his lot, seeking nothing in the world. Hearing (of the Brāhmaṇ) he sighed and said, “Alas! how sad. This age (time) has no (one worthy to be called a) man; and so it permits that foolish master to dare to act as he does in defiance of virtue.”

On this, he took his staff, and travelling afar, he came to this country. Whilst dwelling therein his mind was made up and he acquainted the king with it. The king, seeing his dirty clothes, conceived no reverence for him; but, in consideration of his high purpose, he forced himself to give him honour (to treat him with respect), and so he arranged the chair of discussion and called the Brāhmaṇ. The Brāhmaṇ hearing it smiled and said, “What man is this who has dared to conceive such an idea (to cherish this determination).”

His disciples having come together, and many (hundred) thousands of listeners being arranged before and behind the discussion-arena to attend as hearers, then Bhadraruchi, with his ancient robes and tattered clothes, arranging some grass on the ground, sat down. Then the Brāhmaṇ, sitting on his chair which he carried with him, began to revile the true law and to praise the teaching of the heretical schools.

The Bhikshu, with a clear distinction, like the running

65 Or, it may possibly be, “different systems.”
of water, encircled his arguments in order. Then the Brâhman after a while yielded, and confessed himself conquered.

The king replying said, "For a long time you have assumed a false reputation; you have deceived the sovereign and affected the multitude with delusion. Our old rescripts say, 'He who is defeated in discussion ought to suffer death.'" Then he prepared to have a heated plate of iron to make him sit thereon; the Brâhman thereupon, overpowered by fear, fell down to entreat pardon (deliverance).

Then Bhadraruchi, pitying the Brâhman, came and requested the king, saying, "Mahârâja! your virtue extends far and wide; the sound of your praises resounds through the public ways. Then let your goodness extend even to protect this man: give not way to a cruel design. Pass over his want of success and let him go his way." Then the king ordered him to be placed on an ass and to be proclaimed through all the towns and villages (as an impostor).

The Brâhman, nettled by his defeat, was so affected that he vomited blood. The Bhikshu having heard of it, went to condole with him, and said, "Your learning embraces subjects religious and profane; your renown is spread through all parts; in questions of distinction, or the contrary, success or defeat must be borne; but after all, what is there of reality in fame?" The Brâhman, filled with rage, roundly abused the Bhikshu, calumniated the system of the Great Vehicle, and treated with contumely the holy ones who had gone before; but the sound of his words had scarcely been lost before the earth opened and swallowed him up alive; and this is the origin of the traces still left in the ditch.

Going south-west we come to a bay of the sea, 66 then

---

66 Literally, the passage runs, "From this, south-west, we enter a sea-blending, or a confluence of two seas." I have translated it "bay," because it is sometimes used so; it probably refers to the gulf of Kachh. Hwu-lih does not mention this gulf, but takes us away from the
going 2400 or 2500 li north-west we come to the kingdom of 'O-ch'a-li (Atali).

' O-ch'a-li (Atali). 67

This country is about 6000 li in circuit; the capital of the country is about 20 li or so in circuit. The population is dense; the quality of gems and precious substances stored up is very great; the produce of the land is sufficient for all purposes, yet commerce is their principal occupation. The soil is salt and sandy, the fruits and flowers are not plentiful. The country produces the hu-tsian tree. The leaves of this tree are like those of the Sz'chuen pepper (Shuh tsian); it also produces the hiun-lu perfume tree, the leaf of which is like the thang-li. 68 The climate is warm, windy, and dusty. The disposition of the people is cold and indifferent. They esteem riches and despise virtue. Respecting their letters, language, and the manners and figures of the people, these are much the same as in the country of Málava. The greater part of the people have no faith in the virtue of religious merit; as to those who do believe, they worship principally the spirits of heaven, and their temples are some thousand in number, in which sectaries of different characters congregate.

Going north-west from the country of Málava, after passing over 300 li 69 or so, we come to the country of K‘ie-ch’a (Kachha).

“city of the Brähmanas” the same distance as in the text to 'O-ch’a-li. 67 'O-ch’a-li appears to be far north of Kachh. May it not have been Uchh or Bāhwalpur? There is a town called Atāri in the neighbourhood of Multán (Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 228); but it is difficult to know what could have taken the pilgrim there. This place is identified by Cunningham with the city of the Brähmans, taken by Alexander the Great (l. c.)

68 Can this be the Sīlai from which Kimdura, Gujarāti Kindru or Sīlāinodhāpa, Indian gum, olibanum, is obtained? This tree (Boswellia thurifera, serrata and gladra) is found in Oudh, Khandès, and Kāthiāwād. Guggula (bdellium), the gum resin of Balsamodendron roxburghii, pubescens, and mukul, is also produced in Kachh and Sindh.

69 In Hwui-lib, the distance is “three days” journey.
Kie-ch'a (Kachha).\textsuperscript{70}

This country is 3000 li or so in circuit, the capital about 20 li. The population is dense. The establishments wealthy. There is no king (great ruler) amongst them; the country is an appanage of Mālava, and the climate, products of the soil, and manners of the people are very similar in both countries. There are some ten saṅghārāmas, with about 1000 priests, who study alike the Great and the Little Vehicle. There are also several tens of Dēva temples with very many unbelievers (secretaries).

From this going north\textsuperscript{71} 1000 li or so, we come to Fa-la-pi (Valabhi).

Fa-la-pi (Valabhi).

This country is 6000 li or so in circuit, the capital about 30. The character of the soil, the climate, and manners of the people are like those of the kingdom of Mālava. The population is very dense; the establishments rich. There are some hundred houses (families) or so, who possess a hundred lākhs. The rare and valuable products of distant regions are here stored in great quantities. There are some hundred saṅghārāmas, with about 6000 priests. Most of them study the Little Vehicle,\textsuperscript{72} according to the Sammatiya school. There

\textsuperscript{70} The distance is to be reckoned from the kingdom or country of Mālava, but the place is not named. General Cunningham proposes to read 1300 li from Dhār to Khēda; this last place is a large town of Gujarāt, situated between Ahmādābād and Khambar, and would be in its Sanskrit form the same as Kheda, which again is the equivalent of the Chinese Kie-ch'a. But Kie-ch'a, although it might be correctly restored to Kheda, is the name of a country. The distance, also, being "three days," in Hwul-lih, seems to confirm the 300 li in the text. We must therefore retain the restoration of Kachha.

\textsuperscript{71} Although we should expect the direction to be south from Kachh, the reading is north, both in the text and in Hwul-lih; wherever the Valabhi of Huen Tsian was situated, it is said to have been "the kingdom of the Northern Lāra (Lo-lo) people." (Note in the Chinese text).

\textsuperscript{72} In a copper-plate deed of Guhasēna of Valabhi, he says, "In order to obtain for my parents and for myself benefits in this life and the next, I have granted, by liba-
are several hundred Dêva temples with very many sectaries of different sorts.

When Tathâgata lived in the world, he often travelled through this country. Hence Aŝoka-râja raised monuments or built stûpas in all those places where Buddha rested. Scattered among these are spots where the three past Buddhas sat down, or walked, or preached the law. The present king is of the Kshattriya caste, as they all are. He is the nephew of Silâditya-râja of Mâlava, and son-in-law of the son of Silâditya, the present king of Kanyâkubja. His name is Dhruvapata (T'u-lu-h'opo-tu). He is of a lively and hasty disposition, his wisdom and statecraft are shallow. Quite recently he has attached himself sincerely to faith in the three "precious ones." Yearly he summons a great assembly, and for seven days gives away most valuable gems, exquisite meats, and on the priests he bestows in charity the three garments and medicaments, or their equivalent in value, and precious articles made of rare and costly gems of the seven sorts. Having given these in charity, he redeems them at twice their price. He esteems virtue (or the virtuous) and honours the good; he reverences those who are noted for their wisdom. The great priests

tion of water, to the community of the reverend Sâkya Bhikshus belonging to the eighteen schools (nîkṣyâ) who have come from various directions to the great convent (Mahávihâra) of Duddâ." Ind. Ant., vol. iv. p. 175. This Duddâ was the daughter of Dhruvasêna I's sister (Ib., p. 106), and so a grand-daughter of Bhatârka, the founder of the Valabhi dynasty. In another copper-plate of Guhu-âsena, he makes a grant to "the foreign monks belonging to the eighteen schools, and living in the Abhyantarikâ vihâra built by the venerable Mimrà, and situated close to the monastery of Bhatârka, presented to the Râjâsthatîya Sura." Ind. Ant., vol. v. p. 206; conf. Vassilieff, Le Bouddh., p. 63. Arch. Sur. W. Ind. Reports, vol. iii. p. 94. The "eighteen schools" here mentioned point to the Hinayâna doctrine.

73 Dr. Buhler argues that this king was the same as Silâditya VI., surnamed Dhurvabhata, (which he supposes to stand for Dhruvbhata, "the constant warrior"), of whom we have a grant dated "Sam. 447" (Ind. Ant., vol. vii. p. 80). General Cunningham adopts the same view (A. S. Reports, vol. ix. pp. 16, 18); but Burgess is disposed to regard this king as the Dhruvasêna II. of a Valabhi grant dated "Sam. 310" (Arch. Sur. W. Ind., vol. ii. pp. 82, ff.); and Oldenberg, as possibly Dhârabhata, the cousin of Dhruvasêna II. (Ind. Ant., vol. x. p. 210).

74 Or, he reverences religion and makes much of wisdom.
who come from distant regions he particularly honours and respects.

Not far from the city is a great *sanghârâma* which was built by the Arhat Āchâra ('O-che-lo); here the Bôdhisattvas Guṇamati and Sthiramati (Kien-hwui) fixed their residences during their travels and composed treatises which have gained a high renown.

From this going north-west 700 li or so, we come to 'O-nan-to-pu-lo (Ānandapura).

'O-nan-to-pu-lo (Ānandapura).

This country is about 2000 li in circuit, the capital about 20. The population is dense; the establishments rich. There is no chief ruler, but it is an appanage of Mâlava. The produce, climate, and literature and laws are the same as those of Mâlava. There are some ten *sangharamas* with less than 1000 priests; they study the Little Vehicle of the Sammatiya school. There are several tens of Dêva temples, and sectaries of different kinds frequent them.

Going west from Valabhi 500 li or so, we come to the country of Su-la-ch’â (Surâshtra).

**Su-la-ch’â (Surâshtra).**

This country is 4000 li or so in circuit, the capital

---

73 This is confirmed by a grant of Dharasena II. of Valabhi, in which the Sanskrit name of the founder is given as Atharya (*Ind. Ant.*, vol. iv. p. 164 n.; vol. vi. p. 9). Julien has Āchâra; the Chinese translation so-king requires this restoration.

76 Sthiramati Sthâvira was one of the famous disciples of Vusubandhu, the twenty-first patriarch, who wrote commentaries on all the works of his master. He is named in a grant of Dharasena I. as the Āchâryya Bhadanta Sthiramati, who founded the *vihâra* of Śri Boppâpâda at Valabhi (*Ind. Ant.*, vol. vi. p. 9; Vassilief, p. 78; M. Muller’s *India*, p. 305; B. Nanjio’s *Cat. Bud. Trip.*, c. 372). Guṇamati was also a disciple of Vusubandhu. He had a famous disciple, Vasumitra (Pho-shu-mi), who wrote a commentary on Vusubandhu’s *Abhidharmakôshai* (Bunyiu Nanjio’s *Cat. Bud. Trip.*, cc. 375, 377; M. Muller, *India*, pp. 305, 309, 310, 632; Burnouf, *Introd.*, p. 505; Vassilief, p. 78).


78 Surâshtra, or Surâtha, or Soraṭh. As this district is in the Gujarât peninsula, it is difficult to under-
about 30 li. On the west the chief town borders on the Mahi river; the population is dense, and the various establishments (families) are rich. The country is dependent on Valabhi. The soil is impregnated with salt; flowers and fruit are rare. Although the climate is equable, yet there is no cessation of tempests. The manners of the people are careless and indifferent; their disposition light and frivolous. They do not love learning and are attached both to the true faith and also to heretical doctrine. There are some fifty sañghārāmas in this kingdom, with about 3000 priests; they mostly belong to the Sthavira school of the Great Vehicle. There are a hundred or so Dēva temples, occupied by sectaries of various sorts. As this country is on the western sea route, the men all derive their livelihood from the sea and engage in commerce and exchange of commodities.

Not far from the city is a mountain called Yuh-chen-to (Ujjantā),79 on the top of which is a sañghārāma. The cells and galleries have mostly been excavated from the mountain-side. The mountain is covered with thick jungle and forest trees, whilst streams flow round its limits. Here saints and sages roam and rest, and Rishis endowed with spiritual faculties congregate here and stay.

Going north from the country of Valabhi 1800 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Kiu-che-lo (Gurjjara).

KIU-CHE-LO (GURJJARA).

This country80 is 5000 li or so in circuit, the capital, stand how its chief town “on the west” borders on the Mahi river; perhaps it should be “on the east.” But this part of the pilgrim’s narrative seems to be carelessly written. Perhaps, as Fergusson supposes, the original documents had been lost in crossing the Indus at Attok (see Book xii.), and the details supplied from memory or notes. For remarks on localities see V. de St. Martin, Mémoire, p. 405; Cunningham, Anc. Geog., p. 325.

79 The old Prakrit name of Girnāra, close to Junagadh in Kathiawād; the Sanskrit form is Ujjayanta (Mahābh., iii. 8347 ff.) Lassen (Ind. Alt., vol. i. p. 686 n.) misplaces it at or near Ajanṭā. It is sacred to Neminātha, the twenty-second Jina, and Urjayanta (Colebrooke, Essays, vol. ii. p. 212; Arch. Surv. W. Ind. Rep., vol. ii. p. 129), and is also called Raivata.

80 Prof. R. G. Bhandarkar suggests that Kukura, a district men-
which is called Pi-lo-mo-lo, is 30 li or so round. The produce of the soil and the manners of the people resemble those of Surâshtra. The population is dense; the establishments are rich and well supplied with materials. They mostly are unbelievers; a few are attached to the law of Buddha. There is one saṅghârâma, with about a hundred priests; they are attached to the teaching of the Little Vehicle and the school of the Sarvâstivâdas. There are several tens of Dêva temples, in which sectaries of various denominations dwell. The king is of the Kshatriya caste. He is just twenty years old; he is distinguished for wisdom, and he is courageous. He is a deep believer in the law of Buddha; and highly honours men of distinguished ability.

From this going south-east 2800 li or so, we come to the country of U-she-yen-na (Ujjayani).

**U-she-yen-na (Ujjayani).**

This country is about 6000 li in circuit; the capital is some 30 li round. The produce and manners of the people are like those of the country of Surâshtra. The population is dense and the establishments wealthy. There are several tens of convents, but they are mostly in ruins; some three or five are preserved. There are some 300 priests; they study the doctrines both of the Great and the Little Vehicle. There are several tens of Dêva temples, occupied by sectaries of various kinds.

---

_tioned in an inscription of Pulumáyi at Nášik, and in the Rudra-dâman inscription at Gîrnâra, might be Kiū-che-lo, but the Chinese syllables are against such an identification (Trans. Int. Cong. Orient., 1874, p. 312; Arch. Surv. W. Ind. Rep., vol. iv. p. 109, and vol. ii. pp. 129, 131. Gurjara is certainly the proper representative, and the district as well as the language extended into the southern parts of modern Râjputâna and Mâlwa. See Lassen, Ind. Alt., vol. i. p. 136; Colebrooke, Essays, vol. ii. p. 31 n.; Râjâtarâng., v. 144 ff. At Bâlmêr in Râjputâna (lat. 25° 48’ N long. 71° 16’ E.) From this neighbourhood several of the clans in Kâthiâwâd say they originally came.

Ujjayanti or Ujjayini is properly the capital of Avanti in Mâlava, the capital of Tiastanes (Chashtana), the ‘Oţţâ of Ptolemy lib. vii. c. i. 63) and the Peripl. Mar. Æryth. (c. xlviii.) Bohlen, Alte Ind., vol. i. p. 94._
The king belongs to the Brâhman caste. He is well versed in heretical books, and believes not in the true law.

Not far from the city is a stûpa; this is the place where Asûka-râja made the hell (of punishment).

Going north-east from this 1000 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Chi-ki-to.

**CHI-KI-TO.**

This country is about 4000 li in circuit; the capital is some 15 or 16 li round. The soil is celebrated for its fertility; it is regularly cultivated and yields abundant crops; it is specially adapted for beans and barley; it produces abundance of flowers and fruits. The climate is temperate; the people are naturally virtuous and docile; most of them believe in heretical doctrine, a few honour the law of Buddha. There are several tens of saṅghârámás with few priests. There are about ten Dèva temples, which some thousand followers frequent. The king is of the Brâhman caste. He firmly believes in the (three) precious ones; he honours and rewards those who are distinguished for virtue. Very many learned men from distant countries congregate in this place.

Going from here north 900 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Mo-hi-shi-fa-lo-pu-lo (Mahâsvarapura).

**MO-HI-SHI-FA-LO-PU-LO (MAHâSVARAPURA).**

This kingdom is about 3000 li in circuit; the capital city is some 30 li round. The produce of the soil and the manners of the people are like those of the kingdom of Ujjayani. They greatly esteem the heretics and do not reverence the law of Buddha. There are several tens of Dèva temples, and the sectaries principally belong to the Pâśupatas. The king is of the Brâhman caste; he places but little faith in the doctrine of Buddha.

From this, going in a backward direction to the country of Kiu-che-lo (Gurjjara) and then proceeding northward
through wild deserts and dangerous defiles about 1900 li, crossing the great river Sin-tu, we come to the kingdom of Sin-tu (Sindh).

**SIN-TU (SINDH).**

This country is about 7000 li in circuit; the capital city, called P’i-shen-p’o-pu-lo,**59** is about 30 li round. The soil is favourable for the growth of cereals and produces abundance of wheat and millet. It also abounds in gold and silver and native copper. It is suitable for the breeding of oxen, sheep, camels, mules, and other kinds of beasts. The camels are small in size and have only one hump. They find here a great quantity of salt, which is red like cinnabar; also white salt, black salt and rock salt. In different places, both far and near, this salt is used for medicine. The disposition of the men is hard and impulsive; but they are honest and upright. They quarrel and are much given to contradiction. They study without aiming to excel; they have faith in the law of Buddha. There are several hundred sanghārāmas, occupied by about 10,000 priests. They study the Little Vehicle according to the Sammatiya school. As a rule, they are indolent and given to indulgence and debauchery. Those who are very earnest as followers of the virtue of the sages live alone in desert places, dwelling far off in the mountains and the forests. There night and day they exert themselves in aiming after the acquirement of the holy fruit (of Arhatship). There are about thirty Dēva temples, in which sectaries of various kinds congregate.

The king is of the Sudra (Shu-t'o-lo) caste. He is by nature honest and sincere, and he reverences the law of Buddha.

When Tathāgata was in the world, he frequently passed through this country, therefore Asoka-rāja has founded several tens of stūpas in places where the sacred traces of

---

his presence were found. Upagupta,84 the great Arhat, sojourned very frequently in this kingdom, explaining the law and convincing and guiding men. The places where he stopped and the traces he left are all commemorated by the building of saṅghārāmas or the erection of stūpas. These buildings are seen everywhere; we can only speak of them briefly.

By the side of the river Sindh, along the flat marshy lowlands for some thousand li, there are several hundreds of thousands (a very great many) of families settled. They are of an unfeeling and hasty temper, and are given to bloodshed only. They give themselves exclusively to tending cattle, and from this derive their livelihood. They have no masters, and, whether men or women, have neither rich nor poor; they shave their heads and wear the Kashāya robes of Bhikshus, whom they resemble outwardly, whilst they engage themselves in the ordinary affairs of lay life. They hold to their narrow (little) views and attack the Great Vehicle.

The old reports state that formerly these people were extremely hasty (impatient), and only practised violence and cruelty. At this time there was an Arhat, who, pitying their perversity, and desiring to convert them, mounted in the air and came amongst them. He exhibited his miraculous powers and displayed his wonderful capabilities. Thus he led the people to believe and accept the doctrine, and gradually he taught them in words; all of them joyfully accepted his teaching and respectfully prayed him to direct them in their religious life. The Arhat perceiving that the hearts of the people had become submissive, delivered to them the three “Refuges” and restrained their cruel tendencies; they entirely gave up “taking life,” they shaved their heads, and assumed the soiled robes of a Bhikshu, and obediently walked according to the doctrine of religion. Since then, generations have passed by and the changed times have weakened

---

84 Bk. viii.; Burnouf, Intro., pp. 118, 197, 378 f.
their virtue, but as for the rest, they retain their old customs. But though they wear the robes of religion, they live without any moral rules, and their sons and grandsons continue to live as worldly people, without any regard to their religious profession.

Going from this eastward 900 li or so, crossing the Sindh river and proceeding along the eastern bank, we come to the kingdom of Mu-lo-san-p’u-lu.

**MU-LO-SAN-P’U-LU (Mūlasthānapura).**

This country is about 4000 li in circuit; the capital town is some 30 li round. It is thickly populated. The establishments are wealthy. This country is in dependence on the kingdom of Chêka (Tse-kia). The soil is rich and fertile. The climate is soft and agreeable; the manners of the people are simple and honest; they love learning and honour the virtuous. The greater part sacrifice to the spirits; few believe in the law of Buddha. There are about ten saṅghārāmas, mostly in ruins; there are a few priests, who study indeed, but without any wish to excel. There are eight Dēva temples, in which sectaries of various classes dwell. There is a temple dedicated to the sun, very magnificent and profusely decorated. The image of the Sun-dēva is cast in yellow gold and ornamented with rare gems. Its divine insight is mysteriously manifested and its spiritual power made plain to all. Women play their music, light their torches, offer their flowers and perfumes to honour it. This custom has been continued from the very first. The kings and high families of the five Indies never fail to make their offerings of gems and precious stones (to this Dēva). They have founded a house of mercy (happiness), in which they provide food, and drink, and medicines for the poor and sick, affording succour and sustenance. Men from all

---

85 Mūlasthānapur or Multān (see Reinand, *Mém. s. l. Inde*, p. 98).
86 Aditya or Sūrya.
countries come here to offer up their prayers; there are always some thousands doing so. On the four sides of the temple are tanks with flowering groves where one can wander about without restraint.

From this going north-east 700 li or so, we come to the country of Po-fa-to.

**Po-fa-to (Parvata)**\(^{87}\)

This country is 5000 li or so in circuit, its capital is about 20 li. It is thickly populated, and depends on the country of Chêka (Tse-kia). A great deal of dry-ground rice is here grown. The soil is also fit for beans and wheat. The climate is temperate, the disposition of the people honest and upright. They are naturally quick and hasty; their language is low and common. They are well versed in composition and literature. There are heretics and believers in common. There are some ten saṅghārāmas with about 1000 priests; they study both the Great and Little Vehicle. There are four stūpas built by Aṣoka-rāja. There are also some twenty Dēva temples frequented by sectaries of different sorts.

By the side of the chief town is a great saṅgharāma with about 100 priests in it; they study the teaching of the Great Vehicle. It was here that Jinaputra, a master of śāstras,\(^{88}\) composed the Yogadhyāyaḥ-bhumi Śastrākārikā; here also Bhadraruchi and Guṇaprabha, masters of śāstras, embraced the religious life. This great saṅgharāma has been destroyed by fire, and is now waste and ruined.

Leaving the Sindh country, and going south-west 1500 or 1600 li, we come to the kingdom of 'O-tin-p’o-chi-lo (Atyanabakêla).

---

\(^{87}\) Parvata is given by Pāṇini (iv. 2, 143) as the name of a country in the Panjâb under the group Takabahālädî (iv. 3, 93). *Ind. Ant.*, vol. i. p. 22.

\(^{88}\) Jinaputra, in Chinese Tsul-shing-tszu; his work, the Yū-chieh-t’i-lun-shih, is a commentary on the Yogadhyāyaḥ-bhumi śāstra (Yū-chieh-t’i-lun) of Maitrēya. Both works were translated into Chinese by Hien Tsiang.
'O-tien-p'ō-chi-lo.

This country is about 5000 li in circuit. The chief town is called Khie-tsi-shi-fa-lo, and is about 30 li round. It lies on the river Sindh, and borders on the ocean. The houses are richly ornamented, and mostly possess rare and costly substances. Lately there has been no ruler; it is under the protection of Sindh. The soil is low and damp and the ground is impregnated with salt. It is covered with wild shrubs, and is mostly waste land: it is little cultivated, yet it produces some sorts of grain, but principally beans and wheat, of which there is a great quantity. The climate is rather cold and subject to violent storms of wind. It is fit for raising oxen, sheep, camels, asses, and other kinds of beasts. The disposition of the people is violent and hasty. They have no love for learning. Their language differs slightly from that of Mid-India. The people are generally honest and sincere. They deeply reverence the three precious objects of worship. There are about eighty saṅghārāmas with some 5000 priests. They mostly study the Little Vehicle according to the Sammatiya school. There are ten Déva temples, mostly occupied by heretics belonging to the Pāṣupatas.

In the capital town is a temple of Ta-tsz'-tsai-tin (Mahē vara Déva). The temple is ornamented with rich sculptures, and the image of the Déva is possessed of great spiritual powers. The Pāṣupata heretics dwell in this temple. In old days Tathāgata often travelled through this country to preach the law and convert men, leading the multitude and benefiting the people. On this account Aśoka-ṛaja built stūpas on the spots consecrated by the sacred traces, six in number.

Going west from this less than 2000 li, we come to the country of Long-kie-lo (Laṅgala).
LONG-KIE-LO (LAŊGALA).

This country is several thousand li from east to west and from north to south. The capital is about 30 li round. It is named Su-nu-li-chi-fa-lo (Sûnu-risvara?). The soil is rich and fertile, and yields abundant harvests. The climate and the manners of the people are like those of 'O-tin-p‘o-chi-lo. The population is dense. It possesses abundance of precious gems and stones. It borders on the ocean. It is on the route to the kingdom of the western women. It has no chief ruler. The people occupy a long valley, and are not dependent on one another. They are under the government of Persia. The letters are much the same as those of India: their language is a little different. There are believers and heretics living together amongst them. There are some hundred saṅghārāmas, and perhaps 6000 priests, who study the teaching of both the Little and Great Vehicle. There are several hundred Dēva temples. The heretics called Pâsupatas are exceedingly numerous. In the city is a temple to Mahâsvara-Dēva: it is richly adorned and sculptured. The Pâsupata heretics here offer their religious worship.

From this going north-west, we come to the kingdom of Po-la-sse (Persia).

PO-LA- SSE (PERSIA).

This kingdom is several myriad of lis in circuit. Its chief town, called Su-la-sa-t‘ang-na (Surasthāna), is about 40 li in circuit. The valleys are extensive, and so the climate differs in character, but in general it is warm.

General Cunningham thinks this country may represent Lako-rîn or Lakûra, the name of a great ruined city which Masson found between Khozdār and Kîlât, about 2000 li to the north-west of Koṭesvar in Kachh (Asc. Geog. of India, p. 311). The Chinese symbols might be restored to Longhir.

Cunningham suggests Sambhu-risvara as the restoration of this name (ibid., loc. cit.)

See p. 240, ante.

This country does not belong to India (Ch. Ed.) Huien Tsang did not visit it personally; he writes from report.
They draw the water up to irrigate the fields. The people are rich and affluent. The country produces gold, silver, copper, rock-crystal (spâțika), rare pearls, and various precious substances. Their artists know how to weave fine brocaded silks, woollen stuffs, carpets, and so on. They have many shen horses and camels. In commerce they use large silver pieces. They are by nature violent and impulsive, and in their behaviour they practise neither decorum nor justice. Their writing and their language are different from other countries. They care not for learning, but give themselves entirely to works of art. All that they make the neighbouring countries value very much. Their marriage-customs are merely promiscuous intercourse. When dead their corpses are mostly abandoned. In stature they are tall: they tie up their hair (arrange their head-dress) and go uncovered. Their robes are either of skin, or wool, or felt, or figured silk. Each family is subject to a tax of four pieces of silver per man. The Dëva temples are very numerous. Dinava (Ti-na-po) is principally worshipped by the heretics. There are two or three saṅghārāmas, with several hundred priests, who principally study the teaching of the Little Vehicle according to the Sarvāstavādīn school. The pāṭra of Śākya Buddha is in this (country), in the king’s palace.

On the eastern frontiers of the country is the town of Ho-mo (Ormus?). The city inside is not great, but the external walls are in circuit about 60 li or so. The people who inhabit it are all very rich. To the northwest this country borders on the kingdom of Fo-lin, and a community of priests in Persia at the time of Huen Tsang. As they belonged to the school of the Little Vehicle, it is probable they had been established there from an early date. Fo-lin (χωλόν) is generally supposed to represent the Byzantine Empire.

93 Julien restores this name, doubtfully, to Dinabha. Dinava, or Dinapa, however, may be a contraction for Dinapa(til), “the lord of the day,” or “the sun.”
94 For the wanderings of the pūtra of Buddha, see Fa-hian, chap. xxxix. It is interesting to know that there were Buddhist temples
which resembles the kingdom of Persia in point of soil, and manners, and customs; but they differ in point of language and appearance of the inhabitants. These also possess a quantity of valuable gems, and are very rich.

To the south-west of Fo-lin, in an island of the sea, is the kingdom of the western women: here there are only women, with no men; they possess a large quantity of gems and precious stones, which they exchange in Fo-lin. Therefore the king of Fo-lin sends certain men to live with them for a time. If they should have male children, they are not allowed to bring them up.

On leaving the kingdom of O-tin-p’o-chi-lo, and going north 700 li or so, we come to the country of Pi-to-shi-lo.

Pi-to-shi-lo (Pitāsila).

This kingdom is about 3000 li round; the capital is some 20 li in circuit. The population is dense. They have no chief ruler, but they depend on the country of Sin-tu. The soil is salt and sandy; the country is subject to a cold tempestuous wind. A great quantity of beans and wheat is grown. Flowers and fruits are scarce. The manners of the people are fierce and rough. Their language slightly differs from that of Mid-India. They do not love learning, but as far as they know they have a sincere faith. There are some fifty saṅghārāmas with about 3000 priests; they study the Little Vehicle according to the Sammatiya school. There are twenty Dēva temples, frequented mostly by the heretics called Pāṣupatas.

To the north of the city 15 or 16 li, in the middle of a great forest, is a stūpa several hundred feet high, built by Asoka-rāja. It contains relics which from time

---

For some references to the island or kingdom of the western women, see Marco Polo, chap. xxxi., and Colonel Yule's note (vol. ii. p. 339).
to time emit a bright light. It was here that Tathāgata, when in old time he was a Rishi, was subjected to the cruelty of the king.

Not far east from this is an old saṅghārāma. This was built by the great Arhat, the great Kātyāyana. By the side of it are traces where the four Buddhas of the past age sat down and walked for exercise. They have erected a stūpa to denote the spot.

Going north-east from this 300 li or so, we come to the country of 'O-fan-ch‘a.

'O-fan-ch‘a (Avanda?).

This kingdom is 2400 or 2500 li in circuit; the capital is about 20 li. There is no chief ruler, but the country is subject to Sin-tu. The soil is fit for the cultivation of grain, and abounds in beans and wheat; it produces but few flowers or fruits; the woods are thin. The climate is windy and cold; the disposition of the men is fierce and impulsive. Their language is simple and uncultivated. They do not value learning, but they are earnest and sincere believers in "the three gems." There are about twenty saṅghārāmas, with some 2000 priests; they mostly study the Little Vehicle according to the Sammatiya school. There are some five Dēva temples, frequented by the heretics called Pāṣupatas.

To the north-east of the city, not a great distance, in the middle of a great bamboo forest is a saṅghārāma mostly in ruins. Here Tathāgata gave permission to the Bhikshus to wear Kih-fu-to (boots). By the side of it is a stūpa built by Aśoka-rāja. Although the foundations have sunk into the earth, yet the remains are some hundred feet high. In a vihāra by the side of the stūpa is a blue-stone standing figure of Buddha. On

97 There are some remarks made about permission to wear boots or shoes with thick linings in the Mahāvagga, varga 13, § 6 (S. B. E., vol. xvii. p. 35). It would seem from these records that this country of Avanda corresponded with Avanti.
sacred days (fast-days) it spreads abroad a divine light.

To the south 800 paces or so, in a forest, is a stūpa which was built by Asŏka-rāja. Tathāgata, in time gone by, stopping here, finding it cold in the night, covered himself with his three garments: on the morning following he permitted the Bhikshus to wear wadded garments. In this wood is a place where Buddha walked for exercise. There are also a number of stūpas placed opposite one another, where the four Buddhas of the past age sat. In this stūpa are relics of Buddha’s hair and nails. On holy days they emit a miraculous light.

Going from this north-east 900 li or so, we come to the country of Fa-la-na.

FA-LA-NA (VARANA).98

This kingdom is about 4000 li in circuit, and the chief town about 20 li. The population is dense. The kingdom is subject to Kapiśa. The chief portion of the country consists of mountains and forests. It is regularly cultivated. The climate is rather cold. The manners of the people are rough and fierce. They are persevering in their habits, but their purposes are low. Their language is somewhat like that of Mid-India. Some of them believe in Buddha, others not. They do not care about literature or the arts. There are some tens of saṅghārāmas, but they are in ruins. There are about 300 priests, who study the Great Vehicle. There are about five Dēva temples, frequented mostly by Pāṣupata heretics.

Not far to the south of the city is an old saṅghārāma. Here Tathāgata in old days preached, exhibiting the profit and delight of his doctrine, and opening the mind

98 Pāṇini has a country called Varnu (īv. 2, 103; āv. 3, 93), from the group Vārṇa, in which Gāndhāra also is included.
of his hearers. By the side of it are traces where the four past Buddhas sat down or walked for exercise. The common report says on the western frontier of this country is the kingdom of Ki-kia-n-na (Kikana?). The people live amid the great mountains and valleys in separate clans. They have no chief ruler. They breed an immense quantity of sheep and horses. The shen horses are of a large size, and the countries around breed but few, and therefore they are highly valued.

Leaving this country and going north-west, after traversing great mountains and crossing wide valleys, and passing a succession of smaller towns, and going 2000 li or so, we leave the frontiers of India and come to the kingdom of Tsau-ku-ta.

NOTE.—The remainder of the section, noticed on pp. 248, 249, records a mission sent to the same king of Ceylon, Alibunar, by the Emperor of China (Ch'heung Tsu), under the direction of the eunuch Ch'hing Ho; his object was to offer incense and flowers. Having arrived, he exhorted the king to respect the teaching of Buddha and to expel the heretics. The king being enraged, desired to slay him, but Ch'hing Ho being aware of the plot, escaped. Again the same ambassador was sent to receive the homage of foreign states, and came to Ceylon (Si-lan-shan-kwo, the country of the Seilan mountain). The king rebelliously refused to pay any respect to the embassage, and collected 50,000 soldiers to block the way and to destroy the ships. Ch'hing Ho having learned the purpose of the king, sent secretly by a circuitous way to the ships, and got 3000 soldiers by night to march on the royal city. Being surrounded by the enemy's troops, they defended the city for six days, and then having treated the king with contumely, they opened the gates in the morning, and fought their way for twenty li; when the daylight began to fail, they offered up prayers to the sacred tooth, and suddenly an unusual light shone before them and lighted them on their way. Having reached their ships, they rested in peace, and arrived at the capital in the ninth year of Yung-loh (A.D. 1412), the seventh month, and ninth day.
BOOK XII.

Contains an account of twenty-two countries, viz., (1) Tsu-ku-cha (2) Po-li-shi-sa-t'ang-na; (3) 'An-ta-lo-po; (4) K'woh-sit-to; (5) Hsuh; (6) Mung-kin; (7) O-li-ni; (8) Ho-lo-hu; (9) Ki-li-si-mo; (10) Po-li-ho; (11) Hi-mo-ta-lo; (12) Po-to-chang-na; (13) In-po-kin; (14) Kiu-lang-na; (15) Ta-mo-sit-ti-ti; (16) Shi-k'i-ni; (17) Chang-mi; (18) K'ie-p'an-to; (19) U-sha; (20) Kie-sha; (21) Cho-kiu-kia; (22) Kiu-sa-ta-na.

Tsu-ku-cha (TSAUKUTA).

This country ¹ is about 7000 li in circuit, the capital, which is called Ho-si-na (Ghazna), is about 30 li round. There is another capital, Ho-sa-la,² which is about 30 li round. Both of them are naturally strong and also fortified.³ Mountains and valleys succeed each other, with plains intervening, fit for cultivation. The land is sown and reaped in due season. Winter wheat is grown in great abundance; shrubs and trees grow in rich variety, and there are flowers and fruits in abundance. The soil is favourable for the yo-kin plant (turmeric) and for the hing-kiu;⁴ this last grows in the valley Lo-ma-in-tu.⁵

In the city Ho-sa-lo is a fountain, of which the water

¹ For some reference to the country Tsaukuta, see ante, vol. i. p. 62, n. 218. Cunningham identifies it with the Arachosis of classical writers (Anc. Geog. of India, p. 40).
² The identification of Ho-si-na with Ghazni was first made by M. V. de St. Martin; he also proposed to restore Ho-sa-la to Hazara, but General Cunningham remarks that this name, as applied to the district in question, is not older than the time of Chingiz Khan; he, therefore, proposes Guzaristan, on the Helmand, the Ozola of Ptolemy, as the equivalent of the Chinese symbols (ibid., loc. cit.)
³ For the strength of Ghazni see Cunningham (op. cit., pp. 41, 42).
⁴ Hinga, assafetida (Julien).
⁵ Râmendu? (Julien).
divides itself into many branches, and which the people utilise for the purposes of irrigation. The climate is cold; there are frequent hail and snow storms. The people are naturally light-hearted and impulsive; they are crafty and deceitful. They love learning and the arts, and show considerable skill in magical sentences, but they have no good aim in view.

They daily repeat several myriads of words; their writing and language differ from those of other countries. They are very specious in vain talk, but there is little body or truth in what they say. Although they worship a hundred (many) spirits, yet they also greatly reverence the three precious ones. There are several hundred sanghârâmas, with 1000 or so priests. They all study the Great Vehicle. The reigning sovereign is sincere and honest in his faith, and is the successor of a long line of kings. He applies himself assiduously to religious work (merit) and is well instructed and fond of learning. There are some ten stûpas built by Aśoka-râja, and several tens of Dèva temples, in which sectaries of various denominations dwell together.

The Tirthaka heretics are very numerous; they worship principally the Dèva Kshuna (T'seu-na). This Dèva spirit formerly came from Mount Aruna (O-lu-nao) in Kapiša, and took up his abode here in the southern districts of this kingdom, in the Mount Sunagir. He is severe or good, causing misfortune or exercising violence. Those who invoke him with faith obtain their wishes; those who despise him reap misfortune. Therefore people both far off and near show for him deep reverence; high and low alike are filled with religious awe of him. The princes, nobles, and people of this as well as of foreign

---

6 The symbols Wai-tao may denote the Tirthakas, as Julien seems to suppose; or they may be simply equal to “only the greater part are Wai-tao,” the symbols wai-tao are generally applied to the Tirthakas, for which see Eitel, Handbook, sub voc.

7 For this mountain see ante, vol. i. p. 62. It may be restored to Kshuna Hilo or Hila.
countries assemble every year at a season of rejoicing which is not fixed, and offer gold and silver and precious objects of rare value (choice trifles), with sheep, and horses, and domestic animals; all which they present in simple and confiding trust, so that though the earth is covered with silver and gold, and the sheep and horses fill the valleys, yet no one would dare to covet them: they consider them as things set apart for sacred purposes. The heretics (Tirthakas), by subduing their minds and mortifying their flesh, get from the spirits of heaven sacred formulæ. By the use of these they are frequently able to control diseases and recover the sick.

Going from this northwards 500 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Fo-li-shi-sa-t'ang-na.

FO-LI-SHI-SA-T'ANG-NÁ (PARŚUSTHÁNA, or VARDASTHÁNA ?)

This kingdom is about 2000 li from east to west and 1000 li from north to south. The capital is called U-pi-na (Hupián), and is 20 li round. As regards the soil and the manners of the people, these are the same as in Tsu-ku-cha; the language, however, is different. The climate is icy cold; the men are naturally fierce and impetuous. The king is a Turk (Tu-chieuh). They have (or he has) profound faith for the three precious objects of worship; he esteems learning and honours virtue (or, the virtuous, i.e., the priests).

Going to the north-east of this kingdom, traversing mountains and crossing rivers, and passing several tens of little towns situated on the frontier of the country of Kapiśa, we come to a great mountain pass called Po-lo-

---

8 Panini mentions Parsusthána, the country of the Parsús, a warlike tribe, in this direction (v. 3.117; Brāh. Samh., xiv. 18). Baber (Mem., p. 140) mentions the Paráchis among the tribes of Afghanistan. Ptolemy has two places, Parsiana (lib. vi. c. 18, s. 4) and Parsia (ib., s. 5), and also the tribes Parsioi and Parsúštai (ib., s. 3), somewhere in this vicinity.

9 Hupián or Opian, a little to the north of Charikar, in lat. 35° 2' N., long. 69° 1' E., at the entrance of a pass over the north-east end of the Pamghán range.
si-na (Varasêna),

which forms part of the great snowy mountains. This mountain pass is very high; the precipices are wild and dangerous; the path is tortuous, and the caverns and hollows wind and intertwine together. At one time the traveller enters a deep valley, at another he mounts a high peak, which in full summer is blocked with frozen ice. By cutting steps up the ice the traveller passes on, and after three days he comes to the highest point of the pass. There the icy wind, intensely cold, blows with fury; the piled snow fills the valleys. Travellers pushing their way through, dare not pause on their route. The very birds that fly in their wheeling flight cannot mount alone this point, but go afoot across the height and then fly downwards. Looking at the mountains round, they seem as little hillocks. This is the highest peak of all Jambudvipa. No trees are seen upon it, but only a mass of rocks, crowded one by the side of the other, like a wild forest.

Going on for three days more, we descend the pass and come to ‘An-ta-lo-po (Andar-âb).

AN-TA-LO-PO (ANDAR-ÂB).

This is the old land of the Tu-ho-lo country. It is about 3000 li round; the capital is 14 or 15 li round. They have no chief ruler; it is dependent on the Turks (Tuh-kinêh). Mountains and hills follow in chains, with valleys intersecting them. The arable land is very contracted. The climate is very severe. The wind and the snow are intensely cold and violent; yet the country is regularly cultivated and productive: it is suitable also for flowers and fruits. The men are naturally fierce and

---

10 This pass over the Hindu Kush (the Paropamisus or Indian Caucasus) is probably the same as the Khowak Pass described by Wood (Oruz, p. 274). He found it to be 13,000 feet in height.

11 Nyu tšeung, soaring birds.

12 See Book i., n. 146

13 That is, of the Tokhâri people. See Book i., n. 121.

14 That is, on the Turkish tribe from the borders of China that had overrun this district (see note, loc. cit.)
violent. The common people are unrestrained in their ways, and know neither wrong nor right. They do not care about learning, and give themselves only to the worship of spirits. Few of them believe in the religion of Buddha. There are three sanghārāmas and some tens of priests. They follow the teaching of the Mahāsāṅghika (Ta-chong-pu) school. There is one stūpa built by Asoka-rāja.

Going north-west from this we enter a valley, skirt along a mountain pass, traverse several little towns, and after going about 400 li we arrive at K'woh-si-to.

K'woh-si-to (Khost). 15

This also is the old land of the Tu-ho-lo country. It is about 3000 li in circuit; the capital is about 10 li round. It has no chief ruler, but is dependent on the Turks. It is mountainous, with many contracted valleys; hence it is subject to icy-cold winds. It produces much grain, and it abounds with flowers and fruits. The disposition of the men is fierce and violent; they live without laws. There are three sanghārāmas, with very few priests.

Going from this north-west, skirting the mountains and crossing the valleys, and passing by several towns, after about 300 li we come to the country called Hwoh.

Hwoh (Kunduz). 16

This country is also the old land of the Tuh-ho-lo country. It is about 3000 li in circuit; the chief town is about 10 li. There is no chief ruler, but the country depends on the Turks. The land is level and plain. It is regularly cultivated, and produces cereals in abundance. Trees and shrubs grow plentifully, and flowers and fruits (of various kinds) are wonderfully abundant. The climate is soft and agreeable; the manners of the people simple.

15 See Book i., n. 145. 16 See Book i., n. 35.
and honest. The men are naturally quick and impulsive; they clothe themselves with woollen garments. Many believe in the three precious objects (of worship), and a few pay their adoration to the spirits. There are ten saṅghārāmas with several hundred followers (priests). They study both the Great and the Little Vehicle, and practise the discipline of both. The king is of the Turkish clan; he governs all the little kingdoms to the south of the Iron Gates. He constantly shifts his dwelling, like a bird (his bird-dwelling), not constantly occupying this town.

Going east from this, we enter the T'sung-ling mountains. These mountains are situated in the middle of Jambuduvipa. On the south they border on the great snowy mountains; on the north they reach to the hot sea (Lake Temurtu), and to the "Thousand Springs;" on the west they extend to the kingdom of Hwoh; on the east to the kingdom of U-cha (Och). From east to west and from north to south they run equally for several thousand li, and abound in many hundreds of steep peaks and dark valleys. The mountain heights are rendered dangerous by the glaciers and frozen snow. The cold winds blow with fury. As the land produces a great quantity of onions therefore it is called T'sung-ling; or because the crags of these mountains have a greenish-blue tint, hence also the name.

Going east 100 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Mung-kin.

MUNG-KIN (MUNJAN).

This country is an old territory of the Tu-ho-li country. It is about 400 li in circuit. The chief city is about 15 or 16 li round. The soil and manners of the people resemble to a great extent the Hwoh country. There is no chief ruler, but they depend on the Turks. Going north we come to the country of 'O-li-ni.

For the "iron gates" see Book i., n. 77. For the T'sung-ling Mountains 144.
O-li-ni (Ahreng).

This country is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo. It borders both sides of the river Oxus. It is about 300 li in circuit; the chief city is 14 or 15 li round. In character of its soil and manners of the people it greatly resembles the Hwoh country.

Going east, we come to Ho-lo-hu.

Ho-lo-hu (Ragh).

This country is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo. On the north it borders on the Oxus (Fo-ts'u, Vakshu). It is about 200 li in circuit. The chief town is about 14 or 15 li round. The products of the soil and the manners of the people greatly resemble the Hwoh country.

Going eastward from the Mung-kin country, skirting along high mountain passes, and penetrating deep valleys, and passing in succession various districts and towns, after a journey of 300 li or so we arrive at the country of Ki-li-si-mo.

Ki-li-si-mo (Khrishma or Kishm).

This country is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo. From east to west it is 1000 li or so; from north to south it is 300 li. The capital is 15 or 16 li round. The soil and the manners of the people are just like those of Mung-kin, except that these men are naturally hot-tempered and violent.

Going north-east we come to the kingdom of Po-li-ho (Bolor).

Po-li-ho (Bolor).

This country is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo. From

---

20 For this country see Book i., n. 143.
21 The Fo-t'su (Vakshu).
22 The Japanese gives Ka-ra-ko. After Julien it represents Roh or
VOL. II.
23 See Book i., n. 142.
24 See Book i., n. 141.
25 See Book i., n. 140.
east to west it is about 100 li, and from north to south about 300 li. The chief town is some 20 li or so in circuit. The produce of the soil and the manners of the people are like those of Ki-li-si-mo.

Going east from Ki-li-si-mo, after traversing mountains and crossing valleys for about 300 li, we come to the country of Hi-mo-ta-lo.

**HI-MO-TA-LO (HIMATALA).**

This country 26 is an old territory of the country of Tu-ho-lo. It is about 300 li in circuit. It is cut up by mountains and valleys. The soil is rich and fertile, and fit for cereals. It produces much winter wheat. Every kind of plant flourishes, and fruits of all sorts grow in abundance. The climate is cold; the disposition of the men violent and hasty. They do not distinguish between wrong and right. Their appearance is vulgar and ignoble. In respect of their modes of behaviour and forms of etiquette, their clothes of wool, and skin, and felt, they are like the Turks. Their wives wear upon their head-dress a wooden horn about three feet or so in length. It has two branches (*a double branch*) in front, which signify father and mother of the husband. The upper horn denotes the father, the lower one the mother. Whichever of these two dies first, they remove one horn, but when both are dead, they give up this style of headdress.

The first king of this country was a Śākya, 27 fearless and bold. To the west of the T'sung-ling mountains most of the people were subdued to his power. The frontiers were close to the Turks, and so they adopted their low customs, and suffering from their attacks they protected their frontier. And thus the people of this kingdom were dispersed into different districts, and had many tens of fortified cities over each of which a separate chief was

26 See Book i., n. 139.  
27 Referring, as I suppose, to the history of the champions who were banished from Kapilavastu.
placed. The people live in tents made of felt, and lead the life of nomads.

On the west side this kingdom touches the country of Ki-li-si-mo. Going from this 200 odd li, we arrive at the country of Po-to-chang-na (Badakshân).

Po-to-chang-na (Badakshân).

This kingdom ²⁸ is an old territory of the Tu-ho-lo country; it is about 2000 li in circuit, and the capital, which is placed on the side of a mountain precipice, is some 6 or 7 li in circuit. It is intersected with mountains and valleys, a vast expanse of sand and stone stretches over it; the soil is fit for the growth of beans and wheat; it produces an abundance of grapes, the khamil peach, and plums, &c. The climate is very cold. The men are naturally fierce and hasty; their customs are ill-regulated; they have no knowledge of letters or the arts; their appearance is low and ignoble; they wear mostly garments of wool. There are three or four saṅghárāmas, with very few followers. The king is of an honest and sincere disposition. He has a deep faith in the three precious objects of worship.

Going from this south-east, passing across mountains and valleys, after 200 li or so we come to the country of In-po-kin (Yamgân).

In-po-kin (Yamgân).

This country ²⁹ is an old territory of the Tu-ho-lo country. It is about 1000 li or so in circuit. The capital is about 10 li round. There is a connected line of hills and valleys through the country, with narrow strips of arable land. With respect to the produce of the soil, the climate, and the character of the people, these differ little from the kingdom of Po-to-chang-na, only the character of the language differs slightly. The king's nature is

²⁸ See Book i., n. 136. ⁹ See Book i., n. 137.
violent and impulsive, and he does not know clearly the difference between right and wrong.

Going from this south-east, skirting the mountains and crossing the valleys, traversing thus by narrow and difficult ways a distance of 300 li or so, we arrive at the country of Kiu-lang-na.

KIU-LANG-NA (KURÂN).

This country 30 is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo; it is about 2000 li round. As regards the character of the soil, the mountains and the valleys, the climate and the seasons, it resembles the kingdom of In-po-kien (In-vakan). The customs of the people are without rule, their disposition is rough (common) and violent; the greater portion do not attend to religion; a few believe in the law of Buddha. The appearance of the people is displeasing and ungainly. They wear principally woollen garments. There is a mountain cavern from which much pure gold is procured (dug out). They break the stones and afterwards procure the gold. There are few sang-hârâmas, and scarcely any priests. The king is honest and simple-minded. He deeply reverences the three precious objects of worship.

Going north-east from this, after climbing the mountains and penetrating valleys, and going along a precipitous and dangerous road for 500 li or so, we come to the kingdom of Ta-mo-si-tie-ti.

TA-MO-SI-TIE-TI (TAMASTHITI?).

This country 31 is situated between two mountains. It is an old territory of Tu-ho-lo. From east to west it extends about 1500 or 1600 li; from north to south its width is only 4 or 5 li, and in its narrowest part not more than one li. It lies upon the Oxus (Fo-t’su) river, which it follows along its winding course. It is broken up with

30 See Book i., n. 138.  
31 See Book i., n. 135.
hills of different heights, whilst sand and stones lie scattered over the surface of the soil. The wind is icy cold and blows fiercely. Though they sow the ground, it produces but a little wheat and pulse. There are few trees (forest trees), but plenty of flowers and fruits. Here the shen horse is bred. The horse, though small in size, yet easily travels a long distance. The manners of the people have no regard to propriety. The men are rough and violent; their appearance low and ignoble. They wear woollen garments. Their eyes are mostly of a blue colour,\(^2\) and in this respect they differ from people of other countries. There are some ten saṅghārāmas, with very few priests (religious followers).

The capital of the country is called Hwǎn-t’o-to. In the middle of it is a saṅghārāma built by a former king of this country. In its construction\(^3\) he excavated the side of the hill and filled up the valley. The early kings of this country were not believers in Buddha, but sacrificed only to the spirits worshipped by unbelievers; but for some centuries the converting power of the true law has been diffused. At the beginning, the son of the king of this country, who was much loved by him, fell sick of a serious disease; he employed the utmost skill of the medicine art, but it brought no benefit. Then the king went personally to the Dēva temple to worship and ask for some means of recovering his child. On this the chief of the temple, speaking in the name of the spirit, said, “Your son will certainly recover; let your mind rest in peace.” The king having heard it, was greatly pleased, and returned homewards. On his way he met a Shaman, his demeanour staid and remarkable. Astonished at his appearance and dress, the king asked him whence he came and whither he was going. The Shaman having already reached the holy fruit (of an Arkat), desired to spread the law of Buddha, and therefore he had

\(^2\) Pih, either blue or green, like the deep sea.

\(^3\) In constructing and shaping its courts and halls.
assumed this deportment and appearance; so replying he said, "I am a disciple of Tathāgata, and am called a Bhikshu." The king, who was in great anxiety, at once asked him, "My son is grievously afflicted; I scarcely know whether he is living or dead. (Will he recover?)" The Shaman said, "You might raise (from the dead) the spirits of your ancestors, but your loved son it is difficult to deliver." The king replied, "A spirit of heaven has assured me he will not die, and the Shaman says he will die; it is difficult to know what to believe, coming from these masters of religion." 

Coming to his palace, he found that his loved son was already dead. Hiding the corpse and making no funeral preparations, he again asked the priest of the Dēva temple respecting him. In reply he said, "He will not die; he will certainly recover." The king in a rage seized the priest and held him fast, and then upbraiding him he said, "You and your accomplices are monstrous cheats; you pretend to be religious, but you practise lying. My son is dead, and yet you say he will certainly recover. Such lying cannot be endured; the priest (master) of the temple shall die and the building be destroyed." On this he killed the priest and took the image and flung it into the Oxus. On his return, he once more met the Shaman; on seeing him he was glad, and respectfully prostrated himself before him, as he gratefully said, "Hitherto I have ignorantly followed (my guide), and trod the path of false teaching. Although I have for a long time followed the windings of error, now the change has come from this. I pray you condescend to come with me to my dwelling."

The Shaman accepted the invitation and went to the palace. The funeral ceremonies being over, (the king) addressed the Shaman and said, "The world of men is in confusion, birth and death flow on ceaselessly; my son was sick, and I asked whether he would remain with me or depart, and the lying spirit said he would surely re-

---

34 Kwei tsuh che jin, men who reprove the world.
35 I.e., from this interview.
cover; but the first words of indication you gave were true and not false. Therefore the system of religion you teach is to be reverenced. Deign to receive me, deceived as I have been, as a disciple." He, moreover, begged the Shaman to plan and measure out a sanghārāma; then, according to the right dimensions, he constructed this building, and from that time till now the law of Buddha has been in a flourishing condition.

In the middle of the old sanghārāma is the vihāra built by this Arhat. In the vihāra is a statue of Buddha in stone above the statue is a circular cover of gilded copper, and ornamented with gems; when men walk round the statue in worship, the cover also turns; when they stop, the cover stops. The miracle cannot be explained. According to the account given by the old people, it is said that the force of a prayer of a holy man effects the miracle. Others say there is some secret mechanism in the matter; but when looking at the solid stone walls of the hall, and inquiring from the people as to their knowledge (of such mechanism), it is difficult to arrive at any satisfaction about the matter.

Leaving this country, and traversing a great mountain northward, we arrive at the country of Shi-k'i-ni (Shikhnān).

SHI-K'I-NI (SHIKHNĀN).

This country is about 2000 li in circuit, the chief city is 5 or 6 li. Mountains and valleys follow each other in a connected succession; sand and stones lie scattered over the waste lands. Much wheat and beans are grown, but little rice. The trees are thin, flowers and fruits not abundant. The climate is icy-cold; the men are fierce and intrepid. They think nothing of murder and robbery; they are ignorant of good manners or justice, and cannot distinguish between right and wrong. They are deceived as to the happiness and misery of the future,

31 See Book i., n. 133
and only fear present calamities. Their figure and appearance are poor and ignoble; their garments are made of wool or skin; their writing is the same as that of the Turks, but the spoken language is different.

Passing along a great mountain to the south of the kingdom of Ta-mo-si-tie-ti (Tamasthitī?), we come to the country of Shang-mi.

**Shang-mi (Sāmbhī ?).**

This country is about 2500 or 2600 li in circuit. It is intersected with mountains and valleys; with hills of various heights. Every kind of grain is cultivated; beans and wheat are abundant. Grapes are plentiful. The country produces yellow arsenic. They bore into the cliffs and break the stones, and so obtain it. The mountain spirits are cruel and wicked; they frequently cause calamities to befall the kingdom.

On entering the country, sacrifice is offered up to them, after which good success attends the persons in coming and going. If no sacrifice is offered them, the wind and the hail attack the travellers. The climate is very cold; the ways of the people are quick, their disposition is honest and simple. They have no rules of propriety or justice in their behaviour; their wisdom is small, and in the arts they have very little ability. Their writing is the same as that of the kingdom of Tu-ho-lo, but the spoken language is somewhat different. Their clothes are mostly made of woollen stuff. Their king is of the race of Sākyya. He greatly esteems the law of Buddha.

---

27 Tamasthitī, according to Eitel (Handbook, s. v.), was "an ancient province of Tukhāra, noted for the ferocious character of its inhabitants." But this is probably derived from Julien's restoration in the text, which he gives doubtfully.

38 This is the country over which one of the banished Sākyya youths reigned (see ante, p. 21). It is restored by Julien to Sāmbhī in the passage before us, but to Sāmbhī, vol. ii. p. 318. Eitel (op. cit., s. v.) speaks of this kingdom as founded by refugees of the Sākya family, and situated near Chitrāl, lat. 35° 35' N., and long. 72° 27' E.

39 See previous note.
The people follow his example, and are all animated by a sincere faith. There are two saṅghārāmas, with very few followers.

On the north-east of the frontier of the country, skirting the mountains and crossing the valleys, advancing along a dangerous and precipitous road, after going 700 li or so, we come to the valley of Po-mi-lo (Pāmīr). It stretches 1000 li or so east and west, and 100 li or so from north to south; in the narrowest part it is not more than 10 li. It is situated among the snowy mountains; on this account the climate is cold, and the winds blow constantly. The snow falls both in summer and spring-time. Night and day the wind rages violently. The soil is impregnated with salt and covered with quantities of gravel and sand. The grain which is sown does not ripen, shrubs and trees are rare; there is but a succession of desert without any inhabitants.

In the middle of the Pāmīr valley is a great dragon lake (Nāgahrada); from east to west it is 300 li or so, from north to south 50 li. It is situated in the midst of the great T’sung ling mountains, and is the central point of Jambudvīpa. The land is very high; the water is pure and clear as a mirror; it cannot be fathomed; the colour of the lake is a dark blue; the taste of the water sweet and soft: in the water hide the kau-ki fish (shark-spider), dragons, crocodiles, tortoises; floating on its surface are ducks, wild geese, cranes,

40 Pāmīr, according to Sir T. D. Forsyth (Report of Mission to Yarkand, p. 231, n.) is a Khokandi Turki word signifying “desert.” For a description of this district and its watersheds, see Forsyth (op. cit., p. 231), also Wood’s Oxus, chap. xxi.

41 This no doubt refers to the Sarik-kul lake, otherwise called Kul-i-Pāmīr-kulān, the lake of the Great Pāmīr; see ante, vol. i. p. 12, n. 33. The great Nāga lake is sometimes called the Rāvaṇa-hrada; Rāvaṇa also dwelt on Laṅka-giri (Potaraka?), and possibly from him is derived the Arabic name for Adam’s Peak, Mount Rahwan. The remark in the text “that it cannot be fathomed” is a mistake. Wood found soundings at 9 fathoms (Oxus, p. 237).

42 Huien Tsiang’s visit was during the summer months (probably of A.D. 642); in the winter, the lake is frozen to a thickness of two feet and a half (Wood’s
and so on; large eggs are found concealed in the wild desert wastes, or among the marshy shrubs, or on the sandy islets.

To the west of the lake there is a large stream, which, going west, reaches so far as the eastern borders of the kingdom of Ta-mo-si-tie-ti (? Tamasthit), and there joins the river Oxus (Fo-t'su) and flows still to the west. So on this side of the lake all the streams flow westward.

On the east of the lake is a great stream, which, flowing north-east, reaches to the western frontiers of the country of Kie-sha (? Kashgär), and there joins the Si-to (Sitâ) river and flows eastward, and so all streams on the left side of the lake flow eastward.

Passing over a mountain to the south of the Pâmir valley, we find the country of Po-lo-lo (Bolor); here is found much gold and silver; the gold is as red as fire.

On leaving the midst of this valley and going south-east, along the route there is no inhabited place (no men or village) Ascending the mountains, traversing the side of precipices, encountering nothing but ice and snow, and thus going 500 li we arrive at the kingdom of K'ie-p'an-to.

K'IE-P'AN-TO.

This country is about 2000 li in circuit; the capital

Oxus, p. 236). But in the summer the ice on the lake is broken up, and the hills in its neighbourhood clear of snow; this (according to the statement of the Khirghiz who accompanied Wood) takes place as early as the end of June, "at which time the water swarms with aquatic birds" (op. cit., p. 239); this confirms the remark in the text. For the other remarks, see Marco Polo, book i. chap. xxiii., and Yule's notes.

"The story of an eastern outflow from the lake is no doubt a legend connected with an ancient Hindu belief (see Cathay, p. 347), but Burnes in modern times heard much the same story" (Yule, Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 166).

43 For some remarks on the Sitâ river see ante, vol. i. n. 34. Julien, in a note found on p. 572, vol. iii., corrects the name to Sitâ, meaning "cold;" his authority is the Chinese Dictionary, I-tsi-king-in-i. 44 Perhaps the same as Balti, a Tibetan kingdom. See Cunningham (quoted by Yule. M. P., vol. i. p. 168)

45 Julien restores the symbols K'ie-p' an-to to Khavandha doubtfully. V. de St. Martin in his Mémoire (p. 426) restores it to Kar-
rests on a great rocky crag of the mountain, and is backed by the river Šitâ. It is about 20 li in circuit. The mountain chains run in continuous succession, the valleys and plains are very contracted. There is very little rice cultivated, but beans and corn grow in abundance. Trees grow thinly, there are only few fruits and flowers. The plateaux are sopy, the hills are waste, the towns are deserted; the manners of the people are without any rules of propriety. There are very few of the people who give themselves to study. They are naturally uncouth and impetuous, but yet they are bold and courageous. Their appearance is common and revolting; their clothes are made of woollen stuffs. Their letters are much like those of the Kie-sha (?Kashgar) country. They know how to express themselves sincerely, and they greatly reverence the law of Buddha. There are some ten sanghârâmas with about 500 followers. They study the Little Vehicle according to the school of the Sarvâstivâdas.

The reigning king is of an upright and honest character; he greatly honours the three treasures; his external

chu, and in Fa-hian (p. 9, n. 6). I have adopted this restoration. Col. Yule, however (Wood’s Oxus, xlviii. n. t.), speaks of Karchu as “a will-o’-the wisps, which never had any existence.” On the other hand, he says, “We know this state (i.e., Kabandha, the K’ie-p’an-to of the text) to be identical with the modern territory of Sarikol, otherwise called Tush Kurgan from its chief town” (op. cit., p. xlviii.); and again, “As for Karchu, which in so many maps occupies a position on the waters of the Yarkand river, it was an erroneous transliteration of the name Hatchût or Ketchût, which appeared in the (Chinese) tables of the later Jesuit surveyors to the south of Sarikol and was by them apparently intended as a loose approximation to the position of the frontier of the Dard state of Kanjût or Hunza” (op. cit., p. iv.) It would appear from the above extracts that K’ie-pa’nto must be identified with Sarikol and Tush Kurgan (stone-tower), and not with the Kie-cha of Fa-hian. I am unable, however, to trace Fa-hian’s route to “Kie-cha or Ladak,” as stated by Yule (op. cit., xl.), and Cunningham (Ladak, quoted by Yule, ibid.); for if Kie-cha be Ladak, how can the pilgrim describe it as in the middle of the Tsung-ling mountains (chap. v.), or say that a journey of one month westward across the Tsung-ling mountains brought him to North India (chap. vi.)? Dr. Eitel identifies the K’ie-cha of Fa-hian with the Kasol of Ptolemy (Handbook, s. v. Khâia); M. V. de St. Martin observes (Mémoire, p. 427) that Kashgar and its territory correspond with the Casia regio Scythia of Ptolemy.
manner is quiet and unassuming; he is of a vigorous mind and loves learning.

Since the establishment of the kingdom many successive ages have passed. Sometimes the people speak of themselves as deriving their name from the Chi-na-ti-po-k’iu-ta-lo (China-deva-gota). Formerly this country was a desert valley in the midst of the Tsung-ling mountains. At this time a king of the kingdom of Persia (Po-la-sse) took a wife from the Han country. She had been met by an escort on her progress so far as this, when the roads east and west were stopped by military operations. On this they placed the king's daughter on a solitary mountain peak, very high and dangerous, which could only be approached by ladders, up and down; moreover, they surrounded it with guards both night and day for protection. After three months the disturbances were quelled (they put down the robbers). Quiet being restored, they were about to resume their homeward journey. But now the lady was found to be enceinte. Then the minister in charge of the mission was filled with fear and he addressed his colleagues thus: "The king's commands were that I should go to meet his bride. Our company, in expectation of a cessation of the troubles that endangered the roads, at one time encamped in the wilds, at another in the deserts; in the morning we knew not what would happen before the evening. At length the influence of our king having quieted the country, I was resuming the progress homeward when I found that the bride was enceinte. This has caused me great grief, and I know not the place of my death. We must inquire about the villain who has done this (secretly), with a view to punish him hereafter. If we talk about it and noise it abroad, we shall never get at the truth." Then his servant, addressing the envoy, said, "Let there be no inquiry; it is a spirit that has had knowledge of her; every day at noon there was a chief-master who came from the sun's disc, and, mounted on horseback, came to
meet her." The envoy said, "If this be so, how can I clear myself from fault? If I go back I shall certainly be put to death; if I delay here they will send to have me punished. What is the best thing to do?" He answered, "This is not so complicated a matter; who is there to make inquiries about matters or to exact punishment outside the frontiers? Put it off a few days (from morning to evening).

On this he built, on the top of a rocky peak, a palace with its surrounding apartments; 47 then having erected an enclosure round the palace of some 300 paces, he located the princess there as chief. She established rules of government and enacted laws. Her time having come, she bore a son of extraordinary beauty and perfect parts. The mother directed the affairs of state; the son received his honourable title; 48 he was able to fly through the air and control the winds and snow. He extended his power far and wide, and the renown of his laws was everywhere known. The neighbouring countries and those at a distance subscribed themselves his subjects.

The king having died from age, they buried him in a stone chamber concealed with a great mountain cavern about 100 li to the south-east of this city. His body, being dried, has escaped corruption down to the present time. The form of his body is shrivelled up and thin: he looks as if he were asleep. From time to time they change his clothes, and regularly place incense and flowers by his side. From that time till now his descendants have ever recollected their origin, that their mother (or, on their mother's side), they were descended from the king of Han, and on their father's side from the race of the Sun-déva, and therefore they style themselves "descendants of the Han and Sun-god." 49

47 This may be the origin of the term Tash Kurgan, stone tower.
48 That is, the son of the Sun-god.
49 There is in this story a sort of resemblance to the tale about Syá-wush the Persian and Afrásyab the Turanian. The latter gave to the royal refugee his daughter Farangis, with the provinces of Khutan and
The members of the royal family in appearance resemble the people of the Middle Country (China). They wear on their heads a square cap, and their clothes are like those of the Hu people (Uighurs). In after-ages these people fell under the power of the barbarians, who kept their country in their power.

When Asoka-râja was in the world he built in this palace a stâpa. Afterwards, when the king changed his residence to the north-east angle of the royal precinct, he built in this old palace a sangharâma for the sake of Kumâralabdha (T'ong-shiu). The towers of this building are high (and its halls) wide. There is in it a figure of Buddha of majestic appearance. The venerable Kumâralabdha was a native of Takshasîla. From his childhood he showed a rare intelligence, and in early life gave up the world. He allowed his mind to wander through the sacred texts, and let his spirit indulge itself in profound reveries. Daily he recited 32,000 words and wrote 32,000 letters. In this way he was able to surpass all his contemporaries, and to establish his renown beyond the age in which he lived. He settled the true law, and overcame false doctrine, and distinguished himself by the brilliancy of his discussion. There was no difficulty which he could not overcome. All the men of the five Indies came to see him, and assigned him the highest rank. He composed many tens of sástras. These were much renowned and studied by all. He was the founder of the Sautrântika (King-pu) school.

At this time in the east was Aśvaghôsha, in the south Dêva, in the west Nâgârjuna, in the north Kumâralabdha. These four were called the four sons that illu-

Chin or Mâchin (Mahâchîn?). They settled at Kung, some distance north-east of Khutan. See Bellew, History of Kashgär (chap. iii., Forsyth's Report). The fame of Kaikhusro (Cyrus) as a hero-child of the sun seems to agree with the miraculous birth and conquests of the child whose birth is narrated in the text. I may add that a consideration of the circumstances connected with the history of the Persian (Iranian) and Turanian tribes confirms me in the opinion that the Tu-ho-ju of Huien Tsiang refers to the Turanian people, and not to the Turks (so-called).
mined the world. The king of this country, therefore, having heard of the honourable one (Kumāralabdha) and his great qualities, raised an army to attack Takshaśila, and carried him off by force. He then built this saṃghā-
rāma.

Going south-east 300 li or so from the city, we come to a great rocky scarp in which two chambers are excavated, in each of which is an Arhat plunged in complete ecstasy. They are sitting upright, and they could be moved but with difficulty. Their appearance is shrivelled, but their skin and bones still survive. Though 700 years have elapsed, their hair still grows, and because of this the priests cut their hair every year and change their clothes.

To the north-east of the great crag after going 200 li or so along the mountain-side and the precipices, we come to a Punyaśālā (a hospice).

In the midst of four mountains belonging to the eastern chain of the Tsung-ling mountains there is a space comprising some hundred king (thousand acres). In this, both during summer and winter, there fall down piles of snow; the cold winds and icy storms rage. The ground, impregnated with salt, produces no crops; there are no trees and nothing but scrubby underwood. Even at the time of great heat the wind and the snow continue. Scarcely have travellers entered this region when they find themselves surrounded by vapour from the snow. Merchant bands, caravans, in coming and going suffer severely in these difficult and dangerous spots.

The old story says: "Formerly there was a troop of merchants, who, with their followers, amounted to 10,000 or so, with many thousand camels. They were occupied in transporting their goods and getting profit. They were assailed by wind and snow, and both men and beasts perished.

As this time there was a great Arhat who belonged to the kingdom of Kie-p’an-to, who, taking a wide look, saw them in their danger, and being moved by pity, de-
sired to exert his spiritual power for their rescue; but when he arrived they were already dead. On this he collected the precious objects that lay scattered about and constructed a house, and gathering in this all the wealth he could, he bought the neighbouring land and built houses in the bordering cities for the accommodation of travellers, and now merchantmen and travellers enjoy the benefit of his beneficence.

Going north-east from this, descending the T'sung-ling mountains to the eastward, after passing dangerous defiles and deep valleys, and traversing steep and dangerous roads, assailed at every step by snow and wind, after going 100 li or so, we emerge from the T'sung-ling mountains and come to the kingdom of U-sha.

U-sha (Och).

This kingdom is about 1000 li in circuit; the chief town is about 10 li round. On the south it borders on the river Šítâ. The soil is rich and productive; it is regularly cultivated and yields abundant harvests. The trees and forests spread their foliage afar, and flowers and fruits abound. This country produces jade of different sorts in great quantities; white jade, black, and green. The climate is soft and agreeable; the winds and rain follow in their season; the manners of the people are not much in keeping with the principles of politeness. The men are naturally hard and uncivilised; they are greatly given to falsehood, and few of them have any feeling of shame. Their language and writing are nearly the same as those of Kie-sha. Their personal appearance is low and repulsive. Their clothes are made of skins and woollen-stuffs. However, they have a firm faith in the law of Buddha and greatly honour him. There are some ten sanghā-rāmas, with somewhat less than 1000 priests. They study the Little Vehicle according to the school of the Sarvāstivādas. For some centuries the royal line has
been extinct. They have no ruler of their own, but are in dependence on the country of K’ie-p’an-to.

Two hundred li or so to the west of the city we come to a great mountain. This mountain is covered with brooding vapours, which hang like clouds above the rocks. The crags rise one above another, and seem as if about to fall where they are suspended. On the mountain top is erected a stūpa of a wonderful and mysterious character. This is the old story:—Many centuries ago this mountain suddenly opened; in the middle was seen a Bhikshu, with closed eyes, sitting; his body was of gigantic stature and his form was dried up; his hair descended low on his shoulders and enshrouded his face. A hunter having caught sight of him, told the king. The king in person went to see him and to pay him homage. All the men of the town came spontaneously to burn incense and offer flowers as religious tribute to him. Then the king said, “What man is this of such great stature?” Then there was a Bhikshu who said in reply, “This man with his hair descending over his shoulders and clad in a kahāya garment is an Arhat who has entered the samādhi which produces extinction of mind. Those who enter this kind of samādhi have to await a certain signal (or period); some say that if they hear the sound of the ghantā they awake; others, if they see the shining of the sun, then this is a signal for them to arouse themselves from their ecstasy; in the absence of such signal, they rest unmoved and quiet, whilst the power of their ecstasy keeps their bodies from destruction. When they come from their trance after their long fast, the body ought to be well rubbed with oil and the limbs made supple with soft applications; after this the ghantā may be sounded to restore the mind plunged in samādhi.” The king said, “Let it be done,” and then he sounded the gong.

Scarcely had the sound died away, but the Arhat, recognising the signal, looking down on them from on high
for a long time, at length said, “What creatures are you with forms so small and mean, clothed with brown robes?” They answered, “We are Bhikshus!” He said, “And where now dwells my master, Kâsyapa Tathâgata?” They replied, “He has entered the great nirvâna for a long time past.” Having heard this, he shut his eyes, as a man disappointed and ready to die. Then suddenly he asked again, “Has Śâkya Tathâgata come into the world?” “He has been born, and having guided the world spiritually, he has also entered nirvâna.” Hearing this, he bowed his head, and so remained for a long time. Then rising up into the air, he exhibited spiritual transformations, and at last he was consumed by fire and his bones fell to the ground. The king having collected them, raised over them this stûpa.

Going north from this country, and traversing the rocky mountains and desert plains for 500 li or so, we come to the country of Kie-sha.50

KIE-SHA (KASHGÂR).

The country of Kie-sha is about 5000 li in circuit. It has much sandy and stony soil, and very little loam. It is regularly cultivated and is productive. Flowers and fruits are abundant. Its manufactures are a fine kind of twilled haircloth, and carpets of a fine texture and skilfully woven. The climate is soft and agreeable; the winds and rain regularly succeed each other. The disposition of the men is fierce and impetuous, and they are mostly false and deceitful. They make light of decorum and politeness, and esteem learning but little. Their custom is when a child is born to compress his head with a board of wood.51 Their appearance is common and ignoble. They paint (mark) their

50 Anciently called Su-li: this (Śrîkritati). The sound Su-li is cor-
also is the name of its chief city; rupt.—Ch. Ed.
the full name is Shi-li-ki-li-to-tî
51 See vol. i. p. 19, n. 60.
bodies and around their eyelids. For their writing (written characters) they take their model from India, and although they (i.e., the forms of the letters) are somewhat mutilated, yet they are essentially the same in form. Their language and pronunciation are different from that of other countries. They have a sincere faith in the religion of Buddha, and give themselves earnestly to the practice of it. There are several hundreds of saṅghārāmas, with some 10,000 followers; they study the Little Vehicle and belong to the Sarvāstivāda school. Without understanding the principles, they recite many religious chants; therefore there are many who can say throughout the three Piṭakas and the Viśhāṣa (Pi-p’o-sha).

Going from this south-east 500 li or so, passing the river Śitā and crossing a great stony precipice, we come to the kingdom of Cho-kiu-kia.

CHO-KIU-KIA (CHAKUKA? YARKIANG).

This kingdom is some 1000 li or so round; the capital is about 10 li in circuit. It is hemmed in by crags and mountain fastnesses. The residences are numerous. Mountains and hills succeed each other in a continuous line. Stony districts spread in every direction. This kingdom borders on two rivers; the cultivation of grain and of fruit-trees is successful, principally figs, pears, and plums. Cold and winds prevail

52 This is the only translation I can give. Julien renders it, “They have green eyeballs;” but his text must differ from mine.

53 This passage, too, is very obscure; Julien has omitted it. As an alternative translation of the whole passage, this may be offered: “They paint their bodies and their eyelids; for their models in these figures (painted letters) they take (those of) India; although they thus disfigure themselves, yet they retain great vigour of form (or body).”

54 Anciently called Tsie-ku.

55 V. de St. Martin identifies Cho-kiu-kia with Yarkiang, but he gives no authority. Dr. Eitel (Handbook, z. v. Tchakuka) states that “it is an ancient kingdom in Little Bukharia, probably the modern Yarkiang.” The distance and bearing from Kashgär would point to Yarkand.

56 Compare W. H. Belkew’s account of this neighbourhood. Kashmir and Kashgir, p. 365.

57 Probably the Yarkand and Khotan rivers.
throughout the year. The men are passionate and cruel; they are false and treacherous, and in open day practise robbery. The letters are the same as those of K‘iu-sa-ta-na (Khotan), but the spoken language is different. Their politeness is very scant, and their knowledge of literature and the arts equally so. They have an honest faith, however, in the three precious objects of worship, and love the practice of religion. There are several tens of saṅghārāmas, but mostly in a ruinous condition; there are some hundred followers, who study the Great Vehicle.

On the southern frontier of the country is a great mountain, with lofty defiles and peaks piled up one on the other, and covered with matted underwood and jungle. In winter and all through the year the mountain streams and torrents rush down on every side. There are niches and stone chambers in the outside; they occur in regular order between the rocks and woods. The Arhats from India, displaying their spiritual power, coming from far, abide here at rest. As many Arhats have here arrived at nirvāṇa, so there are many stūpas here erected. At present there are three Arhats dwelling in these mountain passes in deep recesses, who have entered the samādhi of “extinction of mind.” Their bodies are withered away; their hair continues to grow, so that Shamans from time to time go to shave them. In this kingdom, the writings of the Great Vehicle are very abundant. There is no place where the law of Buddha is more flourishing than this. There is a collection here of ten myriads of verses, divided into ten parts. From the time of its introduction till now it has wonderfully spread.

Going east from this, skirting along the high mountain passes and traversing valleys, after going about 800 li, we come to the kingdom of K‘iu-sa-ta-na (Kustana—Khotan).

58 Series of sacred books.
K'iu-sa-ta-na (Khotan)

This country is about 4000 li in circuit; the greater part is nothing but sand and gravel (a sandy waste); the arable portion of the land is very contracted. What land there is, is suitable for regular cultivation, and produces abundance of fruits. The manufactures are carpets, haircloth of a fine quality, and fine-woven silken fabrics. Moreover, it produces white and green jade. The climate is soft and agreeable, but there are tornados which bring with them clouds of flying gravel (dust). They have a knowledge of politeness and justice. The men are naturally quiet and respectful. They love to study literature and the arts, in which they make considerable advance. The people live in easy circumstances, and are contented with their lot.

This country is renowned for its music; the men love the song and the dance. Few of them wear garments of skin (felt) and wool; most wear taffetas and white linen. Their external behaviour is full of urbanity; their customs are properly regulated. Their written characters and their mode of forming their sentences resemble the Indian model; the forms of the letters differ somewhat; the differences, however, are slight. The spoken language also differs from that of other countries. They greatly esteem the law of Buddha. There are about a hundred sangha-rāmas with some 5000 followers, who all study the doctrine of the Great Vehicle.

The king is extremely courageous and warlike; he greatly venerates the law of Buddha. He says that he is of the race of Pi-shi-men (Vaiśravaṇa) Dēva. In old times this country was waste and desert, and without inhabitants. The Dēva Pi-shi-men came to fix his dwelling here. The eldest son of Aśoka-rāja, when dwelling in Takshaśilā

59 Compare the remark of Fa-hian (chap. iii.), "They love religious music." For the products and general abundance of the district round Khotan consult Marco Polo, Yule's notes, vol. i. pp. 174, 175.
having had his eyes put out, the King Aśoka was very angry, and sent deputies to order the chief of the tribes dwelling there to be transported to the north of the snowy mountains, and to establish themselves in the midst of a desert valley. Accordingly, the men so banished, having arrived at this western frontier (of the kingdom), put at their head a chief of their tribe and made him king. It was just at this time a son of the king of the eastern region (China) having been expelled from his country, was dwelling in this eastern region. The people who dwelt here urged him also to accept the position of king. Years and months having elapsed, and their laws not yet being settled, because each party used to meet by chance in the hunting-ground, they came to mutual recriminations, and, having questioned each other as to their family and so on, they resolved to resort to armed force. There was then one present who used remonstrances and said, “Why do you urge each other thus to-day? It is no good fighting on the hunting-ground; better return and train your soldiers and then return and fight.” Then each returned to his own kingdom and practised their cavalry and encouraged their warriors for the fray. At length, being arrayed one against the other, with drums and trumpets, at dawn of the day, the western army (lord) was defeated. They pursued him to the north and beheaded him. The eastern king, profiting by his victory, reunited the broken parts of his kingdom (consolidated his power), changed his capital to the middle land, and fortified it with walls; but, because he had no (surveyed) territory, he was filled with fear lest he should be unable to complete his scheme, and so he proclaimed far and near, “Who knows how to survey a dominion?” At this time there was a heretic covered with cinders who carried on his shoulder a great calabash full of water, and, advancing to the king, said,

60 I.e., the mutual relations of the two. The passage respecting the “western frontier” refers to the frontier of the “western kingdom.”

61 That is, according to Julien (note, p. 225), “the land between the eastern and western states.”
"I understand a method" (a territory), and so he began to walk round with the water of his calabash running out, and thus completed an immense circle. After this he fled quickly and disappeared.

Following the traces of the water, the king laid the foundation of his capital city; and having retained its distinction, it is here the actual king reigns. The city, having no heights near it, cannot be easily taken by assault. From ancient times until now no one has been able to conquer it. The king having changed his capital to this spot, and built towns and settled the country, and acquired much religious merit, now had arrived at extreme old age and had no successor to the throne. Fearing lest his house should become extinct, he repaired to the temple of Vaiśravana, and prayed him to grant his desire. Forthwith the head of the image (idol) opened at the top, and there came forth a young child. Taking it, he returned to his palace. The whole country addressed congratulations to him, but as the child would not drink milk, he feared he would not live. He then returned to the temple and again asked (the god) for means to nourish him. The earth in front of the divinity then suddenly opened and offered an appearance like a pap. The divine child drank from it eagerly. Having reached supreme power in due course, he shed glory on his ancestors by his wisdom and courage, and extended far and wide the influence of his laws. Forthwith he raised to the god (Vaiśravana) a temple in honour of his ancestors. From that time till now the succession of kings has been in regular order, and the power has been lineally transmitted. And for this reason also the present temple of the Dēva is richly adorned with rare gems and worship is punctually offered in it. From the first king having been nourished from milk coming from the earth the country was called by its name (pap of the earth—Kustana).

About 10 li south of the capital is a large saṅghārāma,
built by a former king of the country in honour of Vairocchana (Pi-lu-che-na) Arhat.

In old days, when the law of Buddha had not yet extended to this country, that Arhat came from the country of Kaśmir to this place. He sat down in the middle of a wood and gave himself to meditation. At this time certain persons beheld him, and, astonished at his appearance and dress, they came and told the king. The king forthwith went to see him for himself. Beholding his appearance, he asked him, saying, "What man are you, dwelling alone in this dark forest?" The Arhat replied, "I am a disciple of Tathāgata; I am dwelling here to practise meditation. Your majesty ought to establish religious merit by extolling the doctrine of Buddha, building a convent, and providing a body of priests." The king said, "What virtue has Tathāgata, what spiritual power, that you should be hiding here as a bird practising his doctrine (or rules)?" He replied, "Tathāgata is full of love and compassion for all that lives; he has come to guide living things throughout the three worlds; he reveals himself by birth or he hides himself; he comes and goes. Those who follow his law avoid the necessity of birth and death; all those ignorant of his doctrine are still kept in the net of worldly desire." The king said, "Truly what you say is a matter of high importance." Then, after deliberation, he said with a loud voice, "Let the great saint appear for my sake and show himself; having seen his appearance, then I will build a monastery, and believe in him, and advance his cause." The Arhat replied, "Let the king build the convent, then, on account of his accomplished merit, he may gain his desire."

The temple having been finished, there was a great assembly of priests from far and near; but as yet there was no ghanta to call together the congregation; on

62 In Chinese Pin-chiu, "he who shines in every place," or, "the everywhere glorious."
which the king said, "The convent is finished, but where is the appearance of Buddha?" The Arhat said, "Let the king exercise true faith and the spiritual appearance will not be far off!" Suddenly in mid-air appeared a figure of Buddha descending from heaven, and gave to the king a *ghanțā (kien-tī)*, on which his faith was confirmed, and he spread abroad the doctrine of Buddha.

To the south-west of the royal city about 20 li or so is Mount Gōśrīṇga (K'iu-shi-ling-kia); there are two peaks to this mountain, and around these peaks there are on each side a connected line of hills. In one of the valleys there has been built a *saṅghārāma*; in this is placed a figure of Buddha, which from time to time emits rays of glory; in this place Tathāgata formerly delivered a concise digest of the law for the benefit of the Dévas. He prophesied also that in this place there would be founded a kingdom, and that in it the principles of the bequeathed law would be extended and the Great Vehicle be largely practised.

In the caverns of Mount Gōśrīṇga is a great rock-dwelling where there is an Arhat plunged in the ecstasy called "destroying the mind;" he awaits the coming of Maitrēya Buddha. During several centuries constant homage has been paid to him. During the last few years the mountain tops have fallen and obstructed the way (*to the cavern*). The king of the country wished to remove the fallen rocks by means of his soldiers, but they were attacked by swarms of black bees, who poisoned the men, and so to this day the gate of the cavern is blocked up.

To the south-west of the chief city about 10 li there is a monastery called Ti-kia-p'o-fo-na (Dirghabhāavana?), in which is a standing figure of Buddha of Kiu-chi. Originally this figure came from Kiu-chi (Kuchê), and stayed here.

*This is restored by Julien mountains,"* and is now called Tu-to Kuchê (*text in loco*); a Chinese *sha* (?Tush kurghan). note tells us it was in the "icy
In old time there was a minister who was banished from this country to Kiu-chi; whilst there he paid worship only to this image, and afterwards, when he returned to his own country, his mind still was moved with reverence towards it. After midnight the figure suddenly came of itself to the place, on which the man left his home and built this convent.

Going west from the capital 300 li or so, we come to the town of Po-kia-i (Bhagai?); in this town is a sitting figure of Buddha about seven feet high, and marked with all the distinguishing signs of beauty. Its appearance is imposing and dignified. On its head is a precious gem-ornament, which ever spreads abroad a brilliant light. The general tradition is to this effect:—this statue formerly belonged to the country of Kaśmir; by the influence of prayer (being requested), it removed itself here. In old days there was an Arhat who had a disciple, a Śrāmanera, on the point of death. He desired to have a cake of sown rice (ts'hu mai); the Arhat by his divine sight seeing there was rice of this sort in Kustana, transported himself thither by his miraculous power to procure some. The Śrāmanera having eaten it, prayed that he might be re-born in this country, and in consequence of his previous destiny he was born there as a king’s son. When he had succeeded to the throne, he subdued all the neighbouring territory, and passing the snowy mountains, he attacked Kaśmir. The king of Kaśmir assembled his troops with a view to resist the invaders. On this the Arhat warned the king against the use of force, and said, “I am able to restrain him.”

Then going to meet the king of Kustana (K’iu-sa-tana), began to recite choice selections of scripture (the law).

The king at first, having no faith, determined to go on with his military preparations. On this the Arhat, taking the robes which were worn by the king in his former con-
dition as a Śrāmaṇēra, showed them to him. Having seen them, the king reached to the knowledge of his previous lives, and he went to the king of Kaśmīr and made profession of his joy and attachment. He then dispersed his troops and returned. The image which he had honoured when a Sha-mi he now respectfully took in front of the army, and came to this kingdom at his request. But having arrived at this spot, he could not get further, and so built this sanghārāma; and calling the priests together, he gave his jewelled headdress for the image, and this is the one now belonging to the figure, the gift of the former king.

To the west of the capital city 150 or 160 li, in the midst of the straight road across a great sandy desert, there are a succession of small hills, formed by the burrowing of rats. I heard the following as the common story:—“In this desert there are rats as big as hedgehogs, their hair of a gold and silver colour. There is a head rat to the company. Every day he comes out of his hole and walks about; when he has finished the other rats follow him. In old days a general of the Hiung-nu came to ravage the border of this country with several tens of myriads of followers. When he had arrived thus far at the rat-mounds, he encamped his soldiers. Then the king of Kustana, who commanded only some few myriads of men, feared that his force was not sufficient to take the offensive. He knew of the wonderful character of these desert rats, and that he had not yet made any religious offering to them; but now he was at a loss where to look for succour. His ministers, too, were all in alarm, and could think of no expedient. At last he determined to offer a religious offering to the rats and request their aid, if by these means his army might be strengthened a little. That night the king of Kustana in a dream 64 saw a great

64 For these desert rats, which are probably the same as the “golden ants” of Herodotos and Nearkhos, see Mrs. Spiers’ Ancient India; p. 216. For “the dream” and the destruction of the Assyrian army in Egypt by mice, see Herodotus, Bk. ii. chap. 141.
rat, who said to him, "I wish respectfully to assist you. To-morrow morning put your troops in movement; attack the enemy, and you will conquer."

The king of Kustana, recognising the miraculous character of this intervention, forthwith arrayed his cavalry and ordered his captains to set out before dawn, and at their head, after a rapid march, he fell unexpectedly on the enemy. The Hiung-nu, hearing their approach, were overcome by fear. They hastened to harness their horses and equip their chariots, but they found that the leather of their armour, and their horses' gear, and their bow strings, and all the fastenings of their clothes, had been gnawed by the rats. And now their enemies had arrived, and they were taken in disorder. Thereupon their chief was killed and the principal soldiers made prisoners. The Hiung-nu were terrified on perceiving a divine interposition on behalf of their enemies. The king of Kustana, in gratitude to the rats, built a temple and offered sacrifices; and ever since they have continued to receive homage and reverence, and they have offered to them rare and precious things. Hence, from the highest to the lowest of the people, they pay these rats constant reverence and seek to propitiate them by sacrifices. On passing the mounds they descend from their chariots and pay their respects as they pass on, praying for success as they worship. Others offer clothes, and bows, and arrows; others scents, and flowers, and costly meats. Most of those who practise these religious rites obtain their wishes; but if they neglect them, then misfortune is sure to occur.

To the west of the royal city 5 or 6 li is a convent called Sa-mo-joh (Samajna). In the middle of it is a stupa about 100 feet high, which exhibits many miraculous indications (signs). Formerly there was an Arhat, who, coming from a distance, took up his abode in this forest, and by his spiritual power shed abroad a miraculous light. Then the king at night-time, being in a tower of

65 Julien has "fifty or sixty li."
his palace, saw at a distance, in the middle of the wood, brilliant light shining. Asking a number of persons in succession what their opinion was, they all said, "There is a Śramaṇa who has come from far, and is sitting alone in this wood. By the exercise of his supernatural power he spreads abroad this light." The king then ordered his chariot to be equipped, and went in person to the spot. Having seen the illustrious sage, his heart was filled with reverence, and after having offered him every respect, he invited him to come to the palace. The Śramaṇa said, "Living things have their place, and the mind has its place. For me the sombre woods and the desert marshes have attraction. The storeyed halls of a palace and its extensive courts are not suitable for my tastes."

The king hearing this felt redoubled reverence for him, and paid him increased respect. He constructed for him a saṅghārāma and raised a stūpa. The Śramaṇa, having been invited to do so, took up his abode there.

The king having procured some hundred particles of relics, was filled with joy and thought with himself, "These relics have come late; if they had come before, I could have placed them under this stūpa, and then what a miracle of merit it would have been." Going then to the saṅghārāma, he asked the Śramaṇa. The Arhat said, "Let not the king be distressed. In order to place them in their proper place you ought to prepare a gold, silver, copper, iron, and stone receptacle, and place them one in the other, in order to contain the relics. The king then gave orders to workmen to do this, and it was finished in a day. Then carrying the relics on an ornamented car (or, stand), they brought them to the saṅghārāma. At this time the king, at the head of a hundred officers, left the palace (to witness the procession of the relics), whilst the beholders amounted to several myriads. Then the Arhat with his right hand raised the stūpa, and holding it in his palms, he addressed the king and said, "You can now conceal the relics underneath." Accordingly he dug

66 Or, a double tower; a belvedere.
a place for the chest, and all being done, the Arhat lowered the stūpa without hurt or inconvenience.

The beholders, exulting at the miracle, placed their faith in Buddha, and felt increased reverence for his law. Then the king, addressing his ministers, said, "I have heard it said that the power of Buddha is difficult to calculate, and his spiritual abilities difficult to measure. At one time he divided his body into ten million parts; at other times he appeared among Dévas and men, holding the world in the palm of his hand without disturbing any one, explaining the law and its character in ordinary words, so that men and others, according to their kind, understood it, exhibiting the nature of the law in one uniform way, drawing all men (things) to a knowledge of it according to their minds. Thus his spiritual power was peculiarly his own; his wisdom was beyond the power of words to describe. His spirit has passed away, but his teaching remains. Those who are nourished by the sweetness of his doctrine and partake of (drink) his instruction; who follow his directions and aim at his spiritual enlightenment, how great their happiness, how deep their insight. You hundred officers ought to honour and respect Buddha; the mysteries of his law will then become clear to you."

To the south-east of the royal city 5 or 6 li is a convent called Lu-shi,67 which was founded by a queen of a former ruler of the country. In old time this country knew nothing about mulberry trees or silkworms. Hearing that the eastern country had them, they sent an embassy to seek for them. At this time the prince of the eastern kingdom kept the secret and would not give the possession of it to any. He kept guard over his territory and would not permit either the seeds of the mulberry or the silkworms' eggs to be carried off.

The king of Kustana sent off to seek a marriage union

67 Lu-shi means "stag-pierced;" daughter of the prince of the eastern kingdom. but it is probably a phonetic form in this passage, and is the name of the
with a princess of the eastern kingdom (China), in token of his allegiance and submission. The king being well-affected to the neighbouring states acceded to his wish. Then the king of Kustana dispatched a messenger to escort the royal princess and gave the following direction: "Speak thus to the eastern princess,—Our country has neither silk or silken stuffs. You had better bring with you some mulberry seeds and silkworms, then you can make robes for yourself."

The princess, hearing these words, secretly procured the seed of the mulberry and silkworms' eggs and concealed them in her head-dress. Having arrived at the barrier, the guard searched everywhere, but he did not dare to remove the princess's head-dress. Arriving then in the kingdom of Kustana, they stopped on the site afterwards occupied by the Lu-shi sanghārāma; thence they conducted her in great pomp to the royal palace. Here then they left the silkworms and mulberry seeds.

In the spring-time they set the seeds, and when the time for the silkworms had come they gathered leaves for their food; but from their first arrival it was necessary to feed them on different kinds of leaves, but afterwards the mulberry trees began to flourish. Then the queen wrote on a stone the following decree, "It is not permitted to kill the silkworm! After the butterfly has gone, then the silk may be twined off (the cocoon). Whoever offends against this rule may he be deprived of divine protection." Then she founded this sanghārāma on the spot where the first silkworms were bred; and there are about here many old mulberry tree trunks which they say are the remains of the old trees first planted. From old time till now this kingdom has possessed silkworms, which nobody is allowed to kill, with a view to take away the silk stealthily. Those who do so are not allowed to rear the worms for a succession of years.

To the south-east of the capital about 200 li or so is a
great river flowing north-west. The people take advantage of it to irrigate their lands. After a time this stream ceased to flow. The king, greatly astonished at the strange event, ordered his carriage to be equipped and went to an Arhat and asked him, “The waters of the great river, which have been so beneficial to man, have suddenly ceased. Is not my rule a just one? are not my benefits (virtues) widely distributed through the world? If it be not so, what is my fault, or why is this calamity permitted?”

The Arhat said, “Your majesty governs his kingdom well, and the influence of your rule is for the well-being and peace of your people. The arrest in the flow of the river is on account of the dragon dwelling therein. You should offer sacrifices and address your prayers to him; you will then recover your former benefits (from the river).”

Then the king returned and offered sacrifice to the river dragon. Suddenly a woman emerged from the stream, and advancing said to him, “My lord is just dead, and there is no one to issue orders; and this is the reason why the current of the stream is arrested and the husbandmen have lost their usual profits. If your majesty will choose from your kingdom a minister of state of noble family and give him to me as a husband, then he may order the stream to flow as before.”

The king said, “I will attend with respect to your request and meet your wishes.” The Nāga (woman) was rejoiced (to have obtained the promise of) a great minister of the country (as a husband).

The king having returned, addressed his dependents thus, “A great minister is the stronghold of the state. The pursuit of agriculture is the secret of men’s life. Without a strong support, then, there is ruin to the state;

---

68 Probably the Karakash river. (High Tartary and Yarkand). Or its sandy and dry bed is still marked it may be the Khotan-dâria. with a dotted line on Shaw’s map
without food there is death to the people. In the presence of such calamities what is to be done?"

A great minister, leaving his seat, prostrated himself and said, "For a long time I have led a useless life, and held an important post without profit to others. Although I have desired to benefit my country, no occasion has offered. Now, then, I pray you choose me, and I will do my best to meet your wishes. In view of the good of the entire people what is the life of one minister? A minister is the support of the country; the people the substance. I beg your majesty not to hesitate. I only ask that, for the purpose of securing merit, I may found a convent."

The king having consented, the thing was done forthwith, and his request complied with. On this the minister asked to be allowed to enter at once the dragon-palace. Then all the chief men of the kingdom made a feast, with music and rejoicing, whilst the minister, clad in white garments and riding a white horse, took leave of the king and respectfully parted with the people of the country. So, pressing on his horse, he entered the river; advancing in the stream, he sank not, till at length, when in the middle of it, he whipped the stream with his lash, and forthwith the water opened in the midst and he disappeared. A short time afterwards the white horse came up and floated on the water, carrying on his back a great sandalwood drum, in which was a letter, the contents of which were briefly these: "Your majesty has not made the least error in selecting me for this office in connection with the spirit (Nāga). May you enjoy much happiness and your kingdom be prosperous! Your minister sends you this drum to suspend at the south-east of the city; if an enemy approaches, it will sound first of all."

The river began then to flow, and down to the present time has caused continued advantage to the people.
Many years and months have elapsed since then, and the place where the dragon-drum was hung has long since disappeared, but the ruined convent by the side of the drum-lake still remains, but it has no priests and is deserted.

Three hundred li or so to the east of the royal city is a great desert marsh, upwards of several thousands acres in extent, without any verdure whatever. Its surface is a reddish-black. The old people explain the matter thus: This is the place where an army was defeated. In old days an army of the eastern country numbering a hundred myriads of men invaded the western kingdom. The king of Kustana, on his side, equipped a body of cavalry to the number of ten myriads, and advanced to the east to offer the enemy battle. Coming to this spot, an engagement took place. The troops of the west being defeated, they were cut to pieces and their king was taken prisoner and all their officers killed without leaving one to escape. The ground was dyed with blood, and the traces of it still remain (in the colour of the earth).

After going east 30 li or so from the field of battle we come to the town of Pîmâ (Pi-mo). Here there is a figure of Buddha in a standing position made of sandalwood. The figure is about twenty feet high. It works many miracles and reflects constantly a bright light. Those who have any disease, according to the part affected, cover the corresponding place on the statue with gold-leaf, and forthwith they are healed. People who address prayers to it with a sincere heart mostly obtain their wishes. This is what the natives say: This image in old days when Buddha was alive was made by Uḍâyana (U-to-yen-na), king of Kauśāmbi (Kiao-shang-mi). When Buddha left the world, it mounted of its own accord into the air and came to the north of this kingdom, to the town of Ho-lo-lo-kia.\(^69\) The men of this city were rich and prosperous,

\(^69\) Râgha or Raghan, or perhaps Oorgha.
and deeply attached to heretical teaching, with no respect for any other form of religion. From the time the image came there it showed its divine character, but no one paid it respect.

Afterwards there was an Arhat who bowed down and saluted the image; the people of the country were alarmed at his strange appearance and dress, and they hastened to tell the king. The king issued a decree that the stranger should be covered over with sand and earth. At this time the Arhat’s body being covered with sand, he sought in vain for food as nourishment.\textsuperscript{70} There was a man whose heart was indignant at such treatment; he had himself always respected the image and honoured it with worship, and now seeing the Arhat in this condition, he secretly gave him food. The Arhat being on the point of departure, addressed this man and said, “Seven days hence there will be a rain of sand and earth which will fill this city full, and there will in a brief space be none left alive. You ought to take measures for escape in knowledge of this. They have covered me with earth, and this is the consequence to them.” Having said this he departed, disappearing in a moment.

The man, entering the city, told the tidings to his relatives, but they did nothing but mock at him. The second day a great wind suddenly arose, which carried before it all the dirty soil, whilst there fell various precious substances.\textsuperscript{71} Then the men continued to revile the man who had told them (about the sand and earth).

But this man, knowing in his heart what must certainly happen, excavated for himself an underground passage leading outside the city, and there lay concealed. On the seventh day, in the evening, just after the division of the

\textsuperscript{70} It would seem that his body was buried up to his neck.

\textsuperscript{71} Stas. Julien prefers substituting \textit{Sha-tu} in the text for \textit{Tsa-h-pao}. In that case it would be “sand and earth”; but, if this be so, why did the people still find fault with the prophet?
night, it rained sand and earth, and filled the city. This man escaped through his tunnel and went to the east, and, arriving in this country, he took his abode in Pima. Scarcely had the man arrived when the statue also appeared there. He forthwith paid it worship in this place and dared not go farther (change his abode). According to the old account it is said, "When the law of Śākya is extinct then this image will enter the dragon-palace."

The town of Ho-lo-lo-kia is now a great sand mound. The kings of the neighbouring countries and persons in power from distant spots have many times wished to excavate the mound and take away the precious things buried there; but as soon as they have arrived at the borders of the place, a furious wind has sprung up, dark clouds have gathered together from the four quarters of heaven, and they have become lost to find their way.

To the east of the valley of Pima we enter a sandy desert, and after going 200 li or so, we come to the town of Ni-jang. This city is about 3 or 4 li in circuit; it stands in a great marsh; the soil of the marsh is warm and soft, so that it is difficult to walk on it. It is covered with rushes and tangled herbage, and there are no roads or pathways; there is only the path that leads to the city, through which one can pass with difficulty, so that every one coming and going must pass by this town. The king of Kustana makes this the guard of his eastern frontier.

Going east from this, we enter a great drifting sand desert. These sands extend like a drifting flood for a great distance, piled up or scattered according to the wind. There is no trace left behind by travellers, and

72 For an account of sand-buried cities, and particularly of Ku-tak, see Bellew, Kashgar and Kashgar, pp. 370, 371. Also for Pima, probably near Keria, see Yule, Marco Polo, vol. ii, Appendix M.; and also vol. i, chap. xxxvii. and note 1. It is probably the Han-mo of Sung Yun. 73 Pima was probably the Pein of Marco Polo. See Yule, ut supra.
oftentimes the way is lost, and so they wander hither and thither quite bewildered, without any guide or direction. So travellers pile up the bones of animals as beacons. There is neither water nor herbage to be found, and hot winds frequently blow. When these winds rise, then both men and beasts become confused and forgetful, and then they remain perfectly disabled (sick). At times sad and plaintive notes are heard and piteous cries, so that between the sights and sounds of this desert men get confused and know not whither they go. Hence there are so many who perish in the journey. But it is all the work of demons and evil spirits.

Going on 400 li or so, we arrive at the old kingdom of Tu-ho-lo (Tukhâra). This country has long been deserted and wild. All the towns are ruined and uninhabited.

From this going east 600 li or so, we come to the ancient kingdom of Che-mo-t'o-na, which is the same as the country called Ni-mo. The city walls still stand loftily, but the inhabitants are dispersed and scattered.

From this going north-east a thousand li or so, we come to the old country of Navapa (Na-fo-po), which is the same as Leu-lan. We need not speak of the mountains and valleys and soil of this neighbouring country. The habits of the people are wild and unpolished, their manners not uniform; their preferences and dislikes are not always the same. There are some things difficult to verify to the utmost, and it is not always easy to recollect all that has occurred.

74 This was probably the extreme limit of the old kingdom of Tu-ho-lo towards the east. When the Yuechi spread eastwards they dispossessed the old Turanian population.
75 This is the Tso-moh of Sung-yun. It must have been near Sorghâk of Prejevalsky's map. For some interesting notes on this place see Kingsmill, China Review, vol. viii. No. 3, p. 163.
76 Also called Shen-shen; see China Review, loc. cit. Kingsmill makes Navapa equal to Navapura, i.e., Neapolis.
But the traveller has written a brief summary of all he witnessed or heard. All were desirous to be instructed, and wherever he went his virtuous conduct drew the admiration of those who beheld it. And why not? in the case of one who had gone alone and afoot from Ku, and had completed such a mission by stages of myriads of li!  

77 M. Julien renders this passage: "How could he be compared simply to such men as have gone on a mission with a single car, and who have traversed by post a space of a thousand li?" But if the symbol Ku be for Ku-see, i.e., "the ancient land of the Uigurs" (see vol. i. p. 17, n. 51), then I think the translation I have given is the right one. Respecting this land of Kau-chang, we are told it was called Ming-fo-chau in the Han period, and Ku-see-ti (the land of Ku-see) during the Tang period (vid. the map called Yu-ti-.tsun-t'si).

END OF BOOK XII.
INDEX.

References to the Introduction are indicated by black figures.

A.
Abhaya ('O-po-ye), in Chinese Wu-sei, free from fear, ii. 7 n.
Abhayagirivâsina ('O-p'o-ye-k'i-li-chu-pu) schismatic school, ii. 247.
Abhayagiri vihâra, i. 73, 76, 76.
Abhayamadala — the remover of doubts—Avalokitêśvara, i. 60 n.
Abhidharma, i. 38, 39, 71; 180.
Abhidharmajñâna-prasthâna Sûtra ('O-pi-ta-mo-fa-chi-lun) of Kâtyâyana, i. 175.
Abhidharma-bhâsa Sûtra ('O-pi-tamo-ku-shelun) of Vasubandhu, i. 105, 110 n., 193; ii. 268 n.
Abhidharmabhsa-mahâvihâshâ Sûtra, i. 155 n., 175.
Abhidharmalipika ('O-pi-tamo-t'sang) section of transcendental doctrine formed under the direction of Mahâ-Kâsyapa, i. 117, 155; ii. 164.
Abhidharmapalarama-sâdhana Sûtra ('O-pi-tamo-ming-ching-lun), i. 112 n.
Abhidharmavihâshâ Sûtra ('O-pi-tamo-pi-sha-lun), i. 155.
Abhyantarika vihâra, ii. 267 n.
Abhitâsâ, six miraculous powers, i. 104 n., 149.
Abhyutagârâja — the great august king—Avalokitêśvara, i. 60 n.
Ab-i-Pânj river, i. 41 n.
Achala or Achára ('O-che-lo) Arhat, in Chinese So-hsing, ii. 218, 257 n., 258, 268.
Adam's Peak in Ceylon, i. 126 n.; ii. 232 n., 297 n.
Adbhuta stûpa (Ho-pu-to-shisu-tu-po), the stûpa of extraordinary stone (K'i-te-shi), i. 127 n.
Adirâja, i. 201 n.
Adishtha, Adiśtha, capital of Kaśmir, i. 158 n.
Adyâtmanâdy, in Chinese Nêi-ming, i. 79, 153 n.
AṂasesa—see Andarâb.
Afghans, natives of Pakhtu, the Haerensis of Herodotos and the Aévâkas of Sanskrit geographers, i. 43 n.
Afghanistan (Ro-hi or Lo-hi), i. 38, 43 n., 51 n.
Afrâyâb, ii. 301 n.
Agni ('O-kî-ni) country, i. 17.
Agrapura monastery at Mathura, i. 191 n.
Ahi, the cloud-snake, i. 126 n.
Ahiheetra or Ahikshêtra ('O-li-shita-lo), i. 190 n., 200, 201.
Ahôrdêtra (I-jî-i-e), day-and-night, i. 71.
Ahreng or Hazrat Imâm ('O-li-ni), i. 42 n.; ii. 289.
Ajanta rock temples, i. 32 n., ii. 32 n., 257 f.; Ajânta frescoes, i. 83 n., ii. 239 n.; inscription, ii. 218 n.
Ajâtasatru ('O-she-to-shu-tu-lu), in Chinese Wei-sing-yun, king, i. 17, 54, 55, 59; 238 n.; ii. 2 n., 65 n., 70 n., 77 n., 83 n., 85, 90 n., 150, 160, 161, 166, 167, 179.
Ajitakùta, Achchhuta in Singhalese accounts (O-chu-to-kiu), i. 98.
Ajitavati ('O-shi-to-fa-ti), in Chinese Wu-shing, ii. 32, 39 n.
INDEX.

Ajñāta Kaundinya (‘O-jo-kio-ch’i-n’-ju’), i. 67; ii. 46, 52, 128, 129.
Ajūna, or Nagarabhāra, i. 95 n.
Akhīānayāgatama (Wu-so-yeu-ch’u-t’ing’), ii. 54 n.
Akni (‘O-ki-ni’) country, i. 17.
Aksai mountains in Turkistan, i. 29 n.
Akhaya-vad, banyan tree, i. 232 n.
Aksu (Poh-luh-kiān), country of Little Bukhāria, i. 19; 24.
Alakhāna, rāja of Gurjāra, i. 165 n.
Alakhanāka Buddha, i. 182 n.
Al-chac or Tāshkand, i. 30 n.
A-li-fun-nai-r’hs’—Ali-bunar (?).
Alingar river, in Kābul, i. 90 n.
Allāhābd or Prayāga, i. 232 n.
Al-Makāh, Arab idol, i. 128 n.
alms-bowl (pātra) of Buddha, i. 47.
See pātra.
A-lo forest, i. 43.
alphabet, Indian, i. 77.
Altyn-tăgh mountains, i. 13 n.
Amala (Nga-n-mo-lo) fruit, i. 88.
Amalā (‘O-mo-lo), the Ānura, i. 89.
Amala fruit, ii. 95 n., 96 n.
Amalakā (‘O-mo-lo-kia), Myrobalan emblica, ii. 95, 96, 118, 136 n.
Amalaka stūpa, ii. 96.
amalakaraka, in Chinese po-l’p’ing’,
pure dish or vase, ii. 137 n., 205 n.
Amaradeva’s vihāra, ii. 174 n.
Amarā-Simha, ii. 137 n.
Amarāvatī sculptured stūpa, i. 17;
47 n., 112 n., ii. 209 n., 221 n.,
222 n.; inscriptions, ii. 220 n.
Amazons, i. 35 n.
Amrapālī, i. 59; ii. 69 n. See
Amrapāli.
amber (ku-ch’i) dish, ii. 129.
Amsa (Nga-mi-lo), the tamarind, i. 83.
Amsa (‘An-mo-lo), in Chinese Nai,
Mangifera indicia or mango tree,
i. 196, 226, 236; ii. 45, 66; Āmra
grove, i. 53; ii. 167, 168.
Āmra girl or lady, or Amrapālī, i.
53, 53; ii. 68, 69.
Āmradārikā (‘An-lo-mu and An-mo-
lo-mu’), ii. 68 n.
Amṛtādhanā (Kan-lu-fan-wang), ii.
38 n.
Aniritaar, i. 165 n.
Aṁśuvarman (An-shu-fa-mo), in
Chinese Kwang-cheu, a king of Nepal, ii. 81.
Amm-ardya (Mu-ho), Oxus river, i.
12 n., 33, 36 n., 38 n., 41 n.
Aṅgāmin, name of third Buddhist order, i. 61.
Anagundi, ii. 254 n.
Anaitis or Anahita, Babylonian goddess, ii. 183 n.
Ananda (‘O-nan and ‘O-nan-t’o’), i.
32, 38, 39, 49, 52, 54, 55, 59, 61;
53, 134 n., 149, 180, 181, 191 n.,
ii. 5, 35, 39, 40, 69, 70, 73, 75, 76,
77, 90, 154, 160, 163, 164, 179;
becomes an Arhat, ii. 163.
Anandapura (‘O-nan-t’o-pu-lo’), ii.
268.
Anāthapindāda or Anāthapindika (Ki-ku-to’), ii. 3 n., 4–7, 9.
Anavatapta (‘O-neu, ‘O-neu-ta, and ‘O-na-p’o-ta-to’), in Chinese Wu-
jeh-ko-ch’i, a lake, i. 11, 12 n.,
13 n., ii. 6, 155; dragon king, i.
11 n., ii. 41.
anitam, impermanency, i. 223.
Araṇa adopāra, i. 14 n.
Andarāb or Indarāb (An-ta-lo-po’),
in Badakshān, perhaps the As-
parsa of the Greeks, i. 43, ii. 286.
Andhra (An-ta-lo) country, ii. 217 f.,
220 n.
Āngha country, ii. 191 n., 201 n.
aṅguli, aṅguliparva, in Chinese chi-
tse, a finger’s-breath, i. 70.
Aṅgulimālyas (Yang-kiu-li-mo-lo’),
in Chinese Chi-ma-na, i. 44; ii. 3.
Aniruddha (‘O-ni-liu-t’o’), i. 39; ii.
38, 40.
anitya, unreality, i. 223.
‘an-mo-lo — Myrobalan emblica’, i.
180 n.
An-shu-fa-mo—Aṁśuvarman, ii. 81.
‘An-ta-lo—Andhra, ii. 217,
ant’s of Herodotos and Nearchos,
ii. 315 n.
amu (‘O-mu’), in Chinese Si-čh’i’an, an atom, i. 71.
anupadhiśa—without remnants,
i. 149.
Anurādhapura, ii. 247 n.
Anuruddha, ii. 38 n.
Apałā (‘O-po-lo-lo’), a dragon or
nāga, i. 122, 123, 126 n. 132.
INDEX.

άφετέρων, κ.τ.λ., ii. 205 n.
Aphsar, ii. 184 n.
Apollonius of Tyana, i. 136 n.
Apricot, Chinese hang or mā, i. 88.
Aptanêtravana — sight - obtaining forest, i. 46 n.; ii. 12.
Arabs, i. 176 n.
Arâda Kâlama ("O-lan-kia lan"), ii. 54.
Arañya bhikšu, i. 212 n.
Ardent master’s pool, ii. 55.
Ardhvisura, Anâhita, or Anaîtis, Babylonian goddess, ii. 225 n.
Arhan or Arhat ("O-lo-han"), Ch. Wu-bio, one of high rank in the Buddha hierarchy, i. 61, 65, 66, 67, 68, 76, 99; ii. 152 n.; the mysterious arhat, ii. 305.
army in India, i. 82.
Arrah or Árrâ, town, ii. 63 n.
Aruma ("O-lo-nau"), mountain, Chehel-Dukhtaran (?), i. 61 n., 62; ii. 284.
Arupadâhu world, i. 2 n.
Árya Ásanga, ii. 171 n.
Áryadevā Bôdhisattva, i. 190 n.
Árya Laikévdvāra-mahâdêva-Sêtra, ii. 252 n.
Árya-Pârvika (Hie-t’sun), i. 98 n., 105!.
Áryasiûna, Buddhist patriarch, i. 119 n., 120 n.
Ásako-nâna ("O-šhe-li-ni"), convent, i. 22 n.
Áshâdha ("An-sha-cha") month, i. 72.
Asheâ dâgaba, i. 61 n.; ii. 31 n.; ashes bôdhi tree, ii. 117.
asthâvyinâkhas (pa-kiain’to’), i. 104, 149; ii. 143.
As stream, ii. 44 n.
Asita-Ṛšhi, i. 49; ii. 15, 16.
Áskâ, town in Ganjām, ii. 205 n.
Asmakûta, i. 13 n.; ii. 68 n.
Asôka-flower tree, ii. 24.
Asôka (sorrowless) kingdom—Ceylon, ii. 248.
Atôkvāvâdāna, ii. 65 n.
Aspinia, a satrapy of Baktria, i. 37 n.
assembly, quinquennial (paścharavatā and paścharavartikā parishad), i. 21 n.
Astes—Hasti, king of Gandhâra, i. 109 n.
Asthipura—Bone-town, i. 186 n.
Astronomy, i. 71.
asottâda, impurity, i. 223 n.
Asuras ("O-su-lo"), ii. 148, 214, 223, 225; Asura cave, ii. 156, 157.
Aśvaghóša Bôdhisattva ("O-shi-po-khiu-sha-pu-sa"), in Chinese Ma-ming, i. 57 n., 143 n., 160 n., 182 n., 236 n.; ii. 32, 37 n., 38 n., 95, 100, 101, 302.
Aśvâjita ("O-shi-p’o-shi"), in Chinese Ma-shing, i. 59; ii. 55 n., 150, 151, 175, 178.
Aśvapati (Ma-chu), lord of horses, i. 13 n., 14, 16.
Aśvayuja (An-shi-fo-yu-che), month, i. 72; ii. 136.
Átali, Átari ("O-ch’a-li"), near Multân, ii. 265.
Aṭhârvvâdā or Aṭhârvâna ("O-ta-p’o-na"), in Chinese Chen-shu, Jang-tei, and Shu-lun, i. 79 n.
Athena, ii. 259 n.
âtman, ii. 251 n.
Atrañhâkâra ruins, i. 201 n., 202 n.
Atyanâbakāla ("O-tin-p’o-chi-lo"), ii. 275-277.
Aulîè-ata, town on the Talas river, i. 29.
Audi, Ayôdbhya, i. 210 n.
Avtâdhâna jàtâka, i. 151 n.
Avânda ("O-fan-ch’a"), ii. 280.
INDEX.

Avanti in Málava, ii. 270 n.
Avaraśailā (‘O-fa-lo-shi-lo), in Chinese Si-shau-sse, monastery, ii. 221.
Avātāra (kiang-shin), i. 122 n.
Avichi (Wu-kan-tyi-yuh), a hell, i. 172 n., 197; ii. 10.
Aviddhakañña (‘O-pi-to-gie-la-na), in Chinese Pu-chwang-yul, monastery, ii. 61, 62, 63 n.
Aviddhakañnapura (‘O-pi-t’o-gie-lana), in Chinese Pu-chwang-rh, ii. 62 n.
Āvur, town, ii. 231 n.
Ayamukha. See Hayamukha.
Ayana (king), assafoetida. See king.
Ayantana (chu), i. 95 n.
Ayōdhyā (‘O-yu-t’o) or Küssla Audh, i. 106 n., 224 f., 239 n., 240 n.; ii. 1 n., 209 n.
Ayurvēda (‘O-yu), in Chinese Ming-tun and Shan-tun, i. 79 n.
Ayushmat (chang-lo), long-lived, ii. 74.
Azhdahā, a dragon, i. 51 n.

B.
Bābāvali, fountain of Ėlāpatra, i. 137 n.
Badakshan (Po-to-chang-na), the Barāḏsna of Strabo, the Ocūs-dāgāna of Ptolemy, i. 42 n.; ii. 291.
Badhā. See Bhatā.
Bagarak Lake, i. 13; 17 n.
Baghūlān Baghelān (Po-kia-lan), a district north of the Oxus, i. 43.
Bālikas, inhabitants of Takkadēsa, i. 165 n.
bahiṣṭi—Pali, unbelievers, i. 91 n.
Baihār hill. See Vaibhāra, ii. 155 n., 156 n., 181 n.
Bairāṭ or Virāṭa, i. 179 n.
Baiswārā, the country of the Bais Rājputs, i. 210 n.
Bakrōr, ii. 138 n.
Baktia (Ta-hia, Po-ho), i. 14; 37 n., 58 n.; ii. 222 n.
Bālabadita-rājā (‘O-lo-o-ti-to), in Chinese Yeu-jib, king of Maga-
dha, i. 119 n., 168-170; ii. 168, 169, 173.
Baliya, ii. 62 n.
Balk (Po-ho-lo), town of Baktria, i. 14; 39 n., 43, 44 n., 48, 49 n.
Balmapura or Vasmapura, Reinaud’s restoration of P’i-chen-p’o-pu-lo, ii. 272 n.
Bālmēr (Pi-lo-mo-lo), capital of Gurg-
jara, ii. 270.
Balti or Baltistān, Bolor (‘U-Po-
lo), i. 135 n.; ii. 298.
Bālukā (Po-luh-kia) or Bāl, name of a town, i. 19; 24.
bambu forest, ii. 147 n., 161.
bambu garden (vēsuraṇa), ii. 161.
Bāmiyān (Fan-yen-na), town of Af-
ghanistān, i. 39 n., 49, ii. 21; images at, i. 51, 55 n.
Bāna, poet, i. 210 n.
Bānārs (Po-lo-ni-sse), i. 67, 70; 47 n., 134 n., 137 n.; ii. 43, 44, 46 n., 47 n., 61 n.
Bannu (Po-nā) country, i. 36.
Bāppapāda vibhāra at Valabhi, ii. 268 n.
Barabar hills, ii. 136 n.
Baragāon village, ii. 167 n.
Baranā, ii. 45 n.
Bārāyāṇa, Bārīch, ii. 259 n.
Barren ridge (Chih-ling) district, i. 84.
Basti district, i. 14 n.
bdellium, gugūla, ii. 265 n.
Bārgrām—Hidda, several places of this name, i. 95 n.
Behār hill, ii. 183 n.
Bējwāḍā on the Krishnā, ii. 221 n., 223 n.
Bela-sagun, capital of the Kara-
khitai, i. 26 n.
Berār, ii. 209 n.
Betik (Fa-tī), i. 35.
bhadanta, ii. 203 n.
Bhadra (Po-to), in Chinese Hien, a devotee, ii. 55 n.; a tree (p’o-ta-
lo), i. 88.
Bhadra-kalpa (Hien-kie), the kalpa of
the sages, i. 54, 78; ii. 13, 18, 19, 116, 132, &c.
Bhadrapada (‘O-lo-po-t’o) month,
i. 72.
Bhadraruchi (Po-to-lo-liu-chi) Bhik-
shu, ii. 263 f., 275.
Bhāgalpur (Champā), ii. 191 n., 192 n., 201 n.
Bhāgyadēvi, ii. 81 n.
Bhāndak, ii. 209 n., 214 n.
Bhārgava Brāhmaṇa, ii. 259 n.
Bhārīch, Bhārūkachchha, Bhārūka-
INDEX.

chhêva or Bâpôyaôa (Po-lu-kie-ch'e-p'o), ii. 255 n., 259 n.,
260 n.
Bâskaravarmâ (Po-se-kie-lo-famo), in Chinese Yih-cheu, king of
Kâmarûpa, ii. 196.
Bhâtô or Badhâ, ii. 20 n.
Bhâtârka monastery at Valabhi, ii.
267 n.
Bhâvaviveka (Po-pi-sei-kia), Chinese
Tszing-pin, ii. 223, 224 n., 225 n.
Bhâwalpur, ii. 265 n.
Bhida (Pi-tu), i. 38.
bhâksu (Pi-t'su), ii. 5, &c.
bâtâshuna, i. 39.
Bhimâ (Pi-mo) Durgâ, temple of, i.
113, 114; ii. 214 n.
Bhogadêvi, ii. 81 n.
Bhogavarman, ii. 81 n.
Bhula, ditch of, ii. 17 n., 20 n.,
29 n.
Bhuvanêvara in Orissa, ii. 205 n.,
206 n.
Buśâvas or Tīsukus, the Vindâsa river,
i. 165 n.
Buddhis river, i. 147 n.
Biddhakarn, corruption of Bṛhadā-
ranya, ii. 62 n.
Bijnôr in Rohilkhand, i. 190 n.
Bikapur, ii. 62 n.
bimba, Bryonia grandiâs, ii. 102 n.
Bimbâsârâ râja (Pi'n-pi-so-lo), i. 81;
ii. 2 n., 85, 102, 148, 153, 165, 166,
177, 188, 189.
Bindusârâ râja, i. 2 n., 140 n.
Bingheul, the Mongol Min-bulak, i.
27 n., 28 n.
births (sûka), i. 100.
Biyas river—Vipâsâ, i. 167 n., 173 n.,
177 n.
bôdhî, i. 138.
Bôdhidharma, patriarch, i. 119 n.,
120 n.; ii. 251 n.
Bôdhidrâmâ (Po-ti-shu), Chinese
Tao-shu, i. 106; 47, 101, 142; ii.
54, 115-117, 121, 123, 127, 132,
133, 135, 174, 223, 224.
Bôdhimagandâ (Po-ti-tao-ch'ang), in
Chinese Tao-ch'ang, ii. 116.
Bôdhisattva (Po-ti-sa-to), i. 61, 62,
75, 93; the great earth, 11.
Bôdhivyâra (Po-ti-sse), i. 76.
Bokhâra (Pu-ho), i. 34, 35 n.
Bolor (Po-lu-lo) or Balti, Baltistan,
i. 93; 135; ii. 298.
Bolor (Po-li-ho), ii. 289.

Borddhonkâti, ii. 194 n.
Borps, i. 19.
Brahmâ (Fan), i. 63; ii. 35 n., 115,
127.
Brahmachâra, ii. 35 n.
Brahmachária (Fan-chi), in Chinese
Tsing-i, i. 67; and courtesan, ii.
7.
Brahmadatta (Fan-sheu), king of
Kusumapura, i. 207.
Brahmadattarâja (Fan-yu-wang), ii.
71, 72.
Brahmâdevâ or râja, i. 218; ii.
123, 125, 133, 145, 148, 184.
Brahma-gâyâ, ii. 113 n.
Brahmakâyikas (Fan-t'ien), Brahmac
heavens, i. 40.
Brahmanadita, ii. 71 n.
Brahmân caste (Po-lo-men), i. 39,
98, 100, 104; 69, 82, 89; unbelie-
ving, 44.
Brahmân king, ii. 271.
Brahmân inspired by demon, ii.
100.
Brahmânas, nothing known of, i.
68.
Brahmanapura, town of Mâlwâ, ii.
262, 265 n.
Brahmapura (Po-lo-hih-mo-pu-lo),
i. 198.
Brahmarâ, Durgâ, ii. 214 n.
Brahmarâ convent, ii. 224 n.
Brahmarâgiri (Po-lo-mo-lo-ki-li), ii.
214.
Bṛhadâranya, ii. 62 n.
broom, Buddha's, preserved at Balkh,
i. 45.
Buddhabhadra (Fo-t'o-po-to-lo), In-
dian Sramana, i. 12.
Buddha-charita, ii. 16 n., 54 n.,
55 n.
Buddhâdasa (Fo-t'o-t'0-so), in
Chinese Fo-se, i. 230.
Buddhâdharma, 28th patriarch, i.
105 n., 168 n.
Buddha-gâyâ, ii. 113, 134, 137, 138,
142 n.; ii. 13 n.
Buddha-gâyâ inscription, i. 9; 224 n.
Buddhagupta-râja (Fo-t'0-kio-to), in
Chinese Kio-mi and Kio-hu, a
king, i. 168 n.; ii. 168.
Buddhal, ii. 147 n.
Buddha's hair and nails, i. 221, 230,
236, ii. 173; tooth, i. 159, 160,
222, ii. 249; in Ceylon, ii. 248,
249; image of, i. 21, 50, 51 n.,
INDEX.

102, 202, 230, 235, 236, ii. 215, 217, 252, 322; pātra or begging-dish, i. 78; 98, 99 n.; eyeball, i. 96; painted figure of, i. 102; robe, i. 96; shadow, i. 31; 94; shoe-mark, i. 96; skull-bone, i. 96, 97. 
Buddha-lökanaśtha, ii. 262, 263. 
Buddhasimha (Fo-t'o-sâng-ho), disciple of Asaṅga, i. 227, 228. 
Buddhapālita, Buddhist teacher, i. 190 n. 
Buddhavana (Fo-t'o-fa-na) mountain, ii. 145, 147 n. 
Buddhism (Northern), i. 9. 
Buddhist books, ii. 216 n.; in China, i. 10, 20. 
Buddhist schools, &c., i. 80. 
Buddhist triad, Buddha, Dharma, and Saṅgha, i. 50 n. 
Bhukhāria, ii. 307 n. 
bûlak (Turkish) pu-lo, camping-ground, i. 45 n. 
Bukhâra of Ptolemy, i. 135 n. 
Bulunghir river, i. 12. 
Buna Mugalan-râja, ii. 230 n. 
Burma, i. 47 n. 

C. 
cadmia of Pliny, ii. 174 n. 
Calamina, at the mouth of the Indus, ii. 174 n. 
calendar (the royal), i. 6, 9; Hindu, i. 71. 
camphor—<karpâra>, ii. 232. 
cannibalism, i. 14 n. 
Capiasa, Capiasene, and Caphusae—Kapisa, i. 54 n., 56 n. 
Caspian Sea, i. 36 n. 
castes (varṇa), Indian, i. 69, 82; low, 89. 
castration, i. 23. 
ca—<stu (wu-t'u), i. 146. 
caves of Afghanistan, i. 59 n. 
cereals, growth of, ii. 80. 
Ceylon, Sinhala, i. 188, 189; ii. 236. 
Chaddanta elephants, ii. 49. 
Chaghānân (Chi-ngoh-yen-na), i. 33 n., 39. 
Chaitra (Chi-ta-lo), month, i. 72. 
Châj (Che-shi), Tashkand, i. 30. 
Chakas (Che-kie) people, i. 33 n. 
See Takka. 
Chakravartin-râja (Chi'uen-lun-wang or Lun-wang), a universal monarch, i. i. 204, 205; ii. 124, 172. 
Chalukyas claim to be of the race of Hâritti, i. 111 n. 
Champa (Chen-po) or Champâpuri, i. 71; 215 n.; ii. 187 n., 191 f., 192 n. 
Champaka (Chen-po-kia), i. 231. 
Champânagar, ii. 191 n. 
Champion lake, i. 59. 
Chândâ, Dûrgâ, ii. 214 n. 
Chândâ, ii. 209 n. 
Chândâ town, ii. 254 n. 
Chandâla (Chen-ta-lo), low caste, i. 38; 140. 
Chandan Kanika—Kanishka, i. 56 n. 
chandaneva (chen-tan-ni-p'o), sandal-wood, ii. 232. 
Chandrabâga (Chen-tan-lo-p'o-kia), district of the, i. 150 n. 
Chandragiri, ii. 232 n. 
Chandragupta Maurya, i. 17; 128 n. 
chandrakâna (yueh-ngai-chu), a gem, ii. 252, 253. 
Chandrakrîti, a Buddhist teacher, i. 190 n. 
Chandrapâla (Hu-yueh), a devotee, ii. 171. 
Chandraprabha râja (Chen-ta-lo-pola-p'o), in Chinese Yueh-kwang, i. 138; ii. 213. 
chang, a measure of 10 feet, i. 47. 
Chang'an, city, i. 12, 18, 23 n., 83. 
Chang-K'ien, Marquis Po-Wan, i. 1 n., 5 n., 8 n. 
Chang-kwang, prefecture, i. 82, 83. 
Chang-tai, brother of Hiuen Tsang, i. 3. 
Chang-yeh, fortified town in Kansu, i. 12, 23. 
Chang-yueh, author of preface and introduction to Hiuen Tsang's Si-yu-ki, i. 1 n. 
Channa or Jina Bôdhisattva, ii. 259. 
Chân-châ (Chen-che), a woman, i. 9. 
chan'lan-ni-p'o—chandaneva, sandal-wood, ii. 232. 
Chârikar (Sha-lo-kia), village near Opiân, i. 57 n., 59 n. 
Charitrapura (Che-li-ta-lo), seaport of Utkala, in Chinese Fa-hsing, ii. 205, 230 n., 233 n.
INDEX.

“charity-without-intermission,” ii. 167.
Chatkdr or Chirckik river in Turkistân, i. 29 n., 30 n.
Chattan—Himalaya lake, ii. 49 n.
chatur abhijñās (see-shin-80), four spiritual faculties, ii. 69.
Chau dynasty (B.C. 1122-256), whose family name was Ki, i. 2 n.
Chaubara mounds at Mathurâ, i. 181 n.
chau-kía—red-coloured, i. 166.
Châu-bu-li, convent, i. 21.
châu-tan, wooden bridges, ii. 149 n.
Cheghel Dukhtaran mountain (‘U-lun-nal!), i. 61 n.
Cheka or Tukka (Tse-kia), kingdom of Amptasar, i. 193, ii. 274, 275.
Che-mo-t'o-na or Ni-mo country, ii. 325.
Che-meh—Aksu, i. 24.
Chemkent, town in Turkistân, i. 29 n.
Chenâb river, the Chandrâbhâga, i. 165 n.
chen-ch'ing-tao, species of rice, i. 179.
Chen-chu—Ghâzipur, ii. 44, 61.
Chen-chu-na, capital of Fo-li-shi, ii. 78.
Chenghz Khan, i. 29 n., 35 n., 36 n.
Chen-Kwán T'ai-Tsong, emperor, i. 1 n.
Chen-mu-na—Yamunâ river, i. 187.
Chen-po—Chranka, i. 71; ii. 191.
Chen-seh-to, for K'woh-seh-to. See Khöst.
Chen-shi, common name of Hiuen Tsiang, i. 2.
Chen-ta-lo-po-la-p'o—Chandraprabha, i. 138.
Chen-to-kia—Chhandaka, ii. 30.
Cherchen of Marco Polo, same as Shen-shan, i. 12.
Che-shi, i. 29 n., 30, 31. See Tash-kand.
chestnut (liâ), i. 68.
Che-ti, stone cave, i. 71.
Che-tiyâni, ii. 68 n.
Chhandaka (Chen-to-kia), Siddhârtha's charioteer, i. 51; ii. 29 n., 30, 102 n.
Chhaânûna, ii. 78 n.
Chhatrapati, lord of the parasol, in Chinese P'ao-chu, lord of treasures, i. 13 n., 14, 16.
Ch'âng Tsoi, emperor of China, ii. 282 n.
Châi—Vijñåna, ii. 94 n.
châi—kapîjñâla, ii. 33.
Chih-kia—Chaka, people, i. 33.
Chih-ling, Barren Pass, i. 86, 85.
Chi-i, Buddhist pilgrim, i. 224 n.
Ch'i-in Lin, i. 18.
Ch'i-king-kung-t'o-lo-ni—Vajrapani-dharañi, ii. 36, 225.
Ch'i-ki-t'o—Julien supposed to be Chikdha or Chittur, ii. 271.
Chikitsâvidyâ, Chin. I-fang-ming, i. 78, 153 n.
chiliocosm (ta-tain), i. 1 n., 10.
Chilkâ Lake, ii. 206 n.
Chi-mo-lo—Malakûta, ii. 231 n., 232 n.
China, date of importation of Buddhist books into, i. 10.
China (Chî-na-kw8), i. 8, 10, 21, 102; 57 n., 58, 217; ii. 196, 302, 319.
chîndnî (chi-na-nî), in Chinese han-chî-laî—the peach, i. 174.
Chinnapati (Chi-na-po-tî), country in the Panjâb, i. 167 n., 173 f.
chinârâjaputra (Chi-na-lo-ahe-to-lo), in Chinese han-wang-tseu—the pear, i. 174.
Ching-im, i. 108.
Chineh, a courtesan, i. 9 n.
Chînchimanâ, i. 47; ii. 9 n.
chin-chu—ruby dish, ii. 129.
Chine or Chinigari—Chinnapati, i. 173 n.
Ching Ho, a eunuch, ii. 282 n.
Chung-kwong, i. 99.
Ching-liang—Sammatiya school, i. 200, 207; ii. 2, 44.
Ching-ming-lun—the Vyakaranam of Pâñini, i. 114.
Chih-ung-yen-na—Chaghânîân.
Chin-kin-man—Kâñchanaamâlî, wife of Kunâla, i. 141 n.
Ch'in-na—Jina, ii. 218 n.
Chinnadêva-góra (Chi-na-ti-p'o-khû-ta-lo), in Chinese Han-shí-tien chung, ii. 300.
chìn-tu-kia—tinduka fruit, i. 88.
Chirik river. See Chatkâl.
Chi-ta-lo—Chaitra.
Chitral, i. 119 n., 135 n.; ii. 296 n.
Chi-se-tseu—Sîmhâla.
chitupaddâla, ii. 5 n.
Chi-yeu, i. 18, 23, 25.
INDEX.

Chi-yueh—Jhâna-chandra, ii. 171.
Chôja country or Chulya (Chu-lye, So-li), ii. 227, 249.
Chow dynasty, i. 94; 217 n.
Chu or Chui river (Su-yeh), i. 89; 26 n., 27 n., 29 n.
Chuh-Yung, one of the "three sovereigns," i. 7 n.
Chü-ku-po—Yarkiang kingdom, i. 88.
Chu-li-ye—Chulya or Chôja, ii. 227.
Chunda (Shun-t'o), ii. 32.
Chung-sse-fen-o-pi-ta-mo—Abhidharmapracarana-pâda Sûstra, i. 109.
Chu-cha-shi-lo—Takshašiṭāla, i. 32.
Chu-si-hing, a pilgrim, i. 10.
Chu'ti-se-kia—Jyōtishka, ii. 167.
Chwang, i. 95.
Chuong-yun-ta-shing-kung-lun—Mahâyâna sadrâlankârâjka, i. 226.
circle sign, ii. 90.
civil administration, i. 87.
classes (see-sing), four, of living beings, i. 150 n.
cleanliness of Hindus, i. 77.
climate of India, i. 75.
clothing, i. 180.
Cloud-stone mountain saâghârâma, ii. 103, 136 n.
cock (wood of the)—Kukkuṭa pada, i. 6.
Cock's-foot-mountain, i. 84; 238 n.; ii. 13 n., 22 n., 142, 144, 145.
Cock-garden saaghârama, ii. 142 n., commerce of India, i. 89.
Confucius, i. 94; 4 n.
Constantinovka, town, i. 26 n.
copper, native (teou-shih), i. 89, 177, 194, 198.
Cophene (Ki-pin), i. 100.
cornelian (ma-nao) dish, ii. 129.
courtesan and Brahmacârinis, ii. 7.
creatures, four kinds of, ii. 261.
cremation of Buddha’s body, ii. 40.
criminala, i. 83 f.
crosier (sek cheung), i. 96 n.
crystal dish (po-ch’i), i. 177; ii. 129.
curcuma (yu-kia) ginger, i. 54 n.

D.

Dâdali montes—Dantalôka, i. 112 n.
Dahæ tribe, i. 37 n.
Dahalâna or Taras, i. 29 n.
Dai-Gakf, Japanese name of Vaisravana, i. 59 n.
Dakshina (Ta-thsin)—Dekhan country, i. 68.
Dakshinâyana (Nan-hing), the march of the sun to the south, i. 71 n.
Damdana mound, near Mathurâ, i. 182 n.
Dânapatî (Shi-chu), religious patron, i. 81.
Dandarika (Tan-ta-lo-kia) mountain, i. 112 n. See Dantalôka.
dantakasâtha (tan-to-kia-se-ch’a), in Chinese ch’i-mo, Buddha’s tooth-cleanser, ii. 173.
Dantalôka (Tan-ta-lo-kia) mountain, in Gandhâra, i. 112.
Darâh or Darâh-i-aim (Hi-mo-to-lo), in Badakhshan, i. 42 n.
Darâh-Gaz, i. 39 n.
Dârail or Dâril (Ta-li-lo), old capital of Udyâna, i. 134; valley, i. 13.
Dâril, river, i. 13.
Dard country, i. 13; 110 n., 134 n.
Dârgahanakha, a Brâhmaṇ, ii. 179.
Darîus, inscription of, i. 61 n.
Darśika, ii. 102 n.
Darunta ii. Kâbul, i. 91 n.
Dârvikâ district, i. 150 n.
Darwâz in Kumidha, i. 41.
Dâshâbhumî Sûtra (Shi-ti-king), i. 228.
dâsâbdi (ash-li), Ten-power, ii. 7 n., 55 n., 75.
date fruit (tsau), i. 88.
Daulatâbâd, ii. 255 n.
Dauna, ii. 65 n.
Daunâtdha-khêra, village, i. 229 n.
Deer-forest (Lu-yê), ii. 45.
Deer-feet-daughter or girl, ii. 71.
Deer-king birth, ii. 51.
“deer park,” ii. 48 n., 55.
Degwâra, village, ii. 65 n., 66 n.
Dehas, i. 49 n.
Demir Kâpî, the iron gates, i. 36 n.
demon-inspired Brâhmaṇ, ii. 100.
“deposited bows and clubs,” tower of, and origin of name, i. 83.
INDEX.

Dērābhaṭa, king of Valabbi, ii. 267 n.
Derbend, near the Caspian, i. 36 n.
Derbent, i. 36 n.

desert of drifting sand, i. 85; ii. 324.

"Desert" (Kwáng-yě) vihāra, i. 67.

deserted town in Turkestán, i. 28.
Dēvas, Brāhmaṇical gods, i. 54, 78; 10.
Dēva Bōdhisattva (Ti-p'o), in Chinese T'ien, i. 188 f., 231; ii. 97–99, 210, 227, 302; sounds the ghanṣṭā, ii. 99.
Dēva mountain, ii. 114.
Dēvārāja, ii. 123.
Dēva rājas, four, ii. 129.
Dēvadatta (Ti-p'o-ta-tō), in Chinese T'ien-shu, i. 47, 48, 59, 61; ii. 8, 9, 17, 50, 150, 153, 158, 201.
Dēvanumapujitāṃ, ii. 8 n.
Dēva Māra Piśūna, i. 59.
Dēvanampujītāsī, king of Ceylon, about 250 B.C., ii. 247 n.
Dēvapādāya, ii. 142 n.
Dēvaśarma (Ti-p'o-she-mo), author of Vījñākādyā Sūdra, i. 240.
Dēvasēna (Ti-p'o-si-na), i. 191 f.

Development (Great) series of writings, i. 13.
dew (sweet), Chinese kun-lu, Sana-ampīta, i. 1.
dew-dish, i. 67.
Dēwālā hills, ii. 214 n.
Dhammahiti, Julien’s restoration of Ta-mo-sīh-teh-tī, which see.
Dhamek, the great tower of, ii. 45 n.
Dhampakaṭaka, ii. 221 n.
Dhānana no, ii. 94 n.
Dhanakata (T'o-na-kie-tse-kia), Dharaṇikōta on the Kṛishṇa, ii. 220 f., 225.
dhānu, Chinese kong, a measure of 4 cubits, i. 70.
Dhānyaḥakaṭaka, Dhānyavatīpura, or Dhānyakata, ii. 220 n., 221 n.
Dhāra, Dhārāṇaagara, ii. 260 n., 266 n.
Dhārāni, ii. 226 n.
Dharaṇikōta, Dhānyaḥakaṭaka, ii. 221 n., 226 n.

Dhārānti-piṭaka for Vidyādhara-piṭaka (Kīn-cheu-tsiang), ii. 165.
Dharasēna, I. of Valabbi, ii. 268 n.
Dharasēna II. of Valabbi, ii. 268 n.
dhārma, Chinese Fa, the law, i. 66; ii. 63, 168 n.
Dharmagupta (T'an-wu-te and T'an-mo-kio-to), in Chinese Fa-mi-pu school, i. 121.
dharmakūya, body of the law, i. 204 n., 205.
dharmakūya (Fa-shin), the spiritual essence of Buddha, ii. 37 n.
Dharmakōṭi or Dharmagupta (Ta-mo-kīu-ti), a Shaman, i. 76.
Dharmakṣhētra or Kurukṣhētra, i. 184.
Dharmapattana, Śrāvasti, ii. 1 n.
Dharma-piṭaka collected, ii. 162.
dharmakṣetra (fa-she-li), ii. 146.
Dharmāsūka, ii. 90 n.
Dharmatarā, error for Dharmatāra, i. 110 n.
Dharmatāra (Ta-mo-ta-la-to), in Chinese Fa-k'iu, author of the Saṃyuktābhidharmasastra, i. 98, 110.
Dharmavarddhana, son of Aśoka, i. 31.
Dharmottara or Uttaradharma, founder of the Sautrāntika school, i. 139 n.
dhatus, the eighteen, i. 95 n.
Dhāvaka, poet, perhaps author of Nāgananda, i. 211 n.
Dhrūbhāsta, Śrīdītīya VI. of Valabbi, ii. 267 n.
Dhrūvapāṭa (T'u-lo-p'o-po-tul), in Chinese Ch'ang-jid, king of Valabbi, ii. 267.
Dhrūvasēna I. of Valabbi, ii. 267 n.
Dhrūvasēna II. of Valabbi, ii. 267 n.
Digambara Jainas, Nirgranthas, i. 55 n., 144 n., 145 n.; ii. 208 n.
Dinava (Ti-na-p'o) Dīnapati, ii. 278.
Dīpaṅkara Buddha, in Chinese Feng-sang-po and Zhen-tǎng-po, i. 35; 91 n., 92, 93.
Dirghabhavana (? Ti-kia-p'o-fo-na), monastery, ii. 313.
dirghādama, i. 79.

ditch, Kukālī, ii. 9.
ditch of Bhuilla, ii. 17 n.
ditch of Srígupta, ii. 152.
division of Saidas (shi-li), ii. 39, 41, 160.
Dongarpur, ii. 260 n.
dragons (Nágas), i. 94, 144.
Dragon-lake (Nágahrada), i. 20.
Dragan-palace, i. 5.
Dragan-chapel, i. 41.
Drávida (Ta-lo-pi-ch'a), country, ii. 228, 231 n., 253.
dress of the Hindús, i. 75; royal, 76.
Dróna (Ho), i. 210 n.; ii. 41, 65 n.
Dróna stúpa (Ping-su-tu-po), ii. 65.
Drónkánarája (Ho-fan-wang), ii. 8.
Dudda's convent, ii. 267 n.
dúkkha, in Chinese K'ü, sorrow, i. 223; ii. 105 n.
Dukhulá, father of Samaka, i. 111 n.
Dumgá, ii. 224 n.
Durgálévi (T'o-kia-t'ien-shin) or
Bhimálévi, I. 113 n., 114 n.
Dvárapati (To-lo-po-ti) Sándowé, ii. 200.

E.

EASTERN Hia China, i. 58.
eight dragons, the talented sons of
Sün, i. 4.
eight enfranchisements, ii. 143.
eight Vajrapánis, ii. 22.
Ekapárti saṅghäráma, i. 181 n.
Ekaśrúga (To-kio-sien-zin) Rśthi, i. 113.
Elápatria (I-lo-po-ta-lo), i. 68; 137; ii. 41.
elephant birth, ii. 49.
elephant, the perfumed, i. 5; wild,
i. 207.
elephant strength—Pilusára stúpa,
i. 68.
Elur lake, ii. 217 n.
Eroka or Mundá, rock or gate, i.
Ephthalites (Ye-tha), i. 15, 16, 90, 91.
145 n.
Eukratidés, Báktrian king, i. 37 n.
Excálibur, ii. 56 n.
eyeball of Buddha, i. 96.

F.

Fa-chi-lun—Abhidharma jñánā-pratikánā Sástra, i. 175.
Fa-hien, Chinese traveller, 399-414, A.D., i. 11 ff; §
Fairy land (P'eng-lai-shan), i. 95.
Faltžábád, city, ii. 14 n.
Fa-la-na—Varana or Varu.n.
Fa-la-pi—Valabhi, ii. 266.
Fa-ling, Chinese pilgrim, i. 10.
Fa-lung, “city of departure,” on
the Orissa coast, ii. 205.
Fan and Su, books of Chinese
legendary history, i. 3.
Fan—Brahmá, i. 203; ii. 127.
Fan, Saṅskrit, i. 71.
Fan tribes—Tibetans, i. 173 n.
Fan-hing—Brāhmaṇa, ii. 35 n.
Fan-sheu—Brahmadatta, i. 207; ii.
71.
fa-she-li—dharmaśakrta, ii. 146.
Fa-she-lo—Vajra, ii. 170.
fast days, i. 21.
fa-po, cupola, ii. 51.
Fei-han—Ferghánah.
Fei-she-li (Vaisáli), ii. 44, 66, 160.
Feou-thou, a pagoda, i. 103.
Ferghánah (Fei-han), province and
town of Turkistán, i. 30, 31 n.
Fire-extinguishing stúpa, ii. 34.
Firuzpur or Firuzábád, ii. 194 n.
Fish-monster story, ii. 79.
five great commandments, i. 70.
fivefold spiritual body, i. 94.
Five Indies, i. 9.
Five kings (the), Shan-hao, Chuen-
ho, Kao-sing, Yao, and Shun,
who followed Hwang-ti, i. 7 n.
five skándhas, ii. 94 n.
five vidyás, ii. 42, 101.
Fó-hi, emperor, i. 2 n.
Fó-kwó-kí discovered by Klaproth
and translated by Rémuusat, i. 11;
new version, i. 23-83.
Fó-lin, Byzantine empire, ii. 278,
279.
Fó-li-shí—Wu-tsu, ii. 44, 77, 78.
Fó-li-shí-sa-t'ang-na—Wu-tsu-si-
Sthánā, Parásvalá, i. 56 n.; ii. 285.
Fó-lu-shá—Puruahapra (Peshá-
war), i. 32, 33.
Fó - shwui, “river of religious
merit,” the Mahábhadrá, i. 188.
Fó-sha-fu—the Varusha (Fó-lu-shá)
of Huen Tsang, i. 102.
Fó-to fa-ná-shan—Buddhavana
mountain, ii. 145.
Fó-tó-kío-to—Buddhaguptarája, ii.
168.
Fó-tó-to-so—Buddhásan, i. 230.
Fó-tsu—lead Fó-tsu, ii. 289, &c.
INDEX.

Gaz, Ghaz, or Darâh-gaz (Kie-chi), i. 39 n., 48, 49.
Ghâhrâ river, i. 225 n.; ii. 64 n.
ghanâd (kin-tî), i. 66; ii. 96.
ghanâd sounded, ii. 162.
Ghâzipur (Chen-chu), ii. 61, 62.
Ghazna (Ho-si-na), town of Afganistân, ii. 283.
Ghorband, town, i. 56 n.; river, i. 67 n.
Ghôsha (Kiu-sha), Chinese Miau

ing, i. 142, 143 n.
Ghôshira (Kiu-shi-lo), a noble, i. 236.
Ghûshiravâna vihâra, i. 68.
Ghoârâ in Bihar, i. 91 n.
ginger (yu-ki), i. 54.
Giribbaja, ii. 161 n.
Girjok, ii. 182 n.
Girîvraja (Shan-ching) ii. 149 n., 158, 161 n.
Girnâra, Mount Ujjanta, ii. 269 n.
Gödhanâya (Kiu-t'o-nî), one of the four dîvâpas, i. 11.
Gaioliya river, ii. 207 n.
Gödâvari river, ii. 207 n., 209 n., 217 n.
Gogardasht river, i. 42 n.
Gôkanthâ (Ku-hwân-ch'a) convent, i. 186.
Goldflower, a king's name, i. 20.
Gold river, ii. 39.
Golkonda, ii. 254 n.
Gollas, king, i. 16.
Gömati river, 237 n.
Gömati, priests of, i. 26.
Göndwânâ, ii. 209 n.
Gâpa (Kiu-po), an arhat and author, i. 240.
Göpâla, cave, i. 107.
Gôpsâla (Kiu-po-lo), a dragon, i. 93; also name of Kukâli.
Gôpâlt (Kiu-po-li), ii. 9 n.
Gorâkhpur, i. 32 n.
gôtrâhachandana (niu-teu-shan-

t'an), cow's-head sandal-wood, i. 44; ii. 145, 148. In Tibetan, gorâkhsha; in Pâli, gôtsâm; among the Mongols, gorâchosha; ii. 145 n.
Gôsânga mount (Kiu-shi-lin-kia), in Chinese Niu-kio mount, ii. 313.
Gôvîsana (Kiu-pi-shwang-na), in Northern India, i. 190.
gradual doctrine (t'sien-kiau), i. 20.
grape (po-tau), i. 88.

four continents, i. 10, 11.
four Dêrâ-râjas, ii. 129.
four modes of life, ii. 214 n.
four kinds of creatures, ii. 261.
Fragrant mountains, i. 11.
Fu, the, family, i. 25.
Fub-hi or P'au-i, one of the "three
sovereigns," i. 7 n. 9 n.
fu-ling—Radix chinensis, ii. 194 n.
funeralf of an Arhat, i. 76 f.
funerals, i. 86.
Fu-shê-su-mi-lo—Pujasumira
Âyushmat, ii. 74, 75.

G.
Gajapati (Siang-chu), lord of
elephants, i. 13 n., 14, 15, 16.
Gândakâ river, ii. 14 n., 66 n.
Gândaki, Little, river, ii. 32 n.
Ganddâra or Gandarâi and Gandarit,
a. 97 n., 98 n.
Gândhâvîla, i. 138 n.
gandhâkasthî (hiang-siang), perfume
elephant, i. 5 n.; ii. 138.
Gandhâra (Kien-t'o-lo), Peshâwar
country, country of the Yâzuf-
shâs, i. 15, 31, 32, 78, 99, 102,
103, 106; 56, 57, 63, 97, 98 n., 109 n., 136 n., 151, 153 n., 156 n.
Gângâ (King-kia), river, i. 86 f.
See Ganges.
Gângadvâra (King-kia-ho-men) or
Gângantrî Harîdâvâra, i. 188 n.,
198 n.
Ganges (King-kia) river, Mahâ-
bhadrâ, i. 16, 33, 67, 71; ii. 86 f.,
188, 197, 198, 205, 206, 207, 214,
217, 218, 222, 223, 224, 225, 229,
230; ii. 44, 64, 71, 77, 81, 82,
184, 186, 190, 191, 192, 193, 206 n.
Gângi (King-k'î), a dragon, i. 122.
Gârwâlî, i. 198 n.
Gârjanapati, ii. 61 n.
Gârjpur, ii. 61 n.
Gârma (Hwû-ho-la-ma), i. 39.
gôthâ (kia-t'o), Chinese song, and
fong-song, a stanza, i. 124 n.
Gauḍâ, old capital of Bengal, i. 210;
i. 194 n.
Gautama (Kiao-ta-mo), Śramaṇa, i.
67; ii. 8, 35, 151.
Gâyâ (Kia-yé), i. 61; ii. 95, 112 n.,
113, 124 n., 136 n., 137 n., 142 n;
Chinese inscriptions at, i. 10.
Gâyâ-kâyâpa (Kia-yé-kia-she-po),
i. 113, 114, 130.

VOL. II.
INDEX.

Great Vehicle. See Mahāyāna.
Grūḍhadrāvāra opening, ii. 180 n.
Grūḍhakkūta—parvata (Ki-li-tho-lo-
kiu-ch'ia), in Chinese T'oeu-fong
and T'oeu-t'ai, i. 55, 58; 6 n; ii.
46, 47 n., 152, 153.
grūḍhapati, in Chinese Chang-che,
housekeeper, ii. 160, 187.
Grūḍhama (tsin-je), hot season, i.
72 n.
guggula—bdellium, ii. 265 n.
Guhasāna, king of Vañabhi, ii. 266
n., 267.
Gunamati (Kiu-na-mo-ti) Bödhisattva,
Gunaprabha (Kiu-na-po-la-p'uo), in
Chinese Te-kwann, i. 191, 192;
ii. 275.
Gupta era, i. 185 n.
Gurjara, kingdom in the North
Pañjab, i. 165 n.
Gurjara (Kiu-che-lo), Gujarāt, ii.
269, 271.
Gurupādāgiri (Kiu-liu-po-t'o-shan),
in Chinese Tsun-tso-shan, ii.
142.
Gushāna, same as Kushāna and
Kopāsor, i. 56 n.

H.

Hairak, town, i. 43 n.
hair circle—the šrāva, one of the
thirty-two marks of a Buddha, i.
1, 67 n.
Hair-and-nail relic stūpa, ii. 80.
Hajiyāk pass, near Bāmiyān, i.
49 n.
Hakodati, in Japan, i. 59 n.
Hāmt, in Little Bukhara, i. 17 n.
Han country, i. 30, 45, 71, 78, 79, 82, 89, 90; ii. 300–301.
Han period, 201 (or 206) B.C. to 9
A.D., i. 2, 5 n.
Handia hill, ii. 148 n.
hang—apricot, i. 88.
Hang-ho—Ganges river, i. 11 n.
Han-jo—Kanyakubja, ii. 74.
Han-mo, city, probably the Pi-mo
of Hiuena Tsian, the Pein of
Marco Polo, i. 86 n., 87.
Haśā (Keng-so) stūpa, ii. 181.
Haśāsawādi, Pegu, ii. 200 n.
Hānśi, in Northern India, i. 183 n.
"hare in the moon," ii. 60.

Hare Jūtaka, ii. 59, 60 n.
Haridwāra town, i. 197 n., 198 n.
Hariparvata—Takht-i-Sulaimān
mountain in Kaśmīr, i. 158 n.
Hāriti or Hariti (Ko-li-ti), in Chi-
inese Kwei-tseu-mu, the mother
of demons, i. 110 n.
Hāritiputra, the Chalukya royal
family, &c., i. 111 n.
Harmatelia of Diodorus, ii. 262 n.
Harshavardhana (Ho-li-sha-fa-t'ann
na), Hi-tsang, i. 210 f.; ii. 206 n.
Hasan-Abdāl, 8 miles north of
Shāh-dhēri, i. 136 n., 137 n.,
145 n.
Hastanagara—Pushkalavatī, i. 109 n.
Hastigata—Hāthi-godde (Siang-
to-kan), ii. 17 n.
haust, a cubit, Chinese chū, i. 70.
Hasti—Astes, king of Gandhāra,
i. 109 n.
Hastināpura, i. 186 n.
"Hathi-kund," ii. 17 n.
Hayamukha ('O-ye-mu-khi), country
in North India, i. 229.
Hāzāra (Ho-sa-lo) country, 147 n.
Hāzrat-Imām. See Ahrang; heads
of children flattened.
Hell, the lowest, Wu-kan-ti-yuh,
i. 172, 185 n.; one made by Asōka-
raja, ii. 85, 86.
Helmant (Lo-mo-in-tu), ii. 283.
Hēmanta, cold season, i. 72 n.
Hesidrus or Hesudrus, the Satlaj
river, 178 n.
Hētvāvidyā Sāstra (In-ming-lun), i.
78, 153 n.; ii. 218, 219, 220, 263.
heun-to—kangšt plant, i. 88.
Hia, eastern and western, i. 9 n.
Hian mountains, i. 89.
Hiang-hu-kong-ch'ing, 'city of
scented flowers,' ii. 83 n.
Hia-shing, "dismounting from the
chariot," stūpa, ii. 153.
Hidda (Hi-lo), city in Kābul, i. 34 ;
91 n., 95.
Hien-tau—India, i. 69.
Hien-yuen-shia or Hwang-ti, em-
peror, 2697 B.C., i. 3 n. 7 n.
Hie-ts'un—Ārya Pārśvika, i. 98 n.,
105 n.
Hila (Hi-lo), mountain, i. 123.
Hi-lo—Hidda, i. 34; 91 n., 95.
Hi-lu-sih-nien-kien—Rāj-Saman-
gān.
Himatala (Hi-mo-ta-lo) Chinese
INDEX.

Siuwe-ahan-hia, Darah-i-aim in Badakhshan, i. 42, 156, 157, ii. 21, 290.

Himavanta country, i. 128 n., 134 n.


Hindukush or Snowy Mountains (q. v.), the Paropamisus of the ancients, i. 39 n., 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 56 n.

King—agyna, q. v.

Kings or king-kn, asafoetida, ii. 283 n.

Hin-yang-shing-kiau Sutra, i. 237.

Kho-jin—those studying to become sraman‡as, i. 152 n.

Hiranyaparvata (I-lan-po-fa-to), Mongir, i. 185, 186, 187.

Hiranyakavati (Hi-la-na-fa-ti), Chinese Kin-ho and Yu-kin-ho, the Gandakí river, i. 52; ii. 32 n., 39 n.

Hissar province, i. 39 n.

His-at, tribe of Turks, i. 40.

Hi-tsong—Harshavardhana, i. 210 f.

Huien Tsang, A.D. 590-644, called San-siang-fa-sse—TripiÍakàkhaÍaya, and called himself Moksaha-déva and Mahàyánàdèva (Vie, p. 248, J. A. S. Beng., vol. ii. p. 94 f.), i. 13, 14, 16; ii. 2, 9; eulogium on, i. 6-2; at Kàmarùpa, ii. 196, 197.

Huong-nu, Turks, i. 16; 20 n. 37 n.; ii. 315, 316.

Hui-nu—perfume tree, ii. 265.

Ho—the eighty inferior marks on a Buddha, i. 145 n.

Ho-han—Kuan country, i. 34.

Ho-hua—water-lily, i. 96 n.

Ho-li—Kulu.


Ho-li-shih-mi-kia—Khwàrazm, i. 35.

Ho-lo-hu—Ragh in Badakhshan, i. 42; ii. 249.

Ho-lo-hu-lo—Rãhula.

Ho-lo-she-pu-lo—Ràjapuru, i. 163.


Ho-lo-she-ki-li-hi—Ràjagrha, ii. 43, 165.

Ho-mo—Ormuz, ii. 278.

Ho-nan, i. 18.

Hu-pu-to-shi—Abhùtasma-stûpa, i. 127.

Hör-Parvata—Hari-parvata, in Kašmir, i. 158 n.

Horse (excellent, shea), i. 20.

Horse (divine), bëi, a form of Avalôkitëśvara, ii. 242.

Ho-sa-la—capital of Tsukûta, ii. 283.

Ho-si-na—Ghazna, ii. 283.

Ho-nan-fu or Lo-yang, town, i. 15, 21.

Ho-yun, a pilgrim, i. 19.

Hridayadhâraññi (Sin-to-lo-ni), ii. 224.

Hu—Uighur people, i. 85; 32, 33, 76; ii. 302, 326.

Hu-fa-pu-sa—Dharmapâla Bôdhisattva, ii. 110, 171, 223.

Auk—a tree, ii. 32.

Hulu river (Bulunghir ?), i. 19; 17 n.

Humâyûn, emperor, i. 49 n.

Hu-ming-pu-sa—Prabhâpâla Bôdhisattva, ii. 48.

Aea man, the rills dividing fields, ii. 21 n.

Huans (of Byzantine writers)—Yetha, Ephthalites, i. 16.

Hupîán (Hu-pi-na). See Upian.

Hu-sha—Wakhsch or Oxus river, Hu-shi-kien—Juzgâna.

Hu-tsa-ni—a tree, ii. 265.

Hu-yueh—Chandrapâla, ii. 171.

Hwa-chau, an island in the kingdom of Hwa-si, i. 2 n.

Hwa-kong—Kusaampa, i. 207 n.

Hwang-ti, first emperor of China, i. 2 n., 7 n., 8 n., 216 n.

Hwa-n’-to, capital of Ta-mo-sihtch-ti, ii. 293.

Hwan-yuen, a district in Ho-nan, i. 4.

Hwei Sâng, a pilgrim, i. 15, 84, 106, 108.

Hwo or Hwob—Kunduz country, i. 39, 42, 43; ii. 257, 288, 289.

Hwâh-lo-mo—Gurma.

Hwui-kin, a pilgrim, i. 23.

Hwui-king, Buddhist pilgrim, i. 22, 23, 31.
INDEX.

Hwui-wu, pilgrim, i. 23.
Hwui-lih, i. 20.
Hwui-ta, i. 26, 31, 33.

I.

Icy mountains—Muzart, i. 19.
I-gu country—Kamul, i. 19.
I-lo-po-ta-lo—Élápatura (nāga), i. 137.
image of Buddha, ii. 322; walking, i. 43.
Imaus mountains, i. 135 n.
Indarab or Andarab ('An-ta-lo-po), i. 43.
India, names of, i. 69; extent, climate, 70; boundaries of, 90.
Indra, ii. 36 n.
Indrāśila-gṛtha, i. 58 n.
Indus river, i. 39, 103, 107.
Indhlyādri-bhāsə, ii. 257 n.
Ing, river of Ho-nan, i. 4.
Ing-chuen—Yu-chuen in Ho-nan, i. 2.
‘inner palace,’ Zanana (Chong-kong), i. 23.
In-po-kin—Yamgān in Badakhshān, i. 42; ii. 291.
Introduction to the Si-yu-ki, i. 7.
In-tu—name for India, i. 69.
In-tu-ki—records of India, ii. 61 n.
inundation miracle, ii. 131.
Iron-gates—Kohlugha, i. 36, 37, 39 n.
Iron-wheeг king, i. 64.
Iṣīfāb, town in Turkistān, i. 29 n.
Issyq-kul, Turkish name of Lake Temurut or Lop-nur, i. 11; 25 n., 26, 29 n.
Isterushān, Sutrapa, i. 31 n.
Lāvara (Ishi-fa-lo) Tṣū-tsai, author of the ‘O-pi-ta-mo-ting-ching-lun, i. 112.
Lāvara (Tṣa-tsai), Mahādēva, i. 113, 115, 127 n.; ii. 22.
I-tsing, writer of Buddhist records, i. 11.
Ithayopus, town in Oldāpa, i. 147 n.

J.

Jade handle (to move the), i. 4 n., jade stone, i. 21.
Jaina sects, i. 144 n., 145.
Jayāhati—Chikī-tō, a district in Central India, ii. 271.
Jājapura, in Orissa, ii. 204 n.
Jakhtiban, ii. 147 n.
Jalalabad, in Kābul, i. 91 n.
Jalalābād valley stūpas, i. 55 n.
Jālandhar (She-lan-t'ō-lo), i. 167 n., 174 n.
Jālinas, twisted hair, ii. 176.
Jamālgarhi, i. 114 n.
Jambu (chen-pu) tree, ii. 19 n., 30.
Jambudvīpa (Chen-pu-cheu), i. 32, 40, 64, 78; i. 13; ii. 16, 47, 88 n., 89, 95, 115, &c.
Jammu or Jambu, town, perhaps Jayapura, i. 165 n.
Janaka, ii. 78 n.
Janakapura (Ch'en-shu-na), ii. 78 n.
Jarassandha-ka-baitak, ii. 181 n.
Jarsu river, i. 29 n.
Jatakas (Pen-seng and Pen-seng-ase), i. 124, 171; of the lion and the pig, 196 n.
jātī, modes of birth, i. 64 n.
Java, probably Yamanadvīpa, ii. 200 n.
Jayapura (She-ye-pu-lo), perhaps Jammu, i. 165 n., 166 n.
Jayasena (She-ye-si-na), in Chinese Shing-kuen, ii. 146, 147.
Jerm, town in Badakhshān, i. 42 n.
Jēta (Shi-to-yuen), the garden of, ii. 4 n., 5; prince, son of King Prasēūjīt, ii. 10.
Jētavana (Shi-to-lin), in Chinese Shing-lin, i. 44, 45, 46, 70; 202; ii. 4, 8, 12, 13.
Jhelam river, i. 163 n.
Jimūtavāhana Boddhisattva (Shing-yun), i. 210 n.
Jina or Channa (Ch'in-na) Boddhisattva, in Chinese T'ong-shu, ii. 218, 219, 220, 259.
Jimāmitra (Shing-yu'e), ii. 171.
Jin-jo-sien—Kasānti-Kshi, i. 121 n.
Jin-kia-lan saṅhārāma, i. 56 n., 58 n.
Jen-tang-fō—Dīpankara Buddha, i. 92.
Jishnugupta, ii. 81 n.
Jivaka (She-poi-kia), in Chinese Neng-hwo, i. 59; ii. 152.
jīvaṣāra (Ming-ming), a bird, ii. 80.
Jñānachandra (Chi-yueh), ii. 171.
INDEX.

Jāhnaprasthāna Sāstra of Kātyāyaniputra, i. 155 n.
Ju, river of Ho-nan, i. 4 n.
Ju-i—Manōhrita, i. 98 n.
Jui-mo-to—Jumadha?.
Ju-lai—Tathāgata, i. 88.
Jumadha (Jui-mo-to), a district near Sir-i-pul, i. 48.
Jumna or Yamuna (Pu-na), i. 37.
Junāgadh in Kāthiawād, ii. 269.
Jūgāna (Hu-shi-kien), i. 48.
Jyālsika (Shi-se-ch'a), month, i. 72.
Jyotisha (Ch'u-ti-se-kia), in Chinese Sing-li, ii. 167.

K.

Kabbanda or Kavandha (Han-pan-to), i. 89.
Kābul, Kōphén or Kophès, river, i. 100 n.; 56 n., 67 n., 90 n., 91 n., 97 n., 109 n.
Kachha (K'ie-clu'a), ii. 264 n., 265 f., 266 n.
Kachchhādi of Pāünī, i. 98 n., ii. 281 n.
Kāfmirahan, river, i. 39 n., 40 n.
'Kaffir-log'—Buddhist, i. 91 n.
Kahalgāw, ii. 192 n.
Kaikhusru, ii. 302 n.
Kajānghelā. See Kajāgha; Kajānghelā Niyāngamā, ii. 193 n.
Kaijīri, village, ii. 193 n.
Kajinghāra (Kie-chu-hoh-k'i-lo), Kajinghāra or Kajinghara, country in Eastern India, i. 215 n.; ii. 193, 198.
Kākavarinnī, ii. 2 n.
Kākūpur, i. 225 n.
kald—period of time, i. 71.
Kala-i-Khum. See Khum.
Kala-ks-sarai, supposed site of Takshaśila, i. 136 n.
Kālapināka (Kia-lo-pi-na-kia), town, i. 88; ii. 177, 180.
Kālāsokā ('O-chu-kia), king, ii. 85, n.; 90 n., 102 n.
Kali (Kie-li) rāja, in Chinese—Teutseng-wang, i. 121 n.
Kalinga (Kie-ling-kia), ii. 207 f.
kalpaṇaśāka, wishing tree, i. 105 n.
Kalisi, in Jaunasr, i. 186 n., 187 n.
Kalyana, in the Dekhan, ii. 255 n.
kāmadhātu (Yo-kiai), world of desire, i. 1 n., 208.

Kāmalaṅkā (Kia-mo-lang-kia), ii. 200.
Kāmalokā, ii. 22.
Kāmarūpā (Kia-mo-lu-po), i. 215; ii. 195, 204 n.
kambala (kien-po-lo), a woollen cloth, blanket, i. 75.
Kamul, i. 13, 19; polyandry in, i. 17 n.
Kana, father of Yaña, i. 53 n.
Kanadēva—Devā Bōdhisattva, i. 190 n.
kanaka (kie-ni-kia) trees, ii. 150.
Kanakamuni (Kia-no-kia-meu-ni), Buddha, i. 49; ii. 19.
Kanakpur village, ii. 19 n.
Kanauj, i. 43; 206 n. See Kanyakubja.
Kāñchenamālā (Chin-kin-man), wife of Kūpāla, i. 141 n.
Kāñchhipura (Kien-chi-pu-lo)—Conjiveram, ii. 171 n., 228, 229, 230 n., 231 n.
Kandahār—Gandhāra (q. v.), i. 135 n.
kandu (heun-to), plant, i. 88.
Kanerki coins, i. 65 n.
Kang—Sarkhand, i. 32 n.
Kanbapur, i. 225 n.
Kanishka-rāja (Kia-ni-se-kia), i. 32, 103; 56 n., 117, 151 f., 156, 173, 175 n., 176 n.; ii. 88 n., 99, 100 n., 103, 109 n.; saṅghārāma (see Jour. A. S. Beng., vol. xvii, pt. i. p. 494), i. 103, 109.
Kanjut, a Dard state, i. 299 n.
Kanbēri caves, i. 92 n.
Karoṣṣa—Kanauj, i. 206 n.
Kan-su province, i. 12, 18; 24 n.
Kanyākubja or Kanyakubja (Kuihniu-ch'ing and Kie-jo-kio-shkwō), Kanauj, i. 205 f., 206 n., 207, 217, 218; ii. 74.
Kan-ying, Chinese general, i. 30.
Kao-chang—Turfan, i. 13, 19, 25; 39 n.
Kao-Taung, emperor, i. 6.
Kapāladhārīna, Sāiva, sect, i. 55 n., 76.
Kapila, ii. 54 n., 223, 224 n.
Kapilavastu (Kie-pi-lo-fa-su-to), i. 17, 49; ii. 13, 18 n., 19 n., 167 n., 290 n.
kapīsāla (kia-pin-she-lo) ch'—pheasant, ii. 33.
Kapīsa—Kia-pi-she, a kingdom north of the Kābul river, the Kapish
INDEX.

of the Muḥammadan (Elliot, Hist. Ind., vol. i. p. 47), i. 53, 54, 55 n., 56 n., 57; king of, i. 90, 91, 97, 98 136, 176 n.; ii. 281.
Kapisene. See Capissa.
Kapiṭha (Kie-pi-tha), in Northern India, i. 89, 202, 206 n.; ii. 79.
Kapotikā (pigeon-convent), i. 182, 183.
Kapul or Kāvul—Kābul, i. 54 n.
Kapuradgarī, i. 114 n.
Karakhā river, ii. 320 n.
Kara-khitai, people, i. 26 n.
Karaoorun mountains, i. 12 n.
kurāla (ha-la-li) cloth, i. 75.
Kara-moto, town, i. 13.
Karanḍa or Kalandra (Kia-lant-t’o), ii. 159 n., 160.
Karanḍahara (Kia-lant-ch’i), ii. 165.
Karanḍavēnuvana (Kia-lant-t’o-chuh-yien), i. 60; ii. 159.
Kara-nirūs—Tuh-kiueb or Turks, i. 20 n., 37 n.
Kara-shahr or Karshār, i. 13; 17 n., 18 n.
Kar-a-sou (of Klaproth) river, i. 90 n.
Karasteuin, river, north branch of the Oxus, i. 39 n.
Karatóya, river, ii. 194 n., 195 n.
Karchu (?) (K’ie-p’an-t’o), ii. 299 n.
kurka (p’ing), ii. 65 n.
karmadda (tin-sae), i. 99; 81; ii. 96.
Karṇa, king of An̄ga, i. 187 n., 201 n.
Karnāgarb, near Bhāgalpur, ii. 191 n., 201 n.
Karpasuvarna (Kia-la-na-su-fa-lana), in Chinese Kin’r’h, a district in Bengal, i. 210, 212; ii. 201.
kaurdru (kie-pu-lo), camphor, ii. 232.
Karāna town, i. 201 n.
Karshār or Karashāir, perhaps same as Wu-i or Wu-ki and ‘O-ki-ni of Huen Tsang, i. 13.
Kartṭika (Kia-la-ti-kia) month, i. 72.
Karunārjana—Avalokiteśvara, i. 60.
khiā (kia-she), plant, i. 46.
Kāsanna (Ki-shwang-na’), i. 26 n.
Kāsapura (Kia-she-pu-lo), i. 237.
Kashanina (Kiuh-shwang-ni-kia), i. 34, 35 n.
kashça (kia-she), brick or ochre-coloured upper robe of the Bauddha priests, i. 53, 95 n.; ii. 49, 273.
Kāśghar (Kie-she), i. 19, 90; ii. 298, 299, 306.
Kaśthaharana-parvata—Mongir, ii. 186 n.
Kasia village, ii. 32 n.
Kasia regio of Ptolemy, ii. 299 n.
Kavos of Ptolemy, ii. 209 n.
Kāśi country, i. 67.
Kāśipur, town, i. 199 n.
Kāśmir (Kia-shi-mi-lo), i. 116, 117, 134 n., 136–137, 143, 147, 148 f., 150 n., 156 n., 163, 165 n., 171, 192, 196; ii. 312, 314, 315.
Kāśyer, Kāśypera or Kāsyera—Kāśmir, i. 148 n.
Kavūr, town in the Panjab, i. 173 n.
Kāsyapa Buddha (Kia-she-po), i. 39, 48, 61, 66, 67, 68, 103 n.; 48, 53 n., 76, 113, 121, 122, 124, 125, 137, 153, 238 n.; ii. 13, 22 n., 40, 48, 55 n., 76, 113, 124, 125, 130, 131, 139, 143, 144, 162, 163, 164, 180, 223 n.
Kāsyapa and Kadru, i. 137 n.
Kāsyapapura or Kauśārṇa—Kāśmir, i. 148 n.
Kāsyapiyas (Yin-kwong-pu) school, i. 121.
Kathahā or Kunduz (q. v.), i. 42 n.
Kāṭak, ii. 205 n., 207 n., 303 n.
Katrā mound, at Mathurā, i. 181 n.
Kātyāyanā (Kia-t’o-yen-na), author of the Abhidharmajñānāprasthāna Sāstra, i. 175, 176 n.; ii. 254, 280.
Kātyāyanaputra’s Ānānaprasthāna Sāstra, i. 155 n.
Kau-chang—country of the Uigurs, i. 17; ii. 326 n.
kau-kī—a fish, ii. 297.
Kauḍiṇya (Kia-čhin-ju), i. 68; ii. 55 n., 121 n.
Kauśambī (Kiau-shang-mi), i. 20, 68; 234, 235; ii. 21, 322.
kauśīya (kia-she-ye), coarse silk, i. 75, 166.
Kāvéṛi river, ii. 231 n., 237 n.
Kāvērīpattanam, ii. 233 n.
Kaṭa, a fabulous horse, able to go a thousand li a day, i. 4.
Kēbūd, Keshbūd, or Kēbūd (Kie-pu-ta-na)—Meheket, i. 33-
INDEX.

Kesh (Ki-shwang-na), i. 26 n., 35, 36.
Khadatu-bulak or Taughan Ashiban- tu, i. 13 n.
hadira (K'ie-to-lo), twig, i. 68 n.
hakkharan or hikkala (ki-ka-lam), the religious staff, i. 96 n.; name of a temple, i. 107.
Khân of the Turks, i. 27.
Khânâbad, in Badakhân, i. 42 n.
Khandagiri in Orissa, ii. 205 n., 206 n.
Khara - Mânikpur, in Audh, i. 210 n.
Khâsákas, Khaasa. See Kie-sha.
Khavanâtha? (K'ie-p'an-t'o), ii. 298, 303.
Khawak pass, ii. 286 n.
Khêda, in Gujarât, ii. 266 n.
Khêtal or Bordhonkûti, in Dinajpur, ii. 194 n.
Khêtas or Kêtaakah, identified by Cunningham with Simhapatra, i. 143 n.
Khie-tsi-shi-fa-lo—capital of 'O-tinp'o-chi-lo, ii. 276.
Khî-li-see-mo—Khrihsma, i. 42.
Khîn-but, one of the Bâniyân images, i. 51 n.
Khui-kai-tsal-in, the nine borders or islands, i. 3 n.
Khojend in Turkistan, i. 31 n.
Khoaapâ—a Khanate in Turkistan, i. 30 n., 31 n.
Khôkand, a Khanate in Turkistan, i. 30 n., 31 n.
Khôrsân, i. 35 n., 48 n.
Khorsâma—Khwârazm, q. v.
Khoest (K'woh-seh-to), i. 43 n.; ii. 287.
Khotan or Khutan (Ki'-u-ta-tan-na), in Chinese Ti-jeu, country, the Li-yul of Tibetan writers, i. 10, 13, 14, 15, 19, 25, 78, 84, 86, 88, 91, 106; 287; letters, i. 89; ii. 308; river Yu-tien, i. 13; 194; ii. 301 n., 307 n., 320 n.
Khotlân, Khotl, Kutl, or Khatlân (Kho-to-lo), i. 40 n., 41 n.
Khousa or Khoest, q. v. (K'woh-seh-to), i. 43 n.
Khodzâr, i. 277 n.
Khrihsma or Khihm (Khî-li-sehmo), i. 42 n.; ii. 289–291.
Khuddakanâkâya, ii. 164.
K'hum (Ho-lin), i. 40 n., 43.
Khum river, i. 43 n.
Khum or Kala-i-Khum, capital of Darwâz, i. 41 n.
Khutun, see Khotan.
Khwârazm (Ho-li-sih-mi-kia), i. 35.
K'î, family name of the Chau, i. 2.
Kia-f-hien—Silabhadra, 'sage of moral conduct,' ii. 110, 171.
Kia-lan-t'o-chu-h yuen—Karanda-vênuvâna, i. 159.
Kia-lan—saôngbârâma, i. 92.
Kia-la-ti-kia—Kätttiâk.
Kia-lo-pi-na-kia—Kâlapinâka.
Kia-mo-lang-kia—Kâmalaâkâ, ii. 200.
Kia-mo-lu-po—Kâmarûpa, i. 193.
kiaang—amber, i. 89 n.
Kia-nî-se-kia—Kanâshka.
Kia-so-lo—Kâsala, i. 44; ii. 186.
Kia-ta-mo—Gautama, ii. 35, 151.
Kia-pi-she—Kâpiâ.
kia-sha—kuaâlyâ robe, ii. 49.
Kia-she-po—Kâsyapa, ii. 113.
Kia-she-mi-lo—Kâsmir, i. 136, 147, 148.
Kia-shi-pu-lo—Kusâpura, i. 237.
Kiau-ming—Sîpâsthdâna vidyâ.
Kiau-shang-mi—Kauâmbi.
kiau-she-yâ—kauâlyâ, silk, i. 166.
Kia-yâ, Mount Gayâ, ii. 113.
Kia-yâ-kia-she-po—Gayâ-kâsyapa, i. 113.
Kia-she-po-h—Kâsyapa Buddhâ, ii. 48.
Kie-ch a—Kachha, ii. 265.
Kie-ch'a—Khêda (?), ii. 266 n.
Kie-chi—Gachi or Gaz (q. v.), i. 49.
Kie-chu-hoh-k'î-li—Kâjughhra or Khajîngâra, ii. 186, 193.
Kie-jî-kio-she—Kanyâkubja, i. 205.
Kie-la-nu-sa—fa-la-na—Karânsuvarâ.
Kie-li—Kali, i. 121 n.
Kie-ling-kia—Kalînga.
kie-ni-kia—kanaka trees, ii. 150.
K'ien-kwei, Prince, i. 23.
kien-po-lo—kumola.
Kien-t'o-lo or Kien-t'u-wei, Gandhâra, i. 31.
Kie-p'an-t'o—Khabandha or Kar- chu, ii. 298, 303, 305.
Kien-pi-fo-su-tu—Kâlpavastu, ii. 13.
kie-pi-ta—kupittha fruit, i. 88.
INDEX.

K'ie-pu-ta-na—Këbud, q. v.
Kie-pu-lo—karpkra, camphor, ii. 232.
Kie-sha—(?) Kâshgar, i. 14, 26, 28 n.; ii. 298, 299, 304, 306.
Ki-ku-to—boots, ii. 280.
Kih—mah—Kuchê, i. 24 n.
Ki-jou—I—Kanauj, i. 43.
Kikanâ (Kij-kian-na), ii. 282.
Kij-kian-na—Kikanâ, ii. 282.
Ki-kê-to—Anâthapiyâda, ii. 4, 5.
Ki-lât, ii. 277 n.
Ki-li-see-mô—Kriasma or Kiasm, u. 283, 289, 290, 291.
Ki-li-tho—Kiu-châ—Grîdharkûta, ii. 152.
Ki-lî—Kritiyan, i. 150.
Kii-chi-pu-lo—Kâânchipura, ii. 228.
Kiindu—oolibanum, ii. 205 n.
King—sâtras, i. 80.
Kîng-kî—Gangê, i. 122.
Kîng-kia—Ganges river, i. 11.
Kîng-pu—Sau-trântika school, ii. 302.
Kîng-ho—Golden river, ii. 39.
Kîng-hu—Upagupta, i. 182 n.; ii. 88 n.
Kiu—hwui—Sthiramati, ii. 171, 268.
Kî-ni-kia—Kanika, or Kanishka, i. 82.
Kûnârâs, ii. 69.
Kîn-po—kum羝tras, crocodiles, ii. 49.
Kîn—mê—Kârnâsuvâra, ii. 199.
Kîn-tî—ghânâ, ii. 96.
Kio—ho—Ben—Kûbâdîân, q. v.
Kîs—pin, Cophene, or Kâbul, i. 27, 100; mistake for Kîs—shi—mi-lo, i. 147 n.
Kirghiz, i. 27 n.
Ki—sâng—to bow to the ground, i. 85 n.
Kiasm. See Khrishma.
Kîn—shwng—Kesh, q. v.
Kî—to-lo, conquest of, i. 100 n.
Kî—te—addhkata, i. 127 n.
Kius—che-lo—Gurjâra, ii. 267.
Kius—chi—Kuchê, q. v.
Kiueh—yu or Kông—yu, city, i. 89.
Kiuh—shwng—ni—Kashan, q. v.
Kius—kia—Kukkâl.
Kiu—kia—Kia, ii. 95.
Kiu—kia—cha—po—t’o—shân (Kûkâtâpâdogiri), ii. 142.
Kiu—lang—Kurâ in Badakshân, i. 42; ii. 202.
Kiu—li—Külka.
Kius—li—po—t’o—shân—Gurupâdogiri, ii. 142.
Kius—lu—Külêta.
Kius—li—sa—pang, i. 56 n.
Kius—mi—t’o—Kumidha, q. v.
Kius—na—mo—Gurnamati Bôdhisattva, ii. 104.
Kius—na—po—la—p’o—Gûnaprabha, i. 190.
Kius—pi—shwng—na—Gôvisâna, i. 199.
Kius—po—li—Gôpât.
Kius—sa—tan—na—Khotan, ii. 308.
Kius—shâ—Ghôsha, i. 142.
Kius—she—po—t’o—Nyâydunâdra Sâstra, i. 160 n.
Kius—shi—lin—Kia—Gôpârâga mount, ii. 312.
Kius—shi—lo—Ghôshira, i. 236.
Kius—shi—na—Kia—Kuisanagara, ii. 31.
Kiu—yi, a Chinese work, i. 30 n.
Kizil-kûm deserts, i. 32 n.
kshas, five, i. 152 n., 154.
Kling boys, ii. 208 n.
Kohîgha or Kalugah, Iron Gates, i. 36 n.
Kokâl, ii. 9 n.
Kokchâ river, i. 42 n.
Koko—nor, i. 13 n.
Kolkhi nation, i. 35 n.
Ko—li—Hîrith, mother of demons i. 110 n.
Kolâka—Külêta, i. 177 n.
Kopânya, disciple of Buddha, i. 121 n.
Kong—u—t’o—Kôngôdha.
Kong—yu town, i. 29.
Kôngânapura—Kong—kin—na—pu—lo, ii. 253 f.
Kôngôdha (Kong—u—t’o), perhaps Ganjam, ii. 206.
Kôphên or Kôphêk, Kâbul river, i. 109 n.
Koringa, ii. 207 n.
Koria, town, i. 18.
Koria, i. 18 n.
Kâsala country (Kiao—sa—lo), or Ayôdbhâ, i. 44; ii. 209 f., 214 n.
INDEX.

Kōsala, Southern, ii. 100 n.
Ko-sung-chuen, a Chinese work, i. 12.
Kōhakarakā Sāstra (Kiu-she-pao-lun), i. 193.
Kōhaśālā Sāstra, i. 193 n.
Kōqēśārā no in Kachha, ii. 277 n.
Krocuchēhba (Kiu-lo-keu-ch'ün-to'), a Buddha, i. 48; ii. 18, 19.
Krishna or Kishm (K'i-li-ch'ü-mo), ii. 289.
Krīṣṇapākṣha (He-fen), dark fortnight, i. 71.
Krīṣṇa river, ii. 217 n.
Krīṣṇyas (K'i-li-to), Ch. Mai-te, bought people, inhabitants of Kaśmir, i. 150, 156 f.
krās (keu-lu-sha), a distance, i. 70.
kapha (t'sa-na), smallest measure of time, i. 71.
Kāhānti, Riši (Jin-jo-sien) Bōdiśa-ttva, i. 121.
Khatrīyās (T'sa-ti-li), i. 76, 82, 89; ii. 256, 270.
Kshitigarbha Bōdiśa-ttva, i. 11 n.
Khaumna (t'sao-mo), linen, i. 75.
Kunadēvā (T'se'u-na), ii. 284.
Kuan (Ho-han), country, i. 34.
Kuan-nō—Japanese name of Avalokiteśvara, i. 60 n.
Kūbdān—Kio-ho-yen-na, i. 40.
Kuchen or Kuchh (K'iu-chhi), i. 19, 78; ii. 18 n.; iv. 24; ii. 67 n., 313, 314.
ku-ch'i—amber dish, ii. 129.
Ku-hwan-ch'a—Gōkāntā convertible i. 186.
Kuhi-niu-shing—Kanyākubja, i. 209.
kuin-ch'iu-kia—kūndikā.
Kujjābbhita (?), ii. 74.
Kukāl (Kiu-kia-li), Bhikshuṇī, ii. 9; ditches, 9.
Kukkutanpādagiri (Kiu-kiu-ch'ā-po-t'o-āhan), Chinese, Khi-tao-āhan, i. 6 n.; ii. 95 n., 142, 223 n.
Kukkutanpāda vihāra, ii. 142 n.
Kukkutanāra (Kiu-kiu-ch'ā-o-lan-mo), ii. 95.
Kulāb, part of Su-man, i. 40, 41 n.
Kulika (Kiu-li-kia) village, ii. 175.
Kul-—Pāmirkulān lake, ii. 297 n.
Kulāt (Kiu-lu-to), the district of Kulu, i. 177, 178 n.
Kumāra (Kiu-mo-lo), in Southern India, ii. 231 n., 232 n.

Kumāra (Kiu-mo-lo), Bhāskaravaramā, king of Kāmarūpa, ii. 196, 197, 198.
Kumārajāva (Kiu-mo-lo-āhi), ii. 110 n.
Kumāralabdha (Kiu-mo-lo-lo-to or Tong-sheu), i. 139; ii. 218, 301.
Kumārmāja—Sri Harsha of Kāmarūpa, i. 213, 215, 216, 218.
Kumārila-pādāb, ii. 142 n.
Kumānā, i. 198 n.
Kumbhagōṇam, town, ii. 231 n.
Kumbhānā stūpa, ii. 65 n.
kumbhārás (kiin-po-lo), ii. 49.
Kumudhā—Kiu-mi-t'o, i. 41.
Ku-mo-lo-to-to—Kumāralabdha, i. 139 n.
Kuṇāla (Kiu-na-lang), Prince, i. 139 n., 140 n., 141 n.
Kunar river, in Kābul, i. 90 n.
kundikā (kiun-ch'i-kia), water vessel, i. 170.
Kunduz or Kataghan (Hwoh), i. 39 n., 42; ii. 287, 288, 289.
Kunduz, or Southern Surkhāb river, i. 43 n.
Kung—original name of Fa-Hian, i. 11.
Kung-sūn, i. 13, 25.
Kung-shing—city or royal residence, i. 98 n.
Kuākuma (Yui-kiing-hiang) stūpa, ii. 125, 126.
Kuram valley, i. 43 n.
Kurāpa (Kiu-lang-na), in Badakshān, i. 42 n.; ii. 292.
Kurgan-tubé plain, i. 41 n.
Kurikhrā, ii. 142 n.
Kurudvpā, one of the four continents, i. 11.
Kurukshētra, i. 184 n.
Kurusāna-ka-gadh—Karnasuvarna, i. 210 n.
Kusa, grass of good omen, i. 62.
Kusāgarāpura (Kiu-she-kiu-la-pu-lo), ii. 149, 165.
Kusānābha, ii. 209 n.
Kusānagara. See Kusāinagara.
Kusāpura or Kusābhavapura, i. 237 n.
Kushān town, perhaps the capital of Kapiśa, i. 56 n.
Kushāna (Kwei-shwang), i. 56 n.
Ku-ši—Kusāinagara, ii. 161.
Kusigrāmaka, Kusāinagara (Ku-ši), Kuśinagari, Kuśinārā (Kiu-
INDEX.

a-shi-nà-k’ie-lo, i. 51, 52 n., 132, 133; ii. 31, 40, 41, 69, 73, 90, 161.
Ku-sis—Ku-sis-ši, the ancient land of the Uigurs, ii. 326 n.
Kustana (Kiu-sa-ta-na) or Khòtan, ii. 308, 309, 311, 314, 315, 316, 318, 319, 322, 324.
Kustana, the child, ii. 311.
Kusunapura (Keu-su-mo-pu-lo), in Chin. Hwa-kong, capital of Kan-ýakubja, i. 207 f.; ii. 83, 85, 86.
kùfa, ii. 67 n.
Kutl. See Khotîn.
Kuvèra—Vaisravana, ii. 69 n.
Kwa-shau, i. 19; 17 n.
kważ-i—sarana, ii. 64 n.
Kwang-cheu—Amsuvarman, ii. 81 n.
Kwang-chou, town, i. 81, 82.
Kwang-pîk—Saikasåstra vâipulyam, i. 231.
Kwang-po—Vâsas, ii. 148.
Kwang-yen—Prâbhâmîtra, ii. 171.
Kwan-lo, divination of, i. 95.
Kwan-shai-tez’sai, Kwan-shai-yin, Kwan-tez’-sai, or Kwan-yin—
Avalokítésvara, i. 19; 127 n., 128; ii. 172, 173, 183, 184 n., 195, 224, 225, 257.
Kwang-yen—“Desert” vihåra, i. 67.
Kweï-tseu-mu—Hâiriti, i. 111 n.
Kwèi-shwang—a tribe of the Yueçhi, i. 56 n.
Kwen-lun mountains, i. 12 n.
K’woh-seh-to—Khost, ii. 287.

L

labour, forced, i. 87.
Laï-li—Lâra or Mâlava dynasty, i. 16, 91, 100.
Ladakh, not to be identified with
Yü-hwui or Kie-sha, i. 14.
La-fa-nî—Lâvana, ii. 23.
la-fo—lava, salt, ii. 23 n.
Lâghman—Lan-po, vulg. for Lamghân, i. 90 n.
Lâhôr, or Lohâwar, near the Râvi, i. 167 n., 173 n.
Lahul (Lo-ù-lo), i. 177.
Lajward, town in Badakshân, i. 42 n.
Lâkoriân, or Laküva, ruined city near Kîlät, ii. 277 n.
lakâha (siang), marks on Buddha, i. 102 n., 188 n.
Lakhnau, in Audh, i. 210 n.

Lâla or Lâra, lord.
Lâras, Vîjjas of Vaisâll, i. 108 n.
Lamghân (Lan-po), Lâmpaka, in Kâbal, i. 56 n., 90, 91 n., 164.
Aumôdra, Aumôbra, “Aumôráy—
the Lâmpaka, or Munâças, i. 90.
Lan-châu, city, i. 18.
Lân-gala (Lâm-kie-lo) country, ii. 276, 277.
lang-nao-hiang—camphor, ii. 232.
Laśkâvatâra Sûtra (Ling-kia-king), ii. 251, 252 n.
Lan-mo—Râma-râmâ, i. 50; ii. 25, 26.
Lan-po—Lamghân, i. 164.
La Paz pearl-fishery, ii. 251 n.
lupis-lazuli dish, i. 11, ii. 129;
(lieu-li), ii. 149; mines, i. 42 n.
Lâra or Lâla (Lo-lo), i. 100; ii. 266 n.
Lâras (Northern and Southern), i. 16.
Larikâ, Mount, ii. 251, 252 n.
Lâou-Tseu, i. 94.
Lau-Shan, i. 82.
lava (la-fa), measure of time.
Lâvana (La-fa-ù), ii. 23, 24.
law, administration of, i. 83 f.
Leu-lan, same as Na-fa-po, ii. 325.
Lhôyal, Tibetan name of Lâhul, i. 177 n.
Liang-châu, in Kan-suh, i. 18; 17 n., 51.
Lîchhâvia (Li-che-p’o), i. 13, 52, 55; ii. 67 n., 70, 73, 77 n., 81.
Lien-hwa—Padmâyati, 141 n.
lhâ—chestnut, i. 88.
lh-ko—a vegetable, i. 82.
Li-I, prefect, i. 83.
likhâ, a very small measure, i. 70.
Lîlâjan river, ii. 112, n. 138 n.
Li-mi—Mahâchampâ, i. 200.
Ling-chî-tse, i. 97.
Ling-kia-king—Laśka, or Laśkâva-
târa Sûtra, ii. 251.
Ling-shan mountains, i. 27; 25.
lî—pear, i. 88.
Lin-hwa-sîh—Utpalavarmâ, i. 204.
Lin-tse, in Shan-tung, i. 93.
Li-po-to—Râvata, Âyuṣhati, ii. 74.
Li-shan mountain, where Shun was
tilling the ground when Yao came
to call him to the empire, i. 2.
Liu, house of, i. 83.
Liu-li—Virûdhaka, i. 48.
lîu-li—lapis-lazuli, i. 129, 149.]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td>INDEX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Litiasbyis (?), Lichehavais, ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Little Vehicle. See Hinayana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Li-yul—Khotan, i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Lob-nor, i. 90 n., 12 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Lob-hu-lo—Râhula, ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Lo-i or Ro-hi country—Afghanistan,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>Lo-in-ni-lo—Râhinila (?), i. 95, ii. 184.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>lokandika, lords of the world, i. 110 n., 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>283</td>
<td>Lôkottaravâdins (Shwo-ch’uh-ahipu) school, i. 50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277</td>
<td>Longhir (Lau-ki-lo’), ii. 277 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Lo-mo-in-tu—the Helmad valley, ii. 283.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266</td>
<td>Lo-lo—Lâra or Lala, ii. 266 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Lop, desert, i. 12, 24 n.; river, i. 25 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>loquat (p’i), ii. 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Lo-tai-se-pi-mi—Râdha-Svâmi, i. 56.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Lo-u-lo—Lahul, lotus (ho-hwa), i. 96 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Lo-yaung, city, i. 15, 18, 84, 86.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Lu country, i. 4 n., 66 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>Lu-hi-ta-kia—Rûhitaka, i. 127.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Lu-kwong subdued the Tartars, i. 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Lumbint garden, i. 80; ii. 23, 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>lun—discourses, i. 80.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Lung district or mountains, i. 22, 23.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Lung-siang gate, ii. 32 n., 40 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>lun-wang—chakravartin, ii. 124.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318</td>
<td>Lu-phi conven, ii. 318.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Lu-ye—deer forest, ii. 45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Ma-shing—Asvajita, ii. 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Madâwar (Mo-ti-pu-lo) or Mandor, in Rohilkhand, i. 190 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Madhava (Mo-t’a-p’o), ii. 104, 105, 107, 108.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>maahuka (mo-t’u-kia), fruit, i. 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Mâdhya-desa (Chong-kwe), i. 37.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>226</td>
<td>Madhyânta Vâhâga Sâstra (Chung-pin-fen-pi-lun), i. 226.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td>Madhyântika (Mo-t’ien-ti-kia), third patriarch, i. 53 n., 134, 156 n.; arhat, i. 149, 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>Madra tribe, i. 166 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Ma-dros-pa (Ch. Wu-je-nao), ii. 41, 155 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>Magadhâ (Mo-kie’t’o), i. 54, 55, 144 n., 168, 215; ii. 76, 77, 81, 87, 90, 104, 118, 138, 139, 140, 149 n., 155, 160, 161 n., 176, 184, 196, 206 n., 260.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Mâgha (Mo-k’ie), month, i. 72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>Mahâbhâdrâ river, i. 188 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>Mahâbodhi sanghârâma, ii. 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Mahâbodhi tree (Mo-ho-p’u-ti), i. 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Mahâ—Brahmardâja (Fan), ii. 203, 204.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>Mahâbrahmâ sahânapati, ii. 127.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Mahâchampâ (Mo-ho-chen-po), Ch. Lin-i, in the eastern peninsula, ii. 200.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216</td>
<td>Mahâchima, ii. 216; ii. 198.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Mahâdéva (Mo-ho-ti-p’o and Tatti), ii. 74.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Mahâdâva hill, ii. 190.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Mahâdâva, a priest, i. 150.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230</td>
<td>Mahâdévâ râjas, ii. 230 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Mahâkâla (Chin-wong)—Vaisravana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Mahâ-Kâyapa (Ta-kia-she-po), ii. 142, 161. See Kâyapa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Maha-li, king of the Lichehavais, i. 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mahâmanjala, ii. 2 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Mahâmâyâ (Mo-ho-mo-ye), ii. 15, 38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Mahâmudgalaputra, i. 39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>Mahânadiver, ii. 66 n., 209 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Mahânamâ (Mo-ho-nan), ii. 55 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Mahânanda, ii. 94 n., 102 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Mahâpadma, ii. 94 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Mahâparinirvâna Sâstra, i. 124 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143</td>
<td>Mahâprajâpati (Mo-ho-po-lo-she-pot), i. 44; 49; ii. 22 n., 143 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
<td>Mahârâstra (Mo-ho-la-ch’a), ii. 137.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255</td>
<td>Mahâratnadîûpa island, ii. 253.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Mahâsâla Saddharma (Mo-ho-sa-lo), ii. 2 n., 63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Mahâsâll, ii. 82 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287</td>
<td>Mahâsanghika (Mo-ho-sâng-k’i-pu and Ta-chông-pu) school, i. 70, 71; 121, 162; ii. 287.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>Mahâsangha, ii. 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Mahâsâra (Mo-ho-sa-lo), ii. 63 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Mahâsthânâgaçh, in Bengal, ii. 194 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Mahâsthavira school, ii. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Mahâvana (Mo-ho-fa-na and Tu-lîn) sanghârâma, i. 124; site of, i. 44, and note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Mahâvâbodha Sâstra (Ta-pi-p’o-a-kûn) of Buddhâdasa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Mahâvâira—Jaina Tirthânikara, i. 145 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247</td>
<td>Mahâvâbhâravasina (Mo-ho-pi-ho-lo-chu-pu) school, ii. 247.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 208  | Mahâvrikâha Râshi (Ta-ahu-sin), i. 208.
INDEX.

Mahāyāna (Ta-ching), the Great Vehicle, i. 25, 27, 36, 41, 56, 70, 84: 91, 110, 112, 113, 120, 137, 146, 147, 160, 176, 177, 180, 181, 191, 197, 201, 207, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229; ii. 64 n., 65, 78, 81, 82, 100, 103, 104, 133, 182, 195, 208, 210, 212, 221, 224 n., 229, 247, 254, 257, 260, 264, 266, 269, 270, 273, 275, 277, 281, 284, 288, 308, 309.

Mahāyāna Sātrālaṅkāraṅkā (Chwong-yam-ta-shing-king-lun), i. 226.

Mahāndra (Mo-hi-in-t’o-lo), ii. 91, 92, 231; brother of Aśoka; ii. 246 f.

Mahāndragiri, ii. 209 n.

Mahāndramalā, ii. 207 n.

Mahāśāryadēva (Ta-tseu-t’hai-tien), god, i. 114, 202; ii. 44, 119, 127, 262, 263, 276, 277.

Mahāśāvara (Mo-hi-shu-lo) temple, i. 223.

Mahāśāvarapura (Mo-hi-sha-lu-po-lo), in Central India, i. 271.

Māgāgā-pa—Aniruddha, ii. 38 n.

Mahl (Mo-ho) river, i. 139, 142, 260, 269.

Mahirakula or Miharakula (Mo-hi-lo-kiu-lo), in Chinese Ta-tso, king of Kāśmir, i. 119 n., 120 n., 167, 168, 169, 170, 171.

Mahīśāsaka (Mi-sha-se), Ch. Fa-til-pu, school, i. 121, 226.

Mai-lin — Vikrītavāna convent, i. 162.

Mai-te—Chinese for Kṛttivas, inhabitants of Kāśmir, i. 150 n.

Maitreyā (Mei-ta-liye) Bōdhissattva, i. 29, 30, 68, 78, 79: 134, 137, 155, 226, 227, 228, 238 n.; ii. 22 n., 46, 47, 119, 120, 142, 143, 144, 215, 220, 223, 224, 225, 226, 228, 254, 275 n., 313.

Maitribala (Ts’ei-li) Bōdhissattva, i. 127; ii. 213.

Majjima, a missionary, i. 134 n. makka (ma-kie) fish, i. 102; ii. 125.

Makkhākī, ii. 74 n.

Makhai (Mo-ho-yau) desert, ii. 235 n.

Malaiṅkūram or Kumbhaghānam city, ii. 231 n.

Malakoṭa (Mo-lo-kiu-ch’a, and Chin-lo-lo), ii. 230, 231 n., 232 n., 233 n.

Malasa or Sampaha, i. 199.

Mālsā (Mo-la-p’o), i. 16; ii. 260, 265, 268.

Malaya (Mo-lo-ye) mountains, ii. 232, 233; Malayagiri, ii. 252 n.

Maldive islands, ii. 252 n.

Malla (Mo-lo) tribe, ii. 36 n., 37, 38, 39, 41.

Ma-ming—Aśvaghōsha, ii. 100 n.

Man people, ii. 198.

ma-nao—corneilin dish, ii. 129.

Mānavā (Mo-na-p’o), a young Brāhmaṇ, ii. 176.

Manēya, ii. 29 n.

Māṅgala (Mong-kie-li), Māṅgalavor, or Mungali in Udyanā, i. 121 n.

Mangifera Indica. Amratree, i. 196 n.

Mang-men Pass, i. 89.

ma-pi (mo-pi), gem, i. 72, 74.

Māṇikyāla tope, i. 136 n., 145 n., 146 n.

Manīrāta or Manōṛhita.

Mahauśārt (Man-chu-shi-li, and Ch. Miu-kia-ts’iang p’u-sa), i. 39, 56; 180; ii. 220.

Man-kiśa—Madri-jāvi, i. 98.

matters of the Hindus, i. 83.

matters of Nāpāl people, ii. 80.

Manōṛhita (Mo-nu-ho-li-ta, and Ch. Ju-il) or Manīrāta, i. 98, 105.

Manushakṛītyas of Kāśmir, in Chinese Mai-te, i. 156 n.

Māra (Mo-wang), i. 54, 59, 62, 99; 182 n.; i. 21, 53, 59 n., 69, 70, 71, 121, 124, 132, 133, 154, 157.

Māra’s temptation, ii. 69.

Māraṅgāvāda—Samarkand, i. 32 n.

Marāthu country, ii. 255 n.

Māryā, way or means, ii. 105.

MārgāŚrāva (Mo-kia-shi-lo), month, i. 72.

Margiana, Margus (Mo-hiu), i. 97.

Marpol (Mo-lo-po), Lādāk, i. 178 n. marriage rites, i. 54; with a flower, ii. 84.

Marā, ii. 63 n., 64 n.

Mar-śing—Aśvajita, i. 175.

Master of the law (San-tsiaang-fa-sse) Tripitakākārya—Hüen Tsaiang, i. 2.

Masūra (Mo-so-lo) saāghārāma, i. 124, 125.

Mathurā (Mo-t’u-lo), i. 37; 179, 181 n., 182 n., 191 n.; ii. 74; inscriptions, i. 11.

Matipura (Ma-ti-pu-lo), in Rohilkhānd, i. 189, 190, 191 n.
INDEX.

Mātrījñēta (mother-child), ii. 100 n.
Mataya or Virāţa country, i. 179 n.
mau-che—mōcha fruit, i. 89.
Maudgalyāyana (Mu-te-kia-lo) Bōdhīsattva, Ch. Teu-tsu, same as Maudgalaputra, i. 39, 187; ii. 6, 175.
māu-hu-li-to—mūhārta.
Maurya—Mōriyan, q. v.
Māyā (Mo-ye), mother of Buddha, ii. 15, 16, 23 n., 38, 39, 130.
Māyāpuri or Mayūra (Mo-yu-lo), Haridvāra, i. 197 n.
mayūras, peacocks, i. 128 n.
Mayūra-rāja (K’ong-tsio-wang), i. 126 n.
measures of length in India, i. 70.
medicines, i. 80.
Megasthenēs, i. 12 n.
Mei-ta-li-ye-p’u-sa—Maitreya Bōdhīsattva, ii. 47.
Mencius, ii. 210 n.
merchant chief—ārāghṛthi, i. 83.
meu-che—mōcha.
Mid-India, i. 30, 48, 78.
Middle Vehicle, ii. 100.
Mīndāpur, ii. 206 n.
Mihirakula v. Mahirakula.
Mīmā’s convent at Valabhi, ii. 267 n.
Mi-mo-kia—Maghiān.
Minagara, ii. 272 n.
Ming, king, i. 87.
mīnɡ—vidyās.
mīnɡ-mīnɡ bird, ii. 50.
Ming-lo-chau, the land of Kau-
chang, ii. 326 n.
Ming-pīn—Bhāvavivekā, ii. 223 n.
Ming Ti—Chinese Emperor (A.D. 58–
76), dream of, i. 30.
Mithila, ii. 78 n., 199 n.
Miu-ki-ta’i-lang-p’u-sa—Māñjuśrī Bō-
dhīsattva, ii. 220.
mōcha (mau-che) fruit, plantain, i.
88; ii. 66, 163.
Mōdo-pa, Mathurā, i. 179 n.
Moh, city, i. 80.
Mōhana-nadī, ii. 139 n.
Mohānī, ii. 112 n.
Mo-hi-in-t’o-lo—Mahēndra, i. 91, 92.
Mo-hi-lo-kiu-lo—Mahirakula.
Mo-hi-shi-fa-lo-pu-lo—Mahēvaram-
pura, ii. 235, 271.
Mo-hiu—Margiana.
Mo-ho—Mahī river, ii. 139.
Mo-ho-chen-po—Mahācham pa.
Mo-ho-la-ch’a—Maharāṣṭra, ii. 255.
Mo-ho-pi-ho-lo-chu-pu—Mahāvihā-
ravasina school, ii. 247.
Mo-ho-sa-lo—Mahāśāla, ii. 6.
Mo-kia-ši-lo—Mārgasrāha.
Mo-k’ie—Magha month.
Mo-kie-t’o—Magadha, ii. 81, 82.
Mōkṣha (Wu-che), Mahāparishad, i.
52, 55, 214; ii. 261.
Mo-la-p’o—Mālava, ii. 260.
Mo-lo—Malla, ii. 38.
Mo-lo-kiu-ch’a—Malakūta, ii. 186.
Mo-lo-so, perhaps for Mo-lo-po—
Marpo or Ladak, i. 178.
Mo-lo-ye—Mālaya, ii. 232.
Mo-na-p’o—Mānava.
Mong lake, i. 3 n.
Mongr—Hīranyaparvata, ii. 186 n.,
190 n.
Mongola, i. 17.
monkey ascetic, i. 234.
Mora, a grass-cutter, ii. 123.
Mōriyan (or Maurya) dynasty, i. 17;
128 n.
Mōriyanagara, city founded by the
Śākya youths, i. 17.
Mo-su—Maśūra saṅghārāma, i. 124.
Mo-t’a-p’o—Mādhava, ii. 104.
Mo-te-kia-lo-tseu—Mudgalaputra,
ii. 6, 175.
Mother-child—Mātrījñēta, ii. 100 n.
Mo-t’ien-ti-kia—Madhyāntika arhat,
ii. 149.
Mo-ti-pu-lo—Matipura.
Mo-t’u-lo—Mathurā, i. 179.
Mouli̇men image of Buddha, i. 51 n.
Mo-tu-kia—madūka fruit.
Mo-yu-lo—Mayūpura, i. 197.
Mrīgadāva, deer garden, i. 47; ii.
45 n., 51 n., 54 n.
Muchilinda (Mu-chi-lin-t’o), Chinese
Wen-lin, i. 63; ii. 41, 128, 131.
Mudgalagiri, Mongir hill, ii. 180 n.
Mudgalaputra (Mo-te-kia-lo-tseu),
Mudgala, the great, Pāli Mugalan,
ii. 38, 39; 180, 183, 187; ii. 175,
176, 177 n., and Maudgalyāyana-
putra, i. 40, 59, 61, 108; 235;
ii. 6, 7, 9, 161, 178, 188.
Mughān (mi-nio-kia) country, i. 33.
Mu-ho—Amū river, i. 36 n.
mūhārta (māu-hu-li-to), division of
time, i. 71.
mu-i—apricot, i. 87.
Mūlāsthānapura (Mu-lo-san-pu-lo),
Mūltān, ii. 274.
INDEX.

mulberry seed, i. 319.
Mu-lo-san-pu-lo — Mūlasthānapura, ii. 274.
Mūnḍa or Eraka rock, i. 145 n.; ii. 2 n.
Mūng king, i. 176 n., and 242.
Mūngali (Mung-kie-li), Māṅgala, or Mūngali, Māṅgalavor, i. 99 n.;
121, 124, 133.
Mūng-kia-li—Mūngali in Udyaṇa, i. 121.
Mūng-kin — Tālikān or Muñjan country, in Badakṣāṇ, i. 42 ; ii.
288, 289.
Muñjan (Mung-kin), in Badakṣāṇ, i. 42 n.; ii. 288, 289.
Murali mountain, ii. 144 n.
Muraṇḍas, natives of Lampāka, i. 90 n.
Mūrdhābhishikta (Hwan-ting-pu) school, ii. 110 n.
Murghāb valley, i. 48 n.
mustard seed—Sinapis glauca, i. 87.
Musaur-aola, Mongol name of Ling-
šān mountains, i. 25.
Mut-e-kia-lo—Maudgalāyānā.
Muzart, Icy mountains, i. 19.
Mwan-chu—Pānvarmarājā, ii. 174.
Myn-bulak, or Thousand springs, i.
27 n., 28 n.
myrobalam emblica—mōcha fruit, i.
163 n.

N.

NADIKĀṢAPA (Nia-ti-kia-she-po), ii.
113, 130.
Na-fo-po—Navapa, ii. 325.
Na-fo-ti-p’o-ku-lo—Naradēvakula.
Nāga (Na-kie), i. 5 n., 11, 63 f.,
130 f., 136, 149 f., 159, 201, 237 ;
i. 27, 321.
Nāga Anavatapta, ii. 41.
Nāga Apalāla (’O-po-lo-lo), i. 122.
Nāga-Dāsaka, ii. 102 n.
Nāga fountain, i. 68.
Nāga Gōpāla, i. 93.
Nāgahrada, Ch. Long-ch’e, ii. 297.
Nāga maiden, tale of, i. 129 f.; ii. 21.
Nāga Nanda—Nālanda, ii. 167 n.
Nāyānanda, i. 211 n.
Nāgapattanam, ii. 231 n., 233 n.,
254 n.
Nagara or Nagarāt, old capital of
Kulīta, i. 177 n.
Nāyāsa Διονυσίων, Nagarahāra, i.
91 n.
Nagarahāra (Na-kie-lo-lo), in Jalā-
lābād valley, i. 17, 31, 34, 35, 107 ;
56 n., 91, 99 n.
Nāga-rāja (Ch. Long-wang), temple,
i. 96.
Nāgarjuna Bōdhisattva (Na-kia’o-
lā-chu-na), Ch. Long-ṣhu or Long-
meng, i. 189 n., 210 f., 215 f., 220
f., 223, 224 n. 302; ii. 97, 98, 100 n.
Nāgavadana, ii. 223 n.
Nāghur, ii. 209 n.
Nagra city, ii. 18 n.
Nai-mo-t’o—Narmadā river, ii. 259.
Nai—plum, i. 89.
Nairājānā (Ni-len-shān-na) river,
Ch. Pen-lo-cho-ho, ii. 54, 112,
115, 120, 139, 130, 138.
Naivasanājā Samādhi (Fei-siang-
ting), ii. 54.
Na-kie-lo-lo—Nagarahāra.
Na-kwā, sister of Fuh-hi, i. 7 n.
Nálanda (Na-lan-tu) saṅghārāmas, i.
204 n., 216 ; ii. 102 n., 110, 167,
168, 196, 204 n.; students, ii. 170.
Nā-lan-tu—Nālanda, nai-li-ki-lo—nārikēla.
Nā-lo, village, the Kālapināka of
Hiuen Tsiang, i. 58.
Nā-lo-ki-lo—Narakira, ii. 252.
Nā-lo-yen-tin—Nārāyaṇadēva.
Nānda (Nau-t’o), ii. 2 n., 16 n., 17,
46 n., 94, 102 n., 167 n.
Nānkīn, i. 12.
Na-μi-ka, birthplace of Krakuch-
chhanda, i. 48.
Narapati (Zin-chhu), "lord of men,"
i. 13 n., 14, 15, 16, 41.
Narasimha (Na-lo-sāng-ho), village
in the Paṇjāb, i. 143 n., 166 n.
Nārāyaṇadēva (Na-lo-yen-tin), au-
thor, i. 98.
Nārāyaṇadēva, royal stock of Kāma-
rūpa, ii. 196.
Nārāyaṇadēva, ii. 262, 263.
ndārikēla (na-li-ki-lo) fruit, cocoa-
nut, i. 87 ; ii. 196.
Narmadā (Nai-mo-t’o) river, ii. 252.
Narukira (Na-lo-ki-lo) island, ii. 252.
Nāsik inscriptions, ii. 220 n.
Navadēvakula (Na-fo-ti-p’o-ku-lo),
town on the Ganges, i. 223.
Navandgarh, ii. 78 n.
Navapa (Na-fo-po) country, ii. 325.
Navasanghārāma—name of a tem-
ple, i. 14.
Nejkatb, town in Turkistān, i. 29 n.,
94.
INDEX.

Nelur, ii. 230 n.
Nêminâtha, Jaina Tîrthankara, ii. 269 n.
Nêpâl (Ni-po-lo), i. 16; ii. 80, 81 n.
Nesr, one of the Bâmiyân images, i. 51 n.
Nevuânâ, sâ-sa-mâ, ii. 142 n.
nyâ-ni-mî-lo—Âmla fruit, i. 89.
nîd-nî-mo-lo—Âmla fruit, i. 89.
nîd-danâs (ni-ô-na), Ch. In-yuen, twelve, i. 142.
ni-tê-sî-na—nî-danâs robe.
Ni-jang, town, ii. 324.
Nîjrâo, valley in Kâpiâ, i. 54 n.
nî-kû-yûs (Ch. Pû), the eighteen schools, i. 177.
Ni-leu-liu—Nyagrodha, ii. 50, 126.
Ni-kîen—Nirgranthas.
Nîlâjan or Lîlâjan, western branch of the Nairâjâna-river.
nî-la-pî (ni-lo-pî-ô-ch'â), public records, i. 78 n.
Ni-li city, i. 58.
Ni-mahi-gung—Tibetan name of Madhyântika, i. 134 n.
Ni-mo or Che-na-to-na country, ii. 325.
nine borders or islands (khiu-kai-tse-in), i. 3 n., 17.
Ni-po-lo—Nêpâl, ii. 80.
Nirgranthas (Ni-kîen), Dîgambaraar naked Jainas, i. 59; 55 n., 145 n., i. 45, 66, 158, 165, 195, 190, 208, 227, 231.
nî-rô-da, the extinction or destruction of suffering, ii. 105 n.
Nîrî-da (Nîc-p'un), date of, i. 78; 73, 99, 106 n.; 150 (100 years before Aşôka), date from, i. 63, 103; 151, 156, 174; place of, i. 63; ii. 175.
Nîrî-da Sastra, i. 70.
nišûdhyd, Pâli niśâdanam—mate, i. 75 n.
Ni-tê-an country, i. 23 n.
nî-tê-an-shan-tan—gîbûr-khachandana.
nîrûrañas, five, i. 150 n.
nî-tê-sana (ni-ô-sî-na) rule, i. 76.
North India, i. 10.
Northern range of mountains, i. 160 and note.
Nû-chî-h-kîen country, i. 29, 30.

Nujkend (Nû-chih-kien), town, i. 19; 29, 30.
Nû-kìa-ô-la-chu-na—Nâgârjuna Bódhisattva, ii. 97.
nyagrô-dha (ni-ku-liù), fruit, i. 207; grove, ii. 21, 22, 31; tree, i. 49, 63; ii. 50, 126.
Nydâdodrâdako Sastra (In-mîng-chîng-li-men-lun), ii. 218, 220 n.
Nyang or Nîva, i. 95 n.

O.
Och (U-cha), ii. 288, 324.
'0-ô-ch'ê-li—Atali, ii. 265.
'0-che-lo—Achala or Âchâra, Chinese So-hing, ii. 218, 257; arhat, ii. 268.
O-chou-to-kîu—Ajitakûta, i. 98.
'0-chu-kîa—Kâléòktâ, i. 90 n.
Oînn, Norse god, i. 65 n.
Odra or Udra (U-cha), Oîkiss, ii. 204.
'0-fan-ch'ê—Aîvanda, ii. 280.
'0-fu-le-ô-ô-chî-tî-ô-shi-fu-se-la—Avalôkiteśvara, i. 127 n.
'0-hi-chî-ta-lu—Ahikshëttra, i. 200.
Ohind, Udakñanda, or Wahnân, i. 114 n., 135.
'0-jîo-kîo-ch'ê-in—Aîjñâta Kaûndinâya, ii. 46.
'0-ki-nî or Akôni country, i. 13, 19; 17.
'0-jiân-kîa-lan—corrupt form for Ârâda Kâlâmâ, ii. 54.
ôibarun—sâdai tree, ii. 265 n.
O-li-nî—Ahrang, on the Oxus, i. 42; ii. 285, 289.
O-lu-no—Arûnâ, Chehel Dukhtâ-rân, i. 61 n., 62; ii. 284.
Olympus, i. 10 n.
O-ô-lo-kîa—âmâlaka fruit, ii. 95, 136 n.
O-nan-tô—Ànanda, ii. 154.
O-nan-tô-ô-pû-lo—Ànandapura, ii. 268.
O-ni-liu-tô—Aniruddha, ii. 38 n.
O-no-ô-ôi—king of, i. 100 n.
O-pî-an—same as Upian, Kâpiâ, according to Cunningham, i. 55 n., 56 n., 59 n., 63 n., ii. 285 n.
O-pî-tôt-kîa-li-na—Aviddhakarça, i. 61, 62, 63.
O-pî-ta-mo-kîs-he-lun—Abhidharmakôshâ Sastra, i. 105.
INDEX.

'0-pi-ta-mo-ming-ching-lun — Sam-yuk-tabhisvardarhikavya Sāstra, i. 112.

'0-pi-ta-mo-pi-po-sha-lun — Abhidharma Vibhāsā or Abhidharma mahāviibhāsā Sāstra, i. 155 n.

'0-pi-ta-mo-shun-chan-li-lun — Nyāyānubāra Sāstra, i. 195.

'0-po-lo-lo — Apalāla nāga, i. 122, 123.


ordeal, i. 84.

Orii-nor (Sing-su-hai?), i. 12 n., 36.

Orissa, ii. 236 n.

Ormu (Ho-mo?), ii. 278.


O-shi-po-ši — Aśvajita, i. 150.

O-sho-to-fa-ti — Ajitavatī.

O-sau-lo — Asura, ii. 223.

O-tin-p'hi-chi-lo — Atyāṇabakāla, ii. 275, 277, 279.

ōtu (wu-tū), cat, i. 146.

Obara, see Uraša.

Ourgha or Rāgha (Po-lo-lo-kia), ii. 322.

ox-head sandal-wood, ii. 148.

Oxus, Āmūdarya (Po-tau) river, i. 97; 12, 33, 35 n., 37, 38, 39 n., 40, 41, 42 n., 43, 114, 115, 125, 126.

'O-ye-mu-khi — Hayamukha, i. 229.

'O-yu or Wu-yau, ii. 90 n.

'O-yu-t'o — Ayōdryā, i. 224.

O'yē — Ujjayint in Mālava, ii. 270 n.

P.

Pa, river in Shen-si, i. 5.

pachyma (fu-tun) coccus, ii. 194 n.

pāddā — praddā, ii. 5 n.

Padmapāṇi or Avalokitesvara, 60 n.

podmarjia jewel, ruby, ii. 248.

Padma Sambhava, a master of enchantments, i. 120 n.

Padmāvatī (Lien-hwa), mother of Kunāla, i. 141 n., 204 n.

Paithan, or Pratishtāthana, town, ii. 255 n.

Painted figure of Buddha, i. 102.

Pajapati or Prajāpati, ii. 2 n.

Paśurāṇa, i. 148 n.

Pa-la-na — Varana or Varnu, ii. 281.

Pali, village in Kābul, i. 112 n.

Pa-lin-fu — Pataliputra or Pātana, i. 55, 56.

Palodhāri, village in Kābul, i. 112 n.

Pamghān mountains, ii. 285 n.

Pāmīr (Po-mi-lo) mountains, i. 19; 41 n., 135 n.; ii. 299.

panasa (pan-na-so), jack-fruit, i. 88; ii. 194, 196.

paṇchādāvīsā (U-shin-tong), ii. 139 n., 208 n.

Pānechāla — Rohilkhand, i. 200 n.

Pānechāna river, ii. 180 n.

Paṇhasikha — Paṇhasikho (Pāli), a divine musician, i. 58.

Paṇchavasūla or Paṇchavasūhikā parishad (Pan-che yue-ase), festival, i. 28; 21 n., 52 n.

Pāndrēthān — Puranādhisāthāna in Kaśmir, i. 158 n.

Pāndus or Pāndavas, i. 183, 184 n.

Pānini (Po-ni-ni), the grammarian, i. 114, 116; his birthplace, Sa-lā-tura, i. 114.

Pañja river, i. 41 n.

Pānja district, ii. 104 n.

Pañjahr valley in Kāpila, i. 54 n.

pañnasādā — parnasādā or panasa, i. 98; ii. 29.

pan-na-so — panasa, panasa, parnasādā (q. v.), ii. 29.

Pan-to — Kavandha, Kandbandha, or Sarikkul, i. 89.

Pao-chu — Ratnadvipa or Ceylon, ii. 236, 240.

pao p'ing — precious pitcher or vase, ii. 137 n.

Pao-ta — Topur, i. 187 n.

Pao-tai — Ratnakara, ii. 68.

Pao-yung, i. 13, 23, 25, 33.

Parāchās, a tribe in Afghanistan, ii. 285 n.

Paradise, western, i. 227 n.

paranāv灿, infinitely small measre, i. 71.

Paramārtha, A.D. 557–589, i. 105 n.

Paramārtha-satyā Sāstra (Shing-itai) of Vasubandhu, i. 172.

Pārvatā (Po-lo-yu) monastery, i. 68 n., 69; ii. 214.

Pārski, or Pārski, village, ii. 182 n.

Paribrata, ii. 175 n.

Parika (Po-li-ho), i. 42 n.

Parisma, place mentioned by Tolemy in Afghanistan, ii. 285 n.

Pārṣuṭhāna (Po-lo-shi-sa-t'ang-na), ii. 285.
INDEX.

Pārāva or Aryan Pārāvika (Po-li-anifo), Chinese His-taun, i. 98, 104, 105 n., 151, 153.
Partha, i. 37 n.
Parvata (Po-fa-to) country in the Pañjāb, ii. 275.
Pārvatī or Durghā (Po-lo-yu), goddess, i. 60 n., 61; 114 n.; ii. 214 n.
Pāryātra (Po-li-ye-to-lo) country, i. 178, 179.
Pasanadī. See Prasēcajit.
Pāśupatna (Po-shu-po-to), ascetics smeared with ashes, i. 55 n., 114, 176, 200; ii. 45, 261, 271, 276, 277, 279, 280, 281.
Paśūtali (po-ch'au) tree, ii. 83.
Pāśūtali putra (Po-ch'au-li-tau-ch'ing), i. 55, 56, 67, 70; ii. 70 n., 83, 85, 86 n., 90 n., 167, 223.
Patharghāta, i. 192 n.
Pāṭaṇa, i. 16, 55, 56; ii. 113 n., 136 n., 142 n.
Pāṭaṇa (po-to-lo), begging-dish of Buddha, i. 78; 60 n., 98; ii. 178, 210, 278.
Patriarchs, first four, i. 53 n.
Pāṭtī or Pāṭi, perhaps Chnapatī, i. 167 n., 173 n., 175 n.
Pau-I, same as Fāh-hi.
peach (t'au), chinadni, i. 88, 174.
pear (li), chinardjaputra, i. 88, 174.
pears (fo), fire, i. 89.
pear—fishery in Ceylon, ii. 25.
Pegu—Kamalakā, ii. 200.
Pe-hshwul, white water, i. 29.
peito tree, i. 62, 63, 66, 73.
Pelo—Vesantara, i. 17, 93.
Peng-lai-shan—Fairyland, i. 95.
Pecsalōts—Vaisārāṇa, i. 59 n., 191 n.
period of the true lāw, i. 94 n.
period of the images, i. 94 n.
Persia (Po-li-sse, Po-sze and Po-lasse), i. 16 91, 92 and note; 37, 51 n., 99; ii. 240, 277, 279, 300.
Persian, town in Afghanistan, ii. 285 n.
Phasāwar—Purushapura in Gandhāra, i. 18, 103; 109 n., 119 n.
Perisammon, i. 38.
Pencoolais, Peshkalāvatī, Pevekalamōt, Pevekalamotis, Pevekalamis, i. 109, 120 n.
Phalgu river, ii. 112 n.
Phalgunā (Po-li-kiu-na) month, i. 72.
Pharasmanes, king of Khorasmia, i. 35 n., 115.
Pho-shu-mi—Vasumitra, ii. 268 n.
Phulthamā, town, ii. 255 n.
Phyllanthus emblica ('an-mo-lo), i. 180 n.
p'I—loquat, i. 87.
Pi-chen-p'o-pu-lo — Vichavapura, Vasmapura, or Balmapura, capital of Sindb, ii. 272.
Piddhan, i. 13; 17.
Pien-Ki, editor of the Si-yu-ki, i. 1.
Pi-lo-mo-lo—Bālmær, ii. 270.
Pi-lo-sa-lo—Pillusāra mountains, i. 87.
Pi-lo-sa-lo—Viraśāna, i. 201.
Pillusāra (Pi-lo-so-lo), Ch. Siang-kuishan, mountain in Kāpiṣā, i. 67, 68.
Pilu or Po-lu tree, i. 96.
Pi-lu-shan for Pi-lu-che-na—Vairōchana, i. 87.
Pi-lu-tse-kia—Virūdhaka raja, i. 128.
Pima (Pi-mo), town, ii. 322, 323 n., 324.
Pi-mo-lo-kiāking — Vimalakirtti śātra, i. 67.
Pi-mo-lo-mi-lo—Vimalamitra, i. 196.
Pin-chin—Tattvarībhāṣa śāstra?, i. 191 n.
p'ing—pitcher, ii. 65 n.
Ping—Śānavāda, i. 79.
P'ing-k'i-lo—Vināla, ii. 217.
P'ing-lo, village, i. 4.
P'ing-wang of the Chau family, i. 30.
P'ing-yang, district, i. 11.
P'ing-yen, town, i. 78.
P'ing-sha-lo, P'in-pi-so-lo—Bimbisāra raja, ii. 102, 148.
Pi-po-lo—Pippala—stone house, ii. 156.
Pi-p'o-sha-lun—Vibhāṣā śāstra, i. 151 n.
Pi-po-še—Vipāsā, i. 165.
Pi-pipala tree, i. 99; ii. 14, 116, 128.
Pippala (Pi-po-lo), ii. 156; cave, i. 61.
Pi-pu-lo—Vipula mountain, ii. 155, 158.
Pir Pānchal mountains, i. 163 n.
P'ir-sa-men—Vaiśārāṇa, ii. 309.
P'iro-śa—Visakha country, i. 239.
Pisūna, i. 99; ii. 69 n.
Pitaka Miscellaneous, i. 80.
Pitakas, three, i. 104, 152, 153, 154, 155, 196; ii. 307.
Pitāsilā (Pi-to-shi-lo), ii. 279.
Z
INDEX.

Pi-to-kia (willow twig), tooth-brush sangharâma, i. 68.
Pi-to-shi-lo—Pitāśâla, ii. 279.
Pi-tseu—Bhikshu, ii. 5.
Pi-t'u country—Bhûda, i. 36.
Plantain—mâcha (meu-che), i. 163 n. plum (nat), i. 87.
Po-ch'a-li—Pâtalî, Pâtaliputra, ii. 83, 223.
Po-ch'a—crystal dish, ii. 129.
Po-fu—Vaishpa.
Poh-luh-kia—Bâlukâ or Aksu, i. 24.
Po-ho—Balkh.
Po-ho—Bolor (!) kingdom, i. 90.
"poisonous thieves, the," ii. 61.
Po-keen, temple of, i. 99.
Po-khu-lo—Vakula, ii. 190.
Po-kia-i—Bhagai (!), town, ii. 314.
Po-ki-lang—Baghân.
Po-la-sse—Persia, ii. 240.
Po-li, town, i. 47.
Po-li-lo—Farakhar, perhaps in Badakshân, i. 42.
Po-li-ho, Bolor district, ii. 289.
Po-li-k'lu-na—Phâl guna month.
Po-li-shi-fo—Pârvîka.
Po-li-sse—Persia.
Po-li-sse—Persia.
Po-li-sse—Persia.
Po-li-ye-to-lo—Pâryâtra or Vairâta, i. 178, 179.
Po-lo-hih-mo-pu-lo—Brahmapura, i. 198, and additions, 241.
Po-lo-ki-p'o-ti—Prâgbodhi moun-
tain, ii. 114.
Po-lo-lo—Bolor, ii. 298.
Po-lo-lo-kia—Râgha or Ourgha, town, ii. 322, 324.
Po-lo-men—Brâhma
Po-lo-mo-lo-kî-li—Brahmaragiri, ii. 214.
Po-lo-ni for Po-lo-na—Vâranâ river, ii. 45 n.
Po-lo-ni-sse (Bânâras), ii. 43, 44, 45 n.
Po-lo-p'o-mi-to-lo, Prabhâmîtra, ii. 171 n.
Po-lo-si-nâ-shi-to-wang—Prasânejit râja, ii. 2, 3 n.
Po-lo-si-nâ—Varasena mountain pass, ii. 286.
P'o-lo-tu-lo—Salâtura.
P'o-lo-ye-kia—Prayâga.
Po-lo-yu—Pârvati monastery, i. 68, 69; ii. 214 n.
Po-lu—Pilu tree, i. 96.
Po-lu-lai or Po-lu-lo—Bolor country, i. 93; 135.
Po-lu-aha in Gandhâra, i. 111, 112.
Po-lu-kie-che-po—Bharukchhava or Bharôch, ii. 259.
Po-lu-sha-pu-lo—Purushapura.
Po-ma—polyandry, i. 17.
Pomegranates, i. 88.
Po-mi-lo—Pâmr, ii. 297.
Po-na—Bannu country, i. 36.
Ponduâ or Poôrowâ, ii. 194.
'Po-pi-fei-kia—Bhāvavivēka, ii. 223.
Purus, i. 136 n.
Po-sha—Pauahya month.
Po-shi-p'o—Vasîbha sangharâma, ii. 195.
Po-sse—Persia, i. 92 n.; ii. 174 n.
Po-sz'ni—Prasenajit, ii. 3 n.
Po-tai—Bôdhi tree, i. 106.
Po-tai—perhaps the Fa-ti (Betik) of Hiuen Tsang, but may stand for Badakshân, i. 101 n.
Po-tu-lo—Bhadra fruit, i. 88.
Po-tu-lo-p'o-to—Bhadrâpada month.
Pôtaraka (Pu-là-lo-kia) mountain, i. 114 n.; ii. 231 n., 233, 252 n., 297 n.
Po-tu—grape, i. 88.
Po-ti—Bôdhi vihâra, i. 76.
Po-to-chang-na—Badakshân, i. 41.
Po-to-lo-lin-chî, Bhadraruchi, ii. 263.
Po-t'su—Vakshu or Oxus river, ii. 289, 292, 294.
Po-wang, marquis, or Chang-kien, i. 5 n., 28.
Prabhâkara-varddhana (Po-lo-kie-fa-
Prabhâmîtra (Po-lo-p'o-mi-to-lo), Chinese Kwang-yeu, died in China, A.D. 633, ii. 171.
Prabhâpala Bódhisattva (Hu-ming-
p'u-as), ii. 48.
Pradakshînya or circumambulation, i. 103 n.
Prâgbodhi (Po-lo-ki-p'o-ti) moun-
tain, ii. 114, 115, 132.
Prâgyotisha, capital of Kâmarûpa, i. 195 n.
Prâjâpati (Po-lo-she-p'o-ti), Ch. Sâng-chu, a Bhikshuni, ii. 2, 23 n.
Prâjñabhadrâ (Pau-yo-p'o-lo), ii. 102 n.
INDEX.

Prajñāchandra, ii. 102 n.
Prājñāpāramitā, i. 39; 204 n.
Prasenajit rāja (Po-lo-si-na-shi-to-wang and Po-sz'-nih), Chinese
King-shing-kwan, i. 44; ii. 2,
3 n., 4, 11 n., 13, 20.

prasāstra (t'ah-yuen) bed, i 123 n.
Pratītākṣa, i. 181 n.
Pratyēka Buddha (Pi-le-chi-fu), i.
36, 43, 54, 67, 88; vehicle, i. 52,
79 n., 112 n.; ii. 209.
Pravaraśena rāja of Kaśmir, i. 158 n.
Prayāga (Po-lo-ye-kiia), Allahābād, i.
230 f., 234 n.
Preface to the Si-yu-ki by Chang
Yueh, i. 1.

prečas, ii. 214 n.
procession of images, i. 22.
Prakāśa or Prakāśa, Pushkalavatī, i.
109 n.

Prome in Burmā, ii. 200 n.
Pu-ho—Bokhara.
Pu-ho-i mountains, i. 89.
Pujasumira Ayushmat (Fu-shu-su-
mi-lo), ii. 74.
Pulakēśa (Pu-lo-ki-she), Western
Chakrakyan king, i. 144 nn., 213 n.,
ii. 256.
Pu-la-na-fa-vo—Pārṇavarmā, ii. 118.
Pu-lo-ki-she—Pulakēśa.
Pulumāyī—Anandha king, ii. 269 n.
Pu-nariver—Jumnae Yamunā, i. 37.
Punach (Pun-nu-ta'no) or Punats,
a kingdom on the borders of Kaś-
mr, i. 162 f.
Pundarikavarnā, for Padmāvatī, i.
204 n.
pusaṇa, sugar-cane, ii. 194 n.
Puṇḍravardhana (Pu-na-fa-tan-
na), country in Bengal, ii. 194.
Pu-na-fa-tan-na—Pundravardhana.
Pu-nu-ta'no—Punach, i. 162 f.
puṇyakālās (puṇy-yung-she-lo), Ch.
Fo-shu and Tsieung-lu, houses of
charity, i. 166, 198; ii. 214 n., 303.
Pūrṇa (Yuen-mun), author of the
Vibhāṣad Sūtra, i. 162.
Pūrṇādhishthāna in Kaśmir, i. 158 n.
Pūrṇamātrāyaniputra (Pu-la-na-
mei'-ta-li-yen-mi-fo-ta-lo), Ch.
Mwan-tse-tseu, i. 180, 181.
Pūrṇavarmā (Pu-la-ua-fa-mo), in
Purushapura (Pu-lo-sha-pu-lo), now
Peahāwar, i. 32 n.; 97 n., 226 n.
Pūrvaśīlā (Po-p'o-shi-lo) monastery,
i. 221.
Pūrvavidēha (Po-p'o-pi-ti-ho), one
of the four dīpvas, i. 11.
Pu-se-po-k'i-li—Pushpagiri.
Pushkalavatī (Po-shi-ki-lo-fa-til),
Heمبرئ، capital of Gandhāra,
i. 109, 111 n., 112 n.
Puashkra or Pushkala, son of Bha-
rata, i. 109 n.
Pushpagiri (Pu-se-po-khi-li) saṅghā-
rāma, i. 205.
Pushyā (Po-sha) month, i. 72.
Pu-ti—Bōddhi tree, ii. 116.
Putlam or Pattala, in Ceylon, ii.
251 n.

R.

Rādha Śvāmi! (Lo-tai-sz-pi-mi),
i. 56.
Rāgh (Ho-lo-lu), in Badakshān, i.
42 n., ii. 289.
Rāghaor Ourgha (Po-lo-lo-kia), ii. 322.
Rāhula (Ho-lo-lu-jo or Lo-hu-lo),
son of Buddha, i. 88; 60, 61, 180,
181; ii. 18, 43, 167.
Rāivata or Giriṇāragiri in Surāṣṭra,
ii. 269 n.
Rāja Bisa-lka-garh, ii. 66 n.
Rājagrīha (Ho-lo-shi-ki-li-hi), Chi-
inese Wang-she, i. 110 n., 153; ii.
43, 46, 47 n., 85 n., 110 n., 149 n.,
161 n., 162, 165, 166, 167 n.,
175 n., 176, 177, 188, 189.
Rājagrīha (Little), i. 44.
Rājamahendrī, ii. 207 n., 209 n.
Rājapuri (Ho-lo-shi-pu-lo) or Rā-
jaury, i. 163, 166 n.
Rājaśahānya Sura at Valabhi, ii.
267 n.
Rājajury—Rājapuri.
Rājgrī, ii. 155 u., 167 n.
Rajjāna village, ii. 184 n.
Rājyavarddhana (Ho-lo-shi-fa-tan-
na), Wang-tschang, king, i. 210, 211.
Rākshasa (Lo-tsa'a), ii. 244.
Rākshasal (Lo-tsa'-nu), ii. 236 n., 240,
241.
Raktavitī (Lo-to-wei-chi) saṅghā-
Rāma, i. 109 n.; ii. 54.
Rāmagāmo or Rāmagrāma (Lan-mo),
i. 50; ii. 26 n.
Rāmānya, delta of the Irāwadi, ii.
200 n.
INDEX.

Randavenuvana, ii. 159.
Rahjâmaï, town in Bengal, i. 26 n.
Râpti river, ii. 1 n.
Râșht valley, i. 41 n.
Râvatadvipa (P‘ao-ch‘u), Ceylon, ii.
236, 239, 240, 246.
Râtâkara (P‘ao-tsi), ii. 67, 68.
Râvatâka, ii. 67 n.
râtväni or ratvatraya (san‘-p‘ao), the
seven, i. 205.
Râtvâlo of Bâna, i. 211 n., 235 n.
Râvana, ii. 248 n., 251 n., 252 n.
Râvanaprabha, lake in Tibet, ii. 155 n.,
207 n.
Râvi river, i. 166 n., 167 n., 173 n.
Records, Buddhist (Chinese) Pilgrim,
i. 9.
"Recovered-sight copse" (Te-yen-
lin), Âptanêtravana (Julien), Âp-
tâkshiva (Cunningham), i. 46 n.
red garments interdicted, i. 25.
relics (she-li) sartra, i. 46, 59, 60, 66
n., 160, 161, 166; division of, ii.
41; relic caskets, i. 317, 318.
Rêvata (Li-po-to) Âyushmat, ii. 74.
Revelgainh, ii. 64 n.
Rhâhi (Sh-hîn), ii. 208.
Rîshâ-dêva, i. 227.
rice (keng-t‘ao), i. 19; rice of Pâr-
yâtra ripens in sixty days, i. 179.
rock monastery, ii. 215 f.
Rôhitâka (Lu-hî-tâ-kia) stûpa, i. 127.
Roshâ in Ki-nî-to, i. 41.
Royal family, i. 82.
Rubruquis, 144 n., i. 14 n., 45.
Baby dish (chin-chu), ii. 129.
Audrâksha, a Brâhma, i. 138 n.
Rûl-Samangân (Hi-lu-sih-min-kieu),
i. 43.
rûpa (sîh), ii. 94 n.
Rûpa, Brahman heavens, ii. 22, 30 n.
rûpadhâto (sîh-kiao), i. 2 n.

S.
Sâbrës (Sa-poh) merchantia, i. 74.
Sâbrësvidyâ (Shîng-ming) Sâstra, i.
78, 116, 153 n.
Sâbrësvidyâ Sâmûkta Sâstra, ii.
171 n.
Saddharma hall, i. 203; n. 2 n.
Saddharma Lakshivadâra Sâtra, ii.
251 n.
Saddharma Purâfârika Sâtra (Fa-
âwa-king), ii. 73 n., 154.
Sadwâha (So-to-p‘o-ho), Ch. In-
ching, râja of Kôsala, ii. 100 n.
210, 212 f., 214 f., 224 n.
Sâva-lâ h kai Eôvâ-wâla, i. 166 n.
Saghhânâni or Chaghanian, i. 39 n.,
126 n.
Sahâlin, ii. 2 n.
Sahâloka (Sob-ho) world, i. 9.
Sahâwar village, i. 201 n.
Sâhet-Mâhet, Srâvasti city, ii. 1 n.
saîksha (in Chinese To-wan), dis-
ciple, ii. 76.
Sailagiri, ii. 153 n.
Sailân, Ceylon, ii. 236 n.
Sâka era, i. 57 n.
Sâkala (She-kie-lo), town in Takka,
i. 165 n., 166 n. 193.
Sâkêta, i. 239 n., 240 n.
Saknia—Shignân, q. v.
Sakra (Ti-shih) Devendra or Indra,
i. 58, 98; 115, 125, 184 n., 203,
204, 218; ii. 9, 12, 25, 30, 33,
34, 41, 59, 87 n., 123, 127, 133,
145, 176, 180.
Sakrâditya (Sho-kia-lo-o-t‘ie-to)
king, i. 168.
Sâkya Kôdhisattva (Shih-kia-p‘u-as),
i. 92, 93; ii. 9, 11, 20.
Sâkya family, county of, i. 48.
Sâkya maidens, ii. 11, 12.
Sâkyaputra, a title, i. 11.
sâla (so-lo), trees, i. 133; ii. 32.
Sâla (Sha-lo) Âyushmat, ii. 74.
sâla (hiun-lu), gum obilananum tree,
i. 265 n.
Salâtura (So-lo-tu-lo), near Ohind, i.
114, 115.
Salora district, i. 187 n.
Sâmaka (Shen-ma), son of Dukhula
(Thien hok Shanmuka), i. 111 n.
Sâmâdhí, i. 55; 53, 162, 204; ii.
179, 219.
Sâm-dâita, i. 75 n.; 76; 111 n.
Samajña (Sa-mo-joh) monastery, ii.
316.
Samând (Sa-mo-kien), i. 31 n.,
32, 33 n., 34 n., 35 n., 36 n.
Samata or Samâta (Sam-mo-ta-
ch‘a), in Eastern Bengal, ii. 110,
199, 200.
Sâmasâna (Shi-mo-shi-na), the field
of tombs for laying the dead, i. 60.
Samangân, town, i. 43 n.
Sâmantamuha-dharmi, ii. 73.
Sâmavâda (Ping), i. 79 n.
Sâmîl (Shie-mi), i. 98; ii. 21, 296.
Sambodhi state, ii. 151.
INDEX.

Sambógha (San-p’u-kia) Áyushmat, ii. 74, 75.
Sambuddhasa (Yih-tsa-chi)—Sarvárthasiddha, ii. 16 n.
Sambhušvara — Cunningham’s restoration of Su-nu-li-chi-fa-lo, ii. 277 n.
Sangha, assembly, i. 183 n.; ii. 63, 168 n.
Sangnjana (siang), ii. 94 n.
Sânikāśya (Sāng-kia-she) country, i. 39.
Sammatiya (Ching-liang) school, i. 200 n., 202, 230, 240; ii. 2, 14, 44, 45, 67, 186, 201, 261, 268, 276, 279, 280.
Sa-mo-joh (Samajha) convent, ii. 316.
Sa-mo-kien—Samarkaund, i. 32, 34, 35.
Samōta—Samata. Sampaia (San-po-ho), Ladakh, i. 178 n., 199.
Samudaya, the increase or accumulation of misery from passions, ii. 105 n.
Samvat era, i. 106 n.
Samvritji (San-ta-shi), ii. 77 n.
Sanuyak (San-miao-san-p’u-ti), ii. 122, 219.
Sanuyaktabhidharmaśāstra ‘S’stra’ (O-pi-ta-mo-ming-ching-lun), i. 70; 112 n.
Sanuyaktabhidharmaśāstra (Ta’o-o-pi-ta-mo-lun) of Dharmatrata, i. 110.
Sanuyaktagama (Taa-o-han-king), i. 79.
Sanaka (she-no-ki), hemp, i. 53.
Sanakavasa (Shang-no-kia-fo-so) or Sanavasaika, patriarch or arhat, i. 52, 53, 134 n.
Sānchi, sculptures, i. 203 n.; ii. 87.
Sandowé in Burma, Dwārapati, ii. 200 n.
Sanjōga (Sanjō), governor of Peucelaitis, i. 109 n.
Sanjāhabhadra (Seng-kia-p’o-lo), Chin. Chung-hin, i. 160, 192 f., 193, 194, 195, 196; author of the Nyidgudra Sādra, i. 160.
Sanjāhadēsa, i. 193 n.
Sanjāhadēva, translator of the Abhidharmaśānapraṣṭhāna Sādra, i. 175.
Sanjādrama (seng-kia-lan), i. 55 n., 74, 92, &c.
Sanjāhutt (Seng-kia-chi) robe, i. 47, 53, 75 n., 96; ii. 38.
Sanjā-po-lo—Simlapura, i. 143.
Sanjākāśya—Kapitha, ii. 202 n.
Sanjā—Sintha, i. 241, 243, 244.
Sanjā-po-lo—Simhala, ii. 234 f., 241 f.
Sanjā-she—Sanjākāśya.
Sanjā-chi—Sanjaika, ii. 223 n.
Sāng-po-lo-ch’u—Sanjākshikā robe.
Sanjā—king, i. 23, 33.
Sanjāwalla-tiba, identified by Cunningham with Sākara, i. 166 n.
Sanjōhi, town in the Panjāb, i. 143 n.
Sanjō-shan, i. 23, 27.
Sanjō-teh—Sānti, i. 102.
Sanjō-rāja (Shan-ni-lo-she), i. 125 n., 126.
Sanjōjaya—Sangeus, i. 109 n.
Sanjōjaya (Shen-she-ya)—Pāli Saṅga, ii. 175, 178.
Sanjākshikā (sang-kio-chi) robe, i. 47, 76.
Sanjākhyā (Sanjā-chi), Ch. Su-lun, system of philosophy, ii. 104, 223.
Sanjākāśya—Kapitha, i. 202 n., 204 n., 206 n.
San-jō-ma-chu—Samata, ii. 110.
Sanjōpāṇā-nikāya, ii. 164.
Sanjōpāṇa class of books, i. 80; ii. 216 n.
San-jo-ho, otherwise Mo-lo-so—Sampaia or Ladak, i. 178.
San-p’u-kia—Sambógha Áyushmat, ii. 74.
Sanp’rā (hing), ii. 94 n.
San-pao-sha-ti—Sarpāushhadi, i. 125.
San-poh—Sābōn merchants, i. 74.
San-p’o-lo-la-ta’si-tse—Sārvārthasiddha, ii. 52, 53.
Saptaparna cave, i. 153 n.; ii. 156 n., 161 n.
Saraddā, fourth of the six seasons, i. 72 n.
Sara-kupā—Sur-kuiā, or arrow-well, ii. 23 n.
Sāran, ii. 64 n.
Sarāra (i-kwaI), ii. 64 n.
Sāraugānāthā, ii. 46 n.
Sarhind in the Satadru country, i. 178 n., 179 n.
Sarikul (Fan-to) lake, i. 89, 12 n.; ii. 297 n., 299 n.
Sāriputra (She-li-tseu), Pali, Seryut, i. 33, 39, 59, 61; ii. 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 67, 150, 154, 161, 175, 177 f., 180.
INDEX.

śārīra (she-li) relics, i. 60, 66, 100, 161; divided, ii. 39.
Sārnāth district, ii. 46, 48 n., 54 n.
Sarpaushadi (Sa-pao-sha-ti), She-yo convent, i. 125.
Sarvārthasiddha (Sa-p'o-ho-la-t'a-si to) school, ii. 38 n., 52, 53, 55.
Sarvārthasiddha’s tiara (Yih-tsa-i-ching), ii. 254.
Sarvārthasiddha or Sambuddhasa (Yih-tsa-i-chi), ii. 16 n.
Sarvatvādā (Shwo-yih-tsa-yu-pu) school, i. 70; ii. 18, 19, 24, 49, 121, 174, 190, 192, 196, 224, 226, 230; ii. 182, 270, 278, 299, 300; Sarvatvādā books, i. 155 n.
Sarvatārājā jātaka (Śī-po-ta-ta or T'ai-shi), i. 124.
Sāsāka (She-shang-kia), Ch. Yueh, king of Karṇāsvaṅga—Narēndragupta, i. 210 f., 212; ii. 42, 91, 118, 121.
Śatadrā (She-to-t'u-lu), country on the river Satadrā, i. 178.
Sa-t'a-ni-shi-fa-lo—Sthānēśvara city, i. 183.
Sātalātavipaipulya (Kuang-pik), i. 231.
Sālāj or Śatadrā river, i. 167 n., 173 n., 178 n.
Sattagudai of Herodotos (lib. iii. c. 91) and Thatagush of the inscriptions of Darius, i. 61 n.
Sattaloka, i. 30 n.
Sattapaṇṇi cave, i. 153 n.; ii. 156 n., 161 n.
Sattavasa or Saptavarsha, i. 61 n.
Sautrāntika (King-pu) schools, i. 139, 226; ii. 302.
schools of the Buddhists, i. 80; ii. 24, 216.
seasons (yōtares), six, i. 71 f., 72 n.
sek-chwang, abbots’ crosiers, i. 96 n.
Seng-kia-po-t'o-lo—Śaṅghabhadrā, i. 160 n.
Seng-kia-chi—śaṅghāṭṭa robe.
"sesame," ii. 226 n.
Sētrākhata—Śutrishpa, i. 31 n., 99.
seven Buddhass, ii. 261.
seven mountain ranges, i. 105.
seven precious things, i. 205.
seven seas, i. 10.
seven treasures of a holy wheel-king, ii. 74 n.
Sewet (She-wei) town, ii. 3 n.
Sewistān, i. 62 n.

Sha-chi, great country of, i. 43.
shadabhijādu (low-shin-thong), i. 149 n., 152 n.; ii. 143 n., 163.
shadow, cavern of the, i. 94, 95.
"shadow-covered"—name of a temple, i. 47.
Shahdheri, near the supposed site of Takshasila, i. 136 n.
Shaduman (Hu-lo-mo), Hisar, i. 39 n.
Shah-Sabz—Kesh.
Shai-pao—strong ornament, ii. 87 n.
Shakhnā or Shignān (Shi-ki-ni), i. 41 n.
Sha-leb, perhaps for Su-le—Kāshhgar, i. 90.
Sha-lo—Śāla, Āyuhaṁ, ii. 74.
Sha-lo-kia, doubtfully restored by Julien (Mēm., vol. ii. pp. 439, 503)
to Sharaka—Śārikrā, Śrīnāk, i. 57 n., 58 n., 59 n.
Sha-lo-li-lo—Śālaribha (?), ii. 75.
Shambhi! (Shang-mi) country, ii. 296.
sha-mi—śrāmanera, i. 99.
Shan—Ayūr-veda, i. 79.
Shang, tower of, ii. 325.
shang and ho-shang—upadhyāya.
Shan-ching—Girivraja, ii. 158.
Shang-kiun—Uttarasena, i. 126.
Shang-mi—Śāmbi, ii. 283, 296.
Shang-mu-kia—Śāmaka (Julien has Shanmukha), i. 111.
Shan-mi-lo-shi—Śamarāja.
Shang-tao-pu—Śhaviraschule, i. 24, 133.
Shan-sa, province, i. 11.
Sheikhpura hills, ii. 183 n., 184 n.
She-kie-lo—Śākala, i. 166.
She-lan-t'o-lo—Jālandhara, i. 175.
She-li-kio-to—Śrīgupta, i. 151.
She-li-tseu—Śāriputra, i. 5, 6, 150.
shen (excellent) horses, i. 20 n., 32, 54, 61; ii. 278.
Shen—Vāland, ii. 94 n.
Sheu-hien—Subhadra, ii. 35.
Shen-tuei, period, i. 84.
Sheu-ling-yun Śātra, i. 154 n.
Shen-ma or Shang-ma-kia—Śāmaka.
Shen-nung, one of the "three sovereigns," i. 7 n.
she-no-kia—śānaka.
Shen-pu-chau—Jambudvīpa, i. 11 n., 30.
Shen-se-ch'a—Jyēṣhtha month.
Shen-shen, or Leu-lan, probably the
INDEX.

Cherchen of Marco Polo, i. 12, 24 n., 85 and note.
Shen-she-ye—Saftiay.
Shen-shi—Sudatta, i. 97, 98; ii. 3.
Shen-si—Sugatas, i. 213.
Shen-si, province, i. 12.
She-shang-kia—Saâanka.
She-to-t’u-ju—Satadru.
She-we—Srâvastra, i. 44, 48; ii. 3 n.
She-yo-si-na—Jayasena, ii. 146.
Shie-mi—Sambil i. 93.
Shi-fu-kia—Jivaka, ii. 152.
Shighnân or Shakhnân (Shi-k’i-ni), i. 41; ii. 295.
Shih—Sakra, ii. 145.
Shih—Sâkyaputra, title, i. 11.
Shih-kia-fu—Sâkya Buddha, ii. 145.
Shih-kia-pu-sa—Sâkya Bûdhisattva, ii. 48.
Shih-shin-lun—Vijãdkâya Sâstra, i. 240.
Shihkân (Shi-k’i-ni), ii. 295.
Shi-k’i-ni—Shighnân or Shihkân.
Shi-lai-na-fa-ti—Hiranyavati river, ii. 32 n.
Shi-li-ch’u-ta-lo—Srîkhetra, shi-li—dasabala, ii. 7 n.
Shi-li-lo-to—Srîlabdha.
Shi-lo-fa-na—Srâvana.
Shi-lo-fa-shi-ti—Srâvastra, ii. 1.
Shi-lo-po-t’o-lo—Srîlabhadra, ii. 110, 197.
Shi-lu-to-p’i-in-she-ti-ku-chi—Srutsa-vimûstikî.
Shing—a pint, i. 66.
Shi-mo-she-na—Samañâna, “the field of tombs for laying the dead,” i. 60.
Shing-i-tai—Paramârthasatya Sâstra, i. 109, 172.
Shing-kiau-tu-shh-lun, i. 240.
Shing-kwan—Prasenajit, ii. 2.
Shing-mi—Srîgupta, ii. 151, 152.
Shing-ming—Sâdhiavîrya.
Shing-aheu—Srîlabdha, i. 226 n.
Shing-tu, capital of S’îchuen, i. 16.
Shing-yun—Jimûtvârâhâna.
Shin-tu—India, i. 69.
Shi-to-lin, Shi-to-yuen, garden of Jêta, ii. 4 n., 5.
Shi-t’ain—Vasubandhu, i. 172.
Sho-kia-lo-o-t’ie-to—Srakâditya, ii. 168.
Shu—Atharvana-nâda, i. 79.
shuh-tsau—S’îchuen pepper, ii. 265.

Shumân (Su-man), in Mavarundarhar.
Shun, a descendant of Hwang-ti in the eighth generation, i. 2; one of the five kings, i. 8 n.
Shun-ching-li-lun—Ndyâdnusdra Sâstra, i. 160.
Shung-li, temple, i. 15.
shun-lo, high-flavoured spirits, i. 89 n.
Shun-t’o—Chunda, ii. 32.
Shu-t’o-lo—Sûdra.
Shwo-yih-tsaï-yeou-pu—the Sarvâstivâda school, i. 121 n.
Siân-kôa (He-ling) mountains, i. 91 n.
Siam, called Dwâravatî, i. 200 n.
Siaou—Lâkshana, points of beauty, i. 102 n., 145 n., 188 n.
Siaou—Samhâdha, ii. 94 n.
Sîda river, i. 12 n.; ii. 304, 309.
Siddhârtha, ii. 22, 226 n.
Siddhavastu (Sîth-la-ang), i. 78.
Sîth—Rûpa, ii. 94 n.
Sîth-la-ang and Sîth-î-pu-so-to—Siddhavastu, i. 78 n.
Sibun river, Syr-darya, i. 30 n., 31 n.
sîkshaka, a learner, i. 191 n.
sîkshiyamâna, ii. 36 n.
sîlas, five and ten, i. 47 n.
Sîlabhadra (Sîth-lo-pu-so-lo), Kiao-hien, teacher of Hiuen Tsâng, ii. 110, 111, 112, 171, 197.
Sîlânditya (Sîth-lo-o-t’ie-to). Ch.
Sîlânditya of Ujïjayin, i. 168 n.; ii. 261, 267.
Sîlânditya VI of Valabhi, ii. 267 n.
Sîlan-shan—Sîlângtrî, ii. 249.
Silis river, i. 12 n.
silkworm’s egg, ii. 319.
Sîlpasthánavîrya (Kiau-miny), i. 78, 153 n.
Sînbha (Sàng-kia), Buddhist patriarch, i. 119 n., 120 n.; legend of, ii. 236 f., 241 f.
Sînhâla (Chi-se-tseu), son of Sinhâ, king of Ceylon, i. 188; ii. 241 ff.
Sînhâla (Sàng-kia-lo), Ceylon, i. 72, 78; ii. 133, 183, 206, 228 n., 235 f., 240 n., 245 f., 248 f.
INDEX.

Sinhapura (Sāng-ho-pu-lo), in the Panjāb, i. 143, 144 n.; in Lālā, ii. 240 n.
sinhdhawa (see-sau-chhaw), lion-throne, i. 75.
Simur or Chinor, Zīwllllā, ii. 231 n.
sinopis glauca, mustard seed, i. 88.
Sin—Sindh river.
Sindhu (Sin-tu), Indus river, i. 30, 36, 102 ; 97, 114, 133, 134, 165, 172 ; ii. 272, 273, 275, 276.
Singhalese images of Buddha, i. 52 n.
Sing-suh-hai—Oring-nor or “starry sea,” i. 13 n.
Sin-t'o-lo-ni—Hrdyakshārānt, ii. 224.
Sin-tu—Indus or Sindh river.
Sin-tu country, ii. 235, 280.
Si-pi-to-la-sse—Svētāvatara.
Si-po-ta-ža—Sarvadatta.
Sir-i-pul, i. 48 n.
Sirens, the, ii. 240 n.
Sirmur in North India, i. 286 n.
Śūrā, the sixth season, i. 72 n.
Śūta (Si-to), Zarafshan river, i. 12, 13; ii. 298, 299, 304, 307.
Śūtradrus or Satadrud river, i. 178 n.
Śūtavana, Ch. Han-lin, “cold forest,” ii. 166.
Śi-to—Śūta river, i. 90 n.
Śiun-yu, i. 5 n.
Śivādēva, ii. 81 n.
Śivī Jātaka, i. 125 n.
Śivika or Śibika-rāja (Shi-pī-kia), i. 106, 107, 125.
Śi-wang-mu—Bhūmādevi, i. 113 n.
six extraordinary events (lu-kih), the six remarkable war strategems that Ch’in-ping offered to the first Han emperor (B.C. 193), by which the latter brought the feudatory princes into subjection, i. 2.
six parts, or four cardinal points with zenith and nadir, i. 8.
six superficial fasciities, ii. 143, 163.
six ways of birth, ii. 214 n.
Sī-yu-ki, western world (see Brecht-schneider’s Not. of Med. Geog., p. 42), i. 21, 84; 1.
skandhas, i. 161 n.
Skandhādhātu-dyatanas (Yun-kiai-king), i. 95.
Skandhādhātu - upasthāna Sūtra—(Wen-kiai-cho-king), i. 201.
Skandhila (So-kin-ti-lo), author of the Vihādhoprakaranapāda Sūtra, i. 161.
skull-bone of Buddha, i. 67, 96, 97.
Skull-bone vihāra—Hidda, i. 95 n.
Śvētha—Svēthana, i. 148 n.
Svēthana invaders—Vṛjījas, i. 16.
Snowy Mountains (Himālayas), i. 11.
Hindu-Kush, &c., i. 49, 50, 52-55.
64, 90, 135, 143, 177, 199, ii. 62.
80, 119, 127, 155, 188; Little, 36.
Snowy-mountain-men—Tukhāras!
Śūlos, Subhavastu or Śvast river, i. 120 n., 126 n.
Śūloś, Sushōma, Suvarna, or Suhān river, i. 145 n.
Sogd, i. 34 n.
So-hing—Achāra or Achala arhat, ii. 218.
So-kin-ti-lo—Skandhila, soldiers, i. 82, 87.
So-li—Chōla, ii. 249 n.
So-lin-teu-pim-teu-fa, “the prince who seizes and holds firmly,” title of a king, i. 100.
Sōna Kolivisa and Sōna Kuṭikānna, ii. 187 n., 189 n., 254 n.
Sōnaka arhat, i. 53 n.
Sōnabandhār, ii. 156 n.
Soros, town on the Ganges, i. 201 n.
So-to-p’o-ho—Sadvaḥarāja.
Śvādōra, river, i. 126 n.
Spittavara, Juli’en’s restoration of Si-pi-to-la-sse, i. 61 n.
Sphātika (p’o-chi), rock crystal, ii. 278.
Śrāmana (Sha-men), i. 68, 71, 76; 85, 89, &c.
Śrāmana’s clothing, i. 76.
Śrāva, Śrāvasta, king, ii. 1 n.
Śrāvaka (ching-wen), a disciple, ii. 142, 143.
Śrāvastā (Śhi-lo-fa-na), month, i. 72.
Śrāvasti (Śhi-lo-fa-sih- ti), in Chinese She-wéi, city, i. 44, 48; 106, 240; ii. 1, 3, 14 n., 18 n.
Śrāvakāś (shan-cho), merchant chief, ii. 125.
Śrāgupta (She-li-klo-to), in Chinese Shing-mi, king, i. 10; ii. 15, 152.
Śrīharsha era, i. 210 n.; ii. 81 n.
Śrīhatta, Silhet district, i. 195 n.
Śrīkślata (Śhe-li-ki-li-to-til), ii. 306 n.
Śrīkṣhētra (Śhi-li-ch’a-ta-lo), in Burma, ii. 200.
Śrīlābdha (Śhi-li-lo-to), i. 226.
Śrīnagar, in Kasmir, i. 158 n.
Śringa, i. 113.
Śrīdēpānna (Śec-lo), i. 49, 61.
Sruguna (Su-lu-k'in-na), or Sugh, district, i. 186 f., 187 n.
Śse—Pafur-vēda, i. 79.
Śse-che—Maitrēya, ii. 47.
Śse-yel-hu, a Turkish Khan, i. 45 n. staff (religious), hikkala or khakkharam, i. 96 n.
Śthānāvāra (Sa-t'a-ni-shi-fa-lo), in Northern India, i. 183 f., 186 n., 187.
Śthavira (Shang-tso-pu) school, ii. 24, 133, 164, 199, 229, 247, 260.
Śthirāmati (Kin-hwui) Śthavira, ii. 171, 268.
Stone (metallic), Chinese teou-shih, i. 51.
Stōpa, i. 55 n., 61 n., &c.
Śuastos or Swāt river, i. 109 n.
Śubhādra (Su-po-t'o-lo), Chinese Shen-hien, i. 52; ii. 35, 36.
Śubhavastu (Su-po-fa-su-tu), river in Udyāna, i. 120, 121 n., 122, 126 n., 135 n.
Śubhūti (Su-p'ō-ti), Chinese Shen-hien, a devotee, i. 204, 205.
Śuddāna Jātaka, i. 75 n.
Śuddāna (Su-ta-na), in Chinese Shen-yu, Prince Viśāntara, i. 112, 113.
Śuddānta, a Pratyēka Buddha, i. 112 n.
Śuddattā (Su-ta-to), in Chinese Shen-shi, i. 44, 46, 98; ii. 3-5, 10; hill, i. 97, 98.
Śuddhāvāsā-dēva (Tsing-kia-tien), ii. 30, 114.
Śuddhodana-rāja (Tsing-fan-wang), i. 67; ii. 14-17, 21-23, 52, 128, 151, 226 n.; ruined palace of, i. 49.
Śūdra (Shu-t'o-lo) caste, i. 82; ii. 90, 272.
Śu-fa-la-ka-kiu-ta-lo—Suvarnagotra.
Śubhā, Sushōma, Sūvaos river, i. 145 n.
Śuhrīdālēkha, a work, ii. 100 n.
Suganāhikā rice, ii. 82 n.
Sugar-cane, i. 163.
Śugataś (Siu-kia-to), in Ch. Shen-shi, ii. 213.
Sugh or Srughna (Su-lo-k'in-na), i. 186 n.
Suk—births, i. 100.
Suk-mai—spring wheat, i. 50 n.
Su-ho-to—Śvāt.
Suicide, i. 232, 234.
Sul dynasty, 581-618 A.D., i. 18; 8 n.
Sukhavati paradise, i. 134 n.
 Śukla-pakṣa (pe-fen), light fortnight, i. 71.
Su-la-sa-t'ang-na—Surasthāna, ii. 277.
Su-li, ancient name of Kie-ah, i. 38; ii. 306 n.
Sultānpur—Tāmasavāna, on the Gomati river, i. 173 n., 175 n., 177 n., 181 n., 237 n.
Su-lu-k'in-na—Srughna.
Śama (Su-mo-she), a Nāga, i. 126.
Sumana or Samana, a dēva, i. 126 n.
Sumēdu Bōdhisattva, i. 92 n.
Sumēru, Mount, i. 10; ii. 162.
Su-mo-she—Śama-nāga.
Śun, lived under the Eastern Hans (25-220 A.D.), i. 4.
Śuna, a spirit, i. 62.
Sunagir, Sunahir, or Šunaghir (Su-na-hi-lo) mountain, i. 62; ii. 284.
Sundari, a courtesan, i. 46.
Sun-god, Śūrya or Āditya, i. 273; ii. 274, 300, 301.
Su-man—Śumān, i. 40.
Su-nu-li-shi-fa-lo—Śunārīvāra, capital of Lāṅgala, ii. 277.
Śung-Yun, pilgrim, i. 15 ff.; 81; his mission, 81-108.
Su-p'o-fa-su-tu—Subhavastu, i. 121, 122.
Su-po-t'o-lo—Subhādra.
Suprabuddha, father of Mayā, ii. 23 n.
Su-p'ō-ti—Subhūti.
Śūrānâmā Śūtra, i. 60 n.; ii. 110 n., 154 n.
Śūrasēna, Prince, i. 81 n.
Śūrasēnaka, district, i. 179 n.
Śūraēhra or Šorath (Su-la-ch'a), ii. 268, 270.
Śurasthāna (Su-la-sa-t'ang), capital of Persia, ii. 277.
Śurat, ii. 102 n.
Surkh-āb or Vakhsh river, i. 39 n.
Surkh-āb (South) or Kunduz river, i. 43 n.
Surkhan river, i. 39 n.
INDEX.

Surkhar river, i. 56 n., 91 n.
Surkh-rud river, i. 56 n.
Surkh-but, one of the Bāmiyān images, i. 51 n.
Sur-kuia—Sāra-kūpaa, ii. 23 n.
Sūrprāka, Sūpārā, in the Koṅkaṇ, i. 181 n.
Sūra-yā (Su-li-ye-ti-p'o) or Āditya, ii. 188, 274 n.
Sūlm—a, king, ii. 2 n.
Su-ta—Su-datta, ii. 3 n.
Su-ta-la-n-t’sang—Sūtra Piṭaka, sūtras (kīn), i. 73, 80.
Sūtra Piṭaka (Su-ta-la-n-t’sang), i. 155; ii. 164; tower of honour of the, i. 38.
Sutrishna (Su-tu-li-sse-na), i. 31, 32 n., 100.
Su-tu-li-sse—Sutrishna.
Suvarnabhūmi—Burma.
Suvarnagotra (Su-fa-la-na-ku-ta-lo), in Chinese Kin-shi, i. 199.
Suvasavadi, ii. 281 n.
Su-yeh, Chu or Chui, river and town, i. 19; 26, 27.
Svāt (Su-ho-to), i. 31; 109 n., 119 n.
Śvetāmbara Jains, i. 144 n.
Śvetapura (Shi-fei-to-pu-lo), ii. 75, 76.
Śvetāvaras (Śi-pī-to-fa-la-sse), i. 61, 95 n.
Śyāwus, the Persian, ii. 301 n.
Syr-darya, Sihūn or Jaxartes river, i. 27 n., 28 n., 29 n., 30 n., 31, 88, 90, 93, 96, 97.
Sz’chuen (Shub), province of China, i. 10; ii. 198.

T.

Ta-ch’a-shi-lo—Takshaśilā.
Ta-ch’ung-pu—Mahāśāghika school, i. 121 n., 162; ii. 287.
Tadwa (To-wai), birthplace of Kāśyapa Buddha, i. 48.
Tagāo, valley in Kapiśa, i. 54 n.
Ta-hia—Baktria, i. 37 n., 38 n.; ii. 222 n.
Tai-Hau, Empress Dowager, i. 84.
T’ai Tsung, Emperor, surnamed Wen-wang-ti, a.d. 627 649, i. 1 n., 2, 6.
takshaṇa (ta’-t’sa-na), a measure of time, i. 71.
Takshaśilā (Chu-ch’a-shi-lo), Taxila, i. 32 n.; 136 f., 137 n., 138, 140 n., 143 n., 145; ii. 302, 303, 309.
Takshaśilā, the “severed head,” i. 138.
Takht-i-Bhai, i. 114 n.
Takht-i-Sulaimān, mountain in Kaśmira, i. 158 n.
Taki, village in Vaiśyā, i. 143 n.
Takka (Ta-h-kia), the country of the Bahlakas, i. 164, 165, 166 n., 167 n., 173 n.
tala trees, ii. 184, 255.
Ta-la-kien—Tālikāū.
Talas river, i. 29 n.
Tālikān in Badakhshan (Mung-kin), i. 42 n., 43 n.
Tālikān (Ta-la-kien), on the borders of Khuršān, i. 48 and note.
Ta-li-lo—Dārīk, i. 134.
Ta-lin—Mahāvana saṅghārama, i. 124.
Ta-lo-pi-ch’a—Drāvīḍa, ii. 228.
Ta-lo-sse—Tara.
Taamārītā, Tamalittī or Tāmarāipi (Ta-mo-li-ti)—Tamluk (r. v.), ii. 200 n.
Tāmaśavana (Ta-mo-su-fa-na)—Sultānpur, i. 173 n., 174, 176 n.; convent, i. 181 n.
Ta-mi—Termed.
Tamluk, Tāmarāipi, in Bengal, i. 71, 73; 111 n.; ii. 186, 200.
Ta-mo-kiu-ti—Dharmakōti or Dharmagupta, a Shāman, i. 76.
Ta-mo-po-lo-p’u-sa—Dharmapāla, ii. 229 n.
Ta-mo-sih-teh-ti—Termistāt, i. 41 n.; ii. 292, 296, 298.
Ta-mo-su-fa-na—Tāmaśavana, i. 174.
Tāmarāipi (Tan-mo-li-ti), ii. 200.
Tan-Chu, son of the Emperor Yao, i. 8 n., 10.
Tang, Emperor, i. 8; kingdom, i. 8 n., 9, 9 n., 16, 216, 217.
Tang-ti—Yao, one of the five kings, i. 8.
Tang Hūan Tsung, Emperor, a.d. 713–756, i. 1 n., 4.
Tangut, Tanggod, tribes of Tibetan blood, i. 57 n., 58 n.
Tan-mo-li-ti—Tāmarāipi, ii. 186.
Tan-ta-lo-kia—Dantolokā, i. 112 n.
Tantra, writings, i. 155 n.
Tao-ching, pilgrim, i. 23, 28, 31, 33.
Tao-yung, pilgrim, i. 103, 104, 105, 108.
Tapōban—Taptapâni, "hot water," ii. 147 n.
Târa (To-lo) Bódhisattva, i. 96; ii. 103, 174.
Tûrâ (Ta-lo-sae), i. 19; 28, 29 n.
Tâvrâlî, ii. 103 n.
Târim river, i. 12, 13, 25 n.
Târâ (Hu) pilgrims, i. 19.
Târâ, i. 103, 105, 108.
Tâshând (Shi-kwo and Che-shi), i. 19.
Tâ-thân—Dakahâna (Dekhan) country, i. 68, 69.
China for China temple, i. 19.
ten good qualities, i. 55.
ten-power—daśabala, ii. 75.
Tèng-hî lake, i. 13; 17 n., 52.
tèou—a measure of ten pints, i. 45 n.
tèou-shâh, metallic stone, i. 51, 89, 166, 177, 197, 198; ii. 45, 46, 174 n.
Tèrmèd (Ta-mi), i. 38, 39 n.
Terîzstât (Ta-mo-sîh-teh-tî), i. 41 n.; ii. 202, 296, 298.
Tèrîs (Tarsa?), river and town, i. 29 n.
Tètrâgônîs, i. 95 n.
Thàikos or Thîlikàn, i. 42 n.
Thâi Tsung or T'ai Tsung, surnamed Wen-wang-tî, Emperor, i. 6.
Thàkuri dynasty, ii. 81 n.
Thâkùsa, Sâhâsvarà, i. 183 n.
thang-li, tree, ii. 265.
Thàrêkhettàra, Burmese form of Sôrikhêta, near Prome, ii. 200 n.
Thàtâgus, of the Cuneiform inscriptions, the Sattagudai of Herodotus, i. 61 n.
hí—persimmon, i. 88.
Thiên-sin—Vasabdandhu, i. 105 n.
thirty-two marks of a Buddha, i. 1 n.
Thousand springs—Myn-baluk, i. 27, 28, 29 n.; ii. 288.
three jewels, i. 50.
three pîtaksas, ii. 75.
three precious objects of worship, i. 79.
three precious ones, the, i. 64.
three sacred names, i. 79.
three sovereigns, the, i. 7 n., 8.
three species of knowledge, ii. 163.
three vidyas, ii. 75, 101.
three worlds, i. 1 n.
Tàstrâû or Chashànâ, king, ii. 270.
Tibet, i. 135 n.; Little, i. 15.
Tibetans—Bhù tribes, i. 173 n.
Tibetan cannibalism, i. 14 n.; tribes, Tanggôd, i. 57 n., 58 n.
Tîh-lo—Tirabbhûki (Tirhut) i. 91;
old land of the Vrîjâs, i. 18.
Tîn-chu—India, i. 69.
Tîn-kwan—Dêvasêna, i. 191 n.
Tîn-ti—Indra, i. 111.
Tîh-hwû—Gunamati, i. 171.
Tîh-kwong—Gunaprabha, i. 191.
Tîlada, Tilaëka, or Tîlāra, (Ti-lo-shi-kia) convent, ii. 102, 102 n., 103, 136 n.
Tîlo-shi-kia—Tilada.
Tî-na-po—Dina, ii. 278.
tînduks (chin-t'u-kia) fruit, i. 88.
tîn-sce—karmadâna, ii. 96.
Tî-p’o—Déva Bódhisattva, ii. 97, 210, 227.
Tî-p’o-sìna—Dêvasêna, i. 191.
Tî-p’o-to-to—Dêvadatta, ii. 150, 201.
Tirabbhûki (Tîh-lo), Tirhut, i. 96, 91.
Tîrthâkas (Wâî-tao), heretics, ii. 35 n., 284, 285.
Tî-shi—Sakra or Indra, ii. 176.
Tía-harakhsîtâ (Ti-shi-lo-ch’a), second wife of Aśoka, i. 141 n.
Tî-wei, town to the north-west of Balkh, i. 46.
Tîz-āb, affluent of the Yerkiang river, i. 90 n.
To-ching, pilgrim, i. 45, 71.
Tôkâ, town, ii. 255 n.
Tôkhâri (Tu-ho-lo), Toxapod, i. 20 n., 36 n.; ii. 62 n., 286, 287, 288.
Tôkhâristân—Tukhâra, i. 37 n.
To-li, country—valley of Tà-li-lo of Hiuên Tsâng, Dârd country, i. 29; i. 134 n.
To-lo—Târa Bódhisattva, ii. 103, 174; temple, i. 96.
To-lo-po-ti—Dvârapati, ii. 200.
To-na-kie-tse-kia—Dhanakâta, ii. 220 f.
Tông-shêu—Kumâralabdha (‘youth received’), i. 139 n.; ii. 304; Jînabor Bódhisattva, ii. 218 n.
tooth, Buddha’s, i. 45, 67, 92.
Tooth-brush sanghârâma, i. 68.
Tûpor or Tûpera, on the Yamunâ river, i. 187 n.
INDEX.

To-wai—Tadwa, birthplace of Kāśyapa, i. 48.
towns, Indian, i. 73.
To-ying, a Shaman, i. 99.
traditional knowledge of the precepts, i. 70.
Trayastrimśas (To-lo-ye-teng-lingshe) heaven, i. 20, 39, 40, 44; 202, 203 n.; ii. 4, 69 n., 87 n.
trees, i. 88.
tree of the father-in-law and of the son-in-law, ii. 13 n.
Trikhāntakāsha, i. 1 n.
trigrams, i. 7 n.
Tripitaka (San-t'ang), i. 6; ii. 164, 247 n.
Tripitakāchārya—Hiuen Tsang, i. 2.
trivānī, ii. 168 n.
trividyā—threelok fold knowledge, i. 105 n., 142, 152 n., 163.
Tsaghan Ashibantu, or Khadatubulak, town, i. 13 n.
't'sa-na—kahana, i. 71.
Tsau-kiu-ch'u—Tsaukūta country, ii. 125.
Tvā-opi-ta-mo-lun—Samyuktābhiddharma Sāstra, i. 110.
'T'sa-ti-lī—Kahatriyas, i. 82.
tsau—date fruit, i. 88.
Tsaukūta (Tsu-ku-ch'a or Tau-li), * i. 62; ii. 125, 282, 283.
'T'se-shi—Maitrīya, ii. 119, 143.
T'se-li—Maitribala rāja, ii. 213.
Tsau-ho country,—probably Yār-kand, i. 14, 27.
T'seu-na—Kahunādeva, ii. 284.
Tsiš-ku—ancient name of Cho-ku-kia, ii. 307 n.
Tsiš-kiia—Takka.
Tsih rock (Tsih-shib-shan), i. 13.
Tsih-chin-lun—Tattvavānīchaya Sāstra, i. 162.
Tsün, king of China, ii. 198.
Ts'in dynasty, i. 216, 217.
Ts'in land, i. 25, 29, 33.
Tsin—ching kio shan—'mountain leading to perfect intelligence,' ii. 114 n.
Tsing lake—Issyak-kul or Temurtu, i. 19; 25.
Tsing-chau, town, i. 18, 83.
Tsing-leu—Pungayidd, i. 214 n.
Tsing-pin—Bhāvaviveka, ii. 223 n.
Tsing-tu temple, i. 18.
Tsing-t'u—“pure land” section of Buddhists, i. 227 n.
Tsioh-li (Feou-thou) pagoda, i. 103, 104, 106.
Tsā-hi—Sarvadatta birth, i. 124.
Tso-hia, Tso-la-hia, period of rest, i. 73.
T'so-mo—khauma, i. 75.
Tso-moh—city, probably the Ni-mo of Hiuen Tsang, i. 85.
Tso-t'ze, i. 95.
Tsul-shing-tseu—Jinaputra, ii. 275.
Tsu-ku-ch'a or Tsau-li—Tsaukūta, ii. 282, 283.
T'sung—light green, i. 52 n.
T'sung-ming mountains, i. 14, 15, 27, 29, 89, 93; 5, 25 n., 37, 41, 56, 119 n.; ii. 288, 290, 297, 299 n., 300, 304.
Tsul-ts'ai—Iśvara, an author, i. 112 n.
Tsul-ts'ai-t'ien—Iśvaradēva, ii. 233.
Ts'el'ai—Maitribala, i. 127.
Tu-fan—Tibet, i. 199 n.
Tuh-kiueh—Huns, Eastern Turks, i. 85; 20, 28, 30, 37 n.
Tu-ho-lo—Tukhāra country, i. 37; ii. 62, 63, 286-289, 291, 292, 296, 302 n., 325.
T'ui-fan—“sending back the crowd” stūpa, ii. 153.
Tukatu (Tsau-na-hi-lo) mountain, i. 62 n.
Tukhāra (Tu-ho-lo) country, i. 29; 37, 39 n., 49, 50, 54, 156, 157; ii. 62 n., 63, 286-289, 291, 292, 295, 302 n., 325.
Tu-kiueh—a Turk, ii. 285, 286.
Tulakuchi, ii. 2 n.
Tu-lu-ho-po-tu—Dhruvapāta, ii. 267.
Tun-hwang, town south of the Bulughir river, i. 12, 13, 15, 24 n., 25 n., 84.
Turfan (Kao-chang), capital of the Uighur country, i. 13; 17 n.
turquis—horses, i. 20 n.
Turiva, satrapy of Baktria, i. 37 n.
Turks, i. 37 n., 38, 40, 45; ii. 288, 290, 296.
Turks, Eastern (Tuh-kiueh), i. 85.
Turk Khān, i. 39 n.
Turkshara (Tu-ho-lo), ii. 62.
Turkistān, town of, i. 28 n., 29 n.
turmeric (yo-kiin), i. 120; fü-chü, i. 148.
INDEX.

Tur or Turán, i. 37 n.
Tushāra or Tukhāra, i. 37 n.
Tushita (Tu-si-to) heaven, i. 29, 78; 134, 155, 191, 226, 227, 228 n.; ii. 225.
Turkhurghan, ii. 299, 301.

U.

U-CHA—Och kingdom, ii. 288.
Uch′a—Udra or Orissa.
U-chang or U-chang-na—Udyāna, i. 89, 93, 95, 99, 101, 108; 118.
Uch, ii. 265 n.
U-chi-yen—Ujjiyana, i. 72.
Udakhaṇḍa (U-to-kia-han-ch′a), O-hind, i. 114, 118, 135.
Udaya, ii. 85 n.
Udayagiri in Orissa, ii. 205 n., 237 n.
Udayana (U-to-yen-na), Chh. Chun, king of Kosambi, i. 20; 235; ii. 4, 332.
Udayasva, ii. 85 n.
Udayibhadra, ii. 2 n.
Udita (U-ti-to), king of North India, i. 176 n.
Udra (Uch′a) or Odra, Orissa, ii. 204 f.
Udra Rāmaputra (You-tau-lan-tseu or U-teu-lan-tseu), ii. 54 n., 139, 140, 141, 142 n.
Udumbara (wu-tan-po-lo) fruit, fig, i. 88, 163.
Udyāna, or Ujjāna (U-chang or U-chang-na), i. 16, 30, 89, 93; 95 n., 118, 119, 120 n., 126, 131, 134, 149; ii. 21.
U-b-po, a Rishi, i. 99.
Uggurs (Hu) people, ii. 302, 326.
Ujjain village, i. 199 n.
Ujjiyana (U-chi-yen), i. 72.
Ujjāna for Udyāna, i. 95 n., 119 n.
Ujjanta or Ujjayanta (Yuh-chentuo), Girnàr hill, ii. 269.
Ujjiyint (U-she-yen-na), ii. 251 n., 270, 271.
unbelievers (seai-tau), i. 91 n.
Upadēśa Sāstra (U-po-ti-sho), i. 155.
Upākhyāya (shang and ho-shang), ii. 169 n.
Upagupta (Yu-po-kiu-to), in Chinese, Kin-hu, and Japanese Uya-kikta, fourth patriarch, i. 182; ii. 88 n., 89 n., 93, 273.
Upāli (Ye-po-li), i. 49; 180, 181; ii. 164.
Upadānakus (u-po-so-kia), pure men, i. 33; 81; ii. 146.
Upāsikā (u-po-see-kia), a lay disciple, i. 111 n.
Upiśān (U-pi-na), capital of Parśu-sthāna, ii. 285.
U-po-ti-sho—Upadēśa Sāstra, i. 155.
Ure—hair′circle, topknot, i. 1 n., 67 n.
Uraśa (Wu-la-shi), Urâṭ, "Ārva or Oḍāra, in Hazâra, i. 147.
Uratinbê, Uratippa, or Ura-tape, i. 31 n.
Uranila, ii. 46 n.
Uralivā-Kâśyapa (Ye-u-leu-pun-lo-kia-she-po), ii. 130, 131.
U RNA—pe-kao. hair circle; i. 1.
Urtak-tai mountains, i. 27 n., 29 n.
Usha—Och, ii. 304.
U-she-yen-na—Ujjiyini, ii. 270.
Ushanta, Ch. Fo-ting-ko, skull-bone like a lotus leaf, i. 96; ii. 249, 252.
Ush-turfan, town, i. 24 n.
Ustara, king, i. 125 n.
Ustrâ, a mountain in Kaśmir, i. 134 n.
U-to-lo-an-sha-ch′a—Uttarāshādha, month, ii. 15.
U-to-lo-si-na—Uttarāsana, i. 132.
U-teu-lan-tseu—Udra-Rāmaputra, ii. 139.
Utkala, Odra or Orissa, ii. 204 n.
U-to-kia-han-ch′a—Udakhaṇḍa, i. 118.
U-to-yen-na—King Udayana of Kaśmīr, ii. 322.
Utpala Bhikshuni, transformed into a Chakravarttin king by Buddha i. 40, 41.
Utpalavarnā (Lin-hwa-sih), a Bhikshuni, i. 204, 205.
Utrāśaṭa—Sutrisnaha.
Uttara (Wu-ta-lo), an Arhat, ii. 227.
Uttaradharma or Dharmottara, founder of the Sautrāntika school, i. 139.
Uttara Kośala, country, ii. 1 n.
Uttarāsana (Yu-to-lo-sāng-kiā), i. 47.
Uttarāsena (U-ta-lo-si-na), Chh. Shang-kiun, king of Udyāna, i. 17; 126, 127, 131, 132, 133.
INDEX.

Uṣṭarāṣhāṛa (U-ta-lo'-an-sha-ch'a), month, ii. 15.
Uṭtārādyana, northern march of the sun, i. 71 n.
Uzbek, i. 49 n.

V.

VAIBHĀRA hill, ii. 155 n., 156 n., 181 n.
Vaibhāshika sect or school, i. 105 n., 110 n., 139 n., 193, 194.
Vāripulva-parinirvāṇa Śātra, i. 71.
Vairāchana (Pi-lu-che-na), Arhat, i. 87; ii. 312.
Vaisākha (Fei-she-k'ie) month, i. 72; ii. 33, 122.
Vaisa Rājputs, i. 209 n.
Vaśāl (Fei-she-li), country and city, i. 52, 53, 54, 55, 78; ii. 66, 67, 68 n., 69, 70 n., 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 81, 97, 98, 160, 164 n., 165 n., 166.
Vaśavādana-dēva (Pi-sha-men) Ku- bera, i. 14; 44, 45, 59, 191 n.; ii. 309, 311.
Vaśya (Fei-she) caste, i. 82, 89.
Vaśya, perhaps for Vaśa, i. 209 n.
vaśtraka, a twig, i. 68 n.
Vajjia or Vajjians, ii. 66 n., 68 n., 77 n., 78 n. See Vṛjjiya.
Vajra (Fa-she-lo), ii. 170.
Vajrachchhāṣikā, i. 204 n.
Vajrāṭādāna for Vairāvasamādhi, ii. 219.
Vajrapāṇi (Chi-kin-kang)—Indra, i. 52; 122; ii. 22, 36, 225, 226; eight Vajrapāṇi, ii. 22.
Vajrapāṇi dhārānti (Chi-kin-kang-t'o-lo-ni), ii. 225.
vajrasana (kin-kang-tso), imperishable throne, ii. 114, 116.

Vaksh or Surkh-āb river, i. 39 n., 41 n.
Vākkula or Vakula, a Shāhvira, ii. 190 n.
Vakula (Po-khu-lo), a Yaksha, ii. 190.
Vakhsh (Po-tsu), Ouxus river, i. 12; ii. 289 n., 292.
Vahal' (Fa-la-pi), i. 16; ii. 266 f., 268, 269.
Varāha Mihira, i. 202 n.; ii. 200 n.
Varāha temple at Tāmrālipti, i. 111 n.

Varanā (P'o-lo-na) river, ii. 44 n., 45.
Varanā or Varṇav (Fa-la-na) district, ii. 281.
Vārānasi (P'o-lo-ni-se). See Bānāras.
Varasena (P'o-lo-si-na), ii. 286.
Varsakh river, in Badakṣahān, i. 42 n.
Varṣāśa (Yu-shi)—rainy season, i. 72 n.
Vassana—spring, i. 72 n.
Vasavadattā, ii. 1 n.
Vāshpa (Po-fu), ii. 55 n.
Vasībha (Po-shi-p'o) saṅghārāma, ii. 195.
Vaśmapura or Balmapura, Reinaud's restoration of Pi-chen-p'o-pu-lo, ii. 272 n.
Vassā, season of retreat, ii. 161 n.
Vasumitra (Pho-shu-mi-to-lo), in Chinese Shi-yu, i. 105 n., 109, 110 n., 154 f.; ii. 268 n.
vatasa (seu), a year, i. 71.
Vaya Rishi, i. 209 n.
Vēda Śāstras (Fei-t'o), four, i. 79.
vēdana (shek), ii. 94 n.
vehicles, the five, i. 79 n.
Veṇiga, probably Vīṅgita, ii. 217 n.
Venuvana (Chu-lin) vihāra 'bamboo garden,' ii. 43, 161, 165, 188.
Venustomans, Fensberg, ii. 225 n.
Vessantara (Pe-lo), Prince Sudāna, i. 17, 93; 112 n.
Vessantarā jātaka, i. 17, 98; 213 n.
Vibhāsā (Pi-p'o-sho), ii. 307.
Vibhāsāprakāraṃapaḍa Śāstra, (Chung-sue-fan-p'i-p'o-sha), i. 161.
Vibhāṣā Śāstra (Pi-p'o-sha-lun), composed by Manōhrita, i. 105, 117, 153, 191, 192; commentary on, by Pārma, i. 162.
Vibhāṣā Śāstra, of Śrīlabha, i. 226.
Vichavapura, Julien's restoration of Pi-chen-p'o-pu-lo, ii. 272 n.
vidala, leafless, i. 68 n.
INDEX.

Viddhals (Yueh-ti), i. 20 n.; ii. 66 n. See Yue-chi, and a. 370.

Vidyās, five (ming): Sātradviḍyā, Adhyātmanāḍyā, Chikitsadeviḍyā, Hētuvadī, and Silpāsthānādiṣṭhānuviḍyā, i. 75, 153 n., 154; ii. 41.

Vidyādłaśaṭḍaḥ Sādra (Wei-chi-lun), of Vasubandhu, i. 236.

Vihāras in Nepal, i. 74 n.

Vijaya of Ceylon, ii. 236 n., 239 n., 240 n.; ancestors of, i. 108 n.

Vijayanagara, i. 14; ii. 207 n.

Vijayaśambha, king of Khotan (Liu-yul), i. 87 n.

Vijñānakāya Sādra (Shih-shin-lun), i. 240.

Vijñāna (chi), intelligence, ii. 94 n.

Vikramāditya (Chao-jib), of Šrāvaṇa, i. 106, 108; ii. 1 n.

Vikramāditya Harsha of Ujjayinī, i. 106 n.; ii. 51 n., 137 n.

Vikramāditya, Western Chalukya king, i. 213 n.

Vikratavana (Ma-liin) saṅghārāma, i. 162.

Vimalakirtti (Pi-mo-lo-kie), ii. 68.

Vimalakirtti Sātra (Pi-mo-lo-kie-king) i. 67.

Vimalamitra (Pi-mo-lo-mi-to-lo), in Chinese Wu-han-yau, i. 196.

Vimbasara, i. 102 n.; see Bimbisāra.

Vinākhaśas, the eight deliverances, i. 104 n., 149.

Vīra (kong-heu), lute, i. 141 n.; ii. 189 n.

Vinaya (liu), i. 23, 38, 39, 54, 63, 70, 79; 58 n., 80, 181; ii. 40 n., 55 n., 154.

Vinaya schools, i. 121.

Vinaya Viśdhaṭa Sātra (Pi-nai-ye-pi'-o-sha-lun), i. 155.

Viśāṅga (Pi'ing-k'an-lo), probably Vengi, capital of Andhara, ii. 217, 218.

Viśdā (Pi-po-she) or Viṣṇat river, T'lang of Arrian, i. 165.

Viśupalirā (Pi-pu-lo) ii. 155, 158.

Viśāśāna (Pi-lo-ahao-na) in Northern India, i. 201.

Viśāṭa or Bairat, town, i. 179 n.

Viśudhaka (Pi-lu-tse-kia), in Chinese Liu-li, king, i. 48, 49; 128, 156 n.; ii. 11, 12, 20.

Visakha (Pi-so-kia), district, i. 239.

Visākhā (Pi-she-kia), ii. 10, 11; chapel of Mother, i. 46 n.

Visála Rāja, ii. 66 n.

Viśāntara, Visvantara, or Viśantara—Prince Sudāna, i. 112 n.

Vitaśā river, i. 48 n.

Vyādāranya, ii. 62 n.

Vṛjjis or Vuajis (Fo-li-shi), Skythian invaders, i. 16, 108 n.; ii. 66 n., 70 n., 77, 81 n., 83 n., 236 n.

Vṛtrar, the nine, i. 186 n.

“Vulture, the peak of the,” ii. 47 n.

Vyākarana (Ching-ming-lun) of Pānini, i. 114.

Vyāsa (Pi-ye-so), Ch. Kwang-po, ii. 148.

W.

WAGESH, river, i. 40 n.

Wai—death, ii. 163.

Wairāgarh, ii. 209 n.

Wai-tao, unbelievers—Thrthakas, i. 91 n.; ii. 35 n., 284.

Wakhrān (Ta-mo-sih-tek?), i. 42 n.

Wakhrā (Hu-sha), i. 40.

Wakhrā-āb or Surkhāb river, i. 41 n.

Wang-she-ch'ing (Rājagṛtha), ii. 43 n., 46.

Wan-i, suburb of Lo-yang, i. 15, 84.

Washing basin of Buddha, i. 45.

Wass (svvās), i. 53 n., 58.

Wayband or Ohind, Udakhānda, capital of Gandhāra, i. 135 n.

Weapons, i. 83 n.

Wei dynasty, Great, i. 15, 84, 94, 97, 99, 101; country, 86; language, 94; Tartar tribe, 84 n.

Wen-Kiai-chu-king—Skandhadhātu-upsthāna Sātra, i. 201.

Wen-lin—Muchhilinda, ii. 41.

Wen-urh-pih-yih—Srutaravimsātikōtī, bhikshu, ii. 187 n., 254.

Western countries (Si-yu), i. 84.

Western Hia, the Tangut kingdom, i. 58 n.

Western paradise, ii. 225 n.

Wheat (spring) (suḥ-mai) i. 50 n.

White Elephant palace—perhaps the Pilusāra stupa of Huen Tsiang, i. 102.

White water or Peh-ahwui, town, i. 29.

Wihhāsani hills, ii. 214 n.

Wi-sing-yun—Ajātaśatru rāja, ii. 150.

Wines, i. 89.
INDEX.

Women, country of Western, ii 240, 279.
worlds (thousand) — chiliocosm.
writing, i. 77.
Wu-chang — Udyaṇa country, i. 30.
Wu-cho, "without attachment" —
Asanga, i. 226 n.
Wu-hau-yau — Vimalamitra, ii. 196 n.
Wu-hio — Arhats, i. 152 n.
Wu-i or Wu-ki! kingdom of, perhaps
— same as Karshar, i. 12, 24 n., 25.
Wu-jeh-no-chi, in Tibetan Ma-dros
— Anavatapta lake, ii. 6, 155 and
note.
Wu-kant-yuh — the lowest hell, i.
172 n.
Wu-ki, same as 'O-ki-ni, i. 17.
Wu-la-shi — Uraśa.
Wu-shing, "invincible," — Hiranyā-
vati river, ii. 32 n.
Wu-ta-lo — Uttara Arhat, ii. 227.
wu-tan-po-lo — udumbara fruit, fig, i.
88.
wu-t'u — ötu, cat, i. 146.
Wu-yang, town, i. 11.
Wu-yau and Wu-yau-wang — Aśoka,
i. 203 ; ii. 45 &c.
wu-yu-ni-pan — complete nirvāṇa,
i. 161 n.

Y.
Yajur-veda (Śrī), i. 79 n.
yāk (mao-niu), ii. 80.
Yakṣha-chetiyaṇi, ii. 68 n.
Yakṣhins, ii. 236 n.
Yakṣha (Yo-cha), i. 99 ; 59, 110 n.,
127, 153, 156 ; ii. 36 n., 190, 191 ;
-fed by Maitrihala rāja, ii. 213.
Yakṣhakṛtyas of Kaśmir, i. 156 n.
Yaśa-rāja, infernal king, i. 64.
Yamandevā or Yavanadvipa (Yen-
mo-na-cheu), country, ii. 200.
Yamgān in Badakshān, probably In-
po-kin, i. 42 n. ; ii. 291.
Yamunā (Chen-mu-na), river, i. 187,
188.
yang — principle in Astronomy, i.
71.
Yang-chow, town, i. 83.
Yang-hissar, according to Klaproth,
equal to Tseu-ho, i. 14.
Yang-kiu-li-mo-lo — Aṅgulimāla,
ii. 3.
Yang-lu mountains, i. 23.
Yau-tsain, period (A.D. 406), i. 87.
Yār-kand, probably Tseu-ho river, i.
27 n.; ii. 299 n., 307 n.
Yarkiand (Cha-kiu-kia!), ii. 307.
Yasa, son of Kana, an Arhat, i. 53 n.
Yasada Ayuhamat (Ye-she-t'o), ii. 67
n., 74, 75.
Yashțivana (Ye-she-čhi-lion), ii. 145,
146, 147.
Yāsodharā (Ye-she-t'o-lo), wife of
Buddha, ii. 8 n., 17.
yara, breadth of a barleycorn, i. 70.
Yavanas (Ye-mei-nil), ii. 236 n.
Yavanadvipa. See Yamanadvipa.
year, yataara, ii. 71.
Yeh river — the Syr-darya.
Yeh-hu — Khān of the Turks, i. 45
and note.
Yellow river, i. 13 n., 57 n., 173.
Yen-chang, i. 87.
Yen-mo-na-cheu — Yamanadvīpa.
Ye-po-kiu-to — Upagupta.
Ye-po-lo, country, i. 99.
Ye-po-τ — Java, or perhaps Sumatra,
i. 81.
Yerkiang river, i. 90 n.
Ye-she-t'o — Yasada, ii. 74.
Ye-tha — Ephthalites, Turk tribes,
Huns of Byzantine writers, i. 15,
16, 90, 91, 92, 100, 101 ; 37 n.;
royal ladies of, i. 91.
Yeju — Bālāditya-rāja, i. 168 n.
Ye-kin-ho, ii. 32 n.
Ye-lue-p'ing-lo-kia-she-po — Uravilva
Kāyapa, ii. 130.
Ye po-li — Upali, i. 180 ; ii. 164.
Yih-chen — Bhāskaravāma.
Yih-tsei-chi — Sambuddhaga, Sar-
vārthasiddha, ii. 16 n.
Yih-tsei-ching — Sarvārthasiddha,
ii. 52 n., 254.
Yih-tsei-yau-i, "possessed of every
excellency" — Sarvārthasiddha, ii.
16 n.
Yin-kwong-pu — the Kāsyaplya
school, i. 121 n.
yin — principle in astronomy, i. 71.
Yo-cha — Yaksha.
Yoga (Yu-kia) discipline, ii. 220.
Yogachāra school, ii. 103 n.
Yogachārya Sāstra (Yu-kia-sce-
ti-lun, i. 226.
Yogachāryabhāmi Sāstra (Yu-kia-
sce-ti-lun), ii. 220, 275.
Yogachāryabhāmi Sāstra kārika, of
Jinaputra, ii. 275.
INDEX.

yójana (yu-šen-na) i. 70.
yo-kin—turmeric, i. 120; ii. 283.
yu—corner, ii. 102 n.
Yuan-chiu, a Shaman, i. 176 n.
Yü-cheu, town in Honan, i. 2.
Yü-chi, country of the Western, i. 78, 100 n.
Yueh-chi, Yueh-chi, or Yueh-ti, i. 15, 32, 33; 20 n., 37 n.; ii. 67 n., 70 n.
Yu-chie-sh'-te-lun-shih — Yógachár-yabhámi Sástra-kárika, ii. 275 and note.
yueh-ngai-chu — the Chandrakánta jewel, ii. 252.
Yueh-chi tribe, i. 56 n.
Yueh-kwang—Chandrprabha rāja, ii. 213.
Yuen-mun—Pñna, i. 162 n.
yu-fan—a gem from the Lu country, i. 66 n.
Yü-hwui, also read Yu-fai, i. 14, 27.
yu-kin—ginger, i. 54.
Yub-kin-hiáng—Kuñkuma stópa, ii. 125.
yuh-men—gem-gate, i. 16 n.
Yu-kia-sze-ti lun—Yógachárāyásástra, i. 226.
Yu-kia-sze-ti lun — Yógachárāyabhámi Sástra, ii. 220.
Yun-kiai-king — Skandadhátu-áyatanas, i. 95.
yun-shih—cloud-stone, ii. 103 n.
Yu-shih vibára, ii. 174.
Yu(-ti) Shun. See Shun, i. 8.
Yu-tien—Khotan, i. 199 n.
Yuanásāva, king, ii. 1 n.
Yūzfaizai tribe, i. 128 n.
Yeu-tau-lan-tseu — Udra Ramaputra, ii. 54 n.

Z.
Zapápos or Zapápos, the Śatadrú river, i. 178 n.
Zarafáhán river, i. 12 n., 34 n.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

VOL. II.

Page 1, line 5.—For Kie-pi-lo-fu-ssse-to read fa-su-tu.
Page 13.—For Kie-pi-lo-fa-ssse-ti read fa-su-tu.
Page 44, line 3.—For Fi-she-lai read Fei-she-li.
Page 44, line 3.—For Fo-li-shi read Po-li-shi.
Page 66, n. 67.—Dele "the Viddhals"; the Yue-chi were probably not the Viddhals or Ephthalites, but Gotha.
Page 150, line 16.—For lo read to.
Page 186.—In heading of book, read in line 2 khi for kai; line 3, li for lae; line 5, kiao for kiu; line 6, kiu for kin.
Page 235.—In heading of book, line 2, read pu for po; line 5, read shi for chi; tu for to; line 7, read shi for chi.
Page 289, n. 21.—Read Po-t'eu for Po-tzu, and so in every case.
Page 251, n. 33, line 17.—For armadores read buzas.
Page 283, line 5.—For Ki-li-si-mo read Ki-li-seh-mo.
Page 283, line 7.—For Chang-mi read Shang-mi.

Other mis-spellings are corrected in the Index.
Central Archaeological Library,
NEW DELHI.

Call No. 910.40954/Hiu/Bea

Author—Beal, S

Title—Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World

Borrower No. Date of Issue Date of Return

[A handwritten note: 12/4/72 7/6/77]

"A book that is shut is but a block."

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY
GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.